







# GAZETTEER

OF THE

## BOMBAY PRESIDENCY

VOLUME I. PART J.

### HISTORY OF GUJARÁT.

---

*UNDER GOVERNMENT ORDERS.*

---

BOMBAY  
PRINTED AT THE GOVERNMENT CENTRAL PRESS.

1896.







THE earliest record of an attempt to arrange for the preparation of Statistical Accounts of the different districts of the Bombay Presidency is in 1843. In 1843 Government called on the Revenue Commissioner to obtain from all the Collectors as part of their next Annual Report the fullest available information regarding their districts.<sup>1</sup> The information was specially to include their own and their Assistants' observations on the state of the cross and other roads not under the superintendence of a separate department, on the passes and ferries throughout the country, on the streets in the principal towns, and on the extension and improvement of internal communications. As from Collectors alone could any knowledge of the state of the district be obtained, the Collectors were desired to include in their Annual Reports observations on every point from which a knowledge of the actual condition of the country could be gathered with the exception of matters purely judicial which were to be supplied by the Judicial Branch of the Administration. Government remarked that, as Collectors and their Assistants during a large portion of the year moved about the district in constant and intimate communication with all classes they possessed advantages which no other public officers enjoyed of acquiring a full knowledge of the condition of the country, the causes of progress or retrogradation, the good measures which require to be fostered and extended, the evil measures which call for abandonment, the defects in existing institutions which require to be remedied, and the nature of the remedies to be applied. Collectors also, it was observed, have an opportunity of judging of the effect of British rule on the condition and character of the people, on their caste prejudices, and on their superstitious observances. They can trace any alteration for the better or worse in dwellings clothing and diet, and can observe the use of improved implements of husbandry or other crafts, the habits of locomotion, the state of education particularly among the higher classes whose decaying means and energy under our most levelling system compared with that of preceding governments will attract their attention. Finally they can learn how far existing village institutions are effectual to

<sup>1</sup> Secretary's Letter 4223 to the Revenue Commissioner dated 30th December 1843. Revenue Volume 1854 of 1843.

their end, and may be made available for self-government and in the management of local taxation for local purposes.

In obedience to these orders reports were received from the Collectors of Ahmedabad Broach Kaira Thana and Khandesh. Some of the reports, especially that of Mr. J. D. Inverarity, contained much interesting information. These five northern reports were practically the only result of the Circular Letter of 1843.

The question of preparing District Statistical Manuals was not again raised till 1870. In October 1867 the Secretary of State desired the Bombay Government to take steps for the compilation of a Gazetteer of the Presidency on the model of the Gazetteer prepared during that year for the Central Provinces. The Bombay Government requested the two Revenue Commissioners and the Director of Public Instruction to submit a scheme for carrying into effect the orders of the Secretary of State. In reply the officers consulted remarked that the work to be done for the Bombay Presidency would be of a multifarious character; that the article on the commerce of Bombay would require special qualifications in the writer; that again special qualifications would be required for writing accounts of the sacred cities of Nasik and Palitana, of the caves of Ajanta and Ellora, of the histories of Sindh Gujarat and Ahmednagar, and of the Portuguese connection with Western India. The Committee observed that a third form of special knowledge would be required to write accounts of Parsis Khojas and other castes and tribes; that in short the undertaking would be one of much wider scope and greater difficulty than the preparation of the Gazetteer of the Central Provinces. Much thought would be required before the general plan could be laid down, and after the plan was fixed all sorts of questions as to arrangement and treatment of particular parts would be sure to arise. In the Committee's opinion local revenue officers could not as a rule find time to devote to work of this description without neglecting their ordinary duties; but they could correct and amplify such information as a special officer could compile from the published and unpublished records of Government.

In January 1868 the Bombay Government decided that the general supervision and direction of the work should be placed in the hands of a Committee consisting of the Revenue Commissioners, the Director of Public Instruction, and the Commissioner of Customs, and that an Editor should be appointed with a small copying establishment to act under the directions of the Committee. The Editor was to give his entire time to the work and was expected to

finish it in about a year. He was to collect and arrange in alphabetical order all recorded information regarding the towns and other places of interest in each Collectorate, and to send printed on half margin each draft when completed to the local officers for verification, additions, and alterations. When the drafts were returned and corrected by the Editor, they were to be laid before the Committee. To enable the Editor to meet such expenses as a fair remuneration for articles contributed by qualified persons, and also to pay for the printing of the work with small accompanying maps, an amount not exceeding Rs. 12,000 was sanctioned for the total expense of the Gazetteer including the payment of the Editor. At the outset it was decided to place a portion of the sum sanctioned not exceeding Rs. 2000, at the disposal of the Commissioner in Sindh to secure the preparation of articles referring to Sindh. The Committee were requested to meet at Poona in June 1868 and to report to Government on the best mode of preparing and editing the Gazetteer and supervising its publication. The Collectors and Political Officers were in the meanwhile requested to ascertain what records in their possession were likely to be useful for the preparation of a Gazetteer and what papers in the possession of others and likely to be useful for the purpose were obtainable within their charge. Collectors and Political Officers were requested to send their replies direct to the Director of Public Instruction who would collect them on behalf of the Committee.

In August 1868 the Bombay Gazetteer Committee, composed of Messrs. A. F. Bellasis Revenue Commissioner N. D. Chairman, Mr. W. H. Havelock Revenue Commissioner S. D. and Sir Alexander Grant, Director of Public Instruction, submitted a report recommending the following arrangements :

(1) That Mr. W. H. Crowe, C. S, then Acting Professor in the Dakhan College, be appointed Editor of the Gazetteer with a monthly remuneration of Rs. 200 out of the Rs. 12,000 sanctioned for the expense of the Gazetteer and that he should at the same time be attached as an Assistant to the Collector of Poona ;

(2) That Mr. Crowe be allowed an establishment not exceeding Rs. 50 a month chargeable to the grant of Rs. 12,000, and such contingent charges as may be passed by the Committee ;

(3) That Professor Kero Luxman Chhatre be requested to assist Mr. Crowe on various questions both local and mathematical, and that on the completion of the work a suitable honorarium be granted to Professor Kero ;

(4) That agreeably to the suggestions of Major Prescott and Colonel Francis, Mr. Light should be directed to compile for the different districts all information in the possession of the Survey Department in communication

with the Editor of the Gazetteer who was to work under the Committee's officers ;

- (5) That the above appointments be made at present for one year only, at the end of which from the Committee's progress report, it would be possible to state with approximate definiteness the further time required for the completion of the Gazetteer.

These proposals were sanctioned on the 11th September 1868. Towards the close of 1868 Mr. (now Sir) J. B. Peile took the place of Sir A. Grant on the Committee and Colonel Francis was added to the list of the members. Adhering as far as possible to the arrangement followed in the Gazetteer of the Central Provinces, which had met with the approval of the Secretary of State, Mr. Crowe drew out the following list of subjects which was forwarded to all Collectors Sub-Collectors and Survey Superintendents :

<p><b>I.—GENERAL DESCRIPTION</b></p> <p>(a) Latitude and Longitude.  (b) Locality.  (c) Foundation.  (d) Aspect.  (e) Water-supply.  (f) Rivers.  (g) Mountains.  (h) Area.  (i) Altitude.</p> <p><b>II.—CLIMATE, SEASONS.</b></p> <p>(a) Rainfall.  (b) Health.  (c) Prevailing Diseases.</p> <p><b>III.—GEOLOGY.</b></p> <p>(a) Soils.  (b) Minerals.  (c) Scientific Details.</p> <p><b>IV.—HISTORY.</b></p> <p><b>V.—ADMINISTRATION.</b></p> <p>(a) Judicial.  (b) Revenue.  (c) Miscellaneous.</p> <p><b>VI.—REVENUE.</b></p> <p>(a) Imperial.  (b) Local.</p> <p><b>VII.—POPULATION.</b></p> <p>(a) Census.  (b) Description of Inhabitants.  (c) Castes.</p>	<p><b>VIII.—SUB-DIVISIONS.</b></p> <p>(a) Names of Talukas.  (b) Names of Towns.</p> <p><b>IX.—PRODUCTION</b></p> <p>(a) Agriculture.  (b) Forest.  (c) Animals.  (d) Minerals.  (e) Manufactures.</p> <p><b>X.—TRADE AND COMMERCE.</b></p> <p><b>XI.—COMMUNICATIONS</b></p> <p>(a) Roads.  (b) Railways.  (c) Telegraphs.  (d) Post</p> <p><b>XII.—REVENUE SYSTEM AND LAND TENURES.</b></p> <p><b>XIII.—EDUCATION.</b></p> <p>Schools.  Instruction.</p> <p><b>XIV.—LANGUAGE.</b></p> <p><b>XV.—ARCHITECTURAL REMAINS AND ANTIQUITIES.</b></p> <p><b>XVI.—PRINCIPAL TOWNS AND VILLAGES.</b></p>
---	--

In 1869 the draft articles prepared by Mr. Crowe were submitted to Mr. (now Sir) W. W. Hunter of the Bengal Civil Service who expressed his satisfaction at the progress made. The Committee adopted certain suggestions made by Sir W. Hunter for the arrangement of the work and for obtaining 'fuller' district figures from the Marine, Irrigation, Cotton, and Survey Offices. In March 1870 a further extension of one year was accorded. The Bombay Government directed that each Collector should choose one of his Assistants to correspond with the Editor and obtain for him all possible information from local records. All Heads of Offices were also desired to exert themselves zealously in aiding the prosecution of the work. In 1871 Mr. Crowe's draft article on the Dhárwár District was sent to Mr. Hunter for opinion who, in addition to detailed criticism on various points made the following general remarks :

"My own conception of the work is that, in return for a couple of days' reading, the Account should give a new Collector a comprehensive, and, at the same time, a distinct idea of the district which he has been sent to administer. Mere reading can never supersede practical experience in the district administration. But a succinct and well conceived district account is capable of antedating the acquisition of such personal experience by many months and of both facilitating and systematising a Collector's personal enquiries. The Compiler does not seem to have caught the points on which a Collector would naturally consult the Account. In order that the Editor should understand these points it is necessary that he should have had practical acquaintance with district administration and that he should himself have experienced the difficulties which beset an officer on his taking charge of a district or sub-division. The individual points will differ according to the character of the country. For example in deltaic districts the important question is the control of rivers; in dry districts it is the subject of water-supply. But in all cases a District Account besides dealing with the local specialties should furnish an historical narration of its revenue and expenditure since it passed under the British rule, of the sums which we have taken from it in taxes, and of the amount which we have returned to it in the protection of property and person and the other charges of civil government."

Sir William Hunter laid much stress on the necessity of stating the authority on the strength of which any statement is made and of the propriety of avoiding anything like libels on persons or classes. In 1871 Sir W. Hunter was appointed Director General of Statistics to the Government of India. In this capacity he was to be a central guiding authority whose duty it was to see that each of the Provincial Gazetteers contained the materials requisite for the comparative statistics of the Empire. As some of the Bombay District Accounts were incomplete and as it was thought advisable to embody in the District Accounts the results of the general Census of 1872, it was decided, in October 1871, that pending the completion of the census

the Gazetteer work should be suspended and that when the results of the census were compiled and classified a special officer should be appointed for a period of six months to revise and complete the drafts. In October 1871, pending the compilation of the census returns, Mr. Crowe was appointed Assistant Collector at Sholapur and the Gazetteer records were left in a room in the Poona Collector's Office. In September 1872 the whole of the Gazetteer records, including thirty-one articles on British Districts and Native States, were stolen by two youths who had been serving in the Collector's Office as peons. These youths finding the Gazetteer office room unoccupied stole the papers piece by piece for the sake of the trifling amount they fetched as waste paper. Search resulted in the recovery in an imperfect state of seven of the thirty-one drafts. The youths were convicted and sentenced to a year's imprisonment in the Poona Reformatory.

In 1873 Mr. Francis Chapman then Chief Secretary to Government took the preparation of the Gazetteer under his personal control. And in June 1873 Mr. James M. Campbell, C.S., was appointed Compiler. An important change introduced by Mr. Chapman was to separate from the preparation of the series of District Manuals certain general subjects and to arrange for the preparation of accounts of those general subjects by specially qualified contributors. The subjects so set apart and allotted were :

GENERAL CONTRIBUTORS, 1873.		
No.	Subject	Contributor
1	Ethnology . . .	Dr. J. Wilson.
2	Meteorology . . .	Mr. C. Chambers, F.R.S.
3	Geology . . .	Mr. W. Blandford.
4	Botany . . .	Dr. W. Gray.
5	Archæology . . .	Dr. J. Burgess.
6	Manufactures and Industry . . .	Mr. G. W. Terry.
7	Trade and Commerce . . .	Mr. J. Gordon.

These arrangements resulted in the preparation of the following papers each of which on receipt was printed in pamphlet form :

I. ETHNOLOGY ; II. METEOROLOGY ; III. GEOLOGY ; and IV. BOTANY.

Of these papers it has not been deemed advisable to reprint Dr. J. Wilson's Paper on Castes as it was incomplete owing to Dr. Wilson's death in 1875. Reprinting was also unnecessary in the case of Mr. Blandford's Geology and of the late Mr. Chambers' Meteorology, as the contents of these pamphlets have been embodied in works

specially devoted to the subject of those contributions. Dr. Burgess never prepared his article on the Archaeology of the Presidency, but the materials supplied by the late Pandit Bhagvānlāl Indrajī prevented the evil effect which this failure would otherwise have caused. Dr. Bhagvānlāl also ably supplied the deficiency caused by Dr. G. Bühler's failure to contribute an article on the Early History of Gujarāt. The notices of the manufactures in the more important industrial centres to some extent supply the blank caused by the absence of Mr. Terry's contribution. Nothing came of the late Mr. Gordon's Account of the Trade of the Presidency.

On the important subject of Botany besides Dr. W. Gray's original contribution, a valuable paper On Useful Trees and Plants was prepared by Dr. J. C. Lasbon, and a detailed account of Kāira field trees by the late Mr. G. H. D. Wilson of the Bombay Civil Service. These three papers together form a separate Botany Volume No. XXV.

The general contributions on History contained in Vol. I. Parts I. and II. are among the most valuable portions of the Gazetteer. Besides the shorter papers by Mr. L. R. Ashburner, C.S.I., on the Gujarāt Mutines of 1857, by Mr. J. A. Baines, C.S.I., on the Marāthās in Gujarāt, by Mr. W. W. Lēch, I.C.S., on the Musalmān and Marāthā histories of Khandesh and the Bombay Dakhan, and by the late Colonel E. W. West, I. S. G., on the modern history of the Southern Marāthā districts, there are the Reverend A. K. Nairne's History of the Konkan which is specially rich in the Portuguese period (A.D. 1500-1750), the late Colonel J. W. Watson's Musalmāns of Gujarāt with additions by Khān Sāheb Fazl Latifullah Farūh of Surat, and the important original histories of the Early Dakhan by Professor Rāmkrishna Gopāl Bhundārkar, C.I.E., Ph.D., and of the Southern Marāthā districts by Mr. J. F. Fleet, I.C.S., C.I.E., Ph.D. With these the early history of Gujarāt from materials supplied by the late Pandit Bhagvānlāl Indrajī, Ph.D., is perhaps not unworthy to rank. The work of completing Dr. Bhagvānlāl's history was one of special difficulty. No satisfactory result would have been obtained had it not been for the valuable assistance received from Mr. A. M. T. Jackson, M.A., of the Indian Civil Service.

The importance and the interest of the great subject of Population have added several contributions to the Reverend Doctor J. Wilson's original pamphlet of twenty-three pages. Most of these contributions appear in different District Statistical Accounts especially Dr. John Pollen's, I.C.S., accounts in Khāndesh, Mr. Cumme's, I.C.S. in Bijāpur, Mr. K. Raghunāthji's in Thāna and Poona, Assistant Surgeon Shāntārām

Vináyak's in Sholapur, Mr. P. F. DeSouza's in Kánara, and the late Ráo Bahádur Trimalrao's in Dhárwar. Except the valuable articles contributed in the Statistical Account of Kachh by Major J. W. Wray, Mr. Vináyakraó Náráyanand Ráo Sáheb Dalpatráñ Pránjivan Khakhár, in the Account of Káthiawár by the late-Colonel L. C. Barton, and in the Account of Rewa Kántha by Ráo Bahádur Nandshankar Tuljáshankar the early date at which the Gujarát Statistical Accounts were published prevented the preparation of detailed articles on population. This omission has now been supplied in a separate volume No. IX. The chief contributions to this volume are Ráo Bahádur Bhimbháí Kirpáram's Hindus, Khán Sáheb Fazl Lutfullah Farídi's Musalmáns, and Messrs. Kharsetji N. Servai and Bamanji B. Patel's Pársis.

Besides to these general contributors the series of Statistical Accounts owes much of their fullness and practical usefulness to District Officers especially to the labours of the District Compilers who in most cases were either Collectors or Assistant Collectors. The most important contributors of this class were for Ahmedabád Mr. F. S. P. Lely, C. S.; for Kaira Mr. G. F. Sheppard, C. S.; for the Panch Maha'ls Mr. H. A. Acworth, C. S.; for Thá'na Messrs. W. B. Mulock, C. S., E. J. Elden, C. S., W. W. Loch, C. S., and A. Cumine, C. S.; for Kolá'ba Mr. E. H. Moscardi, C. S.; for Ratná'giri Mr. G. W. Vidal, C. S.; for Kha'ndesh Mr. W. Ramsay, C. S., Dr. John Pollen, C. S., and Mr. A. Crawley-Boevey, C. S.; for Na'sik Messrs. W. Ramsay, C. S., J. A. Bailes, C. S., and H. R. Cooke, C. S.; for Ahmednagar Mr. T. S. Hamilton, C. S.; for Poona Messrs. J. G. Moore, C. S., John MacLeod Campbell, C. S., G. H. Johns, C. S., and A. Keyser, C. S.; for Sa'tara Mr. J. W. P. Muir-Mackenzie, C. S.; for Sholapur Mr. C. E. G. Crawford, C. S.; for Belgaum Mr. G. McCorkell, C. S.; for Dha'rwar Messrs. F. L. Charles, C. S., and J. F. Muir, C. S.; for Bijapur Messrs. H. F. Silcock, C. S., A. Cumine, C. S., and M. H. Scott, C. S.; and for Kánara Mr. J. Monteath, C. S., and Colonel W. Peyton. Of the accounts of Native States, the interesting and complete Gazetteer of Baroda is the work of Mr. F. A. H. Elliott, C. S. The chief contributors to the other Statistical Accounts of Native States were for Kachh Colonel L. C. Barton; for Ka'thia'wa'r Colonel J. W. Watson and Colonel L. C. Barton; for Pa'lanpur Colonel J. W. Watson; for Mahi Ka'ntha Colonels E. W. West and P. H. LeGeyt; for Rewa Ka'ntha Colonel L. C. Barton and Ráo Bihádur Nandshankar Tuljáshankar; for Sa'vantva'di Colonel J. F. Lester; for Ja'naira Mr. G. Larcum; for Kolha'pur Colonels E. W. West and W. F. F. Waller and

Rao Bahadur Yeshvant M. Kelkar. The names of numerous other contributors both in and out of Government service who gave help in compiling information connected with their districts have been shewn in the body of each District Statistical Account. Of these the learned and most ungrudging assistance received from Dr. J. Gerson DaCunha of Bombay requires special recognition.

The third main source of preparation was the Compiler's headquarters office. Through the interest which Mr. Francis Chapman took in the Gazetteer the Compiler was able to secure the services as Assistant of Rao Bahadur Bhambhar Kirpagan who was Head Accountant in the Kara Treasury when the Statistical Account of Kara was under preparation in 1874. Mr. Bhambhar's minute knowledge of administrative detail, his power of asking for information in the form least troublesome to district establishments, and of checking the information received, together with his talent for directing the work at headquarters formed one of the most important elements in the success of the Gazetteer arrangements. Besides to the interest taken by Mr. Francis Chapman the Gazetteer owed much to the advice and to the support of Sir W. W. Hunter, who, in spite of the delay and expense which it involved, secured the full record of the survey and other details in which the Bombay revenue system is specially rich.

In addition to Rao Bahadur Bhambhar, the members of the Compiler's office whose work entitles them almost to a place among contributors are: Rao Sahib Krishnarao Narsingh, who drafted many of the Land Revenue and Survey Histories, the late Mr. Ganesh Bhikaji Gungkar, B.A., who drafted many of the Political Histories; the late Mr. Vaikunthram Manmathram Mehta, B.A., and Rao Bahadur Itchan Bhagandas, B.A., who drafted many articles on Description, Production, Agriculture, Capital, and Trade, Mr. K. Raghunathji who prepared many of the fullest caste accounts; Mr. Ratnam Durgaram, B.A., who drafted many papers on places of interest; Mr. Messrs. Yeshvant Nilkanth and Mahadev G. Naddkarni who drafted many of the sections on Population, Agriculture, Capital, and Trade.

Other officers of Government who have had an important share in the satisfactory completion of the Gazetteer are: Mr. J. Kingsmill the former and Mr. Frimroz Rustamji the present Superintendent of the Government Central Press and Mr. T. E. Coleman the Head Examiner, whose unfailing watchfulness has detected many a mistake. Mr. Wate the late Superintendent of the Photozincographic Press and Mr. T. LeMesurier the present Superintendent have supplied a set of most handy, clear, and accurate maps.

A further means adopted for collecting information was the preparation of papers on the different social, economic, and religious subjects which had proved of interest in preparing the earliest District Statistical Accounts. Between 1874 and 1880 forty-nine question papers which are given as an Appendix to the General Index Volume were from time to time printed and circulated. The answers received to these papers added greatly to the fullness and to the local interest of the later Statistical Accounts.

The Statistical Accounts of the eighteen British districts and eighty-two Native States of the Bombay Presidency, together with the Materials toward a Statistical Account of the Town and Island of Bombay extend over thirty-three Volumes and 17,800 pages. In addition to these Statistical Accounts 475 articles were prepared in 1877-78 for the Imperial Gazetteer.

JAMES MACNABB CAMPBELL.

*Bombay Customs House*  
*Nov. 14th 1896.*

# HISTORY OF GUJARÁT.



This Volume contains the Articles named below

- I.—EARLY HISTORY OF GUJARAT (B.C. 319 - A.D. 1301) — From materials prepared by the late Pandit Bhagvānlāl Indrajī, Ph.D. completed with the help of A. M. T. Jackson, Esquire, M.A. of the Indian Civil Service.
- II.—HISTORY OF GUJARAT. MUHAMMADAN PERIOD (A.D. 1297 - 1760) — Prepared by the late Colonel J. W. Watson Indian Staff Corps former Political Agent of Kathiāvada, with additions by Khan Sūbh Fuzlullāh Lutfullah Fardī of Surat.
- III.—HISTORY OF GUJARAT. MARATHA PERIOD. (A.D. 1760 - 1819).—By J. A. Barnes, Esquire, C.S.I. Late of Her Majesty's Bombay Civil Service.
- IV.—DISTURBANCE IN GUJARAT (A.D. 1857 - 1859) —By L. R. Ashburner, Esquire, C.S.I. Late of Her Majesty's Bombay Civil Service.

#### APPENDICES

- I.—The Death of Sultan Bahādur,
- II.—The Hill Fort of Māndu
- III.—Bhūmāl or Shrināl
- IV.—Java and Cambodia
- V.—Arab References
- VI.—Greek References

JAMES M. CAMPBELL

20th May 1896.



# CONTENTS.

## EARLY HISTORY OF GUJARAT.

	PAGE
<b>Boundaries and Name</b> . . . . .	1-5
<b>Ancient Divisions.</b> . . . .	
Anaritta; Surāshtra; Lāta . . . . .	6-7
<b>Legends:</b>	
Anaritta the first Purānic king of Gujarāt, and the Yādavas in Dwārīka . . . . .	8-12
<b>Mauryan and Greek Rule</b> (B.C. 319-100): . . . . .	
The Mauryas (B.C. 319-197); The Greeks (B.C. 180-100) . . . . .	13-19
<b>The Kshatrapas</b> (B.C. 70 - A.D. 398): . . . . .	
The Name; Northern Kshatrapas; Western Kshatrapas; Nabhapāna (A.D. 78-120); Ushavadata (A.D. 100-120); Nabhapāna's Era; Mālava Era, Chushtana (A.D. 130); The Meyas or Medas; Jayadaman (A.D. 140-143) . . . . .	20-34
Rudradaman (A.D. 143-158), Sudarśana Lake; The Yaudheyas, Dāmāzada or Damājadaśrī (A.D. 158-168); Jivadaman (A.D. 178), Rudrasimha I. (A.D. 181-196); Rudrasena (A.D. 203-220), Prithvisena (A.D. 222); Saṅghadāman (A.D. 222-226); Dāmasena (A.D. 226-236); Damājadaśrī II (A.D. 236) . . . . .	35-45
Vīradāman (A.D. 236-238), Yasadāman (A.D. 239); Vijayasena (A.D. 238-249); Dāmājadaśrī (A.D. 250-255); Rudrasena II (A.D. 256-272); Viśvasimha (A.D. 272-278); Bhāttidāman (A.D. 278-294); Viśvasena (A.D. 294-300), Rudrasimha (A.D. 308-317); Yasadāman (A.D. 320); Dāmāsiri (A.D. 320); Rudrasena (A.D. 348-376), Spūhasena; Skanda; Śvaredatta (A.D. 230-250), Kshatrapa Family Tree . . . . .	46-54
<b>The Traikutakas</b> (A.D. 250-450): . . . . .	
Initial Date; Their Race . . . . .	55-59
<b>The Guptas</b> (c. 90-149; A.D. 410-470): . . . . .	
Dynasty; The founder Gupta (A.D. 319-322 [?]); Ghatotkacha (A.D. 322-349 [?]); Chandragupta I. (A.D. 349-369 [?]); Samudragupta (A.D. 370-395); Chandragupta II. (A.D. 396-415); Kumāragupta (A.D. 416-453); Skandagupta (A.D. 454-470) . . . . .	60-70
Budhagupta (A.D. 485); Bhānugupta (A.D. 511); The Pushyamitras (A.D. 455); White Huns (A.D. 450-520); Mihirakula (A.D. 512); Yasodharman of Mālwa (A.D. 533-34) . . . . .	71-77

### The Valabhis (A.D. 509 - 766) :

Vulch Town (1893); Valabhi in A.D. 630; Valabhi Copper-plates; Valabhi Administration (A.D. 500-700); Territorial Divisions; Land Assessment; Religion; Origin of the Valabhis; History ... ..	PAGE 78-86
--	---------------

First Valabhi Grant, (A.D. 526); Senapati Bhatārka (A.D. 509-520?); the Matrakas (A.D. 470-509); Senapati's Sons; Dhruvasena I (A.D. 526-535); Gulasena (A.D. 539-569); Dhruvasena II (A.D. 569-589); Śilāditya I. (A.D. 594-609); Kharagraha (A.D. 610-615), Dhruvasena III. (A.D. 615-620); Dhruvasena II (Bāladitya) (A.D. 620-640), Dhruvasena IV. (A.D. 640-649); Dhruvasena III. (A.D. 650-656); Kharagraha (A.D. 656-665); Śilāditya II. (A.D. 666-675); Śilāditya IV. (A.D. 691); Śilāditya V. (A.D. 722); Śilāditya VI. (A.D. 760); Śilāditya VII. (A.D. 766); Valabhi Family Tree; The fall of Valabhi (A.D. 750-770); The importance of Valabhi ... ..	87-96
---	-------

Valabhi and the Gehlots; The Vālas of Kāthiāvāda; The Vālas and Kāthi; Descent from Kanaksen (A.D. 150); Mewāl and the Persians; Valas ... ..	97-106
---	--------

### The Chalukyas (A.D. 634-740)

Jayasimhavarman (A.D. 666-693); Śyāmsraya Śilāditya (her apparent) (A.D. 669-691), Mangalarāja (A.D. 698-731), Pulakesi Janāśraya (A.D. 735), Buddhavarman (A.D. 713-), Nagavardhana, Chalukya Tree ... ..	107-112
--	---------

### The Gurjjaras (A.D. 580-808).

Copperplates, Gurjara Tree, Dadda I. (c. 585-605 A.D.), Jayabhata I. Vīṇagaga (c. 605-620 A.D.), Dadda II. Prasāntaraga (c. 620-650 A.D.), Jayabhata II. (c. 650-675 A.D.), Dadda III. Bahusūhaya (c. 675-700), Jayabhata III. (c. 704-734 A.D.) ... ..	113-118
---	---------

### The Rāshtrakutas (A.D. 713-974).

Origin, Name; Early Dynasty (A.D. 450-500); The main Dynasty (A.D. 630-974); Rāshtrakuta Family Tree (A.D. 630-974); Copperplates, Karka II. (A.D. 747), Kṛṣṇa and Govinda II. (A.D. 765-795), Dhruva I. (A.D. 795), Govinda III. (A.D. 800-808), Indra (A.D. 808-842), Karka I. (A.D. 812-821); Dantivarman (Her Apparent); Govinda (A.D. 827-833), Dhruva I. (A.D. 835-867), Akālavarsha (A.D. 867); Dhruva II. (A.D. 867), Akālavarsha Kṛṣṇa (A.D. 888); Main Line restored (A.D. 888-974); Kṛṣṇa Akālavarsha (A.D. 888-914); Indra Nityamvarsha (A.D. 914) ... ..	119-134
---	---------

### The Mihiras or Mers (A.D. 170-900) :

History; The Chūlāsamanās (A.D. 900-940); The Jethvās; The Mers; White Hūnas; Jhālās ... ..	135-147
---	---------

# THE KINGDOM OF ANAHILAVĀḌA (A.D. 720-1300).

## The Chāvada's (A.D. 720-956):

PAGE

Pañchāsar (A.D. 788); Jayasēkhara (A.D. 696); Vanarāja (A.D. 720-780 P); Founding of Anahilavāḍa (A.D. 716-765); Vanarāja's Installation; His Image; Vanarāja's Successors (A.D. 780-961); Yogarāja (A.D. 806-841); Kshemarāja (A.D. 841-880); Chāmunda (A.D. 880-908); Ghāghada (A.D. 908-937); Chāvada Genealogy .. ... 149-155

## The Chaulukyas or Solankis (A.D. 961-1212):

Authorities; The name Chaulukya; Mūlarāja (A.D. 961-996); Chāmunda (A.D. 997-1010); Durgasīha (A.D. 1010-1022); Bhīma I. (A.D. 1022-1034); Mahmūd's Invasion (A.D. 1024); Somanātha (A.D. 1024) .. ... 156-169

Karna (A.D. 1064-1094); Siddharāja Jayasingha (A.D. 1094-1143) .. ... 170-181

Kumārāpāla (A.D. 1113-1174); Ajayapāla (1174-1177); Mūlarāja II. (A.D. 1177-1179); Bhīma II. (A.D. 1179-1242) .. 182-197

## The Vāghela's (A.D. 1219-1304):

Arnorāja (A.D. 1170-1200); Jayasīha (A.D. 1200-1233); Virāddeva (A.D. 1233-1238); Vīśaladeva (A.D. 1243-1261); Arjunadeva (A.D. 1262-1274); Sārangadeva (A.D. 1275-1296); Karnaadeva (A.D. 1296-1304); Vāghela Genealogy .. ... 198-206

# MUSALMAN PERIOD (A.D. 1297-1760).

## Introduction:

Territorial Limits; Sorath, Kāthiavāḍa; Under the Kings (A.D. 1103-1573); Under the Mughals (A.D. 1573-1760); Condition of Gujārāt (A.D. 1297-1802) .. ... 207-228

## Early Musalman Governors (A.D. 1297-1403):

Alā-ud-din Khulji Emperor (A.D. 1295-1315); Ulugh Khān (A.D. 1297-1317); Ain-ul-Mulk Governor (A.D. 1318); Order established (A.D. 1318); Muhammad Tughlak Emperor (A.D. 1325-1351); Ajin-ul-Mulk Governor (A.D. 1320); Suppression of insurrection (A.D. 1347); Surrender of Gīrnār and Kachh (A.D. 1350); Firuz Tughlak Emperor (A.D. 1351-1388); Zafar Khān Governor (A.D. 1371); Farhat-ul-Mulk Governor (A.D. 1376-1391); Muhammad Tughlak II. Emperor (A.D. 1391-1393); Zafar Khān Governor (A.D. 1391-1403) .. ... 229-233

## Ahmedā'bad Kings (A.D. 1403-1573):

Muhammad I. (A.D. 1403-1404); Muzaffar (A.D. 1407-1419); Ahmed I. (A.D. 1411-1441); Ahmedā'bad built (A.D. 1413); Defeat of the L'dar Chief (A.D. 1414); Spread of Islām (A.D. 1414); Expedition against Mālwa (A.D. 1417); Chāmpāner attacked (A.D. 1418); War with Mālwa (A.D. 1422); Defeat of

the I'dar Chief (A.D. 1425); Recovery of Máhim (A.D. 1429) and Báglán (A.D. 1431); Muhammad II. (A.D. 1441-1452); Kutb-ud-din (A.D. 1451-1459); War with Málwa (A.D. 1459) Battle of Kapadvanj (A.D. 1454); War with Nágor (A.D. 1454-1459); War with Chitor (A.D. 1455-1459) ... 234-242

Mahmúd I. Begada (A.D. 1459-1513); Defeat of a conspiracy (A.D. 1459); Improvement of the soldiery (A.D. 1459-1461); Help given to the king of the Dakhan (A.D. 1461); Expedition against Junágadh (A.D. 1467); Capture of Girnár (A.D. 1472); Disturbances in Chámpáner (A.D. 1472); Conquest of Kachh; Jagat destroyed; Conspiracy (A.D. 1480); War against Chámpáner (A.D. 1482-1481); Capture of Pávágad (A.D. 1484); The Khándesh succession (A.D. 1508); Muzaffar II (A.D. 1513-1526); Expedition against Kájar (A.D. 1514); Disturbances in Málwa (A.D. 1517); Capture of Mándu (A.D. 1518); War with Chitor (A.D. 1519); Submission of the Rána of Chitor (A.D. 1521); Death of Muzaffar II. (A.D. 1526) ... 213-252

Sikandar (A.D. 1526); Mahmúd II (A.D. 1526); Bahádur (A.D. 1527-1536); Portuguese intrigues (A.D. 1526); Khándesh affairs (A.D. 1528); Turks at Diu (A.D. 1526-1530); Capture of Mándu (A.D. 1530); Quarrel with Humáyun (A.D. 1532); Fall of Chitor (A.D. 1532); Mughal conquest of Gujarát (A.D. 1535); The Mughals driven out (A.D. 1536); The Portuguese at Diu (A.D. 1537); Death of Bahádur (A.D. 1536); Muhammad II. Asiri (A.D. 1536-1554); His escape from control; Choosing of evil favourites; Quarrels among the nobles; Disturbances (A.D. 1545); Death of Mahmúd (A.D. 1551); Ahmed II. (A.D. 1554-1561); I'timád Khán Regent; Partition of the province; Dissensions; Sultánpur and Nandurbár handed to Khándesh (A.D. 1560); Defeat and death of Sayád Mubárak; Death of Imád-ul-Mulk Rūmī; Daman district ceded to the Portuguese (A.D. 1550); Assassination of Ahmed II (A.D. 1560); Muzaffar III. (A.D. 1561-1572), a minor; I'timád Khán and the Pauládis; The Mirzáis (A.D. 1571); Defeat of I'timád Khán; Death of Changíz Khán; I'timád Khán and the Emperor Akbar (A.D. 1572) ... 252-264

#### ● MUGHAL VICEEROIS (A.D. 1573-1758). ●

#### Emperor Akbar (A.D. 1573-1605):

Capture of Broach and Surat and advance to Ahmedábád (A.D. 1573); Mirza Aziz first Viceroy (A.D. 1573-1575); Insurrection quelled by Akbar (A.D. 1573); Mirza Khán second Viceroy (A.D. 1575-1577); Survey by Rája Todar Mal; Shaháb-ud-din third Viceroy (A.D. 1577-1583); Expedition against Junágadh; I'timád Khán Gujaráti fourth Viceroy (A.D. 1583-1584); Ahmedábád captured by Muzaffar (A.D. 1583); Mirza Abdur Rahim Khán (Khán Khánán) fifth Viceroy (A.D. 1583-1587); Defeat of Muzaffar (A.D. 1584); Ismáíl Kulí Khán sixth Viceroy (A.D. 1587); Mirza Aziz Kokaltásh seventh Viceroy (A.D. 1588-1592); Refuge sought by Muzaffar in Káthiáváda; Muzaffar attacked by the imperial army; Muzaffar's flight to Kachh and suicide (A.D. 1591-92); Sultán Murád Baksh eighth Viceroy (A.D. 1592-1600); Mirza Aziz Kokaltásh ninth Viceroy (A.D. 1601-1606) ... 265-273

# Jahangir Emperor (A.D. 1605 - 1627):

PAGE

Kalij Khán tenth Viceroy (A.D. 1606); Sayad Murtaza eleventh Viceroy (A.D. 1606-1609); Mirza Aziz Kokaltash twelfth Viceroy (A.D. 1609-1611); Sack of Surat by Malik Ambar (A.D. 1609); Abdulláh Khán Fírúz Jang thirteenth Viceroy (A.D. 1611-1616); Mukarrab Khán fourteenth Viceroy (A.D. 1616); Elephant-hunting in the Panch Maháls (A.D. 1616); Prince Sháh Jehán fifteenth Viceroy (A.D. 1618-1622); Rebellion of Sháh Jehán (A.D. 1622-23); Sháhi Bágh, built at Ahmedábád; Sultán Dáwar Baksh sixteenth Viceroy (A.D. 1622-1624); Saif Khán seventeenth Viceroy (A.D. 1624-1627). 273-277

# Shah Jehan Emperor (A.D. 1627 - 1658):

Sher Khán Túar eighteenth Viceroy (A.D. 1627-1632); Famine (A.D. 1631-1632); Islám Khán nineteenth Viceroy (A.D. 1632); Disorders (A.D. 1632); Bakar Khán twentieth Viceroy (A.D. 1632); Sipahdár Khán twenty-first Viceroy (A.D. 1633); Saif Khán twenty-second Viceroy (A.D. 1633-1635); Aslam Khán twenty-third Viceroy (A.D. 1635-1642); The Kolis punished; The Káthins subdued; Revolt of the Jám of Navánagar (A.D. 1640); Isa Turkhán twenty-fourth Viceroy (A.D. 1642-1644); Prince Muhammad Aurangzib twenty-fifth Viceroy (A.D. 1644-1646); Sháistah Khán twenty-sixth Viceroy (A.D. 1646-1648); Prince Muhammad Dará Shikoh twenty-seventh Viceroy (A.D. 1648-1652); Sháistah Khán twenty-eighth Viceroy (A.D. 1652-1654); Prince Murád Baksh twenty-ninth Viceroy (A.D. 1654-1657); Murád Baksh proclaimed emperor (A.D. 1657); Kásum Khán thirtieth Viceroy (A.D. 1657-1659); Victory of Murád and Aurangzib; Murád confined by Aurangzib (A.D. 1658) ... 277-282

# Aurangzib Emperor (A.D. 1658 - 1707):

Sháh Nawáz Khán Safávi thirty-first Viceroy (A.D. 1659); Rebellion of Prince Dará (A.D. 1659); Prince Dará defeated (A.D. 1659); Jasavantsingh thirty-second Viceroy (A.D. 1659-1662); Jasavantsingh sent against Shiváji (A.D. 1662); Mahábat Khán thirty-third Viceroy (A.D. 1662-1666); Capture of Navánagar-Islám-nagar (A.D. 1664); Surat plundered by Shiváji (A.D. 1664); Copper coinage introduced (A.D. 1664); Khán Jehán thirty-fourth Viceroy (A.D. 1668-1671); Sidi Yákút the Mughal Admiral (A.D. 1670); Mahárája Jasavantsingh thirty-fifth Viceroy (A.D. 1671-1674); Muhammad Amin Khán Umda-ul-Mulk thirty-sixth Viceroy (A.D. 1674-1683); Increased power of the Bábi family; Revolt of Idar (A.D. 1679); Mukhtár Khán thirty-seventh Viceroy (A.D. 1683-1684); Famine (A.D. 1684); Shujáát Khán (Kártalab Khán) thirty-eighth Viceroy (A.D. 1684-1703); Mutiny quelled by Shujáát Khán (A.D. 1689); Revolt of Matías and Momnás (A.D. 1691); Disturbances in Káthiáváda (A.D. 1692) and Márwár; Durgádás Ráthod reconciled to the Emperor (A.D. 1697); Scarcity (A.D. 1698); Prince Muhammad Aslam thirty-ninth Viceroy (A.D. 1703-1705); Intrigue against and escape of Durgádás Ráthod; Surat (A.D. 1700-1703); Ibráhím Khán fortieth Viceroy (A.D. 1705); Maráthás enter Gujarát; Battle

of Ratanpūr and defeat of the Musalmāns (A.D. 1705); Battle of the Bāba Pīrāh Ford and second defeat of the Musalmāns (A.D. 1705); Kolī disturbances; Prince Muhammad Bīdār Bakht forty-first Viceroy (A.D. 1705-1706); Durgādās Rāthod again in rebellion; Ibrāhīm Khān forty-second Viceroy (A.D. 1706) ... 283-295

### Fifty Years of Disorder (A.D. 1707-1757):

The Marāṭha advance to Ahmedābād and levy of tribute (A.D. 1707); Bahādūr Shāh I. Emperor (A.D. 1707-1712); Ghāzī-ud-dīn forty-third Viceroy (A.D. 1708-1710); Jahāndār Shāh Emperor (A.D. 1712-13); Asif-ud-daulah forty-fourth Viceroy (A.D. 1712-13); Farrukhsiyar Emperor (A.D. 1713-1719); Shuhāmāt Khān forty-fifth Viceroy (A.D. 1713); Dāūd Khān Pannī forty-sixth Viceroy (A.D. 1714-15); Religious riots in Ahmedābād (A.D. 1714); Further riots in Ahmedābād (A.D. 1715); Mahārāja Ajitsingh forty-seventh Viceroy (A.D. 1715-1716); Disagreement between the Viceroy and Haidar Kūlī Khān (A.D. 1715); Khān Daurān Nasrat Jang Bahādūr forty-eighth Viceroy (A.D. 1716-1719); Fātikho (A.D. 1719); Muḥammad Shāh Emperor (A.D. 1721-1728); Mahārāja Ajitsingh forty-ninth Viceroy (A.D. 1719-1721); Pilāji Gāikwār at Songad (A.D. 1719); Decay of imperial power (A.D. 1720); Nizām-ul-Mulk Prime Minister of the Empire (A.D. 1721); Haidar Kūlī Khān fiftieth Viceroy (A.D. 1721-1722); Disorder in Ahmedābād (A.D. 1721); His arrival in Gujarāt (A.D. 1722); Signs of independence shown by him and his recall (A.D. 1722); Nizām-ul-Mulk fifty-first Viceroy (A.D. 1722); Hāmid Khān Deputy Viceroy; Momin Khān Governor of Surat (A.D. 1722); Increase of Marāṭha power (A.D. 1723)... 295-301

Sarbuland Khān fifty-second Viceroy (A.D. 1723-1730); Shujāt Khān appointed Deputy; Nizām-ul-Mulk and Sarbuland Khān; Sarbuland Khān's Deputy defeated (A.D. 1724); the Marāṭhas engaged as Allies; Battle of Arās; Hāmid Khān defeated by Rustam Ali (A.D. 1723); Hāmid Khān joined by Marāṭhas against Rustam Ali; Mubārīz-ul-Mulk sent against the Marāṭhas (A.D. 1725); Retreat of Hāmid Khān and the Marāṭhas; Ahmedābād entered by Mubārīz-ul-Mulk (A.D. 1725); Defeat of the Marāṭhas at Sojitra and Kapadvanj (A.D. 1725); Marāṭha expedition against Vadnagar (A.D. 1725); Tribute paid to the Marāṭhas (A.D. 1726); Alliance with the Peshwa (A.D. 1727); Baroda and Dabhoi obtained by Pilāji Gāikwār (A.D. 1727); Capture of Chāmpāner by the Marāṭhas (A.D. 1728); Grant of tribute to the Peshwa (A.D. 1729); Disturbance raised by Mulla Muḥammad Ali at Surat (A.D. 1729); Petlād given in farm (A.D. 1729); Athva fort (A.D. 1730); The Viceroy in Kāthiāvāda and Kachh (1730); Riots at Ahmedābād; Mahārāja Abheysingh fifty-third Viceroy (A.D. 1730-1733); The new Viceroy resisted by Mubārīz-ul-Mulk; Battle of Adālaj; The Mahārāja defeated by Mubārīz-ul-Mulk (A.D. 1730); Retreat of Mubārīz-ul-Mulk; Government of Abheysingh; Momin Khān, ruler of Cambay (A.D. 1730); The Peshwa and Viceroy against Pilāji Gāikwār (A.D. 1731); The withdrawal of the Peshwa; His opponents defeated;

Abdúlláh Beg appointed Nizám's Deputy at Broach; The death of Piláji Gaikwár procured by the Viceroy (A.D. 1732); Baroda taken; Famine (A.D. 1732); Affairs at Surat (A.D. 1732); Toghbeq Khán Governor of Surat ... 305-313

Ratansingh Bhandári Deputy Viceroy (A.D. 1733-1737); Return of the Maráthás; Contest for the government of Gogha; Disturbance at Víramgám (A.D. 1734); Baroda recovered by the Maráthás (A.D. 1734); Change of governor at Víramgám; Failure of Jawán Mard Khán in an attempt on I'dar; Rivalry of Ratansingh Bhandári and Sohráb Khán (A.D. 1735); Battle of Dholi; Defeat and death of Sohráb Khán (A.D. 1735); Rivalry between Ratansingh Bhandári and Momín Khán (A.D. 1735); Marátha affairs; Dámáji Gaikwár and Kántáji (A.D. 1735); Battle of Anand-Mogri; Defeat of Kántáji; The Maráthás helping Bhávsingh to expel the Víramgám Kasbátis; The country plundered by the Gaikwár and Peshwa; Momín Khán fifty-fourth Viceroy (A.D. 1737); Siege of Ahmedábád; Mahárája Abheysingh fifty-fifth Viceroy (A.D. 1737); The siege of Ahmedábád continued by Momín Khán; Defence of the city by Ratansingh Bhandári; Ahmedábád captured by Momín Khán (A.D. 1738); Momín Khán fifty-sixth Viceroy (A.D. 1738-1743); Prosperity of Ahmedábád (A.D. 1738); Tribute collected by the Viceroy (A.D. 1738); Sher Khán Bábi Deputy Governor of Sorath (A.D. 1738); Tribute collected by the Deputy Viceroy (A.D. 1739); Capture of Bassein by the Maráthás (A.D. 1739); Tribute expedition (A.D. 1740); The Viceroy at Cambay (A.D. 1741); Víramgám surrendered and Pátdi received by Bhávsingh; Siege of Broach by the Maráthás (A.D. 1741); Battle of Dholka; Defeat of the Maráthás (A.D. 1741); Contests between the Musalmáns and Maráthás; Disturbance at Ahmedábád (A.D. 1742); Collection of tribute in Káthiáváda by the Viceroy; Death of Momín Khán (A.D. 1743) ... 314-326

Fidá-ud-dín acting as Viceroy (A.D. 1743); The Maráthás defeated by Muftakhr Khán; Dámáji Gaikwár's return to Gujarát; Abdul Azíz Khán of Junnar Viceroy (by a forged order); Mutiny of the troops; Petlúd captured by the Maráthás; Muftakhir Khán fifty-seventh Viceroy (A.D. 1743-1744); Jawán Mard Khán appointed Deputy, The Maráthás in Ahmedábád; Battle of Kim Kathodra; Defeat and death of Abdúl Azíz Khán (A.D. 1744); Fakhr-ud-daulah fifty-eighth Viceroy (A.D. 1744-1748); Jawán Mard Khán Bábi Deputy Viceroy; Khanderáv Gaikwár called to Sátára; Defeat and capture of the Viceroy by Jawán Mard Khán Bábi; Rangoji disgraced by Khanderáv Gaikwár; Rangoji and Jawán Mard Khán opposed by Punáji Vithal and Fakhr-ud-daulah; Siege of Kapadvanj by Fakhr-ud-daulah (A.D. 1746); The siege raised at the approach of Holkar; Momín Khán II, governor of Cambay (A.D. 1748); Increased strength of Fakhr-ud-daulah's party; Dissensions among the Maráthás; Surat affairs (A.D. 1748); Escape of Mulla Fakhr-ud-din to Bombay; Cession of Surat revenue to the Gaikwár (A.D. 1747); Famine (A.D. 1747); Marátha dissensions; Fall of Borsad ... 326-332

<b>Mahārāja Vakhatsingh</b> , fifty-ninth Viceroy (A.D. 1748);	PAGE
<b>Ahmed Shāh Emperor</b> (A.D. 1748-1754); Spread of disorder;	
<b>Surāt affairs</b> (A.D. 1750); Sayad Achchan unpopular; Safdar	
<b>Muhammad</b> brought back by the Dutch; Retreat of Sayad	
<b>Achchan</b> ; Jawān Mard Khān and the Peshwa (A.D. 1750); The	
<b>Peshwa</b> and Gaikwār (A.D. 1751); Broach independent (A.D.	
1752); Pāndurang Pandit repulsed at Ahmedābād (A.D. 1752);	
<b>Marāthā</b> invasion; Return of Jawān Mard Khān; Gallant	
defence of Ahmedābād; Surrender of Jawān Mard Khān;	
Ahmedābād taken by the Marāthās (A.D. 1753); Collection of	
tribute; Mughal coinage discontinued; Failure of an attempt	
on Cambay (A.D. 1753); The Kolis; Cambay attacked by the	
Marāthās (A.D. 1754); Alamyār II. (A.D. 1754-1759); Contest	
with Momīn Khān renewed (A.D. 1754); Gogha taken by	
Momīn Khān (A.D. 1755); Ahmedābād recovered by Momīn	
Khān (17th October 1756); Jawān Mard Khān allying himself	
with the Marāthās; Ahmedābād invested by the Marāthās	
(A.D. 1756); Momīn Khān helped by Rāo of Idār (A.D. 1757);	
Successful sally under Shambhurām. Negotiations for peace;	
Marāthā arrangements in Ahmedābād; New coins; Momīn	
Khān at Cambay; Expedition from Kachh against Sindh (A.D.	
1758); Tribute levied by the Marāthās; Surat affairs (A.D.	
1758); The command of Surat taken by the English (A.D.	
1759); Momīn Khān's visit to Poona (A.D. 1759); Sadāshiv	
Rāmchandra Peshwa's Viceroy (A.D. 1760); The Marāthās in	
Kāthiāvād (A.D. 1759); Apa Ganesh Viceroy (A.D. 1761);	
Battle of Pānipat (A.D. 1761) ... .. 332-345	

#### Appendix I.—Death of Sultān Bādūr (A.D. 1526-1536). 347-351

<b>Appendix II.</b> —The Hill Fort of Māndu; Description;	
History; The Mālwa Sultāns (A.D. 1400-1570); The Mughals	
(A.D. 1570-1720); The Marāthās (A.D. 1720-1820); Notices	
(1820-1895) ... .. 352-384	

### MARĀTHA PERIOD (A.D. 1760-1819).

History; Śivājī's first inroad (A.D. 1661); Śivājī's second attack (A.D. 1670); Sāler taken (A.D. 1672); The Narbada crossed (A.D. 1675); Raids by Dābhāde (A.D. 1699-1713); Dābhāde (A.D. 1716); Dābhāde Senāpati; the Peshwa's negotiations (A.D. 1717); Dāmājī Gaikwār (A.D. 1720); Marāthā tribute (A.D. 1723); Kūrtāji Kadam; Marāthā dissensions (A.D. 1725); The Peshwa (A.D. 1726); Cession of tribute (A.D. 1728); Coalition against the Peshwa (A.D. 1730); Defeat of the allies (A.D. 1731); Assassination of Pilāji Gaikwār (A.D. 1732); Baroda secured by the Gaikwār (A.D. 1734); The Marāthā Deputy Governor (A.D. 1736); Ahmedābād riots (A.D. 1738-1741); Siege of Broach (A.D. 1741); Rangoji prisoner at Borsad (A.D. 1742); Quarrels regarding the Viceroyalty between Dāmājī and Rāghoji Bhonsle (A.D. 1743-44); Rangoji

confined in Borsad (A.D. 1745); the Gaikwár in Surat (A.D. 1747) ... PAGE 385-395

Haribá attacked by Rangoji; Death of Umábái (A.D. 1748); Dámáji deputy in Gujarát; Dámáji against Peshwa; Dámáji Gaikwár arrested (A.D. 1751); The Peshwa and Surat; Release of Dámáji (A.D. 1752); Capture of Ahmedábád (A.D. 1753); Raghunáthráv at Cambay; The Peshwa's deputy at Ahmedábád; Ahmedábád captured by the Nawáb of Cambay; Dámáji and Khanderáv Gaikwár at Ahmedábád; Surrender of the Nawáb; Sayájiráv in Ahmedábád; Peshwa's agent Sadáshiv at Surat; The Maráthas demand of tribute from the Nawáb of Cambay; The Nawáb at Poona; Lunávada plundered by Khanderáv; Expedition against Bálásinor; The estates of Jawán Mard Khán retaken by Dámáji; The Peshwa and the English (A.D. 1761); One of the Jádhu family Senápati; (Chorpude family again Senápati; Intrigues of Rághobá (A.D. 1768); Death of Dámáji Gaikwár (A.D. 1768); Disputed succession; Rághobá Peshwa (A.D. 1774); Rághobá in Gujarát (A.D. 1775); Rághobá defeated; His arrival at Surat; Treaty of Surat (A.D. 1775); Colonel Keating in Gujarát; Rághobá accompanied by Colonel Keating; Rághobá in Cambay (A.D. 1775); Govindráv Gaikwár's army; Advance of the combined forces; Defeat of Fatesingh (A.D. 1775); Retreat of the ministerial general; Colonel Keating at Dabhoi (A.D. 1775); Rághobá and the Gaikwárs; Withdrawal of the British contingent; Negotiations at Poona; Rághobá at Surat (A.D. 1776); Negotiations at Poona (A.D. 1777); Fresh alliance with Rághobá (A.D. 1778) ... 396-407

The convention of Bhadgaon (A.D. 1779); Negotiation with the Gaikwár; Escape of Rághobá from Sindia (A.D. 1779); League against the English (A.D. 1780); Treaty with Fatesingh Gaikwár; Ahmedábád taken by General Goddard (A.D. 1780); Operations against Sindia and Holkar; Treaty of Sálbái (A.D. 1782); Death of Fatesingh (A.D. 1789); Govindráv detained at Poona (A.D. 1793); Office of Regent at Baroda taken by Govindráv; Aba Shelukar Deputy Governor of Gujarát (A.D. 1796); Disputes between Aba and Govindráv Gaikwár; Gujarát farmed to the Gaikwár (A.D. 1799); Anandráv Gaikwár (A.D. 1800); British aid to Govindráv's party; The British and the Gaikwár (A.D. 1800); The Gaikwár's minister Rávji; Treaty of Basscin (21st December 1802); Arabs disbanded; Malháráv in revolt (A.D. 1803); Contingent strengthened (A.D. 1803); Death of Rávji (A.D. 1803); War with Sindia; The revenue collecting force; Renewal of (Gujarát) farm (A.D. 1804); The British and the Gaikwár (A.D. 1805); Káthiávada tribute; State of Káthiávada (A.D. 1807); The revenue raid system ... 407-418

The Maráthas in Sorath; Securities; Bháts and Chárans (A.D. 1807); British intervention; Financial and political settlements (A.D. 1807); Peshwa's share in Káthiávada; Later arrangements; The Mahi Kántha; Supplementary treaty (A.D. 1808); Okhámandal (A.D. 1809); Disturbances in Káthiávada (A.D. 1811); The Gaikwár's payment of the pecuniary loan to the British Government (A.D. 1812); Discussions with

Poona government about the old claims on the Gáikwár's estate (A.D. 1813-14); Peshwa intrigue in Baroda (A.D. 1814); Okhámandal ceded to the Gáikwár; British aid at Junágadh; Treaty of Poona (A.D. 1817); Treaty with the Gáikwár (A.D. 1817-18); Close of Marátha supremacy (A.D. 1819); General Review	...	...	...	...	...	418-432
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	---------

### GUJARÁT DISTURBANCES (A.D. 1857-1859).

The Red Salt Scare (A.D. 1857); The passing of the Pariah dog; Gold hoarding; Sevá's native press; Maulvi Saráj-ud-din; Apparent weakness of British rule; Administrative defects; The Courts disliked; The Inám Commission; The army disloyal; Báiza Báí of Gwálior; Pársi riot in Branch (June 1857); Mutiny at Mhow (July 1857); Mutiny at Ahmedábád (July 1857); Mr. Ashburner's force; General Roberts; Rising at Amjera and in the Panch Maháls (July 1857); Mutinies at Abu and Erinpur (A.D. 1857); Disturbance at Ahmedábád (14th September 1857); Rádhanpur disloyal; Arab outbreak at Sunth; Disturbance in Lunāváda; Conspiracy at Disa; Conspiracy at Baroda; Want of combination; Marátha conspiracy; Gathering at Partábpur and at Lodra, Partial disarming; Náikda revolt (October 1858); Tátiá Topi (A.D. 1858); Tátiá Topi's defeat at Chhota Udepur (December 1858); Náikda disturbance (A.D. 1858); Wágher outbreak (A.D. 1859); Expedition against Bet (A.D. 1859); Bet Fort taken; Dwárka fort taken; Rising in Nagar Párkár	...	...	...	...	...	433-448
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	---------

### APPENDICES.

<b>Bhinmál or Shrimál</b> —Description, People, Objects of Interest, History, Inscriptions	...	...	...	449-488
<b>Java and Cambodia</b>	...	...	...	489-504
<b>Arab References</b>	...	...	...	505-531
<b>Greek References</b>	...	...	...	532-547
<b>Index</b>	...	...	...	549-594





## ERRATA.

Page 3 note 5 :

*For* about thirty miles north-east of Abu

*Read* about fifty miles west of Abu.

Page 140 note 5 and page 145 top line of notes :

*For* Aldjayhání *read* Aljaharí. . .



# EARLY HISTORY OF GUJARÁT.

## CHAPTER I.

### BOUNDARIES AND NAME.

THE portion of the Bombay Presidency known as Gujarát fills the north-east corner of the coast of Western India.

**Chapter I.**  
**BOUNDARIES.**

On the west is the Arabian Sea; on the north-west is the Gulf of Cutch. To the north lie the Little Ran and the Meyád désert; to the north-east Abu and other outliers of the Arávali range. The east is guarded and limited by rough forest-land rugged in the north with side spurs of the Vindhya, more open towards the central natural highway from Baroda to Ratlám, and southwards again rising and roughening into the northern offshoots from the main range of the Sátputrás. The southern limit is uncertain. History somewhat doubtfully places it at the Tápti. Language carries Gujarát about a hundred miles further to Balsár and Párdi where wild forest-covered hills from the north end of the Sahyádrí range stretch west almost to the sea.

The province includes two parts, Mainland Gujarát or Gurjjara-ráshtra and Peninsular Gujarát the Sauráshtra of ancient, the Káthiá-váda of modern history. To a total area of about 72,000 square miles Mainland Gujarát with a length from north to south of about 280 miles and a breadth from east to west varying from fifty to 150 miles contributes 45,000 square miles; and Peninsular Gujarát with a greatest length from north to south of 155 miles and from east to west of 200 miles contributes about 27,000 square miles. To a population of about 9,250,000 Mainland Gujarát contributes 6,900,000 and the Peninsula about 2,350,000.

The richness of Mainland Gujarát the gift of the Sábarmati Mahi Narbada and Tápti and the goodliness of much of Sauráshtra the Goodly Land have from before the beginning of history continued to draw strangers to Gujarát both as conquerors and as refugees.

By sea probably came some of the half-mythic Yádavás (B.C. 1500 - 500); contingents of Yavanas (B.C. 300 - A.D. 100) including Greeks Baktrians Parthians and Skythians; the pursued Pársis and the pursuing Arabs (A.D. 600 - 800); hordes of Sanganian pirates (A.D. 900 - 1200); Pársi and Naváyat Musalmán refugees from Khulagu Khán's devastation of Persia (A.D. 1250 - 1300); Portuguese and rival Turks (A.D. 1500 - 1600); Arab and Persian Gulf pirates (A.D. 1600 - 1700); African Arab Persian and Makran soldiers of fortune (A.D. 1500 - 1800); Armenian Dutch and French traders (A.D. 1600 - 1750); and the British (A.D. 1750 - 1812). By land from the north

## EARLY GUJARÁT.

**Chapter I.** have come the Skythians and Huns (B.C. 200 - A.D. 500), the Gurjjaras (A.D. 400 - 600), the early Jádajás and Káthís (A.D. 750 - 900), wave on wave of Afghan Turk Moghal and other northern Musalmáns (A.D. 1000 - 1500), and the later Jádajás and Káthís (A.D. 1300 - 1500) : From the north-east the prehistoric Aryans till almost modern times (A.D. 1100 - 1200) continued to send settlements of Northern Bráhmáns ; and since the thirteenth century have come Turk Afghan and Moghal Musalmáns : From the east have come the Mauryans (B.C. 300), the half-Skythian Kshatrapas (B.C. 100 - A.D. 300), the Guptas (A.D. 380), the Gurjjars (A.D. 400 - 600), the Moghals (A.D. 1530), and the Maráthás (A.D. 1750) : And from the south the Sátakarnis (A.D. 100), the Chulukyas and Rásatrakutas (A.D. 650 - 950), occasional Musalmán raiders (A.D. 1100 - 1600), the Portuguese (A.D. 1500), the Maráthás (A.D. 1660 - 1760), and the British (A.D. 1780 - 1820).

Gujars.

The name Gujarát is from the Prákrit Gujjara-ratta, the Sanskrit of which is Gurjjara-ráshtra that is the country of the Gujjaras or Gurjjaras. In Sanskrit books and inscriptions the name of the province is written Gurjjara-maṇḍala and Gūrjjara-deśa the land of the Gurjjaras or Gūrjjaras. The Gurjjaras are a foreign tribe who passing into India from the north-west gradually spread as far south as Khándesh and Bombay Gujarát. The present Gujars of the Panjab and North-West Provinces preserve more of their foreign traits than the Gujar settlers further to the south and east. Though better-looking, the Panjab Gujars in language dress and calling so closely resemble their associates the Játs or Jats as to suggest that the two tribes entered India about the same time. Their present distribution shows that the Gujars spread further east and south than the Játs. The earliest Gujar settlements seem to have been in the Panjab and North-West Provinces from the Indus to Mathurá where they still differ greatly in dress and language from most other inhabitants. From Mathurá the Gujars seem to have passed to East Rajputána and from there by way of Kotah and Mandasor to Málwa, where, though their original character is considerably altered, the Gujars of Málwa still remember that their ancestors came from the Doab between the Ganges and the Jamna. In Málwa they spread as far east as Bhilsa and Saharanpur. From Málwa they passed south to Khándesh and west probably by the Ratlam-Bohad route to the province of Gujarát.

Like the modern Ahirs of Káthiáwáḍa the Gujars seem to have been a tribe of cattle-rearers husbandmen and soldiers who accompanied some conqueror and subsequently were pushed or spread forwards as occasion arose or necessity compelled. In the absence of better authority the order and locality of their settlements suggest that their introduction into India took place during the rule of the Skythian or Kushán emperor Kanerkes or Kanishka (A.D. 78 - 106) in whose time they seem to have settled as far east as Mathurá to which the territory of Kanishka is known to have extended. Subsequently along with the Guptas, who rose to power about two hundred years later (A.D. 300), the Gujars settled in East Rajputána, Málwa, and Gujarát, provinces all of which were apparently

subjugated by the Guptas. It seems probable that in regard for their share in the Gupta conquests the leading Gujars were allotted fiefs and territories which in the declining power of their Gupta overlords they afterwards (A.D. 450-550) turned into independent kingdoms.

The earliest definite reference to a kingdom of North Indian Gujars is about A.D. 890 when the Kashmir king Sankaravarmā sent an expedition against the Gurjjara king Alakhāna and defeated him. As the price of peace Alakhāna offered the country called Takkades'a. This Takkades'a appears to be the same as the Tschkia of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 630-640) who puts it between the Biyās on the east and the Indus on the west thus including nearly the whole Panjab. The tract surrendered by Alakhāna was probably the ~~small~~ territory to the east of the Chināb as the main possessions of Alakhāna must have lain further west between the Chināb and the Jehlam, where lie the town of Gujarāt and the country still called Gujar-des'a the land of the Gujars.<sup>1</sup>

As early as the sixth and seventh centuries records prove the existence of two independent Gurjjara kingdoms in Bombay Gujarāt one in the north the other in the south of the province. The Northern kingdom is mentioned by Hiuen Tsiang in the seventh century under the name Kiu-che-lo. He writes: 'Going north from the country of Valabhi 1800 li (300 miles) we come to the kingdom of Kiu-che-lo. This country is about 5000 li in circuit, the capital, which is called Pi-lo-mo-lo, is 30 li or so round. The produce of the soil and the manners of the people resemble those of Saurāshtra. The king is of the Kshatriya caste. He is just twenty years old.'<sup>2</sup> Hiuen Tsiang's Kiu-che-lo is apparently Gurjjara, the capital of which Pi-lo-mo-lo is probably Bhilmāl or Bhimāl, better known as S'rimāl.<sup>3</sup> Though Hiuen Tsiang calls the king a Kshatriya he was probably a Gujar who like the later Southern Gujars claimed to be of the Kshatriya race.

## Chapter I. THE NAME.

Northern  
Gurjjara  
Kingdom.  
Hiuen Tsiang's  
Kiu-che-lo,  
A.D. 630.

<sup>1</sup> Rājā Tarāngini (Calc. Edition), V. 150, 155, Cunningham's Archaeological Survey, II. 8. An earlier but vaguer reference occurs about the end of the sixth century in Bana's Siliharshacharita, p. 27<sup>1</sup> quoted in Ep. Ind. I. 67ff, where Prabhakaravardhana of Thūnesar the father of the great Śīlīnasha is said to have waged war with several kings of whom the Gujars are one.

<sup>2</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records of the Western World, I. 165 note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Cunningham's Archaeological Survey, II. 71.

<sup>4</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, II. 270.

<sup>5</sup> This identification was first made by the late Col. J. W. Watson, I.S.C. Ind. Ant. VI. 61. Bhimāl or Bhilmāl also called Srimāl, is an old town about thirty miles north east of Abu, north latitude 25° 4' east longitude 71° 14'. General Cunningham (Ancient Geography of India, 313) and Prof. or Beal (Buddhist Records, II. 270) identify Pi-lo-mo-lo with Balmor or Badameta (north latitude 71° 10' east longitude 26° 0') in the Jodhpur State of West Rajputana. This identification is unsatisfactory. Balmor is a small town on the slope of a hill in an arid tract with no vestige of antiquity. Hiuen Tsiang notes that the produce of the soil and the manners of the people of Pi-lo-mo-lo resemble those of Saurāshtra. This description is unsuited to so arid a tract as surrounds Balmor; it would apply well to the fertile neighbourhood of Bhilmāl or Bhimāl. Since it is closely associated with Jurr that is Gurjjara the Al Badāman of the Arabs (A.D. 750, Elliot's History, I. 442) may be Bhilmāl. A Jain writer (Ind. Ant. XIX. 233) mentions Bhilmāl as the seat of king Bhīmasena and as connected with the origin of the Gadhra coinage. The date Bhimāl in a M.S. of A.D. 906 (Ditto, page 35) suggests it was then a seat of learning under the Gurjjaras. The prince of S'rimāl is mentioned (Rās Mālā, I. 58)

## Chapter I.

THE NAME.  
Southern  
Gurjjara  
Kingdom,  
A.D. 589 - 735.

The Southern Gurjjara kingdom in Gujarāt, whose capital was at Nāndipuri, perhaps the modern Nāndod the capital of the Rājpipla State, flourished from A.D. 589 to A.D. 735.<sup>1</sup> The earlier inscriptions describe the Southern Gurjjaras as of the Gurjjara Vans'a. Later they ceased to call themselves Gurjjaras and traced their genealogy to the Purānic king Karna.

From the fourth to the eighth century the extensive tract of Central Gujarāt between the North and South Gurjjara kingdoms was ruled by the Valabhis. The following reasons seem to show that the Valabhi dynasty were originally Gujars. Though it is usual for inscriptions to give this information none of the many Valabhi copper-plates makes any reference to the Valabhi lineage. Nor does any inscription state to what family Senāpati Bhatārka the founder of the dynasty belonged. Hiuen Tsiang describes the Valabhi king as a Kshatriya and as marrying with the kings of Mālwa and Kanauj. The Valabhi king described by Hiuen Tsiang is a late member of the dynasty who ruled when the kingdom had been greatly extended and when the old obscure tribal descent may have been forgotten and a Kshatriya lineage invented instead. Internarrriage with Mālwa and Kanauj can be easily explained. Rajputs have never been slow to connect themselves by marriage with powerful rulers.

The establishment of these three Gujar kingdoms implies that the Gurjjara tribe from Northern and Central India settled in large numbers in Gujarāt. Several Gujar castes survive in Gujarāt. Among them are Gujar Vānīs or traders, Gujar Sūtārs or carpenters, Gujar Sonīs or goldsmiths, Gujar Kumbhārs or potters, and Gujar Salāts or masons. All of these are Gujars who taking to different callings have formed separate castes. The main Gujar underlayer are the Lewās and Kadwās the two leading divisions of the important class of Gujarāt Kumbis. The word Kumbi is from the Sanskrit Kuṭumbin, that is one possessing a family or a house. From ancient times the title Kuṭumbin has been prefixed to the names of cultivators.<sup>2</sup> This practice still obtains in parts of the North-West Provinces where the peasant proprietors are addressed as Grihasthas or householders. As cattle-breeding not cultivation was the original as it still is the characteristic calling of many North Indian Gujars, those of the tribe who settled to cultivation came to be specially known as Kuṭumbin or householders. Similarly Deccan surnames show that many tribes of wandering cattle-owners settled as householders and are now known as Kumbis.<sup>3</sup> During the last

as accompanying Mūla Rāja Solankhi (A.D. 942 - 997) in an expedition against Sorath. Al Biruni (A.D. 1030, Sachau's Edn., I. 153, 267) refers to Bhīllamāla between Multān and Anhilavāda. As late as A.D. 1611 Nicholas Uffet, an English traveller from Agra to Ahmadābād (Kerr's Voyages, VIII. 301) notices "Beelmahl as having an ancient wall 24 *lon* (36 miles) round with many fine tanks going to ruin." The important sub-divisions of upper class Gujarāt Hindus who take their name from it show S'rimāl to have been a great centre of population.

<sup>1</sup> Indian Antiquary, XIII. 70 - 81. Buhler (Ind. Ant. VII. 62) identifies Nandipuri with a suburb of Broach.

<sup>2</sup> Bombay Gazetteer, Nāsik, page 604. Bombay Arch. Survey Sep. Number X. 38.

<sup>3</sup> Among Deccan Kumbi surnames are Jādhav, Chuhān, Nikumbha, Parmār, Selār, Solké. Cf. Bombay Gazetteer, XXIV. 65 note 2, 414.

twenty years the settlement as Kunbis in Khándesh of tribes of wandering Wanjára herdsmen and grain-carriers is an example of the change through which the Gujarát Kanbis and the Deccan Kunbis passed in early historic times.

Besides resembling them in appearance and in their skill both as husbandmen and as cattle-breeders the division of Gujarát Kanbis into Lewa and Kadwa seems to correspond with the division of Málwa Gujars into Dáha and Karad, with the Lewa origin of the East Khándesh Gujars, and with the Lawi tribe of Panjáb Gujars. The fact that the head-quarters of the Lewa Kanbis of Gujarát is in the central section of the province known as the Chapotar and formerly under Valabhi supports the view that the founder of Valabhi power was the chief leader of the Gujar tribe. That nearly a fourth of the whole Hindu population of Gujarát are Lewa and Kadwa Kunbis and that during the sixth, seventh, and eighth centuries three Gujar chiefs divided among them the sway of the entire province explain how the province of Gujarát came to take its name from the tribe of Gujars.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Though the identification of the Valabhis as Gurjjaras may not be certain, in inscriptions noted below both the Chávalás and the Solankis are called Gurjjara kings. The Gurjjara origin of either or of both these dynasties may be questioned. The name Gurjjara kings may imply no more than that they ruled the Gurjjara country. At the same time it was under the Chavádas that Gujarát got its name. Though to Al Biruni (A.D. 1020) Gujarát still meant part of Rájputana, between A.D. 750 and 950 the name Gurjjaras' land passed as far south as the territory connected with Anhilvádá and Vadhágará that is probably as far as the Mahi. As a Rástrakuta copperplate of A.D. 888 (S. 810) (Ind. Ant. XIII. 69) brings the Konkan as far north as Varán on the Tapi the extension of the name Gujarát to Latá south of the Mahi seems to have taken place under Musalman rule. This southern application is still somewhat incomplete. Even now the people of Surat both Hindus and Musalmáns when they visit Pattan (Anhilvádá) and Ahmádábád speak of going to Gujarát, and the Ahmádábád section of the Nagai Brahmins still call their Surat caste-brethren by the name of Kunkánis that is of the Konk.

## CHAPTER II. ANCIENT DIVISIONS.

### Chapter II.

ANCIENT

Anartta.

FROM ancient times the present province of Gujarat consisted of three divisions Anartta, Surāshtra, and Lāta. Anartta seems to have been Northern Gujarat, as its capital was Anandapura <sup>1</sup> or Vadunagara or Chief City, which is also called Anarttapura.<sup>2</sup> Both these names were in use even in the times of the Valabhi kings (A.D. 500-770).<sup>3</sup> According to the popular story, in each of the four cycles or *yugas* Anandapura or Vadunagara had a different name, Chamatkārapura in the first or Satya-yuga, Anarttapura in the second or Tretā-yuga, Anandapura in the third or Dvāpara-yuga, and Vridhā-nagara or Vadunagar in the fourth or Kālī-yuga. The first name is fabulous. The city does not seem to have ever been known by so strange a title. Of the two Anarttapura and Anandapura the former is the older name, while the latter may be its proper name or perhaps an adaptation of the older name to give the meaning City of Joy. The fourth Vridhā-nagara meaning the old city is a Sanskritized form of the still current Vadunagar, the Old or Great City. In the Gīrnār inscription of Kshatrapa Rudradāman (A.D. 150) the mention of Anartta and Surāshtra as separate provinces subject to the Pahlava viceroy of Junāgadh agrees with the view that Anartta was part of Gujarat close to Kāthiāvādi. In some Purānas Anartta appears as the name of the whole province including Surāshtra, with its capital at the well known shrine of Dwārikā. In other passages Dwārikā and Prabhās are both mentioned as in Surāshtra which would seem to show that Surāshtra was then part of Anartta as Kāthiāvādi is now part of Gujarat.

Surāshtra.

Surāshtra the land of the Sus, afterwards Sanskritized into Saurāshtra the Goodly Land, preserves its name in Sorath the southern part of Kāthiāvādi. The name appears as Surāshtra in the Mahābhārata and Pānini's Ganapātha, in Rudradāman's (A.D. 150) and Skandagupta's (A.D. 456) Gīrnār inscriptions, and in several Valabhi copper-plates. Its Prākṛit form appears as Surathā in the Nāsik inscription of Gotamiputra (A.D. 150) and in later Prākṛit as Suraththa in the Tirthakalpa of Jinaprabhāsuri of the thirteenth or fourteenth century.<sup>4</sup> Its earliest foreign mention is perhaps Strābo's (B.C. 50-A.D. 20) Suraostus and Pliny's (A.D. 70) Oratura.<sup>5</sup> Ptolemy

<sup>1</sup> See Nagarakhandā (Junagadh Edition), 13, 32, 35, 165, 280, 332, 542.

<sup>2</sup> The Alina grants (Indian Antiquary, VII. 73, 77) dated Valabhi 330 and 337 (A.D. 649-656) are both to the same donee who in the A.D. 649 grant is described as originally of Anarttapura and in the A.D. 656 grant as originally of Anandapura.

<sup>3</sup> Gīrnār Kalpa, *Atthi Suraththa vasa Ujjinto ndma pavao rammo*. In the Suraththa district is a lovely mountain named Ujjinto (Gīrnār).

<sup>4</sup> Hamilton and Falconer's Strabo, II. 252-253; Pliny's Natural History, VI. 20.

the great Egyptian geographer (A.D. 150) and the Greek author of the *Periplus* (A.D. 210) both call it *Surastrene*.<sup>1</sup> The Chinese pilgrim Hsien Tsiang (A.D. 600-610) mentions *Valabhi* then large and famous and *Surāshtra* as separate kingdoms.<sup>2</sup>

## Chapter II.

ANCIENT  
DIVISIONS.

Lāṭa.

*Lāṭa* is South Gujarāt from the Mahi to the *Tāpti*. The name *Lāṭa* does not appear to be Sanskrit. It has not been found in the *Mahābhārata* or other old Sanskrit works, or in the cave or other inscriptions before the third century A.D., probably because the *Parānas* include in *Aparānta* the whole western seaboard south of the *Narbada* as far as *Goa*. Still the name *Lāṭa* is old. *Ptolemy* (A.D. 150) uses the form *Larike*,<sup>3</sup> apparently from the Sanskrit *Lāṭaka*. *Vātsyāyana* in his *Kāma-Sūtra* of the third century A.D. calls it *Lāṭa*, describes it as situated to the west of *Mālwa*; and gives an account of several of the customs of its people.<sup>4</sup> In Sanskrit writings and inscriptions later than the third century the name is frequently found. In the sixth century the great astronomer *Varāhamihira* mentions the country of *Lāṭa*, and the name also appears as *Lāṭa* in an *Ajanta* and in a *Mandasor* inscription of the fifth century.<sup>5</sup> It is common in the later inscriptions (A.D. 700-1200) of the *Chālukya* *Gurjara* and *Rāshtrakūṭa* kings<sup>6</sup> as well as in the writings of Arab travellers and historians between the eighth and twelfth centuries.<sup>7</sup>

The name *Lāṭa* appears to be derived from some local tribe, perhaps the *Lattas*, who, as *r* and *l* are commonly used for each other, may possibly be the well known *Rāshtrakūṭas* since their great king *Amoghavarsha* (A.D. 851-871) calls the name of the dynasty *Ratta*. *Lattalura* the original city of the *Rattas* of *Saundatti* and *Belgaum* may have been in *Lāṭa* and may have given its name to the country and to the dynasty.<sup>8</sup> In this connection it is interesting to note that the country between *Broach* and *Dhūr* in *Mālwa* in which are the towns of *Bāgh* and *Tānda* is still called *Rāṭha*.

<sup>1</sup> *Bertrius' Ptolemy*, VII. 1. *McCindile's Periplus*, 113. The *Periplus* details regarding *Indo-Skythia*, *Surastrene*, and *Ujjain* are in agreement with the late date (A.D. 247) which *Reinud* (*Indian Antiquary* of Dec. 1879 pp. 330-338) and *Burnell* (*S. Ind. Pal.* 47 note 3) assign to its author.

<sup>2</sup> *Hsien Tsiang's Valabhi kingdom* was probably the same as the modern *Gohil-vāḍa*, which *Jinaprabhasa*, a *Chia* *strunjava-kalpa* calls the *Vallāka-Vāḍa*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ptolemy*, VII. 1.

<sup>4</sup> *Vātsyāyana Sūtra*, Chap. II.

<sup>5</sup> *Arch. Sur. of Western India*, IV. 127. The *Mandasor* inscription (A.D. 437-38) mentions silk weavers from *Lāṭavishaya*. *Fleet's Corpus Ins. Ind.* III. 80. The writer (*Iditto*, 81) describes *Lāṭa* as green-hilled, pleasing with choice flower-burdened trees, with temples *chūras* and assembly halls of the gods.

<sup>6</sup> *Ind. Ant.* XIII 157, 158, 163, 180, 188, 196, 199, 201.

<sup>7</sup> *Elliot's History*, I. 378.

<sup>8</sup> Compare *Lassen* in *Ind. Ant.* XIV. 325.

## CHAPTER III.

## LEGENDS.

## Chapter III.

## LEGENDS.

Anartta the First  
Purānic King of  
Gujarat.

THE oldest Purānic legend regarding Gujarat appears to be that of the holy king Anartta son of Saryāti and grandson of Manu. Anartta had a son named Revata, who from his capital at Kuśāsthali or Dwārikā governed the country called Anartta. Revata had a hundred sons of whom the eldest was named Raivata or Kakudmi. Raivata had a daughter named Revati who was married to Baladeva of Kuśāsthali or Dwārikā, the elder brother of Krishna. Regarding Revati's marriage with Baladeva, the Purānic legends tell that Raivata went with his daughter to Brahmā in Brahma-loka to take his advice to whom he should give the girl in marriage. When Raivata arrived Brahmā was listening to music. As soon as the music was over Raivata asked Brahmā to find the girl a proper bridegroom. Brahmā told Raivata that during the time he had been waiting his kingdom had passed away, and that he had better marry his daughter to Baladeva, born of Vishnu, who was now ruler of Dwārikā.<sup>1</sup> This story suggests that Raivata son of Anartta lost his kingdom and fled perhaps by sea. That after some time during which the Yādavas established themselves in the country, Raivata, called a son of Revata but probably a descendant as his proper name is Kakudmi, returned to his old territory and gave his daughter in marriage to one of the reigning Yādava dynasty, the Yādavas taking the girl as representing the dynasty that had preceded them. The story about Brahmā and the passing of ages seems invented to explain the long period that elapsed between the flight and the return.

The Yādavas  
in Dwārikā.

The next Purānic legends relate to the establishment of the Yādava kingdom at Dwārikā. The founder and namegiver of the Yādava dynasty was Yadu of whose family the Purānas give very detailed information. The family seems to have split into several branches each taking its name from some prominent member, the chief of them being Vrishni, Kukkura, Bhoja, Śātvata, Audhaka, Madhu, Surasena, and Daśārha. Śātvata was thirty-seventh from Yadu and in his branch were born Devaki and Vasudeva, the parents of the great Yādava hero and god Krishna. It was in Krishna's time that the Yādavas had to leave their capital Mathurā and come to Dwārikā. This was the result of a joint invasion of Mathurā on one side by a

<sup>1</sup> The Vishnu Purāna (Anśa iv. Chap. i. Verse 19 to Chap. ii. Verse 2) gives the longest account of the legend. The Bhāgavata Purāna (Skanda ix. Chap. iii. Verse 16-36) gives almost the same account. The Matsya Purāna (Chap. xii. Verse 22-24) dismisses the story in two verses. See also Harivansha, X.

legendary Deccan hero Kálavāna and on the other by Jarásandha the powerful king of Magadha or Behar, who, to avenge the death of his brother-in-law<sup>1</sup> Kansa killed by Krishna in fulfilment of a prophecy, is said to have invaded the Yádava territory eighteen times.

According to the story Kálavāna followed the fugitive Krishna and his companions as far as Suráshtra where in a mountain cave he was burnt by fire from the eye of the sleeping sage Muchakunda whom he had roused believing him to be his enemy Krishna. According to the Harivansa the fugitive Yádavas quitting Mathurá went to the Sindhu country and there established the city of Dwáriká on a convenient site on the sea shore making it their residence.<sup>2</sup> Local tradition says that the Yádavas conquered this part of the country by defeating the demons who held it.

The leading Yádava chief in Dwáriká was Ugrasena, and Ugrasena's three chief supporters were the families of Yádu, Bhoja, and Andhaka.. As the entire peninsula of Káthiáwáda was subject to them the Yádavas used often to make pleasure excursions and pilgrimages to Prabhás and Gírnár. Krishna and Baladeva though not yet rulers held high positions and took part in almost all important matters. They were in specially close alliance with their paternal aunt's sons the Pándava brothers, kings of Hastinápura or Delhi. Of the two sets of cousins Krishna and Arjuna were on terms of the closest intimacy. Of one of Arjuna's visits to Káthiáwáda the Mahábhárata gives the following details: 'Arjuna after having visited other holy places arrived in Aparánta (the western seaboard) whence he went to Prabhás. Hearing of his arrival Krishna marched to Prabhás and gave Arjuna a hearty welcome. From Prabhás they came together to the Raivataka hill which Krishna had decorated and where he entertained his guest with music and dancing. From Gírnár they went to Dwáriká driving in a golden car. The city was adorned in honour of Arjuna; the streets were thronged with multitudes; and the members of the Vrishni, Bhoja, and Andhaka families met to honour Krishna's guest.'<sup>3</sup>

Some time after, against his elder brother Baladeva's desire, Krishna helped Arjuna to carry off Krishna's sister Subhadrá, with whom Arjuna had fallen in love at a fair in Gírnár of which the Mahábhárata gives the following description: 'A gathering of the Yádavas chiefly the Vrishnis and Andhakas took place near Raivataka. The hill and the country round were rich with fine rows of fruit trees and large mansions. There was much dancing singing and music. The princes of the Vrishni family were in handsome carriages glistening with gold. Hundreds and thousands of the people of Junágadh with their families attended on foot and in vehicles of various kinds. Baladeva with his wife Revati moved about attended by many Gandharyas. Ugrasena was there with his thousand queens and musicians. Sámha and Pradyumna attended

<sup>1</sup> Compare Mahábh. II. 13,594ff. Jarásandha's sisters Asti and Prápti were married to Kansa.

<sup>2</sup> Hari-vansa, XXXV. - CXII.    <sup>3</sup> Mahábhárata Ádiparva, chapa, 218 - 221.

## Chapter III.

## LEGENDS.

## The Yádas.

in holiday attire and looked like gods. Many Yádas and others were also present with their wives and musicians.'

Some time after this, gathering Subhadrá came to Gírnár to worship and Arjuna carried her off. Eventually Vasudeva and Baladeva consented and the runaways were married with due ceremony. The large fair still held in Mágh (February - March) in the west Gírnár valley near the modern temple of Bhavanáth is perhaps a relic of this great Yáda fair.

The Yáda occupation of Dwáriká was not free from trouble. When Krishna was at Hastinápura on the occasion of the Rájasúya sacrifice performed by Yudhishtíra, Sálva king of Mrittikávati in the country of Saubha led an army against Dwáriká. He slew many of the Dwáriká garrison, plundered the city and withdrew unimpeded. On his return Krishna learning of Sálva's invasion led an army against Sálva. The chiefs met near the sea shore and in a pitched battle Sálva was defeated and killed.<sup>1</sup> Family feuds brought Yáda supremacy in Dwáriká to a disastrous end. The final family struggle is said to have happened in the thirty-sixth year after the war of the Mahábhárata, somewhere on the south coast of Káthiáwáda near Prabhás or Somnáth Pátan the great place of Bráhmanical pilgrimage. On the occasion of an eclipse, in obedience to a proclamation issued by Krishna, the Yádas and their families went from Dwáriká to Prabhás in state well furnished with dainties, animal food, and strong drink. One day on the sea shore the leading Yáda chiefs heated with wine began to dispute. They passed from words to blows. Krishna armed with an iron rod<sup>2</sup> struck every one he met, not even sparing his own sons. Many of the chiefs were killed. Baladeva fled to die in the forests and Krishna was slain by a hunter who mistook him for a deer. When he saw trouble was brewing Krishna had sent for Arjuna. Arjuna arrived to find Dwáriká desolate. Soon after Arjuna's arrival Vasudeva died and Arjuna performed the funeral ceremonies of Vasudeva Baladeva and Krishna whose bodies he succeeded in recovering. When the funeral rites were completed Arjuna started for Indraprastha in Upper India with the few that were left of the Yáda families,

<sup>1</sup> Mahábhárata Vánaparva, Chap. xiv. - xxii. Skanda x. Mrittikávati the capital of Sálva cannot be identified. The name of the country sounds like S'vabhra in Rudradáman's Gírnár inscription, which is apparently part of Charotar or South Ahmadabad. A trace of the old word perhaps remains in the river Sábhamati the modern Sábarnati. The fact that Sálva passed from Mrittikávati along the sea shore would seem to show that part of the seaboard south of the Mahi was included in Sálva's territory. Dr. Buhler (Ind. Ant. VII 263) described Pandit Bhagvanlál's reading of S'vabhra as a bold conjecture. A further examination of the original convinced the Pandit that S'vabhra was the right reading.

<sup>2</sup> The following is the legend of Krishna's iron nail. Certain Yáda youths hoping to raise a laugh at the expense of Vivámitra and other sages who had come to Dwáriká presented to them Sámbar Krishna's son dressed as a woman big with child. The lads asked the sages to foretell to what the woman would give birth. The sages replied: 'The woman will give birth to an iron rod which will destroy the Yáda race.' Obedient to the sage's prophecy Sámbar produced an iron rod. To avoid the ill effects of the prophecy king Ugrasena had the rod ground to powder and cast the powder into the sea. The powder grew into the grass called *eraka* *Typha elephantina*. It was this grass which Krishna plucked in his rage and which in his hands turned into an iron nail. This *eraka* grass grows freely near the mouth of the Hiranya river of Prabhás.

chiefly women. On the way in his passage through the Panchanada<sup>1</sup> or Panjab a body of Abhīras attacked Arjuna with sticks and took several of Krishna's wives and the widows of the Andhaka Yādava chiefs. After Arjuna left it the deserted Dwārikā was swallowed by the sea.<sup>2</sup>

Chapter III.  
Lugana.  
The Yādava.

<sup>1</sup> This suggests that as in early times the Great Ran was hard to cross the way from Kathiāvāda to Indraprastha or Delhi was by Kachch and Sindh and from Sindh by Multān and the Lower Panjab. According to the Bhāgavata Purāna Krishna took the same route when he first came from Indraprastha to Dwārikā. On the other hand these details may support the view that the head quarters of the historic Krishna were in the Panjab.

<sup>2</sup> So far as is known neither Gujarāt nor Kathiāvāda contains any record older than the Girnār rock inscription of about B.C. 240: The great Kshatrapa Rudra Dāman's (A.D. 139) inscription on the same rock has a reference to the Maurya Rāja Chandragupta about B.C. 300. No local sign of Krishna or of his Yādavas remains.

In the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, XX XXI. and XXII. Mr. Hewitt has recently attempted to trace the history of Western India back to B.C. 3000 perhaps to as early as B.C. 6000. The evidence which makes so far-reaching a past probable is the discovery of Indian indigo and muslin in Egyptian tombs of about B.C. 1700 (J. R. A. S. XX 206), and the proof that a trade in teak and in Sindhu or Indian muslins existed between Western India and the Euphrates mouth as far back as B.C. 3000 or even B.C. 4000 (J. R. A. S. XX. 33, 337 and XXI. 204). According to Mr. Hewitt the evidence of the Hindu calendar carries the historical past of India to still remoter ages. The moon mansions and certain other details of the Hindu calendar seem to point to the Euphrates valley as the home of Hindu lunar astronomy. As in the Euphrates valley inscriptions of the Semitic king Argon of Sippara prove that in B.C. 3750 moon-worship was already antiquated (J. R. A. S. XXI. 326), and as the procession of the equinoxes points to about B.C. 4700 as the date of the introduction of the sun zodiac (Sayce's Hibbert Lectures, 398) the system\* of lunar mansions and months, if it came from the Euphrates valley, must have reached India before B.C. 4700. The trade records of the black-headed perhaps Dravidian-speaking Sumris of the Euphrates mouth prove so close relations with the peninsula of Sinai and Egypt as to make a similar connection with Western India probable as far back as B.C. 6000. (Compare Sayce's Hibbert Lectures, 33 J. R. A. S. XXI 326.) Of the races of whose presence in Gujarāt and the neighbourhood Mr. Hewitt finds traces the earliest is the same black-headed moon-worshipping Sumri (Ditto). Next from Susiana in south-east Persia, the possessors of a lunar-solar calendar and therefore not later than B.C. 4700 (J. R. A. S. XXI. 323, 327, 330), the trading Sus or Saus, in Hindu books known as Suvarnas, entered India by way of Baluchistan and settled at Pātāla in South Sindh. (J. R. A. S. XXI. 209.) With or soon after the Sus came from the north the cattle-herding sun-worshipping Sakas (J. R. A. S. XXII 332). The Sus and Sakas passed south and together settled in Surashtra and West Gujarāt. At a date which partly from evidence connected with the early Vedic hymns (J. R. A. S. XXII 466) partly from the early Babylonian use of the Sanskrit Sindhu for India (J. R. A. S. XXI. 309), Mr. Hewitt holds cannot be later than B.C. 3500 northern Aryas entered Gujarāt and mixing with the Sus and Sakas as both traders and soldiers carried the use of Sanskrit southward (J. R. A. S. XX 313). Of other races who held sway in Gujarāt the earliest, perhaps about B.C. 2000 since their power was shattered by Parāśurāma long before Mahābhārata times (J. R. A. S. XXI. 209-266), were the snake-worshipping perhaps Accadian (Ditto, 265) Huhayas now represented by the Gond and the Hahayas vassals the Vaidarbhas (Ditto, 209) a connection which is supported by trustworthy Central Indian Uraon or Gond tradition that they once held Gujarāt (Elliott's Races, N.W.P., I. 154). Next to the Hahayas and like them earlier than the Mahābhārata (say B.C. 1500-2000) Mr. Hewitt would place the widespread un-Aryan Bhārats or Bhārgava (J. R. A. S. XXI. 279-282, 286) the conquerors of the Hahayas (Ditto, 288). In early Mahābhārata times (say between B.C. 1000 and 800, Ditto 197 and 203) the Bhārats were overcome by the very mixed race of the Bhojas and of Krishna's followers the Vrishnis (Ditto 270). Perhaps about the same time the chariot-driving Gandharvas of Cutch (Ditto, 273) joined the Sus and Sakas, together passed east to Kosala beyond Benares, and were there established in strength at the time of Gautama Buddha (B.C. 530) (Ditto). To the later Mahābhārata times, perhaps about B.C. 400 (Ditto, 197-271), Mr. Hewitt would assign the entrance into Gujarāt of the Abhīras or Ahirs whom he identifies with the northern or

**Chapter III.****LEGENDS.****The Yádavas.**

**Skythian Abáras.** Mr. Hewitt finds the following places in Gujarát associated with those early races. Pátála in South Sindh he (J. R. A. S. XXI. 209) considers the head-quarters of the Nus and Sakas. Another Su capital Prágjyotisha which is generally allotted to Bengal he would (XXI. 206) identify with Broach. With the Vaidarbhas the vassals of the Haihayas he associates Surparika, that is Sopara near Bassein, which he identifies (Ditto, 206) with the modern Surat on the Tapti. He connects (Ditto, 266) the Baroda river Visvámitra and Vaidurga the hill Pávágad with the same tribe. He finds a trace of the Bhárats in Baroda and in Bharati an old name of the river Mahi (Ditto, 286) and of the same race under their name Bhárgav in Broach (Ditto, 289). The traditional connection of the Bhojas with Dwárka is well established. Finally Kárpásika a Mahábhárate name for the shore of the Gulf of Cambay (Ditto, 209) may be connected with Kárván on the Narbada, about twenty miles above Broach one of the holiest Shaiv places in India. Though objection may be taken to certain of Mr. Hewitt's identifications of Gujarát places, and also to the extreme antiquity he would assign to the trade between India and the west and to the introduction of the system of lunar mansions, his comparison of sacred Hindu books with the calendar and ritual of early Babylonia is of much interest.

## CHAPTER IV.

### MAURYAN AND GREEK RULE

(B.C. 319-100.)

AFTER the destruction of the Yādavas a long blank occurs in the traditional history of Gujarāt. It is probable that from its seaboard position, for trade and other purposes, many foreigners settled in Kāthiāvāda and South Gujarāt; and that it is because of the foreign element that the Hindu Dharmaśāstras consider Gujarāt a Mlechchha country and forbid visits to it except on pilgrimage.<sup>1</sup> The fact also that Aśoka (B.C. 230) the great Mauryan king and propagator of Buddhism chose, among the Buddhist Theras sent to various parts of his kingdom, a Yavana Thera named Dhamma-rakkhita as evangelist for the western seaboard,<sup>2</sup> possibly indicates a preponderating foreign element in these parts. It is further possible that these foreign settlers may have been rulers. In spite of these possibilities we have no traditions between the fall of the Yādavas and the rise of the Mauryas in B.C. 319.

Gujarāt history dates from the rule of the Mauryan dynasty, the only early Indian dynasty the record of whose rule has been preserved in the writings of the Brāhmanas, the Buddhists, and the Jains. This fulness of reference to the Mauryas admits of easy explanation. The Mauryas were a very powerful dynasty whose territory extended over the greater part of India. Again under Mauryan rule Buddhism was so actively propagated that the rulers made it their state religion, waging bloody wars, even revolutionizing many parts of the empire to secure its spread. Further the Mauryas were beneficent rulers and had also honourable alliances with foreign, especially with Greek and Egyptian, kings. These causes combined to make the Mauryans a most powerful and well remembered dynasty.

Inscriptions give reason to believe that the supremacy of Chandragupta, the founder of the Mauryan dynasty (B.C. 319), extended over Gujarāt. According to Rudradāman's inscription (A.D. 150) on the great edict rock at Gīrnār in Kāthiāvāda, a lake called Sudarśana<sup>3</sup> near the edict rock was originally made by Pushyagupta of the Vaiśya caste, who is described as a brother-in-law of the Mauryan king Chandragupta.<sup>4</sup> The language of this inscription leaves no doubt that Chandragupta's sway extended over

#### Chapter IV.

THE MAURYAS,  
B.C. 319-197.

<sup>1</sup> Mahābhārata Anuśāsanaparvan 2158-9 mentions Līṭas among Kshatriya tribes who have become outcasts from seeing no Brāhmanas. Again, Chap. VII. 72. ib. couples (J. Bl. A. Soc. VI. (1) 387) thieves Bāhika; and robber Surāshtras. Compare Vishnu Purāna, II. 37, where the Yavanas are placed to the west of Bhīratavarsha and also J. R. A. S. (N. S.) IV. 468; and Brockhaus' Prabodha Chandrolaya, 87. The *śloka* referred to in the text runs: He who goes to Anga, Vanga, Kalinga, Saurāshtra, or Magadha unless it be for a pilgrimage deserves to go through a fresh purification.

<sup>2</sup> Turnour's Mahāvanso, 71.

<sup>3</sup> Bombay Branch Royal Asiatic Society Journal, 1891, page 47.

<sup>4</sup> It is interesting to note that Chandragupta married a Vaiśya lady. Similarly while at Sānchi on his way to Ujjain Aśoka married Devī, the daughter of a Setthi. Turnour's Mahāvanso, 76; Cunningham's Bhilsa Topes, 95.

**Chapter IV.**  
**THE MAURYAS**  
 B.C. 319-197.

Girnár as Pushyagupta is simply called a Vaiśya and a brother-in-law of king Chandragupta and has no royal attribute, particulars which tend to show that he was a local governor subordinate to king Chandragupta. The same inscription<sup>1</sup> states that in the time of Aśoka (B.C. 250) his officer Yavanarāja-Tusháspa adorned the same Sudarśana lake with conduits. This would seem to prove the continuance of Mauryan rule in Girnár for three generations from Chandragupta to Aśoka. Tusháspa is called Yavanarāja. The use of the term *rāja* would seem to show that, unlike Chandragupta's Vaiśya governor Pushyagupta, Tusháspa was a dignitary of high rank and noble family. That he is called Yavanarāja does not prove Tusháspa was a Greek, though for Greeks alone Yavana is the proper term. The name Tusháspa rather suggests a Persian origin from its close likeness in formation to Kershásp, a name still current among Bombay Pársis. Evidence from other sources proves that Aśoka held complete sway over Málwa, Gujarát, and the Konkan coast. All the rock edicts of Aśoka hitherto traced have been found on the confines of his great empire. On the north-west at Kapurdighi and at Shahazgarhi in the Baktro-Páli character; in the north north-west at Kálsi, in the east at Dhauli and Jauháda; in the west at Girnár and Sopára, and in the south in Maisur all in Maurya characters. The Girnár and Sopára edicts leave no doubt that the Gujarát, Káthiáváda, and North Konkan seaboard was in Aśoka's possession. The fact that an inland ruler holds the coast implies his supremacy over the intervening country. Further it is known that Aśoka was viceroy of Málwa in the time of his father and that after his father's death he was sovereign of Málwa. The easy route from Mandasor (better known as Dasapur) to Dohad has always secured a close connection between Málwa and Gujarát. South Gujarát lies at the mercy of any invader entering by Dohad and the conquest of Káthiáváda on one side and of Upper Gujarát on the other might follow in detail. As we know that Káthiáváda and South Gujarát as far as Sopára were held by Aśoka it is not improbable that Upper Gujarát also owned his sway. The Maurya capital of Gujarát seems to have been Girinagara or Junágadh in Central Káthiáváda, whose strong hill fort dominating the rich province of Sorath and whose lofty hills a centre of worship and a defence and retreat from invaders combined to secure for Junágadh its continuance as capital under the Kshatrapas (A.D. 100-380) and their successors the Guptas (A.D. 380-460). The southern capital of the Mauryas seems to have been Sopára near Bassein in a rich country with a good and safe harbour for small vessels, probably in those times the chief centre of the Konkan and South Gujarát trade.

Buddhist and Jain records agree that Aśoka was succeeded, not by his son Kunála who was blind, but by his grandsons Daśaratha and Samprati. The Barábar hill near Gayá has caves made by Aśoka and bearing his inscriptions; and close to Barábar is the

<sup>1</sup> Probably from some mistake of the graver's the text of the inscription अशोकस्य देववराजेन yields no meaning. Some word for governor or officer is apparently meant.

Nāgarjuna hill with caves made by Daśaratha also bearing his inscriptions. In one of these inscriptions the remark occurs that one of the Barabar caves was made by Daśaratha 'installed immediately after.' As the caves in the neighbouring hill must have been well known to have been made by Aśoka this 'after' may mean after Aśoka, or the 'after' may refer solely to the sequence between Daśaratha's installation and his excavation of the cave. In any case it is probable that Daśaratha was Aśoka's successor. Jaina records pass over Daśaratha and say that Aśoka was succeeded by his grandson Samprati the son of Kunāla. In the matter of the propagation of the Jain faith, Jain records speak as highly of Samprati as Buddhist records speak of Aśoka.<sup>1</sup> Almost all old Jain temples or monuments, whose builders are unknown, are ascribed to Samprati who is said to have built thousands of temples as Aśoka is said to have raised thousands of stupas. In his Pātaliputra-kalpa Jānaprabhāsuri the well known Jaina Āchārya and writer gives a number of legendary and other stories of Pātaliputra. Comparing Samprati with Aśoka in respect of the propagation of the faith in non-Aryan countries the Āchārya writes: 'In Pātaliputra flourished the great king Samprati son of Kunāla lord of Bharata with its three continents, the great Arhanta who established *rikāras* for Śramanas even in non-Aryan countries.'<sup>2</sup> It would appear from this that after Aśoka the Mauryan empire may have been divided into two, Daśaratha ruling Eastern India, and Samprati, whom Jaina records specially mention as king of Ujjain, ruling Western India, where the Jain sect is specially strong. Though we have no specific information on the point, it is probable, especially as he held Mālwa, that during the reign of Samprati Gujārāt remained under Mauryan sway. With Samprati Mauryan rule in Gujārāt seems to end. In later times (A.D. 500) traces of Mauryan chiefs appear in Mālwa and in the North Konkan. The available details will be given in another chapter.

After Samprati, whose reign ended about B.C. 197, a blank of seventeen years occurs in Gujārāt history. The next available information shows traces of Baktrian-Greek sway over parts of Gujārāt. In his description of Surastrene or Surashtra the author of the Periplus (A.D. 240) says: 'In this part there are preserved even to this day memorials of the expedition of Alexander, old temples, foundations of camps, and large wells.'<sup>3</sup> As Alexander did not

<sup>1</sup> Hemachandra's Parisiṣṭa Parva Merutunga's Vichārāśreni.

<sup>2</sup> The text is 'Kundlāsānustrikhantubharatādhipah Paramarhanto Andryanāśeśhvapi Pravartitāśramanā-rikārah Samprati Mahārāja Sohābhavarat' meaning 'He was the great king Samprati son of Kunāla, sovereign of India of three continents, the great saint who had started monasteries for Jain priests even in non-Aryan countries.'

<sup>3</sup> McOrindle's Periplus, 115. The author of the Periplus calls the capital of Surastrene Minnagara. Pandit Bhagvanlāl believed Minnagara to be a miswriting of Girinagara the form used for Girnār in Budradaman's (A.D. 150) rock inscription at Girnār (Fleet's Corpus Ins. Ind. III. 57) and by Varāha-Mihira (A.D. 570) (Bṛhat-Saṃhitā, XIV. 11). The mention of a Minagara in Ptolemy inland from Sorath and Monoglossum or Mangrol suggests that either Girnār or Junagadh was also known as Minagara either after the Mins or after Mēn, that is Menander. At the same time it is possible that Ptolemy's Agrinagara though much out of place may be Girinagara and that Ptolemy's Minagara in the direction of Ujjain may be Mandasor.

Chapter IV.  
THE GREEKS.  
B.C. 180-100.

come so far south as Káthiáváda and as after Alexander's departure the Mauryas held Káthiáváda till about B.C. 197, it may be suggested that the temples, camps and wells referred to by the author of the *Periplus* were not memorials of the expedition of Alexander but remains of later Baktrian-Greek supremacy.

Demetrius, whom Justin calls the king of the Indians, is believed to have reigned from B.C. 190 to B.C. 165.<sup>1</sup> On the authority of Apollodorus of Artamita Strabo (B.C. 50 - A.D. 20) names two Baktrian-Greek rulers who seem to have advanced far into inland India. He says: 'The Greeks who occasioned the revolt of Baktria (from Syria B.C. 256) were so powerful by the fertility and advantages of the country that they became masters of Ariana and India. . . . The chiefs, particularly Menander, conquered more nations than Alexander. These conquests were achieved partly by Menander and partly by Demetrius son of Euthydemus king of the Baktrians. They got possession not only of Pattalene but of the kingdoms of Saraostus and Sigerdis, which constitute the remainder of the coast.'<sup>2</sup> Pattalene is generally believed to be the old city of Pátál in Sindh (the modern Haidarábád), while the subsequent mention of Saraostus and Sigerdis as kingdoms which constitute the remainder of the coast, leaves almost no doubt that Saraostus is Suráshtra and Sigerdis is Sagaradvípa or Cutch. The joint mention of Menander (B.C. 126) and Demetrius (B.C. 190) may mean that Demetrius advanced into inland India to a certain point and that Menander passed further and took Sindh, Cutch, and Káthiáváda. The discovery in Cutch and Káthiáváda of coins of Baktrian kings supports the statements of Justin and Strabo. Dr. Bhagvanlal's collecting of coins in Káthiáváda and Gujarát during nearly twenty-five years brought to light among Baktrian-Greek coins an obolus of Eucratides (B.C. 180-155), a few drachmæ of Menander (B.C. 126-110), many drachmæ and copper coins of Apollodotus (B.C. 110-100), but none of Demetrius. Eucratides was a contemporary of Demetrius. Still, as Eucratides became king of Baktria after Demetrius, his conquests, according to Strabo of a thousand cities to the east of the Indus, must be later than those of Demetrius.

As his coins are found in Káthiáváda Eucratides may either have advanced into Káthiáváda or the province may have come under his sway as lord of the neighbouring country of Sindh. Whether or not Eucratides conquered the province, he is the earliest Baktrian-Greek king whose coins have been found in Káthiáváda and Gujarát. The fact that the coins of Eucratides have been found in different parts of Káthiáváda and at different times seems to show that they were the currency of the province and were not merely imported either for trade or for ornament. It is to be noticed that these coins are all of the smallest value of the numerous coins issued by Eucratides. This may be explained by the fact that these small

<sup>1</sup> Justin's date is probably about A.D. 250. His work is a summary of the History of Trogus Pompeius about A.D. 1. Watson's Justin, 277; Wilson's Ariana Antiqua, 231.

<sup>2</sup> Hamilton and Falconer's Strabo, II. 252-253.

coins were introduced by Eucratides into Kāthiāvāḍa to be in keeping with the existing local coinage. The local silver coins in use before the time of Eucratides are very small, weighing five to seven grains, and bear the Buddhist symbols of the Svastika, the Trident, and the Wheel. Another variety has been found weighing about four grains with a misshapen elephant on the obverse and something like a circle on the reverse.<sup>1</sup> It was probably to replace this poor currency that Eucratides introduced his smallest obolus of less weight but better workmanship.

The end of the reign of Eucratides is not fixed with certainty: it is believed to be about B.C. 155.<sup>2</sup> For the two Baktrian-Greek kings Menander and Apollodotus who ruled in Kāthiāvāḍa after Eucratides, better sources of information are available. As already noticed Strabo (A.D. 20) mentions that Menander's conquests (B.C. 120) included Cutch and Surāshtra.<sup>3</sup> And the author of the *Periplus* (A.D. 240) writes: 'Up to the present day old drachmæ bearing the Greek inscriptions of Apollodotus and Menander are current in Barugaza (Broach).'<sup>4</sup> Menander's silver drachmæ have been found in Kāthiāvāḍa and Southern Gujarāt.<sup>5</sup> Though their number is small Menander's coins are comparatively less scarce than those of the earliest Kshatrapās Nahapāna and Chashtana (A.D. 100-140). The distribution of Menander's coins suggests he was the first Baktrian-Greek king who resided in these parts and that the monuments of Alexander's times, camps, temples and wells, mentioned by the author of the *Periplus*<sup>6</sup> were camps of Menander in Surāshtra. Wilson and Rochette have supposed Apollodotus to be the son and successor of Menander,<sup>7</sup> while General Cunningham believes Apollodotus to be the predecessor of Menander.<sup>8</sup> Inferences from the coins of these two kings found in Gujarāt and Kāthiāvāḍa support the view that Apollodotus was the successor of Menander. The coins of Apollodotus are found in much larger numbers than those of Menander and the workmanship of Apollodotus' coins appears to be of a gradually declining style. In the later coins the legend is at times undecipherable. It appears from this that for some time after Apollodotus until Nahapāna's (A.D. 100) coins came into use, the chief local currency was debased coins struck after the type of the coins of Apollodotus. Their use as the type of coinage generally happens to the coins of the last king of a dynasty. The statement by the author of the *Periplus* that in his time (A.D. 240) the old drachmæ of Apollodotus and Menander were

<sup>1</sup> These small local coins which were found in Hālār Gondal were presented to the Bombay Asiatic Society by the Political Agent of Kāthiāwār and are in the Society's cabinet. Dr. Bhagvanlal found the two elephant coins in Junāgadh.

<sup>2</sup> Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, 268. Gardner's *British Museum Catalogue*, 26, brings Eucratides to after B.C. 162.

<sup>3</sup> See above page 15.

<sup>4</sup> McCrindle's *Periplus*, 121.

<sup>5</sup> The Bombay Asiatic Society possesses some specimens of these coins of bad workmanship found near Broach with the legend incorrect, probably struck by some local governor of Menander. Two were also found in Junāgadh.

<sup>6</sup> McCrindle's *Periplus*, 115.

<sup>7</sup> *Numismatic Chronicle* (New Series), X, 80; Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, 268.

<sup>8</sup> *Numismatic Chronicle* (New Series), X, 80.

**Chapter IV.**  
**THE GREEKS.**  
**N.C. 180-100.**

current in Barugaza, seems to show that these drachmæ continued to circulate in Gujarât along with the coins of the Western Kshatrapas. The mention of Apollodotus before Menander by the author of the Periplus may either be accidental, or it may be due to the fact that when the author wrote fewer coins of Menander than of Apollodotus were in circulation.

The silver coins both of Menander and Apollodotus found in Gujarât and Kâthiâvâda are of only one variety, round drachmæ. The reason that of their numerous large coins, tetradrachmæ didrachmæ and others, drachmæ alone have been found in Gujarât, is probably the reason suggested for the introduction of the obolus of Eucratides, namely that the existing local currency was so poor that coins of small value could alone circulate. Still the fact that drachmæ came into use implies some improvement in the currency, chiefly in size. The drachmæ of both the kings are alike. The obverse of Menander's coins has in the middle a helmeted bust of the king and round it the Greek legend ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡΗΣ ΜΕΝΑΝΔΡΟΥ Of the king the Saviour Menander. On the reverse is the figure of 'Athens' Promachos surrounded by the Baktro-Pâli legend Mahârâjasa Trâdâtasa Menandrasa that is Of the Great king the Saviour Menander, and a monogram.<sup>1</sup> The drachmæ of Apollodotus have on the obverse a bust with bare filleted head surrounded by the legend ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡΗΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΟΔΟΤΟΥ Of the king the Saviour Apollodotus. Except in the legend the reverse with two varieties of monogram<sup>2</sup> is the same as the reverse of the drachmæ of Menander. The legend in Baktro-Pâli character is Mahârâjasa Râjâtirâjasa Apaladatasa that is Of the Great king the over-king of kings Apaladata. During his twenty-five years of coin-collecting Dr. Bhagvânâlâl failed to secure a single copper coin of Menander either in Gujarât or in Kâthiâvâda. Of the copper coins of Apollodotus a deposit was found in Junâgadh, many of them well preserved.<sup>3</sup> These coins are of two varieties, one square the other round and large. Of the square coin the obverse has a standing Apollo with an arrow in the right hand and on the top and the two sides the Greek legend ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡΗΣ ΚΑΙ ΦΙΛΟΠΑΤΟΡΗΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΟΔΟΤΟΥ that is Of the King Saviour and Fatherlover Apollodotus. On the reverse is the tripod of Apollo with a monogram<sup>4</sup> and the letter *di* in Baktro-Pâli on the left and the legend in Baktro-Pâli characters Mahârâjasa Trâdâtasa Apaladatasa. The round coin has also, on the obverse, a standing Apollo with an arrow in the right hand; behind is the same monogram as in the square coin and all round runs the Greek legend ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡΗΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΟΔΟΤΟΥ. On the reverse is the tripod of Apollo with on its right and left the letters *di* and *ui* in Baktro-Pâli and all round the Baktro-Pâli legend Mahârâjasa Trâdâtasa Apaladatasa.

<sup>1</sup> Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, Plate XXII. Number 41. Gardner's *British Museum Catalogue*, Plate XI. Number 8.

<sup>2</sup> Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, Plate XXII. Number 66, shows one variety of this monogram.

<sup>3</sup> These coins are said to have been found in 1882 by a cultivator in an earthen pot. Two of them were taken for Pandit Bhagvânâlâl and one for Mr. Vajeshankar Gaurishankar Naib Divân of Bhavnagar. The rest disappeared.

<sup>4</sup> *Ariana Antiqua*, Plate XXII. Number 47.

The reason why so few copper coins of Apollodotus have been found in Gujarāt perhaps is that these copper coins were current only in the time of Apollodotus and did not, like his silver drachmæ, continue as the currency of the country with the same or an imitated die. The date of the reign of Apollodotus is not fixed. General Cunningham believes it to be B.C. 165-150,<sup>1</sup> Wilson and Gardner take it to be B.C. 110-100.<sup>2</sup> Though no Indian materials enable us to arrive at any final conclusion regarding this date the fact that Apollodotus' coins continued to be issued long after his time shows that Apollodotus was the last Baktrian-Greek ruler of Gujarāt and Kāthiāvāda. After Apollodotus we find no trace of Baktrian-Greek rule, and no other certain information until the establishment of the Kshatrapas about A.D. 100. The only fact that breaks this blank in Gujarāt history is the discovery of copper coins of a king whose name is not known, but who calls himself Basileus Basileon Soter Megas that is King of Kings the Great Saviour. These coins are found in Kāthiāvāda and Outch as well as in Rājputāna the North-West Provinces and the Kabul valley, a distribution which points to a widespread Indian rule. The suggestion may be offered that this king is one of the leaders of the Yaudheyas whose constitution is said to have been tribal, that is the tribe was ruled by a number of small chiefs who would not be likely to give their names on their coins.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Numismatic Chronicle (New Series), X, 86.

<sup>2</sup> *Ariana Antiqua*, 286, Gardner and Poole's Catalogue of Indian Coins, xxxiii.

<sup>3</sup> Wilson (*Ariana Antiqua*, 332-334) identifies the coins marked Basileus Basileon Soter Megas with a king or dynasty of Indian extraction who reigned between Azes and Kadphises (B.C. 50-25), chiefly in the Panjāb. Gardner (*British Museum Catalogue*, 47) says The Nameless king is probably cotemporary with Abdagases (A.D. 30-50) he may have been a member of the Kadphises dynasty. Cunningham (*Ancient Geography*, 245) places the coins of the tribal Yaudheyas in the first century A.D. The remark of Prinsep (*Jour. Bengal Soc.* VI, 2, 973) that in the Behat group of Buddhist coins some with Baktro-Pāli legends have the name Yaudheya in the margin seems to support the suggestion in the text. But the marked difference between the Stag coins of the Yaudheyas (Thomas' Prinsep, I, Plate V) and the Nameless king's coins (Gardner, Plate XIV. 1-6) tells strongly against the proposed identification. Of the Yaudheyas details are given below.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE KSHATRAPAS

(B.C. 70—A.D. 398.)

#### Chapter V.

THE KSHATRAPAS,  
B.C. 70—A.D. 398.

#### Two Dynasties.

WITH the Kshatrapas (B.C. 70) begins a period of clearer light, and, at the same time, of increased importance, since, for more than three centuries, the Kshatrapas held sway over the greater part of Western India. Till recently this dynasty was known to orientalists as the Sâh dynasty a mistaken reading of the terminal of their names which in some rulers is Simha Lion and in others, as in Rudra Sena (A.D. 203-220) son of Rudra Simha, Sena Army.<sup>1</sup>

The sway of the rulers who affix the title Kshatrâpa to their names extended over two large parts of India, one in the north including the territory from the Kâbul valley to the confluence of the Ganges and the Jamnâ; the other in the west stretching from Ajmir in the north to the North Konkan in the south and from Mâlwa in the east to the Arabian

<sup>1</sup> Journal Bengal Asiatic Society (1835), 681; (1837), 351; (1838), 346; Thomas' Prinsep's Indian Antiquities, I. 425-445, II 84-93; Thomas in Journal Royal Asiatic Society (Old Series), XII. 1-72; Wilson's Ariana Antiqua, 405-413, Journal B. B. R. A. S. VI. 377, VII 392, Burgess' Archaeological Report of Kathiâwar and Kachh, 18-72, Journal B B R. A. S. XII (Proceedings), XXIII.; Indian Antiquary, VI. 43, X 221-227.

The dynasty of the Kshatrapas or Mahâkshatrapas of Saurâshtra was known to Prinsep (J. R. A. S. Bl. VII.-1. (1837), 351) to Thomas (J. R. A. S. F. S. XII. 1-72), and to Newton (Jl B B R. A. S. IX 1-19) as the Sah or Sâh kings. More recently, from the fact that the names of some of them end in Sena or army, the Kshatrapas have been called the Sena kings. The origin of the title Sâh is the ending *sâha*, that is *simha* lion, which belongs to the names of several of the kings. *Sâha* has been read either *sâh* or *sena* because of the practice of omitting from the die vowels which would fall on or above the top line of the legend and also of omitting the short vowel *i* with the following *anusvâra*. Sâh is therefore a true reading of the writing on certain of the coins. That the form Sâh on these coins is not the correct form has been ascertained from stone inscriptions in which freedom from crowding makes possible the complete cutting of the above-line marks. In stone inscriptions the ending is *sâha* lion. See Fleet's Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum, III. 36 note 1. Mr. Fleet (Ditto) seems to suggest that with the proof of the incorrectness of the reading Sâh the evidence that the Kshatrapas were of Indo-Skythian origin ceases. This does not seem to follow. In addition to the Parthian title Kshatrâpa, their northern coinage, and the use of the Śaka (A.D. 78) etc., now accepted as the accession of the great Kushân Kanishka, the evidence in the text shows that the line of Kâthiâvâda Kshatrapas starts from the foreigner Chastâpana (A.D. 130) whose predecessor Nahâpana (A.D. 120) and his Śaka son-in-law Ushavadata are noted in Nâsik inscriptions (Nâsik (azetteer, 538 and 621) as leaders of Śakas, Pâthâvas, and Yavanas. Further as the limits of Ptolemy's (A.D. 150) Indo-Skythia (McCrindle, 136) agree very closely with the limits of the dominions of the then ruling Mahâkshatrâpa Rudradâman (A.D. 150) it follows that Ptolemy or his informant believed Rudradâman to be an Indo-Skythian. There therefore seems no reasonable doubt that the Kshatrapas were foreigners. According to Cunningham (Num. Chron. VIII. 331) they were Śakas who entered Gujarat from Sindh. The fact that the Kushân era (A.D. 78) was not adopted by the first two of the Western Kshatrapas, Chastâpana and Jambudâman, supports the view that they belonged to a wave of northerners earlier than the wave.

in the west. The former may be called the Northern the latter the Western Kshatrapas.

Besides as Kshatrapa, in the Prākṛit legends of coins and in inscriptions the title of these dynasties appears under three forms Chhatrapa,<sup>1</sup> Chhatrava,<sup>2</sup> and Khatapa.<sup>3</sup> All these forms have the same meaning namely Lord or Protector of the warrior-race, the Sanskrit Kshatrapa.<sup>4</sup> It is to be noted that the title Kshatrapa appears nowhere as a title of any king or royal officer within the whole range of Sanskrit literature, or indeed on any inscription, coin, or other record of any Indian dynasty except the Northern and the Western Kshatrapas. According to Prinsep Kshatrapa is a Sanskritized form of Satrapa, a term familiar to the Grecian history of ancient Persia and used for the prefect of a province under the Persian system of government. As Prinsep further observes Satrapa had probably the same meaning in Ariana that Kshatrapa had in Sanskrit, the ruler feeder or patron of the *kshatra* or warrior class, the chief of a warlike tribe or clan.<sup>5</sup> Prinsep further notes the Persian kings were often in need of such chiefs and as they entrusted the chiefs with the government of parts of their dominions the word came to mean a governor. So during the anarchy which prevailed on the Skythian overthrow of Greek rule in Bactria<sup>6</sup> (B.C. 160) several chiefs of Malaya, Pallava, Abhira, Meda, and other predatory tribes came from Bactria to Upper India, and each established for himself a principality or kingdom. Subsequently these chiefs appear to have assumed independent sovereignty. Still though they often call themselves *nijās* or kings with the title Kshatrapa or Mahākshatrapa, if any Baktrian king advanced towards their territories, they were probably ready to acknowledge him as Overlord. Another reason for believing these Kshatrapa chiefs to have been foreigners is that, while the names of the founders of Kshatrapa sovereignty are foreign, their inscriptions and coins show that soon after the establishment of their rule they became converts to one or other form of the Hindu religion and assumed Indian names.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Taxila plate in Journal R. A. S. (New Series), IV. 487; the Baktro-Pāli on Nahapāna's coins also gives the form Chhatrapa.

<sup>2</sup> Chhatrava appears in an unpublished Kshatrapa inscription from Mathurā formerly (1888) in Pandit Bhagvānlāl's possession.

<sup>3</sup> Khatapa appears in the inscription of Nahapāna's minister at Junnar (Bombay Gazetteer, XVIII. Pt. V. 1. 167) and in some coins of the Northern Kshatrapa kings Parauasaba, Rājavalā, and Sudasa found near Mathurā. Prinsep's Indian Antiquities, II. Pl. XLIV. Figs. 12, 20, 21.

<sup>4</sup> Kshatrapāpāṭi Kshatrapah.

<sup>5</sup> Thomas' Prinsep, II. 63 and 64.

<sup>6</sup> Malaya or Malava, Pallava, Abhira, Meda, and Mihira or Mehr appear to be the leading warlike tribes who came to India under these chiefs. These tribes formed the Kshatras whose lords or Kshatrapas these chiefs were.

<sup>7</sup> The explanation of the word Kshatrapa started by Prinsep and accepted by Pandit Bhagvānlāl is of doubtful accuracy. The title is well known in Greek literature in the form *σατραπης*, and in the form Kshatrapāvan occurs (A.D. 480) in connection with the governors of Bactria and Arachosia in the great Behistan inscription of Darius (Rawlinson's Herodotus, I. 329; Spiegel's *Altperische Keilinschriften*, 24-26). "The meaning of Kshatrapāvan in old Persian is not "protector of the Kshatra race" but "protector of the kingdom," for the word *kingdom* occurs in the inscriptions of the Achaemenides with the meaning of "kingdom" or "kingdom" (Spiegel, *Altperische Keilinschriften*, 215). As is well known Satrap was the official title of the ruler of a Persian province. That the name continued in use with the same meaning under the Greek kings of Bactria

## Chapter V.

NORTHERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
70-A.D. 78.

According to inscriptions and coins Northern Kshatrapa rule begins with king Maues about B.C. 70 and ends with the accession of the Kushán king Kanishka about A.D. 78. Maues probably belonged to the Saka tribe of Skythians. If the Maues of the coins may be identified with the Moga of the Taxila plate the date of king Patika in the Taxila plate shows that for about seventy-five years after the death of Maues the date of his accession continued to be the initial year of the dynasty. From their connexion with the Sakas, arriving in India during the reign of the Saka Maues and for nearly three quarters of a century accepting the Saka overlordship, the Kshatrapas, though as noted above their followers were chiefly Malayas, Pallavas, Abhíras, and Medas, appear to have themselves come to be called Sakas and the mention of Saka kings in Puránik and other records seems to refer to them. After lasting for about 150 years the rule of the Northern Kshatrapas seems to have merged in the empire of the great Kushán Kanishka (A.D. 78).

Though recently found inscriptions and coins show that the Kshatrapas ruled over important parts of India including even a share of the western seaboard, nothing is known regarding them from either Indian or foreign literary sources. What little information can be gleaned is from their own inscriptions and coins. Of the Northern Kshatrapas this information is imperfect and disconnected. It shows that they had probably three or four ruling branches, one in the Kábul valley, a second at Taxila near Attak on the North-West Panjab frontier, a third at Behát near Saháranpur or Delhi, and a fourth at Mathurá. The last two were perhaps subdivisions of one kingdom; but probably those at Kábul and at Taxila were distinct dynasties. An inscription found

(B.C. 250-100) is known from Strabo, who says (XI 11) "the Greeks who held Baktria divided it into satrapies (*σατραπείας*) of which Aspionus and Tourva were taken from Eukratides (B.C. 180) by the Parthians." It is to be presumed that the Baktro-Greeks introduced the same arrangement into the provinces which they conquered in India. The earliest occurrence of the title in its Indian form is on the coins of a Rajabula or Rajabola (Gardner, B. M. Cat. 67), who in his Greek legend makes use of the title "King of kings," and in his Indian legend calls himself "The unconquered Kshatrapa." His adoption for the reverse of his coins of the Athene Promachos type of Menander and Apollodotus Philopator connects Rajabula in time with those kings (B.C. 126-100) and we know from an inscription (Cunningham Arch. Rep. XX, 48) that he reigned at Mathurá. He was probably a provincial governor who became independent about B.C. 100 when the Greek kingdom broke up. The above facts go to show that Kshatrapa was originally a Persian title which was adopted by the Greeks and continued in use among their successors; that it originally denoted a provincial governor; but that, when the Greek kingdom broke up and their provincial chiefs became independent, it continued in use as a royal title. That after the Christian era, even in Parthia, the title Satrapes does not necessarily imply subjection to a suzerain is proved by the use of the phrase *σατράπης των σατραπών* Satrap of Satraps, with the sense of King of Kings in Gotarzes' Behistan inscription of A.D. 50. See Rawlinson's Sixth Monarchy, 88 n. 2 and 280 n. 1.—(A. M. T. J.)

The Pandit's identification of the Malavas or Malayas with a northern or Skythian tribe is in agreement with Alberum (A.D. 1015), who, on the authority of the B4j Purána (Sachau's Text, chap. 29 page 150-155) groups as northern tribes the Pallavas, Sakas, Mallas, and Gurjars. In spite of this authority it seems better to identify the Mallas, Malayas, or Malayas with Alexander the Great's (B.C. 325) Mallai of Multan (compare McCrindle's Alexander's Invasion of India, Note P). At the same time (Rockhill's Life of Buddha, 132, 133, 137) the importance of the Mallas in Vaisali (between Patná and Tírhút) during the lifetime of Sakya Muni (B.C. 580) favours the view that several distinct tribes have borne the same or nearly the same name.

in Mathurá shows a connection either by marriage or by neighbourhood between the Behát and Mathurá branches. This is a Baktro-Páli inscription recording the gift of a stúpa by Nandasiriká daughter of Kshatrapa Rájavula and mother of Kharaosti Yuvarája. Kharaosti is the dynastic name of the prince, his personal name appears later in the inscription as Talama (Ptolemy?). From his dynastic name, whose crude form Kharaosta or Kharaottha may be the origin of the Prakrit Chhaharáta and the Sanskritised Kshaharáta, this Talama appears to be a descendant of the Kshatrapa Kharaosti whose coins found at Taxila call him Artaputa that is the son of Arta apparently the Parthian Ortus. •

The same Baktro-Páli Mathurá inscription also mentions with special respect a Kshatrapa named Patika,<sup>1</sup> who, with the title of Kusulaka or Kozofon, ruled the Kábul valley with his capital first at Nagaraka and later at Taxila.

The same inscription further mentions that the stúpa was given while the Kshatrapa Sudása son of the Mahákshatrapa Rájavula was ruling at Mathurá. The inference from the difference in the titles of the father and the son seems to be that Sudása was ruling in Mathurá as governor under his father who perhaps ruled in the neighbourhood of Delhi where many of his coins have been found. While the coins of Sudása have the legend in Nágari only, Rájavula's coins are of two varieties, one with the legend in Baktro-Páli and the other with the legend in Nágari, a fact tending to show that the father's territories stretched to the far north.

Though Kharaosti is mentioned as a Yuvarája or prince heir-apparent in the time of his maternal uncle Sudása, the inscription shows he had four children. It is curious that while the inscription mentions Nandasiriká as the mother of Kharaosti Yuvarája, nothing is said about her husband. Perhaps he was dead or something had happened to make Nandasiriká live at her father's home.

Another inscription of Sudása found by General Cunningham at Mathurá is in old Nágari character. Except that they have the distinctive and long continued Kshatrapa peculiarity of joining *ya* with other letters the characters of this inscription are of the same period as those of the inscriptions of the great Indo-Skythian or Kushán king Kanishka. This would seem to show that the conquest of Mathurá by Kanishka took place soon after the time of Kshatrapa Sudása. It therefore appears probable that Nahapána, the first Kshatrapa ruler of Gujarát and Káthiaváda, the letters of whose inscriptions are of exactly the same Kshatrapa type as those of Sudása, was a scion of the Kharaosti family, who, in this overthrow of kingdoms, went westwards conquering either on his own account or as a general sent by Kanishka. Nahapána's advance seems to have lain through East Rajputána by Mandasor<sup>2</sup>

Chapter V.  
NORTHERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
B.C. 70 : A.D. 100

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70 - 396.

<sup>1</sup> Patika was apparently the son of the Liako Kujulako of the Taxila plate. Dowson in Jour. B. A. S. New Series. IV. 497 mistranslates the inscription and fails to make out the name Patika.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Specht. Jour. Asiatique, 1883. t. II. 325. According to Chinese writers about A.D. 20 Yen-kao-tchin-tai or Kadphises II. conquered India (Thientchou) and these established generals who governed in the name of the Yuechl.

<sup>3</sup> Pandit Bhagvánál found two of his copper coins at Mandasor in 1884.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

in West Málwa along the easy route to Dohad as far as South Gujarát. From South Gujarát his power spread in two directions, by sea to Káthiaváda and from near Balsár by the Dáng passes to Násik and the Deccan, over almost the whole of which, judging from coins and inscriptions, he supplanted as overlord the great Andhra kings of the Deccan. No evidence is available to show either that East Málwa with its capital at Ujjain or that North Gujarát formed part of his dominions. All the information we have regarding Nahapána is from his own silver coins and from the inscriptions of his son-in-law Ushavadáta at Násik and Kárlé and of his minister Ayama (Sk. Aryaman) at Junnar. Nahapána's coins are comparatively rare. The only published specimen<sup>1</sup> is one obtained by Mr. Justice Newton.<sup>2</sup> Four others were also obtained by Dr. Bhagvānlal from Káthiaváda and Násik.

Kshatrapa I.  
Nahapana,  
A.D. 78-120.

The coins of Nahapána are the earliest specimens of Kshatrapa coins. Though the type seems to have been adopted from the Baktrian-Greek, the design is original and is not an imitation of any previous coinage. The type seems adopted in idea from the drachma of Apollodotus (B.C. 110-100). On the obverse is a bust with a Greek legend round it and on the reverse a thunderbolt and an arrow probably as on the reverse of the coins of Apollodotus<sup>3</sup> representing the distinctive weapons of Athene Promachos and of Apollo. In addition to the Baktro-Páli legend on the Apollodotus drachma, the reverse of Nahapána's coin has the same legend in Nágari, since Nágari was the character of the country for which the coin was struck. The dress of the bust is in the style of the over-dress of Nahapána's time. The bust, facing the right, wears a flat grooved cap and has the hair combed in ringlets falling half down the ear. The neck shows the collar of the coat. The workmanship of the coins is good. The die seems to have been renewed from time to time as the face altered with age. Of Dr. Bhagvānlal's four coins one belongs to Nahapána's youth, another to his old age, and the remaining two to his intervening years. In all four specimens the Greek legend is imperfect and unreadable. The letters of the Greek legend are of the later period that is like the letters on the coins of the great Skythian king Kadphises I. (B.C. 26). One of the coins shows in the legend the six letters LIODO-S. These may be the remains of the name Apollodotus (B.C. 110-100). Still it is beyond doubt that the letters are later Greek than those on the coins of Apollodotus. Until the legend is found clear on some fresher specimen, it is not possible to say anything further. In three of the coins the Baktro-Páli legend on the reverse runs :

રજો ચ્હરાતસ નહપાનસ.

Rājō Chhaharātasa Nahapānasa.  
Of king Chhaharāta Nahapāna.

The fourth has simply

રજો ચ્હરાતસ

Rājō Chhaharātasa.  
Of king Chhaharāta.

<sup>1</sup> This is a bad specimen with the legend dim and worn.

<sup>2</sup> Some coins of Apollodotus have on the reverse Apollo with his arrow; others have Athene Promachos with the thunderbolt.

The old Nāgarī legend is the same in all :

रजो क्षहारातस नहपानस .

Rajō Kshaharātasa Nahapānasa.

Of king Kshaharāta Nahapāna.

The Chhaharāta of the former and the Kshaharāta of the latter are the same, the difference in the initial letter being merely dialectical. As mentioned above Kshaharāta is the family name of Nahapāna's dynasty. It is worthy of note that though Nahapāna is not styled Kshatrpa in any of his coins the inscriptions of Ushavadāta at Nāsik repeatedly style him the Kshaharāta Kshatrpa Nahapāna.<sup>1</sup>

Ushavadāta was the son-in-law of Nahapāna being married to his daughter Dakhamitā or Dakshamitrā. Ushavadāta bears no royal title. He simply calls himself son of Dīnīka, and son-in-law of Nahapāna, which shows that he owed his power and rank to his father-in-law, a position regarded as derogatory in India, where no scion of any royal dynasty would accept or take pride in greatness or influence obtained from a father-in-law.<sup>2</sup> Nāsik Inscription XIV. shows that Ushavadāta was a Śaka. His name, as was first suggested by Dr. Bhau Dīji, is Prakrit for Rishabhadatta. From the many charitable and publicly useful works mentioned in various Nāsik and Karle inscriptions, as made by him in places which apparently formed part of Nahapāna's dominions, Ushavadāta appears to have been a high officer under Nahapāna. As Nahapāna seems to have had no son Ushavadāta's position as son-in-law would be one of special power and influence. Ushavadāta's charitable acts and works of public utility are detailed in Nāsik Inscriptions X, XII. and XIV. The charitable acts are the gift of three hundred thousand cows; of gold and of river-side steps at the Bārnāsa or Banās river near Abu in North Gujarāt; of sixteen villages to gods and Brāhmanas; the feeding of hundreds of thousands of Brāhmanas every year; the giving in marriage of eight wives to Brāhmanas at Prabhās in South Kāthiavāḍa; the bestowing of thirty-two thousand cocoanut trees in Nanaungola or Nārgol village on the Thāna seaboard on the Charaka priesthoods of Pṇḍitakāvāḍa, Govardhana near Nāsik, Suvarnamukha, and Rāmatīrtha in Sopārāga or Sopāra on the Thāna coast; the giving of three hundred thousand cows and a village at Pūshikara or Pokhar near Ajmir in East Rajputāna; making gifts to Brāhmanas at Chechīṇa or Chichan near Kēlv.-Māhim on the Thāna coast; and the gift of trees and 70,000 *kārshāpapas* or 2000 *suvarṇas* to gods and Brāhmanas at Dāhānu in Thāna. The public works executed by Ushavadāta include rest-houses and alms-houses at Bharu Kachha or Broach, at Daśapura or Mandasor in North Mālwa, and gardens and wells at Govardhana and Sopārā; free ferries across the Ibā or Amlikā, the Pārāda or Pār, the Damanā or Damanganga, the Tāpi or Tāpti, the Karubenā or Kāveri, and the Dāhānukā or Dāhānu river. Waiting-places and steps were also built on both banks of each of these rivers. These charitable and public works of Ushavadāta savour much of the Brāhmanic religion. The only

Chapter V.

WRITTEN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-300

Ushavadāta,  
A.D. 100-120.

<sup>1</sup> Bom. Gaz. XVI. 571ff.

<sup>2</sup> A well known Sanskrit saying is श्वुरह्यातोषमायमः : A man known through his father-in-law is the vilest of the vile.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70 - 303.  
Ushavadāta,  
A.D. 100 - 120.

Buddhist charities are the gift of a cave at Nāsik; of 3000 *kārshāpanas* and eight thousand coconut trees for feeding and clothing monks living in the cave; and of a village near Kārle in Poona for the support of the monks of the main Kārle cave. Ushavadāta himself thus seems to have been a follower of the Brāhmanical faith. The Buddhist charities were probably made to meet the wishes of his wife whose father's religion the Buddhist wheel and the Bodhi tree on his copper coins prove to have been Buddhism. The large territory over which these charitable and public works of Ushavadāta spread gives an idea of the extent of Nahapāna's rule. The gift of a village as far north as Pokhara near Ajmir would have been proof of dominion in those parts were it not for the fact that in the same inscription Ushavadāta mentions his success in assisting some local Kshatriyas. It is doubtful if the northern limits of Nahapāna's dominions extended as far as Pokhar. The village may have been given during a brief conquest, since according to Hindu ideas no village given to Brāhmanas can be resumed. The eastern boundary would seem to have been part of Mālwa and the plain lands of Khandesh Nāsik and Poona; the southern boundary was somewhere about Bombay; and the western Kāthiāvāda and the Arabian sea.

Nahapāna's  
Era.

Nahapāna's exact date is hard to fix. Ushavadāta's Nāsik cave Inscriptions X. and XII. give the years 41 and 42; and an inscription of Nahapāna's minister Ayāna at Junnar gives the year 46. The era is not mentioned. They are simply dated *vase Sk. varsha*, that is in the year. Ushavadāta's Nāsik Inscription XII. records in the year 42 the gift of charities and the construction of public works which must have taken years to complete. If at that time Ushavadāta's age was 40 to 45, Nahapāna who, as Inscription X. shows, was living at that time, must have been some twenty years older than his son-in-law or say about 65. The Junnar inscription of his minister Ayāna which bears date 16 proves that Nahapāna lived several years after the making of Ushavadāta's cave. The bust on one of his coins also shows that Nahapāna attained a ripe old age.

Nahapāna cannot have lived long after the year 46. His death may be fixed about the year 50 of the era to which the three years 41, 42, and 46 belong. He was probably about 75 years old when he died. Deducting 50 from 75 we get about 25 as Nahapāna's age at the beginning of the era to which the years 41, 42, and 46 belong, a suitable age for an able prince with good resources and good advisers to have established a kingdom. It is therefore probable that the era marks Nahapāna's conquest of Gujarāt. As said above, Nahapāna was probably considered to belong to the Śaka tribe, and his son-in-law clearly calls himself a Śaka. It may therefore be supposed that the era started by Nahapāna on his conquest of Gujarāt was at first simply called *Varsha*; that it afterwards came to be called *Sakavarsha* or *Sakasamvatsara*; and that finally, after various changes, to suit false current ideas, about the eleventh or twelfth century the people of the Deccan styled it *Śalivahana Śaka* mixing it with current traditions regarding the great Śātavahana or Śalivahana king of Paithān. If, as mentioned above, Nahapāna's conquest of Gujarāt and the establishment of his era be taken to come close after the conquest of Mathurā by

<sup>2</sup> Some  
have Athen.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-300  
Nahapána's  
Era.

Kanishka, the Gujarát conquest and the era must come very shortly after the beginning of Kanishka's reign, since Kanishka conquered Mathurá early in his reign. As his Mathurá inscriptions<sup>1</sup> give 5 as Kanishka's earliest date, he must have conquered Mathurá in the year 3 or 4 of his reign. Nahapána's expedition to and conquest of Gujarát was probably contemporary with or very closely subsequent to Kanishka's conquest of Mathurá. So two important eras seem to begin about four years apart, the one with Kanishka's reign in Upper India, the other with Nahapána's reign in Western India. The difference being so small and both being eras of foreign conquerors, a Kushán and a Saka respectively, the two eras seem to have been subsequently confounded. Thus, according to Dr. Burnell, the Javanese Saka era is A.D. 74, that is Kanishka's era was introduced into Java, probably because Java has from early times been connected with the eastern parts of India where Kanishka's era was current. On the other hand the astrological works called Karana use the era beginning with A.D. 78 which we have taken to be the Western era started by Nahapána. The use of the Saka era in Karana works dates from the time of the great Indian astronomer Varáha Mihira (A.D. 587). As Varáha Mihira lived and wrote his great work in Avanti or Málwa he naturally made use of the Saka era of Nahapána, which was current in Málwa. Subsequent astronomers adopted the era used by the master Varáha Mihira. Under their influence Nahapána's A.D. 78 era passed into use over the whole of Northern and Central India eclipsing Kanishka's A.D. 74 era. On these grounds it may be accepted that the dates in the Násik inscriptions of Ushavadata and in Ayáma's inscription at Junnar are in the era founded by Nahapána on his conquest of Gujarát and the West Deccan. This era was adopted by the Western Kshatrapa successors of Nahapána and continued on their coins for nearly three centuries.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cunningham's Arch. Sur. III. Plate 13. Inscriptions 2 and 3.

<sup>2</sup> The author's only reason for supposing that two eras began between A.D. 70 and 80 seems to be the fact that the Javanese Saka era begins A.D. 74, while the Indian Saka era begins A.D. 78. It appears, however, from Lassen's Ind. Alt. II. 1040 note 1, that the Javanese Saka era begins either in A.D. 74 or in A.D. 78. The author's own authority, Dr. Burnell (8 Ind. Pal. 72) while saying that the Javanese Saka era dates from A.D. 74, gives A.D. 80 as the epoch of the Saka era of the neighbouring island of Bali, thus supporting Baffle's explanation (Java, II. 68) that the difference is due to the introduction into Java of the Muhammadan mode of reckoning during the past 300 years. The Javanese epoch of A.D. 74 cannot therefore be treated as an authority for assuming a genuine Indian era with this initial date. The era of Kanishka was used continuously down to its year 281 (Fergusson Hist. of Ind. Architecture, 740) and after that date we have numerous instances of the use of the Sakamupakáśa or Sukakáśa down to the familiar S'aka of the present day. It seems much more likely that the parent of the modern S'aka era was that of Kanishka, which remained in use for nearly three centuries, than that of Nahapána, who so far as we know left no son, and whose era (if he founded one) probably expired when the Kshaharáta power was destroyed by the Andhrabhítyas in the first half of the second century A.D. We must therefore assume A.D. 78 to be the epoch of Kanishka's era. There remains the question whether Nahapána dates by Kanishka's era, or uses his own regnal years. There is nothing improbable in the latter supposition, and we are not forced to suppose that Nahapána was a feudatory of the Kushán kings. It has been shown above that the use of the title Kshatrapa does not necessarily imply a relation of inferiority. On the other hand (pace Oldenburg in Ind. Ant. X. 213) the later Kshatrapas certainly seem to have used Kanishka's era; and Nahapána and the Kushán dynasty seem to have been of the same race; for Héaui, who was certainly a Kushán, apparently calls himself Saka on his coins (Gardner B. M. Cat. xlvii.); and it is highly probable that Nahapána, like his son-in-law Ushavadata, was a Saka. Further, the fact that Nahapána does not call himself Mahárája but Rája goes to show that he was not a paramount sovereign. —(A. M. T. J.)

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-300.  
[The Malava Era,  
B.C. 56.

The question arises why should not the dates on the Western Kshatrapa coins belong to the era which under the incorrect title of the Vikrama era is now current in Gujarāt and Mālwa. Several recently found Mālwa inscriptions almost prove that what is called the Vikrama era beginning with B.C. 56 was not started by any Vikrama, but marks the institution of the tribal constitution of the Mālavas.<sup>1</sup> Later the era came to be called either the era of the Mālava lords<sup>2</sup> or Mālava Kāla that is the era of the Mālavas. About the ninth century just as the Śāka era became connected with the Śālivāhana of Pāṭliana, this old Malava era became connected with the name of Vikramāditya, the great legendary king of Ujjain.

It might be supposed that the Mālavas who gave its name to the Malava era were the kings of the country now called Mālwa. But it is to be noted that no reference to the present Malwa under the name of Malayadesa occurs in any Sanskrit work or record earlier than the second century after Christ. The original Sanskrit name of the country was Avanti. It came to be called Malava from the time the Malava tribe conquered it and settled in it, just as Kāthiavāda and Meyavāda came to be called after their Kāthi and Meva or Meda conquerors. The Mālavas, also called Malāyas,<sup>3</sup> seem like the Medas to be a foreign tribe, which, passing through Upper India conquered and settled in Central India during the first century before Christ. The mention in the *Mudrārākshasa* of a Malava king among five Upper Indian kings shows that in the time of the Mauryas (B.C. 300) a Mālava kingdom existed in Upper India which after the decline of Maurya supremacy spread to Central India. By Nahapāna's time the Mālavas seem to have moved eastwards towards Jajpur, as Ushayadāta defeated them in the neighbourhood of the Pushkar lake; but the fact that the country round Ujjain was still known to Rudradamanas Avanti, shows that the Mālavas had not yet (A.D. 150) entered the district now known as Mālwa. This settlement and the change of name from Avanti to Malava probably took place in the weakness of the Kshatrapas towards the end of the third century A.D. When they established their sway in Central India these Malavas or Malayavas like the ancient Yaudhēyas (B.C. 100) and the Kāthi till recent times (A.D. 1818) seem to have had a democratic constitution.<sup>4</sup> Their political system seems to have proved unsuited to the conditions of a settled community. To put an end to dissensions the Malava tribe appears to have framed what the Mandasor inscription terms a *sthiti* or constitution in honour of which they began a new era.<sup>5</sup> It may be asked, Why may not Nahapāna have been the head of the Malavas who under the new constitution became the first Mālava sovereign and his reign-dates be those of

<sup>1</sup> Journ. B. B. R. A. S. XVI. 378. Ind. Ant. XV. 198, 201, XIII. 126; Arch. Sur. X. 33.

<sup>2</sup> Cunningham's Arch. Sur. XIII. 162. Cf. Kielhorn in Ind. Ant. XIX. 20ff.

<sup>3</sup> Cunningham's Arch. Sur. X. 33-34. Numerous Western India inscriptions prove that *ya* and *ra* are often intermixed in Prakrit.

<sup>4</sup> Vide Telung's *Mudrārākshasa*, 201. Mr. Telung gives several readings the best of which mean either the king of the Mālava country or the king of the Mālava tribe.

<sup>5</sup> Maumund (1818) notices the democratic constitution of the Kāthi. Trans. Bom. Lit. Soc. I. 274.

<sup>6</sup> Compare Elliot's *Corpus Ins. Ind.* III. 87, 152, 158 from the (supremacy of) the tribal constitution of the Malavas. Prof. Kielhorn has however shown that the words of the inscription do not necessarily mean this. Ind. Ant. XIX. 56.

the new Málava era? Against this we know from a Násik inscription of Ushavadāta<sup>1</sup> that Nahapána was not a Málava himself but an opponent of the Málavas as he sent Ushavadāta to help a tribe of Kshatriyas called Uttamahadras whom the Málavas had attacked. Further a chronological examination of the early ruling dynasties of Gujarat does not favour the identification of the Kshatrapa era with the Málava era. The available information regarding the three dynasties the Kshatrapas the Guptas and the Valabhis, is universally admitted to prove that they followed one another in chronological succession. The latest known Kshatrapa date is 310. Even after this we find the name of a later Kshatrapa king whose date is unknown but may be estimated at about 320. If we take this Kshatrapa 320 to be in the Vikrama Samvat, its equivalent is A.D. 261. In consequence of several new discoveries the epoch of the Gupta era has been finally settled to be A.D. 319. It is further settled that the first Gupta conqueror of Malwa and Gujarat was Chandragupta II.<sup>2</sup> the date of his conquest of Malwa being Gupta 80 (A.D. 399). Counting the Kshatrapa dates in the Samvat era this gives a blank of (399-261=) 138 years between the latest Kshatrapa date and the date of Chandragupta's conquest of Gujarat to fill which we have absolutely no historical information. On the other hand in support of the view that the Kshatrapa era is the Saka era the Káthiavada coins of the Gupta king Kumaragupta son of Chandragupta dated 100 Gupta closely resemble the coins of the latest Kshatrapa kings, the workmanship proving that the two styles of coin are close in point of time. Thus taking the Kshatrapa era to be the Saka era the latest Kshatrapa date is 320+78=A.D. 398, which is just the date (A.D. 399) of Chandragupta's conquest of Málwa and Gujarát. For these reasons, and in the absence of reasons to the contrary, it seems proper to take the dates in Ushavadāta's and Ayúma's inscriptions as in the era which began with Nahapána's conquest of Gujarát, namely the Saka era whose initial date is A.D. 78.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-399.  
The Málava Era,  
B.C. 56.

After Nahapána's the earliest coins found in Gujarát are those of Chashtana. Chashtana's coins are an adaptation of Nahapána's coins. At the same time Chashtana's bust differs from the bust in Nahapána's coins. He wears a mustache the cap is not grooved but plain, and the hair which reaches to the neck is longer than Nahapána's hair. In one of Chashtana's coins found by Mr. Justice Newton, the hair seems dressed in ringlets as in the coins of the Parthian king Phrautes II. (B.C. 136-128).<sup>3</sup> On the reverse instead of the thunderbolt and arrow as in Nahapána's coins, Chashtana's coins have symbols of the sun and moon in style much like the sun and moon symbols on the Parthian coins of Phrautes II., the moon being a crescent and the sun represented by eleven rays shooting from a central beam. To the two on the reverse a third symbol seems to have been added consisting of two arches resting on a straight line, with a third arch over and between

Kshatrapa II.  
Chashtana,  
A.D. 130.

<sup>1</sup> Inscription 10 lines 3-4. Bom. Gaz. XVI. 572.

<sup>2</sup> Details are given below under the Guptas.

<sup>3</sup> Burgess' Archaeological Report of Kathiáwár and Cutch, 85, Numismata Orientalia, 1. Pl. II. Fig. 8.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KASHMIRAS,  
A.D. 70-393.  
Chashtana's  
Coins,  
A.D. 130.

the two arches, and over the third arch an inverted semicircle. Below these symbols stretches a waving or serpentine line.<sup>1</sup>

The same symbol appears on the obverse of several very old medium-sized square copper coins found in Upper India. These coins Dr. Bhagvanlal took to be coins of Asoka. They have no legend on either side, and have a standing elephant on the obverse and a rampant lion on the reverse. As these are the symbols of Asoka, the elephant being found in his rock inscriptions and the lion in his pillar inscriptions, Dr. Bhagvanlal held them to be coins of Asoka. The arch symbol appears in these coins over the elephant on the obverse and near the lion on the reverse but in neither case with the underlying zigzag line.<sup>2</sup> So also a contemporary coin bearing in the Asoka character the clear legend वटस्वके Vatasvaka shows the same symbol, with in addition a robed male figure of good design standing near the symbol saluting it with folded hands. The position of the figure (Ariana Antiqua, Plate XV. Fig. 30) proves that the symbol was an object of worship. In Chashtana's coins we find this symbol between the sun and the moon, a position which suggests that the symbol represents the mythical mountain Meru, the three semicircular superimposed arches representing the peaks of the mountain and the crescent a *Siddha-sila* or Siddhas' seat, which Jaina works describe as crescent-shaped and situated over Meru. The collective idea of this symbol in the middle and the sun and moon on either side recalls the following *śloka*:

यावद्वीचीनरङ्गान्वहति सुरजदी जान्दवी पूर्णतोया ।

यावच्चाकाशमार्गे तपनि दिनकरो भास्करो लोकपालः

यावद्वजेन्दुनीलस्फटिकमणिशिला वर्तते मेरुशृङ्गे ।

तावत्त्वं पुत्रपौत्रैः स्वजनपरिवृतो जीव शम्भोः प्रसादात् ॥

Mayest thou by the favour of Sambhu live surrounded by sons grandsons and relations so long as the heavenly Ganges full of water flows with its waves, so long as the brilliant sun the protector of the universe shines in the sky, and so long as the slab of diamond moonstone lapis lazuli and sapphire remains on the top of Meru.

Dr. Bird's Kanheri copperplate has a verse with a similar meaning regarding the continuance of the glory of the relic shrine of one Pushya, so long as Meru remains and rivers and the sea flow.<sup>3</sup> The meaning of showing Meru and the sun and moon is thus clear. The underlying serpentine line apparently stands for the Jāhnavī river or it may perhaps be a representation of the sea.<sup>4</sup> The object of repre-

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of this symbol has not yet been made out. It is very old. We first find it on the punched coins of Mālwa and Gujarāt (regarded as the oldest coinage in India) without the serpentine line below, which seems to show that this line does not form part of the original symbol and has a distinct meaning.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Wilson's Ariana Antiqua, Plate XV Fig. 26-27.

<sup>3</sup> Cave Temple Inscriptions, Bombay Archaeological Survey, Extra Number (1881), 58.

<sup>4</sup> Ariana Antiqua, Plate XV. Fig. 29. Some imaginary animals are shown under the serpentine line.

sending these symbols on coins may be that the coins may last as long as the sun, the moon, mount Meru, and the Ganges or ocean. Against this view it may be urged that the coins of the Buddhist kings of Kuninda (A.D. 100), largely found near Saharanpur in the North-West Provinces, show the arch symbol with the Buddhist trident over it, the Bodhi tree with the railing by its side, and the serpentine line under both the tree and the symbol, the apparent meaning being that the symbol is a Buddhist shrine with the Bodhi tree and the river Niranjana of Buddha Gaya near it. The same symbol appears as a Buddhist shrine in Andhra coins<sup>1</sup> which make it larger with four rows of arches, a tree by its side, and instead of the zigzag base line a railing. This seems a different representation perhaps of the shrine of Mahabodhi at Buddha Gaya. These details seem to show that popular notions regarding the meaning of this symbol varied at different times.<sup>2</sup>

Such of the coins of Chashtana as have on the reverse only the sun and the moon bear on the obverse in Baktro-Pali characters a legend of which the four letters रवो जिमो Raño jimo can alone be made out. An illegible Greek legend continues the Baktro-Pali legend. The legend on the reverse is in old Nāgarī character :

राज्ञो क्षत्रपस यस्मोनिकपुत्र [सच] टनस.<sup>3</sup>

Rājño Kshatrapasa Ysamotikaputra(sa Cha)-hṭanasa.

Of the king Kshatrapa Chashtana son of Ysamotika.

The variety of Chashtana's coins which has the arch symbol on the reverse, bears on the obverse only the Greek legend almost illegible and on the reverse the Baktro-Pali legend चटनस Chaṭanasa meaning Of Chashtana and in continuation the Nāgarī legend :

राज्ञोमहाक्षत्रपस यस्मोनिकपुत्रस चटनस

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Ysamotikaputrasa Chashtanasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa (Chashtana son of Ysamotika).

The name Zamotika is certainly not Indian but foreign apparently a corruption of some such form as Psamotika or Xamotika. Further the fact that Zamotika is not called Kshatrapa or by any other title, would seem to show that he was an untitled man whose son somehow came to authority and obtained victory over these parts where (as his earlier coins with the sun and the moon show) he was at first called a Kshatrapa and afterwards (as his later coins with the third symbol show) a Mahākshatrapa or great Kshatrapa. We know nothing of any connection between Nahapāna and Chashtana. Still it is clear that Chashtana obtained a great part of the territory over which

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-80.  
Chashtana's  
Coins,  
A.D. 130.

Chashtana's  
Father.

<sup>1</sup> Jour. B. B. R. A. Soc. XIII. 303.

<sup>2</sup> The variations noted in the text seem examples of the law that the later religion reads its own new meaning into early luck signs.

<sup>3</sup> This letter रस in both is curiously formed and never used in Sanskrit. But it is clear and can be read without any doubt as रस. Paulit Bhagvanlal thought that it was probably meant to stand as a new-coined letter to represent the Greek Z which has nothing corresponding to it in Sanskrit. The same curiously formed letter appears in the third syllable in the coin of the fourth Kshatrapa king Dāmajaḍastri.

**Chapter V.**

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

Chashtana,  
A.D. 130.

Nahapána previously held sway. Though Chashtana's coins and even the coins of his son and grandson bear no date, we have reason to believe they used a nameless era, of which the year 72 is given in the Junágad inscription of Chashtana's grandson Rudradáman.<sup>1</sup> Though we have no means of ascertaining how many years Rudradáman had reigned before this 72 it seems probable that the beginning of the reign was at least several years earlier. Taking the previous period at seven years Rudráman's succession may be tentatively fixed at 65. Allowing twenty-five years for his father Jayadáman and his grandfather Chashtana (as they were father and son and the son it is supposed reigned for some years with his father<sup>2</sup>) Chashtana's conquest of Gujarat comes to about the year 40 which makes Chashtana contemporary with the latter part of Nahapána's life. Now the Triastanes whom Ptolemy mentions as having Ozene for his capital<sup>3</sup> is on all hands admitted to be Chashtana and from what Ptolemy says it appears certain that his capital was Ujjain. Two of Chashtana's coins occur as far north as Ajmir. As the Chashtana coins in Dr. Gerson DaCunha's collection were found in Káthiáwáda he must have ruled a large stretch of country. The fact that in his earlier coins Chashtana is simply called a Kshatrapa and in his latter coins a Mahíkshatrapa leads to the inference that his power was originally small. Chashtana was probably not subordinate to Nahapána but a contemporary of Nahapána originally when a simple Kshatrapa governing perhaps North Gujarat and Malwa. Nor was Chashtana a member of Nahapána's family as he is nowhere called Kshaharata which is the name of Nahapána's family. During the lifetime of Nahapána Chashtana's power would seem to have been established first over Ajmir and Mewad. Perhaps Chashtana may have been the chief of the Uttamabhadra Kshatriyas, whom, in the year 42, Ushavadata went to assist when they were besieged by the Málayas or Málayas<sup>4</sup>; and it is possible that the Malavas being thus driven away Chashtana may have consolidated his power, taken possession of Malwa, and established his capital at Ujjain.

Deccan Recovered  
by the Andhras,  
A.D. 138.

On Nahapána's death his territory, which in the absence of a son had probably passed to his son-in-law Ushavadata, seems to have been wrested from him by his Andhra neighbours, as one of the attributes of Gautamiputra Satakarni is exterminator of the dynasty of Kshaharata (or Kshaharata). That North Konkan, South Gujarat, and Káthiáwáda were taken and incorporated with Andhra territory appears from Gautamiputra's Nasik inscription (No. 26) where Suráshtra and Aparanta are mentioned as parts of his dominions. These Andhra

<sup>1</sup> The text of the inscription is रुद्रदाम्नी वर्षे that is in the year of Rudradáman. That this phrase means 'in the reign of' is shown by the Gunda inscription of Rudradáman's son Rudrasimha, which has रुद्रसिंहस्य वर्षे त्र्युत्तरशते that is in the hundred and third year of Rudrasimha. Clearly a regnal year cannot be meant as no reign could last over 103 years. So with the year 72 in Rudradáman's inscription. The same style of writing appears in the inscriptions at Mathura of Huvishka and Vasudeva which say 'year — of Huvishka' and 'year — of Vasudeva' though it is known that the era is of Kanishka. In all these cases what is meant is 'the dynastic or era year — in the reign of —'.

<sup>2</sup> See below page 34.

<sup>3</sup> McCrindle's Ptolemy, 155.

<sup>4</sup> See above page 29.

conquests seem to have been shortlived. Chashtana appears to have eventually taken Kāthiāvāda and as much of South Gujarāt as belonged to Nahapāna probably as far south as the Nimbūla. Mevād, Malwa, North and South Gujarāt and Kathiāvāda would then be subject to him and justify the title Mahākshatrāpa on his later coins.

The bulk of Chashtana's army seems to have consisted of the Mevas or Medas from whose early conquests and settlements in Central Rajputāna the province seems to have received its present name Mevāda. If this supposition be correct an inference may be drawn regarding the origin of Chashtana. The Mathura inscription of Nandasirikā, daughter of Kshatrāpa Rājavula and mother of Kharaostī Yuvarāja, mentions with respect a Mahākshatrāpa Kuzulko Patika who is called in the inscription Mevaki that is of the Meva tribe. The inscription shows a relation between the Kharaostis (to which tribe we have taken Kshaharāta Nahapāna to belong) and Mevaki Patika perhaps in the nature of subordinate and overlord. It proves at least that the Kharaostis held Patika in great honour and respect.

The Taxila plate shows that Patika was governor of Taxila during his father's lifetime. After his father's death when he became Mahākshatrāpa, Patika's capital was Nagaraka in the Jallalābād or Kabul valley. The conquest of those parts by the great Kushān or Indo-Skythian king Kanishka (A.D. 78) seems to have driven Patika's immediate successors southwards to Sindh where they may have established a kingdom. The Skythian kingdom mentioned by the author of the Periplus as stretching in his time as far south as the mouths of the Indus may be a relic of this kingdom. Some time after their establishment in Sindh Patika<sup>1</sup> may have sent Chashtana, either a younger member of the reigning house or a military officer, with an army of Mevas through Umarkot and the Great Ran to Central Rajputāna, an expedition which ended in the settlement of the Mevas and the change of the country's name to Mevāda. Probably it was on account of their previous ancestral connection that Nahapāna sent Ushavadāta to help Chashtana in Mevāda when besieged by his Mālayas neighbours. That Ushavadāta went to battle and make gifts<sup>1</sup> at Pushkara proves that the scene of the Uttamabhadras' siege by the Mālayas was in Mevāda not far from Pushkara.

Chashtana is followed by an unbroken chain of successors all of the dynasty of which Chashtana was the founder. As the coins of Chashtana's successors bear dates and as each coin gives the name of the king and of his father they supply a complete chronological list of the Kshatrāpa dynasty.

Of Chashtana's son and successor Jayadāman the coins are rare. Of three specimens found in Kāthiāvāda two are of silver and one of copper. Both the silver coins were found in Junāgradh<sup>2</sup> but they are doubtful specimens as the legend is not complete. Like Chashtana's

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-300.

The Mevas or  
Medas.

Kshatrāpa III  
Jayadāman,  
A.D. 140-143.

<sup>1</sup> See above page 25.

<sup>2</sup> Of these coins Dr. Bhagvānlāl kept one in his own collection. He sent the other to General Cunningham. The Pandit found the copper coin in Amroli in 1863 and gave it to Dr. Bhau Dājī.

**Chapter V.**

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.  
Kshatriya III.  
Jayadaman,  
A.D. 140-143.

coins they have a bust on the obverse and round the bust an incomplete and undecipherable Greek legend. The reverse has the sun and the moon and between them the arched symbol with the zigzag under-line. All round the symbols on the margin within a dotted line is the legend in Baktro-Pali and Devanagari. Only three letters रञ्जो छ व of the Baktro-Pali legend can be made out. Of the Nagari legend seven letters राज्ञा क्षत्रपस ज Rajña Kshatrapasa Ja can be made out. The remaining four letters Dr. Bhagvanlal read यदामस Yadamasa.<sup>1</sup> The copper coin which is very small and square has on the obverse in a circle a standing humped bull looking to the right and fronting an erect trident with an axe. In style the bull is much like the bull on the square hemichama of Apollodotus (p.c. 110-100). Round the bull within a dotted circle is the legend in Greek. It is unfortunate the legend is incomplete as the remaining letters which are in the Skythian-Greek style are clearer than the letters on any Kshatriya coin hitherto found. The letters that are preserved are ΣΤΕΝΥ. The reverse has the usual moon and sun and between them the arched symbol without the zigzag under-line. All round within a dotted circle is the Nagari legend:

राज्ञो क्षत्रपस जयदामस.

Rajña Kshatrapasa Jayadamas.

Of the king Kshatriya Jayadaman

Though the name is not given in any of these coins, the fact that Chashtana was Jayadaman's father has been determined from the genealogy in the Gunda inscription of Rudrasinha I the seventh Kshatriya, in the Jasdhan inscription of Rudrasena I, the eighth Kshatriya, and in the Junágadh cave inscription<sup>4</sup> of Rudradaman's son Rudrasinha. All these inscriptions and the coins of his son Rudradaman call Jayadaman Kshatriya not Mahakshatriya. This would seem to show either that he was a Kshatriya or governor of Kathiavada under his father or that his father's territory and his rank as Mahakshatriya suffered some reduction.<sup>5</sup> The extreme rarity of his coins suggests that Jayadaman's reign was very short. It is worthy of note that while Zamotila and Chashtana are foreign names, the names of Jayadaman and all his successors with one exception<sup>6</sup> are purely Indian.

Kshatriya IV.  
Rudradaman,  
A.D. 143-158.

Jayadaman was succeeded by his son Rudradaman who was probably the greatest of the Western Kshatriyas. His beautiful silver coins, in style much like those of Chashtana, are frequently found in Kāthiāvāḍa. On the obverse is his bust in the same style of dress as Chashtana's and

<sup>1</sup> Except that the ञ is much clearer the Nagari legend in the silver coin obtained for George Cunningham is equally bad, and the Baktro-Pali legend is wanting.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. X, 157.

<sup>3</sup> Journal B. B. R. A. Soc. VIII, 224-5 and Ind. Ant. XII, 32ff.

<sup>4</sup> Dr. Burgess' Archaeological Report of Kathiavar and Cutch, 140.

<sup>5</sup> The explanation of the reduction of Jayadaman's rank is probably to be found in the Nesk inscription (No. 26) of Gautamputra Satakarni who claims to have conquered Surashtra, Kukura (in Rajputana), Anupa, Vidarbha (Berar), Akara, and Avanti (Ujjain). (A. M. T. J.)

<sup>6</sup> See below page 39.

round the bust is the Greek legend incomplete, and undecipherable. The reverse has the usual sun and moon and the arched symbol with the zigzag under-line. The old Nagari legend fills the whole outer circle. None of Rudradaman's coins shows a trace of the Baktra-Pali legend. The Nagari legend reads:

राज्ञा क्षत्रपस जयदामपुत्रस राज्ञा महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रदामस.

Rājña Kshatrapa Jayadāmaputrasa  
Rājña Mahakshatrapasa Rudradamas.

Of the king the great Kshatriya Rudradaman son of the  
king the Kshatriya Jayadaman

None of Rudradaman's copper coins have been found. Except Jayakaman none of the Kshatriyas seem to have stamped their names on any but silver coins.<sup>1</sup>

An inscription on the Ginnar rock gives us more information regarding Rudradaman than is available for any of the other Kshatriyas. The inscription records the construction of a new dam on the Sudarśana lake close to the inscription rock in place of a dam built up the time of the Maurya king Chandragupta (B.C. 300) and added to in the time of his grandson the Great Asoka (B.C. 240) which had suddenly burst in a storm. The new dam is recorded to have been made under the orders of Suvishukha son of Kulapala Pahlava by tribe, who was appointed by the king to protect the whole of Anarta and Surashtra. Pahlava seems to be the name of the ancient Persians and Parthians<sup>2</sup> and the name Suvishukha as Dr. Bhau Daji suggests may be a Sanskritised form of Soyasaka.<sup>3</sup> One of the Kharle inscriptions gives a similar name Soyasaka apparently a corrupt Indian form of the original Persian from which the Sanskritised Suvishukha must have been formed. Soyasaka it will be noted is mentioned in the Kharle inscription as an merchant of Abulani, apparently the old trade mart of Ohollah at the head of the Persian Gulf. This trade connection between the Persian Gulf and the Western Indian seaboard must have led to the settlement from very early times of the Pahlavas who gradually became converted to Buddhism, and, like the Persis their modern enterprising representatives, seem to have advanced in trade and political influence. Subsequently the Pahlavas attained such pre-eminence that about the fifth century a dynasty of Pahlava kings reigned in the Dekkan, Hindu in religion and name, even tracing their origin to the great ancient sage Bhṛagui.<sup>4</sup>

The statement in Rudradaman's Sudarśana lake inscription, that Anarta and Surashtra were under his Pahlava governor, seems to show

Sudarśana Lake,  
A.D. 150.

<sup>1</sup> Several small mixed metal coins weighing from 3 to 10 grms with on the obverse an elephant in some and a bull in others and on the reverse the usual arched Kshatriya symbol have been found in Malwa and Kathiavada. The symbols show them to be of the lowest Kshatriya currency. Several of them bear dates from which it is possible as in the case of Rudrasinha's and Rudrasena's coins to infer to what Kshatriya they belonged. Lead coins have also been found at Amreli in Kathiavada. They are square and have a bull on the obverse and on the reverse the usual arched Kshatriya symbol with underneath it the date 182.

<sup>2</sup> Compare however Weber, Hist. of Indian Lit. 187-8.

<sup>3</sup> Jour. B. B. R. A. S. VII, 114.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. II, 156, V, 50, 154 &c.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
K-SHAIRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.  
Kshatrapa IV.  
Rudradāman,  
A.D. 143-158.

that Rudradāman's capital was not in Gujarāt or Kāthiāvāda. Probably like his grandfather Chashtana Rudradāman held his capital at Ujjain. The poetic eulogies of Rudradāman appear to contain a certain share of fact. One of the epithets 'he who himself has earned the title Mahakshatrapa' indicates that Rudradāman had regained the title of Mahakshatrapa which belonged to his grandfather Chashtana but not to his father Javadman. Another portion of the inscription claims for him the overlordship of Akarāvanti,<sup>1</sup> Anūpa,<sup>2</sup> Anarta, Surashtra, Śvabhrā,<sup>3</sup> Maru,<sup>4</sup> Kachchha,<sup>5</sup> Sindhu-Sauvira,<sup>6</sup> Kukura,<sup>7</sup> Aparanta,<sup>8</sup> and Nishada;<sup>9</sup> that is roughly the country from Bhilsa in the east to Sindh in the west and from about Abu in the north to the North Konkan in the south including the peninsulas of Cutch and Kāthiāvāda. The inscription also mentions two wars waged by Rudradāman, one with the Yaudheyas the other with Satakarni lord of Dakshinapatha. Of the Yaudheyas the inscription says that they had become arrogant and untractable in consequence of their having proclaimed their assumption of the title of Heroes among all Kshatriyas. Rudradāman is described as having exterminated them. These Yaudheyas were known as a warlike race from the earliest times and are mentioned as warriors by Pāṇini.<sup>10</sup>

The Yaudheyas.

Like the Malavas these Yaudheyas appear to have had a democratic constitution. Several round copper coins of the Yaudheyas of about the third century A.D. have been found in various parts of the North-West Provinces from Mathura to Sahāranpur. These coins

<sup>1</sup> Akarāvanti that is Akara and Avanti are two names which are always found together. Cf. Gotoputras N. sik inscription (No. 26). Avanti is well known as being the name of the part of Malva which contains Ujjain. Akara is probably the modern province of Bhilsa whose capital was Vidisa the modern deserted city of Besnagar. Instead of Akarāvanti Buhit-sambhita mentions Akaravenavantaka of which the third name Vena Pandita Bhagvanlal took to be the country about the Sagura zila containing the old town of Lavan, near which still flows a river called Vena. The adjectives east and west are used respectively as referring to Akara which is East Malwa and Avanti which is West Malwa. Compare Indian Antiquary, VII. 259; Bombay Gazetteer, XVI. 631.

<sup>2</sup> Anupa is a common noun literally meaning well-watered. The absence of the term *ulud* or 'country' which is in general superadded to it shows that Anupa is here used as a proper noun, meaning the Anupa country. Dr. Bhagvanlal was unable to identify Anupa. He took it to be the name of some well-watered tract near Gujarāt.

<sup>3</sup> See above page 10 note 1. The greater part of North Gujarāt was probably included in Śvabhrā.

<sup>4</sup> Maru is the well known name of Marwar.

<sup>5</sup> Kachchha is the flourishing state still known by the name of Cutch.

<sup>6</sup> Sindhu-Sauvira like Akarāvanti, are two names usually found together. Sindhu is the modern Sind and Sauvira may have been part of Upper Sind, the capital of which is mentioned as Dattamitra. Alberuni (I. 300) defines Sauvira as including Multan and Jahrdwar.

<sup>7</sup> Nothing is known about Kukura and it cannot be identified. It was probably part of East Rajputana.

<sup>8</sup> Aparanta meaning the Western End is the western seaboard from the Mahi in the north to Goa in the south. Ind. Ant. VII. 259. The portion of Aparanta actually subject to Rudradāman must have been the country between the Mahi and the Damanganga as at this time the North Konkan was subject to the Andhras.

<sup>9</sup> Nishada cannot be identified. As the term Nishada is generally used to mean Bhils and other wild tribes, its mention with Aparanta suggests the wild country that includes Bhilsa, Sahāranpur, and north east Thāna.

<sup>10</sup> Grammar, V. iii. 117.

which are adapted from the type of Kanishka's coins<sup>1</sup> have on the obverse a standing robed male figure extending the protecting right hand of mercy. On the reverse is the figure of a standing Kārtika-svami and round the figure the legend in Gupta characters of about the third century :

योधेय गणस्य

Yāudheya Gaṇasya.

Of the Yaudheya tribe.<sup>2</sup>

That the Girnār inscription describes Rudradāman as the exterminator of 'the Yaudheyas' and not of any king of the Yaudheyas confirms the view that their constitution was tribal or democratic.<sup>3</sup>

The style of the Yaudheya coins being an adaptation of the Kanishka type and their being found from Mathura to Saharanpur where Kanishka ruled is a proof that the Yaudheyas wrested from the successors of Kanishka the greater part of the North-West Provinces. This is not to be understood to be the Yaudheyas' first conquest in India. They are known to be a very old tribe who after a temporary suppression by Kanishka must have again risen to power with the decline of Kushān rule under Kanishka's successors Huviska (A.D. 100-123) or Vasudeva (A.D. 123-150), the latter of whom was a contemporary of Rudradāman.<sup>4</sup> It is probably to this increase of Yaudheya power that Rudradāman's inscription refers as making them arrogant and intractable. Their forcible extermination is not to be understood literally but in the Indian hyperbolic fashion.

The remark regarding the conquest of Sātakarni lord of Dakṣhiṇāpatha is as follows: 'He who has obtained glory because he did not destroy Satakarni, the lord of the Dekhan, on account of there being no distance in relationship, though he twice really conquered him.'<sup>5</sup> As Sātakarni is a dynastic name applied to several of the Andhra kings, the question arises Which of the Satakarnis did Rudradāman twice defeat? Of the two Western India kings mentioned by Ptolemy one 'Tastanes with his capital at Ozene or Ujjain' has been identified with Chashtana; the other Siri Ptolemaios or Polemaios, with his royal seat at Baithana or Paithan,<sup>6</sup> has been identified with the Pulumāyi Vāsishthīputra of the Nāsik cave inscriptions. These statements of

<sup>1</sup> Compare Gardner and Poole's Catalogue, Pl. XXVI Fig. 2 &c.

<sup>2</sup> Another variety of their brass coins was found at Behat near Saharanpur. Compare Thomas' Prinsep's Indian Antiquities, I. Pl. IV Figs. 11b 12b and Pl. XIX Figs. 5, 6, 9. General Cunningham, in his recent work on The Coins of Ancient India, 75ff., describes three chief types, the Behat coins being the earliest and belonging to the first century B.C., the second type which is that described above is assigned to about A.D. 300, and the third type, with a six-headed figure on the obverse, is placed a little later. General Cunningham's identification of the Yaudheyas with the Juhya Rajputs of the lower Sutlej, seems certain, Rudradāman would then have "uprooted" them when he acquired the province of Sauvira.

<sup>3</sup> Mr Fleet notices a later inscription of a *Mahādāja Mahāsāndapati* "who has been set over" the 'Yaudheya gana or tribe' in the fort of Byana in Bharatpur. Ind. Ant. XIV. 8, Corp. Insc. Ind. III. 251ff. The Yaudheyas are also named among the tribes which submitted to Samudragupta. See Corp. Insc. Ind. III. 8.

<sup>4</sup> Huviska's latest inscription bears date 45 that is A.D. 123 (Cunningham's Arch. Sur. III. Pl. XV. Number 8).

<sup>5</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 262.

<sup>6</sup> McCrindle's Ptolemy, 152.

<sup>7</sup> McCrindle's Ptolemy, 175.

**Chapter V.**  
**WESTERN**  
**KSHATRAPAS,**  
**A.D. 70-398.**  
**Kshatrapa IV.**  
**Rudradaman,**  
**A.D. 143-158.**

Ptolemy seem to imply that Chashtana and Pulumáyī were contemporary kings reigning at Ujjain and Paithan. The evidence of their coins also shows that if not contemporaries Chashtana and Pulumáyī were not separated by any long interval. We know from the Nasik inscriptions and the Puranas that Pulumayi was the successor of Gautamiputra Satakarni and as Gautamiputra Satakarni is mentioned as the exterminator of the Kshaharata race (and the period of this extermination has already been shown to be almost immediately after Nahapana's death), there is no objection to the view that Chashtana, who was the next Kshatrapa after Nahapana, and Pulumayi, who was the successor of Gautamiputra, were contemporaries. We have no positive evidence to determine who was the immediate successor of Pulumayi, but the only king whose inscriptions are found in any number after Pulumayi is Gautamiputra Yajña Sri Satakarni. His Kanheri inscription recording gifts made in his reign and his coin found among the relics of the Sopara stupa built also in his reign prove that he held the North Konkan. The Sopara coin gives the name of the father of Yajñasri. Unfortunately the coin is much worn. Still the remains of the letters constituting the name are sufficient to show they must be read चतुरपान (Chaturapana).<sup>1</sup> A king named Chaturapana is mentioned in one of the Nanaghat inscriptions where like Pulumayi he is called Vasishthiputra and where the year 13 of his reign is referred to.<sup>2</sup> The letters of this inscription are almost coeval with those in Pulumayi's inscriptions. The facts that he was called Vasishthiputra and that he reigned at least thirteen years make it probable that Chaturapana was the brother and successor of Pulumayi. Yajñasri would thus be the nephew and second in succession to Pulumayi and the contemporary of Rudradaman the grandson of Chashtana, whom we have taken to be a contemporary of Pulumayi. A further proof of this is afforded by Yajñasri's silver coin found in the Sopara stupa. All other Andhra coins hitherto found are adapted from contemporary coins of Ujjain and the Central Provinces, the latter probably of the Sungas. But Gautamiputra Yajñasri Satakarni's Sopara coin is the first silver coin struck on the type of Kshatrapa coins, it is in fact a clear adaptation of the type of the coins of Rudradaman himself which proves that the two kings were contemporaries and rivals. An idea of the 'not distant relationship' between Rudradaman and Yajñasri Satakarni mentioned in Rudradaman's Gumar inscription, may be formed from a Kanheri inscription recording a gift by a minister named Satoraka which mentions that the queen of Vasishthiputra Satakarni was born in the Kārdamaka dynasty and was connected apparently on the maternal side with a Mahākshatrapa whose name is lost. If the proper name of the lost Vasishthiputra be Chaturapana, his son Yajña Sri Satakarni would, through his mother being a Mahākshatrapa's granddaughter, be a relative of Rudradaman.

Rudradaman's other epithets seem to belong to the usual stock of

<sup>1</sup> Jour. B. B. R. A. Soc. XV. 306.

<sup>2</sup> Jour. B. B. R. A. Soc. XV. 313, 314. See also Ind. Ant. XII. 272, where Bühler suggests that the queen was a daughter of Rudradaman, and traces the syllables Rudradā . . . in the Kanheri inscription.

Indian court epithets. He is said 'to have gained great fame by studying to the end, by remembering, understanding and applying the great sciences such as grammar, polity, music, and logic.' Another epithet describes him as having 'obtained numerous garlands at the Svayamvaras of kings' daughters,' apparently meaning that he was chosen as husband by princesses at several *svayamvaras* or choice-marriages a practice which seems to have been still in vogue in Rudradāman's time. As a test of the civilized character of his rule it may be noted that he is described as 'he who took, and kept to the end of his life, the vow to stop killing men except in battle.' Another epithet tells us that the embankment was built and the lake reconstructed by 'expending a great amount of money from his own treasury, without oppressing the people of the town and of the province by (extorting) taxes, forced labour, acts of affection (benevolences) and the like.'

As the Kshatrapa year 30 (A.D. 145) has been taken to be the date of close of Chashtana's reign, and as five years may be allowed for the short reign<sup>1</sup> of Jivadaman, the beginning of the reign of Rudradāman may be supposed to have been about the year 65 (A.D. 143). This Gumar inscription gives 72 as the year in which Rudradāman was then reigning and it is fair to suppose that he reigned probably up to 80. The conclusion is that Rudradāman ruled from A.D. 143 to 158.

Rudradāman was succeeded by his son Dīmāzala or Dāmajadaśrī regarding whom all the information available is obtained from six coins obtained by Dr. Bhagvanlal. The workmanship of all six coins is good, after the type of Rudradāman's coins. On the obverse is a bust in the same style as Rudradāman's and round the bust is an illegible Greek legend. Like Rudradāman's coins these have no dates, a proof of their antiquity, as all later Kshatrapa coins have dates in Nagari numerals. The reverse has the usual sun and moon and between them the arched symbol with the zigzag under-line. Around them in three specimens is the following legend in old Nagari:

राज्ञि महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रदामपुत्रस राज्ञि क्षत्रपस दामासिडस

Rājñi Mahākṣatrapasa Rudradāmaputrasa Rājñi  
Kṣatrapasa Dāmāśidasa.

Of the king the Kshatrapa Dīmāzala's son of the king the  
Kshatrapa Rudradāman.

<sup>1</sup> See above page 34

<sup>2</sup> It seems doubtful whether the Pandit's estimate of fifteen years might not with advantage be increased. As his father's reign was so short Rudradāman probably succeeded when still young. The abundance of his coins points to a long reign and the scarcity of the coins both of his son Dīmāzala and of his grandson Jivadaman imply that neither of his successors reigned more than a few years. Jivadaman's earliest date is A.D. 178 (S. 100). If five years are allowed to Jivadaman's father the end of Rudradāman's reign would be A.D. 173 (S. 95) that is a reign of thirty years, no excessive term for a king who began to rule at a comparatively early age. (A. M. T. J.)

<sup>3</sup> Two specimens of his coins were obtained by Mr. Vajeshankar Gavvishankar Naib Diwan of Bhavnagar, from Kāthiyavāda, one of which he presented to the Pandit and lent the other for the purpose of description. The legend in both was legible but doubtful. A recent find in Kāthiyavāda supplied four new specimens, two of them very good.

<sup>4</sup> Apparently a mistake for रुद्रदाम्न् पुत्रस.

<sup>5</sup> As in the case of Zanoitika the father of Chashtana, the variation दस for ञ proves that at first दस and afterwards ञ was used to represent the Greek Z.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.  
Kshatrapa IV.  
Rudradāman,  
A.D. 143-158.

Kshatrapa V.  
Dīmāzala or  
Dāmāśidasa,  
A.D. 158-168.

## Chapter XX.

The legend on the other three is :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रदाम्नः पुत्रस राज्ञोः क्षत्रपस दामाजडश्रियः

Rājño Mahākṣatrapasa Rudradāmnahputrasa Rājñah  
Kṣatrapasa Dāmājadaśriyah.

Of the king the Kṣatrapa Dāmājadaśri son of the king  
the great Kṣatrapa Rudradāma.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPS,  
A.D. 70-398.  
Kshatrapa V.  
Dāmāzāda or  
Dāmājadaśri,  
A.D. 158-168.

Dāmāzāda and Dāmājadaśri seem to be two forms of the same name, Dāmāzāda with झ for Z being the name first struck, and Dāmājadaśri, with the ordinary ज for Z, and with Śri added to adorn the name and make it more euphonic, being the later form. It will be noted that, except by his son Jivadāman, Dāmāzāda or Dāmājadaśri is not called a Mahākṣatrapa but simply a Kṣatrapa. His coins are very rare. The six mentioned are the only specimens known and are all from one find. He may therefore be supposed to have reigned as heir-apparent during the life-time of Rudradāman, or it is possible that he may have suffered loss of territory and power. His reign seems to have been short and may have terminated about 90 that is A.D. 168 or a little later.

Kshatrapa VI.  
Jivadāman,  
A.D. 178.

Dāmāzāda or Dāmājadaśri was succeeded by his son Jivadāman. All available information regarding Jivadāman is from four rare coins obtained by Pandit Bhagvānāl, which for purposes of description, he has named A, B, C, and D<sup>1</sup>. Coin A bears date 100 in Nāgarī numerals, the earliest date found on Kṣatrapa coins. On the obverse is a bust in the usual Kṣatrapa style with a plump young face of good workmanship. Round the bust is first the date 100 in Nāgarī numerals and after the date the Greek legend in letters which though clear cannot be made out. In these and in all later Kṣatrapa coins merely the form of the Greek legend remains; the letters are imitations of Greek by men who could not read the original. On the reverse is the usual arched symbol between the sun and the moon, the sun being twelve-rayed as in the older Kṣatrapa coins. Within the dotted circle in the margin is the following legend in old Nāgarī :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामश्रियः पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस जीवदाम्नः[.]

Rājño Mahākṣatrapasa Dāmaśriyahputrasa Rājño  
Mahākṣatrapasa Jivadāmanah.

Of the king the great Kṣatrapa Jivadāman son of the king  
the great Kṣatrapa Dāmaśri.

Coin B has the bust on the obverse with a face apparently older than the face in A. Unfortunately the die has slipped and the date has not been struck. Most of the Greek legend is very clear but as in coin A the result is meaningless. The letters are Κ Ι Υ Ι Υ Ζ Κ Ξ Σ Υ Λ perhaps meant for Kuzulka. On the reverse are the usual three symbols, except

<sup>1</sup> The oldest of the four was found by the Pandit for Dr. Bhanu Dāji in Amreli. A fair copy of it is given in a plate which accompanied Mr. Justice Newton's paper in Jour. B. B. R. A. S. IX, page 117, Plate I, Fig. 6. Mr. Newton read the father's name in the legend Dāmaśri, but it is Dāmājadaśri, the die having missed the letters ज्ञ and ड though space is left for them. This is coin A of the description. Of the remaining three, B was lent to the Pandit from his collection by Mr. Vajeshankar Gavrishankar. C and D were in the Pandit's collection.

that the sun has seven instead of twelve rays. The legend is :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामजडस पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस जीवदामस

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmajadasaputrasa Rājño

Mahākshatrapasa Jivadāmasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Jivadāman son of the  
king the great Kshatrapa Dāmajāda.

Coin C though struck from a different die is closely like B both on the obverse and the reverse. Neither the Greek legend nor the date is clear, though enough remains of the lower parts of the numerals to suggest the date 118. Coin D is in obverse closely like C. The date 118 is clear. On the reverse the legend and the symbols have been twice struck. The same legend occurs twice, the second striking having obliterated the last letters of the legend which contained the name of the king whose coin it is.

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामजडस पुत्रस

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmajadasaputrasa.

Of the son of the king the great Kshatrapa Dāmajāda.

In these four specimens Dāmāsri or Dāmājāda is styled Mahākshatrapa, while in his own coins he is simply called Kshatrapa. The explanation perhaps is that the known coins of Dāmāsri or Dāmājāda belong to the early part of his reign when he was subordinate to his father, and that he afterwards gained the title of Mahākshatrapa. Some such explanation is necessary as the distinction between the title Kshatrapa and Mahākshatrapa is always carefully preserved in the earlier Kshatrapa coins. Except towards the close of the dynasty no ruler called Kshatrapa on his own coins is ever styled Mahākshatrapa on the coins of his son unless the father gained the more important title during his lifetime.

The dates and the difference in the style of the used in coining A and in coining B, C, and D are worth noting as the earliest coin has the date 100 and C and D the third and fourth coins have 118. If Jivadāman's reign lasted eighteen years his coins would be common instead of very rare. But we find between 102 and 118 numerous coins of Rudrasimha son of Dāmadāman and paternal uncle of Jivadāman. These facts and the difference between the style of A and the style of B, C, and D which are apparently imitated from the coins of Rudrasimha and have a face much older than the face in A, tend to show that soon after his accession Jivadāman was deposed by his uncle Rudrasimha, on whose death or defeat in 118, Jivadāman again rose to power.

Rudrasimha the seventh Kshatrapa was the brother of Dāmājādasri. Large numbers of his coins have been found. Of thirty obtained by Dr. Bhagvānlāl twenty have the following clearly cut dates : 103, 106, 108, 109, 110, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, and 118. As the earliest year is 103 and the latest 118 it is probable that Rudrasimha deposed his nephew Jivadāman shortly after Jivadāman's accession. Rudrasimha appears to have ruled fifteen years when power again passed to his nephew Jivadāman.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.  
Kshatrapa VI.  
Jivadāman,  
A.D. 178.

Kshatrapa VII.  
Rudrasimha I.  
A.D. 181-196.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS.Kshatrapa VII.  
Rudrasimha I.  
A D. 181 - 196

The coins of Rudrasimha are of a beautiful type of good workmanship and with clear legends. The legend in old Nāgarī character reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रदामपुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसिंहस

Rājño Mahākṣhatrapasa Rudradāmaputrasa Rājño  
Mahākṣhatrapasa Rudrasimhasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Rudrasimha son of the  
king the great Kshatrapa Rudradāma.

Rudrasimha had also a copper coinage of which specimens are recorded from Mālwa but not from Kāthiāvāda. Pandit Bhagvānlāl had one specimen from Ujjain which has a bull on the obverse with the Greek legend round it and the date 117. The reverse seems to have held the entire legend of which only five letters रुद्रसिंहस (Rudrasimhasa) remain. This coin has been spoilt in cleaning.

To Rudrasimha's reign belongs the Gunda inscription carved on a stone found at the bottom of an unused well in the village of Gunda in Halīr in North Kāthiāvāda.<sup>1</sup> It is in six well preserved lines of old Nāgarī letters of the Kshatrapa type. The writing records the digging and building of a well for public use on the borders of a village named Rasopadra by the commander-in-chief Rudrabhūti an Abhira son of Senāpati Bapaka. The date is given both in words and in numerals as 103, 'in the year' of the king the Kshatrapa Svāmi Rudrasimha, apparently meaning in the year 103 during the reign of Rudrasimha. The genealogy given in the inscription is : 1 Chastana ; 2 Jayadāman ; 3 Rudradāman ; 4 Rudrasimha, the order of succession being clearly defined by the text, which says that the fourth was the great grandson of the first, the grandson of the second, and the son of the third. It will be noted that Dāmajadaśri and Jivadāman the fifth and sixth Kshatrapas have been passed over in this genealogy probably because the inscription did not intend to give a complete genealogy but only to show the descent of Rudrasimha in the direct line.

Kshatrapa VIII.  
Rudrasena,  
A D. 203 - 220

The eighth Kshatrapa was Rudrasena, son of Rudrasimha, as is clearly mentioned in the legends on his coins. His coins like his father's are found in large numbers. Of forty in Dr. Bhagvānlāl's collection twenty-seven bear the following eleven dates, 125, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 138, 140, 142. The coins are of the usual Kshatrapa type closely like Rudrasimha's coins. The Nāgarī legend reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसिंहस पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसेनस

Rājño Mahākṣhatrapasa Rudrasimhasa putrasa Rājño  
Mahākṣhatrapasa Rudrasenasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Rudrasena son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Rudrasimha.

Two copper coins square and smaller than the copper coins of

<sup>1</sup> This inscription which has now been placed for safe custody in the temple of Dwarkanath in Jamnagar, has been published by Dr. Bühler in Ind. Ant. X. 157 - 158, from a transcript by Āchārya Vallabhi Haridatta. Dr. Bhagvānlāl held that the date is 103 *trayottarasate* not 102 *dyottarasate* as read by Dr. Bühler ; that the name of the father of the donor is Bāpaka and not Bahuka ; and that the name of the *nakshatra* or constellation is Rohini not Śravana.

<sup>2</sup> Several coins have the same date.

Rudrasinha have been found in Ujjain<sup>1</sup> though none are recorded from Kāthiāvāḍa. On their obverse these copper coins have a facing bull and on the back the usual symbols and below them the year 140, but no legend. Their date and their Kshatrapa style show that they are coins of Rudrasena.\*

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-308.  
Kshatrapa VIII.  
Rudrasena,  
A.D. 203-220.

Besides coins two inscriptions one at Muliýāsar the other at Jasdan give information regarding Rudrasena. The Muliýāsar inscription, now in the library at Dwārka ten miles south-west of Muliýāsar, records the erection of an upright slab by the sons of one Vānījaka. This inscription bears date 122, the fifth of the dark half of Vaiśākha in the year 122 during the reign of Rudrasinha.<sup>2</sup> The Jasdan inscription, on a stone about five miles from Jasdan, belongs to the reign of this Kshatrapa. It is in six lines of old Kshatrapa Nāgarī characters shallow and dim with occasional engraver's mistakes, but on the whole well-preserved. The writing records the building of a pond by several brothers (names not given) of the Manasasa gotra sons of Pranāthaka and grandsons of Khara. The date is the 5th of the dark half of Bhādrapada 'in the year' 126.<sup>3</sup> The genealogy is in the following order:

Mahākshatrapa Chashtana.  
Kshatrapa Jayadāman.  
Mahākshatrapa Rudradāman.  
Mahākshatrapa Rudrasinha.  
Mahākshatrapa Rudrasena.

Each of them is called Svāpi Lord and Bhādrāmukha Luckyfaced.<sup>4</sup> As Rudrasena's reign began at least as early as 122, the second reign of Jivadāman is narrowed to four years or even less. As the latest date is 142 Rudrasena's reign must have lasted about twenty years.

After Rudrasena the next evidence on record is a coin of his son Prithivīśena found near Amreli. Its workmanship is the same as that of Rudrasena's coins. It is dated 144 that is two years later than the last date on Rudrasena's coins. The legend runs:

Kshatrapa IX.  
Prithivīśena.  
A.D. 222.

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसेनस पुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस पृथिवीसेनस

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Rudrasenasa putrasa Rājñah  
Kshatrapasa Prithivīśenasa.

Of the king the Kshatrapa Prithivīśena son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Rudrasena.

As this is the only known specimen of Prithivīśena's coinage; as the earliest coin of Prithivīśena's uncle the tenth Kshatrapa Saṅghadāman is dated 144; and also as Prithivīśena is called only Kshatrapa he seems to have reigned for a short time perhaps as Kshatrapa of Surāshtra or Kāthiāvāḍa and to have been ousted by his uncle Saṅghadāman.

Rudrasena was succeeded by his brother the Mahākshatrapa Saṅghadāman. His coins are very rare. Only two specimens have been

Kshatrapa X  
Saṅghadāman,  
A.D. 222-226.

<sup>1</sup> One is in the collection of the B. B. B. A. Society, the other belonged to the Pundit.

<sup>2</sup> An unpublished inscription found in 1865 by Mr. Bhagvānlal Sampatram.

<sup>3</sup> The top of the third numeral is broken. It may be 7 but is more likely to be 6.

<sup>4</sup> The Jasdan inscription has been published by Dr. Bhāu Dāji, J. B. R. A. S. VIII. 234ff, and by Dr. Hoernle, Ind. Ant. XII. 32ff.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

Kshatrapa N  
Sanghadaman,  
A.D. 222-226.

obtained, of which one was in the Pandit's collection the other in the collection of Mr. Vajeshankar Gavrishankar.<sup>1</sup> They are dated 145 and 144. The legend in both reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रमिहस पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस संघदाम्न [ : ]

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Rudrasmihasa putrasa Rājño  
Mahākshatrapasa : Sanghadāmna.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Sanghadaman son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Rudrasmiha,

These two coins seem to belong to the beginning of Sanghadaman's reign. As the earliest coins of his successor Damasena are dated 148 Sanghadaman's reign seems not to have lasted over four years.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Five have recently been identified in the collection of Dr. Gerson da Cunha.

- His name, the fact that he regarded the title Mahakshatrapa, and his date about A.D. 225 suggest that Sanghadaman (A.D. 222-226) may be the Sandanes whom the Periplus (McCrindle, 128) describes as taking the regular mart Kalyan near Bombay from Sandanes, that is the Dakhan Satakarnis and, to prevent it again becoming a place of trade, forbidding all Greek ships to visit Kalyan, and sending under a guard to Brouch any Greek ships that even by accident entered its port. The following reasons seem conclusive against identifying Sanghadaman with Sandanes: (1) The abbreviation from Sanghadaman to Sandanes seems excessive in the case of the name of a well known ruler who lived within thirty years of the probable time (A.D. 247) when the writer of the Periplus visited Gujarat and the Konkan. (2) The date of Sanghadaman (A.D. 222-226) is twenty to thirty years too early for the probable collection of the Periplus details: (3) Apart from the date of the Periplus the apparent distinction in the writer's mind between Sandanes' capture of Kalyan and his own time implies a longer lapse than suits a reign of only four years.

In favour of the Sandanes of the Periplus being a dynastic not a personal name is its close correspondence both in form and in geographical position with Ptolemy's (A.D. 150) Sandanes, who gave their name, Arake Sandnes or the Sandnes' Area, to the North Konkan, and, according to McCrindle (Ptolemy, 39) in the time of Ptolemy ruled the prosperous trading communities that occupied the sea coast to about Semulla or Chaul. The details in the present text show that some few years before Ptolemy wrote the conquests of Rudradaman had brought the North Konkan under the Gupta Kshatrapas. Similarly shortly before the probable date of the Periplus (A.D. 247) the fact that Sanghadaman and his successors Damasena (A.D. 226-236) and Vijayasena (A.D. 238-249) all used the title Mahakshatrapa makes their possession of the North Konkan probable. The available details of the Kathiavada Kshatrapas therefore confirm the view that the Sandanes of Ptolemy and the Sandanes of the Periplus are the Gujarat Kshatrapas. The question remains how did the Greeks come to know the Kshatrapas by the name of Sandan or Sandan. The answer seems to be the word Sandan or Sandan is the Sanskrit *Sandhana* which according to Lassen (McCrindle's Ptolemy, 40) and Williams Sanskrit Dictionary may mean agent or representative and may therefore be an accurate rendering of Kshatrapa in the sense of Viceroy. Wilford (As. Res. IX 76, 198) notices that Sanskrit writers give the early English in India the title Sandhan English. This Wilford would translate Lord but it seems rather meant for a rendering of the word Factor. Prof. Bhandarkar (Bomb. Gaz. XIII, 418 note 1) notices a tribe mentioned by the geographer Varāhamihira (A.D. 580) as *Sāntikas* and associated with the *Aparāntakas* or people of the west coast. He shows how according to the rules of letter changes the Sanskrit *Sāntika* would in Prakrit be *Sandino*. In his opinion it was this form *Sandino* which was familiar to Greek merchants and sailors. Prof. Bhandarkar holds that when (A.D. 100-110) the Kshatrapa Nahapana displaced the Satavahanas or Andhrabhritas the *Sāntikas* or *Sandino* became independent in the North Konkan and took Kalyan. To make their independence secure against the Kshatrapas they forbade intercourse between their own territory and the Dakhan and sent foreign ships to Barygaza. Against this explanation it is to be urged; (1) That Nāśik and Jūnāgar inscriptions show Nahapana supreme in the North Konkan at least up to A.D. 120, (2) That according to the Periplus the action taken by the Sandanes or Sandanes was not against the Kshatrapas but against the Satakarnis; (3) That the action was not taken in the time of Nahapana but at a later time, later not only than the first Gautamputra the conqueror of Nahapana or his son-in-law Ushavādāta (A.D. 138), but later than the second Gautamputra, who was defeated by the Kathiavada Kshatrapa Rudradaman some time before A.D. 150. (4) That if the *Sāntikas* were solely a North

Saṅghadāman was succeeded by his brother Dāmasena, whose coins are fairly common, of good workmanship, and clear lettering. Of twenty-three specimens eleven have the following dates : 148, 150, 153, 155, 156, 157, 158. The legend runs :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसिंहस पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामसेनस

Rājño Mahakshatrapasa Rudrasinhasa putrasa Rājño  
Mahakshatrapasa Dāmasenasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Dāmasena son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Rudrasinha

Dāmasena seems to have reigned ten years (148-158) as coins of his son Viradaman are found dated 158.

Dāmājadaśrī the twelfth Kshatrapa is styled son of Rudrasena probably the eighth Kshatrapa. Dāmājadaśrī's coins are rare. The legend runs :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रभेनपुत्रस राज्ञश्चत्रपस दामाजडश्रियः

Rājño Mahakshatrapasa Rudrasenaputrasa Rājñashchtrapas  
Dāmājadaśrīyah.

• Of the king the Kshatrapa Dāmājadaśrī (son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Rudrasena,

Five specimens, the only specimens on record are dated 154. As 154 falls in the reign of Dāmasena it seems probable that Dāmājadaśrī was either a governor or a viceroy or perhaps a ruler claiming independence, as about this time the authority of the main dynasty seems to have been much disputed.

Konkan tribe they would neither wish nor be able to send foreign ships to Broach. The action described in the Periplus of refusing to let Greek ships enter Kalyan and of sending all such ships to Broach was the action of a Gujarat conqueror of Kalyan determined to make foreign trade centre in his own chief emporium Broach. The only possible lord of Gujarat either in the second or third century who can have adopted such a policy was the Kshatrapa of Ujjain in Malwa and of Munagara or Junagadh in Kathiavada, the same ruler, who, to encourage foreign vessels to visit Broach had (McCandless Periplus, 118, 119) stationed native fishermen with well-manned long boats off the south Kathiavada coast to meet ships and pilot them through the tidal and other dangers tip the Narbada to Broach. It follows that the Sandanes of the Periplus and Ptolemy's North Konkan Satraps are the Gujarati Mahakshatrapas. The correctness of this identification of Sadhan with the Samkrit Sadhan and the explanation of Sadhan as a translation of Kshatrapa or ruler is confirmed by the fact that the account of Kāśikacharya in the Bhavishyavara Vritti (J. B. B. R. A. S. IX, 141-142), late in date (A.D. 1000-1100) but with notable details of the Saka or Sahi invaders, calls the Saka king Sadhana-Sinpha. If on this evidence it may be held that the Kshatrapas were known as Sadhanas, it seems to follow that Sāntika the form used by Varahamihira (A.D. 505-527) is a conscious and intentional Sanskritizing of Sadhan whose correct form and origin had passed out of knowledge, a result which would suggest conscious or artificial Sanskritizing as the explanation of the forms of many Purāṇic tribal and place names. A further important result of this inquiry is to show that the received date of A.D. 70 for the Periplus cannot stand. Now that the Kanishka era A.D. 78 is admitted to be the era used by the Kshatrapas both in the Dakhn and in Gujarāt it follows that a writer who knows the elder and the younger Satakarnis cannot be earlier than A.D. 150 and from the manner in which he refers to them must almost certainly be considerably later. This conclusion supports the date A.D. 247 which on other weighty grounds the French scholar Renaud (Ind. Ant. Dec., 1879, pp. 330, 338) has assigned to the Periplus.

1 The Pandit's coin was obtained by him in 1863 from Amroli in Kāthiavada. A copy of it is given by Mr. Justice Newton who calls Saṅghadāman son of Rudrasinha (J. B. B. R. A. S. IX, Pl. I, Fig. 7). The other specimen is better preserved.

2 One of these coins was lent to the Pandit by Mr. Vajeshankar Gavrishankar.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398,  
Kshatrapa XI.  
Dāmasena,  
A.D. 226-236.

Kshatrapa XII  
Dāmājadaśrī II  
A.D. 236.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

Kshatrapa XIII  
Vradaman,  
A.D. 236-238

After Dāmasena we find coins of three of his sons Vīradāman Yaśadāman and Vijayasena. Vīradāman's coins are dated 158 and 160, Yaśadāman's 160 and 161, and Vijayasena's earliest 160. Of the three brothers Vīradāman who is styled simply Kshatrapa probably held only a part of his father's dominions. The second brother Yaśadāman, who at first was a simple Kshatrapa, in 161 claims to be Mahākshatrapa. The third brother Vijayasena, who as early as 160, is styled Mahākshatrapa, probably defeated Yaśadāman and secured the supreme rule.

Vīradāman's coins are fairly common. Of twenty-six in Pandit Bhagvānlāl's collection, nineteen were found with a large number of his brother Vijayasena's coins. The legend reads:

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामसेनस पुत्रस राज्ञो क्षत्रपस वीरदाम्नः

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmasenasa putrasa Rājñah  
Kshatrapasa Vīradāmanah.

Of the king the Kshatrapa Vīradāman son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Dāmasena,

Of the twenty-six ten are clearly dated, six with 158 and four with 160.

Kshatrapa XIV  
Yaśadaman,  
A.D. 239.

Yaśadāman's coins are rare. Pandit Bhagvānlāl's collection contained seven.<sup>1</sup> The bust on the obverse is a good imitation of the bust on his father's coins. Still it is of inferior workmanship, and starts the practice which later Kshatrapas continued of copying their predecessor's image. On only two of the seven specimens are the dates clear, 160 and 161. The legend on the coin dated 160 is:

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामसेनस पुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस यशदाम्नः

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmasenasa putrasa Rājñah  
Kshatrapasa Yaśadāmanah.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Yaśadāman son of the  
king the great Kshatrapa Dāmasena,

On the coin dated 161 the legend runs:

राज्ञो महक्षत्रपस दामसेनस पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस यशदाम्नः

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmasenasa putrasa Rājñah  
Mahākshatrapasa Yaśadāmanah.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Yaśadāman son of the  
king the great Kshatrapa Dāmasena.

Kshatrapa XV.  
Vijayasena,  
A.D. 238-249.

Vijayasena's coins are common. As many as 167 were in the Pandit's collection. Almost all are of good workmanship, well preserved, and clearly lettered. On fifty-four of them the following dates can be clearly read, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 170, and 171. This would give Vijayasena a reign of at least eleven years from 160 to 171 (A.D. 238-249). The legend reads:

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामसेनपुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस विजयसेनस

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmasenaputrasa Rājñah  
Mahākshatrapasa Vijayasenasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Vijayasena son of the  
king the great Kshatrapa Dāmasena.

<sup>1</sup> One specimen in the collection of Mr. Vajeshankar bears date 158.

In two good specimens of Vijayasena's coins with traces of the date 186 he is styled Kshatrpa. This the Pandit could not explain.<sup>1</sup>

Vijayasena was succeeded by his brother Dāmājadaśrī III. called Mahākshatrpa on his coins. His coins which are comparatively uncommon are inferior in workmanship to the coins of Vijayasena. Of seven in the Pandit's collection three are dated 174, 175, and 176.

After Dāmājadaśrī come coins of Rudrasena II son of Virādāman, the earliest of them bearing date 178. As the latest coins of Vijayasena are dated 171, 173 may be taken as the year of Dāmājadaśrī's succession. The end of his reign falls between 176 and 178, its probable length is about five years. The legend on his coins reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामसेनपुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामाजडश्रियः

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Dāmasenapūtrasa Rājño Mahākshatrapasa  
Dāmajadaśrīyah

Of the king the great Kshatrpa Dāmājadaśrī son of the king  
the great Kshatrpa Dāmasena.

Dāmājadaśrī III. was succeeded by Rudrasena II, son of Dāmājadaśrī's brother Virādāman the thirteenth Kshatrpa. Rudrasena II.'s coins like Vijayasena's are found in great abundance. They are of inferior workmanship and inferior silver. Of eighty-four in Dr. Bhagavānlāl's collection eleven bore the following clear dates : 178, 180, 183, 185, 186, 188, and 190. The earliest of 178 probably belongs to the beginning of Rudrasena's reign as the date 176 occurs on the latest coins of his predecessor. The earliest coins of his son and successor Viśvasimha are dated 198. As Viśvasimha's coins are of bad workmanship with doubtful legend and date we may take the end of Rudrasena II.'s reign to be somewhere between 190 and 198 or about 194. This date would give Rudrasena a reign of about sixteen years, a length of rule supported by the large number of his coins. The legend reads :

राज्ञो क्षत्रपस वीरदामपुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसेनस

Rājño Kshatrapasa Virādāmapūtrasa Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Rudrasenasa.

Of the king the great Kshatrpa Rudrasena son of the  
king the Kshatrpa Virādāma.

Rudrasena was succeeded by his son Viśvasimha. In style and abundance Viśvasimha's coins are on a par with his father's. They are carelessly struck with a bad die and in most the legend is faulty often omitting the date. Of fifty-six in the Pandit's collection only four bear legible dates, one with 198, two with 200, and one with 201. The date 201 must be of the end of Viśvasimha's reign as a coin of his brother Bhartṛidāman is dated 200. It may therefore be held that Viśvasimha reigned for the six years ending 200 (A.D. 272-278). The legend reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसेनपुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस विश्वसिंहस.

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Rudrasenapūtrasa Rājñah  
Kshatrapasa Viśvasimhas

Of the king the Kshatrpa Viśvasimha son of the king  
the great Kshatrpa Rudrasena.

One of them was lent by Mr. Vajeshankar Gavrishankar.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

Kshatrpa XVI.  
Dāmājadaśrī,  
A.D. 250-255.

Kshatrpa XVII.  
Rudrasena II.  
A.D. 256-272.

Kshatrpa XVIII.  
Viśvasimha,  
A.D. 272-278.

**Chapter V.**

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

Kshatrapa XIX.  
Bhartridāman,  
A.D. 278-291.

It is not known whether Viśvasimha's loss of title was due to his being subordinate to some overlord, or whether during his reign the Kshatrapas suffered defeat and loss of territory. The probable explanation seems to be that he began his reign in a subordinate position and afterwards rose to supreme rule.

Vi-vasimha was succeeded by his brother Bhartridāman.<sup>1</sup> His coins which are found in large numbers are in style and workmanship inferior even to Viśvasimha's coins. Of forty-five in the Pandit's collection seven bear the dates 202, 207, 210, 211, and 214. As the earliest coin of his successor is dated 218, Bhartridāman's reign seems to have lasted about fourteen years from 202 to 216 (A.D. 278-291). Most of the coin legends style Bhartridāman Mahākshatrapa though in a few he is simply styled Kshatrapa. This would seem to show that like his brother Viśvasimha he began as a Kshatrapa and afterwards gained the rank and power of Mahākshatrapa.

In Bhartridāman's earlier coins the legend reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसेनपुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस भर्तृदाग्नः

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Rudrasenaputrasa Rājñah  
Kshatrapasa Bhartridāmanah.

Of the king the Kshatrapa Bhartridāman son of the king  
the great Kshatrapa Rudrasena.

In the later coins the legend is the same except that महाक्षत्रपस the great Kshatrapa takes the place of क्षत्रपस the Kshatrapa.

Kshatrapa XX.  
Viśvasena,  
A.D. 291-300.

Bhartridāman was succeeded by his son Viśvasena the twentieth Kshatrapa. His coins are fairly common, and of bad workmanship, the legend imperfect and carelessly struck, the obverse rarely dated. Of twenty-five in Dr. Bhagvānlāl's collection, only three bear doubtful dates one 218 and two 222. The legend reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस भर्तृदामपुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस विश्वसेनस,

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Bhartridāmaputrasa Rājñah  
Kshatrapasa Viśvasenasas.

Of the king the Kshatrapa Viśvasena son of the king the  
Mahākshatrapa Bhartridāman.

It would seem from the lower title of Kshatrapa which we find given to Viśvasena and to most of the later Kshatrapas that from about 220 (A.D. 298) the Kshatrapa dominion lost its importance.

A hoard of coins found in 1861 near Karād on the Krishna, thirty-one miles south of Sātara, suggests<sup>2</sup> that the Kshatrapas retained the North Konkan and held a considerable share of the West Dakhan down to the time of Viśvasena (A.D. 300). The hoard includes coins of the six following rulers: Vijayasena (A.D. 238-249), his brother Dāmājadasī III. (A.D. 251-255), Rudrasena II. (A.D. 256-272) son of Viśvādaman, Viśvasimha (A.D. 272-278) son of Rudrasena, Bhartridāman (A.D. 278-291) son of Rudrasena II., and Viśvasena (A.D. 296-300) son of Bhartridāman. It may be argued that this Karād hoard is of no historical value being the chance importation of some Gujarāt pilgrim to the Krishna. The following considerations favour the

<sup>1</sup> This name has generally been read Atridāman      <sup>2</sup> Jour. B. B. R. A. S. VII. 16.

view that the contents of the hoard furnish evidence of the local rule of the kings whose coins have been found at Karād. The date (A.D. 238-249) of Vijayasena, the earliest king of the hoard, agrees well with the spread of Gujarāt power in the Dakhan as it follows the overthrow both of the west (A.D. 180-200) and of the east (A.D. 220) Śātakarnis, while it precedes the establishment of any later west Dakhan dynasty: (2) All the kings whose coins occur in the hoard were Mahākshatrapas and from the details in the Periplus (A.D. 247), the earliest, Vijayasena, must have been a ruler of special wealth and power: (3) That the coins cease with Viśvasena (A.D. 296-300) is in accord with the fact that Viśvasena was the last of the direct line of Chashtana, and that with or before the close of Viśvasena's reign the power of the Gujarāt Kshatrapas declined. The presumption that Kshatrapa power was at its height during the reigns of the kings whose coins have been found at Karād is strengthened by the discovery at Amravati in the Berars of a hoard of coins of the Mahākshatrapa Rudrasena (II.) (A.D. 256-272) son of the Mahākshatrapa Dharmajadāri.<sup>1</sup>

Whether the end of Chashtana's direct line was due to their conquest by some other dynasty or to the failure of heirs is doubtful. Whatever may have been the cause, after an interval of about seven years (A.D. 300-308) an entirely new king appears, Rudrasimha son of Jivadāman. As Rudrasimha's father Jivadāman is simply called Svami he may have been some high officer under the Kshatrapa dynasty. That Rudrasimha is called a Kshatrapa may show that part of the Kshatrapa dominion which had been lost during the reign of Viśvasena was given to some distant member or scion of the Kshatrapa dynasty of the name of Rudrasimha. The occurrence of political changes is further shown by the fact that the coins of Rudrasimha are of a better type than those of the preceding Kshatrapas. Rudrasimha's coins are fairly common. Of twelve in Dr. Bhagvānlāl's collection five are clearly dated, three 230, one 231, and one 240. This leaves a blank of seven years between the last date of Viśvasena and the earliest date of Rudrasimha. The legend reads.

स्वामिजीवदामपुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस रुद्रसिंहस

Svami Jivadāma, putra Rajñah Kshatrapasa Rudrasimhasa

Of the king the Kshatrapa Rudrasimha son of Svami Jivadāman.

Rudrasimha was succeeded by his son Yaśadāman whose coins are rather rare. Of three in Dr. Bhagvānlāl's collection two are dated 289, apparently the first year of Yaśadāman's reign as his father's latest coins are dated 240. Like his father Yaśadāman is simply called Kshatrapa. The legend reads:

राज्ञः क्षत्रपस रुद्रसिंहपुत्रस राज्ञः क्षत्रपस यशदाम्नः

Rajñah Kshatrapasa Rudrasimhaputrasa Rajñah  
Kshatrapasa Yaśadāmanah.

Of the king the Kshatrapa Yaśadāman son of the  
king the Kshatrapa Rudrasimha.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-308.

Kshatrapa XX.  
Viśvasena,  
A.D. 294-300.

Kshatrapa XXI.  
Rudrasimha,  
A.D. 308-311

Kshatrapa XXII.  
Yaśadāman,  
A.D. 320.

<sup>1</sup> See below Chapter VI. page 57.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

Kshatrapa  
XXIII.  
Damasiri,  
A.D. 320

The coins found next after Yaśadāman's are those of Dāmasiri who was probably the brother of Yaśadāman as he is mentioned as the son of Rudrasimha. The date though not very clear is apparently 242. Only one coin of Dāmasiri's is recorded. In the style of face and in the form of letters it differs from the coins of Yaśadāman, with which except for the date and the identity of the father's name any close connection would seem doubtful. The legend on the coin of Dāmasiri reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस रुद्रसिंहस पुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस दामसिरिस.

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Rudrasimhasaputrasa Rājño

Mahākshatrapasa Damasirisa.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Damasiri son of the king the great Kshatrapa Rudrasimha.

It will be noted that in this coin both Rudrasimha and Dāmasiri are called great Kshatrapas, while in his own coin and in the coins of his son Yaśadāman, Rudrasimha is simply styled Kshatrapa. It is possible that Damasiri may have been more powerful than Yaśadāman and consequently taken to himself the title of Mahākshatrapa. The application of the more important title to a father who in life had not enjoyed the title is not an uncommon practice among the later Kshatrapas. The rarity of Damasiri's coins shows that his reign was short.

After Damasiri comes a blank of about thirty years. The next coin is dated 270. The fact that, contrary to what might have been expected, the coins of the later Kshatrapas are less common than those of the earlier Kshatrapas, seems to point to some great political change during the twenty-seven years ending 270 (A.D. 321-348).

Kshatrapa  
XXIV.  
Rudrasena,  
A.D. 348-376

The coin dated 270 belongs to Svāmī Rudrasena son of Svāmī Rudradāman both of whom the legend styles Mahākshatrapas. The type of the coin dated 270 is clearly adapted from the type of the coins of Yaśadāman. Only two of Rudrasena's coins dated 270 are recorded. But later coins of the same Kshatrapa of a different style are found in large numbers. Of fifty-four in the Pandit's collection, twelve have the following dates 288, 290, 292, 293, 294, 296, and 298. The difference in the style of the two sets of coins and the blank between 270 and 288 leave no doubt that during those years some political change took place. Probably Rudrasena was for a time overthrown but again came to power in 288 and maintained his position till 298. Besides calling both himself and his father Mahākshatrapas Rudrasena adds to both the attribute Svāmī. As no coin of Rudrasena's father is recorded it seems probable the father was not an independent ruler and that the legend on Rudrasena's coins is a further instance of a son ennobling his father. The legend is the same both in the earlier coins of 270 and in the later coins ranging from 288 to 298. It reads :

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस स्वामिरुद्रदामपुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस स्वामिरुद्रसेनस.

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Svāmī Rudradāmaputrasa Rājño

Mahākshatrapasa Svāmī Rudrasenasas.

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Svāmī Rudrasena son of the king the great Kshatrapa Svāmī Rudradāman.

After Rudrasena come coins of Kshatrapa Rudrasena son of Satyasena. These coins are fairly common. Of five in the Pandit's collection through faulty minting none are dated. General Cunningham mentions coins of Kshatrapa Rudrasena dated 300, 301, and 310.<sup>1</sup> This would seem to show that he was the successor of Rudrasena son of Rudradaman and that his reign extended to over 310. The legend on these coins runs:

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस स्वामिसत्यमेनपुत्रस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस स्वामिरुद्रसेनस.

Rājño Mahakshatrapasa Svāmī Satyasenaputrasa Rājño

• Mahakshatrapasa Svāmī Rudrasenasa

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Svāmī Rudrasena son  
of the king the great Kshatrapa Svāmī Satyasena

Of Rudrasena's father Satyasena no coin is recorded and as this Rudrasena immediately succeeds Rudrasena IV, son of Rudradaman, there is little doubt that Satyasena was not an actual ruler with the great title Mahakshatrapa, but that this was an honorific title given to the father when his son attained to sovereignty. General Cunningham records that a coin of this Rudrasena IV, was found along with a coin of Chahabragupta II in a *stupa* at Sultānganj on the Ganges about fifteen miles south-east of Mongir.<sup>2</sup>

With Rudrasena IV, the evidence from coins comes almost to a close. Only one coin in Dr. Bhagvānlāl's collection is clearly later than Rudrasena IV. In the form of the bust and the style of the legend on the reverse this specimen closely resembles the coins of Rudrasena IV. Unfortunately owing to imperfect stamping it bears no date. The legend reads:

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस स्वामि रुद्रसेनस राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपस सखीयस्य स्वामिमिहमेनस,

Rājño Mahakshatrapasa Svāmī Rudrasenasa Rājño Mahakshatrapasa  
Saxīyasya Svāmī Simhasenasa

Of the king the great Kshatrapa Svāmī Simhasena, sister's son of  
the king the great Kshatrapa Svāmī Rudrasena

This legend would seem to show that Rudrasena IV, left no issue and was succeeded by his nephew Simhasena. The extreme rarity of Simhasena's coins proves that his reign was very short.

The bust and the characters on one other coin show it to be of later date than Simhasena. Unfortunately the legend is not clear. Something like the letters राज्ञो क्षत्रपस Rājño Kshatrapasa may be traced in one place and something like पुत्रस स्कन्द Putrasa Skanda in another place. Dr. Bhagvānlāl took this to be a Gujjarāt Kshatrapa of unknown lineage from whom the Kshatrapa dominion passed to the Guptas.

Along with the coins of the regular Kshatrapas coins of a Kshatrapa of unknown lineage named Īśvaradatta have been found in Kāthiāváda. In general style, in the bust and the corrupt Greek legend on the obverse, and in the form of the old Nāgarī legend

### Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398  
Kshatrapa XXV  
Rudrasena,  
A.D. 374-388.

Kshatrapa  
XXVI  
Simhasena

Kshatrapa  
XXVII  
Skanda.

Īśvaradatta,  
A.D. 230-250

<sup>1</sup> Cunningham's Arch. Sur. X. 127; XV. 29-30.

<sup>2</sup> This coin of Rudrasena may have been taken so far from Gujjarāt by the Gujjarāt monk in whose honour the *stupa* was built.

**Chapter V.**

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.  
Kshatrapa  
XXVIII.  
Íśvara latta,  
A.D. 230-250

on the reverse, Íśvaradatta's coins closely resemble those of the fifteenth Kshatrapa Vijayasena (A.D. 238-249). At the same time the text of the Nágari legend differs from that on the reverse of the Kshatrapa coins by omitting the name of the ruler's father and by showing in words Íśvaradatta's date in the year of his own reign. The legend is:

राज्ञो महाक्षत्रपम ईश्वरदत्तम वर्षे प्रथमे,

Rājño Mahākshatrapasa Íśvaradattasa varṣhe prathamē.  
In the first year of the king the great Kshatrapa Íśvaradatta.

Most of the recorded coins of Íśvaradatta have this legend. In one specimen the legend is

वर्षे द्वितीये.

Varṣhe dvitīye.  
In the second year.

It is clear from this that Íśvaradatta's reign did not last long. His peculiar name and his separate date leave little doubt that he belonged to some distinct family of Kshatrapas. The general style of his coins shows that he cannot have been a late Kshatrapa while the fact that he is called Mahākshatrapa seems to show he was an independent ruler. No good evidence is available for fixing his date. As already mentioned the workmanship of his coins brings him near to Vijayasena (A.D. 238-249). Nāsik Cave X. the letters of Inscription XV. closely correspond with the letters of the legends on Kshatrapa coins, and probably belong to almost the same date as the inscription of Rudradaman on the Gīrnār rock that is to about A.D. 150. The absence of any record of the Andhras except the name of the king Madharīputa Śiśena or Sakasena (A.D. 180), makes it probable that after Yājñavalkī Gautamīputra (A.D. 150) Andhra power waned along the Konkan and South Gujarat seaboard. According to the Purāṇas the Abhīras succeeded to the dominion of the Andhras. It is therefore possible that the Abhīra king Íśvarasena of Nāsik Inscription XV. was one of the Abhīra conquerors of the Andhras who took from them the West Dakhan. A migration of Abhīras from Ptolemy's Abiria in Upper Sindh through Sindh by sea to the Konkan and thence to Nāsik is within the range of possibility. About fifty years later king Íśvaradatta<sup>1</sup> who was perhaps of the same family as the Abhīra king of the Nāsik inscription seems to have conquered the kingdom of Kshatrapa Vijayasena, adding Gujarāt, Kāthiāvāḍa, and part of the Dakhan to his other territory. In honour of this great conquest he may have taken the title Mahākshatrapa and struck coins in the Gujarāt Kshatrapa style but in an era reckoned from the date of his own conquest. Íśvaradatta's success was shortlived. Only two years later (that is about A.D. 252) the Mahākshatrapa Dāmājadāsri won back the lost Kshatrapa territory. The fact that Íśvaradatta's recorded coins belong to only two years and that the break between the regular

<sup>1</sup> Íśvaradatta's name ends in *datta* as does also that of Śivadatta the father of king Íśvarasena of the Nāsik inscription.

## Chapter V.

WESTERN  
KSHATRAPAS,  
A.D. 70-398.

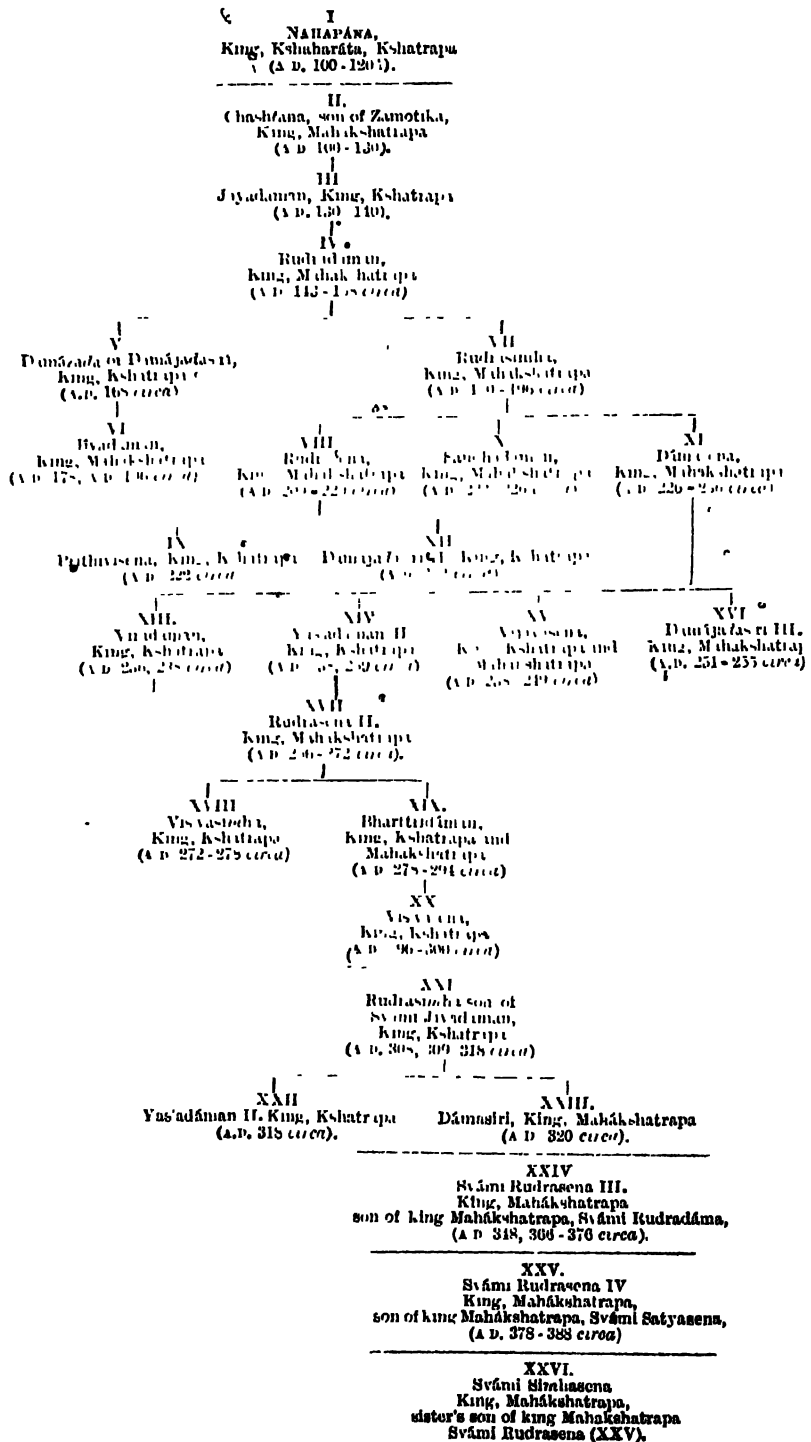
Kshatrapas Vijayasena and Dámájadasrí did not last more than two or three years gives support to this explanation.<sup>1</sup>

The following table gives the genealogy of the Western Kshatrapas :

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Bhagv. nil's suggestion that Vijayasena (A.D. 238-249) was defeated by the Abhíra or Ahir king Íśvaradatta who entered Gujart from the North Konkan seems open to question. First as regards the suggestion that Vijayasena was the Kshatrapa whose power Íśvaradatta overthrew it is to be noticed that though the two coinless years (A.D. 249-251) between the last coin of Vijayasena and the earliest coin of Dámájadasrí agree with the recorded length of Íśvaradatta's supremacy the absence of coins is not in itself proof of a reverse or loss of Kshatrapa power between the reigns of Vijayasena and Dámájadasrí. It is true the Pandit considers that Íśvaradatta's coins closely resemble those of Vijayasena. At the same time he also (Nasik Stat. Acct. 624) thought them very similar to Viradaman's (A.D. 236-238) coins. Viradaman's date so immediately precedes Vijayasena's that in many respects their coins must be closely alike. It is to be noted that A.D. 230-235 the time of rival Kshatrapas among whom Viradaman was one (especially the time between A.D. 236 and 238 during which none of the rivals assumed the title Mahakshatrapa) was suitable to (perhaps was the result of) a successful invasion by Íśvaradatta, and that this same invasion may have been the cause of the transfer of the capital, noted in the Periplus (A.D. 247) as having taken place some years before, from Ozene or Ujjan to Minnagara or Junagadh (McCrindle, 114, 122). On the other hand the fact that Vijayasena regarded the title of Mahakshatrapa and handed it to his successor Dámájadasrí III. would seem to show that no reverse or humiliation occurred during the coinless years (A.D. 249-251) between their reigns a supposition which is supported by the flourishing state of the kingdom at the time of the Periplus (A.D. 247) and also by the evidence that both the above Kshatrapas ruled near Karad in Sátira. At the same time if the difference between Viradaman's and Vijayasena's coins is sufficient to make it unlikely that Íśvaradatta's can be copies of Viradaman's it seems possible that the year of Íśvaradatta's overlordship may be the year A.D. 244 (K. 166) in which Vijayasena's coins bear the title Kshatrapa, and that the assumption of this lower title in the middle of a reign, which with this exception throughout claims the title Mahakshatrapa, may be due to the temporary necessity of acknowledging the supremacy of Íśvaradatta. With reference to the Pandit's suggestion that Íśvaradatta was an Abhíra the fact noted above of a trace of Kshatrapa rule at Karad thirty-one miles south of Sátira together with the fact that they held Apurata or the Konkan makes it probable that they reached Karad by Chiplún and the Kumbhárli pass. That the Kshatrapas entered the Dakhan by so southerly a route instead of by some one of the more central Thána passes, seems to imply the presence of some hostile power in Nasik and Khandesh. This after the close of the second century A.D. could hardly have been the Andhras or Satakarnis. It may therefore be presumed to have been the Andhras' successors the Abhíras. As regards the third suggestion that Kshatrapa Gujart was overrun from the North Konkan it is to be noted that the evidence of connection between Vijayasena of the Nasik inscription (Cave X. No 15) and Íśvaradatta of the coins is limited to a probable nearness in time and a somewhat slight similarity in name. On the other hand no inscription or other record points to Abhíra ascendancy in the North Konkan south Gujart. The presence of an Abhíra power in the North Konkan seems inconsistent with Kshatrapa rule at Kalyan and Karad in the second half of the third century. The position allotted to Abhíra in the Periplus (McCrindle, 113) inland from Surastrene, apparently in the neighbourhood of Thar and Pákar; the finding of Íśvaradatta's coins in Káthiaváda (Nasik Gazetteer, XIII. 624); and (perhaps between A.D. 230 and 240) the transfer westwards of the headquarters of the Kshatrapa kingdom seem all to point to the east rather than to the south, as the side from which Íśvaradatta invaded Gujart. At the same time the reference during the reign of Rudrasimha I. (A.D. 181) to the Abhíra Rudrabhúti who like his father was Senapati or Commander-in-Chief suggests that Íśvaradatta may have been not a foreigner but a revolted general. This supposition, his assumption of the title Mahakshatrapa, and the finding of his coins only in Káthiaváda to a certain extent confirm.

**Chapter V.**  
**The Kshatrapa**  
**Family Tree.**

**THE WESTERN KSHATRAPAS.**



## CHAPTER VI.

### THE TRAIKÚTAKAS

(A.D. 250-450.)

THE materials regarding the Traikútakas, though meagre, serve to show that they were a powerful dynasty who rose to consequence about the time of the middle Kshatrapas (A.D. 250). All the recorded information is in two copperplates, one the Kanheri copperplate found by Dr. Bird in 1839,<sup>1</sup> the other a copperplate found at Párdi near Balsár in 1885.<sup>2</sup> Both plates are dated, the Kanheri plate 'in the year two hundred and forty-five of the increasing rule of the Traikútakas'; the Párdi plate in Samvat 207 clearly figured. The Kanheri plate contains nothing of historical importance; the Párdi plate gives the name of the donor as Dahrasena or Dharasena 'the illustrious great king of the Traikútakas.' Though it does not give any royal name the Kanheri plate expressly mentions the date as the year 245 of the increasing rule of the Traikútakas. The Párdi plate gives the name of the king as 'of the Traikútakas' but merely mentions the date as Sam. 207. This date though not stated to be in the era of the Traikutakas must be taken to be dated in the same era as the Kanheri plate seeing that the style of the letters of both plates is very similar.

The initial date must therefore have been started by the founder of the dynasty and the Kanheri plate proves the dynasty must have lasted at least 215 years. The Párdi plate is one of the earliest copper-plate grants in India. Neither the genealogy nor even the usual three generations including the father and grandfather are given, nor like later plates does it contain a wealth of attributes. The king is called 'the great king of the Traikútakas,' the performer of the *asvamedha* or horse-sacrifice, a distinction bespeaking a powerful sovereign. It may therefore be supposed that Dahrasena held South Gujaraṭ to the Narkida together with part of the North Konkan and of the Ghát and Dakhan plateau.

What then was the initial date of the Traikútakas? Ten Gujarát copper-plates of the Gurjjaras and Chalukyas are dated in an unknown era with Sam. followed by the date figures as in the Párdi plate and as in Gupta inscriptions. The earliest is the fragment from Sāukhedá in the Baroda State dated Sam 316, which would fall in the reign of Dadda I. of Broach.<sup>3</sup> Next come the two Kaira grants of the Gurjjara king Dadda Prasāntarāga dated Sam. 380 and Sam. 385<sup>4</sup>; and the Sāukhedá grant of Ranagraha dated Sam. 391<sup>5</sup>; then the Kaira grant of the Chalukya king Vijayarāja or Vijayavarman dated Samvatsara 394<sup>6</sup>; then the Bagumrá grant of the Sendraka chief Nikumbhalla-

**Chapter VI.**  
**TRAIKÚTAKAS,**  
A.D. 250-450.  
Two Plates.

Initial Date.

<sup>1</sup> Cave Temple Inscriptions, Bom. Arch. Sur. Sep. Number XI. page 57ff.

<sup>2</sup> J. B. B. A. S. XVI. 346. <sup>3</sup> Epigraphia Indica, II. 19. <sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 81ff.

<sup>5</sup> Ep. Ind. II. 20.

<sup>6</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 248ff. Dr. Bhandárkar (Early Hist. of the Deccan, 42 note 7) has given reasons for believing this grant to be a forgery.

## Chapter VI.

TRAIKUTAKAS,  
A.D. 250-450.

Initial Date.

śakti<sup>1</sup>; two grants from Navsāri and Surat of the Chalukya king Śīlāditya Śrīyāsraya dated 421 and 443<sup>2</sup>; two the Navsāri and Kāvī grants of the Gurjjara king Jayabhata dated respectively Sam. 456 and Sam. 486<sup>3</sup>; and a grant of Pulakesi dated Samvat 490.<sup>4</sup>

Of these the grant dated 421 speaks of Śīlāditya Śrīyāsraya as Yuvarāja or heir-apparent and as the son of Jayasimhavarman. The plate further shows that Jayasimhavarman was brother of Vikramāditya and son of Pulakesi Vallabha 'the conqueror of the northern king Harshavardhana.' The name Jayasimhavarman does not occur in any copperplate of the main line of the Western Chalukyas of the Dakhan. That he is called Mahārāja or great king and that his son Śīlāditya is called Yuvarāja or heir-apparent suggest that Jayasimhavarman was the founder of the Gujarāt branch of the Western Chalukyas and that his great Dakhan brother Vikramāditya was his overlord, a relation which would explain the mention of Vikramāditya in the genealogy of the copper-plate. Vikramāditya's reign ended in A.D. 680 (Saka 602).<sup>5</sup> Supposing our grant to be dated in this last year of Vikramāditya, Samvat 421 should correspond to Saka 602, which gives Saka 181 or A.D. 259 as the initial date of the era in which the plate is dated. Probably the plate was dated earlier in the reign of Vikramāditya giving A.D. 250. In any case the era used cannot be the Gupta era whose initial year is now finally settled to be A.D. 319.

The second grant of the same Śīlāditya is dated Samvat 443. In it, both in an eulogistic verse at the beginning and in the text of the genealogy, Vinayāditya Satyāsraya Vallabha is mentioned as the paramount sovereign which proves that by Samvat 443 Vikramāditya had been succeeded by Vinayāditya. The reign of Vinayāditya has been fixed as lasting from Saka 602 to Saka 618 that is from A.D. 680 to A.D. 696-97.<sup>6</sup> Taking Saka 615 or A.D. 693 to correspond with Samvat 443, the initial year of the era is A.D. 250.

The grant of Pulakesivallabha Janāśraya dated Samvat 490, mentions Mangalarasārāya as the donor's elder brother and as the son of Jayasimhavarman. And a Balsār grant whose donor is mentioned as Mangalarāja son of Jayasimhavarman, apparently the same as the Mangalarasārāya of the plate just mentioned, is dated Saka 653.<sup>7</sup> Placing the elder brother about ten years before the younger we get Samvat 480 as the date of Mangalarāja, which, corresponding with Saka 653 or A.D. 730-31, gives A.D. 730 minus 480 that is A.D. 250-51 as the initial year of the era in which Pulakesi's grant is dated. In the Navsāri plates, which record a gift by the Gurjjara king Jayabhata in Samvat 456, Dadda II. the donor of the Kaira grants which bear date 380 and 385, is mentioned in the genealogical part at the beginning as 'protecting the lord of Valabhi who had been defeated by the great lord the illustrious Harshadeva.' Now the great Harshadeva or Harsha Vardhana of Kanauj whose court was visited by the Chinese pilgrim Hiuen

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. XVIII. 265ff.<sup>2</sup> J. B. R. A. S. XVI. 1ff. ; Trans. Vienna Or. Congress, 210ff.<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 70ff. and V. 109ff.<sup>4</sup> Trans. Vienna Or. Congress, 210ff.<sup>5</sup> Fleet's Kānārese Dynasties, 27.<sup>6</sup> Fleet's Kānārese Dynasties, 27.<sup>7</sup> Ind. Ant. XIV. 75 and Jour. B. B. R. A. S. XVI. 1ff.

Tsiang between A.D. 629 and 645, reigned according to Reinaud from A.D. 607 to about A.D. 648. Taking A.D. 250 as the initial year of the era of the Kaira plates, Dadda II.'s dates 380 and 385, corresponding to A.D. 630 and 635, fall in the reign of Harshavardhana.

These considerations seem to show that the initial date of the Traikútaka era was at or about A.D. 250 which at once suggests its identity with the Chedi or Kalachuri era.<sup>1</sup> The next question is, Who were these Traikútas. The meaning of the title seems to be kings of Trikúta. Several references seem to point to the existence of a city named Trikúta on the western seaboard. In describing Raghu's triumphant progress the Rámáyana and the Raghuvamśa mention him as having established the city of Trikúta in Aparánta on the western seaboard.<sup>2</sup> Trikútakam or Trikútam, a Sanskrit name for sea salt seems a reminiscence of the time when Trikúta was the emporium from which Konkan salt was distributed over the Dakhan. The scanty information regarding the territory ruled by the Traikútas is in agreement with the suggestion that Junnar in North Poona was the probable site of their capital and that in the three ranges that encircle Junnar we have the origin of the term Trikúta or Three-Peaked.

Of the race or tribe of the Traikútas nothing is known. The conjecture may be offered that they are a branch of the Abhíra kings of the Puráṇas, one of whom is mentioned in Inscription XV. of Násik Cave X. which from the style of the letters belongs to about A.D. 150 to 200. The easy connection between Násik and Balsúr by way of Peth (Peint) and the nearness in time between the Násik inscription and the initial date of the Traikútas support this conjecture. The further suggestion may be offered that the founder of the line of Traikútas was the Íśvaradatta, who, as noted in the Kshatrapa chapter, held the overlordship of Káthiáwáda as Mahákshatrapa, perhaps during the two years A.D. 248 and 249, a result in close agreement with the conclusions drawn from the examination of the above quoted Traikútaka and Chalukya copperplates. As noted in the Kshatrapa chapter after two years' supremacy Íśvaradatta seems to have been defeated and regular Kshatrapa rule restored about A.D. 252 (K. 174) by Dímaśaśrí son of Vijayasena. The unbroken use of the title Mahákshatrapa, the moderate and uniform lengths of the reigns, and the apparently unquestioned successions suggest, what the discovery of Kshatrapa coins at Karád near Sátára in the Dakhan and at Amrávati in the Berárs seems to imply, that during the second half of the third century Kshatrapa rule was widespread and firmly established.<sup>3</sup> The conjecture may be offered that Rudrasena (A.D. 256-272) whose coins have been found in Amrávati in the Berárs spread his power at the expense of the Traikútas driving them towards the Central Provinces where they established themselves at Tripura and Kálanjara.<sup>4</sup> Further that under Bráhma

## Chapter VI.

TRAIKUTAKAS,  
A.D. 250-450.

Initial Date.

Their Race  
or Tribe.

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 9) and Sir A. Cunningham (Arch. Sur. IX. 77) agree in fixing A.D. 250 as the initial date of the Chedi era. Prof. Kielhorn has worked out the available dates and finds that the first year of the era corresponds to A.D. 249-50. Ind. Ant. XVII. 215.

<sup>2</sup> Válmiki's Rámáyana, Ganpat Krishnaji's Edition; Raghuvamśa, IV. 59.

<sup>3</sup> For details see above page 48.

<sup>4</sup> Tripura four miles west of Jabalpur; Kálanjara 140 miles north of Jabalpur.

## Chapter VI.

TRAIKÚTAKAS,  
A.D. 250-450.

Their Race  
or Tribe.

influence, just as the Gurjjaras called themselves descendants of Karna the hero of the Mahābhārata, and the Pallavas claimed to be of the Bhāradvāja stock, the Traikútakas forgot their Abhīra origin and claimed descent from the Hahayas. Again as the Valabhis (A.D. 480-767) adopted the Gupta era but gave it their own name so the rulers of Tripura seem to have continued the original Traikútaka era of A.D. 248-9 under the name of the Chedi era. The decline of the Kshatrapas dates from about A.D. 300 the rule of Vāsvasena the twentieth Kshatrapa son of Bhartridāman. The subsequent disruption of the Kshatrapa empire was probably the work of their old neighbours and foes the Traikútakas, who, under the name of Hahayas, about the middle of the fifth century (A.D. 455-6) rose to supremacy and established a branch at their old city of Trikūta ruling the greater part of the Bombay Dakhan and South Gujarāt and probably filling the blank between A.D. 410 the fall of the Kshatrapas and A.D. 500 the rise of the Chālukyas.

About 1887 Pandit Bhagvānlāl secured nine of a hoard of 500 silver coins found at Daman in South Gujarāt. All are of one king a close imitation of the coins of the latest Kshatrapas. On the obverse is a bust of bad workmanship and on the reverse are the usual Kshatrapa symbols encircled with the legend:

महाराजेंद्रवर्मपुत्रपरमवैष्णवश्रीमहाराजरुद्रगण :

Mahārājendravarmaputia Parama Vaishnava  
Śrī Mahārāja Rudragana.

The devoted Vaishnava the illustrious king Rudragana  
son of the great king Indravarma

At Karād, thirty-one miles south of Sātara, Mr. Justice Newton obtained a coin of this Rudragana, with the coins of many Kshatrapas including Viśvasimha son of Bhartridāman who ruled up to A.D. 300. This would favour the view that Rudragana was the successful rival who wrested the Dakhan and North Konkan from Viśvasimha. The fact that during the twenty years after Viśvasimha (A.D. 300-320) none of the Kshatrapas has the title Mahākshatrapa seems to show they ruled in Kāthiāvāda as tributaries of this Rudragana and his descendants of the Traikútaka family. The Dahrasena of the Pardi plate whose inscription date is 207, that is A.D. 157, may be a descendant of Rudragana. The Traikútaka kingdom would thus seem to have flourished at least till the middle of the fifth century. Somewhat later, or at any rate after the date of the Kanheri plate (215 = A.D. 195), it was overthrown by either the Mauryas or the Guptas.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> That the era used by the Gurjjaras and Chālukyas of Gujarāt was the Chedi era may be regarded as certain since the discovery of the Śāṅkhedā grant of Nirihullaka (Ep. Ind. II 21), who speaks of a certain Śaṅkarapa as his overlord. Palaeographically this grant belongs to the sixth century, and Dr. Bühler has suggested that Śaṅkarapa is the Chedi Śaṅkarapa whose son Buddharāja was defeated by Mangalīśa some time before A.D. 602 (Ind. Ant. XIX 16). If this is accepted, the grant shows that the Chedis or Kalachuris were in power in the Narbāda valley during the sixth century, which explains the prevalence of their era in South Gujarāt. Chedi rule in the Narbāda valley must have come to an end about A.D. 580 when Dadda I. established himself at Broach. It being established that the Kalachuris once ruled in South Gujarāt, there is no great difficulty in the way of identifying the Traikútakas with them. The two known Traikútaka grants are dated in the third century of their era, and belong palaeographically to the fifth century A.D. Their era, therefore, like that of the Kalachuris, begins in the third century A.D.; and it is simpler to suppose that the two eras were the same than

## Chapter VI.

TRAIKŪTAKAS,  
A.D. 250-450.

that two different eras, whose initial points were only a few years apart, were in use in the same district. Now that the Saka and the Vikrama eras are known to have had different names at different times, the change in the name of the era offers no special difficulty. This identification would carry back Kalachuri rule in South Gujarāt to at least A.D. 455-6, the date of the Pārsh grant and it is worth noting that Varahamihira (Br. Samh. XIV. 20) places the Haihayas or Kalachuris in the west along with the Aparāntakas or Konkānis.

Though the name Traikūtaka means of Trikūta, the authorities quoted by Dr Bhagvān-lāl do not establish the existence of a city called Trikuta. They only vouch for a mountain of that name somewhere in the Western Ghāts, and there is no evidence of any special connection with Junnar. Further, the word Trikūtakam seems to mean rock-salt, not sea-salt, so that there is here no special connection with the Western coast. Wherever Trikūta may have been, there seems no need to reject the tradition that connects the rise of the Kalachuris with their capture of Kalanjara (Cunningham's Arch. Surv. IX 77ff), as it is more likely that they advanced from the East down the Nerbuddā than that their original seats were on the West Coast, as the Western Indian inscriptions of the third and fourth centuries contain no reference either to Traikūtakas or to Junnar or other western city as Trikuta.

With reference to the third suggestion that the Traikūtakas twice overthrew the Kshatrapas, under Śvaradatta in A.D. 248 and under Rudragana in A.D. 310-320, it is to be noted that there is no evidence to show that Śvaradatta was either an Abhira or a Traikūtaka and that the identification of his date with A.D. 248-250 seems less probable than with either A.D. 244 or A.D. 236 (Compare above Footnote page 53). Even if Śvaradatta's supremacy coincided with A.D. 250 the initial date of the Traikūtaka era, it seems improbable that a king who reigned only two years and left no successor should have had any connection with the establishment of an era which is not found in use till two centuries later. As regards Rudragana it may be admitted that he belonged to the race or family who weakened Kshatrapa power early in the fourth century A.D. At the same time there seems no reason to suppose that Rudragana was a Traikūtaka or a Kalachuri except the fact that his name, like that of Sankaragana, is a compound of the word *gana* and a name of Śiva, while the irregular posthumous use of the title Mahākshatrapa among the latest (23rd to 26th) Kshatrapas favours the view that they remained independent till their overthrow by the Guptas about A.D. 410. The conclusion seems to be that the Traikūtaka and the Kalachuri eras are the same namely A.D. 248-9; that this era was introduced into Gujarāt by the Traikūtakas who were connected with the Haihayas; and that the introduction of the era into Gujarāt did not take place before the middle of the fifth century A.D. — (A. M. T. J.)

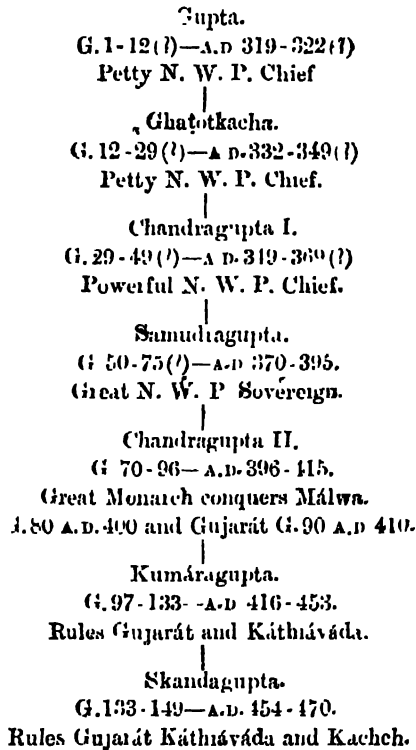
## CHAPTER VII.

## THE GUPTAS

(G. 90-149; A.D. 410-470)

**Chapter VII.**  
**THE GUPTAS,**  
**A.D. 410-470**

AFTER the Kshatrapas (i.e. 120-410) the powerful dynasty of the Guptas established themselves in Gujarát. So far as the dynasty is connected with Gujarát the Gupta tree is :



According to the Purámas<sup>1</sup> the original seat of the Guptas was between the Ganges and the Jamna. Their first capital is not determined. English writers usually style them the Guptas of Kanauj. And though this title is simply due to the chance that Gupta coins were first found at Kanauj, further discoveries show that the chief remains of Gupta records and coins are in the territory to the east and south-east of Kanauj. Of the race of the Guptas nothing is known. According to the ordinances of the Smritis or Sacred Books,<sup>2</sup> the terminal *gupta* belongs only to Vaisíyas a class including shepherds

<sup>1</sup> Vayu Purána, Wilson's Works, IX. 219n.

<sup>2</sup> Vishnu Purána, III Chapter 10 Verse 9: Burnell's Manu, 20. Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 11 note 1) quotes an instance of a Bráhmaṇa named Brahmagupta.

cultivators and traders. Of the first three kings, <sup>1</sup>Gupta Ghatotkacha and Chandragupta I., beyond the fact that Chandragupta I. bore the title of *Mahārājādhirāja*, neither descriptive titles nor details are recorded. As the fourth king Samudragupta performed the long-neglected horse-sacrifice he must have been Brahmanical in religion. And as inscriptions style Samudragupta's three successors, Chandragupta II. Kumāragupta and Skandagupta, Parama Bhāgavata, they must have been Smārta Vaiṣṇavas, that is devotees of Vishnu and observers of Vedic ceremonies.

The founder of the dynasty is styled Gupta. In inscriptions this name always appears as *Srī-gupta* which is taken to mean protected by *Srī* or Lakshmi. Against this explanation it is to be noted that in their inscriptions all Gupta's successors have *π* *Srī* before their names. The question therefore arises; if *Srī* forms part of the name why should the name *Srī-gupta* have had no second *Srī* prefixed in the usual way. Further in the inscriptions the lineage appears as *Gupta-vamśa* that is the lineage of the Guptas never *Srī-gupta-vamśa*<sup>1</sup>; and with never dates in the era of this dynasty are given they are conjoined with the name Gupta never with *Srī-gupta*.<sup>2</sup> It may therefore be taken that Gupta not *Srī-gupta* is the correct form of the founder's name.<sup>3</sup>

Gupta the founder seems never to have risen to be more than a petty chief. No known inscription gives him the title *Mahārājādhirāja* Supreme Ruler of Great Kings, which all Gupta rulers after the founder's grandson Chandragupta assume. Again that no coins of the founder and many coins of his successors have been discovered makes it probable that Gupta was not a ruler of enough importance to have a currency of his own. According to the inscriptions Gupta was succeeded by his son Ghatotkacha a petty chief like his father with the title of *Maharāja* and without coins.

Chandragupta I (A.D. 349-369 [?]), the son and successor of Ghatotkacha, is styled *Mahārājādhirāja* either because he himself became powerful, or, more probably, because he was the father of his very powerful successor Samudragupta. Though he may not have gained the dignity of "supreme ruler of great kings" by his own successes Chandragupta I. rose to a higher position than his predecessors. He was connected by marriage with the Lichchhavi dynasty of Tirhut an alliance which must have been considered of importance since his son Samudragupta puts the name of his mother Kumārādevī on his coins, and always styles himself daughter's son of Lichchhavi.<sup>4</sup>

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.

The Founder  
Gupta,  
A.D. 319-322 (?).

Ghatotkacha,  
A.D. 322-349 (?).

Chandragupta I.  
A.D. 349-369 (?).

<sup>1</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III Ins. 53 line 7.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Skandagupta's Junāgaḍh Inscription line 15, Ind. Ant. XIV.; Cunningham's Arch. Sur. X. 113; Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 59.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Mr Fleet's note in Corp. Ins. Ind. III Ins. 8.

<sup>4</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 135. Mr. Fleet believes that the Lichchhavi family concerned was that of Nepāl, and that they were the real founders of the era used by the Guptas. Dr. Bühler (Vienna Or. Journal, V. Pt. 3) holds that Chandragupta married into the Lichchhavi family of Pataliputra and became king of that country in right of his wife. The coins which bear the name of Kumārādevī are by Mr. Smith (J. B. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. 63) and others assigned to Chandragupta I., reading the reverse legend *Lichchhavayyā* The Lichchhavis in place of Dr. Bhagvānīl's *Lichchhavayyā* Daughter's son of Lichchhavi. On the Kacha coins see below page 62 note 2.

The Lichchhavis claim to be sprung from the solar dynasty. Manu (Burnell's Manu,

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.Samudragupta,  
A.D. 370-395.

Samudragupta was the first of his family to strike coins. His numerous gold coins are, with a certain additional Indian element, adopted from those of his Indo-Skythian predecessor. The details of the royal figure on the obverse are Indian in the ornaments, large earrings, and headdress; they are Indo-Skythian in the tailed coat, long boots, and straddle. The goddess on the reverse of some coins with a fillet and cornucopia is an adaptation of an Indo-Skythian figure, while the lotus-holding Ganges on an alligator and the standing Glory holding a flylapper on the reverse of other coins are purely Indian.<sup>1</sup>

## His Coins.

A noteworthy feature of Samudragupta's coins is that one or other of almost all his epithets appears on each of his coins with a figure of the king illustrating the epithet. Coins with the epithet *Sarvarājachakrhatta* De-royer-of-all-kings have on the obverse a standing king stretching out a banner topped by the wheel or disc of universal supremacy.<sup>2</sup>

Coins<sup>3</sup> with the epithet *Apratiratha* Peerless have on the obverse a standing king whose left hand rests on a bow and whose right hand holds a loose-lying unaimed arrow and in front an Eagle or Garuda standard symbolizing the unrivalled supremacy of the king, his arrow no longer wanted, his standard waving unchallenged. On the obverse is the legend :

308) describes them as descended from a degraded Kshatriya. Beal (R. A. S. N. S. XIV. 39) would identify them with an early wave of the Ma-chi or Kushāns; Smith (J. R. A. S. XX 55 n. 2) and Hewitt (J. R. A. S. XX 355-366) take them to be a Kolarian or local tribe. The fame of the Lichchhavis of Vaisali or Passala between Patna and Tirhut goes back to the time of Gautama Buddha (B.C. 480) in whose funeral rites the Lichchhavis and their neighbours and associates the Mallas took a prominent share (Rockhill's Life of Buddha, 62-63, 115, 208. Compare Legge's Fa Hien, 71-76; Beal's Buddhist Records, II 67, 70, 73, 77 and 81 note). According to Buddhist writings the first king of Thibet (A.D. 50) who was elected by the chiefs of the South Thibet tribes was a Lichchhavi the son of Prasenajit of Kosala (Rockhill's Life of Buddha, 208). Between the seventh and ninth centuries (A.D. 635-854) a family of Lichchhavis was ruling in Nepal (Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 131). The earliest historical member of the Nepāl family is Jayadeva I. whose date is supposed to be about A.D. 330 to 355. Mr. Fleet (Ditto, 135) suggests that Jayadeva's reign began earlier and may be the epoch from which the Gupta era of A.D. 318-319 is taken. He holds (Ditto, 136) that in all probability the so-called Gupta era is a Lichchhavi era.

<sup>1</sup> The figure of the Ganges standing on an alligator with a stalked lotus in her left hand on the reverse of the gold coins of Samudragupta the fourth king of the dynasty may be taken to be the Sri or Luck of the Guptas. Compare Smith's Gupta Coinage, J. Beng. A. S. LIII. Plate I Fig. 10. J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI Pl. I. 2.

<sup>2</sup> The presence of the two letters क च that is *ka cha* on the obverse under the arm of the royal figure, has led the late Mr. Thomas, General Cunningham, and Mr. Smith to suppose that the coins belonged to Ghatotkacha, the last two letters of the name being the same. This identification seems improbable. Ghatotkacha was never powerful enough to have a currency of his own. *Sarvarājachakrhatta* the attribute on the reverse is one of Samudragupta's epithets, while the figure of the king on the obverse grasping the standard with the disc, illustrating the attribute of universal sovereignty, can refer to none other than Samudragupta the first very powerful king of the dynasty. Perhaps the Kacha or Kachia on these coins is a pet or child name of Samudragupta. Mr. Rapson (Numismatic Chron. 3rd Ser. XI. 48ff) has recently suggested that the Kacha coins belong to an elder brother and predecessor of Samudragupta. But it seems unlikely that a ruler who could justly claim the title Destroyer-of-all-kings should be passed over in silence in the genealogy. Further, as is remarked above, the title *Sarvarājachakrhatta* belongs in the inscriptions to Samudragupta alone: and the fact that in his lifetime Samudragupta's father chose him as successor is against his exclusion from the throne even for a time.

<sup>3</sup> Smith's Gupta Coinage in J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. I. 10.

अप्रतिरथराजन्यकीर्ति (र) मम विजयते.

Apratiratharājanyakīrti(r)mama vijayate.<sup>1</sup>

Triumphant is the glory of me the unrivalled sovereign.

Coins with the attribute *Kṛitānta paraśu* the Death-like-battle-axe have on the obverse a royal figure grasping a battle-axe.<sup>2</sup> In front of the royal figure a boy, perhaps Samudragupta's son Chandragupta, holds a standard. Coins with the attribute *Āśvamedhaparākramaḥ* Able-to-hold-a-horse-sacrifice have on the obverse a horse standing near a sacrificial post *yūpa* and on the reverse a female figure with a fly-flap.<sup>3</sup> The legend on the obverse is imperfect and hard to read. The late Mr. Thomas restores it :

नवजमधः राजाधिराज पृथिवीं जियत्य-

Navajamadhaḥ rājadhirāja prithivīṃ jiyaty-

Horse sacrifice, after conquering the earth, the great king (performs).

Coins with the legend *Licchhavarayaḥ*, a coin abbreviation for *Licchhavidandhira* Daughter's son of Licchhlavi (?), have on the obverse a standing king grasping a javelin.<sup>4</sup> Under the javelin hand are the letters *Chandraguptaḥ*. Facing the king a female figure with trace of the letters *Kumāraderī* seems to speak to him. These figures of his mother and father are given to explain the attribute *Licchhavaraya* or scion of Licchhlavi. This coin has been supposed to belong to Chandragupta I. but the attribute *Licchhavarayaḥ* can apply only to Samudragupta.

A fuller source of information regarding Samudragupta remains in his inscription on the Allahabad Pillar.<sup>5</sup> Nearly eight verses of the first part are lost. The first three verses probably described his learning as what remains of the third verse mentions his poetic accomplishments, and line 27 says he was skilled in poetry and music, a trait further illustrated by what are known as his "Lyrist coins where he is shown playing a lute." The fourth verse says that during his lifetime his father chose Samudragupta to rule the earth from among others of equal birth. His father is mentioned as pleased with him and this is followed by the description of a victory during which several opponents are said to have submitted. The seventh verse records the sudden destruction of the army of Achyuta Nāgasena and the punishment inflicted on a descendant of the Kota family.

Lines 19 and 20 record the conquest, or submission, of the following South Indian monarchs, Mahendra of Kosala, Vyāghrarāja of Mahā Kāntāra,<sup>7</sup> Mundarāja of Kaurātta,<sup>8</sup> Svamidatta of Pāṣṭapūra Mahendra-Giri and Auttara,<sup>9</sup> Damana of Airapadapallaka, Vishnu of Kāñchī, Nilarāja Śāpāvamukta,<sup>10</sup> Hastivarman of Veṅgī, Ugrasena of Pālaka,<sup>11</sup>

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,

A.D. 410-470.

Samudragupta,  
A.D. 370-395.

His Allahabad  
Inscription.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, Pl. XVIII. Fig. 8, which has the same legend with me for *mama*. <sup>2</sup> Smith J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. I. 11, 12.

<sup>3</sup> Smith J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. I. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Smith J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. I. Mr. Smith reads *Licchhavarayaḥ* (the Licchhlavi) and assigns this type to Chandragupta I.

<sup>5</sup> Corpus Ins. Ind. III. I.

<sup>6</sup> Smith J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. I. 5, 6.

<sup>7</sup> Apparently South Kosala, the country about Raipur and Chhattisgarh.

<sup>8</sup> Fleet reads *Manṭarāja* of Kerala.

<sup>9</sup> Fleet divides the words differently and translates "Mahendra of Pāṣṭapūra, Svamidatta of Kōṭṭāra on the hill."

<sup>10</sup> Fleet reads "Nilarāja of Avamukta."

<sup>11</sup> Fleet reads *Palakka* or *Pālakka*.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.Samudragupta,  
A.D. 370-395.

Kubera of Daivarāśhīra, and Dhananājaya of Kausthalapura. Line 21 gives a further list of nine kings of Aryāvarta exterminated by Samudragupta :

Rudradeva.	Chandravarman.	Achyuta.
Matila.	Ganapati-nāga.	Nandin.
Nāgalatta.	Nāgasena.	Balavarman.

As no reference is made to the territories of these kings they may be supposed to be well known neighbouring rulers. General Cunningham's coins and others obtained at Mathurā show that the fifth ruler Ganapati-nāga was one of the Nāga kings of Gwālīor and Narwār.<sup>1</sup> The inscription next mentions that Samudragupta took into his employ the chiefs of the forest countries. Then in lines 22 and 23 follows a list of countries whose kings gave him tribute, who obeyed his orders, and who came to pay homage. The list includes the names of many frontier countries and the territories of powerful contemporary kings. The frontier kingdoms are :<sup>2</sup>

Samatata. Davāka. Kāmārūpa. Nepāla. Karttika.

The Indian kingdoms are :<sup>3</sup>

Malava.	Mādraka.	Sanakānika.
Arjunāyana.	Ābhira.	Kaka.
Yaudheya.	Prājuna.	Kharaparika.

Mention is next made of kings who submitted, gave their daughters in marriage, paid tribute, and requested the issue of the Garuḍa or Eagle charter to secure them in the enjoyment of their territory.<sup>4</sup> The tribal names of these kings are :<sup>5</sup>

Devaputra.	Saka.
Shāhi.	Murunda.
Shāhānushāhi.	Samihataka.
Island Kings.	

<sup>1</sup> Arch. Surv. II. 310; J. B. A. S. 1865 115-121.

<sup>2</sup> Samatata is the Ganges delta. Davāka may, as Mr. Fleet suggests, be Dacca for Karttika. Mr. Fleet reads Karttipura, otherwise Cuttack might be intended.

<sup>3</sup> For the Malavas see above page 24. The Arjunayanas can hardly be the Kalachuris as Mr. Fleet (C. I. I. III. 10) has suggested, as Varaha Mihira (Br. S. XIV. 25) places the Arjunayanas in the north near Trigarta, and General Cunningham's coin (Coins of Ancient India, 90) points to the same region. The Yaudheyas lived on the lower Sutlej see above page 36. The Mādrakas lived north-east of the Yaudheyas between the Chenab and the Sutlej (Cunningham Anc. Geog. 185). The Ābhīras must be those on the south-east border of Sindh. The Prājunas do not appear to be identifiable. A Sanakānika Mahārāja is mentioned (C. I. I. III. 3) as dedicating an offering at Udayagiri near Bhilsa, but we have no clue to the situation of his government. The name of his grandfather, Chhagalaga, has a Turki look. Kaka may be Kakupur near Bithūr (Cunningham Anc. Geog. 380). Kharaparika has not been identified—(A. M. T. J.)

<sup>4</sup> Mr. Fleet translates "(giving) Garuḍa-tokens, (surrendering) the enjoyment of their own territories."

<sup>5</sup> The first three names Devaputra, Shāhi, and Shāhānushāhi, belong to the Kushān dynasty of Kanishka (A.D. 78). Shāhānushāhi is the oldest, as it appears on the coins from Kanishka downwards in the form Shahanano Shaho (Stein in Babylonian and Oriental Record, I. 163). It represents the old Persian title Shahanshah or king of kings. Shāhi, answering to the simple Shah, appears to be first used alone by Vasudeva (A.D. 128-176). The title of Devaputra occurs first in the inscriptions of Kanishka. In the present inscription all three titles seem to denote divisions of the Kushān empire in

The inscribed pillar is said to have been set up by the great Captain or Dandanāyaka named Tilabhattachāyaka.

This important inscription shows that Samudragupta's dominions included Mathurā, Oudh, Gorakhpur, Allahābād, Benares, Behār, Tirhut, Bengal, and part of East Rājputāna. The list of Dakhan and South Indian kingdoms does not necessarily imply that they formed part of Samudragupta's territory. Samudragupta may have made a victorious campaign to the far south and had the countries recorded in the order of his line of march. The order suggests that he went from Behār, by way of Gayā, to Kosala the country about the modern Rāipur in the Central Provinces, and from Kosala, by Ganjam and other places in the Northern Circars, as far as Kāñchi or Conjeveram forty-six miles south-west of Madras. Malwa is shown in the second list as a powerful allied kingdom. It does not appear to have formed part of Samudragupta's territory nor, unless the Sakas are the Kshatrapas, does any mention of Gujaraṭ occur even as an allied state.

Samudragupta was succeeded by his son Chandragupta II. whose mother was the queen Dattadevi. He was the greatest and most powerful king of the Gupta dynasty and added largely to the territory left by Samudragupta. His second name Vikramāditya or the Sun of Prowess appears on his coins. Like his father Chandragupta II. struck gold coins of various types. He was the first Gupta ruler who spread his power over Mālwa and Gujaraṭ which he apparently took from the Kshatrapas as he was the first Gupta to strike silver coins and as his silver coins of both varieties the eastern and the western are modifications of the Kshatrapa type. The expedition which conquered Mālwa seems to have passed from Allahābād by Bundelkhand to Bhilsā and thence to Malwa. An undated inscription in the Udayagiri caves at Vidīśā (the modern Besnagar) near Bhilsā records the making of a cave of Mahādeva by one Saka of the Kautsa gotra and the family name of Virasena, a poet and native of Pataliputra who held the hereditary office of minister of peace and war *sandhivigrahika*, and who is recorded to have arrived with the king who was intent upon conquering the whole earth.<sup>1</sup> A neighbouring cave bears an inscription of a feudatory of Chandragupta who was chief of Sanakānika.<sup>2</sup> The chief's name is lost, but the names of his father Vishnudasa and of his grandfather Chhaganavga remain. The date is the eleventh of the bright half of

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.

Samudragupta,  
A.D. 370-395.

Chandragupta II.  
A.D. 395-415.

India. The title of Shahi was continued by the Turks (A.D. 600?-900) and Brahmans (A.D. 900-1000) of Kabul (Allerum, II. 10) and by the Shahis (Eliot, I. 135) of Alor in Sindh (A.D. 490?-631). Unless it refers to the last remnants of the Gujaraṭ Mahakshatrapas the word Saka seems to be used in a vague sense in reference to the non-Indian tribes of the North-West frontier. The Murundas may be identified with the Murundas of the Native dictionaries, and hence with the people of Lampāka or Langhān twenty miles north-west of Jalalabad. It is notable that in the fifth century A.D. Jayanātha, Mahārāja of Uchchakalpa (not identified) married a Murundadevi (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 128, 131, 136).

The mention of the king of Simhala and the Island Kings rounds off the geographical picture. Possibly after the Chinese fashion presents from these countries may have been magnified into tribute. Or Simhala may here stand, not for Ceylon, but for one of the many Sinhāpurās known to Indian geography. Sihor in Kāthiavāḍa, an old capital, may possibly be the place referred to. The Island Kings would then be the chiefs of Cutch and Kāthiavāḍa.—(A. M. T. J.)

<sup>1</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 3.

Chay  
THE  
A.D.  
Samt  
A.D.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.

\* Chandragupta II.  
A.D. 395-415.

Ashādha Samvatsara 82 (A.D. 401). From this Chandragupta's conquest of Vidiśā may be dated about Samvatsara 80 (A.D. 399) or a little earlier.

A third inscription is on the railing of the great Sāñchi stūpa.<sup>1</sup> It is dated the 4th day of Bhādrapada Samvat 93 (A.D. 412) and records the gift of 25 *dīnāras* and something called *Īśvaravāsaka* (perhaps a village or a field) to the monks of the great monastery of Kakanādabotāśrī for the daily maintenance of five *bhikshus* and the burning of a lamp in the *ratnagriha* or shrine of the Buddhist *triratna*, for the merit of the supreme king of great kings Chandragupta who bears the popular name of Devarāja or god-like.<sup>2</sup> The donor a feudatory of Chandragupta named Āmrakārdava is described as having the object of his life gratified by the favour of the feet of the supreme ruler of great kings the illustrious Chandragupta, and as showing to the world the hearty loyalty of a good feudatory. Āmrakārdava seems to have been a chief of consequence as he is described as winning the flag of glory in numerous battles. The name of his kingdom is also recorded. Though it cannot now be made out the mention of his kingdom makes it probable that he was a stranger come to pay homage to Chandragupta. The reference to Chandragupta seems to imply he was the ruler of the land while the two other inscriptions show that his rule lasted from about 80 (A.D. 399) to at least 93 (A.D. 412). During these years Chandragupta seems to have spread his sway to Ujjain the capital of west Mālwa, of which he is traditionally called the ruler. From Ujjain by way of Bāgh and Tīnda in the province of Rāth he seems to have entered South Gujarāt and to have passed from the Broach coast to Kāthiavāda. He seems to have wrested Kāthiavāda from its Kshatrapa rulers as he is the first Gupta who struck silver coins and as his silver coins are of the then current Kshatrapa type. On the obverse is the royal bust with features copied from the Kshatrapa face and on the reverse is the figure of a peacock, probably chosen as the bearer of Kārtikasvāmi the god of war. Round the peacock is a Sanskrit legend. This legend is of two varieties. In Central Indian coins it runs:

श्री गुप्तकुलस्य महाराजाधिराज श्री चन्द्रगुप्तविक्रमाङ्कस्य

Śrī Guptakulasya Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Chandraguptavikramāṅkasya,  
(Coin) of the king of kings the illustrious Chandragupta Vikramāṅka,  
of the family of the illustrious Gupta.<sup>3</sup>

In the very rare Kāthiavāda coins, though they are similar to the above in style, the legend runs:

परमभागवत महाराजाधिराज श्री चन्द्रगुप्त विक्रमादित्य

Paramabhāgavata Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Chandragupta Vikramāditya.

The great devotee of Vishnu the supreme ruler of great kings,  
the illustrious Chandragupta Vikramāditya.<sup>4</sup>

Several gold coins of Chandragupta show a young male figure behind the king with his right hand laid on the king's shoulder. This youthful figure is apparently Chandragupta's son Kumārāgupta who may have acted as Yuvarāja during the conquest of Mālwa.

<sup>1</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 33) prefers to take Devarāja to be the name of Chandragupta's minister.

<sup>3</sup> J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. 120.

<sup>4</sup> J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. 121.

The rareness of Chandragupta's and the commonness of Kumāragupta's coins in Kāthiāwāḍa, together with the date 90 (A.D. 409) on some of Kumāragupta's coins make it probable that on their conquest his father appointed Kumāragupta viceroy of Gujārāt and Kāthiāwāḍa.

As the first Gupta was a chief of no great power or influence it is probable that though it is calculated from him the Gupta era was established not by him but by his grandson the great Chandragupta II.<sup>1</sup> This view is confirmed by the absence of dates on all existing coins of Chandragupta's father Samudragupta. It further seems probable that like the Mālavas in B.C. 57 and the Kshatrapas in A.D. 78 the occasion on which Chandragupta established the Gupta era was his conquest of Mālwa. The Gupta era did not remain long in use. After the fall of Gupta power (A.D. 470) the old Mālava era of B.C. 57 was revived. The conjecture may be offered that, in spite of the passing away of Gupta power, under his title of Vikramāditya, the fame of the great Gupta conqueror Chandragupta II. lived on in Mālwa and that, drawing to itself tales of earlier local champions, the name Vikramāditya came to be considered the name of the founder of the Mālava era.<sup>2</sup>

Working back from Gupta Samvat 80 (A.D. 100) the date of Chandragupta's conquest of Mālwa we may allot 1 to 12 (A.D. 319-332) to the founder Gupta; 12 to 29 (A.D. 332-349) to Gupta's son Ghaṭotkacha; 29 to 49 (A.D. 349-369) to Ghaṭotkacha's son Chandragupta I.; and 50 to 75 (A.D. 370-395) to Chandragupta's powerful son Samudragupta who probably had a long reign. As the latest known date of Chandragupta II. is 93 (A.D. 413) and as a Bilsad inscription<sup>3</sup> of his successor Kumāragupta is dated 96 (A.D. 416) the reign of Chandragupta II. may be calculated to have lasted during the twenty years ending 95 (A.D. 415).

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Introd. 13 off) argues that the era was borrowed from Nepal after Chandragupta I. married his Licchavi queen. Dr. Bühler thinks there is no evidence of this, and that the era was started by the Guptas themselves (Vienna Or. II. V. Pt. 3).

<sup>2</sup> The further suggestion may be offered that if as seems probable Dr. Bhagvānīd is correct in considering Chandragupta I. to be the founder of the Gupta era this high honour was due not to his conquest of Mālwa but to some success against the Indo-Skythians or Sakas of the Panjab. The little more than nominal suzerainty claimed over the Devaputras, Shilas, and Shahanushis in Chandragupta's father's inscription shows that when he came to the throne Chandragupta found the Saka power practically unbroken. The absence of reference to conquests is no more complete in the case of the Panjab than it is in the case of Gujārāt or of Kāthiāwāḍa which Chandragupta is known to have added to his dominions. In Kāthiāwāḍa, though not in Gujārāt, the evidence from coins is stronger than in the Panjab. Still the discovery of Chandragupta's coins (J. R. A. S. XXI. 5 note 1) raises the presumption of conquests as far north and west as Panipat and as Ladhiāna (in the heart of the Panjab). Chandragupta's name Devarāja may, as Pandit Bhagvānīd suggests, be taken from the Saka title Devaputra. Further, the use of the name Vikramāditya and of the honorific Śrī is in striking agreement with Bernier's statement (Sachau, II. 6) that the conqueror of the Sakas was named Vikramāditya and that to the conqueror's name was added the title Śrī. Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 37 note 2) holds it not improbable that either Chandragupta I. or II. defeated the Indo-Skythians. The fact that Chandragupta I. was not a ruler of sufficient importance to issue coins and that even after his son Samudragupta's victories the Sakas remained practically independent make it almost certain that if any subjection of the Sakas to the Guptas took place it happened during the reign of Chandragupta II.

<sup>3</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 10.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.  
Chandragupta II.  
A.D. 396-415.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.Kumārāgupta,  
A.D. 416-453.Cha  
The  
A.D.  
Sam  
A.D.

Chandragupta I. was succeeded by his son Kumārāgupta whose mother was the queen Dhruva-Devī. On Kumārāgupta's coins three titles occur: Mahendra, Mahendra-Vikrama, and Mahendrāditya. As already noticed the circulation of Kumārāgupta's coins in Kāthiāvāda during his father's reign makes it probable that on their conquest his father appointed him viceroy of Kāthiāvāda and Gujarāt. Kumārāgupta appears to have succeeded his father about 96 (A.D. 416). An inscription at Maukuwar near Prayāga shows he was ruling as late as 129 (A.D. 419) and a coin of his dated 130 (A.D. 450) adds at least one year to his reign. On the other hand the inscription on the Girnār rock shows that in 137 (A.D. 457) his son Skandagupta was king. It follows that Kumārāgupta's reign ended between 130 and 137 (A.D. 450-457) or about 133 (A.D. 453).

None of Kumārāgupta's four inscriptions gives any historical or other details regarding him.<sup>1</sup> But the number and the wide distribution of his coins make it probable that during his long reign he maintained his father's dominions intact.

Large numbers of Kumārāgupta's coins of gold silver and copper have been found. The gold which are of various types are inferior in workmanship to his father's coins. The silver and copper coins are of two varieties, eastern and western. Both varieties have on the obverse the royal bust in the Kshatrapa style of dress. In the western pieces the bust is a copy of the mustachied Kshatrapa face with a corrupted version of the corrupt Greek legend used by the Kshatrapas. The only difference between the obverses of the Western Gupta and the Kshatrapa coins is that the date is in the Gupta instead of in the Kshatrapa era. On the reverse is an ill formed peacock facing front as in Chandragupta II.'s coins. The legend runs:

परम भागवत महाराजाधिराज श्री कुमारगुप्त महेन्द्रादित्य.

Paramabhāgavata Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Kumārāgupta  
Mahendrāditya.

The great Vaishnava the supreme ruler of great kings,  
the illustrious Kumārāgupta Mahendrāditya.<sup>2</sup>

In Kumārāgupta's eastern silver and copper coins the bust on the obverse has no moustache nor is there any trace of the corrupt Greek legend. The date is in front of the face in perpendicular numerals one below the other instead of behind the head as in the Kshatrapa and Western Kumārāgupta coins. On the reverse is a well-carved peacock facing front with tail feathers at full stretch. Round the peacock runs the clear cut legend:

विजितावनिरवनिपति कुमारगुप्तो देवं जयति.

Vijitāvaniravanipati Kumārāgupto devam jayati.

This legend is hard to translate. It seems to mean:

Kumārāgupta, lord of the earth, who had conquered the  
kings of the earth, conquers the Deva.

<sup>1</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 8, 9, 10 and 11.

<sup>2</sup> J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. 123.

Probably the Dova whose name suggested the antithesis between the kings of the earth and the gods was one of the Devaputra family of Indo-Skythian rulers.<sup>1</sup>

Kumāragupta was succeeded by his son Skandagupta. An inscription of his on a pillar at Bhitari near Saidpur in Ghazipur bearing no date shows that on his father's death Skandagupta had a hard struggle to establish his power.<sup>2</sup> The text runs: "By whom when he rose to fix fast again the shaken fortune of his house, three months<sup>3</sup> were spent on the earth as on a bed," an apparent reference to flight and wanderings. A doubtful passage in the same inscription seems to show that he was opposed by a powerful king named Pushyamitra on whose back he is said to have set his left foot.<sup>4</sup> The inscription makes a further reference to the troubles of the family stating that on re-establishing the shaken fortune of his house Skandagupta felt satisfied and went to see his weeping afflicted mother. Among the enemies with whom Skandagupta had to contend the inscription mentions a close conflict with the Hūnas that is the Ephthalites, Thetals, or White Huns.<sup>5</sup> Verse 3 of Skandagupta's Girnār inscription confirms the reference to struggles stating that on the death of his father by his own might he humbled his enemies to the earth and established himself. As the Girnār inscription is dated 136 (A.D. 456) and as Kumāragupta's reign ended about 134, these troubles and difficulties did not last for more than two years. The Girnār inscription further states that on establishing his power he conquered the earth, destroyed the arrogance of his enemies, and appointed governors in all provinces. For Surāshtra he selected a governor named Parnadatta and to Parnadatta's son Chakrapāṇi ta he gave a share of the management placing him in charge of Junāgaḍh city. During the governorship of Parnadatta the Sudarsāna lake close to Junāgaḍh, which had been strongly rebuilt in the time of the Kshatrapa Rudradāman (A.D. 150), again gave way during the dark sixth of Bhādrapada of the year 136 (A.D. 456). The streams Palāsini Sīkatā and Vīlāsini<sup>6</sup> burst through the dam and flowed unchecked. Repairs were begun on the first of bright *Grīshma* 137 (A.D. 457) and finished in two months. The new dam is said to have been 100 cubits

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.

Skandagupta,  
A.D. 454-470.

<sup>1</sup> J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. 120. The 'māragupta's two successors, Skandagupta and Purnadatta, use the same phrase *devam jagata* makes the explanation in the text doubtful. As Mr. Smith (Ditto) suggests *devam* is probably a mistake for *devo*, meaning His Majesty. The legend would then run, Kumāraguptadeva lord of the earth . . . . . is triumphant. Dr. Bhagvanlal would have preferred *devo* (see page 70 note 2) but could not neglect the *ausarata* - (A. M. T. J.) <sup>2</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 53, 55) reads "*mita triyama*" and translates "a (whole) night was spent." Dr. Bhagvanlal read "*mita trimasak*."

<sup>4</sup> Mr. Fleet finds that Pushyamitra is the name of a tribe not of a king. No VI. of Dr. Bühler's Jain inscriptions from Mathura (Ep. Ind. I 378ff) mentions a Pushyamitriya kula of the Vārānagana, which is also referred to in Bhadrabahu's Kalpa-sūtra (Jacobi's Edition, 80), but is there referred to the Charana-gana, no doubt a misreading for the Vārana of the inscription. Dr. Bühler points out that Vārana is the old name of Bulandshahr in the North-West Provinces, so that it is there that we must look for the power that first weakened the Guptas - (A. M. T. J.)

<sup>5</sup> See V. de St. Martin's Essay, Les Huns Blancs: seecht in Journal Asiatique Oct. - Dec. 1883 and below page 74.

<sup>6</sup> In Rudradāman's inscription the Palāsini is mentioned, and also the Suvarna-sīkatā as "and the other rivers." In Skandagupta's inscription Mr. Fleet translates Sīkatāvilāsini as an adjective agreeing with Palāsini.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.  
Skandagupta,  
A.D. 454-470.

long by 68 cubits broad and 7 men or about 38 feet high. The probable site of the lake is in the west valley of the Gīrnār hill near what is called Bhavanātha's pass.<sup>1</sup> The inscription also records the making of a temple of Vishṇu in the neighbourhood by Chakrapālita, which was probably on the site of the modern Dāmodar's Mandir in the Bhavanātha pass, whose image is of granite and is probably as old as the Guptas. A new temple was built in the fifteenth century during the rule of Mandālīka the last Chudāsamī ruler of Junāgaḍh. At the time of the Musalmān conquest (A.D. 1184) as violence was feared the images were removed and buried. Mandālīka's temple was repaired by Amarji Divān of Junāgaḍh (1759-1794). It was proposed to make and consecrate new images. But certain old images of Vishṇu were found in digging foundations for the enclosure wall and were consecrated. Two of these images were taken by Gīrnāra Brāhmins and consecrated in the names of Baladevji and Revatī in a neighbouring temple specially built for them. Of the original temple the only trace is a pilaster built into the wall to the right as one enters. The style and carving are of the Gupta period.

As almost all the Gupta coins found in Cutch are Skandagupta's and very few are Kumāragupta's, Skandagupta seems to have added Cutch to the provinces of Gujarāt and Kāthiāvāḍa inherited from his father. In Kāthiāvāḍa Skandagupta's coins are rare, apparently because of the abundant currency left by his father which was so popular in Kāthiāvāḍa that fresh Kumāragupta coins of a degraded type were issued as late as Valabhi times.

Like his father, Skandagupta issued a gold coinage in his eastern dominions but no trace of a gold currency appears in the west. Like Kumāragupta's his silver coins were of two varieties, eastern and western. The eastern coins have on the obverse a bust as in Kumāragupta's coins and the date near the face. On the reverse is a peacock similar to Kumāragupta's and round the peacock the legend :

विजितावनिरवनिपति जयति देवं स्कन्दगुप्तो यं

Vijitāvanravaniapati jayata devaṁ Skandagupto'yaṁ.

This king Skandagupta who having conquered the earth conquers the Deva.<sup>2</sup>

Skandagupta's western coins are of three varieties, one the same as the western coins of Kumāragupta, a second with a bull instead of a peacock on the reverse, and a third with on the reverse an altar with one upright and two side jets of water. Coins of the first two varieties are found both in Gujarāt and in Kāthiāvāḍa. The third water-jet variety is peculiar to Cutch and is an entirely new feature in the western Gupta coinage. On the reverse of all is the legend :

परमभागवत महाराजाधिराज स्कन्दगुप्त क्रमादित्य

Paramabhāgavata Mahārājādhirāja Skandagupta Kramāditya.

The great Vaiṣṇava the supreme ruler of great kings,  
Skandagupta the Sun of Prowess.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Remains of the dam were discovered in 1800 by Khān Bahāddūr Ardesir Jamsetji Special Divān of Junāgaḍh. The site is somewhat nearer Junāgaḍh than Dr. Bhagvānlāl supposed. Details are given in Jour. B. B. R. A. S. XVIII. Number 48 page 47.

<sup>2</sup> The reading *devo* is to be preferred but the *anuvāra* is clear both on these coins and on the coins of his father. For these coins see J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. IV, 4.

<sup>3</sup> J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. Pl. IV, 687.

The beginning of Skandagupta's reign has been placed about Gupta 133 or A.D. 453 : his latest known date on a coin in General Cunningham's collection is Gupta 149 or A.D. 469.<sup>1</sup>

With Skandagupta the regular Gupta succession ceases.<sup>2</sup> The next Gupta is Budhagupta who has a pillar inscription<sup>3</sup> in a temple at Eraṇ in the Saugor district dated 165 (A.D. 485) and silver coins dated Samvat 174 and 180 odd (A.D. 494 - 500 odd). Of Budhagupta's relation or connection with Skandagupta nothing is known. That he belonged to the Gupta dynasty appears from his name as well as from his silver coins which are dated in the Gupta era and are the same in style as the eastern coins of Skandagupta. On the obverse is the usual bust as in Skandagupta's coins with the date (174, 180 odd) near the face. On the reverse is the usual peacock and the legend is the same as Skandagupta's :

देवं जयति विजितावनिरवनिपति श्री बुधगुप्तो

Devam jayati vijitāvaniravanipati Śrī Budhagupto.

The king the illustrious Budhagupta who has conquered the earth conquers the Deva.<sup>4</sup>

Since the coins are dated Samvat 174 and 180 odd (A.D. 494 and 500 odd) and the inscription's date is 165 (A.D. 485) the inscription may be taken to belong to the early part of Budhagupta's reign the beginning of which may be allotted to about 160-162 (A.D. 480-482). As this is more than ten years later than the latest known date of Skandagupta (G. 149 A.D. 469) either a Gupta of whom no trace remains must have intervened or the twelve blank years must have been a time of political change and disturbance. The absence of any trace of a gold currency suggests that Budhagupta had less power than his predecessors. The correctness of this argument is placed beyond doubt by the pillar inscription opposite the shrine in the Eraṇ temple where instead of his predecessor's title of monarch of the whole earth Budhagupta is styled protector of the land between the Jamna (Kālindī) and the Nerbādā implying the loss of the whole territory to the east of the Jamna.<sup>5</sup> In the west the failure of Gupta power seems still more complete. Neither in Gujaraṭ nor in Kāthiāwāda has an inscription or even a coin been found with a reference to Budhagupta or to any other Gupta ruler later than Skandagupta (G. 149 A.D. 469). The pillar inscription noted above which is of the year 165 (A.D. 485) and under the rule of Budhagupta states that the pillar was a gift to the temple by Dhanya Viṣṇu and his brother Mātri Viṣṇu who at the time of the gift seem to have been local Brāhman governors. A second inscription on the lower part of the neck of a huge Boar or Varāha image in a corner shrine of the same temple records that the image was completed on the tenth day of Phālguna in the first year of the reign of

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.

Bhudagupta,  
A.D. 485.

<sup>1</sup> The known dates of Skandagupta are 136 and 137 on his Girnār inscription, 141 in his pillar inscription at Kalaṇ in Gorakhpur, and 146 in his Indor-Khera copperplate. The coin dates given by General Cunningham are 144, 145, and 149.

<sup>2</sup> But see below page 73.

<sup>3</sup> Dr. Bhagvānlāl examined and copied the original of this inscription. It has since been published as Number 19 in Mr. Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III.

<sup>4</sup> J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI. 134.

<sup>5</sup> It is now known that the main Gupta line continued to rule in Magadha. See page 73 below.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.Budhagupta,  
A.D. 495.

Toramāna the supreme ruler of great kings and was the gift of the same Dhanya Vishnu whose brother Mātri Vishnu is described as gone to heaven.<sup>1</sup> Since Mātri was alive in the Budhagupta and was dead in the Toramāna inscription it follows that Toramāna was later than Budhagupta. His name and his new era show that Toramāna was not a Gupta. A further proof that Toramāna wrested the kingdom from Budhagupta is that except the change of era and that the bust turns to the left instead of to the right, Toramāna's silver coins are directly adapted from Gupta coins of the eastern type.

Certain coin dates seem at variance with the view that Toramāna flourished after Budhagupta. On several coins the date 52 is clear. As Toramāna's coins are copies of the coins of Kumāragupta and Skandagupta and as most of these coins have a numeral for one hundred the suggestion may be offered that a one dropped out in striking Toramāna's die and that this date should read 152 not 52. Accepting this view Toramāna's date would be 152 (A.D. 472) that is immediately after the death of Skandagupta.

The Gwālior inscription<sup>2</sup> mentions prince Mihirakula as the son of Toramāna and a second inscription from a well in Mandasor<sup>3</sup> dated Mālava Samvat 589 (A.D. 533) mentions a king named Yasodharman who was ruler of Mālwa when the well was built and who in a second Mandasor inscription<sup>4</sup> is mentioned as having conquered Mihirakula. This would separate Mihirakula from his father Toramāna (A.D. 471) by more than sixty years. In explanation of this gap it may be suggested that the [1]52 (A.D. 472) coins were struck early in Toramāna's reign in honour of his conquest of the eastern Gupta territory. A reign of twenty years would bring Toramāna to 177 (A.D. 497). The Gwālior inscription of Mihirakula is in the fifteenth year of his reign that is on the basis of a succession date of 177 (A.D. 497) in Gupta 192 (A.D. 512). An interval of five years would bring Yasodharman's conquest of Mihirakula to 197 (A.D. 517). This would place the making of the well in the twenty-first year of Mihirakula's reign.

Bhānugupta,  
A.D. 511.

After Budhagupta neither inscription nor coin shows any trace of Gupta supremacy in Mālwa. An Eran inscription<sup>5</sup> found in 1869 on a *liṅga*-shaped stone, with the representation of a woman performing *sūti*, records the death in battle of a king Goparājā who is mentioned as the daughter's son of Sarabhārājā and appears to have been the son of king Madhava. Much of the inscription is lost. What remains records the passing to heaven of the deceased king in the very destructive fight with the great warrior (*pravīra*) Bhānugupta brave as Pārtha. The inscription is dated the seventh of dark Bhādrapada Gupta 191 in words as well as in numerals that is in A.D. 511. This Bhānugupta would be the successor of Budhagupta ruling over a petty Mālwa principality which lasted till nearly the time of the great Harshavardhana the beginning of the seventh century (A.D. 607-650), as a Devagupta of Mālwa is one of Rājyavardhana's rivals in the *Sriharshacharita*. While Gupta power failed in Mālwa

<sup>1</sup> Published by Mr Fleet Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 36.<sup>2</sup> Fleet Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 37.<sup>3</sup> Fleet Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 35.<sup>4</sup> Fleet Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 33.<sup>5</sup> Fleet Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 20.

and disappeared from Western India a fresh branch of the Guptas rose in Magadha or Behar and under Naragupta Baladitya, perhaps the founder of the eastern branch of the later Gupta dynasty, attained the dignity of a gold coinage.<sup>1</sup>

[Though the history of their last years is known only in fragments, chiefly from inscriptions and coins, little doubt remains regarding the power which first seriously weakened the early Guptas. The Bhitari stone pillar of Skandagupta<sup>2</sup> speaks of his restoring the fortunes of his family and conquering the Pushyamitras and also of his joining in close conflict with the Hūnas.<sup>3</sup> Unfortunately the Bhitari inscription is not dated. The Junāgaḍh inscription, which bears three dates covering the period between A.D. 455 and 458,<sup>4</sup> mentions pride-broken enemies in the country of the Mlechchhas admitting Skandagupta's victory. That the Mlechchhas of this passage refers to the Huns is made probable by the fact that it does not appear that the Pushyamitras were Mlechchhas while they and the Huns are the only enemies whom Skandagupta boasts either of defeating or of meeting in close conflict. It may therefore be assumed that the Huns became known to Skandagupta before A.D. 455.\* As according to the Chinese historians<sup>5</sup> the White Huns did not cross the Oxus into Bactria before A.D. 452, the founding of the Hun capital of Badeghis<sup>6</sup> may be fixed between A.D. 452 and 455. As the above quoted inscriptions indicate that the Huns were repulsed in their first attempt to take part in Indian politics the disturbances during the last years of Kumaragupta's reign were probably due to some tribe other than the Huns. This tribe seems to have been the Pushyamitras whose head-quarters would seem to have been in Northern India. Some other enemy must have arisen in Malwa

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.

The  
Pushyamitras,  
A.D. 455.

<sup>1</sup> On Naragupta see below page 77, and for his coins J. R. A. S. (N. S.) XXI note PL III 11.

<sup>2</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III Ins. 13 lines 10 and 15.

<sup>3</sup> The Pushyamitras seem to have been a long established tribe like the Yaudheyas (above page 37). During the reign of Kanishka (A.D. 78-93) Pushyamitras were settled in the neighbourhood of Bulandshahr and at that time had already given their name to a Jain sect.

The sense of the inscription is somewhat doubtful. Mr Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III, page 62) translates: 'Whose fame, moreover, even (his) enemies in the countries of the Mlechchhas . . . having their pride broken down to the very root announce with the words 'Verily the victory has been achieved by him.' Prof. Peterson understands the meaning to be that Skandagupta's Indian enemies were forced to retire beyond the borders of India among friends Mlechchhas and in a foreign land admit that the renewal of their conflict with Skandagupta was beyond hope. The retreat of Skandagupta's Indian enemies to the Mlechchhas suggests the Mlechchhas are the Hūnas that is the White Huns who were already in power on the Indian border, whom the enemies had previously in vain brought as allies into India to help them against Skandagupta. This gives exactness to the expression used in Skandagupta's Bhitari inscription (Corp. Ins. Ind. III, Number 13 page 56) that he joined in close conflict with the Hūnas . . . among enemies, as if in this conflict the Hūnas were the allies of enemies rather than the enemies themselves. For the introduction into India of foreign allies, compare in B.C. 327 (McCrindle's Alexander in India, 112) the king of Taxila, 31 miles north-west of Rawalpindi, sending an embassy to Bactria to secure Alexander as an ally against Porus of the Gujarat country. And (Ditto, 109) a few years later (B.C. 310) the North Indian Malayaketu allying himself with Yavanas in his attack on Pataliputra or Patna.

<sup>4</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III Ins. 14 line 4.

<sup>5</sup> T'oungt'ien quoted by Specht in Journal Asiatique for Oct - Dec. 1883.

<sup>6</sup> Badeghis is the modern Badkhyr the upper plateau between the Merv and the Herat rivers. The probable site of the capital of the White Huns is a little north of Herat. See Marco Polo's Itineraries No. I.; Yule's Marco Polo, I. xxxii.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.The  
Pushyamitras,  
A.D. 455.

since the terms of Parnadatta's appointment to Surāshṭra in A.D. 455-6 suggest that country had been lost to the Gupta empire and re-conquered by Skandagupta which would naturally be the case if a rival state had arisen in Mālwa and been overthrown by that king. So far as is known the Huns made no successful attack on the Gupta empire during the lifetime of Skandagupta whose latest date is A.D. 468-9. It is not certain who succeeded Skandagupta. His brother Pura (or Sthira-)gupta ruled in or near Magadha. But it is not certain whether he was the successor or the rival of Skandagupta.<sup>1</sup> That Skandagupta's inscriptions are found in the Patna district in the east<sup>2</sup> and in Kāthiavāda in the west<sup>3</sup> suggests that during his life the empire was not divided nor does any one of his inscriptions hint at a partition. The probability is that Skandagupta was succeeded by his brother, Puragupta, who again was followed by his son Narasimhagupta and his grandson Kumāragupta II.<sup>4</sup>

White Huns,  
A.D. 460-520.

Among the northerners who with or shortly after the Pushyamitras shared in the overthrow of Gupta power two names, a father and a son, Toramāna and Mihirakula are prominent. It is not certain that these kings were Hūnas by race. Their tribe were almost certainly his rivals' allies whom Skandagupta's Bhitari and Junāgaḍh inscriptions style the one Hūnas the other Mlecchhas.<sup>5</sup> On one of Toramāna's coins Mr Fleet reads<sup>6</sup> the date 52 which he interprets as a regnal date. This though not impossible is somewhat unlikely. The date of Mihirakula's succession to his father is fixed somewhere about A.D. 515.<sup>7</sup> In the neighbourhood of Gwālior he reigned at least fifteen years.<sup>8</sup> The story of Mihirakula's interview with Bālāditya's mother and his long subsequent history<sup>9</sup> indicate that when he came to the throne he was a young man probably not more than 25. If his father reigned fifty-two years he must have been at least 70 when he died and not less than 45 when Mihirakula was born. As Mihirakula is known to have had at least one younger brother,<sup>10</sup> it seems probable that Toramāna came to the throne a good deal later than A.D. 460 the date suggested by Mr. Fleet.<sup>11</sup> The date 52 on Toramāna's coins must therefore refer to some event other than his own accession. The suggestion may be offered that that event was the establishment of the White Huns in Baktria and the founding of their capital Badeghis,<sup>12</sup> which, as fixed above between A.D. 452 and 455, gives the very suitable date of A.D. 504 to 507 for the 52 of Toramāna's coin. If this suggestion is correct a further identification follows. The Chinese ambassador Sungyun (A.D. 520)<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See the Ghazipur Seal. Smith & Hoernle, J. A. S. Ben. LVIII. 81ff and Fleet Ind. Ant. XIX. 224ff. <sup>2</sup> Bihar Ins. Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 12.

<sup>3</sup> Junāgaḍh Inscript. Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 14. <sup>4</sup> See note 1 above.

<sup>5</sup> See above notes 1 and 2.

<sup>6</sup> Ind. Ant. XVIII. 225.

<sup>7</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Introduct. 12. <sup>8</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. Ins. 37 line 4. <sup>9</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 169-172 and Bājjataraṅgīnī, I. 289-326 quoted by Fleet in Ind. Ant. XV. 247-249.

<sup>10</sup> Beale's Hsuen Tsiang, I. 169-171. As Mr. Fleet suggests the younger brother is possibly the Chandra referred to in Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 32 line 5 and Introduct. 12 and 140 note 1. <sup>11</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 230 and Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Introduct. 12.

<sup>12</sup> Specht in Journal Asiatique for Oct. - Dec. 1883. Histoire des Wei.

<sup>13</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, I. c. - cii.

describes an interview with the king of Gandhāra whose family Sangyun notices was established in power by the *Ye-tha*, that is the Ephthalites or White Huns, two generations before his time.<sup>1</sup> Mihirakula is known to have ruled in Gandhāra<sup>2</sup> and Sangyun's description of the king's pride and activity agrees well with other records of Mihirakula's character. It seems therefore reasonable to suppose that the warlike sovereign who treated Sangyun and the name of his Imperial mistress with such scant courtesy was no other than the meteor Mihirakula. If Sangyun is correct in stating that Mihirakula was the third of his line the dynasty must have been established about A.D. 460. Beal is in doubt whether the name *Lae-hih* given by Sangyun<sup>3</sup> is the family name or the name of the founder. As a recently deciphered inscription shows *Torā-māna's* family name to have been *Jauvha*<sup>4</sup> it seems to follow that *Lae-hih*, or whatever is the correct transliteration of the Chinese characters, is the name of the father of *Torā-māna*. Sangyun's reference to the establishment of this dynasty suggests they were not White Huns but leaders of some subject tribe.<sup>5</sup> That this tribe was settled in Baktria perhaps as far south as Kabul before the arrival of the White Huns seems probable. The Hindu or Persian influence notable in the tribal name *Mastraka* and in the personal name *Mihirakula* seems unsuited to Huns newly come from the northern frontiers of China and proud of their recent successes.<sup>6</sup> Chinese records show<sup>7</sup> that the tribe who preceded the White Huns in Baktria and north-east Persia, and who about A.D. 350-400 destroyed the power of Kito the last of the Kushāns, were the Yuan-Yuan or Jouen-Jouen whom Sir H. Howorth identifies with the Avars. To this tribe it seems on the whole probable that

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 410-470.White Huns,  
A.D. 150-520.<sup>1</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, I. xcix.<sup>2</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 171. Hsien Tsang's statement (Ibid.) that Mihirakula conquered Gandhāra after his capture by Baladitya may refer to a reconquest from his brother, perhaps the Chandra referred to in note 10 on page 74.<sup>3</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records (I. c.) suggests that *Lae-hih* is the founder's name. In his note 50 he seems to regard *Lae-hih* as the only name.<sup>4</sup> Bühler, Ep. Ind. I. 238. Dr. Bühler hesitates to identify the *Torā-māna* of this inscription with Mihirakula's father.<sup>5</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, I. xcix. c. This is the kingdom which the *Ye-tha* destroyed and afterwards set up *Lae-hih* to be king over the country.<sup>6</sup> *Mastraka* is a Sanskritised form of *Mihra* and this again is perhaps an adaptation of the widespread and well-known Western Indian tribal name *Mer* or *Med*. Compare Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 326-327. It is to be remembered that the name of the emperor then (A.D. 450-500) ruling the White Huns was *Khushnawiz*, a Persian name, the Happy Cherisher. . . . The emperor's Persian name *Mihirakula* reported (Darmsteter JI. Asiatique, X. 70 n. 3) introduction of Magi into Kashmir, and the maptness of *Mihirakula* as a personal name give weight to Mr. Fleet's suggestion (Ind. Ant. XV. 245-252) that *Mihirakula* is pure Persian. The true form may then be *Mihirazula*, that is *Sun Rose*, a name which the personal beauty of the prince may have gained him. 'I have heard of my son's wisdom and beauty and wish once to see his face' said the fate-rewinding mother of king *Baladitya* (Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 169) when the captive *Mihirakula* was led before her his young head for very shame shrouded in his cloak.<sup>7</sup> Speech in Jour. Asiatique 1883 II. 335 and 348.<sup>8</sup> J. R. A. S. XXI. 721. According to other accounts (Ency. Brit. IX. Ed. Art. Turk. page 638) a portion of the Jouen-Jouen remained in Eastern Asia, where, till A.D. 552, they were the masters of the Tuliuk or Turks, who then overthrew their masters and about ten years later (A.D. 560) crushed the power of the White Huns.

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 460-470.  
White Huns,  
A.D. 460-520.

Lac-lit the father of Toramāna belonged.<sup>1</sup> At the same time, though perhaps not themselves White Huns, the details regarding Toramāna and Mihirakula so nearly cover the fifty years (A.D. 470-530) of Hūna ascendancy in North India that, as was in keeping with their position in charge of his Indian outpost, the White Hun emperor Khushnāwaz, while himself engaged in Central Asia and in Persia (A.D. 460-500),<sup>2</sup> seems to have entrusted the conquest of India to Toramāna and his son Mihirakula. Of the progress of the mixed Yüan-Yuan and White Hun invaders in India few details are available. Their ascendancy in the north seems to have been too complete to allow of opposition, and Hūnas were probably closely associated with the Maitraka or Mebara conquest of Kathnāvāda (A.D. 480-520). The southern fringe of the White Hun dominions, the present Sauror district of the Central Provinces, seems to have been the chief theatre of war, a debateable ground between the Guptas, Toramāna, and the Malwa chiefs. To the east of Sauror the Guptas succeeded in maintaining their power until at least A.D. 528-9.<sup>3</sup> To the west of Sauror the Guptas held Eran in A.D. 484-5.<sup>4</sup> About twenty years later (A.D. 505)<sup>5</sup> Eran was in the hands of Toramāna, and in A.D. 510-11 Bhanugupta<sup>6</sup> fought and apparently won a battle at Eran.

Mihirakula,  
A.D. 512.

Mihirakula's accession to the throne may perhaps be fixed at A.D. 512. An inscription of Yaśodharman, the date of which cannot be many years on either side of A.D. 532-3, claims to have enforced the submission of the famous Mihirakula whose power had established itself on the thrones of kings and who had hitherto bowed his neck to no one but Śiva.<sup>7</sup> In spite of this defeat Mihirakula held Gwalior and the inaccessible fortress of the Himālayas.<sup>8</sup> These dates give about A.D. 520 as the time of Mihirakula's greatest power, a result which suggests that the Gollas, whom, about A.D. 520, the Greek merchant Cosmas Indicopleustes heard of in the ports of Western India as the supreme ruler of Northern India was Kula or Mihirakula.<sup>9</sup>

Yaśodharman  
of Malwa,  
A.D. 533-4.

Regarding the history of the third destroyers of Gupta power in Malwa, inscriptions show that in A.D. 437-8, under Kumāragupta, Bandhuvārman son of Vishnuvārman ruled as a local king.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The name Jouen Jonen seems to agree with Toramāna's surname Jātula and with the Juvia whom Cosmas Indicopleustes (A.D. 520-535) places to the north-east of Persia. Priaulx's *Indian Travels*, 220.

<sup>2</sup> Rawlinson's *Seventh Monarchy*, 311-349.

<sup>3</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, Ins. 25 line 1.

<sup>4</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, Ins. 19 line 2.

<sup>5</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, Ins. 36.

<sup>6</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, Ins. 20.

<sup>7</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, Ins. 33.

<sup>8</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, and *Ind. Ant.* XVIII, 219.

<sup>9</sup> Priaulx's *Indian Travels*, 222. Compare Yule's *Cathay*, I. clxx.; Mignes' *Patr.* (tr. 88 page 450). For the use of Kula for Mihirakula, the second half for the whole, compare Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III* 8 note. As regards the change from Kula to Gollas it is to be noted that certain of Mihirakula's own coins (*Ind. Ant.* XV 249) have the form Gula not Kula, and that this agrees with the suggestion (page 75 note 6) that the true form of the name is the Persian Mihiragula Rose of the Sun. Of this Gollas, who, like Mihirakula, was the type of conqueror round whom legends gather, Cosmas says (Priaulx, 223). Besides a great force of cavalry Gollas could bring into the field 2000 elephants. So large were his armies that once when besieging an inland town defended by a water-fosse his men horses and elephants drank the water and marched in dry-shod.

<sup>10</sup> Fleet's *Corp. Ins. Ind. III*, Ins. 18.

Possibly Bandhuvarman afterwards threw off his allegiance to the Guptas and thereby caused the temporary loss of Surāshtra towards the end of Kumārāgupta's reign. Nothing further is recorded of the rulers of Mālwa until the reign of Yaśodharman in A.D. 533-4.<sup>1</sup> It has been supposed that one of Yaśodharman's inscriptions mentioned a king Vishnuvardhana but there can be little doubt that both names refer to the same person.<sup>2</sup> The name of Yaśodharman's tribe is unknown and his crest the *śulikara* has not been satisfactorily explained.<sup>3</sup> Mandasor<sup>4</sup> in Western Malwa, where all his inscriptions have been found, must have been a centre of Yaśodharman's power. Yaśodharman boasts<sup>5</sup> of conquering from the Brahmaputra to mount Mahendra and from the Himālayas to the Western Ocean. In the sixth century only one dynasty could claim such widespread power. That dynasty is the famous family of Ujjain to which belonged the well known Vikramāditya of the Nine Gems. It may be conjectured not only that Yaśodharman belonged to this family but that Yaśodharman was the great Vikramāditya himself.<sup>6</sup>

The difficult question remains by whom was the power of Mihirakula overthrown. Yaśodharman claims to have subdued Mihirakula, who, he distinctly says, had never before been defeated.<sup>7</sup> On the other hand, Huen Tsiang ascribes Mihirakula's overthrow to a Bālāditya of Magadha.<sup>8</sup> Coins prove that Bālāditya<sup>9</sup> was one of the titles of Narasimhagupta grandson of Kumārāgupta I. (A.D. 417-450) who probably ruled Magadha as his son's seal was found in the Ghāzapur district.<sup>10</sup> If Huen Tsiang's story is accepted a slight chronological difficulty arises in the way of this identification. It is clear that Mihirakula's first defeat was at the hands of Yaśodharman about A.D. 530. His defeat and capture by Bālāditya must have been later. As Skandagupta's reign ended about A.D. 470 a blank of sixty years has to be filled by the two reigns of his brother and his nephew.<sup>11</sup> This, though not impossible, suggests caution in identifying Bālāditya. According to Huen Tsiang Bālāditya was a feudatory of Mihirakula who rebelled against him when he began to persecute the Buddhists. Huen Tsiang notices that, at the intercession of his own mother, Bālāditya spared Mihirakula's life and allowed him to retire to Kashmir. He further notices that Mihirakula and his brother were rivals and his statement suggests that from Kashmir Mihirakula defeated his brother and recovered Gandhāra. The ascendancy of the White Huns cannot have lasted long after Mihirakula. About A.D. 560 the power of the White Huns was crushed between the combined attacks of the Persians and Turks.<sup>12</sup>—(A. M. T. J.)

## Chapter VII.

THE GUPTAS,  
A.D. 460-470.Yaśodharman  
of Mālwa,  
A.D. 533-4.<sup>1</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 33-35.<sup>2</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 35 line 5.<sup>3</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 151 note 4.<sup>4</sup> N. Lat. 24° 3'; E. Long 75° 8'.<sup>5</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 33 line 5.<sup>6</sup> This has already been suggested by Genl. Cunningham, Num. Chron. (3rd Ser.), VIII. 41. Dr. Hearnle (J. B. A. S. LVIII. 100ff) has identified Yaśodharman with Vikramāditya's son Śilāditya Pratāpala.<sup>7</sup> Fleet's Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Ins. 33 line 6.<sup>8</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 169.<sup>9</sup> Hearnle in J. B. A. S. LVIII. 97.<sup>10</sup> See Smith and Hearnle J. B. A. S. LVIII. 84; and Fleet Ind. Ant. XIX. 224.<sup>11</sup> Hearnle makes light of this difficulty J. B. A. S. LVIII. 97.<sup>12</sup> Rawlinson's Seventh Monarchy. 420, 422.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE VALABHIS

(A.D. 509-766)

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.Valeh Town,  
1893.

THE Valabhi dynasty, which succeeded the Guptas in Gujarāt and Kāthiāváda, take their name from their capital in the east of Kāthiāváda about twenty miles west of Bhavnagar and about twenty-five miles north of the holy Jain hill of Satruñjaya. The modern name of Valabhi is Valeh. It is impossible to say whether the modern Valeh is a corruption of Valabhi the Prakrit form of the Sanskrit Valabhi or whether Valabhi is Sanskritised from a local original Valeh. The form Valabhi occurs in the writings of Jirapabhasari a learned Jain of the thirteenth century who describes Satruñjaya as in the Valabaka province. A town in the chiefship of Valeh now occupies the site of old Valabhi,<sup>1</sup> whose ruins lie buried below thick layers of black earth and silt under the modern town and its neighbourhood. The only remains of old buildings are the large foundation bricks of which, except a few new houses, the whole of Valeh is built. The absence of stone supports the theory that the buildings of old Valabhi were of brick and wood. In 1872 when the site was examined the only stone remains were a few scattered Lingas and a well-polished life-size granite Xandi or bull lying near a modern Mahādeva temple. Diggers for old bricks have found copper pots and copperplates and small Buddhist relic shrines with earthen pots and clay seals of the seventh century.

The ruins of Valabhi show few signs of representing a large or important city. The want of sweet water apparently unfits the site for the capital of so large a kingdom as Valabhi. Its choice as capital was probably due to its being a harbour on the Bhāvnagar creek. Since

---

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Vajreshankar Gayvishankar, Naib Diván of Bhavnagar, has made a collection of articles found in Valabhi. The collection includes clay seals of four varieties and of about the seventh century with the Buddhist formula *Ye Dharma Jata Prabhava*; a small earthen tope with the same formula imprinted on its base with a seal, beads and ring stones *etc.* of several varieties of *akik* or carnelian and *sphatik* or coral some finished others half finished showing that as in modern Cambay the polishing of carnelians was a leading industry in early Valabhi. One circular figure of the size of a half rupee carved in black stone has engraved upon it the letters *ma ra* in characters of about the second century. \* A royal seal found by Colonel Watson in Valeh bears on it an imperfect inscription of four lines in characters as old as Dhruvasena I. (A.D. 526). This seal contains the names of three generations of kings, two of which the grandfather and grandson read Abharman and Pushyana all three being called *Maharaja* or great king. The dynastic name is lost. The names on these moveable objects need not belong to Valabhi history. Still that seals of the second and fifth centuries have been discovered in Valabhi shows the place was in existence before the founding of the historical Valabhi kingdom. A further proof of the age of the city is the mention of it in the Kathasaritsagara a comparatively modern work but of very old materials. To this evidence of age, with much hesitation, may be added Balai Ptolemy's name for Gopmath point which suggests that as early as the second century Valeh or Balah (compare Alberuni's era of Balah) was known by its present name. Badly minted coins of the Gupta ruler Kumāragupta (A.D. 417-453) are so common as to suggest that they were the currency of Valabhi.

The *ma* and *ra* are of the old style and the side and upper strokes, that is the *kina* and *mūla* of *ra* are horizontal.

the days of Valabhi's prime the silt which thickly covers the ruins has also filled and choked the channel which once united it with the Bhāvnagar creek when the small Ghelo was probably a fair sized river.

In spite of the disappearance of every sign of greatness Hiuen Tsiang's (A.D. 610) details show how rich and populous Valabhi was in the early part of the seventh century. The country was about 1000 miles (6000 *li*) and the capital about five miles (30 *li*) in circumference. The soil the climate and the manners of the people were like those of Malava. The population was dense; the religious establishments rich. Over a hundred merchants owned a hundred *lakh*s. The rare and valuable products of distant regions were stored in great quantities. In the country were several hundred monasteries or *sanghāraṃas* with about 6000 monks. Most of them studied the Little Vehicle according to the Sāṃmatīya school. There were several hundred temples of Devas and sectaries of many sorts. When Tathāgata or Gautama Buddha (B.C. 560 - 480) lived he often travelled through this country. King Aśoka (B.C. 240) had raised monuments or *stupas* in all places where Buddha had rested. Among these were spots where the three past Buddhas sat or walked or preached. At the time of Hiuen Tsiang's account (A.D. 610) the king was of the Kṣātrīya caste, as all Indian rulers were. He was the nephew of Śīlāditya of Mālava and the son-in-law of the son of Śīlāditya the reigning king of Kanyakubja. His name was Dhruvapati (Tu-lu-h'o-po-tu). He was of a lively and hasty disposition, shallow in wisdom and statecraft. He had only recently attached himself sincerely to the faith in the three precious ones. He yearly summoned a great assembly and during seven days gave away valuable gems and choice meats. On the monks he bestowed in charity the three garments and medicaments, or their equivalents in value, and precious articles made of the seven rare and costly gems. These he gave in charity and redeemed at twice their price. He esteemed the virtuous, honoured the good, and revered the wise. Learned priests from distant regions were specially honoured. Not far from the city was a great monastery built by the Arhat Achāra ('O-che-lo), where, during their travels the Bodhisattvas Guṇamati and Sthiramati (Kien-hwn) settled and composed renowned treatises.<sup>1</sup>

The only historical materials regarding the Valabhi dynasty are their copperplates of which a large number have been found. That such powerful rulers as the Valabhis should leave no records on stones and no remains of religious or other buildings is probably because, with one possible exception at Gopnath,<sup>2</sup> up to the ninth century all temples and religious buildings in Kāthiavāḍa and Gujarāt were of brick and wood.<sup>3</sup>

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509 - 766.

Valabhi in  
A.D. 630.

Valabhi  
Copperplates.

<sup>1</sup> As suggested by Dr. Bühler (Ind. Ant. VI, 10), this is probably the Vihāra called Śrī Bhaṃpādīyavihāra which is described as having been constructed by Achārya Bhadranta Sthiramati who is mentioned as the grantee in a copperplate of Dharaṣena II. bearing date Gupta 269 (A.D. 588). The Sthiramati mentioned with titles of religious veneration in the copperplate is probably the same as that referred to by Hiuen Tsiang. (Ditto).

<sup>2</sup> Burgess' Kathiāwar and Kutch, 187.

<sup>3</sup> Stories on record about two temples one at Satruñjaya the other at Somanātha support this view. As regards the Satruñjaya temple the tradition is that while the minister of Kumarapāla (A.D. 1113 - 1174) of Anahilavāḍa was on a visit to Satruñjaya to worship and meditate in the temple of Ādinātha, the wick of the lamp in the shrine was removed

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.Valabhi  
Copperplates.

The Valabhi copperplates chiefly record grants to Brahmanical temples and Buddhist monasteries and sometimes to individuals. All are in one style two plates inscribed breadthwise on the inner side, the earliest plates being the smallest. The plates are held together by two rings passed through two holes in their horizontal upper margin. One of the rings bears on one side a seal with, as a badge of the religion of the dynasty, a well-proportioned seated Nandi or bull. Under the bull is the word *Bhaṭārka* the name of the founder of the dynasty. Except such differences as may be traced to the lapse of time, the characters are the same in all, and at the same time differ from the character then in use in the Valabhi territory which must have been that from which *Devanāgarī* is derived. The Valabhi plate character is adopted from that previously in use in South Gujarāt plates which was taken from the South Indian character. The use of this character suggests that either *Bhaṭārka* or the clerks and writers of the plates came from South Gujarāt.<sup>1</sup> The language of all the grants is Sanskrit prose. Each records the year of the grant, the name of the king making the grant, the name of the grantee the name of the village or field granted, the name of the writer of the charter either the minister of peace and war *śānti-śānti-dhikṛta* or the military head *balī-dhikṛta*, and sometimes the name of the *dātaka* or gift-causer generally some officer of influence or a prince and in one case a princess. The grants begin by recording they were made either 'from Valabhi' the capital, or 'from the royal camp' '*Vijaya-skandhārā*.' Then follows the genealogy of the dynasty from *Bhaṭārka* the founder to the grantor king. Each king has in every grant a series of attributes which appear to have been fixed for him once for all. Except in rare instances the grants contain nothing historical. They are filled with verbose description and figures of speech in high flown Sanskrit. As enjoined in law-books or *dharmaśāstras* after the genealogy of the grantor comes the name of the composer usually the minister of peace and war and after him the boundaries of the land granted. The plates conclude with the date of the grant, expressed in numerals following the letter *śam* or the letters *saṃpā* for *saṃvatsāra* that is year. After the numerals are given the lunar month and day and the day of the week, with, at the extreme end, the sign manual *svaḥastō mama* followed by the name of the king in the genitive case that is Own hand of me so and so. The name of the era in which the date is reckoned is nowhere given.

Period  
Covered.

So far as is known the dates extend for 240 years from 207 to 447. That the earliest known date is so late as 207 makes it pro-

---

by mice and set on fire and almost destroyed the temple which was wholly of wood. The minister seeing the danger of wooden buildings determined to erect a stone edifice (*Kumārāpala Charita*). The story about *Somanātha* is given in an inscription of the time of *Kumārāpala* in the temple of *Bhadrakālī* which shows that before the stone temple was built by *Bhīmadeva I.* (A.D. 1022-1072) the structure was of wood which was traditionally believed to be as old as the time of *Kṛishṇa*. Compare the *Bhadrakālī* inscription at *Somanātha*.

<sup>1</sup> The correctness of this inference seems open to question. The descent of the Valabhi plate character seems traceable from its natural local source the *Skandagupta* (A.D. 450) and the *Rudradāman* (A.D. 150) *Girnar* inscriptions.—(A. M. T. J.)

hable that the Valabhis adopted an era already in use in Káthiaváda. No other era seems to have been in use in Valabhi. Three inscriptions have their years dated expressly in the Valabhi Samvat. The earliest of these in Bhadrakáli's temple in Somnāth Pátan of the time of Kumārāpāla (A.D. 1113-1171) the Solanki ruler of Anahilaváda. It bears date Valabhi Samvat 850. The second and third are in the temple of Harsata Devi at Verával. The second which was first mentioned by Colonel Tod, is dated Hijra 662, Vikrama Samvat 1320, Valabhi Samvat 915, and Simha Samvat 151. The third inscription, in the same temple on the face of the pedestal of an image of Krishna represented as upholding the Govardhana hill, bears date Valabhi S 927. These facts prove that an era known as the Valabhi era, which the inscriptions show began in A.D. 319, was in use for about a hundred years in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. This may be accepted as the era of the Valabhi plates which extended over two centuries. Further the great authority (A.D. 1030) Alberuni gives Saka 241 that is A.D. 319 as the starting point both of the 'era of Balah' and of what he calls the Gupta-kala or the Gupta era. Beruni's accuracy is established by a comparison of the Mandasor inscription and the Nepal inscription of Amśuvarman which together prove the Gupta era started from A.D. 319. Though its use by the powerful Valabhi dynasty caused the era to be generally known by their name in Gujarat in certain localities the Gupta era continued in use under its original name as in the Morbi copperplate of Jálkadeva which bears date 588 "of the era of the Guptas."<sup>1</sup>

The Valabhi grants supply information regarding the leading office bearers and the revenue police and village administrators whose names generally occur in the following order :

- (1) *Ayuktaka*, } meaning appointed, apparently any superior
- (2) *Vniyuktaka* } official.
- (3) *Drāṅyaka*, apparently an officer in charge of a town, as *dravṇa* means a town.
- (4) *Mahattara* or Senior has the derivative meaning of high in rank. *Mhātāra* the Maráthi for an old man is the same word. In the Valabhi plates *mahattara* seems to be generally used to mean the accredited headman of a village, recognised as headman both by the people of the village and by the Government.
- (5) *Chátabhata* that is *bhata*s or sepoy's for *chitas* or rogues, police mounted and on foot, represent the modern police *jamádars* *haváldárs* and constables. The Kumārāpāla Charita mentions that Chátabhata's were sent by Suddharāja to apprehend the fugitive Kumārāpāla. One plate records the grant of a village 'unenterable by *chátabhata*s.'<sup>2</sup>
- (6) *Dhruva* fixed or permanent is the hereditary officer in charge of the records and accounts of a village, the Taláti and Kulkarni

## Chapter VIII

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 500-700.

Period  
Covered.

Valabhi  
Administration,  
A.D. 500-700.

<sup>1</sup> The era has been exhaustively discussed by Mr. Fleet in Corp. Ins. Ind. III. Introduction.

<sup>2</sup> Nepal Inscriptions. The phrase *achāta-bhata* is not uncommon. Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III. page 98 note 2) explains *achāta-bhata-praveśya* as "not to be entered either by regular (*bhata*) or by irregular (*achāta*) troops."

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 500-700.Valabhi  
Administration,  
A.D. 500-700.

of modern times. One of the chief duties of the Dhruva was to see that revenue farmers did not take more than the royal share.<sup>1</sup> The name is still in use in Cutch where village accountants are called *Dhru* and *Dhruva*. *Dhru* is also a common surname among Nāgar Brāhmins and Modh and other Vānias in Cutch Gujarat and Kāthiāvāda.

(7) *Adhikarāṇika* means the chief judicial magistrate or judge of a place.

(8) *Dandapāśika* literally 'holding the fetters or noose of punishment,' is used both of the head police officer and of the hangman or executioner.

(9) *Chandroddharāṇika* the thief-catcher. Of the two Indian ways of catching thieves, one of setting a thief to catch a thief the other the *Pagi* or tracking system, the second answers well in sandy Gujarat and Kāthiāvāda where the Tracker or *Pagi* is one of the *Birābalute* or regular village servants.

(10) *Rājasthānīya*, the foreign secretary, the officer who had to do with other states and kingdoms *rājasthānas*. Some authorities take *rājasthānīya* to mean viceroy.

(11) *Amītya* minister and sometimes councillor is generally coupled with *kumāra* or prince.

(12) *Anutpannādānasamudgrāhaka* the arrear-gatherer.

(13) *Sāntika* the superintendent of tolls or customs.

(14) *Bhōjika* or *Bhōjoddhārāṇika* the collector of the *Bhōga* that is the state share of the land produce taken in kind, as a rule one-sixth. The term *bhōga* is still in use in Kāthiāvāda for the share, usually one-sixth, which landholders receive from their cultivating tenants.

(15) *Vartmapāla* the roadwatch were often mounted and stationed in *thānis* or small roadside sheds.<sup>2</sup>

(16) *Pratisaraya* patrols night-guards or watchmen of fields and villages.<sup>3</sup>

(17) *Vishayapati* division-lord probably corresponded to the present subāh.

(18) *Rāshṭrapati* the head of a district.

(19) *Gāmākūṭa* the village headman.

Territorial  
Divisions.

The plates show traces of four territorial divisions: (1) *Vishaya* the largest corresponding to the modern administrative Division: (2) *Āhāra* or *Āharāṇī* that is collectorate (from *āhāra* a collection) corresponding to the modern district or zillah: (3) *Pathaka*, of the road, a sub-division, the place named and its surroundings: (4) *Sthalī* a petty division the place without surroundings.<sup>4</sup>

Land  
Assessment.

The district of Kaira and the province of Kāthiāvāda to which the Valabhi grants chiefly refer appear to have had separate systems

<sup>1</sup> Buhler in Ind. Ant. V, 205.<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 68.<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 68.

<sup>4</sup> Of the different territorial divisions the following examples occur: Of *Vishaya* or main division Svabhīgapuravishaye and Sūryapuravishaye; of *Āhāra* or collectorate Khetaka-ghāra the Kaira district and Hastavapra-ghāra or Hastavaprāharanī the Hāthab district near Bhavnagar; of *Pathaka* or sub-division Nagar-panthaka Forbandar panthaka (Parnis still talk of Navsāri panthaka); of *Sthalī* or petty division Vaṣasthalī, Louṣapādrakasthalī, and others.

of land assessment Kaira by yield Káthiáváda by area. Under the Káthiáváda system the measurement was by *pádávarita* literally the space between one foot and the other that is the modern *ladam* or pace. The pace used in measuring land seems to have differed from the ordinary pace as most of the Káthiáváda grants mention the *bhāpádávarita* or land pace. The Kaira system of assessment was by yield the unit being the *pitaka* or basketful, the grants describing fields as capable of growing so many baskets of rice or barley (or as requiring so many baskets of seed). As the grants always specify the Kaira basket a similar system with a different sized basket seems to have been in use in other parts of the country. Another detail which the plates preserve is that each field had its name called after a guardian or from some tree or plant. Among field names are Kotilaka, Atinana-kedāra, Khanda-kedāra, Gargara-kshetra, Bhīma-kshetra, Khagah-kedāra, Sāmi-kedāra.

The state religion of the Valabhi kings was Śaivism. Every Valabhi copperplate hitherto found bears on its seal the figure of a bull with under it the name of Bhatārka the founder of the dynasty who was a Śaiva. Except Dhruvasena I (A.D. 526) who is called *Paramadhīgarata* or the great Vaishnava and his brother and successor Pharapatta who is styled *Paramadhīgabhakta* or the great devotee of the sun, and Guhasena, who in his grant of Sam. 218 calls himself *Paramopāsaka* or the great devotee of Buddha, all the Valabhi kings are called *Parama-māhāśvara* the great Śaiva.

#### Religion.

The grants to Buddhist *vihāras* or monasteries of which there are several seem special gifts to institutions founded by female relatives the granting kings. Most of the grants are to Brāhmins who though performing Vaidik ceremonies probably as at present honoured Śaivism. This Śaivism seems to have been of the old Pāśupata school of Nakulīsa or Lakulīsa as the chief shrine of Lakulīsa was at Kārvāna the modern Kārvān in the Gāikwār's territory fifteen miles south of Baroda and eight miles north-east of Miyagūn railway station a most holy place till the time of the Vāghela king Arjunadeva in the thirteenth century.<sup>1</sup> The special

<sup>1</sup> Kārvān seems to have suffered great desecration at the hands of the Musalmāns. All round the village chiefly under pipul trees, images and pieces of sculpture and large *basas* are scattered. To the north and east of the village on the banks of a large built pond called Kāśikunda are numerous sculptures and *basas*. Partly embedded in the ground a pillar in style of about the eleventh century has a writing over it of latter times. The inscription contains the name of the place Sanskritised as Kīyāvarohana, and mentions an ascetic named Vinabhadraśaśi who remained mute for twelve years. Near the pillar, at the steps leading to the water, is a carved doorway of about the tenth or eleventh century with some well proportioned figures. The left doorpost has at the top a figure of Śiva, below the Śiva a figure of Sūrya, below the Sūrya a male and female, and under them attendants or *ganis* of Śiva. The right doorpost has at the top a figure of Viṣṇu seated on Garuda, below the seated Viṣṇu a standing Viṣṇu with four hands, and below that two sitting male and female figures, the male with hands folded in worship the female holding a purse. These figures probably represent a married pair who paid for this gateway. Further below are figures of *ganis* of Śiva. In 1881 in repairing the south bank of the pond a number of carved stones were brought from the north of the town. About half a mile north-west of the town on the bank of a dry brook, is a temple of Chāmunā Devi of about the tenth century. It contains a mutilated life size image of Chāmundā. Facing the temple lie mutilated figures of the seven Matrikās and of Bhairava, probably the remains of a separate altar.

#### Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-706.

Land  
Assessment.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Religion.

holiness attached to the Narādā in Śaivism and to its pebbles as *lingas* is probably due to the neighbourhood of this shrine of Kāvān. The followers of the Nakulīśa-Pāśupata school were strict devotees of Śaivism, Nakulīśa the founder being regarded as an incarnation of Śiva. The date of the foundation of this school is not yet determined. It appears to have been between the second and the fifth century A.D. Nakulīśa had four disciples Kuśika, Gārgya, Kārusha, and Maitreya founders of four branches which spread through the length and breadth of India. Though no special representatives of this school remain, in spite of their nominal allegiance to Śaṅkarācharya the Dasanamis or Atits are in fact Nakulīśas in their discipline doctrines and habits—applying ashes over the whole body, planting a *linga* over the grave of a buried Atit, and possessing proprietary rights over Śaiva temples. The Pāśupatas were ever ready to fight for their school and often helped and served in the armies of kings who became their disciples. Till a century ago these unpaid followers recruited the armies of India with celibates firm and strong in fighting. It was apparently to gain these recruits that so many of the old rulers of India became followers of the Pāśupata school. To secure their services the rulers had to pay them special respect. The leaders of these fighting monks were regarded as pontiffs like the Bappa-pada or Pontiff of the later Valabhis and other kings. Thus among the later Valabhis Śīlāditya IV. is called *Bappapadānandhyāta* and all subsequent Śīlādityas *Bappapadānandhyāta* both titles meaning Worshipping at the feet of Bava or Bappa.

This Bava is the popular Prakrit form of the older Prakrit or *desi* Bappa meaning Father or worshipful. Bappa is the original of the Hindustāni and Gujarati Bava father or elder, it is also a special term for a head Gosavi or Atit or indeed for any recluse. The epithet *Bappa-padānandhyāta* Bowing at the feet of Bappa, occurs in the attributes of several Nepal kings, and in the case of king Vasantaseṇa appears the full phrase

*Parama-darśana-bappa-bhottatāka-mahatāta-Śiva-padānandhyāta.*

Facing at the illustrious feet of the great Mahātāja Lord Bappa.

These Nepal kings were Śaivas as they are called *parama-māheśvara* in the text of the inscription and like the Valabhi seals their seals bear a bull. It follows that the term *Bappa* was applied both by the Valabhis and the Nepal kings to some one, who can hardly be the same individual, unless he was their

---

facing the temple with the *matrimandala* or Mother-Meeting upon it. The village has a large modern temple of Śiva called Nakleśvara, on the site of some old temple and mostly built of old carved temple stones. In the temple close by are a number of old images of the sun and the boar incarnation of Viṣṇu all of about the tenth or eleventh century. The name Nakleśvara would seem to have been derived from Nakulīśa the founder of the Pāśupata sect and the temple may originally have had an image of Nakulīśa himself or a *bhūṃ* representing Nakulīśa. Close to the west of the village near a small dry reservoir called the Kunda of Rājardheśvara lies a well-preserved black stone seated figure of Chanda one of the most respected of Śiva's attendants, without whose worship all worship of Śiva is imperfect, and to whom all that remains after making oblations to Śiva is offered. A number of other sculptures lie on the bank of the pond. About a mile to the south of Kāvān is a village called Langthali the place of *lingas*.

common overlord, which the distance between the two countries and still more the fact that his titles are the same as the titles of the Valabhi kings make almost impossible. In these circumstances the most probable explanation of the Bappa or Bava of these inscriptions is that it was applied to Shaivite pontiffs or ecclesiastical dignitaries. The attribute *Parama-dantala* The Great Divine prefixed to Bappa in the inscription of Vasantasena confirms this view. That such royal titles as *Mahārājādhirāja*, *Parara-bhāṭṭāraka*, and *Paramasara* are ascribed to Bappa is in agreement with the present use of *Mahārāja* for all priestly Brāhmins and recluses and of *Bhāṭṭāraka* for Digambara Jain priests. Though specially associated with Śaivas the title *bappa* is applied also to Vaiṣṇava dignitaries. That the term *bappa* was in similar use amongst the Buddhists appears from the title of a Valabhi *vihāra* Bappapāḍīyavihāra The monastery of the worshipful Bappa that is of the great teacher Sthiramati by whom it was built.<sup>1</sup>

The tribe or race of Bhātārka the founder of the Valabhi dynasty is doubtful. None of the numerous Valabhi copperplates mentions the race of the founder. The Chalukya and Rāshtrakūta copperplates are silent regarding the Valabhi dynasty. And it is worthy of note that the Gohlots and Gohils, who are descended from the Valabhis, take their name not from their race but from king Guha or Guhasena (A.D. 559-567) the fourth ruler and apparently the first great sovereign among the Valabhis. These considerations make it probable that Bhātārka belonged to some low or stranger tribe. Though the evidence falls short of proof the probability seems strong that Bhātārka belonged to the Gujjara tribe, and that it was the supremacy of him and his descendants which gave rise to the name Gujjara tāra the country of the Gujjaras a name used at first by outsiders and afterwards adopted by the people of Gujarāt. Except Bhātārka and his powerful dynasty no kings occur of sufficient importance to have given their name to the great province of Gujarāt. Against their Gujjara origin it may be urged that the Chinese traveller Hsien Tsiang (A.D. 640) calls the king of Valabhi a Kshatriya. Still Hsien Tsiang's remark was made more than a century after the establishment of the dynasty when their rise to power and influence had made it possible for them to ennoble themselves by calling themselves Kshatriyas and tracing their lineage to Puranic heroes. That such ennobling was not only possible but common is beyond question. Many so-called Rājput families in Gujarāt and Kāthiavāda can be traced to low or stranger tribes. The early kings of Nāndipurī or Nāndod (A.D. 450) call themselves Gujjaras and the later members of the same dynasty trace their lineage to the Mahābhārata hero Karna. Again two of the Nandod Gujjaras Dadda II. and Jayabhata II. helped the Valabhis under circumstances which suggest that the bond of sympathy

### Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Religion.

Origin of  
the Valabhis.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Real Buddhist Records, II. 268 note 76 and Ind. Ant. VI 9. The meaning and reference of the title *Bappa* have been much discussed. The question is treated at length by Mr. Fleet (Corp. Ins. Ind. III 186 note 1) with the result that the title is applied not to a religious teacher but to the father and predecessor of the king who makes the grant. According to Mr. Fleet *bappa* would be used in reference to a father, *bdra* in reference to an uncle.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.Origin of  
the Valabhis.

may have been their common origin. The present chiefs of Nándod derive their lineage from Karna and call themselves Gohils of the same stock as the Bhavnagar Gohils who admittedly belong to the Valabhi stock. This supports the theory that the Gurjjaras and the Valabhis had a common origin, and that the Gurjjaras were a branch of and tributary to the Valabhis. This would explain how the Valabhis came to make grants in Broach at the time when the Gurjjaras ruled there. It would further explain that the Gurjjaras were called *sámantas* or feudatories because they were under the overlordship of the Valabhis.<sup>1</sup>

## History.

The preceding chapter shows that except Chandragupta (A.D. 410) Kumāragupta (A.D. 416) and Skandagupta (A.D. 456) none of the Guptas have left any trace of supremacy in Gujarat and Kāthiāvāda. Of what happened in Gujarāt during the forty years after Gupta 150 (A.D. 169), when the reign of Skandagupta came to an end nothing is known or is likely to be discovered from Indian sources. The blank of forty years to the founder Bhatārka (A.D. 509) or more correctly of sixty years to Dhruvasena (A.D. 526) the first Valabhi king probably corresponds with the ascendancy of some foreign dynasty or tribe. All trace of this tribe has according to custom been blotted out of the Sm-kr̥it and other Hindu records. At the same time it is remarkable that the fifty years ending about A.D. 525 correspond closely with the ascendancy in north and north-west India of the great tribe of Ephthalites or White Huns. As has been shown in the Gupta Chapter, by A.D. 170 or 180, the White Huns seem to have been powerful if not supreme in Upper India. In the beginning of the sixth century, perhaps about A.D. 520, Cosmas Indicopleustes describes the north of India and the west coast as far south as Kāthiāna that is Kalyan near Bombay as under the Huns whose king was Gollas.<sup>2</sup> Not many years later (A.D. 530) the Hun power in Central India suffered defeat and about the same time a new dynasty arose in south-east Kāthiāvāda.

First Valabhi  
Grant,  
A.D. 526.

The first trace of the new power, the earliest Valabhi grant, is that of Dhruvasena in the Valabhi or Gupta year 207 (A.D. 526). In this grant Dhruvasena is described as the third son of the Senāpati or general Bhatārka. Of Senāpati Bhatārka neither copperplate nor inscription has been found. Certain coins which General Cunningham Arch. Surv. Rept. IX. Pl. V. has ascribed to Bhatārka have on the obverse a bust, as on the western coins of

<sup>1</sup> Whether the Valabhis were or were not Gurjjaras the following facts favour the view that they entered Gujarat from Malwa. It has been shown (Fleet Ind. Ant. XX. 376) that while the Guptas used the so-called Northern year beginning with Chaitra, the Valabhi year began with Kartika (see Ind. Ant. XX. 376). And further Kielhorn in his examination of questions connected with the Vikrama era (Ind. Ant. XIX and XX) has given reasons for believing that the original Vikrama year began with Kartika and took its rise in Malwa. It seems therefore that when they settled in Gujarāt, while they adopted the Gupta era the Valabhis still adhered to the old arrangement of the year to which they had been accustomed in their home in Malwa. The arrangement of the year entered into every detail of their lives, and was therefore much more difficult to change than the starting point of their era, which was important only for official acts. — (A. M. T. J.)

<sup>2</sup> Montfaucon's Edition in Priault's Indian Travels, 222-223. It seems doubtful if Cosmas meant that Gollas' overlordship spread as far south as Kalyān. Compare Migne's Patrologie Cursus, lxxxviii. 466; Yule's Cathay, I. clxx.

## THE VALABHIS.

Kumārāgupta, and on the reverse the Śaiva trident, and round the trident the somewhat doubtful legend in Gupta characters :

Rājño Mahākṣatri Paramādityabhakta Śrī Śarvva-bhaṭṭarakasa.

Of the king the great Kṣatri, great devotee of the sun, the illustrious Śarvva-bhaṭṭaraka.

This Śarvva seems to have been a Rāshtrakūṭa or Gurjjara king. His coins were continued so long in use and were so often copied that in the end upright strokes took the place of letters. That these coins did not belong to the founder of the Valabhi dynasty appears not only from the difference of name between Bhaṭṭaraka and Bhaṭārka but because the coiner was a king and the founder of the Valabhis a general.

Of the kingdom which Senāpati Bhaṭārka overthrew the following details are given in one of his epithets in Valabhi copperplates : 'Who obtained glory by dealing hundreds of blows on the large and very mighty armies of the Maitrakas, who by force had subdued their enemies.' As regards these Maitrakas it is to be noted that the name Maitrakas means Solar. The sound of the compound epithet *Maitraka-amita* that is Maitrakas-enemy used in the inscription makes it probable that the usual form Mihira, or solar was rejected in favour of Maitrakas which also means solar, to secure the necessary assonance with *amita* or enemy. The form Mihira solar seems a Hinduisizing or meaning-making of the northern tribal name Medh or Mehr, the Mehirs being a tribe which at one time seem to have held sway over the whole of Kāthiavāda and which are still found in strength near the Barda hills in the south-west of Kāthiavāda.<sup>1</sup> The Jethivā chiefs of Porbandar who were formerly powerful rulers are almost certainly of the Mehirs tribe. They are still called Mehr kings and the Mehirs of Kāthiavāda regard them as their leaders and at the call of their Head are ready to fight for him. The chief of Mehr traditions describes the fights of their founder Makaradhivaja with one Mayūradhivaja. This tradition seems to embody the memory of an historical struggle. The *makara* or fish is the tribal badge of the Mehirs and is marked on a Morbi copperplate dated A.D. 901 (G. 585) and on the forged Dhūnikī grant of the Mehr king Jāikadeva. On the other hand Mayūradhivaja or peacock bannered would be the name of the Guptas beginning with Chandragupta who ruled in Gujarat (A.D. 395-416) and whose coins have a peacock on the reverse. The tradition would thus be a recollection of the struggle between the Mehirs and Guptas in which about A.D. 470 the Guptas were defeated. The Mehirs seem to have been a northern tribe, who, the evidence of place names seems to show, passed south through Western Rājputāna, Jaslo, Ajo, Bad, and Komi leaders of this tribe giving their names to the settlements of Jesalmir, Ajmir, Badmer, and Komalmer. The resemblance of name and the nearness of dates suggest a connection between the Mehirs and the great Panjāb conqueror of the Guptas Mihirakula (A.D. 512-540?). If not them-

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Senāpati Bhaṭārka,  
A.D. 509-520?

The Maitrakas,  
A.D. 470-509.

<sup>1</sup> The Mehirs seem to have remained in power also in north-east Kāthiavāda till the thirteenth century. Mokherāji Gohil the famous chief of Piram was the son of a daughter of Dhan Mehr or Mair of Dhanduka. Rās Māla, I. 316.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.The Maitrakas,  
A.D. 470-509.

selves Hūnas the Mehars may have joined the conquering armies of the Hūnas and passing south with the Hūnas may have won a settlement in Kāthiavāda as the Kāthis and Jhādejas settled about 300 years later. After Senāpati Bhātārka's conquests in the south of the Peninsula the Mehars seem to have retired to the north of Kāthnavāda.

The above account of the founder of the Valabhis accepts the received opinion that he was the Senāpati or General of the Guptas. The two chief points in support of this view are that the Valabhis adopted both the Gupta era and the Gupta currency. Still it is to be noted that this adoption of a previous era and currency by no means implies any connection with the former rulers.<sup>1</sup> Both the Gurjjaras (A.D. 580) and the Chālukyas (A.D. 642) adopted the existing era of the Traikutakas (A.D. 218-9) while as regards currency the practice of continuing the existing type is by no means uncommon.<sup>2</sup> In these circumstances, and seeing that certain of the earlier Valabhi inscriptions refer to an overlord who can hardly have been a Gupta, the identification of the king to whom the original Senāpati owed allegiance must be admitted to be doubtful.

All known copperplates down to those of Dharasena (A.D. 579 the great grandson of Bhātārka) give a complete genealogy from Bhātārka to Dharasena. Later copperplates omit all mention of any descendants but those in the main line.

Senāpati's  
Sons.

Senāpati Bhātārka had four sons, (1) Dharasena (2) Dronasimha (3) Dhruvasena and (4) Dharapatta. Of Dharasena the first son no record has been traced. His name first appears in the copperplates of his brother Dhruvasena where like his father he is called Senāpati. Similarly of the second son Dronasimha no record exists except in the copperplates of his brother Dhruvasena. In these copperplates unlike his father and elder brother Dhruvasena is called *Mahārāja* and is mentioned as 'invested with royal authority in person by the great lord, the lord of the wide extent of the whole world.' This great lord or *paramasāmi* could not have been his father Bhātārka. Probably he was the king to whom Bhātārka owed allegiance. It is not clear where Dronasimha was installed king probably it was in Kāthiavāda from the south-east of which his father and elder brother had driven back the Mehars or Maitrakas.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> All the silver and copper coins found in Valabhi and in the neighbouring town of Sāhor are poor imitations of Kinnaragupta's (A.D. 117-153) and of Skandagupta's (A.D. 451-470) coins, smaller lighter and of bad almost rude workmanship. The only traces of an independent currency are two copper coins of Dharasena, apparently Dharasena IV., the most powerful of the dynasty who was called *Chakravartin* or Emperor. The question of the Gupta-Valabhi coins is discussed in Jour. Royal As. Socy. for Jan. 1893 pages 133-143. Dr. Bühler (page 138) holds the view put forward in this note of Dr. Bhagvānlāl's namely that the coins are Valabhi copies of Gupta currency. Mr. Smith (Ibid., 142-143) thinks they should be considered the coins of the kings whose names they bear.

<sup>2</sup> The three types of coins still current at Ujjain, Bhilsa, and Gwālior in the territories of His Highness Sindbia are imitations of the previous local Muhammadan coinage.

<sup>3</sup> As the date of Dronasimha's investiture is about A.D. 520 it is necessary to consider what kings at this period claimed the title of supreme lord and could boast of ruling the whole earth. The rulers of this period whom we know of are Mihirakula,

The third son Dhruvasena is the first of several Valabhis of that name. Three copperplates of his remain: The Kukad grant dated Gupta 207 (A.D. 526),<sup>1</sup> an unpublished grant found in Junágadh dated Gupta 210 (A.D. 529), and the Valch grant dated Gupta 216 (A.D. 535).<sup>2</sup> One of Dhruvasena's attributes *Paramabhāṭāraka-pādānudhyāta*, bowing at the feet of the great lord, apparently applies to the same paramount sovereign who installed his brother Dronasimha. The paramount lord can hardly be Dhruvasena's father as his father is either called *Bhātārka* without the *parama* or more commonly *Senāpati* that is general. Dhruvasena's other political attributes are *Mahārāja* Great King or *Mahāsīmanta* Great Chief, the usual titles of a petty feudatory king. In the A.D. 535 plates he has the further attributes of *Mahāpratihāra* the great doorkeeper or chamberlain, *Mahādandanāyaka* the great magistrate, and *Mahākīrtakṛitika* (?) or great general, titles which seem to show he still served some overlord. It is not clear whether Dhruvasena succeeded his brother Dronasimha or was a separate contemporary ruler. The absence of 'falling at the feet of' or other successional phrase and the use of the epithet 'serving at the feet of' the great lord seem to show that his power was distinct from his brothers. In any case Dhruvasena is the first of the family who has a clear connection with Valabhi from which the grants of A.D. 526 and 529 are dated.

In these grants Dhruvasena's father Bhātārka and his elder brothers are described as 'great Mahēśvaras' that is followers of Śiva, while Dhruvasena himself is called *Paramabhagavata* the great Vaishnava. It is worthy of note, as stated in the A.D. 535 grant, that his niece Duddā (or Lulā?) was a Buddhist and had dedicated a Buddhist monastery at Valabhi. The latest known date of Dhruvasena is A.D. 535 (G. 216). Whether Dharapatta or Dharapatta's son Guhasena succeeded is doubtful. That Dharapatta is styled Mahārāja and that a twenty-four years' gap occurs between the latest grant of Dhruvasena and A.D. 559 the earliest grant of

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.Dhruvasena I.,  
A.D. 526-535.

Yaśodharman Vishnuvardhana, the descendant of Kumāragupta's son Paragupta, and the Gupta chiefs of Eastern Māwa. Neither Toramāṇa nor Mihirakula appears to have borne the paramount title. *Paramēśvara* though the former is called *Mahārājādhirāja* in the Erai inscription and *Āmāpati* or Lord of the Earth (— simply king) on his coins. In the Gwalior inscription Mihirakula is simply called Lord of the Earth. He was a powerful prince but he could hardly claim to be ruler of "the whole circumference of the earth." He therefore cannot be the installer of Dronasimha. Taking next the Guptas of Magadha we find on the Bhutari seal the title of *Mahārājādhirāja* given to each of them, but there is considerable reason to believe that their power had long since shrunk to Magadha and Eastern Māwa, and if Hsuen Tsang's Baladitya is Narasimhagupta, he must have been about A.D. 520 a feudatory of Mihirakula, and could not be spoken of as supreme lord, nor as ruler of the whole earth. The Guptas of Māwa have even less claim to these titles, as Bhānugupta was a mere Mahārāja, and all that is known of him is that he won a battle at Erai in Eastern Māwa in A.D. 510-11. Last of all comes Vishnuvardhana or Yaśodharman of Mandasor. In one of the Mandasor inscriptions he has the titles of *Rājādhirāja* and *Paramēśvara* (A.D. 532-33); in another he boasts of having carried his conquests from the Laubhitya (Ibrahimnagar) to the western ocean and from the Himālaya to mount Mahendra. It seems obvious that Yaśodharman is the Paramasvami of the Valabhi plate, and that the reference to the western ocean relates to Bhātārka's successes against the Maitrakas.—(A.M.T.J.)

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. V. 204.<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. IV 104.<sup>3</sup> In a commentary on the Kalpasūtra *Dandanāyaka* is described as meaning *Tantrapāla* that is head of a district

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509 - 766

Guhasena favour the succession of Dharapatta. On the other hand in the A.D. 559 grant all Guhasena's sins are said to be cleansed by falling at the feet of, that is, by succeeding, Dhruvasena. It is possible that Dharapatta may have ruled for some years and Dhruvasena again risen to power.

Guhasena,  
A.D. 539 - 569

Of Guhasena (A.D. 539-569) three plates and a fragment of an inscription remain. Two of the grants are from Valeh dated A.D. 559 and 565 (G. 240 and 246)<sup>1</sup>; the third is from Bhavnagar dated A.D. 567 (G. 248).<sup>2</sup> The inscription is on an earthen pot found at Valeh and dated A.D. 566 (G. 247).<sup>3</sup> In all the later Valabhi plates the genealogy begins with Guhasena who seems to have been the first great ruler of his dynasty. Guhasena is a Sanskrit name meaning Whose army is like that of Kārttika-svāmi: his popular name was probably Guhila. It appears probable that the Gohil and Gehlot Rajput chiefs of Kāthiāvada and Rājputāna, who are believed to be descendants of the Valabhis, take their name from Guhasena or Guha, the form Gehloti or Gehlot, *Guhila-utta*, being a corruption of Guhilaputra or descendants of Guhila, a name which occurs in old Rājput records.<sup>4</sup> This lends support to the view that Guhasena was believed to be the first king of the dynasty. Like his predecessors he is called Mahārāja or great king. In one grant he is called the great Śaiva and in another the great Buddhist devotee (*paramopāsaka*), while he grants villages to the Buddhist monastery of his paternal aunt's daughter Dudda. Though a Śaivite Guhasena, like most of his predecessors, tolerated and even encouraged Buddhism. His minister of peace and war is named Skandabhata.

The beginning of Guhasena's reign is uncertain. Probably it was not earlier than A.D. 539 (G. 220). His latest known date is A.D. 567 (G. 248) but he may have reigned two years longer.

Dharasena II  
A.D. 569 - 589

About A.D. 569 (G. 250) Guhasena was succeeded by his son Dharasena II. Five of his grants remain, three dated A.D. 571 (G. 252),<sup>5</sup> the fourth dated A.D. 588 (G. 269),<sup>6</sup> and the fifth dated A.D. 589 (G. 270).<sup>7</sup> In the first three grants Dharasena is called Mahārāja or great king, in the two later grants is added the title Mahāsāmanta Great Feudatory, seeming to show that in the latter part of his reign Dharasena had to acknowledge as overlord some one whose power had greatly increased.<sup>8</sup> All his copperplates style Dharasena II. *Parama-māheshvara* Great Śaiva. A gap of eighteen years occurs between A.D. 589 Dharasena's latest grant and A.D. 607 the earliest grant of his son Śīlāditya.

Śīlāditya I.  
A.D. 594 - 604

Dharasena II. was succeeded by his son Śīlāditya I. who is also called Dharmāditya or the sun of religion.

The Śātruñjaya Māhātmya has a prophetic account of one Śīlāditya who will be a propagator of religion in Vikrama Samvat

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 66; IV. 174

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. V. 206.

<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. XIV. 75

<sup>4</sup> Kumārapāla-Charita, Abu Inscriptions.

<sup>5</sup> Ind. Ant. VIII. 302, VII. 68, XIII. 160

<sup>6</sup> Ind. Ant. VI. 9

<sup>7</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 90.

<sup>8</sup> This change of title was probably connected with the increase of Gurjara power, which resulted in the founding of the Gurjara kingdom of Broach about A.D. 680. See Chapter X, below.

477 (A.D. 420). This *Māhātmya* is comparatively modern and is not worthy of much trust. Vikrama Samvat 477 would be A.D. 420 when no Valabhi kingdom was established and no Śīlāditya can have flourished. If the date 477 has been rightly preserved, and it be taken in the Śaka era it would correspond with Gupta 237 or A.D. 556, that is thirty to forty years before Śīlāditya's reign. Although no reliance can be placed on the date still his second name Dharināditya gives support to his identification with the Śīlāditya of the *Māhātmya*.

His grants like many of his predecessors style Śīlāditya a great devotee of Śīva. Still that two of his three known grants were made to Buddhist monks shows that he tolerated and respected Buddhism. The writer of one of the grants is mentioned as the minister of peace and war Chandrabhaṭṭi; the Dūtaka or causer of the gift in two of the Buddhist grants is Bhaṭṭa Adityayasas apparently some military officer. The third grant, to a temple of Śīva, has for its Dūtaka the illustrious Kharagraha apparently the brother and successor of the king.

Śīlāditya's reign probably began about A.D. 594 (G. 275). His latest grant is dated A.D. 609 (G. 290).<sup>1</sup>

Śīlāditya was succeeded by his brother Kharagraha, of whom no record has been traced. Kharagraha seems to have been invested with sovereignty by his brother Śīlāditya who probably retired from the world. Kharagraha is mentioned as a great devotee of Śīva.

Kharagraha was succeeded by his son Dharasena III of whom no record remains.

Dharasena III. was succeeded by his younger brother Dhruvasena II. also called Bālāditya or the rising sun. A grant of his is dated A.D. 629 (G. 310).<sup>2</sup> As observed before, Dhruvasena is probably a Sanskritised form of the popular but meaningless Dhruvaputṭa which is probably the original of Hiuen Tsiang's T'u-lu-h'o-po-tu, as A.D. 629 the date of his grant is about eleven years before the time when (640) Hiuen Tsiang is calculated to have been in Mālwa if not actually at Valabhi. If one of Dhruvasena's poetic attributes is not mere hyperbole, he made conquests and spread the power of Valabhi. On the other hand the Navsāri grant of Jayabhaṭa III (A.D. 706-734) the Gurjjara king of Broach states that Dadda II. of Broach (A.D. 620-650) protected the king of Valabhi who had been defeated by the great Śrī Harshadeva (A.D. 607-648) of Kanauj.

Dhruvasena II. was succeeded by his son Dharasena IV. perhaps the most powerful and independent of the Valabhis. A copper-plate dated A.D. 649 (G. 330) styles him *Parama-bhaṭṭāraka, Mahārājādhirāja, Paramēśvara, Chakravartin* Great Lord, King of Kings, Great Ruler, Universal Sovereign. Dharasena IV.'s successors continue the title of *Mahārājādhirāja* or great ruler, but none is called *Chakravartin* or universal sovereign a title which implies numerous conquests and widespread power.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Śīlāditya I.  
A.D. 590-609.

Kharagraha,  
A.D. 610-615.

Dharasena III.  
A.D. 615-620.

Dhruvasena II.  
(Bālāditya)  
A.D. 620-640.

Dharasena IV.  
A.D. 640-649.

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. XI. 306.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VI 13

**Chapter VIII.**

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Dharasena IV.  
A.D. 640-649.

Two of Dharasena IV.'s grants remain, one dated A.D. 645 (G. 326) the other A.D. 649 (G. 330). A grant of his father Dhruvasena dated A.D. 631 (G. 315) and an unpublished copperplate in the possession of the chief of Morbi belonging to his successor Dhruvasena III. dated A.D. 651 (G. 332) prove that Dharasena's reign did not last more than seventeen years. The well known Sanskrit poem *Bhaṭṭikāvya* seems to have been composed in the reign of this king as at the end of his work the author says it was written at Valabhi protected (governed) by the king the illustrious Dharasena.<sup>1</sup> The author's application to Dharasena of the title *Narendra* Lord of Men is a further proof of his great power.

Dhruvasena III.  
A.D. 650-656.

Dharasena IV. was not succeeded by his son but by Dhruvasena the son of Derabhata the son of Dharasena IV.'s paternal grand-uncle. Derabhata appears not to have been ruler of Valabhi itself but of some district in the south of the Valabhi territory. His epithets describe him as like the royal sage *Agastya* spreading to the south, and as the lord of the earth which has for its two breasts the Sahya and Vindhya hills. This description may apply to part of the province south of Kaira where the Sahyādrī and Vindhya mountains may be said to unite. In the absence of a male heir in the direct line, Derabhata's son Dhruvasena appears to have succeeded to the throne of Valabhi. The only known copperplate of Dhruvasena III.'s, dated A.D. 651 (G. 332), records the grant of the village of Pedhapadra in Vantali, the modern Vantali in the Navanagar State of North Kathiāvāḍa. A copperplate of his elder brother and successor Kharagraha dated A.D. 656 (G. 337) shows that Dhruvasena's reign cannot have lasted over six years.

Kharagraha  
A.D. 656-666.

The less than usually complimentary and respectful reference to Dhruvasena III. in the attributes of Kharagraha suggests that Kharagraha took the kingdom by force from his younger brother as the rightful successor of his father. At all events the succession of Kharagraha to Dhruvasena was not in the usual peaceful manner. Kharagraha's grant dated A.D. 656 (G. 337) is written by the *Divinapati* or Chief Secretary and minister of peace and war Anahilla son of Skandabhata.<sup>2</sup> The *Dūtaka* or causer of the gift was the *Pramātri* or survey officer *Śrinā*.

Śilāditya III.  
A.D. 666-675.

Kharagraha was succeeded by Śilāditya III. son of Kharagraha's elder brother Śilāditya II. Śilāditya II. seems not to have ruled at Valabhi but like Derabhata to have been governor of Southern Valabhi, as he is mentioned out of the order of succession and with the title Lord of the Earth containing the Vindhya mountain. Three grants of Śilāditya III. remain, two dated A.D. 666 (G. 346)<sup>3</sup> and the third dated A.D. 671 (G. 352)<sup>4</sup>. He is called *Purama-bhaṭṭāraka* Great Lord, *Mahārājādhirāja* Chief King among Great Kings, and *Parameśvara* Great Ruler. These titles continue to be applied to all

<sup>1</sup> *Kaṛṇamulam rakṣam mayā Valabhyām, Śrī Dharasena-narendra pālītyām.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ind. Ant.* VII. 70.

<sup>3</sup> *Journ. Beng. A. S. IV.* and an unpublished grant in the museum of the B. B. R. A. Soc.

<sup>4</sup> *Ind. Ant.* XI. 303.

subsequent Valabhi kings. Even the name Śīlāditya is repeated though each king must have had some personal name.

Śīlāditya III. was succeeded by his son Śīlāditya IV. of whom one grant dated A.D. 671 (G. 362) remains. The grant was prepared by the 'grant' officer of the court, the Brahmapati Śīlāgarana the son of Bappa Bhadrata. The grant-causer is the prince Kharagīraha, which may perhaps be the personal name of the next king Śīlāditya V.

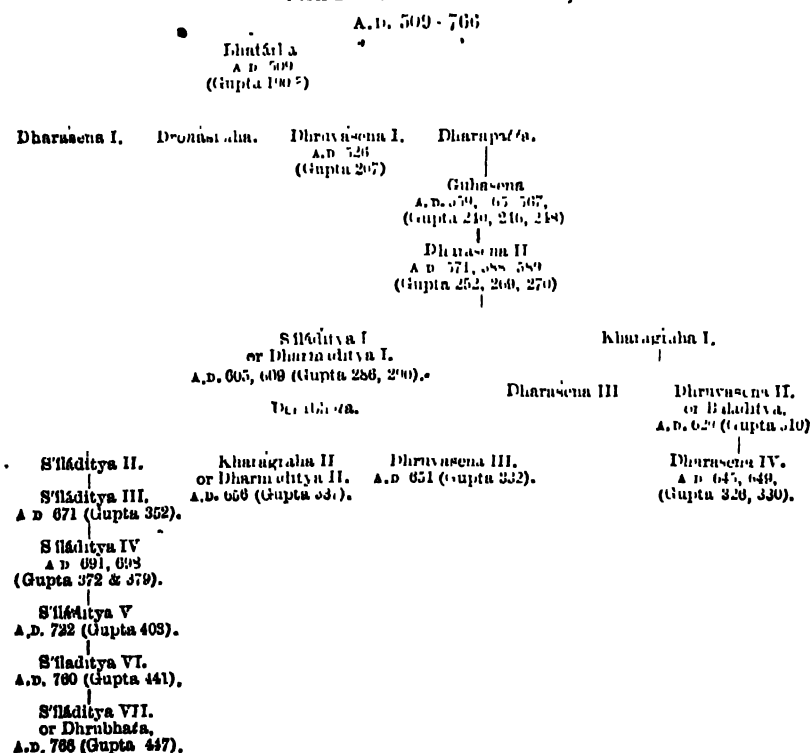
Of Śīlāditya V. the son and successor of Śīlāditya IV. two grants dated A.D. 722 (G. 403) both from Gondal remain. Both record grants to the same person. The writer of both was general Gillaka son of Buddhahatṭa, and the gift-causer of both prince Śīlāditya.

Of Śīlāditya VI. the son and successor of the last, one grant dated A.D. 760 (G. 441) remains. The grantee is an Atharvavedi Brahman. The writer is Saṣyagupta son of Emapatha and the gift-causer is Gānjaśāti Śrī Jajjar (or Jajir).

Of Śīlāditya VII. the son and successor of the last, who is also called Dhruvabhata (Sk. Dhruvabhata), one grant dated A.D. 766 (G. 447) remains.

The following is the genealogy of the Valabhi Dynasty:

## VALABHI FAMILY TREE,



## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509 - 766.  
Śīlāditya IV.  
A.D. 691.

Śīlāditya V.  
A.D. 722.

Śīlāditya VI.  
A.D. 760.

Śīlāditya VII.  
A.D. 766.

Valabhi  
Family Tree.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.The Fall of  
Valabhi,  
A.D. 750-770.

Of the overthrow of Valabhi many explanations have been offered.<sup>1</sup> The only explanation in agreement with the copperplate evidence that a Śīlāditya was ruling at Valabhi as late as A.D. 766 (Val. Sam. 447)<sup>2</sup> is the Hindu account preserved by Alberuni (A.D. 1030)<sup>3</sup> that soon after the Sindh capital Mansūra was founded, say, A.D. 750-770, Ranka a disaffected subject of the era-making Valabhi, with presents of money persuaded the Arab lord of Mansūra to send a naval expedition against the king of Valabhi. In a night attack king Valabha was killed and his people and town were destroyed. Alberuni adds: Men say that still in our time such traces are left in

<sup>1</sup> Since his authorities mention the destroyers of Valabhi under the vague term *mlechchhas* or barbarians and since the era in which they date the overthrow may be either the Vikrama B.C. 57, the Sakā A.D. 78, or the Valabhi A.D. 319, Tod is forced to offer many suggestions. His proposed dates are A.D. 244 Vik. Sam. 300 (Western India, 269), A.D. 424 Val. Sam. 105 (Ditto, 51 and 214), A.D. 524 Val. Sam. 205 (Annals of Rajasthan, I. 83 and 217-220), and A.D. 619 Val. Sam. 300 (Western India, 352). Tod identifies the barbarian destroyers of Valabhi either with the descendants of the second century Parthians, or with the White Huns Gutes or Katins, or with a mixture of these who in the beginning of the sixth century supplanted the Parthians (An. of Rāj. I. 83 and 217-220, Western India, 271, 352). Elliot (History, I. 408) accepting Tod's date A.D. 524 refers the overthrow to Skythian barbarians from Sindh. Elphinstone, also accepting A.D. 524 as an approximate date, suggested (History, 3rd Edition, 212) as the destroyer the Sassanian Naushūvan or Chosroes the Great (A.D. 531-579) citing in support of a Sassanian invasion Malcolm's Persia, I. 141 and Pottinger's Travels, 386. Forbes (Rās Mālā, I. 22) notes that the Jain accounts give the date of the overthrow Vik. Sam. 375 that is A.D. 319 apparently in confusion with the epoch of the Gupta era which the Valabhi kings adopted. Forbes says (Ditto, 24) If the destroyers had not been called *mlechchhas* I might have supposed them to be the Dakhan Chalukyas. Genl. Cunningham (Anc. Geog. 318) holds that the date of the destruction was A.D. 658 and the destroyer the Rashtrakūṭa Raja Govind who restored the ancient family of Śāmashīra. Thomas (Prinsep's Useful Tables, 158) fixes the destruction of Valabhi at A.D. 745 (S. 802). In the Kāthiāwar Gazetteer Col. Watson in one passage (page 671) says the destroyers may have been the early Muhammadans who retired as quickly as they came. In another passage (page 274), accepting Mr. Burgess (Arch. Sur. Rep. IV. 75) Gupta era of A.D. 195 and an overthrow date of A.D. 642, and citing a Wadhvān couplet telling how Ebbhal Valabhi withstood the Huns, Col. Watson suggests the destroyers may have been Iranians. If the Persians came in A.D. 642 they must have come not as raiders but as refugees. If they could they would not have destroyed Valabhi. If the Persians destroyed Valabhi where next did they flee to.

\* Similarly S. 205 the date given by some of Col. Tod's authorities (An. of Rāj. I. 82 and 217-220) represents A.D. 524 the practical establishment of the Valabhi dynasty. The mistake of ascribing an era to the overthrow not to the founding of a state occurs (compare Sachau's Alberuni, II. 6) in the case both of the Vikrama era B.C. 57 and of the Śālihan era A.D. 78. In both these cases the error was intentional. It was devised with the aim of hiding the supremacy of foreigners in early Hindu history. So also, according to Alberuni's information (Sachau, II. 7) the Gupta-kāla A.D. 319 marks the ceasing not the beginning of the wicked and powerful Guptas. This device is not confined to India. His Medes informant told Herodotus (Sg. 150 Rawlinson's Herodotus, I. 107) that B.C. 705 was the founding of the Median monarchy. The date really marked the overthrow of the Medes by the Assyrian Sargon.

<sup>2</sup> Tod (An. of Rāj. I. 231) notices what is perhaps a reminiscence of this date (A.D. 766). It is the story that Bappa, who according to Mewād tradition is the founder of Gohlot power at Chitor, abandoned his country for Irān in A.D. 764 (S. 820). It seems probable that this Bappa or Sāla is not the founder of Gohlot power at Chitor, but, according to the Valabhi use of Bappa, is the founder's father and that this retreat to Irān refers to his being carried captive to Mansūra on the fall either of Valabhi or of Gandhār.

<sup>3</sup> Renauld's Fragments, 143 note 1; Mémoire Sur l'Inde, 105; Sachau's Alberuni, I. 193. The treachery of the magician Ranka is the same cause as that assigned by Forbes (Rās Mālā, I. 12-18) from Jain sources. The local legend (Ditto, 18) points the inevitable Tower of Siloam moral, a moral which (compare Rās Mālā, I. 18) is probably at the root of the antique tale of Lot and the Cities of the Plain, that men whose city was so completely destroyed must have been sinners beyond others. Dr. Nicholson (J. R. A. S. Ser. I Vol. XIII. page 153) in 1851 thought the site of Valabhi bore many traces of destruction by water.

that country as are found in places wasted by an unexpected attack.<sup>1</sup> For this expedition against Valabhi Alberuni gives no date. But as Mansūra was not founded till A.D. 750<sup>2</sup> and as the latest Valabhi copperplate is A.D. 766 the expedition must have taken place between A.D. 750 and 770. In support of the Hindu tradition of an expedition from Mansūra against Valabhi between A.D. 750 and 770 it is to be noted that the Arab historians of Sindh record that in A.D. 758 (H. 140) the Khalif Mansūr sent Amrū bin Jamal with a fleet of barks to the coast of Barada.<sup>3</sup> Twenty years later A.D. 776 (H. 160) a second expedition succeeded in taking the town, but, as sickness broke out, they had to return. The question remains should the word, which in these extracts Elliot reads Barada, be read Balabā. The lax rules of Arab cursive writing would cause little difficulty in adopting the reading, Balabā.<sup>4</sup> Further it is hard to believe that Valabhi, though to some extent sheltered by its distance from the coast and probably a place of less importance than its chroniclers describe, should be unknown to the Arab raiders of the seventh and eighth centuries and after its fall be known to Alberuni in the eleventh century. At the same time, as during the eighth century there was, or at least as there may have been,<sup>5</sup> a town Barada on the south-west coast of Kāthiāvāda the iden-

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 500-766.

The Fall of  
Valabhi,  
A.D. 750-770.

<sup>1</sup> Lassen (Ind. Alt. III 533) puts aside Al-Biruni's Arab expedition from Mansūra as without historical support and inadmissible. Lassen held that Valabhi flourished long after its alleged destruction from Mansūra. Lassen's statement (see Ind. Alt. III 533) is based on the mistaken idea that as the Valabhis were the Balharas the Balharas' capital Mankur must be Valabhi. So far as is known, except Alberuni himself (see below) none of the Arab geographers of the ninth, tenth or eleventh centuries mentions Valabhi. It is true that according to Lassen (Ind. Alt. 536) Masudi A.D. 915, Istakhrī A.D. 951, and Ibn Hikal A.D. 976 all attest the existence of Valabhi up to their own time. This remark is due either to the mistake regarding Malkhet or to the identification of Balwi or Balzi in Sindh (Elliot's History, I. 27-34) with Valabhi. The only known Muslim reference to Valabhi later than A.D. 750 is Alberuni's statement (Sachau, II. 7) that the Valabhi of the era is 30 *yojanas* or 200 miles south of Anahilavajā. That after its overthrow Valabhi remained, as it still continues, a local town has been shown in the text. Such an after-life is in no way inconsistent with its destruction as a leading capital in A.D. 767.

<sup>2</sup> According to Alberuni (Sachau, I. 21) Al Mansūra, which was close to Brāhmanabād about 17 miles north east of Haidarābād (Elliot's Muslim History, I. 372-374) was built by the great Muhammad Kasim about A.D. 713. Apparently Alberuni wrote Muhammad Kasim by mistake for his grandson Amru Muhammad (Elliot, I. 372 note 1 and 442-3), who built the city a little before A.D. 750. Renaud (Fragments, 210) makes Amru the son of Muhammad Kasim. Masudi (A.D. 915) gives the same date (A.D. 750), but (Elliot, I. 44) makes the builder the Umayyad governor Mansūr bin Jāmalur Idrisi (A.D. 11). Elliot, I. 78) says Mansura was built and named in honour of the Khalif Abu Jāfar al-Mansur. If so its building would be later than A.D. 751. On such a point Idrisi's authority carries little weight. Elliot, I. 244.

<sup>4</sup> That the word read Barada by Elliot is in the lax pointless *shikasta* writing is shown by the different proposed readings (Elliot, I. 444 note 1) Nārand, Barand, and Barid. So far as the original goes Balabā is probably as likely a rendering as Barada. Renaud (Fragments, 212) says he cannot restore the name.

<sup>5</sup> Though, except as applied to the Porbandar range of hills, the name Barada is almost unknown, and though Ghunhi not Barada was the early (eighth-twelfth century) capital of Porbandar some place named Barada seems to have existed on the Porbandar coast. As early as the second century A.D., Ptolemy (McTear, 37) has a town Barda-xema on the coast west of the village *Kome* (probably the road or *koni*) of Saurishtra; and St. Martin (Geographie Grecque et Latine de l'Inde, 203) identifies Pliny's (A.D. 77) Varetatū next the Odomben or people of Kachh with the Varadas according to Hemachandra (A.D. 1160) a class of foreigners or *mlechchhas*. A somewhat tempting identification of Barada is with Beruni's Bārwi (Sachau, I. 208) or Baraous (Reinaud's Fragments, 121) 84 miles (14 *parasangs*) west of Somanātha. But an examination of Beruni's text shows that Bārwi is not the name of a place but of a product of Kachh the *bāra* or bezoar stone.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.The Fall of  
Valabhi,  
A.D. 750-770.The Importance  
of Valabhi.

tification of the raids against Barada with the traditional expedition against Balaba though perhaps probable cannot be considered certain. Further the statement of the Sindh historians<sup>1</sup> that at this time the Sindh Arabs also made a naval expedition against Kandahār seems in agreement with the traditional account in Tod that after the destruction of Valabhi the rulers retired to a fort near Cambay from which after a few years they were driven<sup>2</sup>. If this fort is the Kandahār of the Sindh writers and Gandahar on the Broach coast about twenty miles south of Cambay, identifications which are in agreement with other passages, the Arab and Rājput accounts would fairly agree.<sup>3</sup>

The discovery of its lost site, the natural but mistaken identification of its rulers with the famous eighth and ninth century (A.D. 753-972) Balharas of Mulkhet in the East Dakhn,<sup>4</sup> the tracing to Valabhi of the Rina of Udepur in Mewād the head of the Sesolia or Gohils the most exalted of Hindu families<sup>5</sup>; and in later times the wealth of Valabhi copperplates have combined to make the Valabhis one of the best known of Gujarāt dynasties. Except the complete genealogy, covering the 250 years from the beginning of the sixth to the middle of the eighth century, little is known of Valabhi or its chiefs. The

<sup>1</sup> Elliot, I, 445.<sup>2</sup> Compare Tod Annals, I, 83 and 217. Gajni or Gayni another capital whence the last prince Siladitya was expelled by Pathan invaders in the sixth century.<sup>3</sup> Compare Renaud Frémeaux 212 note E, who identifies it with the Ain-i-Akbarī Kandahār that is Gandahar in Broach. The identification is doubtful. Tod (Annals, I, 217) names the fort Gajni or Gayni and there was a fort Gajni close to Cambay. Elliot (I, 445) would identify the Arab Kandahār with Khaidadar in north-west Kathiavār.<sup>4</sup> Even after A.D. 770 Valabhi seems to have been attacked by the Arabs. Dr Bhagvānlāl notices that two Jain dates for the destruction of the city 826 and 896 are in the Vira era and that this means not the Mahāvira era of B.C. 526 but the Vikram era of B.C. 57. The corresponding dates are therefore A.D. 769 and 829. Evidence in support of the A.D. 759 and 770 date is given in the text. On behalf of Dr Bhagvānlāl's second date A.D. 829 it is remarkable that in or about A.D. 830 (Elliot, I, 147) Mūsa the Arab governor of Sindh captured Bīla the ruler of As Sharqi. As there seems no reason to identify this As Sharqi with the Sindh lake of As Sharqi mentioned in a raid in A.D. 750 (Elliot, I, 141) J. R. A. S. (1893) page 76 the phrase would mean Bīla king of the east. The Arab record of the defeat of Bīla would thus be in close agreement with the Jain date for the latest foreign attack on Valabhi.<sup>5</sup> The identification of the Balharas of the Arab writers with the Chālukyas (A.D. 500-753) and Rashtrakūtas (A.D. 753-972) of Mulkhet in the East Dakhn has been accepted. The vagueness of the early (A.D. 850-900) Arab geographers still more the inaccuracy of Idrisi (A.D. 1137) in placing the Balharas capital in Gujarāt (Elliot, I, 87) suggested a connection between Balharas and Valabhi. The suitability of this identification was increased by the use among Rājput writers of the title Balakarakī for the Valabhi chief (Tod An. of Rāj. I, 83) and the absence among either the Chālukyas (A.D. 500-753) or the Rashtrakūtas (A.D. 753-972) of Mulkhet of any title resembling Balharas. Prof. Bhandarkar's (Decan History, 56-57) discovery that several of the early Chālukyas and Rashtrakūtas had the personal name Vallabha Beloved settled the question and established the accuracy of all Masudi's (A.D. 915) statements (Elliot, I, 19-21) regarding the Balharas who ruled the Kanbar, that is Kanrakura or Karnātak (Sachau's Beruni I, 202; II, 318) and had their Kanarese (Kiriya) capital at Mankir (Mulkhet) 640 miles from the coast.<sup>6</sup> After their withdrawal from Valabhi to Mewād the Vālas took the name of Gehlot (see below page 98), then of Aharya from a temporary capital near Udepur (Tod's An. of Rāj. I, 215), next of Sesolia in the west of Mewād (Tod's An. of Rāj. I, 216; Western India, 57). Since 1568 the Rina's head-quarters have been at Udepur. Rāj. Gaz. III, 18. After the establishment of their power in Chitor (A.D. 780), a branch of the Gehlot or Gohil family withdrew to Kheir in south-west Mārwar. These driven south by the Rāthods in the end of the twelfth century are the Gohils of Pīram, Bhāvnagar, and Rājpipla in Kāthiavār and Gujarāt. Tod's Annals of Rāj. I, 114, 228.

origin of the city and of its rulers, the extent of their sway, and the cause and date of their overthrow are all uncertain. The unsuitness of the site, the want of reservoirs or other stone remains, the uncertainty when its rulers gained an independent position, the fact that only one of them claimed the title *Chakravarti* or All Ruler are hardly consistent with any far-reaching authority. Add to this the continuance of Maitraka or Mer power in North Kāthiāvāda, the separateness though perhaps dependence of Saurāshtra even in the time of Valabhi's greatest power,<sup>1</sup> the rare mention of Valabhi in contemporary Guj'rat grants,<sup>2</sup> and the absence of trustworthy reference in the accounts of the Arab raids of the seventh or eighth centuries tend to raise a doubt whether, except perhaps during the ten years ending 650, Valabhi was ever of more than local importance.

In connection with the pride of the Sesodias or Gohils of Mewād in their Valabhi origin<sup>3</sup> the question who were the Valabhis has a special interest. The text shows that Pandit Bhagvānlal was of opinion the Valabhis were Gurjjaras. The text also notes that the Pandit believed they reached south-east Kāthiāvāda by sea from near Broach and that if they did not come to Broach from Mālwa at least the early rulers obtained (A.D. 520 and 523) investiture from the Mālwa kings. Apart from the doubtful evidence of an early second to fifth century Bāla or Valabhi three considerations weigh against the theory that the Valabhis entered Gujarat from Mālwa in the sixth century. First their acceptance of the Gupta era and of the Gupta currency raises the presumption that the Valabhis were in Kāthiāvāda during Gupta ascendancy (A.D. 410 - 480): Second that the Sesodias trace their pedigree through Valabhi to an earlier settlement at Dhānk in south-west Kāthiāvāda and that the Vālas of Dhānk still hold the place of heads of the Vālas of Kāthiāvāda: And Third that both Sesodias and Vālas trace their origin to Kanaksen a second century North Indian immigrant into Kāthiāvāda combine to raise the presumption that the Vālas were in Kāthiāvāda before the historical founding of Valabhi in A.D. 526<sup>4</sup> and that the city took its name from its founders the Vālas or Bālās.

Whether or not the ancestors of the Gohils and Vālas were settled in Kāthiāvāda before the establishment of Valabhi about A.D. 526

### Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509 - 766.

The Importance  
of Valabhi,  
A.D. 750 - 770.

Valabhi and  
the Gehlots.

<sup>1</sup> The somewhat doubtful Jarkadeva plates (above page 87 and Kāthiāvāda Gazetteer, 275) seem to show the continuance of Maitraka power in North Kāthiāvāda. This is supported by the expedition of the Arab chief of Sindhan in Kachch (A.D. 840) against the Medhs of Hind which ended in the capture of Malia in North Kāthiāvāda. Elliot, I. 450. Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 630) (Beal's Buddhist Records, II. 69) describes Saurāshtra as a separate state but at the same time notes its dependence on Valabhi. Its rulers seem to have been Mehars. In A.D. 713 (Elliot, I. 123) Muhammad Kasim made peace with the men of Surasht, Medhs, seafarers, and pirates.

<sup>2</sup> The only contemporary rulers in whose grants a reference to Valabhi has been traced are the Gurjjaras of Broach (A.D. 580-808) one of whom, Dadda II (A.D. 633), is said (Ind. Ant. XIII. 79) to have gained renown by protecting the lord of Valabhi who had been defeated by the illustrious Sri Harshadeva (A.D. 608-619), and another Jayabhāta in A.D. 706 (Ind. Ant. V. 115) claims to have quieted with the sword the impetuosity of the lord of Valabhi.

<sup>3</sup> Tod An. of Raj., I. 217: Western India, 269.

<sup>4</sup> Tod An. of Raj. I. 112 and Western India, 148. Rās Mālā, I. 21. It is not clear whether these passages prove that the Sesodias or only the Vālas claim an early settlement at Dhānk. In any case (see below page 101) both clans trace their origin to Kanaksen.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.Valabhi and  
the Gehlots.

several considerations bear out the correctness of the Rājput traditions and the Jain records that the Gohils or Sesodias of Mewād came from Bala or Valabhi in Kathiāwād. Such a withdrawal from the coast, the result of the terror of Arab raids, is in agreement with the fact that from about the middle of the eighth century the rulers of Gujarāt established an inland capital at Anahilavāda (A.D. 746).<sup>1</sup> It is further in agreement with the establishment by the Gohil refugees of a town Balh in Mewād; with the continuance as late as A.D. 968 (S. 1024) by the Sesodia chief of the Valabhi title Silāditya or Sail<sup>2</sup>; and with the peculiar Valabhi blend of Sun and S'iva worship still to be found in Udepur.<sup>3</sup> The question remains how far can the half-poetic accounts of the Sesodias be reconciled with a date for the fall of Valabhi so late as A.D. 766. The mythical wanderings, the caveborn Guha, and his rule at Idar can be easily spared. The name Gehlot which the Sesodias trace to the caveborn Guha may as the Bhāvnagar Gehlots hold have its origin in Guhasena (A.D. 559-567) perhaps the first Valabhi chief of more than local distinction.<sup>4</sup> Tod<sup>5</sup> fixes the first historical date in the Sesodia family history at A.D. 720 or 728 the ousting of the Mori or Maurya of Chitor by Bappa or Sail. An inscription near Chitor shows the Mori in power in Chitor as late as A.D. 714 (S. 770).<sup>6</sup> By counting back nine generations from Sakti Kumāra the tenth from Bappa whose date is A.D. 1068 Tod fixes A.D. 720-728 as the date when the Gohils succeeded the Moris. But

<sup>1</sup> Tod's Western India, 51.<sup>2</sup> Tod's An. of Raj. I. 230.

<sup>3</sup> The cherished title of the later Valabhis, Silāditya Sun of Virtue, confirms the special sun worship at Valabhi, which the mention of Dharapatya (A.D. 550) as a devotee of the supreme sun supports, and which the legends of Valabhis' sun-horse and sun-fountain keep fresh (Ras Mala, I. 14-18). So the great one-stone lingas, the most notable trace of Valabhi city (J. R. A. S. Ser. I. Vol. XIII. 119 and XVII. 271), bear out the Valabhi copperplate claim that its rulers were great worshippers of Siva. Similarly the Rana of Udepur, while enjoying the title of Sun of the Hindus, prospering under the sun banner, and specially worshipping the sun (Tod's Annals, I. 565) is at the same time the Minister of Siva the One Ling *Eklingachakrman* (Ditto 222, Raj. Gaz. III. 53). The blend is natural. The herce noon tide sun is Mahakala the Destroyer. Like Siva the Sun is lord of the Moon. And marshalled by Somanatha the great Soul Home the souls of the dead pass heavenwards along the rays of the setting sun. [Compare Sachau's Alberuni, II. 168.] It is the common sun element in Saivism and in Vaishnavism that gives their holiness to the sun-set shrines of Somanatha and Dwarka. For (Ditto, 169) the setting sun is the door whence men march forth into the world of existence Westwards, heavenwards.

<sup>4</sup> This explanation is hardly satisfactory. The name Gehlot seems to be Guhila-putra from Gohila-putra an ancient Brāhman gotra, one of the not uncommon cases of Rājputs with a Brāhman gotra. The Rājput use of a Brāhman gotra is generally considered a technical affiliation, a mark of respect for some Brāhman teacher. It seems doubtful whether the practice is not a reminiscence of an ancestral Brāhman strain. This view finds confirmation in the Aitpur inscription (Tod's Annals, I. 802) which states that Guhadit the founder of the Gohil tribe was of Brāhman race *Vipre kula*. Compare the legend (Ras Mala, I. 13) that makes the first Silāditya of Valabhi (A.D. 590-609) the son of a Brāhman woman. Compare (Elliot, I. 411) the Brāhman Chāch (A.D. 630-670) marrying the widow of the Shāhi king of Alor in Sindh who is written of as a Rājput though like the later (A.D. 860-1060) Shāhiyas of Kabul (Alberuni, Sachau II. 18) the dynasty may possibly have been Brāhman. The following passage from Hodgson's Essays (J. A. Soc. BI. II. 218) throws light on the subject. Among the Khās or Rājputs of Nepal the sons of Brāhmans by Khās women take their fathers' gotras. Compare Ibbetson's Punjab Census 1881 page 236.

<sup>5</sup> In support of a Brāhman origin is Prinsep's conjecture (J. A. S. B. LXXIV. (Feb. 1834) page 84) that Divaj the name of the first recorded king may be Divya or Twice-born. But Divaj for Devāditya, like Silaj for Silāditya, seems simpler and the ease with which the writer speaks of Chach as the Brāhman almost implies that his predecessors were not Brāhmans. According to Elliot (II. 428) the Pāls of Kabul were Rājputs, perhaps Bhāttas.

<sup>6</sup> Tod's Annals, I. 229-231.<sup>6</sup> Annals, I. 229.

the sufficient average allowance of twenty years for each reign would bring Bappa to A.D. 770 or 780 a date in agreement with a fall of Valabhi between A.D. 760 and 770, as well as with the statement of Abul Fazl, who, writing in A.D. 1590, says the Rána's family had been in Mewād for about 800 years.<sup>1</sup>

The Arab accounts of the surprise-attack and of the failure of the invaders to make a settlement agree with the local and Rājputana traditions that a branch of the Valabhi family continued to rule at Valch until its conquest by Mūla Rāja Solankhi in A.D. 950.<sup>2</sup> Though their bards favour the explanation of Vala from the Gujarati *vala* return or the Persian *vilā*<sup>3</sup> noble the family claim to be of the old Valabhi stock. They still have the tradition they were driven out by the Musalmans, they still keep up the family name of Selat or Siladitya.<sup>4</sup>

The local tradition regarding the settlement of the Valas in the Balakshetra south of Valabhi is that it took place after the capture of Valabhi by Mūla Rāja Solankhi (A.D. 950).<sup>5</sup> If, as may perhaps be accepted, the present Valas represent the rulers of Valabhi it seems to follow the Valas were the overlords of Balakshetra at least from the time of the historical prosperity of Valabhi (A.D. 526-680). The traditions of the Babriās who held the east of Sorath show that when they arrived (A.D. 1200-1250) the Vala Rājputs were in possession and suggest that the lands of the Vālas originally stretched as far west as Dru.<sup>6</sup> That the Valas held central Kathiavāda is shown by their possession of the old capital Vanthali nine miles south-west of Junāgadh and by (about A.D. 850) their transfer of that town to the Chudāsamās.<sup>7</sup> Dhānk, about twenty-five miles north-west of Junāgadh, was apparently held by the Valas under the Jetwas when (A.D. 800-1200?) Ghumli or Bhumi was the capital of south-west Kāthiavāda. According to Jetwa accounts the Valas were newcomers whom the Jetwas allowed to settle at Dhānk.<sup>8</sup> But as the Jetwas are not among the earliest settlers in Kāthiavāda it seems more probable that, like the Chudāsamās at Vanthali, the Jetwas found the Vālas in possession. The close connection of the Vālas with the earlier waves of Kāthis is admitted.<sup>9</sup> Considering that the present

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

The Vālas of  
Kāthiavāda.

<sup>1</sup> Gladwin's *Ain-i-Akbari*, II. 81. Tod's *Annals*, I. 235 and note\*. Tod's dates are confused. The Aitpur inscription (Ditto, page 230) gives Sakti Kumara's date A.D. 968 (81024) while the authorities which Tod accepts (Ditto, 231) give A.D. 1068 (81125). That the Moris were not driven out of Chitor as early as A.D. 728 is proved by the Navasari inscription which mentions the Arabs defeating the Mauryas as late as A.D. 738-9 (Sam. 490). See above page 56.

<sup>2</sup> Tod Western India 268 says Siddha Rāja (A.D. 1094-1143) Mula Rāja (A.D. 942-997) seems correct. See Ras Mala, I. 65.

<sup>3</sup> The chronicles of Bhadrod, fifty-one miles south-west of Bhavnagar, have (Kāth. Gaz. 380) a Selat Vala as late as A.D. 1554.

<sup>4</sup> Kāthiavār Gazetteer, 672. Another account places the movement south after the arrival of the Gohils A.D. 1250. According to local traditions the Valas did not pass to Bhadrod near Maluva till A.D. 1554 (Kāth. Gaz. 380) and from Bhadrod (Kāth. Gaz. 660) retired to Dholavra.

<sup>5</sup> Kāth. Gaz. 111 and 132. According to the *Ain-i-Akbari* (Gladwin, II. 61) the inhabitants of the ports of Mahua and Tulāja were of the Vala tribe.

<sup>6</sup> Kāth. Gaz. 680.

<sup>7</sup> Kāth. Gaz. 14.

<sup>8</sup> The Vāla connection with the Kāthis complicates their history. Col. Watson (Kāth. Gaz. 130) seems to favour the view that the Vālas were the earliest wave of Kāthis who came into Kāthiavāda from Malwa apparently with the Guptas (A.D. 450) (Ditto, 671). Col. Watson seems to have been led to this conclusion in consequence of the existence

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509 - 766.The Válas and  
Káthis.

(1881) total of Káthiávāḍa Vāla Rājputs is about 900 against about 9000 Vāla Káthis, the Válas,<sup>1</sup> since their loss of power, seem either to have passed into unnoticeable subdivisions of other Rājput tribes or to have fallen to the position of Káthis.

If from the first and not solely since the fall of Valabhi the Válas have been associated with the Káthis it seems best to suppose they held to the Káthis a position like that of the Jetwas to their followers the Mers. According to Tod<sup>2</sup> both Válas and Káthis claim the title *Tata Multánka Rai* Lords of Tata and Multán. The accounts of the different sackings of Valabhi are too confused and the traces of an earlier settlement too scanty and doubtful to justify any attempt to carry back Valabhi and the Válas beyond the Mastraka overthrow of Gupta power in Káthiávāḍ; (A.D. 470 - 480). The boast that Bhatárka, the reputed founder of the house of Valabhi (A.D. 509), had obtained glory by dealing hundreds of blows on the large and very mighty armies of the Mastrakas who by force had subdued their enemies, together with the fact that the Valabhis did and the Mastrakas did not adopt the Gupta era and currency seem to show the Válas were settled in Káthiávāḍa at an earlier date than the Mers and Jetwas. That is, if the identification is correct, the Válas and Káthis were in Káthiávāḍa before the first wave of the White Huns approached. It has been noticed above under Skandagupta that the enemies, or some of the enemies, with whom, in the early years of his reign A.D. 452-454, Skandagupta had so fierce a struggle were still in A.D. 456 a source of anxiety and required the control of a specially able viceroy at Junágadh. Since no trace of the Káthis appears in Káthiávāḍa legends or traditions before the fifth century the suggestion may be offered that under Vāla or Bāla leadership the Káthis were among the enemies who on the death of Kumāragupta (A.D. 454) seized the Gupta possessions in Káthiávāḍa. Both Válas and Káthis would then be northerners driven south from Multán and South

---

of the petty state of Katti in west Khándesh. But the people of the Káthi state in west Khándesh are Bhils or Kohs. Neither the people nor the position of the country seems to show connection with the Káthis of Káthiávāḍa. Col. Watson (Kath Gaz. 130) inclines to hold that the Válas are an example of the rising of a lower class to be Rājputs. That both Válas and Káthis are northerners admitted into Hinduism may be accepted. Still it seems probable that on arrival in Káthiávāḍa the Válas were the leaders of the Káthis and that it is mainly since the fall of Valabhi that a large branch of the Válas have sunk to be Káthis. The Káthi traditions admit the superiority of the Válas. According to Tod (Western India, 270 Annals, I 112-113) the Káthis claim to be a branch or descendants of the Válas. In Káthiávāḍa the Válas, the highest division of Káthis (Ras Málá, I, 296; Káth. Gaz. 122, 123, 131, 139), admit that their founder was a Vāla Rājput who lost caste by marrying a Káthi woman. Another tradition (Ras Málá, I, 296; Káth. Gaz. 122 note 1) records that the Káthis flying from Sindh took refuge with the Válas and became their followers. Col. Watson (Káth. Gaz. 130) considers the practice in Porbandar and Navanagar of styling any lady of the Dhānk Vāla family who marries into their house Káthiānibī the Káthi lady proves that the Válas are Káthis. But as this name must be used with respect it may be a trace that the Válas claim to be lords of the Káthis as the Jetwas claim to be lords of the Mers. That the position of the Válas and Káthis as Rājputs is doubtful in Káthiávāḍa and is assured (Tod's Annals, I, 111) in Rājputāna is strange. The explanation may perhaps be that aloofness from Muhammadans is the practical test of honour among Rājputāna Hindus, and that in the troubled times between the thirteenth and the seventeenth centuries, like the Jhalās, the Válas and Káthis may have refused Moghal alliances, and so won the approval of the

Annals of Mewād.

Káth. Gaz. 110-120.

<sup>2</sup> Western India, 207; Annals, I, 112-113.

Sindh by the movements of tribes displaced by the advance of the Ephthalites or White Huns (A.D. 440-450) upon the earlier North Indian and border settlements of the Yuan-Yuan or Avars.<sup>1</sup>

The Sesodia or Gohil tradition is that the founder of the Válas was Kanaksen, who, in the second century after Christ, from North India established his power at Virát or Dholka in North Gujarát and at Dhánk in Káthiáváda.<sup>2</sup> This tradition, which according to Tod<sup>3</sup> is supported by at least ten genealogical lists derived from distinct sources, seems a reminiscence of some connection between the early Válas and the Kshatrapas of Junágadh with the family of the great Kushán emperor Kanishka (A.D. 78-98). Whether this high ancestry belongs of right to the Valas and Gohils or whether it has been won for them by their bards nothing in the records of Káthiáváda is likely to be able to prove. Besides by the Válas Kanaksen is claimed as an ancestor by the Chávas of Okhámandal as the founder of Kanakapuri and as reigning in Krishna's throne in Dwárká.<sup>4</sup> In support of the form Kanaka for Kanishka is the doubtful Kanaka-Sakas or Kanishka-Sakas of Varáhámihira (A.D. 580).<sup>5</sup> The form Kanak is also used by Alberuni<sup>6</sup> for the famous Vihára or monastery at Pesháwar of whose founder Kanak Alberum retails many widespread legends. Tod<sup>7</sup> says; 'If the traditional date (A.D. 144) of Kanaksen's arrival in Káthiáváda had been only a little earlier it would have fitted well with Wilson's Kanishka of the Raja Tarangini.' Information brought to light since Tod's time shows that hardly any date could fit better than A.D. 144 for some member of the Kushán family, possibly a grandson of the great Kanishka, to make a settlement in Gujarat and Káthiáváda. The date agrees closely with the revolt against Vasudeva (A.D. 123-150), the second in succession from Kanishka, raised by the Panjab Yaudheyas, whom the great Gujarat Kshatrapa Rudráman (A.D. 113-158), the introducer of Kanishka's (A.D. 78) era into Gujarát, humbled. The tradition calls Kanaksen Kosalaputra and brings him from Lohkot in North India.<sup>8</sup> Ko-ala has been explained as Oudh and Lohkot as Lahore, but as Kanak came from the north not from the north-east an original Kushána-putra or Son of the Kushán may be the true form. Similarly Lohkot cannot be Lahore. It may be Alberuni's Lauhavar or Lahur in the Káshmir uplands one of the main centres of Kushán power.<sup>9</sup>

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Descent from  
Kanaksen,  
A.D. 150.

<sup>1</sup> It is worthy of note that Balas and Kathias are returned from neighbouring Panjab districts. Balas from Dehra Ismail Khán (Panjab Census Report 1891 Part III. 310), Káthiá Rájputs from Montgomery (Ibid., 318), and Káthiá Jits from Jhang and Dera Ismail Khán (Ibid., 143). Compare Jbbetson's (1881) Panjab Census, I 259, where the Káthias are identified with the Kathaori who fought Alexander the Great (B.C. 325) and also with the Káthias of Káthiáváda. According to this report (page 210) the Válas are said to have come from Malwa and are returned in East Panjab.

<sup>2</sup> Tod's Annals, I. 83 and 215; Elliot, II. 410, Jour. B. Br. A. S. XXIII.

<sup>3</sup> Annals, I. 215. <sup>4</sup> Kath Gaz 589.

<sup>5</sup> Brihat-Samhitá, XIV. 21. The usual explanation (compare Fleet Ind. Ant. XXII. 180) Gold-Sakas seems meaningless.

<sup>6</sup> Sachau, II. 11. Among the legends are the much-applied tales of the foot-stamped cloth and the self-sacrificing minister.

<sup>7</sup> Western India, 218. <sup>8</sup> Tod's Annals, I. 83, 215; Western India, 270-352.

<sup>9</sup> Sachau, I 208, II. 341. For the alleged descent of the Sesodias and Valas from Ráma of the Sun race the explanation may be offered that the greatness of Kanishka, whose power was spread from the Ganges to the Oxus, in accordance with the Hindu

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509 - 766.

Mewad and  
the Persians.

One further point requires notice, the traditional connection between Valabhi and the Rānās of Mewad with the Sassanian kings of Persia (A.D. 250 - 650). In support of the tradition Abul Fazl (A.D. 1590) says the Rānās of Mewad consider themselves descendants of the Sassanian Naushirvān (A.D. 531 - 579) and Tod quotes fuller details from the Persian history Maaser-al-Umra.<sup>1</sup> No evidence seems to support a direct connection with Naushirvān.<sup>2</sup> At the same time marriage between the Valabhi chief and Maha Banu the fugitive daughter of Yazdigerd the last Sassanian (A.D. 651) is not impossible.<sup>3</sup> And the remaining suggestion that the link may be Naushirvān's son Naushizad who fled from his father in A.D. 570 receives support in the statement of Procopius<sup>4</sup> that Naushizad found shelter at Belapatan in Khuzistān perhaps Balapatan in Gurjaristān. As these suggestions are unsupported by direct evidence, it seems best to look for the source of the legend in the fire symbols in use on Kāthiāvāda and Mewad coins. These fire symbols, though in the main Indo-Skythian, betray from about the sixth century a more direct Sassanian influence. The use of similar coins coupled with their common sun worship seems sufficient to explain how the Agnīkulas and other Kāthiāvāda and Mewad Rajputs came to believe in some family connection between their chiefs and the fireworshipping kings of Persia.<sup>5</sup>

Vālas.

Can the Vāla traditions of previous northern settlements be supported either by early Hindu inscriptions or from living traces in the present population of Northern India? The convenient and elaborate tribe and surname lists in the Census Report of the Panjāb, and vaguer information from Rajputāna, show traces of Bālas and Vālas among the Musalmān as well as among the Hindu population of Northern India.<sup>6</sup> Among the tribes mentioned in Varāha-Mihira's sixth century (A.D. 580)<sup>7</sup> lists the Vāhlikas appear along with the dwellers on Sindhu's banks. An inscription of a king Chandra, probably Chandragupta and if so about A.D. 350-400,<sup>8</sup> boasts of crossing the seven mouths of the Indus to attack the Vāhlikas. These references suggest that the Bālas or Vālas are the Vāhlikas and that the Bāhlikas of the Hari-vamśa (A.D. 350-500?) are not as Langlois supposed people then ruling

doctrine (compare Beal's Buddhist Records, I 99 & 152, Rāś Mālā, I. 320, Fryer's New Account, 190) that a conqueror's success is the fruit of transcendent merit in a former birth, led to Kanishka being considered an incarnation of Rāma. A connection between Kanishka and the race of the Sun would be made easy by the intentional confusing of the names Kshatriya and Kshatriya and by the fact that during part at least of his life he and the sun were Kanishka's favourite deities.

<sup>1</sup> Gladwin's Am-i Akbari, II. 81; Tod's Annals, I. 235

<sup>2</sup> The invasion of Sindh formerly (Reinard's Fragments, 29) supposed to be by Naushirvan in person according to fuller accounts seems to have been a raid by the ruler of Senstān (Elliot, I. 107). Still Reinard (Mémoire Sur l'Inde, 127) holds that in sign of vassalage the Sindh king added a Persian type to his coins.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Tod's Annals, I. 235-239 and Rawlinson's Seventh Monarchy, 576.

<sup>4</sup> Rawlinson's Seventh Monarchy, 452 note 3

<sup>5</sup> Compare Tod's Annals, I. 63, Thomas' Prinsep, I. 113; Cunningham's Arch. Survey, VI. 201. According to their own accounts (Rāś Mālā, I. 296) the Kāthis learned sun-worship from the Vāla of Dhānk by whom the famous temple of the sun at Thān in Kāthiāvāda was built.

<sup>6</sup> Vālas Musalmān Jāts in Lahor and Gurdaspur: Vāls in Gujarāt and Gujranwālī: Vāls in Mozafarnagar and Dhera Ismael Khan. Also Vālahs Hindus in Kāngra, Panjāb Census of 1891, III. 162.

<sup>7</sup> Brihat Samhitā, V. 80.

<sup>8</sup> Corp. Ins. Ind. III. 140-141.

in Balkh but people then established in India.<sup>1</sup> Does it follow that the Vāhikas of the inscriptions and the Bāhikas of the Harivamśa are the Panjāb tribe referred to in the Mahābhārata as the Bāhikas or Bāhikas, a people held to scorn as keeping no Brāhman rites, their Brāhmans degraded, their women abandoned?<sup>2</sup> Of the two Mahābhārata forms Bahika and Balhika recent scholars have preferred Bāhika with the sense of people of Balkh or Baktria.<sup>3</sup> The name Balhika might belong to more than one of the Central Asian invaders of Northern India during the centuries before and after Christ, whose manner of life might be expected to strike an Aryan Brahman with horror. The date of the settlement of these northern tribes (B.C. 180 - A.D. 300) does not conflict with the comparatively modern date (A.D. 150-250) now generally received for the final revision of the Mahābhārata.<sup>4</sup> This explanation does not remove the difficulty caused by references to Bahukas and Ballukas, in Pāṇini and other writers earlier than the first of the after-Alexander Skythian invasions. At the same time as shown in the footnote there seems reason to hold that the change from the Bakthri of Darius (B.C. 510) and Alexander the Great (B.C. 330) to the modern Balkh did not take place before the first century after Christ. If this view is correct it follows that

## Chapter VIII

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Valas.

<sup>1</sup> The references are, Langlois' Harivamśa, I. 388-420, II. 178. That in A.D. 247 Balkh or Baktria was free from Indian overlordship (McCrindle's Periplus, 121), and that no more distant tribe than the Gandharis finds a place in the Harivamśa lists combine to make it almost certain that, at the time the Harivamśa was written, whatever their origin may have been, the Bāhikas were settled not in Baktria but in India.

<sup>2</sup> The passage from the Kurma Parva or Eighth Book of the Mahābhārata is quoted in Mun's Sanskrit Texts, II. 482, and in greater fullness in St. Martin's *Geog. Grecque et Latine de l'Inde*, 402-410. The Bāhikas or Bāhikas are classed with the Mallas, Gandharas, Arattas, and other Panjāb tribes. In their Brahman families it is said the eldest son alone is a Brahman. The younger brothers are without restraint Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, Sudras, even Barbers. A Brahman may sink to be a Barber and a barber may rise to be a Brahman. The Bāhikas eat flesh even the flesh of the cow and drink liquor. Their women know no restraint. They dance in public places unclothed save with garlands. In the Harivamśa (Langlois, I. 493 and II. 178, 388, 420) the Bāhikas occur in lists of kings and peoples.

<sup>3</sup> Kern in Mun's Sanskrit Texts, II. 446. St. Martin (*Geog. Grecque et Latine de l'Inde*, 149) takes Bahika to be a contraction of Bāhika. Reasons are given below for considering the Mahābhārata form Bahika a confusion with the earlier tribes of that name rather than a contraction of Bāhika or Balhika. The form Bahika was also favoured by the writer in the Mahābhārata because it fitted with his punning derivation from their two grand ancestors *Fah* and *Hika*. St. Martin, 408.

<sup>4</sup> St. Martin *Geog. Grecque et Latine de l'Inde*, 403, puts the probable date at A.C. 380 or about fifty years before Alexander. St. Martin held that the passage belonged to the final revision of the poem. Since St. Martin's time the tendency has been to lower the date of the final revision by at least 500 years. The fact noted by St. Martin (*Ibid.*, page 404) that Jartika which the Mahābhārata writer gives as another name for Bahika is a Sanskritised form of Jat further supports the later date. It is now generally accepted that the Jats are one of the leading tribes who about the beginning of the Christian era passed from Central Asia into India.

<sup>5</sup> The name Valabhi, as we learn from the Jain historians, is a Sanskritised form of Valahi, which can be easily traced back to one of the many forms (Bāhika, Balhika, Balluka, Bahlika, Bāhika, Vāhika, Vāhika, Vāhika, Vāhika, Vāhika) of a tribal name which is of common occurrence in the Epics. This name is, no doubt rightly, traced back to the city of Balkh, and originally denoted merely the people of Baktria. There is, however, evidence that the name also denoted a tribe doubtless of Baktrian origin, but settled in India the Emperor Chandragupta speaks of defeating the Vāhikas after crossing the seven mouths of the Indus: Varaha-Mihira speaks of the Vāhikas along with the people who dwell on Sindhu's banks (Br. Sam. V. 80): and, most decisive of all, the Kāśikā Vṛtti on Paṇ. VIII. iv. 9 (A.D. 650) gives Bahlika as the name of the people of the Sauvāra country, which, as Alberuni tells us, corresponded to the

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Válas.

if the form Bahlika occurs in Pāṇini or other earlier writers it is a mistaken form due to some copyist's confusion with the later name Bahlika. As used by Pāṇini the name Bāhika applied to certain Panjāb tribes seems a general term meaning Outsider a view which is supported by Brian Hodgson's identification of the Mahābhārata Bāhikas with the Bahings one of the outcaste or broken tribes of Nepāl.<sup>1</sup> The use of Bahlika in the Mahābhārata would then be due either to the wish to identify new tribes with old or to the temptation to use a word which had a suitable meaning in Sanskrit. If then there is fair ground for holding that the correct form of the name in the Mahābhārata is Balluka and that Bāhlika means men of Balkh the question remains which of the different waves of Central Asian invaders in the centuries before and after Christ are most likely to have adopted or to have received the title of Baktrians. Between the second century before and the third century after Christ two sets of northerners might justly have claimed or have received the title of Baktrians. These northerners are the Baktrian Greeks about B.C. 180 and the Yuechi between B.C. 20 and A.D. 300. Yavana is so favourite a name among Indian writers that it may be accepted that whatever other northern tribes the name Yavana includes no name but Yavana passed into use for the Baktrian Greeks. Their long peaceful and civilised rule (B.C. 180 - A.D. 300 ?) from their capital at Balkh entitles the Yuechi to the name Baktrians or Bāhikas. That the Yuechi were known in India as Baktrians is proved by the writer of the *Periplus* (A.D. 247), who, when Baktria was still under Yuechi rule, speaks of the Baktrianoi as a most warlike race governed by their own sovereign.<sup>2</sup> It is known that in certain cases the Yuechi tribal names were of local origin. Kushān the name of the leading tribe is according to some authorities a place-name.<sup>3</sup>

modern Multan, the very country to which the traditions of the modern Vālas point.

If the usual derivation of the name Balluka be accepted,\* it is possible to go a step further and fix a probable limit before which the tribe did not enter India. The name of Balkh in the sixth century B.C. was, as we learn from Darius inscriptions, Bakhtri, and the Greeks also knew it as Baktra the Avesta form is Bakhdihi, which according to the laws of sound-change established by Prof. Darmstadter for the Arachosian language as represented by the modern Pushtu, would become Bahh (see *Chants Populaires des Afghans*, Introd. page xxvii). This reduction of the hard aspirates to spirants seems to have taken place about the first century A.D.; parallel cases are the change from Pāthava to Pāthava, and Mihra to Mihra. It would seem therefore that the Bāhikas did not enter India before the first century A.D. and if we may identify their subduer Chandra with Chandragupta I., we should have the fourth century A.D. as a lower limit for dating their invasion.

Unfortunately, however, these limits cannot at present be regarded as more than plausible for the name Balluka or Valluka appears to occur in works that can hardly be as modern as the first century A.D. The *Atharvaveda-parīśiṣṭas* might be put aside, as they show strong traces of Greek influence and are therefore of late date and the supposed occurrences in Pāṇini belong to the commentators and to the *Ganapīṭha* only and are of more or less uncertain age. But the name occurs, in the form Bāhika, in one hymn of the *Atharvaveda* itself (Book V. 22) which there is no reason to suppose is of late date.

The lower limit is also uncertain as the identification of Chandra of the inscription with the Gupta king is purely conjectural — (A. M. T. J.)

\* There is a very close parallel in the modern Panjāb, where (see *Census Report of 1881*) the national name Bahuch has become a tribal name in the same way as Bāhika.

<sup>1</sup> Hodgson's *Essays on Indian Subjects*, I. 405 Note.

<sup>2</sup> McCrindle's *Periplus*, 121. Compare Rawlinson's *Seventh Monarchy*, 79. The absence of Indian reference to the Yuechi supports the view that in India the Yuechi were known by some other name.

<sup>3</sup> According to Reinaud (*Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 82 note 3) probably the modern

And it is established that the names of more than one of the tribes who about B.C. 50 joined under the head of the Kusháns were taken from the lands where they had settled. It is therefore in agreement both with the movements and with the practice of the Yuechi, that, on reaching India, a portion of them should be known as Báhlíkas or Bálhikas. Though the evidence falls short of proof there seems fair reason to suggest that the present Rajput and Káthi Válas or Bálas of Gujarát and Rajputána, through a Sanskritised Váhlíka, may be traced to some section of the Yuechi, who, as they passed south from Baktria, between the first century before and the fourth century after Christ, assumed or received the title of men of Balkh.

One collateral point seems to deserve notice. St. Martin<sup>1</sup> says: 'The Greek historians do not show the least trace of the name Báhlíka.' Accepting Báhlíka, with the general sense of Outsider, as the form used by Indian writers before the Christian era and remembering<sup>2</sup> Pálini's description of the Málavas and Kshudrakas as two Báhuka tribes of the North-West the fact that Pálini lived very shortly before or after the time of Alexander and was specially acquainted with the Panjáb leaves little doubt that when (A.D. 326) Alexander conquered their country the Malloi and Oxydrakai, that is the Málavas and Kshudrakas, were known as Báhikas. Seeing that Alexander's writers were specially interested in and acquainted with the Malloi and Oxydrakai it is strange if St. Martin is correct in stating that Greek writings show no trace of the name Báhlíka. In explanation of this difficulty the following suggestion may be offered.<sup>3</sup> As the Greeks sounded their *h* (α) as a spirant, the Indian Báhlíka would strike them as almost the exact equivalent of their own word βακχικός. More than one of Alexander's writers has curious references to a Bacchic element in the Panjáb tribes. Arrian<sup>4</sup> notices that, as Alexander's fleet passed down the Jhelum, the people lined the banks chanting songs taught them by Dionysus and the Bacchantes. According to Quintus Curtius<sup>5</sup> the name of Father Bacchus was famous among the people to the south of the Malloi. These references are vague. But Strabo is definite.<sup>6</sup> 'The Malloi and Oxydrakai are reported to be the descendants of Bacchus.' This passage is the more important since Strabo's use of the writings of Aristobulus Alexander's historian and of Onesikritos Alexander's pilot and Bráhmaṇ-interviewer gives his details a special value.<sup>7</sup> It may be said Strabo explains why the Malloi and Oxydrakai were called Bacchic and Strabo's explanation is not in agreement with the proposed Báhlíka origin. The answer is that Strabo's explanation can be proved to be in part, if not altogether, fictitious. Strabo<sup>8</sup> gives two reasons why the Oxydrakai

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.  
Válas.

Kochanya or Kashania sixty or seventy mile west of Samarkand. This is Hsien Tsiang's (A.D. 620) K'uh-shwangi-ni-kia or Kushan'ia. See Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 34.

<sup>1</sup> Etude sur la Géographie Grecque et Latine de l'Inde, 147.

<sup>2</sup> McCrindle's Alexander in India, 360.

<sup>3</sup> The suggestion is made by Mr. A. M. T. Jackson.

<sup>4</sup> McCrindle's Alexander, 136.

<sup>5</sup> McCrindle's Alexander, 252.

<sup>6</sup> Compare Strabo, XV. I. 8. The Oxydrakai are the descendants of Dionysus. Again, XV. I. 24: The Malloi and the Oxydrakai who as we have already said are fabled to be related to Dionysus.

<sup>7</sup> See McCrindle's Alexander, 167, 369, 378, 398. Compare St. Martin Geog. Grecque et Latine de l'Inde, 102.

<sup>8</sup> Strabo, XV. I. 8 and 24, Hamilton's Translation, III. 76, 95.

## Chapter VIII.

THE VALABHIS,  
A.D. 509-766.

Válas.

were called Bacchic. First because the vine grew among them and second because their kings marched forth *Bakkhikós* that is after the Bacchic manner. It is difficult to prove that in the time of Alexander the vine did not grow in the Panjáb. Still the fact that the vines of Nysa near Jalálábád and of the hill Meros are mentioned by several writers and that no vines are referred to in the Greek accounts of the Panjáb suggests that the vine theory is an after-thought.<sup>1</sup> Strabo's second explanation, the Bacchic pomp of their kings, can be more completely disproved. The evidence that neither the Malloi nor the Oxydrakai had a king is abundant.<sup>2</sup> That the Greeks knew the Malloi and Oxydrakai were called Bakkhikoi and that they did not know why they had received that name favours the view that the explanation lies in the Indian name Báhika. One point remains. Does any trace of the original Báhikas or Outsiders survive? In Cutch Káthiáváda and North Gujarát are two tribes of half settled cattle-breeders and shepherds whose names Rahibáris as if Rahábaher and Bharyáds as if Baherváda seem like Báhika to mean Outsider. Though in other respects both classes appear to have adopted ordinary Hindu practices the conduct of the Bharyád women of Káthiáváda during their special marriage seasons bears a curiously close resemblance to certain of the details in the Mahábhárata account of the Báhika women. Colonel Barton writes:<sup>3</sup> 'The great marriage festival of the Káthiáváda Bharyáds which is held once in ten or twelve years is called the Milkdrinking, *Dudhpino*, from the lavish use of milk or clarified butter. Under the exciting influence of the butter the women become frantic singing obscene songs breaking down hedges and spoiling the surrounding crops.' Though the Bharyáds are so long settled in Káthiáváda as to be considered aboriginals their own tradition preserves the memory of a former settlement in Márwár.<sup>4</sup> This tradition is supported by the fact that the shrine of the family goddess of the Cutch Raháris is in Jodhpur,<sup>5</sup> and by the claim of the Cutch Bharyáds that their home is in the North-West Provinces.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> References to the vines of Nysa and Meros occur in Strabo, Pliny, Quintus Curtius, Philostratus, and Justin. McCrindle's *Alexander in India*, 193 note 1, 321, and 339. Strabo (Hamilton's Translation, III, 86) refers to a vine in the country of Musikannus or Upper Sindh. At the same time (Ditto, 108) Strabo accepts Megasthenes' statement that in India the wild vine grows only in the hills.

The Kathaori Malloi and Oxydrakai are (Arrian in McCrindle's *Alexander*, 116, 137, 140, 149) called independent in the sense of kingless. they (Ditto, 154) sent leading men not ambassadors: (compare also Diodorus Siculus and Plutarch, Ditto 287, 311): the Malloi had to choose a leader (Q. Curtius, Ditto 236).

<sup>2</sup> Káthiáwár Gazetteer, 138. <sup>3</sup> Káthiáwár Gazetteer, 137. <sup>4</sup> Cutch Gazetteer, 80.

<sup>5</sup> Cutch Gazetteer, 81.

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE CHÁLUKYNAS

(A.D. 634-740.)

THE Chálukyas conquered their Gujarát provinces from the south after subduing the Konkan Mauryas of Purí either Rájapurí that is Janjira or Elephanta in Bombay harbour. The fifth century Váda inscription of king Suketuvarman proves that this Maurya dynasty<sup>1</sup> ruled in the Konkan for at least a century before they came into collision with the Chálukyas under Kirtivarman.<sup>2</sup> They were finally defeated and their capital Purí taken by Chandadanda an officer of Pulakesi II. (A.D. 610-640).<sup>3</sup> The Chálukyas then pressed northwards, and an inscription at Aihole in South Bijapur records that as early as A.D. 634 the kings of Lata, Málava, and Gurjjara submitted to the prowess of Pulakesi II. (A.D. 610-640).

**Chapter IX.**  
THE CHÁLUKYNAS  
A.D. 634-740.

The regular establishment of Chálukya power in South Gujarát seems to have been the work of Dhárá-raya Jayasimhavarman son of Pulakesi II. and younger brother of Vikramáditya Satyasraya (A.D. 670-680). A grant of Jayasimhavarman's son Siláditya found in Navsári describes Jayasimhavarman as receiving the kingdom from his brother Vikramáditya. As Jayasimhavarman is called *Paramabhūttāraka* Great Lord, he probably was practically independent. He had five sons and enjoyed a long life, ruling apparently from Navsári. Of the five Gujarát Chálukya copperplates noted below, three are in an era marked Sam. which is clearly different from the Śaka era (A.D. 78) used in the grants of the main Chálukyas. From the nature of the case the new era of the Gujarát Chálukyas may be accepted as of Gujarát origin. Grants remain of Jayasimhavarman's sons dated S. 421, 443, and 490.<sup>4</sup> This checked by Vikramáditya's known date (A.D. 670-680) gives an initial between A.D. 249 and 259. Of the two Gujarát eras, the Gupta-Valabhi (A.D. 319) and the Traikútaka (A.D. 248-9), the Gupta-Valabhi is clearly unsuitable. On the other hand the result is so closely in accord with A.D. 248-9, the Traikútaka epoch, as to place the correctness of the identification almost beyond question.

Jayasimhavarman,  
A.D. 666-693.

Jayasimhavarman must have established his power in South Gujarát before A.D. 669-70 (T. 421), as in that year his son Sryá-raya made a grant as heir apparent. Another plate of Sryá-raya found in Surat shows that in A.D. 691-2 (T. 443) Jayasimhavarman was still ruling with Sryá-raya as heir apparent. In view of these facts the establishment of Jayasimhavarman's power in Gujarát must be taken at about A.D. 666. The copperplates of his sons and grandson do not say whom Jayasimhavarman overthrew. Probably the defeated rulers were Gurjjaras, as about this time a Gurjjara dynasty held the Broach district with its capital at Nándipurí the modern Nándod in the Rájpipla State about thirty-five miles east of Broach. So far

<sup>1</sup> Bom. Gaz. XIV. 372.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VIII. 243.

<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. VIII. 244.

<sup>4</sup> J. B. B. R. A. S. XVI. 1ff. . Proceedings VIIth Oriental Congress, 210ff.

**Chapter IX.**

THE CHÁLUKYAN,  
A.D. 634-740.

\* Jayasimhavarman,  
A.D. 666-693.

as is known the earliest of the Nándod Gurjjaras was Dadda who is estimated to have flourished about A.D. 580 (T. 331).<sup>1</sup> The latest is Jayabhata whose Navsári copperplate bears date A.D. 734-5 (T. 486)<sup>2</sup> so that the Gurjjara and Chálukya kingdoms flourished almost at the same time. It is possible that the power of the earlier Gurjjara kings spread as far south as Balsár and even up to Konkan limits. It was apparently from them that, during the reign of his brother Vikramáditya, Jayasimhavarman took South Gujarát, driving the Gurjjaras north of the Tápti and eventually confining them to the Broach district, the Gurjjaras either acknowledging Chálukya sovereignty or withstanding the Chálukyas and retaining their small territory in the Broach district by the help of the Valabhis with whom they were in alliance.<sup>3</sup> In either case the Chálukya power seems to have hemmed in the Broach Gurjjaras, as Jayasimhavarman had a son Buddhavarman ruling in Kaira. A copperplate of Buddhavarman's son Vijayarāja found in Kaira is granted from Vijayapura identified with Bijapur near Parantij, but probably some place further south, as the grant is made to Bráhmins of Jambusar. Five copperplates remain of this branch of the Chálukyas, the Navsári grant of Sryásraya Śilāditya Yuvarāja dated A.D. 669-70 (T. 421); the Surat grant of the same Śilāditya dated A.D. 691-2 (T. 443); the Balsár grant of Vinayāditya Mangalarāja dated A.D. 731 (S'aka 653), the Navsári grant of Pulakesi Janáraya dated A.D. 738-9 (T. 490); the Kaira grant of Vijayarāja dated Samvatsara 394; and the undated Nirpan grant of Nágavardhana Tribhuvanárāja.

Sryásraya  
Śilāditya  
(Heir Apparent)  
A.D. 669-691.

The first four grants mention Jayasimhavarman as the younger brother of Vikramáditya Satyárāja the son of Pulakesi Satyárāja the conqueror of Harshavardhana the lord of the North. Jayasimhavarman's eldest son was Sryásraya Śilāditya who made his Navsári grant in A.D. 669-70 (T. 421), the village granted being said to be in the Navasáriká Vishaya. Sryásraya's other plate dated A.D. 691-2 (T. 443) grants a field in the village of Osumbhalá in the Kármancya Khára that is the district of Kámlej on the Tápti fifteen miles north-east of Surat. In both grants Śilāditya is called Yuvarāja, which shows that his father ruled with him from A.D. 669 to A.D. 691. Both copperplates show that these kings treated as their overlords the main dynasty of the southern Chálukyas as respectful mention is made in the first plate of Vikramáditya Satyárāja and in the second of his son Vinayáditya Satyárāja. Apparently Sryásraya died before his father as the two late grants of Balsár and Khedá give him no place in the list of rulers.

Mangalarāja,  
A.D. 698-731.

Jayasimhavarman was succeeded by his second son Mangalarāja. A plate of his found at Balsár dated A.D. 731 (Saka 653) records a grant made from Mangalapuri, probably the same as Purí the doubtful Konkan capital of the Śiláháras.<sup>4</sup> As his elder brother was heir-apparent in A.D. 691-2 (T. 443), Mangalarāja must have succeeded some years later, say about A.D. 698-9 (T. 450). From this it may be inferred that the copperplate of A.D. 731 was issued towards the end of his reign.

<sup>1</sup> See Chap. X. below.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 73.

<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 70.

<sup>4</sup> B. B. R. A. 8, XVI. 5.

Mangalarāja was succeeded by his younger brother Pulakesi Janāśraya. This is the time of Khalif Hashām (H. 105-125, A.D. 721-743) whose Sindh governor Junaid is recorded to have sent expeditions against Marmād, Mandal, Dalmaj (Kāmlaj?), Bārus, Uzain, Mālība, Baharimad (Mevad?), Al Balaīmān (Bhinmāl?), and Juzr. Though several of these names seem to have been misread and perhaps misspelt on account of the confusion in the original Arabic, still Marmād, Mandal, Bārus, Uzain, Mālība, and Juzr can easily be identified with Mārvād, Mandal near Viramgām, Bharuch, Ujjain, Mālwa, and Gurjjara. The defeat of one of these raids is described at length in Pulakesi's grant of A.D. 738-9 (T. 490) which states that the Arab army had afflicted the kingdoms of Sindhu, Kacchella, Saurāshtra, Chāvotaka, Maurya, and Gurjjara that is Sindh, Kacch, the Chāvādās, the Mauryas of Chitor,<sup>1</sup> and the Gurjjaras of Bhinmāl.<sup>2</sup>

**Chapter IX.**  
**THE CHALUKYAS,**  
A.D. 634-740.  
Pulakesi  
Janāśraya,  
A.D. 738.

<sup>1</sup> For the Moris or Mauryas, described as a branch of Pramātras, who held Chitor during the eighth century compare Tod. J. R. A. S 211; Wilson's Works, XII. 132.

<sup>2</sup> The text of the copperplate runs—

शरशसीरमुद्रोद्धारिणि तरलतरतारनरवारिदा

- [24] रितौदितसैन्धवकच्छेलसौराष्ट्र चावोटक मौर्यगुर्जरदिरा [ज्ये] निःशेष-  
दाक्षिणान्यक्षितिपतिजि  
[25] गीपया दक्षिणापथप्रवेश.....प्रथममेवनवसारिकाविषयप्र-  
साधनभ्यागते त्वरित

PLATE II.

- [1] तुरगखरमुखरखुरोखातधरिणिधूलिधूसरितदिगन्तरे कुन्तप्रान्तानितान्तावि-  
मर्द्यमानरभसाभिधाविना  
[2] द्रुटस्थलादरविवरविनिर्गतात्रप्रथुनरुधिरवाररंजितकवचभीषणवपुपि स्वा-  
मिमहा  
[3] सन्मानदानग्रहणं क्रीयाकृतस्वशिरोभिरभिमुखमापतितैप्रदंयदशनाप्रदष्टोष्ट-  
पुटकैरने  
[4] कसमराजिरविवरवरिकरिकटितटहयविघटनविशालितघनरुधिरपटलपाट-  
लितपटुक्रपाणपट्टैरपि महा  
[5] योवैरलब्धपरभागै विपक्षक्षपणाक्षेपक्षिप्रक्षिप्रतीक्षणक्षुरप्रप्रहारविलूनवैरि-  
शिरं कमलगलनालैरा  
[6] हवरसरभसरोमाचंकंचुकाच्छादिततनूभिरनेकैरपि नरेन्द्रब्रंद्रदारकैरजित-  
पूर्वैः व्यपगतमस्माक  
[7] भ्रणमनेनं स्वामिनः स्वशिरःप्रदानेनाद्यतावदेकजन्मीयमित्येवमिपोपजातप-  
रितोषानन्तरप्रहतपटुप  
[8] टहरवप्रवृत्तकबन्धद्वारासमण्डलीके समराशिरासि विजितेताजिकानिके शो-  
य्यानुरागिणा श्रीवदत्रमनरै  
[9] त्रेण प्रसादीकृतापरनामचतुष्टयस्तद्यथा दक्षिणापथसाधारणचलुकिकुलालं-  
कारपृथ्वीवदत्रमानिवत्तकनिव  
[10] र्त्तयित्रवनिजनाश्रयश्रीपुलकेशिराजस्सर्वानंवात्मीयान्

**Chapter IX.**  
**THE CHÁLUKYAS,**  
**A.D. 634-740.**

**Buddhavarman,**  
**A.D. 713 (?)**

Pulakesi was at this time ruling at Navsari. It is uncertain how much longer this Chálukya kingdom of Navsari continued. It was probably overthrown about A.D. 750 by the Gujarát branch of the Ráshtrakútas who were in possession in A.D. 757-8.<sup>1</sup>

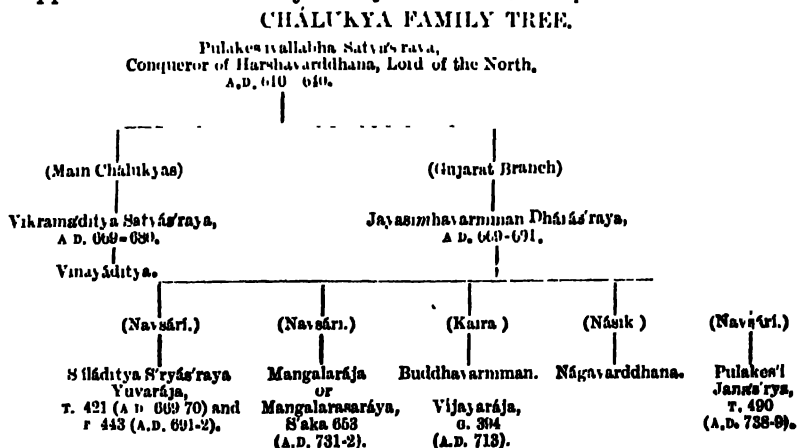
The Kaira grant dated 391 gives in hereditary succession the names Jayasinha, Buddhavarman, and Vijayaraja.<sup>2</sup> The grant is made from Vijayapura, which, as the late Colonel West suggested, may be Bijapur near Parantij though this is far to the north of the otherwise known Chálukya limits. The village granted is Pariyaya in the Kásákula division. If taken as Traikútake the date 391 corresponds to A.D. 612-3. This is out of the question, since Vijayaraja's grand-uncle Vikramaditya flourished between A.D. 670 and 680. Professor Bhandarkar considers the plate a forgery, but there seems no sufficient reason for doubting its genuineness. No fault can be found with the character. It is written in the usual style of Western Chálukya grants, and contains the names of a number of Bráhman grantees with minute details of the fields granted a feature most unusual in a forged grant. In the Gupta era, which equally with the Traikútake era may be denoted by the word *Sam.* and which is more likely to be in use in North Gujarát the 391 would represent the fairly probable A.D. 713. Jayasinha may have conquered part of North Gujarát and sent his son Buddhavarman to rule over it.

**Nagavarddhana.**

Jayasinha appears to have had a third son Nagavarddhana ruling in West Násik which was connected with South Gujarát through Balsar, Pardi, and Penth. The Nirpan grant of Nagavarddhana is undated,<sup>3</sup> and, though it gives a wrong genealogy, its seal, the form of composition, the *harida* or title of the king, and the alphabet all so closely agree with the style of the Gujarát Chálukya plates that it cannot be considered a forgery.

Not long after A.D. 710 the Chálukyas seem to have been supplanted in South Gujarát by the Ráshtrakútas.

**Chálukya**  
**Tree.**



<sup>1</sup> Journal B. B. R. A. S. XVI.105.    <sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 241.    <sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. IX. 123.

Vijayarāja's grant of the year 394 (A.D. 642-3) is the earliest trace of Chālukya rule in Gujaraṭ. Dr. Bhagvānlāl, who believed in its genuineness, supposes it to be dated in the Gupta era (G. 394 = A.D. 714) and infers from it the existence of Chālukya rule far to the north of Broach. But the most cursory comparison of it with the Khedā grants of Dadda II. (see Ind. Ant. XIII. 81ff) which are dated (admittedly in the [so-called] Traikūṭaka era) 380 and 385 respectively, shows that a large number of Dadda's grantees reappear in the Chālukya grant. The date of the Chālukya plate must therefore be interpreted as a Traikūṭaka or Chedi date.

This being so, it is clearly impossible to suppose that Vijayarāja's grandfather Jayasinha is that younger son of Pulakeśi II. (A.D. 610-640) who founded the Gujaraṭ branch family. It has been usually supposed that the Jayasinha of our grant was a younger brother of Pulakeśi II.; but this also is chronologically impossible for Jayasinha can hardly have been more than ten years of age in A.D. 597-98, when his elder brother was set aside as too young to rule. His son Buddhavarman could hardly have been born before A.D. 610, so that Buddhavarman's son Vijayarāja must have made his grant at the age of twelve at latest. The true solution of the question seems to be that given by Dr. Bhandarkar in his Early History of the Deccan (page 42 note 7), namely that the grant is a forgery. The reasons advanced by him may be added the fact pointed out by Mr. Fleet (Ind. Ant. VII. 251) that the grant is a palimpsest, the engraver having originally commenced it "Svasti Vijayavikshepān Na." It can hardly be doubted that *Na* is the first syllable of Nandipurī the palace of the Gurjjara kings. Many of the grantees were Brāhmanas of Jambusar and subjects of Dadda II. of Broach, whose grants to them are extant. It seems obvious that Vijayarāja's grant was forged in the interest of these persons by some one who had Gurjjara grants before him as models, but knew very little of the forms used in the chancery of the Chālukyas.

Setting aside this grant, the first genuine trace of Chālukya rule in Gujaraṭ is to be found in the grant of the Sindraka chief Nikumbhallaśakti, which bears date Sam. 406 (A.D. 654-5) and relates to the gift to a Brāhman of the village of Bahsa (Wanesa) in the Tryyana (Ten) district. Dr. Bühler has shown (Ind. Ant. XVIII. page 265ff) that the Sindrakas were a Kanarese family, and that Nikumbhallaśakti must have come to Gujaraṭ as a Chālukya feudatory, though he names no overlord. He was doubtless subordinate to the Chālukya governor of Nasik.

The next grant that requires notice is that of Nāgavarādhana, who describes himself distinctly as the son of Pulakeśi's brother Jayasinha, though Dr. Bhagvānlāl believed this Jayasinha to be Pulakeśi's son. Mr. Fleet points out other difficulties connected with this grant, but on the whole decides in favour of its genuineness (see Ind. Ant. IX. 123). The description of Pulakeśi II. in this grant refers to his victory over Harshavarādhana, but also describes him as having conquered the three kingdoms of Chera, Chola, and Pāṇḍya by means of his horse of the Chitrakanṭha breed, and as meditating on the feet of Śrī Nāgavarādhana. Now all of these epithets, except the reference to Harshavarādhana, belong properly, not to Pulakeśi II. but to his son Vikramāditya I. The conquest of the confederacy of Cholas, Cheras (or Keraḷas), and Pāṇḍyas is ascribed to Vikramāditya in the inscriptions of his son Vṛmāditya (Fleet in Ind. Ant. X. 134); the Chitrakanṭha horse is named in Vikramāditya's own grants (Ind. Ant. VI. 75 &c.) while his meditation upon the feet of Nāgavarādhana recurs in the T. 421 grant of Śrīśrīyaya Śilāditya (B. B. R. A. S. XVI. 11f). This confusion of epithets between Pulakeśi II. and Vikramāditya makes it difficult to doubt that Nāgavarādhana's grant was composed either during or after Vikramāditya's reign, and under the influence of that king's grants. It may be argued that even in that case the grant may be genuine, its inconsistencies being due merely to carelessness. This supposition the following considerations seem to negative. Pulakeśi II. was alive at the time of Hiuen Tsiang's visit (A.D. 640), but is not likely to have reigned very much longer. And, as Vikramāditya's reign is supposed to have begun about A.D. 669-70, a gap remains of nearly thirty years. That part of this period was occupied by the war with the three kings

## Chapter IX.

THE CHĀLUKYAS,  
A.D. 634-740.

A.D. 610-640

**Chapter IX.**

THE CHĀLUKYAS,  
A.D. 634-740.

of the south we know from Vikramāditya's own grants: but the grant of Sṛyāśraya Sūkāditya referred to above seems to show that Vikramāditya was the successor, not of his father, but of Nagavarddhana upon whose feet he is described as meditating. It follows that Nagavarddhana succeeded Pulakeśi and preceded Vikramāditya on the imperial throne of the Chālukyas whereas his grant could not have been composed until the reign of Vikramāditya.

Although the grant is not genuine, we have no reason to doubt that it gives a correct genealogy, and that Nagavarddhana was the son of Pulakeśi's brother Jayasimha and therefore the first cousin of Vikramāditya. The grant is in the regular Chālukya style, and the writer, living near the Northern Chālukya capital, Nāsik, had better models than the composer of Vijayiraja's grant. Both grants may have been composed about the time when the Chālukya power succumbed to the attacks of the Rashtrakūṭas (A.D. 743).—(A. M. T. J.)

## CHAPTER X.

## THE GURJJARAS

• (A.D. 580-808.)

During Valabhi and Chulikya ascendancy a small Gurjjara kingdom flourished in and about Broach. As has been noticed in the Valabhi chapter the Gurjjaras were a foreign tribe who came to Gujrat from Northern India. All the available information regarding the Broach Gurjjaras comes from nine copperplates,<sup>1</sup> three of them indeed all obtained from South Gujrat. These plates limit the regular Gurjjara territory to the Broach district between the Mahi and the Narmada, though at times their power extended north to Khedi and south to the Tapti. Like the grants of the contemporary Gujrat Chalukyas all the genuine copperplates are dated in the Trakataka era which begins in A.D. 450.<sup>2</sup> The Gurjjara capital seems to have been Nandpur or Nandol, the modern Nandol the capital of Rappula in Rewa Kantha about thirty-four miles east of Broach. Two of the grants issue *Nandipuradeva*<sup>3</sup> that is 'from Nandpur' like the *Valabhadra* or 'from Valabhi' of the Valabhi copperplates, a phrase which in both cases seems to show the place named was the capital since in other Gurjjara grants the word *rastra* or empire occurs.

## Chapter X.

THE GURJJARAS  
A.D. 580-808.

Copperplates.

Though the Gurjjaras held a considerable territory in South Gujrat their plates seem to show they were not independent rulers. The general titles are either *Saundhigata-patirahasthasabha* 'He who has attained the five great title,'<sup>4</sup> or *Samanta* Feudatory. In one instance Jayabhatta<sup>5</sup> who was probably a powerful ruler is called *Saundhigata-patirahasthasabha*. It is hard to say how far within the Broach Gurjjaras acknowledged fealty. Latterly they seem to have accepted the Chalukyas on the south as their overlords. But during the greater part of their existence they may have been feudatories of the Valabhi dynasty, who, as

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. V. 1090. Ind. Ant. VII. 1117 & Jour. R. A. Soc. N. S. I. 276f. Ind. Ant. XIII. 81, 91. Jour. B. R. A. Soc. N. 190. Ind. Ant. XIII. 115-119. Ind. Ant. XV. 11 and Ep. Ind. II. 190. <sup>2</sup> See above page 107.

<sup>3</sup> That Nandol or Nandol was an old and important city is proved by the fact that Brahmins and Varnis called Nandol is that is of Nandol are found throughout Gujrat. Mongrol and Choryal on the South Kathiawar coast have settlements of Varnis vine cultivators who call themselves Nandol Varnis and apparently brought the vine from Nandol. Dr. Buhler, however, identifies the Nandpur of the grants with an old fort of the same name about two miles north of the east gate of Broach. See Ind. Ant. VII. 62. <sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 81, 88. <sup>5</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 70.

<sup>6</sup> The fact that the Umet and Hio plates give their grantor Dadda II, the *Maharajadhiraja* Supreme Lord of Great Kings, is one of the grounds for holding them forgeries.

**Chapter X.**THE GUJJARAS,  
A.D. 580-808.

Copperplates.

mentioned above were probably Gurjjaras who passed from Málwa to South Gujarát and thence by sea to Valabhi leaving a branch in South Gujarát.

The facts that in A.D. 649 (Valabhi 330) a Valabhi king had a 'camp of victory' at Bronch where Ranagriha's plate<sup>1</sup> shows the Gurjjaras were then ruling and that the Gurjjara king Dadda II. gave shelter to a Valabhi king establish a close connection between Valabhi and the Nándod Gurjjaras.

Their copperplates and seals closely resemble the plates and seals of the Gujarat Chálukya's. The characters of all but the forged grants are like those of Gujarat Chálukya grants and belong to the Gujarát variety of the Southern India style. At the same time it is to be noted that the royal signature at the end of the plates is of the northern type, proving that the Gurjjaras were originally northerners. The language of most of the grants is Sanskrit prose as in Valabhi plates in a style curiously like the style of the contemporary author Bana in his great works the Kádambari and Haushacharita. From this it may be inferred that Bana's style was not peculiar to himself but was the style in general use in India at that time.

Gurjjara  
Tree.

The following is the Gurjjara family tree

```

Dadda I A.D. 580.
|
Jayabhata I A.D. 605
|
Dadda II. A.D. 633
|
Jayabhata II. A.D. 655
|
Dadda III A.D. 681
|
Jayabhata III. A.D. 706-734

```

A recently published grant<sup>2</sup> made by Nimbhullaka, the chieftain of a jungle tribe in the lower valley of the Nerbada, shows that towards the end of the sixth century A.D. that region was occupied by wild tribes who acknowledged the supremacy of the Chedi or Kalachuri kings: a fact which accounts for the use of the Chedi or Trakútaka era in South Gujarat. Nimbhullaka names with respect a king Sankaravara, whom Dr Buhler would identify with Sankaragana the father of the Kalachuri Buddhavarman who was defeated by Mangalisa the Chálukya about A.D. 600.<sup>3</sup> Sankaragana himself must have flourished about A.D. 580, and the Gurjjara conquest must be subsequent to this date. Another new grant,<sup>4</sup> which is only a fragment and contains no king's name, but which on the ground of date (Sam. 346 A.D. 594-5) and style may be safely attributed to the Gurjjara dynasty, shows that the jaras were established in the country within a few years of aragana's probable date.

Still nearer approximation to the date of the Gurjjara conquest is stated by the change in the titles of Dharasena I. of Valabhi, who

p. Ind. II. 20.    <sup>2</sup> Ep. Ind. II. 21.    <sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 162.    <sup>4</sup> Ep. Ind. II. 19.

in his grants of Samvat 252<sup>1</sup> (A.D. 571) calls himself Mahārāja, while in his grants of 269 and 270<sup>2</sup> (A.D. 588 and 589), he adds the title of Mahāsāmānta, which points to subjection by some foreign power between A.D. 571 and A.D. 588. It seems highly probable that this power was that of the Gurjjaras of Bhīnmāl; and that their successes therefore took place between A.D. 580 and 585 or about A.D. 585.

The above mentioned anonymous grant of the year 316 (A.D. 591-95) is ascribed with great probability to Dadda I. who is known from the two Khedā grants of his grand-son Dadda II. (c. 620-650 A.D.)<sup>3</sup> to have "uprooted the Nāga" who must be the same as the jungle tribes ruled by Nāhulūka and are now represented by the Nāṛkdās of the Panch Mahals and the Talabdas or Locals of Broach. The northern limit of Dadda's kingdom seems to have been the Vindhya, as the grant of 380 (A.D. 623-29) says that the lands lying around the feet of the Vindhya were for his pleasure. At the same time it appears that part at least of Northern Gujarat was ruled by the Mahasāmanta Dharasena of Valabhi, who in Val 270 (A.D. 589-90) granted a village in the *ahīra* of Khetaka (Khedā).<sup>4</sup> Dadda is always spoken of as the *Sāmanta*, which shows that while he lived his territory remained a part of the Gurjara kingdom of Bhīmaśīl. Subsequently North Gujarat fell into the hands of the Malava kings, to whom it belonged in Huen Tsiang's time (c. 640 A.D.).<sup>5</sup> Dadda I. is mentioned in the two Khedā grants of his grandson as a worshipping of the sun: the fragmentary grant of 316 (A.D. 591-97) which is attributed to him gives no historical details.

Dadda I. was succeeded by his son Jayabhata I who is mentioned in the Khedā grants as a victorious and virtuous ruler, and appears from his title of Vītarāga the Passionless to have been a religious prince.

Jayabhata I. was succeeded by his son Dadda II, who bore the title of Pra-antarāgga the Passion-calmed. Dadda was the donor of the two Khedā grants of 380 (A.D. 628-29) and 385 (A.D. 633-34), and a part of a grant made by his brother Ranagraha in the year 391 (A.D. 639-40) has lately been published.<sup>6</sup> Three forged grants purporting to have been issued by him are dated respectively Saka 400 (A.D. 478), Saka 415 (A.D. 493), and Saka 447 (A.D. 495).<sup>7</sup> Both of the Khedā grants relate to the gift of the village of Sirī-māyā-saka (Sisodra) in the Akṛūśvara (Ankleshvara) vālaya to certain Brahmins of Jambusar and Broach. In Ranagraha's grant the name of the village is lost.

Dadda II's own grants describe him as having attained the five great titles, and praise him in general terms : and both he and his brother Ranagula sign their grants as devout worshippers of the sun. Dadda II. heads the genealogy in the later grant of 156 (A.D. 704-5),<sup>4</sup> which states that he protected "the lord of Valabhi who had been defeated by the great lord the illustrious Harshadeva." The event referred to must have been some expedition of the great Harshavardhana of Kanauj

## Chapter X.

THE GURJJARAS,  
A.D. 550-808.

Dadda I.  
c. 585 - 605 A.D.

Jayabhāṭa I.  
Vitaraga,  
C. 605-620 A.D.

Dadda H.  
Prasantarāga, ,  
c. 620-650 A.D.

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. VII. 68, VIII. 302, XIII 160, and XV. 187.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VI 9, VII. 70.

<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant., XIII, 81-85.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. VII, 70.

<sup>5</sup> Peal's Buddhist Records, II 266, 268

<sup>6</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 81-88, Ep. Ind. II. 19.

(On these forged grants see below page 117.

<sup>8</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 70.

**Chapter X.**

THE GUJARATAS,  
A.D. 580-808.

Dadda II  
Prasantaṅga,  
c. 620-650 A.D.

(A.D. 607-648), perhaps the campaign in which Harsha was defeated on the Nerbada by Pulakesi II. (which took place before A.D. 631). The protection given to the Valabhi king is perhaps referred to in the Khedā grants in the mention of "strangers and suppliants and people in distress." If this is the case the defeat of Valabhi took place before A.D. 628-29, the date of the earlier of the Khedā grants. On the other hand, the phrase quoted is by no means decisive, and the fact that in Hsuen Tsiang's time Dhruvasena of Valabhi was son-in-law of Harsha's son, makes it unlikely that Harsha should have been at war with him. It follows that the expedition referred to may have taken place in the reign of Dhruvasena IV who may have been the son of Dhruvasena by another wife than Harsha's granddaughter.

To Dadda II's reign belongs Hsuen Tsiang's notice of the kingdom of Broach (c. 610 A.D.).<sup>1</sup> He says "all their profit is from the sea" and describes the country as salt and barren, which is still true of large tracts in the west and twelve hundred years ago was probably the condition of a much larger area than at present. Hsuen Tsiang does not say that Broach was subject to any other kingdom but it is clear from the fact that Dadda bore the five great titles that he was a mere feudatory. At this period the valuable port of Broach, from which all then profit was made, was a prize fought for by all the neighbouring powers. With the surrounding country of Lata, Broach submitted to Pulakesi II. (A.D. 610-649) it may afterwards have fallen to the Mālava kings, to whom in Hsuen Tsiang's time (A.D. 640) both Khedā (K'ue-ch'ia) and Anandapura (Vadnagar) belonged; later it was subject to Valabhi, as Dhruvasena IV. made a grant at Broach in A.S. 330 (A.D. 649-50).<sup>2</sup>

Knowledge of the later Gujjaras is derived exclusively from two grants of Jayabhata III, dated respectively 456 (A.D. 704-5) and 486 (A.D. 734-5).<sup>3</sup> The later of these two grants is imperfect, only the last plate having been preserved. The earlier grant of 456 (A.D. 704-5) shows that during the half century following the reign of Dadda II the dynasty had ceased to call themselves Gujjaras, and had adopted a Purāṇic pedigree traced from king Karna, a hero of the Bharata war. It also shows that from Dadda III. onward the family were Śaivas instead of sun-worshippers.

Jayabhata II  
c. 650-675 A.D.

The successor of Dadda II. was his son Jayabhata II who is described as a warlike prince, but of whom no historical details are recorded.

Dadda III  
Bāhusaṅga,  
c. 675-700.

Jayabhata's son, Dadda III. Bāhusaṅga, is described as waging wars with the great kings of the east and of the west (probably Malava and Valabhi). He was the first Śaiva of the family, studied Manu's works, and strictly enforced "the duties of the *varṇas* or castes and of the *āśramas* or Brāhman stages." It was probably to him that the Gujjaras owed their Purāṇic pedigree and their recognition as true Kshatriyas. Like his predecessors Dadda III.

<sup>1</sup> Beal's *Buddhist Records*, II. 259.

<sup>2</sup> *Ind. Ant.* VIII. 237.

<sup>3</sup> *Ind. Ant.* XV. 335.

<sup>4</sup> *Ind. Ant.* V. 109, XIII. 70.

## THE GURJJARAS.

was not an independent ruler. He could claim only the five great titles, though no hint is given who was his suzerain. His immediate superior may have been Jayasinha the Chlukya, who received the province of Lata from his brother Vikramaditya (c. 660-680 A.D.)<sup>1</sup>

The son and successor of Dadda III was Jayabhata III, whose two grants of 456 (A.D. 704-5) and 486 (A.D. 734-5)<sup>2</sup> must belong respectively to the beginning and the end of his reign. He attained the five great titles, and was therefore a feudatory, probably of the Chlukyas, but his title of Mahasamantadhipati implies that he was a chief of importance. He is praised in vague terms, but the only historical event mentioned in his grants is a defeat of a lord of Valabhi, noted in the grant of 486 (A.D. 734-5). The Valabhi king referred to must be either Śīkhaditya IV. (A.D. 691) or Śīkhaditya V. (A.D. 722). During the reign of Jayabhata III took place the great Arab invasion which was repulsed by Pulakesi Janiśraya at Naxos. Like the kingdoms named in the grant of Pulakesi, Broach must have suffered from this raid. It is not specially mentioned probably because it formed part of Pulakesi's territory.

After A.D. 734-5 no further mention occurs of the Gurjaras of Broach. Whether the dynasty was destroyed by the Arabs or by the Gurjarat Rashtrakutas (A.D. 750) is not known. Later references to Gurjara in Rashtrakuta times refer to the Gurjaras of Blinnal not to the Gurjaras of Broach, who about the time of Dadda III (c. 675-700 A.D.) ceased to call themselves Gurjaras.

A few words must be said regarding the three grants from Hlo, Umeta, and Bazum, chief Ant. XIII. Ho. VII. 61, and XVII. 183, as their genuineness has been assumed by Dr. Bühler in his recent paper on the Mahabharata in spite of Mr. Fleet's proof (Ind. Ant. XVIII. 19) that their dates do not work out correctly.

Dr. Bhattacharya's chief Ant. XIII. 701 chief grounds for holding that the Hlo and Ho grants (the Bazum grant was unknown to him) were forgeries were

(1) Their close resemblance in palaeography to one another and to the forged grant of Dharmesena II. of Valabhi dated S. 4100.

(2) That though they purport to belong to the fifth century they bear the same writer's name as the Kheda grants of the seventh century.

But Mr. Fleet (chief Ant. XIII. 19) pointed out

(3) That the description of Dadda I. in the Hlo and Umeta grants agrees almost literally with that of Dadda II. in the Kheda grants, and that where it differs the Kheda grants have the better readings.

To these arguments Dr. Bühler has replied (Ind. Ant. XVII. 183)

(1) That though there is a resemblance between these grants and that of Dharmesena II., still it does not prove more than that the forger of Dharmesena's grant had once of the other grants before him.

(2) That, as the father's name of the writer is not given in the Kheda grants, it cannot be assumed that he was the same person as the writer of the Hlo and Umeta grants, and

## Chapter X.

THE GURJJARAS  
A.D. 580-808.

Jayabhata III  
c. 701-734 A.D.

<sup>1</sup> B. B. R. A. S. JI. XVI. 10

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. V. 109, XI. 11. 70. The earlier grant was made from Kāyāvatara (Kurvan) the later one is mutilated. \* Before A.D. 738-9, see Chap. IX. above.

**Chapter X.**

THE GURJJARAS,  
A.D. 580-808.

(3) That genuine grants sometimes show that a description written for one king is afterwards applied to another, and that good or bad readings are no test of the age of a grant.

It may be admitted that Dr Bühler has made it probable that the suspected grants and the grant of Dharasena were not all written by the same hand, and also that the coincidence in the writer's name is not of much importance in itself. But the palaeographical resemblance between Dharasena's grant on the one hand and the doubtful Gurjjara grants on the other is so close that they must have been written at about the same time. As to the third point, the verbal agreement between the doubtful grants on the one hand and the Kheda grants on the other implies the existence of a continuous tradition in the record office of the dynasty from the end of the fifth till near the middle of the seventh century. But the Saurhodā grant of Nandulaka (*Āp. Ind.* II, 21) shows that towards the end of the sixth century the lower Narmada valley was occupied by jungle tribes who acknowledged the supremacy of the Kalachuris. Is it reasonable to suppose that after the first Gurjjara line was thus displaced, the restorers of the dynasty should have had any memory of the forms in which the first line drew up their grants? At any rate, if they had, they would also have retained their original seal, which, as the analogy of the Valabhi plates teaches us, would bear the founder's name. But we find that the seal of the Khedi plates bears the name 'Samanta Dadda' who can be no other than the "Samanta Dadda" who ruled from c. 585-605 A.D. It follows that the Gurjjaras of the seventh century themselves traced back their history in Broach no further than A.D. 585. Again, it has been pointed out in the text that a passage in the description of Dadda II, (A.D. 620-650) in the Khedi grants seems to refer to his protection of the Valabhi King, so that the description must have been written for *him* and not for the fifth century Dadda as Dr. Bühler's theory requires.

These points coupled with Mr Fleet's proof (*Ind. Ant.* XVIII, 91) that the Saka dates do not work out correctly, may perhaps be enough to show that none of these three grants can be relied upon as genuine. —(A. M. T. J.)

## CHAPTER XI.

## THE RĀSHṬRAKŪṬAS

(A.D. 743--974.)

THE Rāshṭrakūṭa connection with Gujārāt lasted from Śaka 665 to 894 (A.D. 743-974) that is for 231 years. The connection includes three periods: A first of sixty-five years from Śaka 665 to 730 (A.D. 743-808) when the Gujārāt ruler was dependent on the main Dakhan Rāshṭrakūṭa; a second of eighty years between Śaka 730 and 810 (A.D. 808-888) when the Gujārāt family was on the whole independent; and a third of eighty-six years Śaka 810 to 896 (A.D. 888-974) when the Dakhan Rāshṭrakūṭas again exercised direct sway over Gujārāt.

Information regarding the origin of the Rāshṭrakūṭas is imperfect. That the Gujārāt Rāshṭrakūṭas came from the Dakhan in Śaka 665 (A.D. 743) is known. It is not known who the Dakhan Rāshṭrakūṭas originally were or where or when they rose to prominence. Rāthod the dynastic name of certain Kanauj and Marwār Rāpputs represents a later form of the word Rāshṭrakūṭa. Again certain of the later inscriptions call the Rāshṭrakūṭas Rattas a word which, so far as form goes, is hardly a correct Prakrit contraction of Rāshṭrakūṭa. The Sanskritisation of tribal names is not exact. If the word Rattā was a name it might be pronounced Ratta, Ratṭa, or Raddi. This last form almost coincides with the modern Kānarese caste name Reddi, which, so far as information goes, would place the Rāshṭrakūṭas among the tribes of pre-Sanskrit southern origin.

If Rattā is the name of the dynasty *kūṭa* or *kūṭa* may be an attribute meaning prominent. The combination Rāshṭrakūṭa would then mean the chiefs or leaders as opposed to the rank and file of the Rattas. The bardic accounts of the origin of the Rāthods of Kanauj and Marwār vary greatly. According to a Jain account the Rāthods, whose name is fancifully derived from the *rahi* or spino of Indra, are connected with the Yavon through an ancestor Yavanasva prince of Pārlipur. The Rāthod genealogies trace their origin to Kuśa son of Rāma of the Solar Race. The bards of the

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHṬRAKŪṬAS  
A.D. 743-974.

Their Origin.

Their Name.

**Chapter XI.****THE****RĀSHTRAKŪTAS,**  
A.D. 743-974.

Their Name

Solar Race hold them to be descendants of Hiraṇya Kaśipu by a demon or *daitya* mother. Like the other great Rājput families the Rāthods' accounts contain no date earlier than the fifth century A.D. when (A.D. 470, S. 529) Nām Pāl is said to have conquered Kanauj slaying its monarch Appāl<sup>1</sup>. The Dakṣiṇ Rāshtrakūtas (whose earliest known date is also about A.D. 450) call themselves of the Lunar Race and of the Yadu dynasty. Such contradictions leave only one of two origins to the tribe. They were either foreigners or southerners Brahmanised and included under the all-embracing term Rājput.

**Early Dynasty,**  
A.D. 450-500.

Of the rise of the Rāshtrakūtas no trace remains. The earliest known Rāshtrakūta copperplate is of a king Abhimanyu. This plate is not dated. Still its letterſ, its style of writing, and its lion seal, older than the Gaṇḍi mark which the Rāshtrakūtas assumed along with the claim of Yadava descent, leave no doubt that this is the earliest of known Rāshtrakūta plates. Its probable date is about A.D. 450. The plate traces the descent of Abhimanyu through two generations from Mananka. The details are

Mananka,

Devanāga

Abhimanyu

The grant is dated from Manapura, perhaps Mananka's city, probably an older form of Manyakheta the modern Malkhed the capital of the later Rāshtrakūtas about sixty miles south-east of Sholapur. These details give fair ground for holding the Manankas to be a family of Rāshtrakūta rulers earlier than that which appears in the usual genealogy of the later Rāshtrakūta dynasty (A.D. 500-972).

**The**  
**Mam Dynasty,**  
A.D. 630-972.

The earliest information regarding the later Rāshtrakūtas is from a comparatively modern and therefore not quite trustworthy, Chalukya copperplate of the eleventh century found by Mr. Wathen. This plate states that Jayasimha I. the earliest Chalukya defeated the Rāshtrakūta Indrasena son of Krishna the lord of 800 elephants. The date of this battle would be about A.D. 500. If historic the reference implies that the Rāshtrakūtas were then a well-established dynasty. In most of their own plates the genealogy of the Rāshtrakūtas begins with Govinda about A.D. 680. But that Govinda was not the founder of the family is shown by Dantidurga's Elura Daśavatara inscription (about A.D. 750) which gives two earlier names Dantivarman and Indra. The founding of Rāshtrakūta power is therefore of doubtful date. Of the date of its overthrow there is no question. The overthrow came from the hand of the Western Chalukya Tailappa in Śaka 894 (A.D. 972) during the reign of the last Rāshtrakūta Kakka III. or Kakkala.

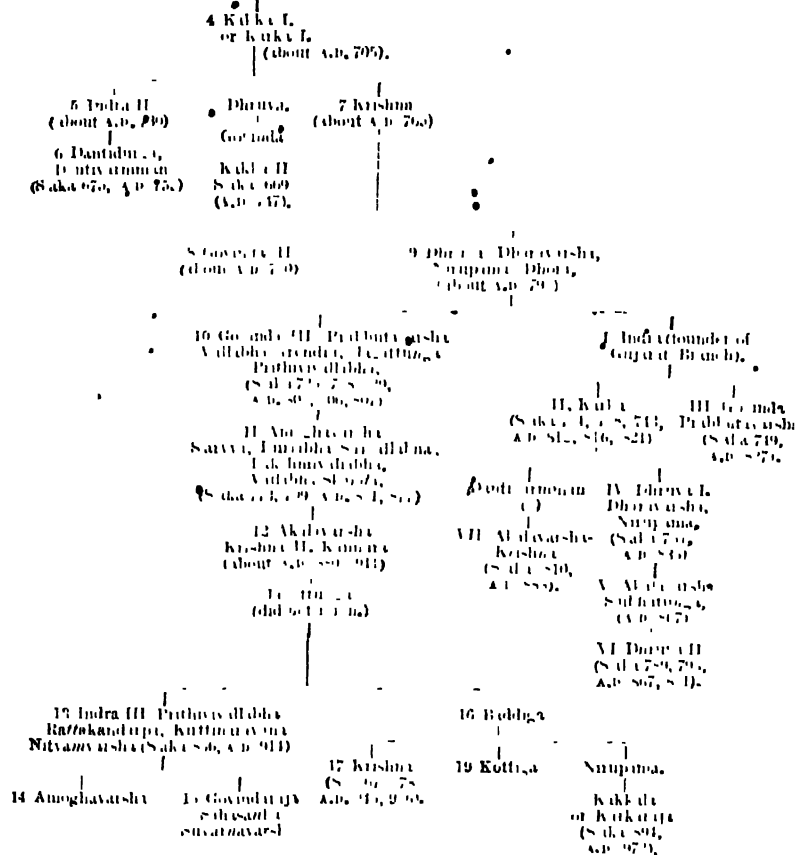
<sup>1</sup> Tod's *Annals of Rajasthan*, I. 88; II. 2.

The following is the Rāshṭrakūṭa family tree:

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHṬRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 743-974.

Rāshṭrakūṭa  
Family Tree,  
A.D. 630-972.



The earliest Gujārāt Rāshṭrakūṭa grant, Kakka's of S'aka 669 (A.D. 747), comes from Antoli-Chareli in Surat. It is written on two plates in the Valabhi style of composition and form of letters, and, as in Valabhi grants, the date is at the end. Unlike Valabhi grants the era is the S'aka era. The grant gives the following genealogy somewhat different from that of other known Rāshṭrakūṭa grants:

Kakka.  
|  
Dhruva.  
|  
Govinda.  
|  
Kakka II.  
(S'aka 669, A.D. 747)

Copperplate

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 743-974  
Kakka II.  
A.D. 747.

The plate notices that Kakka the grantor was the son of Govinda by his wife the daughter of the illustrious Nāgavarman. Kakka is further described by the feudatory title '*Samadhigatapanch-mahasabdhah*' Holder of the five great names. At the same time he is also called *Paramabhaktaraka-Maharāja* Great Lord Great King, attributes which seem to imply a claim to independent power. The grant is dated the eighth seventh of Asvayuja, Saka 669 (A.D. 747). The date is almost contemporary with the year of Dantidurga in the Samangad plate (A.D. 753). As Dantidurga was a very powerful monarch we may identify the first Kakka of this plate with Kakka I, the grandfather of Dantidurga and thus trace from Dhruva Kakka's son a branch of feudatory Rashtrakutas ruling in Malwa or Gujarāt, whose leaders were Dhruva, his son Govinda, and Govinda's son Kakka II. Further Dantidurga's grant shows that he conquered Central Gujarāt between the Mahī and the Nerbada<sup>1</sup> while his Elma Dasavatira inscription (A.D. 750) shows that he held Lāta and Malava<sup>2</sup>. Dantidurga's conquest of Central Gujarāt seems to have been signified by grants of land made by his mother in every village of the Matar division which is apparently the Matar taluka of the Kana district.<sup>3</sup> It is possible that Dantidurga gave conquered Gujarāt to his paternal cousin's son and contemporary Kakka, the grantor of the Antoli plate (A.D. 747), as the representative of a family ruling somewhere under the overlordship of the main Dakṣiṇ Rashtrakutas. Kakka's Baroda grant<sup>4</sup> (A.D. 812) supports this theory. Dantidurga died childless and was succeeded by his uncle Krishna. Of this Krishna the Baroda grant says that he assumed the government for the good of the family after having rooted out a member of the family who had taken to mischief-making. It seems probable that Kakka II, the grantor of the Antoli plate is the mischief-maker and that his mischief was, on the death of Dantidurga, the attempt to secure the succession to himself. Krishna frustrated Kakka's attempt and rooted him out so effectively that no trace of Kakka's family again appears.

Krishna and  
Govinda II.  
A.D. 765-795.

From this it follows that so far as is known, the Rashtrakūṭa conquest of Gujarāt begins with Dantidurga's conquest of Lāta, that is South Gujarāt between the Mahī and the Nerbada, from the Gujjarā king Jayabhata whose latest known date is A.D. 736 or seventeen years before the known date of Dantidurga. The Gujjars probably retired to the Rajpipla hills and further east on the confines of Malwa where they may have held a lingering sway.<sup>5</sup> No Gujarāt event of importance is recorded during the reign of Krishna (A.D. 765) or of his son Govinda II. (A.D. 780) who about

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. XI, 112.

<sup>2</sup> Bombay Arch. Sur. Separate Number, 10, 94.

<sup>3</sup> This verse which immediately follows the mention of Govinda's conquests on the banks of the Mahī and the Nerbada punningly explains the name of the Matar taluka as meaning the Mother's taluka.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. XII, 156.

<sup>5</sup> The Khandesh Rive and Dore Gujjars of Chopdā and Baver in the east, and also over most of the west, may be a remnant of these Gujjars of Broach who at this time (A.D. 740), and perhaps again about sixty years later, may have been forced up the Nerbada and Tapti into South Malwa and West Khandesh. This is doubtful as their migration is said to have taken place in the eleventh century and may have been due to pressure from the north the effect of Mahmūd Ghaznavi's invasions (A.D. 1000-1025).

A.D. 795 was superseded by his powerful younger brother Dhruva<sup>1</sup>

Dhruva was a mighty monarch whose conquests spread from South India as far north as Allahabád. During Dhruva's lifetime his son Govinda probably ruled at Mayúrakhañd or Morkhand in the Násik district and held the Ghát country and the Gujarát coast from Balsár northwards. Though according to a Kapadvanj grant Govinda had several brothers the Radhanpur (A.D. 808) and Van-Dindori (A.D. 808) grants of ~~his son~~ Govinda III state that his father, seeing Govinda's supernatural Krishna-like powers, offered him the sovereignty of the whole world. Govinda declined, saying, "The Kanthaka or coast tract already given to me is enough." Seeing that Mayúrakhañd or Morkhand in Násik was Govinda's capital, this Kanthaka appears to be the coast from Balsár northwards.

According to Gujarát Govinda's (A.D. 827-833) Kavi grant (A.D. 827), finding his power threatened by Stambha and other kings, Dhruva made the great Govinda independent during his own lifetime. This suggests that while Dhruva continued to hold the main Rashtrakúta sovereignty in the Deccan he probably invested Govinda with the sovereignty of Gujarát. This fact the Kavi grant (A.D. 827) being a Gujarát grant would rightly mention while it would not find a place in the Radhanpur (A.D. 808) and Van-Dindori (A.D. 808) grants of the main Rashtrakútas. Of the kings who opposed Govinda the chief was Stambha who may have some connection with Cambay as, during the time of the Anahilavada kings, Cambay came to be called Stambha-tirtha instead of by its old name of Cambay. According to the grant the allied chiefs were no match for Govinda. The Gujjara fled through fear, not returning even in dreams, and the Malwa king submitted. Who the Gujjara was it is hard to say. He may have belonged to some Gujjara dynasty that rose to importance after Dantidurga's conquest or the name may mean a ruler of the Gujjara country. In either case some North Gujarát ruler is meant whose conquest opened the route from Broach to Malwa. From Malwa Govinda marched to the Vindhya where the king apparently of East Malwa named Mana S'arva submitted to Govinda paying tribute. From the Vindhya Govinda returned to Gujarát passing the rains at S'rinavana,<sup>2</sup> apparently Subhon in the Amol Guluka of Broach, a favourite locality which he had ruled during his father's lifetime. After the rains Govinda went south as far as the Tungabhadra. On starting for the south Govinda handed Gujarát to his brother Indra with whom begins the Gujarát branch of the Rashtrakútas. Several plates distinctly mention that Indra was given the kingdom of the Jorl of Látá by (his brother) Govinda. Other Gujarát grants, apparently with intent to show that Indra won Gujarát and did not receive it in gift, after mentioning S'arva Amoghavarsha as the successor of Govinda (A.D. 818), state that the king (apparently of Gujarát) was S'arva's uncle Indra.

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RASHTRAKÚTAS,  
A.D. 743-974.  
Dhruva I.  
A.D. 795.

Govinda III.  
A.D. 800-808.

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. VI, 65, Journ. R. A. Soc. V, 350

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VI, 65.

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 743-974.

Indra,  
A.D. 808-812.

As Govinda III. handed Gujarāt to his brother Indra about S'aka 730 (A.D. 808) and as the grant of Indra's son Karka is dated S'aka 734 (A.D. 812) Indra's reign must have been short. Indra is styled the ruler of the entire kingdom of Latasvara,<sup>1</sup> the protector of the *mandala* of Lita given to him by his lord. An important verse in an unpublished Baroda grant states that Indra chased the lord of Gurjara who had prepared to fight, and that he honourably protected the multitude of Dakhan (Dakshināpatha) feudatories (*mahāsāmantas*) whose glory was shattered by Srivallabha (that is S'arvva or Amoghavarsha) then then-apparent of Govinda. That is, in attempting to establish himself in independent power, Indra aided certain of the Rāshtrakūṭa feudatories in an effort to shake off the overlordship of Amoghavarsha.

Indra was succeeded by his son Karka I. who is also called Suvarnavarsha and Patalamalla. Karka reversed his father's policy and loyally accepted the overlordship of the main Rāshtrakūṭas. Three grants of Karka's remain, the Baroda grant dated Saka 734 (A.D. 812) and two unpublished grants from Navsār and Surat dated respectively Saka 738 (A.D. 816) and Saka 743 (A.D. 821). Among Doctor Bhagvānlāl's collection of inscriptions bequeathed to the British Museum the Baroda grant says that Karka's *śrām* or lord, apparently Govinda III, made use of Karka's arm to protect the king of Malava against invasion by the king of Gurjara who had become puffed up by conquering the lords of Gauda and Vanga that is modern Bengal. This powerful Gurjara king who conquered countries so distant as Bengal has not been identified. He must have been ruling north of the Mahi and threatened an invasion of Malwa by way of Dohad. He may have been either a Valabhi king or one of the Bhūmal Gurjaras, who, during the decline of the Valabhis, and with the help of their allies the Chāyadās of Anahilavada whose leader at this time was Yog Rāja (A.D. 806-811), may have extended their dominion as far south as the Mahi. As the Baroda plate (A.D. 812) makes no mention of Amoghavarsha-S'arvva while the Navsār plate (A.D. 816) mentions him as the next king after Govinda III, it follows that Govinda III died and Amoghavarsha succeeded between A.D. 812 and 816 (S'aka 734 and 738). This supports Mr. Fleet's conclusion, on the authority of Amoghavarsha's Sirur inscription, that he came to the throne in Saka 736 (A.D. 814). At first Amoghavarsha was unable to make head against the opposition of some of his relations and feudatories, supported, as noted above, by Karka's father Indra. He seems to have owed his

<sup>1</sup> The kingdom is not called Lata in the copperplate but Latasvarā mandala. An unpublished Baroda grant has शास्त्रं प्रतापप्रदयतः पृथिव्यां सर्वस्य लटेश्वरमण्डलस्य. The ruler famous by glory, of the whole kingdom of the king of Lata. Other published grants record Govinda's gift of Gujarat to Indra as तदनञ्जितेश्वरमण्डलस्य. Of him (Indra) to whom the kingdom of the lord of Lata had been given by him (Govinda). Ind. Ant. XII, 162.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. XII, 160, unpublished Baroda grant. Srivallabha appears to mean Amoghavarsha who is also called Lakshmi Vallabha in an inscription at Sirur in Dhārwar (Ind. Ant. XII, 215).

subsequent success to his cousin Karka whom an unpublished Surat grant and two later grants (S' 757 and S' 789, A.D. 835 and 867) describe as establishing Amoghavarsha in his own place after conquering by the strength of his arm arrogant tributary Rāshtrakūtas who becoming firmly allied to each other had occupied provinces according to their own will.

Karka's Baroda plates (S' 731, A.D. 812) record the grant of Baroda itself called Vadapadraka in the text. Baroda is easily identified by the mention of the surrounding villages of Jambuvā-vikā the modern Jambuvada on the east, of Ankottaka the modern Akotā on the west, and of Vagghachelha perhaps the modern Vaghodia on the north. The writer of the grant is mentioned as the great minister of peace and war Nemachitya son of Durgabhatta, and the Dutaka or grantor is said to be Rajaputra that is prince. Dantivarman apparently a son of Karka. The grantee is a Brahman originally of Valabhi.

Karka's Navsari grant (S' 738, A.D. 816) is made from Kheda and records the gift of the village of Samipadraka in the country lying between the Mahi and the Nubada. The grantee is a South Indian Brāhman from Badami in Bijapur, a man of learning popularly known as Pandita Vallabharaja because he was proficient in the fourteen Vidyas. The Dutaka of this grant is a South Indian *bhatta* or military officer named the illustrious Diopamma.

Karka's Surat grant (S' 743, A.D. 821) is made from the royal camp on the bank of the Vankika apparently the Vanki creek near Balsar. It records the grant of a field in Ambapataka village near Nāgasatika (Navsari) to a Jain temple at Naganika (Navsari). The writer of the grant is the minister of war and peace Narayana son of Durgabhatta. As this is the first grant by a Gujarat Rāshtrakūta of lands south of the Tapi it may be inferred that in return for his support Amoghavarsha added to Karka's territory the portion of the North Konkan which now forms Gujarat south of the Tapi.

According to Karka's Baroda plate (S' 731, A.D. 812) Karka had a son named Dantivarman who is mentioned as the princely Dutaka of the plate. The fact of being a Dūtaka implies that Dantivarman was then of age. Next Dantivarman was a son of Karka is supported by Akalavarsha's Bagunna plate (S' 810 A.D. 888), where, though the plate is badly composed and the grammar is faulty, certain useful details are given regarding Dantivarman who is clearly mentioned as the son of Karka. Karka had another son named Dhruva, who, according to three copperplates, succeeded to the throne. But as Dantivarman's son's grant is dated S'aka 810 or seventy-six years later than the Baroda plate some error seems to have crept into the genealogy of the plate. Neither Dantivarman nor Dhruva seems to have succeeded their father as according to Govinda's Kāvī grant (A.D. 827) their uncle Govinda succeeded his brother Karka. The explanation may be that Dantivarman died during his father's lifetime, and that some years later, after a great yearning for a son,<sup>1</sup> probably in Karka's old age, a second

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪTAS,  
A.D. 743-974.  
Karka I.  
A.D. 812-821.

Dantivarman,  
Heir Apparent.

<sup>1</sup> Several copperplates give Karka the epithet *Putryatustasya* son yearning

**Chapter XI.**

THE

RASHTRAKUTAS,  
A.D. 743-974Govinda,  
A.D. 827-833.

son Dhruva was born, during whose minority, after Karka's death, Govinda appears to have temporarily occupied the throne.

This Govinda, the brother and successor of Karka, was also called Prabhūtavarsha. One plate of Govinda's Kāvī grant is dated Śaka 749 (A.D. 827). It gives no details regarding Govinda. The grant is made from Broach and records the gift of a village<sup>1</sup> to a temple of the Sun called Jayaditya in Kōmpur near Kāpikā that is Kāvī thirty miles north of Broach. The writer of the grant is Yogesvara son of Avalokita and the Dūtaka or grantor was one Bhatta Kumuda. As it contains no reference to Govinda's succession the plate favours the view that Govinda remained in power only during the minority of his nephew Dhruva.

Dhruva I,  
A.D. 835-867.

This Dhruva who is also called Nrupama and Dhāravarsha, is mentioned as ruler in a Baroda grant dated Śaka 757 (A.D. 835).<sup>2</sup> He therefore probably came to the throne either on attaining his majority in the lifetime of his uncle and predecessor Govinda or after Govinda's death. Dhruva's Baroda grant (S. 757, A.D. 835) is made from a place called Savyamangala near Khedi and records the gift of a village to a Brahman named Yōga of Badarasidhi apparently donated. The writer of the grant is mentioned as the minister of peace and war Narayana son of Durgabhata, and the Dūtaka or grantor is the illustrious Devayaga. Dhruva seems to have inherited his father's position of royal feudatory to the main Rashtrakutas. According to a copperplate dated Śaka 832 (A.D. 910) Vallabha that is Amoghavarsha, also called the illustrious great Skanda, sent an army and besieged and burned the Kanthuka that is the coast tract between Bombay and Cambay. In the course of this campaign, according to Dhruva II's Bagumra grant (S. 789, A.D. 867)<sup>3</sup> Dhruva died on the field of battle covered with wounds while routing the army of Vallabha or Amoghavarsha. This statement is supported by a Kanheri cave inscription which shows that Amoghavarsha was still alive in Śaka 799 (A.D. 877).

Akalavarsha,  
A.D. 867.

Dhruva was succeeded by his son Akalavarsha also called Subhatunga. A verse in Dhruva II's Bagumra grant (S. 789, A.D. 867) says that Akalavarsha established himself in the territory of his father, which after Dhruva's death in battle, had been overrun by the army of Vallabha and had been distracted by evil-minded followers and dependants.<sup>4</sup>

Dhruva II,  
A.D. 867.

Akalavarsha was succeeded by his son Dhruva II also called Dhāravarsha and Nrupama. Of Dhruva II two copperplates remain the published Bagumra grant dated Śaka 789<sup>5</sup> (A.D. 867) and an

<sup>1</sup> All village and boundary details have been identified by Dr. Bühler. Ind. Ant. V, 148.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. XIV, 199.

<sup>3</sup> This donor is said to have been given the name of Jyotishuka by the illustrious Govinda or apparently the uncle and predecessor of the granting king.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. XII, 179.

<sup>5</sup> Ind. Ant. XII, 184. The verse may be translated 'By whom before long was occupied the province handed down from his father which had been overrun by the forces of Vallabha and distracted by numbers of evil-minded followers.'

<sup>6</sup> Ind. Ant. XII, 179.

unpublished Baroda grant dated Śaka 793 (A.D. 871)<sup>1</sup>. Both plates record that Dhruva crushed certain intrigues among his relatives or *bāndhavaiga*, and established himself firmly on the throne. Regarding the troubles at the beginning of his reign the Bagumrā plate states that, on one side Vallabha the head of the Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭas was still against him, on another side Dhruva had to face an army of Gurjjaras instigated by a member of his own family<sup>2</sup>, thirdly he was opposed by certain of his relatives or *bāndhavaig*; and lastly he had to contend against the intrigues of a younger brother or *anaga*. It further appears from Dhruva II's Bagumrā plate that he checked an invader by a Mihna king with a powerful army. This Mihna king was probably a chief of the Kathavada Mehr- who on the downfall of the Vallabhis spread their power across Gujjarāt. In all these troubles the Bagumrā grant notes that Dhruva was aided by a younger brother named Govindarāja. This Govindarāja is mentioned as appointed by Dhruva the Dūtaka of the grant.

Dhruva II's Bagumrā (A.D. 897) grant was made at Bhugn-Kachchha or Broach after bathing in the Narbada. It records the gift to a Brahman of the village of Parahanaka probably the village of Palsāna<sup>3</sup> twelve miles south-east of Bagumrā in the Balesar subdivision of the Gaikwā's territory of Surat and Navsār. Dhruva's Baroda grant (A.D. 871) was also made at Broach. It is a grant to the god Kapalesvara Mahadeva of the village Konyalli and Nakkabhaga both mentioned as close to the south bank of the Mahi. The facts that the Bagumrā grant (A.D. 897) transfers a village so far south as Balesar near Navsār and that four years later the Baroda grant (A.D. 871) mentions that Dhruva's territory lay between Broach and the Mahi seem to prove that between A.D. 897 and 871 the portion of Dhruva's kingdom south of Broach passed back into the hands of the main Rāshtrakūṭas.

The next and last known Gujjarāt Rāshtrakūṭa king is Akalavarsha-Kṛṣṇa son of Dantivarman. A grant of this king has been found in Bagumrā dated Śaka 810 (A.D. 888)<sup>4</sup>. The composition of the grant is so bad and the genealogical verses after Karka are so confused that it seems unsafe to accept any of

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS  
A.D. 743-974.  
Dhruva II.  
A.D. 867.

Akalavarsha-  
Kṛṣṇa,  
A.D. 888.

<sup>1</sup> This plate was in Dr. Bhugwīlād's possession. It is among the plates bequeathed to the British Museum. Dr. Bhāndarkar (B. B. R. A. S. JI XVIII, 255) mentions another unpublished grant of S. 789 (A.D. 867) made by Dhruva's brother Dantivarman.

<sup>2</sup> These may be either the Gurjjaras between Māwa and Gujrat, or the Bhannal Gurjjaras north of the Mahi. It is also possible that they may be Chavadas as in this passage the term Gurjjaras does not refer to the tribe but to the country. [There seems little reason to doubt the reference as to the Gurjjaras of Bhannal or Srimal, probably passing through their underlords the Chavadas of Anahilavada whose king in A.D. 865 was the warlike Kshem Rāja (A.D. 841-866). Census and other recent information establish almost with certainty that the Chavadas or Chavotakas are of the Gurjjaras race.]

<sup>3</sup> The identification is not satisfactory. Except the Brahman settlement of Mottaka, apparently the well known Motāla Brahman settlement of Māwa, which is mentioned as situated on the west though it is on the north-east, none of the boundary villages can be identified in the neighbourhood of Palsāna. In spite of this the name Palsāna an<sup>1</sup> its close vicinity to Bagumrā where the grant was found make this identification probable.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII, 65.

**Chapter XI.**  
THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 733-974.

Akalavarsha-  
Krishna,  
A.D. 888.

Mun Loo  
Restored,  
A.D. 888-974.

Krishna  
Akalavarsha,  
A.D. 888-914.

its details except its date which is clearly Śaka 810 (A.D. 888). It seems also improbable that the son of Dantivarman who flourished in Śaka 734 (A.D. 812) could be reigning in Śaka 810 (A.D. 888) seventy-six years later. Still the sixty-three years' reign of the contemporary Mānyakheta Rāshtrakūṭa Amoghavarsha (Ś. 736-799, A.D. 814-877) shows that this is not impossible.

The grant which is made from Anklesvar near Broach records the gift to two Brāhmins of the village of Kavithasādli the modern Kosād four miles north-east of Surat, described as situated in the Varāvi (the modern Varay two miles north of Suraj) sub-division of 116 villages in the province of Konkan. The grant is said to have been written by the peace and war minister the illustrious Jajjaka son of Kaluka, the Dutakā being the head officer (*mohattama-saradlikari*) the Brahman Ollāvaka.<sup>1</sup> This grant seems to imply the recovery by the local dynasty of some portion of the disputed area to the south of the Tapti. This recovery must have been a passing success. After Śaka 810 (A.D. 888) nothing is known of the Gujarat Rāshtrakūṭas. And the re-establishment of the power of the Rāshtrakūṭas of Mānyakheta of the main line in south Gujarāt in Śaka 836 (A.D. 914) is proved by two copperplates found in Navsārī which record the grant of villages near Navsārī, in what the text calls the Lata country, by king Indra Nityanvarsha son of Jagattunga and grandson of Krishna Akalavarsha.<sup>2</sup>

That Amoghavarsha's long reign lasted till Śaka 799 (A.D. 877) is clear from the Kanheri cave inscription already referred to. His reign can hardly have lasted much longer; about Śaka 800 (A.D. 878) may be taken to be its end.

Amoghavarsha was succeeded by his son Krishna also called Akalavarsha, both his names being the same as those of the Gujarāt Rāshtrakūṭa king of the same time (A.D. 888).<sup>3</sup> It has been noted above that, in consequence of the attempt of Karka's son Dhruva I. (A.D. 835-897) to establish his independence, Amoghavarsha's relations with the Gujarat Rāshtrakūṭas became extremely hostile and probably continued hostile till his death (A.D. 877). That Amoghavarsha's son Krishna kept up the hostilities is shown by Indra's two Navsārī plates of Śaka 836 (A.D. 914) which mention his grandfather Krishna fighting with the roaring Gurjjara.<sup>4</sup> Regarding this fight the late Rāshtrakūṭa Karka plate (Ś. 891, A.D. 973) further says that Krishna's enemies frightened by his exploits abandoned Khetaka, that is Khedā, with its Mandala and its forepart that is the surrounding country. Probably this roaring Gurjjara or king of Gujarāt, was a northern ally called in by some Rāshtrakūṭa of the

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. XIII. 65-69.

<sup>2</sup> These were among Dr. Bhagvanlal's copperplates, and seem to be the same as the two grants published by Dr. Bhandarkar in B. B. R. A. S. JI. XVIII. 253.

<sup>3</sup> See above page 127.

<sup>4</sup> The text is: उद्यदीधितिरत्तजालजटिलंव्याकृष्टमादग्धनुः। कुह्नोपरि वैरिवीरिशिर-  
साभेय विमुक्ताः शराः। धारामारिणी मेन्द्रचापवलये यस्येत्य मन्दागमे गर्ज्जरुर्ज्जर-  
सगरव्यतिकं जीर्णोजनः शंसति.

Gujarāt branch, perhaps by Krishna's namesake the donor of the A.D. 888 Bagumrā grant. The Dakhan Krishna seems to have triumphed over his Gujarāt namesake as henceforward South Gujarāt or Lāṭa was permanently included in the territory of the Dakhan Rāshtrakūtas.<sup>1</sup>

At this time (A.D. 910) a grant from Kapadvanj dated S. 832 (A.D. 910) and published in Ep. Ind. I 52ff. states that a *mahāsāmanta* or noble of Krishna Akālavarsha's named Prachanda, with his *daṇḍandīyaka* Chandragupta, was in charge of a sub-division of 750 villages in the Kheda district at Harshapura apparently Harsol near Parāntij. The grant gives the name of Prachanda's family as Brāhma-vaka (?) and states that the family gained its fortune or Lakshmi by the prowess of the feet of Akālavarsha, showing that the members of the family drew their authority from Akālavarsha. The grant mentions four of Prachanda's ancestors, all of whom have non-Gujarāt Kānareso-looking names. Though not independent rulers Prachanda's ancestors seem to have been high Rāshtrakūta officers. The first is called Suddha-kkumbadi, the second his son Degadi, the third Degadi's son Rājahansa, the fourth Rājahansa's son Dhavalappa the father of Prachanda and Akkuka. The plate describes Rājahansa as bringing back to his house its flying fortune as if he had regained lost authority. The plate describes Dhavalappa as killing the enemy in a moment and then giving to his lord the Maṇḍala or kingdom which the combined enemy, desirous of glory, had taken. This apparently refers to Akālavarsha's enemies abandoning Khetaka with its Maṇḍala as mentioned in the late Rāshtrakūta Kardā plate (A.D. 973). Dhavalappa is probably Akālavarsha's general who fought and defeated the roaring Gurjjara, a success which may have led to Dhavalappa being placed in military charge of Gujarāt.<sup>2</sup> The Kapadvanj (A.D. 910) grant describes Dhavalappa's son Prachanda with the feudatory title 'Who has obtained the five great words.' Dr. Bhagvānlāl believed Prachanda to be a mere epithet of Akkuka, and took Chandragupta to be another name of the same person, but the published text gives the facts as above stated. The grantee is a Brāhmaṇ and the grant is of the village of Vyāghraśa, perhaps Vagrā in Broach.<sup>3</sup> The plate describes Akkuka as gaining glory fighting in the battle field. A rather unintelligible verse follows implying that at this time the Sella-Vidyādhara, apparently the North Konkan Silāhāras (who traced their lineage from the Vidyādhara) also helped Akālavarsha against his enemies,<sup>4</sup> probably by driving them from South Gujarāt. The Silāhāra king at this time would be Jhanjha (A.D. 916).

<sup>1</sup> It will be noted that in Saka 836 (A.D. 914) Krishna's grandson Indra re-grants 400 ~~named~~ villages many of which were perhaps resumed at this time by Krishna.

<sup>2</sup> It follows that none of Dhavalappa's three ancestors had any connection with Gujarāt.

<sup>3</sup> Dr. Hultsch (Ep. Ind. I. 52) identifies Vyāghraśa with Vaghās, north-east of Kapadvanj. Dr. Bhagvānlāl's account of the grant was based on an impression sent to him by the Mānlatdar of Kapadvanj.

<sup>4</sup> The text is: सेह विद्याधरेणापि सेह [हेल्ने] हलित तपानि पाणिना निहत्या शत्रून् समधे [रे] यशमाकलमलंकृतं. Dr. Hultsch takes the Sella-Vidyādhara here named to be another brother of Prachanda and Akkuka. The verse is corrupt.

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪTAS,  
A.D. 743-974.  
Krishna  
Akālavarsha,  
A.D. 888-914.

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 743-974.

Indra  
Nityamvarsha,  
A.D. 914.

Kṛishna or Akālavārsha had a son named Jagattuṅga who does not appear to have come to the throne. Other plates show that he went to Chedi the modern Bundelkhand and remained there during his father's lifetime. By Lakshmi the daughter of the king of Chedi, Jagattuṅga had a son named Indra also called Nityamvarsha Rāṣṭrikandarpa. In both of Indra's Navsārī copperplates (A.D. 914) Indra is mentioned as *Pādānūlhyata*, Falling at the feet of, that is successor of, not his father but his grandfather Akālavārsha.<sup>1</sup> One historical attribute of Indra in both the plates is that "he uprooted in a moment the Mehr,"<sup>2</sup> apparently referring to some contemporary Mehr king of North Kathiāwār. Both the Navsārī plates of Śaka 836 (A.D. 914) note that the grants were made under peculiar conditions. The plates say that the donor Indra Nityamvarsha, with his capital at Manyakheta, had come to a place named Kurundaka for the *paṭṭabandha* or investiture festival. It is curious that though Manyakheta is mentioned as the capital the king is described as having come to Kurundaka for the investiture. Kurundaka was apparently not a large town as the plates mention that it was given in grant.<sup>3</sup> At his investiture Indra made great gifts. He weighed himself against gold or silver, and before leaving the scales he gave away Kurundaka and other places, twenty and a half lākhs of dramma coins, and 400 villages previously granted but taken back by intervening kings. These details have an air of exaggeration. At the same time gifts of coins by lākhs are not improbable by so mighty a king as Indra and as to the villages the bulk of them had already been alienated. The fact of lavish grants is supported by the finding of these two plates of the same date recording grants of two different villages made on the same occasion, the language being the same, and also by a verso in the late Rāshtrakūṭa Kādā plate (S. 894, A.D. 972) where Indra is described as making numerous grants on copperplates and building many temples of Śiva.<sup>4</sup> The date of Indra's grants (S. 836, A.D. 914) is the date of his investiture and accession. This is probable as the latest known date of his grandfather Kṛishna is Śaka 833<sup>5</sup> (A.D. 911) and we know that Indra's father Jagattuṅga did not reign.<sup>6</sup> Umvarā and Tenna, the villages granted in the two investiture plates, are described as situated near Kammanijja the modern Kāmlej in the Lāṭa province. They are probably the modern villages of Umra near Sāyan four miles west of Kāmlej, and of Tenna immediately to the west of Bārdoli, which last is mentioned under the form Vāradapallikā as the eastern boundary village. Dhruva II.'s Bagumra plate (S. 789, A.D. 867) mentions Tenna as granted

<sup>1</sup> The Khārepatān grant makes this clear by passing over Indra's father Jagattuṅga in the genealogy and entering Indra as the grandson and successor of Akālavārsha. Jour. B. B. R. A. Soc. I. 217.

<sup>2</sup> The text has *Helonmūlitamerund* to chime with the poetical allusion and figure about Indra. By Meru no doubt Meira or Mehr is meant.

<sup>3</sup> Kurundaka may be the village of Kurund in the Thāna zilla seven miles north-east of Bhiwandi. It was a village given away in grant and cannot therefore be any large town. [Kurundvād at the holy meeting of the Kṛishna and Pañchganga in the Southern Maratha Country close to Narsoba's Vadi seems a more likely place for an investiture.] <sup>4</sup> J. R. A. S. III. 94. <sup>5</sup> Ind. Ant. XI. 109. <sup>6</sup> See above.

by Dhruva I. to a Bráhmaṇa named Dhoddi the father of the Nennapa who is the grantee of Dhruva II.'s A.D. 867 Bagumrá grant, whose son Siddhabhatta is the grantee of Indra's A.D. 914 grant.<sup>1</sup> The re-granting of so many villages points to the re-establishment of the main Rāshtrakúta power and the disappearance of the Gujarát branch of the Rāshtrakútas.<sup>2</sup>

Though no materials remain for fixing how long after A.D. 914 Gujarát belonged to the Mānyakheta Rāshtrakútas, they probably continued to hold it till their destruction in Śaka 894 (A.D. 972) by the Western Chólukya king Tailappa. This is the more likely as inscriptions show that till then the neighbours of Gujarát, the North Konkāṇa Śilahāras, acknowledged Rāshtrakúta supremacy.

It is therefore probable that Gujarát passed to the conquering Tailappa as part of the Rāshtrakúta kingdom. Further, as noted below in Part II. Chapter II., it seems reasonable to suppose that about Śaka 900 (A.D. 978) Tailappa entrusted Gujarát to his general Bārappa or Dvārappa, who fought with the Solanki Mularāja of Anahlavādā (A.D. 961-997).

[The text does not carry the question of the origin of the Rāshtrakútas beyond the point that, about the middle of the fifth century A.D., two tribes bearing the closely associated names Rāthod and Rāṭṭa, the leaders of both of which are known in Sanskrit as Rāshtrakútas, appeared the first in Upper India the second in the Bombay Kanāṭak, and that the traditions of both tribes seem to show they were either southerners or foreigners Bráhmaṇised and included under the all embracing term Rajput. The Sanskrit form Rāshtrakúta may mean either leaders of the Rāshtra tribe or heads of the territorial division named *rāshtra*. The closely related forms Rāshtrapati and Gramakūta occur above page 82 in Valabhi inscriptions. And Mr. Fleet (Kannarese Dynasties, 32) notices that Rāshtrakūta is used in the inscriptions of many dynasties as a title equivalent to Rāshtrapati. Such a title might readily become a family name like that of the Sili Jats of the Panjab or the Mudhi surnames Patel, Nadkarni, and Desai. It may be noted that one of the Marwār traditions (Rajputana Gazetteer, III. 216) connects the word Rāthod with Rāshtra country making the original form Rāshtravara or World-blessing and referring to an early tribal guardian Rāshtra-yaṇi or the World-Falcon. It is therefore possible that the origin of both forms of the name, of Rāthod as well as of Rāshtrakúta, is the title ruler of a district. At the same time the case of the southern Rāshtrakútas the balance of evidence is in support of a tribal origin of the name. The Rāṭṭas of Saundatti in Belgaum, apparently with justice, claim descent from the former Rāshtrakúta rulers (Belgaum Gazetteer, 375). Further that the Rāshtrakútas considered themselves to belong to the Rāṭṭa tribe is shown by Indra Nityanvarsha (A.D. 914)

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKÚTAS,  
A.D. 743-974.

Indra  
Nityanvarsha,  
A.D. 914.

<sup>1</sup> Though the name of the *gotra* *Lakshmanavasa* and *Lakshayanas* differs slightly in the two grants, the identity of the name Nennapa the son of Dhoddi and the father of Siddhabhatta the A.D. 914 grantee, suggests that the original grant of the village of Tenna by Dhruva I. (A.D. 795) had been cancelled in the interval and in A.D. 914 was renewed by king Indra Nityanvarsha. [Dr. Bhandarkar reads the name in Indra's Navsārī grant (A.D. 914) as Vennapa.]

<sup>2</sup> That in A.D. 915 the Dakhan Rāshtrakútas held Gujarát as far north as Cambay is supported by the Arab traveller Al Masūdī who (P. 100, s. d'Or, I. 253-254) speaks of Cambay, when he visited it, as a flourishing town ruled by Bania the deputy of the Balharā lord of Mankir. The country along the gulf of Cambay was a succession of gardens villages fields and woods with date-palm and other groves alive with peacocks and parrots.

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 743-974.

calling himself Rāṭṭakandarpa the Love of the Rāṭṭas. The result is thus in agreement with the view accepted in the text that Rāshtrakūṭa means leaders of the Rāṭṭa tribe, the form Rāshṭrā being perhaps chosen because the leaders held the position of Rāshtrakūṭas or District Headmen. According to Dr. Bhandarkar (Deccan History, 9) the tribal name Rāṭṭa or Rāshṭra enters into the still more famous Dakhan tribal name Mahārāṭha or Mahrāṭta. So far as present information goes both the Rāṭṭas and the Great Rāṭṭas are to be traced to the Rāstikas mentioned in number five of Asoka's (B.C. 245) Gindār edicts among the Aparantas or westerners along with the Pētēnikas or people of Paithan about forty miles north-east of Ahmadnagar (Kolhapur Gazetteer, 82). Whether the Rāstika of the edicts is like Pētēnika a purely local name and if so why a portion of the north Dakhan should be especially known as the country or Rāshṭra are points that must remain open.<sup>1</sup>

The explanation that Kūṭa the second half of Rāshtrakūṭa, means chief, has been accepted in the text. This is probably correct. At the same time the rival theory deserves notice that the name Rāshtrakūṭa is formed from two tribal names Kūṭa representing the early widespread tribe allied to the Gonds known as Koṭṭas and Koṭis in the Central Provinces North Konkan and Delhi (Thana Gazetteer, XII. Part II. 414). In support of this view it may be noticed that Abhimanyu's fifth century Rāshtrakūṭa inscription (J. Bo. Br. R. As. XVI. 92) refers to the Koṭṭas though as enemies not allies of the Rāshtrakūṭas. At the same time certain details in Abhimanyu's grant favour an early Rāshtrakūṭa settlement in the Central Provinces, the probable head-quarters of the Koṭṭas. The grant is dated from Mānapura and is made to Dakṣiṇa Siva of Pethapaṅgaraka which may be the Great Siva shrine in the Mahādev hills in Hoshangabad, as this shrine is under the management of a petty chief of a place called Pagara, and as Mānpur in the Vindhya hills is not far off. Against the tribal origin of the word Kūṭa is to be set the fact that the northern Rāṭṭas are also called Rāshtrakūṭas though any connection between them and the Koṭṭa tribe seems unlikely.

The question remains were the southern Rāṭṭas or Rāshtrakūṭas connected with the northern Rāstikas or Rāshtrakūṭas. If so what was the nature of the connection and to what date does it belong. The fact that, while the later southern Rāshtrakūṭas

<sup>1</sup> It seems doubtful whether the Kānareo Rāṭṭas the Belgannu Rāṭṭas and the Telugu Reddis could have been Rāstikas or heads in the north Dakhan. The widespread Reddis trace their origin (Balfour's Encyclopedia of India, III. 369) to Rājamandri about thirty miles from the mouth of the Godavari. A tradition of a northern origin remains among some of the Reddis. The Tinnivelly Reddis (Madras J. Lat. and Science, 1897-98, page 136 note 96) call themselves Audh Reddis and assert that Ondh is the native country of their tribe. The late Sir George Campbell (J. R. As. Soc. XXXV. Part II. 129) has recorded the notable fact that the fine handsome Reddis of the north of the Kānara country are like the Jats. With this personal resemblance may be compared the Reddis' curious form of polyandry (Balfour's Encyclopedia, III. 340) in accordance with which the wife of the child-husband bears children to the adult males of the family, a practice which received theories (compare Mr. Kierpatrick in Indian Ant. VII. 86 and Dr. Muir in Ditto VI. 315) would associate with the northern or Skythian conquerors of Upper India during the early centuries of the Christian era. In support of a northern Rāṭa element later than Asoka's Rāstikas the following points may be noted. That the Khaharāṭa or Khaharāṭa tribe to which the great northern conqueror Nahapāna (A.D. 180) belonged should disappear from the Dakhan seems unlikely. Karahāṭa the Mahābhārata name (As. Res. XV. 47, quoted in Wilson's Works VI. 178) for Karād on the Krishna suggests that Nahapāna's conquest included Sātara and that the name of the holy place on the Krishna was altered to give it a resemblance to the name of the conqueror's tribe. That, perhaps after their overthrow by Gautamiputra Śātakarni (A.D. 140), the Khaharāṭas may have established a local centre at Kurandwad at the meeting of the Krishna and the Panchganga may be the explanation why in A.D. 914, centuries after Mānyakheta or Mālikhet had become their capital, the Rāshtrakūṭa Indra should proceed for investiture to Kurandaka, which, though this is doubtful, may be Kurandwad. The parallel case of the Khaharāṭas' associates the Pālavas, who passed across the southern Dakhan and by intermarriage have in the Pāllavas assumed the characteristics of a southern tribe, give a probability to the existence of a northern Khaharāṭa or Rāṭa element in the southern Rāshtrakūṭas and Rāṭṭas which the facts at present available would not otherwise justify.

## Chapter XL

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS  
A.D. 743-974.

call themselves Yādavas of the Lunar-race, the northerners claim descent either from Kuśa the son of Rāma or from Hiranyakaśipu would seem to prove no connection did not Abhimanyu's fifth century grant show that in his time the southern Rāshtrakūṭas had not begun to claim Yādava descent. That the Mārwar Rāthod's trace their name to the *rāth* or spine of India (Tod's Annals, II. 2), and in a closely similar fashion the Rāth or Rattu Jāts of the Sutlej (Ibbetson's 1881 Census, page 236) explain their name as stronghanded, and the Rāṭṭas of Bijapur (Bijapur Stat. Account, 145) trace their name to the Kānarese *raṭṭa* right arm, may imply no closer connection than the common attempt to find a meaning for the name Rāṭṭa in a suitable word of similar sound. A legend preserved in the Rajputana Gazetteer (III. 246), but not noted by Tod, tells how Sevji, after (A.D. 1139) the Musalmāns drove his father Jaichand out of Kanauj (Tod's Annals, I. 88) took Khergal from the Gohlots and went to the Karnatak where the Rāthod's had ruled before they came to Kanauj. From the Karnatak Sevji brought the image of the Rāhṭoḍ Rāshtra'yena which is now in the temple of Nāgāna in Miavādi. The account quoted in the text from Tod (Annals, I. 88) that the Rāthod's who rose to power in Mārwar in the thirteenth century belonged to a royal family who had held Kanauj since the fifth century has not stood the test of recent inquiry. It is now known that about A.D. 470 Kanauj was in the hands of the Guptas. That about A.D. 600, according to the contemporary Śrīharshacharita it was ruled by the Maukhari Grahavarman who was put to death by a Malwa chief and was succeeded by Harsha. About A.D. 750, according to the Rajatarangini, Kanauj was held by Yaśovarman, and, in the next century, as inscriptions prove by the family of Bhaja. It was not till about A.D. 1050 that Kanauj was occupied by the Gūhadavala or Gaharwala family from whom the Rāthod's of Mārwar claim descent.<sup>1</sup> If the legendary connection of the Mārwar Rāthod's with Kanauj must be dismissed can the Mārwar Rāthod's be a branch of the southern Rāshtrakūṭas who like the Marathās some 800 years later spread conquering northwards? Such a northern settlement of the southern Rāshtrakūṭas might be a consequence of the victories of the great Rāshtrakūṭa Dhruva who according to received opinions about A.D. 790 conquered as far north as Allahabad. It is beyond question that southerners or Karpāṭas were settled in North India between the seventh and the eleventh centuries. Still the latest information makes it improbable that Dhruva's conquests extended further north than Gujarat. Nor has any special connection been traced between the southern Rāshtrakūṭas and the middle-age settlements of southerners or Karpāṭas in North India.<sup>2</sup> Must therefore the North Indian tribe of Rāthod's be admitted to have its origin

<sup>1</sup> The eleventh century Kanauj Gūhadavala's are now represented by the Bundelas who about A.D. 1200 overthrew the Chāndels in Bundelkhand. These Gūhadavals or Bundelas trace their origin to Benares or Kāsi and may, as Hearn, op. cit. p. 10, have been related to the Palas of that city who several times later carried with the Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭas. The Gūhadavals seem to have nothing to do with the district of Garhwal (Gadwal) in the Himalayas — (A. M. T. J.)

<sup>2</sup> The Vatsaraja defeated by Dhruva who has hitherto been identified with the Vatsa king of Kosambi is more likely to prove to be a Bachhika of the Gurjara's of Bhīmaḍ or Sīmad in north Gujarat. Among references to southern settlements in North India between A.D. 600 and 1000 may be noted the tradition (Wilson's Indian Casts, II. 143) of a Dravidian strain in the Kashmir Brahmins and in the eleventh century also in Kashmir (Rajatarangini, VI. 337) the presence of a S'atavahana dynasty bearing the same name as the early S'atavahana's of Paithan near Ahmadnagar. Other instances which might seem more directly associated with the southern Rāshtrakūṭas (A.D. 500-970) are the Kārnāṭaka rulers of Nepāl beginning with A.D. 899 (Ind. Ant. VII. 91) and the natives of Kārnāṭaka in Mahmūd Ghaznavi's army (A.D. 1000-1025) who (Sachau's Alberuni, I. 173 II. 167) used the Kārnāṭa alphabet. The presence of Kārnāṭa rulers in Nepāl in the ninth and tenth centuries remains a puzzle. But the use of the term Kārnāṭa for Chalukyas of Kalyāṇ in A.D. 1000 (Ep. Ind. I. 230) suggests that the Nepāl chiefs were Chalukyas rather than Rāshtrakūṭas while Mahmūd Ghaznavi's Kārnāṭas may naturally be traced to the mercenary remains of Kārnāṭa's army of Kalyāṇ Chalukyas whose general Bīrappa was slain (Ras Mela, I. 51) and his followers dispersed in north Gujarat by Mīla Raja Solanki at the close of the tenth century. The only recorded connection of the southern Rāshtrakūṭas with Northern India during the middle ages (A.D. 750-1100) are their intermarriages

सिंहपुर - मुक्ति  
सिंहपुर - मुक्ति  
सिंहपुर - मुक्ति

सिंहपुर

## Chapter XI.

THE  
RĀSHTRAKŪṬAS,  
A.D. 743-974.

as late as the twelfth century, and further is the North Indian name *Rāthod* not tribal but derived from the title head of a district. Several considerations make both of these solutions unlikely if not impossible. First there is the remarkably widespread existence of the name *Rāthor*, *Ratha*, or *Ratti*, and endless variations of these names, in almost all parts of the Panjāb, among all castes from the Brahman to the Baluch, among all religions, Musalmān, Sikhi, Jain, and Brahmanic.<sup>1</sup> No doubt the practice of a waning tribe adopting the name of a waxing tribe has always been common. No doubt also the fame of the name during the last 600 years must have tempted other classes to style themselves *Rāthod*. Still it is to be noted first that (Ibbetson, page 240) the *Rāthods* of the Panjāb though widespread are not numerous and second that the list of sub-caste names has this merit that with a few exceptions the holders of the sub-name are not known by it but by some general or craft name. The evidence of these sub-caste or tribal names seems therefore to support the view that some very large section of the Panjāb population represent an important tribe or nation of whom the least mixed remnant are perhaps the *Rāthas* or lower class *Rajputs* of Kangra and Chamba (Ibbetson, pages 219 and 251) and from some connection with whom the *Mārwar Rāthods* of the thirteenth century may have taken their name. Among other traces of northern *Rāshtras* in the middle ages may be mentioned the twelfth and thirteenth century *Rāshtrakūṭas* of Bajaur in the North-West Provinces (Kellhorn in *Epigraphia Indica*, I 61 and 63) and (A.D. 1150) in the *Kumarapāla-Charitra* (Tod's *Western India*, 183) the mention of *Rāshtradeva* near the Sawlak hills. Among earlier and more doubtful references are the *Aratris* whom probably correctly (since at that time A.D. 247 one main Roman trade route to Central Asia passed up the Indus) the author of the *Periplus* (McGrindle, 120) places between *Abhuria* or lower Sindh and *Arachosia* or south-east Afghanistan that is in north Sindh or south Panjāb. Another earlier and still more doubtful reference is *Pliny's* (A.D. 77) *Orature* (*Hist. Nat.* VI 23) whom *Vivien de St. Martin* (*Geog. Grecque et Latine de l'Inde*, 203) identifies with the *Rāthods*. The fact that while claiming descent from *Rama* the *Mārwar Rāthods* (Tod's *Annals*, II, 2 and 5) preserved the legend that their founder was *Vayanaśva* from the northern city of *Patalipur* supports the view that the tribe to which they belonged was of non-Indian or Central Asian origin, and that this is the tribe of whom traces remain in the *Rāth* *Rajputs* of the Kangra hill country and less purely in the widely spread *Rāts*, *Rattas*, and *Ratis* of the Panjāb plains. The examples among Panjāb caste names *Rora* for *Arona* (Ibbetson's 1851 Census, page 297), *Her* for *Alir* (*Ibid.*, 230-275), and *Heri* for *Aliri* (*Ibid.*, 310) suggest that the Panjāb *Rāthors* or *Rattas* may be the ancient *Arattas* whom the *Mahābhārata* (Chap. VII Verso 14, *J. Bl. Soc.* VI. Pt. I 387 and *Vivien de St. Martin Geog. Grecque et Latine de l'Inde*, 119) ranks with *Prasthalis*, *Madrās*, and *Gandhuras*, Panjāb and frontier tribes, whose identification with the *Babikas* (*Karmapuran*, 2063ff.) raises the probability of a common Central Asian origin. Remembering that the evidence (*Kshatrapa Chapter*, pages 22 and 33) favours the view that the *Kshatrapa* family who ruled the Panjāb between B.C. 70 and A.D. 78 were of the same tribe as *Nahapana*, and also that *Shahi* is so favourite a prefix in *Samudra Gupta's* (A.D. 380) list of *Kushān* tribes, the suggestion may be offered that *Kshaharata* is the earlier form of *Shāharatta* and is the tribe of foreigners afterwards known in the Panjāb as *Arattas* and of which traces survive in the present widespread tribal names *Rāta*, *Ratta*, *Ratha*, and *Rāthor*.]

with the *Prāṇas* of Benares (A.D. 850-1000) mentioned above (Page 132 Note 1), and, between A.D. 880 and 950, with the *Kalachuris* of Tripura near Jabalpur (Cunningham's *Arch. Survey Report* for 1891, IX. 40)

<sup>1</sup> The details compiled from the excellent index and tables in the Panjāb Census yield the following leading groups: 37 sub-castes named *Rāthor*, *Rātor*, and other close variants; 53 *Rāth* and *R* this and 2 *Rattas*, 50 *Rātas*, *Ratis*, or other close variants. Compare *Rāthi* the name of the people of Mount Abu (*Rajputana Gazetteer*, III, 189) and the *Rāth* tract in the north-west of Alwar (*Ibid.*, 167).

## CHAPTER XII.

## THE MIHIRAS OR MERS.

A.D. 470-900.

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470-900.

THAT the Guptas held sway in Kāthiāváda till the time of Skandagupta (A.D. 451-470) is proved by the fact that his Sorath Viceroy is mentioned in Skandagupta's inscription on the Girnár rock. After Skandagupta under the next known Gupta king Budhagupta (Gupta 165-180, A.D. 451-499) no trace remains of Gupta sovereignty in Sorath. It is known that Budhagupta was a weak king and that the Gupta kingdom had already entered on its decline and lost its outlying provinces. Who held Suráshtra and Gujarát during the period of Gupta decline until the arrival and settlement of Bhaskarika in A.D. 514 (Gupta 195) is not determined. Still there is reason to believe that during or shortly after the time of Budhagupta some other race or dynasty overthrew the Gupta Viceroy of these provinces and took them from the Guptas. These powerful conquerors seem to be the tribe of Matrakas mentioned in Valabhi copperplates as people who had settled in Kāthiāváda and established a *mandala* or kingdom. Though these Matrakas are mentioned in no other records from Suráshtra there seems reason to identify the Matrakas with the Mihiras the well-known tribe of Mhers or Mers. In Sanskrit both *mītra* and *mihira* are names of the sun, and it would be quite in agreement with the practise of Sanskrit writers to use derivatives of the one for those of the other. These Mhers or Mers are still found in Kāthiāváda settled round the Barda hills while the Porbandar chiefs who are known as Jethvās are recognized as the head of the tribe. The name Jethvā is not a tribal but a family name, being taken from the proper or personal name of the ancestor of the modern chiefs. As the Porbandar chiefs are called the kings of the Mhers they probably belong to the same tribe, though, being chiefs, they try, like other ruling families, to rank higher than their tribe tracing their origin from Hanúmán. Though the Jethvās appear to have been long ashamed to acknowledge themselves to belong to the Mher tribe the founders of minor Mher kingdoms called themselves Mher kings. The Porbandar chiefs have a tradition tracing their dynasty to Makaradhvaja son of Hanúmán, and there are some Purānik legends attached to the tradition. The historical kernel of the tradition appears to be that the Mhers or Jethvās had a *makara* or fish as their flag or symbol. One of the mythical stories of Makaradhvaja is that he fought with Mayúradhvaja. Whatever coating of fable may have overlaid the story, it contains a grain of history. Mayúradhvaja stands for the Guptas whose chief symbol was a peacock *mayūra*, and with them Makaradhvaja that is the people with the fish-symbol that is

## Chapter XII.

THE MHERS,  
A.D. 470-900.

the Mhers had a fight. This fight is probably the historical contest in which the Mhers fought with and overthrew the Gupta Viceroy of Káthiáváda.

The Káthiáváda Mhers are a peculiar tribe whose language dress and appearance mark them as foreign settlers from Upper India. Like the Málavas, Játs, Gurjaras, and Pahlavas, the Mhers seem to have passed through the Punjáb Sindh and North Gujarát into Káthiáváda leaving settlements at Ajmir, Bádner, Jesalmír, Kokalmír, and Mherváda. How and when the Mhers made those settlements and entered Káthiáváda is not known. It may be surmised that they came with Toramāṇa (A.D. 470-512) who overthrew the Guptas, and advanced far to the south and west in the train of some general of Toramāṇa's who may perhaps have entered Suráshtra. This is probable as the date of Toramāṇa who overthrew Budhagupta is almost the same as that of the Maitrakas mentioned as the opponents and enemies of Bhatárka. In the time of Bhatárka (A.D. 509-520?) the Mhers were firmly established in the peninsula, otherwise they would not be mentioned in the Valabhi grants as enemies of Bhatárka, a tribe or *maṇḍala* wielding incomparable power. As stated above in Chapter VIII. some time after the Mhor settlement and consolidation of power, Bhatárka seems to have come as general of the fallen Guptas through Málwa and Broach by sea to East Káthiáváda. He established himself at Valabhi and then gradually dislodged the Mhers from Sorath until they retired slightly to the north settling eventually at Morbi, which the Jethvās still recognize as the earliest seat of their ancestors. At Morbi they appear to have ruled contemporarily with the Valabhis. In support of this it is to be noted that no known Valabhi plate records any grant of lands or villages in Hálár, Machhukántha, or Okhámandal in North Káthiáváda. As the north-most place mentioned in Valabhi plates is Venuthali known as Wania's Vanthali in Hálár it may be inferred that not the Valabhis but the Mhers ruled the north coast of Káthiáváda, probably as feudatories or subordinates of the Valabhis. On the overthrow of Valabhi about A.D. 770 the Mhers appear to have seized the kingdom and ruled the whole of Káthiáváda dividing it into separate chiefships grouped under the two main divisions of Bardái and Gohelváda. About A.D. 860 the Mhers made incursions into Central Gujarát. A copperplate dated Śaka 789 (A.D. 847) of the Gujarát Ráshtrakúta king Dhruva describes him as attacked by a powerful Mihira king whom he defeated.<sup>1</sup> At the height of their power the Mhers seem to have established their capital at the fort of Bhumli or Ghumli in the Bardái hills in the centre of Káthiáváda. The traditions about Ghumli rest mainly on modern Jethvá legends of no historical interest. The only known epigraphical record is a copperplate of a king named Jáchikadeva found in the Morbi district.<sup>2</sup> Unfortunately only the second plate remains. Still the fish mark on the plate, the locality where it was found, and its date

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. XII. 179.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. II. 257.

leave little doubt that the plate belongs to the Makaradhvaja or Jethvá kings. The date of the grant is 585 Gupta era the 5th Phálguna Sudí that is A.D. 901, about 130 years after the destruction of Valabhi, a date with which the form of the letters agrees.

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 170-200.

A similar copperplate in which the king's name appears in the slightly different form Jáikadeva has been found at Dhiniki in the same neighbourhood as the first and like it bearing the fish mark.<sup>1</sup> This copperplate describes the king as ruling at Bhúmlika or Bhúmli in Sorath and gives him the high titles of Paramabháttáraka-Mahárajádhirája-Parameśvara, that is Great Lord Great King of Kings Great King, titles which imply wide extent and independence of rule. This grant purports to be made on the occasion of a solar eclipse on Sunday Vikrama Samvat 794 Jyeshtha constellation, the no-moon of the second half of Kárttika. This would be A.D. 738 or 166 years before the Jáichika of the Morbi plate. Against this it is to be noted that the letters of this plate, instead of appearing as old as eighth century letters, look later than the letters of the tenth century Morbi plate. As neither the day of the week, the constellation, nor the eclipse work out correctly Dr. Bhagvánlál believed the plate to be a forgery of the eleventh century, executed by some one who had seen a fish-marked copperplate of Jáichika dated in the Saka era. It should however be noted that the names of ministers and officers which the plate contains give it an air of genuineness. Whether the plate is or is not genuine, it is probably true that Jáikadev was a great independent sovereign ruling at Bhúmli. Though the names of the other kings of the dynasty, the duration of the Bhúmli kingdom, and the details of its history are unknown it may be noted that the dynasty is still represented by the Porbandar chiefs. Though at present Bhúmli is deserted several ruined temples of about the eleventh century stand on its site. It is true no old inscriptions have been found; it is not less true that no careful search has been made about Bhúmli.

Early in the tenth century a wave of invasion from Sindh seems to have spread over Kacch and Káthiáváda. Among the invading tribes were the Jádejás of Kacch and the Chudásamás of Sorath, who like the Bhattis of Jesalmír call themselves of the Yaduvamśa stock. Doctor Bhagvánlál held that the Chudásamás were originally of the Ábhíra tribe, as their traditions attest connexion with the Ábhíras and as the description of Graharipu one of their kings by Hemachandra in his Dvyáśraya points to his being of some local tribe and not of any ancient Rájput lineage. Further in their bardic traditions as well as in popular stories the Chudásamás are still commonly called Áhira-ránás. The position of Aberia in Ptolemy (A.D. 150) seems to show that in the second century the Áhirs were settled between Sindh and the Panjáb. Similarly it may be suggested that Jádejá is a corruption of Jandhejá which

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. XII. 151.

**Chapter XII.**

THE MERR,  
A.D. 470-900.

in turn comes from Yaudheya (the change of *y* to *j* being very common) who in Kshatrapa Inscriptions appear as close neighbours of the Ahirs. After the fall of the Valabhis (A.D. 775) the Yaudheyas seem to have established themselves in Kacch and the Ahirs settled and made conquests in Kāthiāvāda. On the decline of local rule brought about by these incursions and by the establishment of an Ahir or Chūdāsamā kingdom at Junāgaḍh, the Jethvās seem to have abandoned Bhāmli which is close to Junāgaḍh and gone to Srīnagar or Kāptelun near Porbandar which is considered to have been the seat of Jethvā power before Porbandar.

A copperplate found at Haddālā on the road from Dholka to Dhandhuka dated A.D. 917 (Śaka 839) shows that there reigned at Vadhwān a king named Dharaṇīvarāha of the Chāpa dynasty,<sup>1</sup> who granted a village to one Maheśvarīchārya, an apostle of the Amardāka Sākhā of Saivism. Dharaṇīvarāha and his ancestors are described as feudatory kings, ruling by the grace of the feet of the great king of kings the great lord the illustrious Mahīpāladeva. This Mahīpāla would seem to be some great king of Kāthiāvāda reigning in A.D. 917 over the greater part of the province. Dr. Bhagvānlāl had two coins of this king of about that time, one a copper coin the other a silver coin. The coins were found near Junāgaḍh. The copper coin, about ten grains in weight, has one side obliterated but the other side shows clearly the words Rānā Śrī Mahīpāla Deva. The silver coin, about fourteen grains in weight, has on the obverse a well-executed elephant and on the reverse the legend Rānā Śrī Mahīpāla Deva. From the locality where the name Mahīpāla appears both in coins and inscriptions, and from the fact that the more reliable Chūdāsamā lists contain similar names, it may be assumed as probable that Mahīpāla was a powerful Chūdāsamā ruler of Kāthiāvāda in the early part of the tenth century.

After the fall of Valabhi no other reliable record remains of any dynasty ruling over the greater part of Gujarāt. The most trustworthy and historical information is in connection with the Chāvādās of Anahilapura. Even for the Chāvādās nothing is available but scant references recorded by Jain authors in their histories of the Solankis and Vaghelās.

The Chūdāsamās,  
A.D. 900-910.

[The modern traditions of the Chūdāsamā clan trace their origin to the Yādava race and more immediately to the Samma tribe of Nagar Thatha in Sindh.<sup>2</sup> The name of the family is said to have been derived from Chūdāchandra the first ruler of Vanthalī

<sup>1</sup> The inscription calls Chāpa the founder of the dynasty. The name is old: A king Vyāghrarāja of the Chāpa Vamśa is mentioned by the astronomer Brahmagupta as reigning in Śaka 550 (A.D. 628) when he wrote his book called *Brahma-Gupta Siddhanta*. The entry runs "In the reign of Śrī Vyāghramukha of the Śrī Chāpa dynasty, five hundred and fifty years after the Śaka king having elapsed." *Jour. B. B. R. A. Soc.* VIII. 27. For Dharaṇīvara's grant see *Ind. Ant.* XII. 190ff.

<sup>2</sup> Elliot's History, I. 266.

(Káthiáwár Gazetteer, 489). Traces of a different tradition are to be found in the *Tuhfat-ul-Kirám* (Elliot, I. 837) which gives a list of Chúdásammá's ancestors from Nuh (Noah), including not only Krishṇa the Yádava but also Ráma of the solar line. In this pedigree the Musalmán element is later than the others: but the attempt to combine the solar and lunar lines is a sure sign that the Sammañan was not of Hindu origin, and that it came under Hindu influence fairly late though before Sindh became a Musalmán province. This being admitted it follows that the Sammas were one of the numerous tribes that entered India during the existence of the Turkish empire in Transoxiana (A.D. 560 - c. 750). In this connection it is noteworthy that some of the Jáms bore such Turkish names as Tamáchi, Tughlik, and Sanjár.

The migration of the Sammas to Kacch is ascribed by the *Tarikh-i-Tahiri* (A.D. 1621) to the tyranny of the Súnra chiefs. The Sammas found Kacch in the possession of the Cháwaras, who treated them kindly, and whom they repulsed by seizing the fort of Gúntrí by a stratagem similar to that which brought about the fall of Gírnár.

The date of the Chúdásamá settlement at Vanthalí is usually fixed on traditional evidence, at about A.D. 875, but there is reason to think that this date is rather too early. In the first place it is worthy of notice that Chúdáchandra, the traditional eponym of the family, is in the *Tuhfat-ul-Kirám* made a son of Jádam (Yádava) and only a great-grandson of Krishṇa himself, a fact which suggests that, if not entirely mythical, he was at all events a very distant ancestor of Múlurája's opponent Grahárí, and was not an actual ruler of Vanthalí. As regards Grahárí's father Viśvavaraha and his grandfather Múlurája, there is no reason to doubt that they were real persons, although it is very questionable whether the Chúdásamás were settled in Káthiáváda in their time. In the first place, the Morbí grant of Jákadéva shows that the Jethvás had not been driven southwards before A.D. 907. Secondly Dharavívaraha's Vadhrán grant proves that the Chápa family of Bhínmál were still supreme in Káthiáváda in A.D. 914: whereas the *Tarikh-i-Tahiri*'s account of the Chúdásamá conquest of Kacch implies that the Cháwaras, who must be identified with the Chápas of Bhínmál, were losing their power when the Chúdásamás captured Gúntrí, an event which must have preceded the settlement at Vanthalí in Káthiáváda. Beyond the fact that Múlurája Solanki transferred the capital to Anahilaváda in A.D. 942, we know nothing of the events which led to the break-up of the Bhínmál empire. But it is reasonable to suppose that between A.D. 920 and 940 the Chávas gradually lost ground and the Chúdásamás were able first to conquer Sindh and then to settle in Káthiáváda. — A. M. T. J.]

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470 - 900.  
The Chúdásamás,  
A.D. 900 - 940.

[Káthiáváda contains three peculiar and associated classes of Hindus, the Mers, the Jethvás, and the Jhálás. The Mers and the Jethvás stand to each other in the relation of vassal and lord. The Jhálás are connected with the Jethvás by origin history and alliance. The bond

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 170-900.  
The Jethvās

of union between the three classes is not only that they seem to be of foreign that is of non-Hindu origin, but whether or not they belong to the same swarm of northern invaders, that they all apparently entered Kāthiāvāda either by land or sea through Sindh and Kacch. So far as record or tradition remains the Mers and Jethvās, reached Kāthiāvāda in the latter half of the fifth century after Christ, and the Jhālās, and perhaps a second detachment of Mers and Jethvās, some three hundred years later.<sup>1</sup> The three tribes differ widely in numbers and in distribution. The ruling Jethvās are a small group found solely in south-west Kāthiāvāda.<sup>2</sup> The Jhālās, who are also known as Makvanas, are a much larger clan. They not only fill north-east Kāthiāvāda, but from Kāthiāvāda, about A.D. 1500, spread to Rajputāna and have there established a second Jhālāvāda,<sup>3</sup> where, in reward for their devotion to the Sesodia Rāja of Mewād in his struggles with the Emperor Akbar (A.D. 1580-1600), the chief was given a daughter of the Udepur family and raised to a high position among Rajputs.<sup>4</sup> The Mers are a numerous and widespread race. They seem to be the sixth to tenth century Medhs, Meds, Mandis or Mins of Baluchistan, South-Sindh, Kacch, and Kāthiāvāda.<sup>5</sup> Further they seem to be the Mers of Mevāda or Medapatha in Rajputāna<sup>6</sup> and of Marvāda in Mālava,<sup>7</sup> and also to be the Musalmān Meos and Minas of Northern India.<sup>8</sup> In Gujarāt

<sup>1</sup> According to the Kathiawar Gazetteer pages 110 and 278, the first wave reached about A.D. 650 and the second about 250 years later. Dr. Bhagvanlal's identification of the Mers with the Matriakas would take back their arrival in Kathiavada from about A.D. 650 to about A.D. 150. The Mers were again formidable in Gujarāt in the late ninth and early tenth centuries. In A.D. 867 (see above Pages 127 and 130) the Rāshtrakūta Dhruva II. checked an invader of a Mihira king with a powerful army. Again in A.D. 911 the Rāshtrakūta Indra in a moment uprooted the Mehr (Ditto).

<sup>2</sup> The Am-i-Akbari (Gladwin, II. 69) notices that the sixth division of Saurashtra, which was almost impervious by reason of mountains rivers and woods, was (A.D. 1580) inhabited by the tribe Cheetore that is Jethva.

<sup>3</sup> Of the Jhālās or Chālās the Am-i-Akbari (Gladwin, II. 61) has, Chālāvach (in north-east Kathiavada) formerly independent and inhabited by the tribe of Chālās.

<sup>4</sup> Tod's Annals of Rajasthan, II. 113.

<sup>5</sup> Elliot and Dowson, I. 114 and 519-531. It is noted in the text that to the Arab invaders of the eighth and ninth centuries the Medhs of Hind were the chief people of Kathiavada both in South and in the south and in Māha in the north. They were as famous by sea as by land. According to Beladuri (A.D. 950) Reinaud's Memoire Sur l'Inde, 234-235) the Meyds of Saurashtra and Kacch were sailors who lived on the sea and sent fleets to a distance. Ibn Khurdadha (A.D. 912) and Idrisi (A.D. 1130), probably from the excellent Adjuvahi (Reinoud's Abulfeda Ixiii. and Elliot, I. 79), have the form Mand. Elliot, I. 11. The form Mand survives in a musical mode popular in Rajputāna, which is also called Rajewār. The Mand is like the Central Asian Mastazad (K. S. Fazullah Lutfallah.)

<sup>6</sup> Indian Antiquary, VI. 191.

<sup>7</sup> Rajputāna Gazetteer, I. 11.

<sup>8</sup> Rajputāna Gazetteer, I. 66; North-West Province Gazetteer, III. 265; Ibbetson's Panjab Census page 261. Some of these identifications are doubtful. Dr. Bhagvanlal in the text (21 Note 6 and 33) distinguishes between the Mevas or Meas whom he identifies as northern immigrants of about the first century B.C. and the Mers. This view is in agreement with the remark in the Rajputāna Gazetteer, I. 66 that the Mers have been suspected to be a relic of the Indo-Skythian Meds. Agam Tod (Annals of Rajasthan, I. 9) derives Mevāda from *madhya* (Sk.) middle, and the Mer of Mevāda from *meru* a hill. In support of Tod's view it is to be noted that the forts Balmer Jaisalmer Komalner and Ajmer, which Pandit Bhagvanlal would derive from the personal names of Mer leaders, are all either hill forts or rocks (Annals, I. 11. and Note 4). It is, on the other hand, to be noted that no hill forts out of this particular tract of country are called Mers, and that the similar names Koh and Malava, which with equal probability as Medh might be derived from Koh and Mala hill, seem to be tribal not geographical names.

their strength is much greater than the 30,000 or 40,000 returned as Mers. One branch of the tribe is hidden under the name Koli; another has disappeared below the covering of Islām.<sup>1</sup>

Formerly except the vague contention that the Medhās, Jhetvās, and Jhāla-Makvānās were northerners of somewhat recent arrival little evidence was available either to fix the date of their appearance in Kāthiāvāḍa or to determine to which of the many swarms of non-Hindu Northerners they belonged.<sup>2</sup> This point Dr. Bhagvānlāl's remarks in the text go far to clear. The chief step is the identification of the Mers with the Matrakas, the ruling power in Kāthiāvāḍa between the decline of the Guptas about A.D. 470 and the establishment of Valabhi rule about sixty years later. And further that they fought at the same time against the same Hindu rulers and that both are described as foreigners and northerners favours the identification of the

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470-900.

The Mers.

<sup>1</sup> The tales cited in the Ras Mala (I. 103) prove that most of the Kolis between Gujarat and Kathiavada are Mairs. That till the middle of the tenth century the south-east of Kāthiāvāḍa was held by Medhs (Kathi Gazetteer, 672) supports the view that the Kolis, whom about A.D. 1190 (Tod's Western India, I. 265) the Gohils drove out of the island of Piram, were Medhs, and this is in agreement with Idnisi (A.D. 1130 Elliot, I. 83) who calls both Piram and the Medhs by the name Mand. Similarly some of the Koli clans of Kacch (Gazetteer, 70) seem to be descended from the Medhs. And according to Mr. Dalpatram Khakhar three subdivisions of Brahmo Kshatrias, of which the best known are the Mansura Mers and the Pipalia Mers, maintain the surname Mair or Mer. (Cutch Gazetteer, 52 note 2.) Mera or Mehra is a common surname among Sindhi Baluchis. Many of the best Musalman captains and pilots from Kathiavada, Kacch, and the Makran coast still have Mer as a surname. Mehr is also a favourite name among both Khojāhs and Memāns, the two special classes of Kathiavada converts to Islam. The Khojāhs explain the name as meaning Meher Ah the friend of Ah, the Memāns also explain Mer as Meher or friend. But as among Memāns Mer is a common name for women as well as for men the word can hardly mean friend. The phrase Merbat or Lady Mer applied to Memān mothers seems to have its origin in the Rajput practice of calling the wife by the name of her caste or tribe as Kathiombai, Merambai. In the case both of the Khojāhs and the Memāns the name Mer seems to be the old tribal name continued because it yielded itself to the uses of Islam. Mahr, Mihr, and Mahar are also used as titles of respect. The Khant Kolis of Gujrat, apparently a mixture of the Matrakas of the text and of a local hill tribe, still (Kathiawar Gazetteer, 142) honour their leaders with the name Mer explaining the title by the Gujarati *mer* the main bead in a rosary. Similarly in Mālwa a Gurjjara title is Mihr (Rajputana Gazetteer, I. 80) and in the Punjab Mahar (Gazetteer of Punjab, Gujrat, 50-51). And in Kacch the headman among the Bharwāds, who according to some accounts are Gujjaras, is called Mir (Cutch Gazetteer, 81). Similarly among the Rabaris of Kacch the name of the holy she-camel is Māta Meri. (Idito, 80.) All these terms of respect are probably connected with Mihra, Sun.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Tod (Western India, 420). Though enrolled among the thirty-six royal races we may assert the Jethvas have become Hindus only from locality and circumstance. Of the Jhālas Tod says (Rajasthan, I. 113): As the Jhālas are neither Solar Lunar nor Agnikula they must be strangers. Again (Western India 414) The Jhāla Makvānās are a branch of Hūnas. Of the name Makvāna (Kathiawar Gazetteer, 111, Ras Māla, I. 297) two explanations may be offered, either that the word comes from Mak the dewy tracts in Central Kacch (Cutch Gazetteer, 75 note 2) where (Kathiawar Gazetteer, 420) the Jhālas stopped when the Mers and Jethvas passed south, or that Makvāna represents Mauna a Puranic name for the Hūnas (Wilson's Works, IV. 207). Tod's and Wilford's (Asiatic Researches, IX. 287) suggestion that Makvāna is Mahahuna is perhaps not phonetically possible. At the same time that the Makvānas are a comparatively recent tribe of northerners is supported by the ascendancy in the fourteenth century in the Himālayas of Makvānis (Hodgson's Essay, I. 397; Government of India Selections XLVII, 54 and 119) who used the Indo-Skythian title Sāh (Ditto). With the Nepal Makvānis may be compared the Makpons or army-men the caste of the chief of Balistan or Little Tibet. Vigne's Kashmir, II. 258, 439.

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470-900.  
White Hūnas.

power of the Maitrakas with the North Indian empire of the Ephthalites, Yethas, or White Hūnas.<sup>1</sup>

Though the sameness in name between the Mihiras and Mihirakula (A.D. 508-530), the great Indian champion of the White Hūnas, may not imply sameness of tribe it points to a common sun-worship.<sup>2</sup>

That the Multān sun-worship was introduced under Sassanian influence is supported by the fact (Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, 357) that the figure of the sun on the fifth century Hindu sun coins is in the dress of a Persian king; that the priests who performed the Multān sun-worship were called Magas; and by the details of the dress and ritual in the account of the introduction of sun-worship given in the Bhavishya Purāna.<sup>3</sup> That the Meyds or Mandas had some share in its introduction is supported by the fact that the Purāna names the third or Sudra class of the sun-worshippers Mandagas.<sup>4</sup> That the Meyds were associated with the Magas is shown by the mention of the Magas as Mihiragas.<sup>5</sup> The third class whom the Bhavishya Purāna associates with the introduction of sun-worship are the Mānas who

<sup>1</sup> The evidence in support of the statement that the Maitrakas and Hūnas fought at the same time against the same Hindu rulers is given in the text. One of the most important passages is in the grant of Dhruvasena III. (Epig. Ind. I. 89 [A.D. 653-4]) the reference to Bhatarika the founder of Valabhi (A.D. 509-520) meeting in battle the matchless armies of the Maitrakas.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Fleet (Epigraphia Indica, III. 327 and note 12) would identify Mihirakula's tribe with the Maitrakas. More recent evidence shows that his and his father Toromona's tribe was the Juvlas. That the White Hūnas or other associated tribes were sun-worshippers appears from a reference in one of Mihirakula's inscriptions (Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum, III. 161) to the building of a specially fine temple of the sun, and from the fact that in Kashmīr Mihirakula founded a city Mihirapura and a temple to Mihreshwar. (Darmstadter in Journal Asiatique, X. 70. Fleet in Indian Antiquary, XV. 242-252.) Mihirakula's (A.D. 508-530) sun-worship may have been the continuance of the Kushan (A.D. 50-150) worship of Mithra or Helios (Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, 357). At the same time the fact that Mihirakula uses the more modern form Mihir makes it probable (Compare Rawlinson's *Seventh Monarchy*, 284) that Mihirakula's sun-worship was more directly the result of the spread of sun-worship in Central Asia under the fiercely propagandist Sassanians Varahan V. or Behnam Gor (A.D. 420-440), and his successors Izdgerd II. (A.D. 440-457), and Perozes (A.D. 457-483). The extent to which Zoroastrian influence pervaded the White Hūnas is shown by the Persian name not only of Mihirakula but of Kushnawaz (A.D. 470-490) the great emperor of the White Hūnas the overthrower of Perozes. That this Indian sun-worship, which, at latest, from the seventh to the tenth century made Multān so famous was not of local origin is shown by the absence of reference to sun-worship in Multān in the accounts of Alexander the Great. Its foreign origin is further shown by the fact that in the time of Baruni (A.D. 1020 Sachau's Edition, I. 119) the priests were called Maghas and the image of the sun was clad in a northern dress falling to the ankles. It is remarkable as illustrating the Hindu readiness to adopt priests of conquering tribes into the ranks of Brāhmanas that the surname Magha survives (Cutch Gazetteer, 62 note 2) among Shrinah Brāhmanas. These Maghas are said to have married Bhoja or Rajput girls and to have become the Brāhman Bhojaks of Dwarka. Even the Mandas who had Saka wives, whose descendants were named Mandagas, obtained a share in the temple ceremonies. Reinaud's *Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 393.

<sup>3</sup> Wilson's Vishnu Purāna Preface xxxix. in Reinaud's *Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 391. Details are given in Wilson's Works, X. 381-385.

<sup>4</sup> Reinaud's *Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 393; Wilson's Works, X. 382.

<sup>5</sup> The name Mehiraga is explained in the Bhavishya Purāna as derived from their ancestress a daughter of the sage Rigu or Rijvaha of the race named Mihira (Reinaud's *Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 393; Wilson's Works, X. 382). The name Mihiraga suggests that the spread of sun-worship in the Panjāb and Sindh, of which the sun-worship in Multān Sindh Kathiāwāda and Mewād and the fire-worshipping Rajput and Sindh coins of the fifth and sixth centuries are evidence, was helped by the spread of Sassanian influence

are given a place between the Magas and the Manda. The association of the Mānas with the Mihiras or Maitrakas suggests that Māna is Mauna a Purānik name for the White Hūnas.<sup>1</sup> That the Multān sun idol of the sixth and seventh centuries was a Hūna idol and Multān the capital of a Hūna dynasty seems in agreement with the paramount position of the Rāis of Alor or Rori in the sixth century. Though their defeat by Yeodharmman of Mālwā about A.D. 540 at the battle of Karur, sixty miles east of Multān, may have ended Hūna supremacy in north and north-west India it does not follow that authority at once forsook the Hūnas. Their wide-spread and unchallenged dominion in North India, the absence of record of any reverse later than the Karur defeat, the hopelessness of any attempt to pass out of India in the face of the combined Turk and Sassanian forces make it probable that the Hūnas and their associated tribes, adopting Hinduism and abandoning their claim to supremacy, settled in west and north-west India. This view finds support in the leading place which the Hūnas and Hāra-Hūnas, the Maitrakas or Mers, and the Gurjjaras hold in the centuries that follow the overthrow of the White Hūna empire. According to one rendering of Cosmas<sup>2</sup> (A.D. 525) the chief of Orrhotha or Sorath in common with several other coast rulers owed allegiance to Gollas, apparently, as is suggested at page 75 of the text, to Gulla or Mihirgulla the Indian Emperor of the White Hūnas. These details support the view that the Maitrakas, Mihiras, or Mers who in Cosmas' time were in power in Kāthiāwāda, and to whose ascendancy during the seventh and eighth centuries both the Chinese pilgrim Huen Tsiang (A.D. 612-610) and the Arab historians of Sindh bear witness, were a portion of the great White Hūna invasion (A.D. 480-530).<sup>3</sup> In the many recorded swarmings south from

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470-900.

White Hūnas.

into Baluchistan Kacch-Gandevi and other parts of western Sindh, through Sakastene the modern western Seistan near the lake Helmund. This Sakastene or land of the Sakas received its name from the settlement in it of one of the earlier waves of the Yuechi in the second or first century before Christ. The name explains the statement in the Bhavishya Purāna that sun-worship was introduced by Magas into Multān from Sakadvipa the land of the Sakas. In this connection it is interesting to note that Darmsteter (Zend Avesta, xxxiv.) holds that the Zend Avesta was probably completed during the reign of Shapur I (A.D. 309-379); that (lxxxix.) Zend was a language of eastern Persia an earlier form of Pahlavi, and that (lxxxiv.) western Seistan and the Helmund river valley the holy land of the Avesta the birth-place of Zoroaster, and the scene of king Vishtasp's triumphs. A memory of the spread of this western or Sassanian influence remains in the reference in the Mujmalin-T-Tawarikh in Elliot, I, 107-109, to the fire temples established in Kandabil (Gandevi) and Buddha (Mansura) by Mahra a general of Bahman that is of Varahran V (A.D. 420-440). It seems probable that Mahra is Mehr the family name or the title (Rawlinson's Sassanian Monarchy, 224 note 4 and 312) of the great Mihran family of Persian nobles. The general in question may be the Mehr-Narses the minister of Varahran's son and successor Izdigerd II. (A.D. 440-457), who enforced Zoroastrianism in Armenia (Rawlinson, Ditto 305-308). Mehr's success may be the origin of the Indian stories of Varahran's visit to Mālwā. It may further be the explanation of the traces of fire temples and towers of silence noted by Pottinger (1810) in Baluchistan (Travels, 126-127) about sixty miles west of Khetlat.

<sup>1</sup> Wilson's Works, IX. 207.<sup>2</sup> Compare Priault's Embassies, 222.<sup>3</sup> The White Hūnas overrun Baktria and the country of the Yuechi between A.D. 450 and 460. About a hundred years later they were crushed between the advancing Turks and the Sassanian Chosroes I. or Naushirvān (A.D. 537-590). Rawlinson's Sassanian Monarchy, 420; Spérlit in Journal Asiatique (1883) Tom II. 349-350. The Hūnas supremacy in North India did not last beyond A.D. 530 or 540. The overthrow of their

## Chapter XII.

THE MEVS,  
A.D. 470-900.  
White Hūnas.

Central Asia into Persia and India no feature is commoner than the leading of the conquered by certain families of the conquering tribe. Chinese authorities place it beyond doubt that when, towards the middle of the fifth century A.D., the White Hūnas crossed the Oxus they found in power a cognate tribe of northerners whose date of settlement on the Indian frontier was less than a century old. This preceding swarm was the Yuán-Yuán, Var-Var, or Avār, who, about the close of the fourth century (A.D. 380), had driven from Balkh southwards into the Kabul valley Kitolo the last ruler of the long established Yuetchi (B.C. 50 - A.D. 380).<sup>1</sup> It is known that in retreating before the Yuán-Yuán a division of the Baktrian Yuetchi, under the leadership of Kitolo's son, under the name of the Kulāras or Little Yuetchi, established their power in Gandhāra and Peshāwar.<sup>2</sup> This Kidāra invasion must have driven a certain share of the people of the Kabul valley to the east of the Indus. The invasion of the White Hūnas a century later, who were welcomed as allies by some of the Panjāb chiefs,<sup>3</sup> would cause fresh movements among the frontier tribes. The welcome given to the Hūnas, and the show and dash which marked their century of ascendancy in India and Persia, make it probable that as leaders they conducted south as far as Kāthavāda and Mālava large bodies of the earlier northern settlers. To which of the waves of earlier northerners the Medhs belonged is doubtful.<sup>4</sup> The view held by Pandit Bhagvānlāl that one branch of the Medhs entered India in the first century before Christ among the tribes of which the great Yuechi were the chief is on the whole in agreement with General Cunningham's argument that Medus Hydaspes, Virgil's phrase for the Jhelum, proves that the Medhs were then (B.C. 40) already settled on its banks.<sup>5</sup>

supremacy perhaps dates from A.D. 540 the battle of Karur about sixty miles east of Multān, their conqueror being Yasodharman of Malwa the second of the three great Vikramādityas of Malwa. Of the Hūnas' position among Hindu castes Colonel Tod says: "The Hūnas are one of the Skyths who have got a place among the thirty-six races of India. They probably came along with the Kutlu, Bāla, and Makvāna of Saurashtra." Tod's *Annals of Rajasthan*, I, 110.

<sup>1</sup> Specht in *Journal Asiatique* (1883), II, 348.

<sup>2</sup> Specht in *Journal Asiatique* (1883), II, 349.

<sup>3</sup> Compare above Chapter VII, page 73 note 3.

<sup>4</sup> Dr. Bhagvānlāl (Text, 33) traces one set of Medhs to the Mevas the tribe of Yasomitika the father of the Kshatrapa Chastitana (A.D. 130). He holds these Mevas entered India (21) with the Malayas, Pulhavas, and Abhiras about B.C. 150 (?). At the same time he seems to have considered those early Mevas different from the fifth and sixth century Abhiras and from the seventh and eighth century Medhs.

<sup>5</sup> Arch. Report for 1863-64, II, 52. In support of this Cunningham cites Ptolemy's (A.D. 150) Euthymedia that is Sagala, sixty miles north-west of Lahor, and the Media of Püntinger's Tables (A.D. 400). This Euthymedia is a corruption of the original Euthydenia the name given to Sagala by Demetrios (B.C. 190) the great Greco-Baktrian in honour of his father Euthydemus (Compare Text page 16 and McCrindle's Ptolemy, 134). Of the cause of this change of name, which may be only a clerical error, two different explanations have been offered. Tod (*An. of Rajn.* I, 233) would make the new form Yuthi-madia the Middle Yuchi. Cunningham (*Arch. Surv. Rep.* II, 53) would attribute it to the southward migration towards Sindh about B.C. 50 of the Kshān-pressed horde which under Moas or Mogha came from Little Tibet and entered the Panjāb either by way of Kashmir or down the Swāt valley. According to General Cunningham (*Ditto*, 53) the followers of this Moas were Mandrueni called after the Mandrus river south of the Oxus. The two forms Medh and Mand are due to the cerebral which explains the Mianagaras of Ptolemy and the Periplus; Masudi's (A.D. 915) Mīnd and Ibn Khurdad-

Dr. Bhagvánlál's view that the Jethvās are Medhs ennobled by long overlordship is somewhat doubtfully shared by Colonel Watson<sup>1</sup> and is not inconsistent with Tod's opinions.<sup>2</sup> Still though the Hindu ruler-worship, which, as in the case of the Marátha Siváji, explains the raising to the twice-born of leaders of successful early and foreign tribes makes it possible that the Jethvās were originally Mers, it seems on the whole probable that the Jethvās' claim to an origin distinct from the Mers is well founded. The evidence recorded by Colonel Tod and the name Jethva led the late Dr. John Wilson to trace the Jethvās to the Játs or Jits.<sup>3</sup> According to the bards the name of the Káthiáváda tribe Jethva is derived from Jetha No. 85 or No 95 of the Porbandar list, who was probably so called because he was born under the Jyeshtha constellation.<sup>4</sup> The common practice of explaining a tribal name by inventing some name-giving chief deprives this derivation of most of its probability.<sup>5</sup> In the present case it may further be noticed that the name Jethi is borne by two of the chiefs earlier than the Jetha referred to.<sup>6</sup> In the absence of any satisfactory explanation the name Jethva suggests an origin in Yetha, the shortened Chinese form of Ye-ta-i-li-to or Ephthalte the name of the ruling class of the White Húnas.<sup>7</sup> It is true that so good an authority as Specht<sup>8</sup> holds that the shortened form Yetha is peculiar to the Chinese and was never in use. But the form Tetel or Haital, adopted by

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470-900.  
White Húnas.

bha's (died A.D. 912) and Idrisi's (perhaps from Al-Jayhāni) Mand (Elliot, I. 14 and 79, Reinhold's Abulfeda, 1811); the present associated Mers and Minas in Rapputāna (Ditto, 53), and perhaps the Musalmān Meos and Minas of the Panjab (Hibetson's Census, 261).

<sup>1</sup> The Jethvās are closely allied to the Medhs (Kath. Gaz. 138); they entered Kathiávada along with the Medhs (Ditto, 278).

<sup>2</sup> The passages are somewhat contradictory. Tod (Western India, 113) says: Jethvas marry with Káthiis, Ahirs, and Mers. In the Káthiawār Gazetteer (page 110) Colonel Barton seems to admit the Jethvās' claim to be of distinct origin from the Mers. In another passage he says (page 184): The Mers claim to be Jethvas: this the Jethvās deny. So also Colonel Watson in one passage (page 621) seems to favour a distinct origin while in another (page 279) he says: It seems probable the Jethvās are merely the ruling family Rājula of the Mers and that they are all of one tribe. Two points seem clear. The Jethvās are admitted to rank among Káthiáváda Rājputs and they formerly married with the Mers. The further question whether the Jethvas were originally of a distinct and higher tribe remains undetermined.

<sup>3</sup> Bombay Administration Report for 1873. Colonel Tod made the same suggestion: Western India, 256. Compare Cunningham's (Travels in Baluchistán, 61) identification of the ruins of Kacch-Gandevi north of Khelat with Játs or Jits.

<sup>4</sup> Tod's Western India, 413.

<sup>5</sup> Compare Bühler in Epigraphia Indica, I. 291. Like the Chálukyas and other tribes the Jethvas trace the name Jethva to a name-giving chief. Of the Jethvās Tod says (Annals of Rajasthan, I. 111): The Jethvās have all the appearance of Skythian descent. As they make no pretension to belong to any of the old Indian races they may be a branch of Skythians. In his Western India (page 412), though confused by his identification of Káthiá-dwāra with Sakotra instead of with Bet Dwāra (compare Kath. Gaz. 619), Tod still holds to a northern origin of the Jethvās.

<sup>6</sup> Nos. 6 and 82 of Colonel Watson's List, Káthiawār Gazetteer, 621. The Pandit's evidence in the text ascribes to the somewhat doubtful Jaikadeva a date of A.D. 788 (Vikram 794); to Jáchikadeva a date of about A.D. 901 (Gupta 585); and to the Gúmli ruins a probable eleventh century. Tod (Western India, 417) traces the Jethvās further back putting the founding of Ghúmli or Bhúmli at about A.D. 692 (S 749) the date of a settlement between the Tuars of Delhi and the Jethvās (Ditto, 411). Col. Watson (Kath. Gaz. 278) gives either A.D. 650 or A.D. 900.

<sup>7</sup> The form Yetha is used by the Chinese pilgrim Sang-yun A.D. 519. Beal's Buddhist Records, I. xc.

<sup>8</sup> Journal Asiatique (1883), II. 319.

## Chapter XII.

THE MERS,  
A.D. 470-900.  
White Hūnas.

Jhālās.

Armenian Musalmān and Byzantine historians,<sup>1</sup> makes probable an Indian Yethāl or Jethāl if not a Yetha or Jetha. Nor does there seem any reason why Yetha the Chinese form of the word should not be more likely to be adopted in India than the western and otherwise less correct form Tetāl or Haithal. In any case the irregular change from a correct Yethāl to an incorrect Yetha cannot be considered of much importance, if, as seems likely, the change was made in order to give the word an Indian meaning.<sup>2</sup> The *r* in Jethva would come to be added when the origin from a chief named Jetha was accepted.

Another name for the White Hūnas, or for a section of the White Hūna swarm, is preserved by Cosmas<sup>3</sup> in the form *Juvia*. This form, if it is not a mis-reading for *Ounia* or *Hūna*, suggests *Jāuvla* the recently identified name of the tribe ennobled in India by the great Toramāṇa (A.D. 450-500) and his son Māhurakula (A.D. 500-540), and of which a trace seems to remain in the *Jāvla* and *Jhāvla* divisions of Panjāb Gujjats.<sup>4</sup> This *Jāuvla*, under such a fire baptism as would admit the holders of the name among Hindus, might be turned into *Jvāla* flaming and *Jvāla* be shortened to *Jhāla*. That *Jhāla* was formerly punningly connected with flame is shown by a line from the bard Chānd, 'The lord of the Rāmas the powerful *Jhāla* like a flaming fire.'<sup>5</sup> That the Kāthiāvāda bands were either puzzled by the name *Jhāla* or were unwilling to admit its foreign origin is shown by the story preserved in the *Ras Mālā*,<sup>6</sup> that the tribe got the name because the children of Hirpāl Māvāna, about to be crushed by an elephant, were snatched away *jhālū* by their witch-mother. It has been noticed in the text that the break in Gujarāt History between A.D. 480 and 520, agreeing with the term of Hūna supremacy in North India, seems to imply a similar supremacy in Gujarāt. The facts that up to the twelfth century Hūnas held a leading place in Gujarāt chronicles,<sup>7</sup> and that while in Rājputāna and other parts of Northern India the traces of Huns are fairly widespread in Gujarāt they have almost if not altogether disappeared, support the view that the Hūna strain in Kāthiāvāda is hid under the names Mera, Jethva, and *Jhāla*.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Journal Asiatique (1883), II. 311.

<sup>2</sup> Compare for the chief's name Jetha, Colonel Watson Kāth. Gaz. 622 in the Jyeshthā Nakshatra.

<sup>3</sup> Præaux's Embassies, 220; Migne's Patrologiæ Cursus Vol. 88 page 98.

<sup>4</sup> Census of 1891 III. 116. A reference to the *Jhauvlas* is given above page 75 note 4. General Cunningham (Ninth Oriental Congress, I. 228-244) traces the tribe of *Jhauvlas* ruling in Smith, Zabulistan or Ghazni, and Makran from the sixth to the eighth and ninth centuries.

<sup>5</sup> Tod's Western India, 191 Note †. Tod adds: Chānd abounds in such jeu-de-mot on the names of tribes.

<sup>6</sup> Ras Mālā, I. 302; Kāthiāwār Gazetteer, 111. <sup>7</sup> Tod's Annals of Rājasthān, I. 111.

<sup>8</sup> Among references to Hūnas may be noted: In the Vāyu Purāna (Sachau's Alhifuni, I. 300) in the west between Karnaprāvāna and Darva; in the Vishnu Purāna Hūnas between the Śaindhavas and the Salvās (Wilson's Works, VII. 133 and 134 Note †); in the eighth century Ungutsi lord of the Hūnas who helped Chitor (Tod's Annals, II. 457); in the Khichi bard Mogji, traditions of many powerful Hūna kings in India (Tod's Annals, I. 111 Note †) among them the Hūna chief of Barolli (Ditto, II. 705); and Rāja Hūna of the Prāmāra race who was lord of the Pathār or plateau of Central India (Ditto, II. 457).

Chapter

THE  
A.D. 490 - 900.

In the Middle Ages the Hūnas were considered Kshatriyas and Kshatriyas married Hūna wives (Wilson's Works, VII. 134 Note †) Of existing traces in the Panjab may be noted Hon and Hona Rājputs and Gujjars, Hona Jats, Hon Labānas, Hon Lohars, Honi Malis, Hon Mochis, Hūna Barbers, and Haun Rabāris (Panjab Census 1891. III. pages 116, 139, 227, 233, 246, 265, 276, 305, 315). The only traces Colonel Tod succeeded in finding in Gujarāt were a few Hūna huts at a village opposite Umetha on the gulf of Cambay, a second small colony near Somanatha, and a few houses at Trisanli five miles from Baroda, (Western India, 217, 323) Since 1825 these traces have disappeared.



## PART II.

# THE KINGDOM OF ANAHILAVĀDA.

A.D. 720-1300

## CHAPTER I.

### THE CHĀVĀDAS

(A.D. 720-956)

THE history embodied in the preceding chapters is more or less fragmentary, pieced together from coins, stone and copperplate inscriptions, local traditions, and other similar sources. A history based on such materials alone must of necessity be imperfect, leaving blanks which it may be hoped fresh details will gradually fill.

The rise of the Anahilavāda kingdom (A.D. 720) marks a new period of Gujarāt history regarding which materials are available from formal historical writings.<sup>1</sup> Though this section of Gujarāt history begins with the establishment of Anahilavāda by the Chāvādās (A.D. 720-956) the details for the earlier portions are very imperfect being written during the time of the Chālukya or Solanki (A.D. 957-1212) successors of the Chāvādās. The chief sources of information regarding the earlier period of Chāvādā rule are the opening chapters of the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi*, *Vichitra-reṇi*, *Sukṛitasankīrtana*, and *Ratnamālā*.<sup>2</sup>

Before the establishment of Anahilavāda a small Chāvādā chiefship centred at Pañchāsar, now a fair-sized village in Vadliār between Gujarāt and Kacch.<sup>3</sup> The existence of a Chāvādā chiefship at Pañchāsar is proved by the Navamant dated Samvat 490 (A.D. 788-89) of the Gujarāt Chālukya king Pulikeśi Janāśraya. This grant in recording the triumphant progress of an army of Tājikas or Arabs

### Chapter I.

THE CHĀVĀDAS  
A.D. 720-956.

Pañchāsar,  
A.D. 788.

<sup>1</sup> The following manuscript histories have been used in preparing Part II. Hemachandra's *Dvyasrayakāvya*, Merutunga's *Prabandhachintāmaṇi*, Merutunga's *Vichitra-reṇi*, Jinaprabhasūri's *Tirthakālpa*, Jinamandanopadhyaya's *Kumārāpala-prabandha*, Kṛishṇa-rishi's *Kumārāpala-charita*, Kṛishṇabhaṭṭa's *Ratnamālā*, Someśvara's *Kīrtikāumudī*, Arisinha's *Sukṛitasankīrtana*, Rājasekhara's *Chaturvīṃsatiprabandha*, *Vastupālacharita*, and published and unpublished inscriptions from Gujarāt and Kāthiavāda.

<sup>2</sup> The *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* is a short historical compilation; the *Vichitra-reṇi*, though a mere list of kings, is more reliable; the *Ratnamālā* is a poetic history with good descriptions and many fables taken from the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi*, the *Sukṛitasankīrtana* is a short work largely borrowed from the *Vichitra-reṇi*.

<sup>3</sup> This is apparently Vriddhi Ahāra on the Vriddhi Collectorate, probably called after one village or town of that name.

## Chapter I.

THE CHÁVADÁS,  
A.D. 720-956.  
Pañchásar,  
A.D. 788.

from Sindh to Navsári and mentioning the kingdoms "afflicted" by the Arabs, names the Chávotakas next after the kings of Kacch and Sauráshtra. These Chávotakas can be no other than the Chávadás of Pañchásar on the borders of Kacch. The Chávadás of Pañchásar do not appear to have been important rulers. At the most they seem to have held Vadhár and part of the north coast of Káthiaváda. Whatever be the origin of the name Chávadá, which was afterwards Sanskritised into the high-sounding Chápotkata or Stronghow, it does not seem to be the name of any great dynasty. The name very closely resembles the Gujaráti Chor (Prakrit Chautá or Choraṭá) meaning thieves or robbers; and Javadá, which is a further corruption of Chávadá, is the word now in use in those parts for a thief or robber. Except the mention of the Chávotakas in the Navsári copperplate we do not find the Chávadás noticed in any known cotemporary Gujarát copperplates. For this reason it seems fair to regard them as unimportant rulers over a territory extending from Pañchásar to Anahilaváda.

Jaya'sekhara,  
A.D. 696.

The author of the Ratnamálá (c. 1230 A.D.) says that in A.D. 696 (S. 752) Jaya'sekhara the Chávadá king of Pañchásar was attacked by the Chaulukya king Bhuvada of Kalyánakataka in Kanyákubja or Kanoj and slain by Bhuvada in battle. Before his death Jaya'sekhara, finding his affairs hopeless, sent his pregnant wife Rupasundarí to the forest in charge of her brother Surapála, one of his chief warriors. After Jaya'sekhara's death Rupasundarí gave birth to a son named Vanarāja who became the illustrious founder of Anahilaváda. It is hard to say how much truth underlies this tradition. In the seventh century not Chaulukya but Pála kings flourished in Kanoj. No place of importance called Kalyánakataka is recorded in the Kanoj territory. And though there was a southern Chálukya kingdom with its capital at Kalyán, its establishment at Kalyán was about the middle of the eleventh not in the seventh century. Further the known Dakhan Chálukya lists contain no king named Bhuvada, unless he be the great Chálukya king Vajayádhitya (A.D. 696 - 733) also called Bhuvanásraya, who warred in the north and was there imprisoned but made his escape. The inference is that the author of the Ratnamálá, knowing the Solankis originally belonged to a city called Kalyán, and knowing that a Chálukya king named Bhuvada had defeated the Chávadás may have called Bhuvada king of Kalyánakataka and identified Kalyánakataka with a country so well known to Puránik fame as Kanyákubja. This view is supported by the absence in the Prabandha-chintámaṇi and other old records of any mention of an invasion from Kanoj. It is possible that in A.D. 696 some king Bhuvada of the Gujarát Chálukyás, of whom at this time branches were ruling as far north as Kaira,<sup>1</sup> invaded the Chávadás under Jaya'sekhara. Since traces of a Chávotaka kingdom remain, at least as late as A.D. 720; it seems probable that the destruction of Pañchásar was caused not by Bhuvada in A.D. 696, but in the Arab raid mentioned above whose date falls about A.D. 720.<sup>2</sup> About A.D. 720 may therefore be taken as the date

<sup>1</sup> See above page 108.

<sup>2</sup> See above page 109.

of the birth of Vanarāja. Merutunga the author of the Prabandha-chintāmaṇi tells how Rupasundarī was living in the forest swinging her son in a hammock, when a Jain priest named Śīlaguṇasūri noticing as he passed royal marks on the boy bought him from his mother. The story adds that a nun named Vīramatī brought up the boy whom the *sādhu* called Vānarāja or the forest king. When eight years old, the priest employed Vanarāja to protect his place of worship from rats. The boy's skill in shooting rats convinced the priest he was not fit to be a *sādhu* but was worthy of a kingdom. He therefore returned the boy to his mother. These details seem invented by the Jains in their own honour. No mention of any such story occurs in the Ratnamāli.<sup>1</sup>

In the forests where Vanarāja passed his youth lived his maternal uncle Surapāla, one of Jayasēkhara's generals, who, after his sovereign's defeat and death, had become an outlaw. Vanarāja grew up under Surapāla's charge. The Prabandha-chintāmaṇi records the following story of the origin of Vanarāja's wealth. A Kanyakubja king married Mahānakā the daughter of a Gujarat king. To receive the proceeds of the marriage cess which the Gujarat king had levied from his subjects, a deputation or *pañchkhila* came from Kanyakubja to Gujarat. The deputation made Vanarāja their leader or *śaltahet* to realize the proceeds of the cess. In six months Vanarāja collected 24 *lakhs* of *Pāruttha dānmas*<sup>2</sup> and 1000 horses, which the deputation took and started for Kanyakubja. Vanarāja waylaid and killed them, secured the money and horses, and remained in hiding for a year. With the wealth thus acquired Vanarāja enrolled an army and established his power assuming the title of king. He fixed the site of a capital which afterwards rose to be the great city of Anahilapura. The story of the choice of the site is the usual story of a hunted hare turning on the hounds showing the place to be the special nurse of strength and courage. Vanarāja is said to have asked a Bhārvaḍ or Shepherd named Anahila son of Sākhavāḍ to show him the best site. Anahila agreed on condition that the city should be called by his name. Anahila accordingly showed Vanarāja the place where a hare had attacked and chased a dog. Though much in this tradition is fabulous the city may have been called after some local chief since it was popularly known as Anahilavāḍa (Sk. Anahilavāṭa) that is the place of Anahila. In the Prabandha-chintāmaṇi Merutunga gives A.D. 716 (S. 802) as the date of the installation of Vanarāja, while in his Vichāra-reṇi the same author gives A.D. 765 (S. 821 Vaisakha Śukla 2) as the date of the foundation of the city. The discrepancy may be explained by taking A.D. 746 (S. 802) to refer to the date of Vanarāja's getting money enough to fix the site of his capital, and A.D. 765 (S. 821) to refer to the date of his installation in the completed Anahilavāḍa. Local tradition connects the date A.D. 716 (S. 802) with an image of Ganpati which is said to be as old as the establishment of the city and

## Chapter I.

THE CHAVADAS,  
A.D. 720-936.

Vanarāja,  
A.D. 720-780 (?).

Founding of  
Anahilavāḍa,  
A.D. 746-765.

<sup>1</sup> In the Satyapurakalpa of his Tīrthakalpa, Jinaprabhasūri tells an almost identical story of another king.

<sup>2</sup> This name often recurs in Jain works. These would seem to be Kshatrapa coins as Gadhoiya coins are simply called *drammas*.

**Chapter I.**

THE CHÁVANÁS,  
A.D. 720-950.

Founding of  
Anahilavāḍa,  
A.D. 746-765.

Vanarāja's  
Installation.

to bear the date 802. But as the letters of the inscription on the image can be made out by ordinary readers they cannot have been inscribed at nearly so early a date as 802. A.D. 765 (S. 821), the year given in the Vichārasreṇi, seems the more probable date for the installation as the Prabandhachintāmaṇi says that Vanarāja got himself installed at Anahilapura when he was about fifty. This accords with the date fixed on other grounds. 'Placing Vanarāja's birth at about A.D. 720 would make him 44 in A.D. 765 (S. 821) the date at which according to the Vichārasreṇi he was formally installed as sovereign of Anahilavāḍa. Merutunga in both his works gives the length of Vanarāja's life at 109 and of his reign at sixty years. The figure 60 seems to mark the length of his life and not of his reign. So long a reign as sixty years is barely possible for a sovereign who succeeded late in life, and the 109 years of his life can hardly be correct. Taking Vanarāja's age at 45 when he was installed in A.D. 765 (S. 821) and allowing fifteen years more to complete the sixty years A.D. 780 (S. 836) would be the closing year of his reign.

The Prabandhachintāmaṇi narrates how generously Vanarāja rewarded those who had helped him in his adversity. His installation was performed by a woman named Sī Devī of Kākara village whom in fulfilment of an early promise Vanarāja had taken to be his sister.<sup>2</sup> The story regarding the promise is that once when Vanarāja had gone with his uncle on a thieving expedition to Kākara village and had broken into the house of a merchant he by mistake dipped his hand into a pot of curds. As to touch curds is the same as to dine at a house as a guest, Vanarāja left the house without taking anything from it.<sup>3</sup> Hearing what had happened the merchant's sister invited Vanarāja as a brother to dinner and gave him clothes. In return Vanarāja promised if he ever regained his father's kingdom he should receive his installation as king at her hands.<sup>4</sup> Vanarāja chose as minister a Bania named Jāmḇa. The story is that while Vanarāja was looting with two others he came across a merchant Jāmḇa who had five arrows. Seeing only three enemies, Jāmḇa broke and threw away two of the arrows, shouting 'One for each of you.' Vanarāja admiring his coolness persuaded Jāmḇa to join his band and found him so useful that he promised to make him minister. From the absence of any reference to him in these and similar tales it is probable that his uncle Surapāla died before the installing of Vanarāja. Vanarāja is said to have built at Anahilavāḍa a Jain temple of Pañchāsarā Pārasnāth so called because the image was brought from the old settlement of Pañchāsar. Mention of this temple continues during the Solanki and Vaghela times.

His Image.

Vanarāja is said to have placed a bowing image of himself facing the image of Pārasnāth. The figure of Vanarāja is still shown at Sidhpur

<sup>1</sup> The text is 'Pañchāsaratavarahadesyah.'

<sup>2</sup> Probably Kākrej famous for its bullocks.

<sup>3</sup> Stories of thieves refraining from plundering houses where they have accidentally laid their hands on salt or millet are common.

<sup>4</sup> The making of the installation mark on the forehead is the privilege of the king's sister who gives a blessing and receives a present of villages.

and a woodcut of it is given by the late Mr. Forbes in his *Rās Mālā*. It is clearly the figure of a king with the umbrella of state and a nimbus round the head and in the ears the long ornaments called *kundalas* noticed by Arab travellers as characteristic of the Balhara or Rāshtrakūṭa kings who were cotemporary with Vanarāja.<sup>1</sup> The king wears a long beard, a short waistcloth or *dhoti*, a waistband or *kammarband*, and a shoulder garment or *uparṇa* whose ends hang down the back. Besides the earrings he is adorned with bracelets armlets and anklets and a large ornament hangs across the chest from the left shoulder to the right hip. The right hand is held near the chest in the act of granting protection and the left hand holds something which cannot be made out. By his side is the umbrella-bearer and five other attendants. The statue closely resembles the lifesize figure of a king of the Solanki period lying in the yard of a temple at Māhā about twenty-four miles north of Somanātha Patan. At Somanātha Patan are similar but less rich cotemporary figures of local officers of the Solankis. Another similar figure of which only the torso remains is the statue of Anrāja the father of Vastupāla in a niche in Vastupāla's temple at Gumar. The details of this figure belong to the Solanki period.

**Chapter I**  
THE  
CHAVADAS  
A.D. 720-956  
Image of  
Vanarāja

The lists of Vanarāja's successors vary so greatly in the names, in the order of succession, and in the lengths of reigns, that little trust can be placed in them. The first three agree in giving a duration of 196 years to the Chavādā dynasty after the accession of Vanarāja. The accession of the Solanki founder Mūlarāja is given in the *Vichāras'reṇi* at Samvat 1017 and in the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* at Samvat 998 corresponding with the original difference of nineteen years (S. 802 and 821) in the founding of the city. This shows that though the total duration of the dynasty was traditionally known to be 196 years the order of succession was not known and guesses were made as to the duration of the different reigns. Certain dates fixed by inscriptions or otherwise known to some compilers and not known to others caused many discrepancies in the various accounts.

Vanarāja's  
Successors,  
A.D. 780-961

According to the calculations given above Vanarāja's reign lasted to about A.D. 780. Authorities agree that Vanarāja was succeeded by his son Yogarāja. The length of Yogarāja's reign is given as thirty-five years by the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* and the *Ratnamālā* and as twenty-one by the *Vichāras'reṇi*. That is according to the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* and *Ratnamālā* his reign closes in A.D. 841 (S. 897) and according to the *Vichāras'reṇi* in A.D. 836 (S. 891). On the whole the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* date A.D. 841 (S. 897) seems the more probable. The author of the *Vichāras'reṇi* may have mistaken the 7 of the manuscripts for a 1, the two figures in the manuscripts of that date being closely alike. If A.D. 780 is taken as the close of Vanarāja's reign and A.D. 806 as the beginning of Yogarāja's reign an interval of twenty-six years is left. This blank, which perhaps accounts for the improbably long reign and life assigned to Vanarāja, may have been filled by the forgotten reign of a childless elder brother of Yogarāja.

Yogarāja,  
A.D. 806-841

<sup>1</sup> Elliot and Dowson, I. 11.

**Chapter I.**

THE CHAVADÁS  
A.D. 720 - 956.

Yogarāja,  
A.D. 806 - 811.

Of Yogarāja the Prabandhachintāmaṇi tells the following tale. Kshemarāja one of Yogarāja's three sons reported that several ships were storm-stayed at Prabhāsa or Somanātha. The ships had 10,000 horses, many elephants, and millions of money and treasure. Kshemarāja prayed that he might seize the treasure. Yogarāja forbade him. In spite of their father's orders the sons seized the treasure and brought it to the king. Yogarāja said nothing. And when the people asked him why he was silent he answered: 'To say I approve would be a sin; to say I do not approve would annoy you. Hitherto on account of an ancestor's misdeeds we have been laughed at as a nation of thieves. Our name was improving and we were rising to the rank of true kings. This act of my sons has renewed the old stain. Yogarāja would not be comforted and mounted the funeral pyre.

Kshemarāja,  
A.D. 841 - 880.

According to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi in A.D. 841 (S. 898) Yogarāja was succeeded by his son Kshemarāja. The Vichāras'reni says that Yogarāja was succeeded by Ratnāditya who reigned three years, and he by Vairisimha who reigned eleven years. Then came Kshemarāja who is mentioned as the son of Yogarāja and as coming to the throne in A.D. 819 (S. 905). The relationship of Yogarāja to Ratnāditya and Vairisimha is not given. Probably both were sons of Yogarāja as the Prabandhachintāmaṇi mentions that Yogarāja had three sons. The duration of Kshemarāja's reign is given as thirty-nine years. It is probable that the reigns of the three brothers lasted altogether for thirty-nine years, fourteen years for the two elder brothers and twenty-five years for Kshemarāja the period mentioned by the Prabandhachintāmaṇi. Accepting this chronology A.D. 880 (S. 936) will be the date of the close of Kshemarāja's reign.

Chāmunda,  
A.D. 880-908.

According to the Vichāras'reni and the Sukritasankīrtana Kshemarāja was succeeded by his son Chāmunda. Instead of Chāmunda the Prabandhachintāmaṇi mentions Bhūyada perhaps another name of Chāmunda, as in the Prabandhachintāmaṇi the name Chāmunda does not occur. The Prabandhachintāmaṇi notes that Bhūyada reigned twenty-nine years and built in Anahilavāda Patan the temple of Bhūyadeshvar. The Vichāras'reni gives twenty-seven years as the length of Chāmunda's reign an insignificant difference of two years. This gives A.D. 908 (S. 964) as the close of Chāmunda's reign according to the Vichāras'reni.

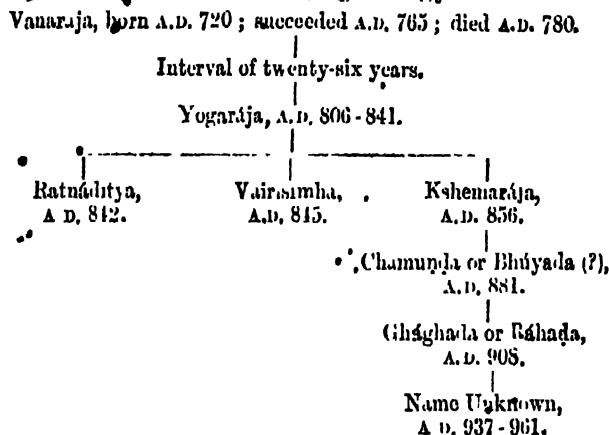
Ghaghada,  
A.D. 908-937.

After Bhūyada the Prabandhachintāmaṇi places Vairisimha and Ratnāditya assigning twenty-five and fifteen years as the reigns of each. The Vichāras'reni mentions as the successor of Chāmunda his son Ghaghada who is called Rāhada in the Sukritasankīrtana. Instead of Ghaghada the Prabandhachintāmaṇi gives Sāmantasimha or Lion Chieftain perhaps a title of Ghaghada's. The Vichāras'reni gives Ghaghada a reign of twenty-seven years and mentions as his successor an unnamed son who reigned nineteen years. The Sukritasankīrtana gives the name of this son as Bhūbhāṭa. According to these calculations the close of Ghaghada's reign would be A.D. 936 (Samvat 965 + 27 = 992). Adding nineteen years for Bhūbhāṭa's reign brings the date of the end of the dynasty to A.D. 956 (Samvat

993 + 19 = 1012) that is five years earlier than S. 1017 the date given by the Vichāras'reṇi. Until some evidence to the contrary is shown Merutunga's date A.D. 961 (S. 821 + 196 = 1017) may be taken as correct.

**Chapter I.**  
**THE CHAVADAS,**  
A.D. 720-956.

According to the above the Chāvadā genealogy stands as follows:



[The period of Chāvadā rule at Anahilavāḍa is likely to remain obscure until the discovery of contemporary inscriptions throws more light upon it than can be gathered from the confused and contradictory legends collected by the Solanki historians, none of whom are older than the twelfth century. For the present a few points only can be regarded as established:

- (i) The Chāvadās, Chāvotakas, or Chāpotkaṭas, are connected with the Chāpas of Bhīmāl and of Vadhvān and are therefore of Gurjjara race (Compare Ind. Ant. XVII. 192.)
- (ii) They probably were never more than feudatories of the Bhīmāl kings.
- (iii) Though the legend places the fall of Pañchāsar in A.D. 696 and the foundation of Anahilavāḍa in A.D. 746, the grant of Pulakeśi Janāśraya shows that a Chāvadā (Chāvotaka) kingdom existed in A.D. 728.

As regards the chronology of the dynasty, the explanation of the long life of 110 years ascribed to Vanarāja may be that a grandson of the same name succeeded the founder of the family. The name of Chamunḍa has, as Dr Bühler long ago pointed out, crept in through some error from the Solanki list. But when the same author in two different works gives such contradictory lists and dates as Merutunga does in his Prabandhachintāmaṇi and his Vicharas'reṇi, it is clearly useless to attempt to extract a consistent story from the chroniclers.—A.M. T. J.]

## CHAPTER II.

## THE CHAULUKYAS OR SOLANKIS

(A.D. 961-1242.)

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Authorities

THE next rulers are the Chaulukyas or Solankis (A.D. 961-1242) whose conversion to Jainism has secured them careful record by Jain chroniclers. The earliest writer on the Solankis, the learned Jain priest Hemachandra (A.D. 1089-1173), in his work called the *Dvyāśraya*, has given a fairly full and correct account of the dynasty up to Siddharāja (A.D. 1143). The work is said to have been begun by Hemachandra about A.D. 1160, and to have been finished and revised by another Jain monk named Abhayatilakagani in A.D. 1255.<sup>1</sup> The last chapter which is in Prakrit deals solely with king Kumārāpāla. This work is a grammar rather than a chronicle, still, though it has little reference to dates, it is a good collection of tales and descriptions. For chronology the best guide is the *Vichārasreṇi* which its author has taken pains to make the chief authority in dates. The *Vichārasreṇi* was written by Merutunga about A.D. 1311, some time after he wrote the *Prabandhachintamani*.

The Name  
Chaulukya

According to the *Vichārasreṇi* after the Chāvādās, in A.D. 961 (Vaishakh Suddha 1017), began the reign of Mūlarāja the son of a daughter of the last Chāvādā ruler. The name Chaulukya is a Sanskritised form, through an earlier form Chālukya, of the old names Chalkya, Chalkya, Chirikya, Chālukya of the great Dakhan dynasty (A.D. 552-973), made to harmonise with the Purāṇik-looking story that the founder of the dynasty sprang from the palm or *chuluka* of Brahma. The form Chaulukya seems to have been confined to authors and writers. It was used by the great Dakhan poet Bilhana (c. 1050 A.D.) and by the Anahilavāda chroniclers. In Gujarāt the popular form of the word seems to have been Solaki or Solanki (a dialectic variant of Chālukya), a name till lately used by Gujarāt bards. The sameness of name seems to show the Dakhan and Gujarāt dynasties to be branches of one stock. No materials are available to trace the original seat of the family or to show when and whence they came to Gujarāt. The balance of probability is, as Dr. Buhler holds, that Mūlarāja's ancestors came from the north.<sup>2</sup>

Mūlarāja,  
A.D. 961-996.

The *Sukritasankīrtana* says that the last Chāvādā king Bhūbhata was succeeded by his sister's son Mūlarāja. Of the family or country of Mūlarāja's father no details are given. The *Prabandhachintamani* calls Mūlarāja the sister's son of Sāmantasinha and gives the following details. In A.D. 930 of the family of Bhuiyāla (who destroyed Jayaśekhara) were three brothers Rāji, Bija, and Daṇḍaka, who stopped at Anahilavāḍa on their way back from a pilgrimage to Somanātha in the guise of Kārṇāṭika or Kāpdi beggars. The three brothers attended a cavalry

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. IV, 71-72 and VI, 180.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VI, 180ff. The suggestion may be offered that the Kanyākubja which is mentioned as the seat of Mūlarāja's ancestors, is Kanyākubja, an old name of Jamnāb. Compare Burgess' Kathiāwar and Kutch, 156.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Mularāja,  
A.D. 961 - 996.

parade held by king Śāmantasimha. An objection taken by Rāji to some of the cavalry movements pleased Śāmantasimha, who, taking him to be the scion of some noble family, gave him his sister Līlādevī in marriage. Līlādevī died pregnant and the child, which was taken alive from its dead mother's womb was called Mūlarāja, because the operation was performed when the Mūla constellation was in power. Mūlarāja grew into an able and popular prince and helped to extend the kingdom of his maternal uncle. In a fit of intoxication Śāmantasimha ordered Mūlarāja to be placed on the throne. He afterwards cancelled the grant. But Mūlarāja contended that a king once installed could not be degraded. He collected troops defeated and slew his uncle and succeeded to the throne in A.D. 942 (S. 998). The main facts of this tale, that Mūlarāja's father was one Rāji of the Chālukya family, that his mother was a Chāvādā princess, and that he came to the Chāvādā throne by killing his maternal uncle, appear to be true. That Mūlarāja's father's name was Rāji is proved by Dr. Bühler's copperplate of Mūlarāja.<sup>1</sup> Merutuṅga's details that Rāji came in disguise to Anahilavāḍa, took the fancy of Śāmantasimha, and received his sister in marriage seem fictions in the style common in the laudic praises of Rājput princes. Dr. Bühler's copperplate further disproves the story as it calls Mūlarāja the son of the illustrious Rāji, the great king of kings *Mahārājādhirāja*, a title which would not be given to a wandering prince. Rāji appears to have been of almost equal rank with the Chāvādās. The Ratnamālā calls Rāji fifth in descent from Bhuvāḍa, his four predecessors being Karnāditya, Chandraditya, Somāditya, and Bhuvanāditya. But the Ratnamālā list is on the face of it wrong, as it gives five instead of seven or eight kings to fill the space of over 200 years between Jayasēkhara and Mūlarāja.

Most Jain chroniclers begin the history of Anahilavāḍa with Mūlarāja who with the Jains is the glory of the dynasty. After taking the small Chāvādā kingdom Mūlarāja spread his power in all directions, overrunning Kāthiavāḍa and Kacch on the west, and fighting Bārappa of Lāṭa or South Gujarāt on the south, and Vighararāja king of Ajmir on the north. The Ajmir kings were called Sapādalaksha. Why they were so called is not known. This much is certain that Sapādalaksha is the Sanskrit form of the modern Sewālik. It would seem that the Chohāns, whom the Gujarāt Jain chroniclers call Sapādalakshīya, must have come to Gujarāt from the Sewālik hills. After leaving the Sewālik hills the capital was at Ajmir, which is usually said to have been first fortified by the Chohān king Ajayapāla (A.D. 1174-1177).<sup>2</sup> This story seems invented by the Chohāns. The name Ajmir appears to be derived from the Mehars who were in power in these parts between the fifth and the eighth centuries. The Hammīramahākāvya begins the Chohān genealogy with Vāsudeva (A.D. 780) and states that Vāsudeva's fourth successor Ajayapāla established the hill fort of Ajmir. About this time (A.D. 840) the Chohāns seem to have made settlements in the Ajmir country and to have harassed Gujarāt. Vighararāja the tenth in suc<sup>c</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. VI. 191ff.<sup>2</sup> Kirtane's Hammīramahākāvya, I.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Mularaja,  
A.D. 961-996.

cession from Vāsudeva is described as killing Mularāja and weakening the Gurjjara country.<sup>1</sup> The author of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi gives the following details. The Sapādalakṣha or Ajmir king entered Gujarāt to attack Mularāja and at the same time from the south Mularāja's territory was invaded by Bārappa a general of king Tailapa of Telingāna.<sup>2</sup> Unable to face both enemies Mularāja at his minister's advice retired to Kanthādurga apparently Kanthkot in Cutch.<sup>3</sup> He remained there till the Navarātra or Nine-Night festival at the close of the rains when he expected the Sapādalakṣha king would have to return to Ajmir to worship the goddess Sākambhari when Bārappa would be left alone. At the close of the rains the Sapādalakṣha king fixed his camp near a place called Sākambhari and bringing the goddess Sākambhari there held the Nine-Night festival. This device disappointed Mularāja. He sent for his *sāmantas* or nobles and gave them presents. He told them his plans and called on them to support him in attacking the Sapādalakṣha king. Mularāja then mounted a female elephant with no attendant but the driver and in the evening came suddenly to the Ajmir camp. He dismounted and holding a drawn sword in his hand said to the doorkeeper 'What is your king doing. Go and tell your lord that Mularāja waits at his door.' While the attendant was on his way to give the message, Mularāja pushed him on one side and himself went into the presence. The doorkeeper called 'Here comes Mularāja.' Before he could be stopped Mularāja forced his way in and took his seat on the throne. The Ajmir king in consternation asked 'Are you Mularāja?' Mularāja answered 'I would regard him as a brave king who would meet me face to face in battle. While I was thinking no such brave enemy exists, you have arrived. I ask no better fortune than to fight with you. But as soon as you are come, like a bee falling in at dinner time, Bārappa the general of king Tailapa of Telingana has arrived to attack me. While I am punishing him you should keep quiet and not give me a side blow.' The Ajmir king said, 'Though you are a king, you have come here alone like a foot soldier, not caring for your safety. I will be your ally for life.' Mularāja replied 'Say not so.' He refused the Rāja's invitation to dine, and leaving sword in hand mounted his elephant and with his nobles attacked the camp of Bārappa. Bārappa was killed and eighteen of his elephants and 10,000 of his horses fell into Mularāja's hands. While returning with the spoil Mularāja received news that the Sapādalakṣha king had fled.

<sup>1</sup> The Chohans of Ajmir were also known as the rulers of Sākambhari, the Sāmbar lake in Rajputāna on the borders of Jaipur and Jodhpur. The corrected edition of the Harsha inscription published by Prof. Kielhorn in *Epigraphia Indica* II. 116ff. shows that their first historical king was Guvaka, who reigned some time in the first half of the ninth century (c. 820 A.D.) The Chohans are still very numerous in the neighbourhood of the Sewālik hills, especially in the districts of Ambālā and Karnāl. Compare Ibbetson's *Panjab Census* for 1881.

<sup>2</sup> It appears from the grant of Saka 972 published by Mr. Dhruva in *Ind. Ant.* XII. 196 and from the Surat grant of Kirttirāja dated Saka 940, that this Bārappa was the founder of a dynasty who ruled Lāṭa or South Gujarāt as under-kings of the Dakhan Chalukyas until at least A.D. 1050. Bārappa was, as his name shows, a Southerner from the Kānārese country, but his descendants spell the family name Chaulukya in the same way as the dynasty of Anahilavāja.

<sup>3</sup> Dr. Bühler (*Ind. Ant.* XII. 123) sees a reference to this retirement in Mularāja's grant of Samvat 1043.

This story of the author of the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* differs from that given by the author of the *Hamīrakāvya* who describes Mūlarāja as defeated and slain. The truth seems to be that the Ajmir king defeated Mūlarāja and on Mūlarāja's submission did not press his advantage. In these circumstances Mūlarāja's victory over Bārappa seems improbable. The *Dvyāśraya* devotes seventy-five verses (27-101) of its sixth chapter to the contest between Bārappa and Mūlarāja. The details may be thus summarised. Once when Mūlarāja received presents from various Indian kings Dvārappa<sup>1</sup> king of Lātadeśa sent an ill-omened elephant. The marks being examined by royal officers and by prince Chāmunda, they decided the elephant would bring destruction on the king who kept him. The elephant was sent back in disgrace and Mūlarāja and his son started with an army to attack Lātadeśa and avenge the insult. In his march Mūlarāja first came to the Svabhṛavati or Sabarmatī which formed the boundary of his kingdom, frightening the people. From the Sabarmatī he advanced to the ancient Purī<sup>2</sup> where also the people became confused. The Lāta king prepared for fight, and was slain by Chāmunda in single combat. Mūlarāja advanced to Broach where Bārappa who was assisted by the island kings opposed him. Chāmunda overcame them and slew Bārappa. After this success Mūlarāja and Chāmunda returned to Anahilapura.<sup>3</sup>

The *Dvyāśraya* styles Bārappa king of Lātadeśa; the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* calls him a general of Tailapa king of Telingāna; the *Sukṛitasankīrtana* a general of the Kanyākubja king; and the *Kīrtikaumudī*<sup>4</sup> a general of the Lord of Lāta.

Other evidence proves that at the time of Mūlarāja a Chaulukya king named Bārappa did reign in Lātadeśa. The Surat grant of Kīrtirāja grandson of Binappa is dated A.D. 1018 (Saka 940). This, taking twenty years to a king, brings Bārappa's date to A.D. 978 (Saka 900), a year which falls in the reign of Mūlarāja (A.D. 961-996; S. 1027-1053). The statement in the *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* that Bārappa was a general of Tailapa seems correct. The southern form of the name Bārappa supports the statement. And as Tailapa overthrew the Rāshtrakūṭas in A.D. 972 (Saka 894) he might well place a general in military charge of Lāta, and allow him practical independence. This would explain why the *Dvyāśraya* calls Bārappa king of Lātadeśa and why the *Kīrtikaumudī* calls him general of the Lord of Lāta.

One of Mūlarāja's earliest wars was with Graharipu the Abhīra or Chudāsamā ruler of Sorath.<sup>5</sup> According to Mūlarāja's lauds, the cause

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Mūlarāja,  
A.D. 961-996.

<sup>1</sup> Apparently a Sanskrit form of Bārappa. <sup>2</sup> Broach according to the commentator.

<sup>3</sup> The *Sukṛitasankīrtana* mentions this defeat of Bārappa who is said to be a general of the Kanyākubja or Kanauj king. The *Prabandhachintāmaṇi* (Mūlarāja-prabandha) also mentions the invasion and slaughter of Bārappa; but there is no reference to it in the grant of Bārappa's descendant Trilochanapāla (Ind. Ant. XI, 196ff.)

<sup>4</sup> Canto II. Verse 3.

<sup>5</sup> As Mr. Forbes rightly observed Graharipu the Planet-seizer is a made-up title based on the resemblance of the planet-seizer's name Kāhu to Rā the title of the Chudāsamās of Junāgaḥ. The personal name of the chief is not given and the list of the Junāgaḥ Chudāsamās is too incomplete to allow of identification.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Mularāja,  
A.D. 961-996.

of war was Graharipu's oppression of pilgrims to Prabhāsa. Graharipu's capital was Vāmanasthali, the modern Vantali nine miles west of Junāgadh, and the fort of Durgapalli which Graharipu is said to have established must be Junāgadh itself which was not then a capital. Graharipu is described as a cow-eating Mlechha and a grievous tyrant. He is said to have had much influence over Lākṣhā son of king Phula of Kacch and to have been helped by Turks and other Mlechhas. When Mularāja reached the Jambumālī river, he was met by Graharipu and his army. With Graharipu was Lākṣhā of Kacch, the king of Sindh probably a Sumrā, Mewās Bhilas, and the sons of Graharipu's wife Nīlī who had been summoned from near the Bhadar river by a message in the Yavana language.<sup>1</sup> With Mularāja were the kings of Silāprastha,<sup>2</sup> of Mārwar, of Kāśī, of Arbuda or Abu, and of Śrīmūla or Bhīnmāl. Mularāja had also his own younger brother Gangāmāh, his friend king Revatimitra, and Bhils. It is specially mentioned that in this expedition Mularāja received no help from the sons of his paternal uncles Bīja and Dandaka. The fight ended in Graharipu being made prisoner by Mularāja, and in Lākṣhā being slain with a spear. After the victory Mularāja went to Prabhāsa, worshipped the *lingā*, and returned to Anahilavāda with his army and 108 elephants.

According to the author of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi Lākṣhī met his death in a different contest with Mularāja. Lākṣhī who is described as the son of Phulakī and Kāmalatā daughter of Kīrttirāja a Parmār king, is said to have been invincible because he was under the protection of king Yaśovarman of Malwa. He defeated Mularāja's army eleven times. In a twelfth encounter Mularāja besieged Lākṣhī in Kapilakot, slew him in single combat, and trod on his flowing beard. Enraged at this insult to her dead son Lākṣhī's mother called down on Mularāja's descendants the curse of the spider poison that is of leprosy.<sup>3</sup>

Mr. Forbes, apparently from bardic sources, states that on his wife's death Rāji the father of Mularāja went to the temple of Vishnu at Dwarkā. On his return he visited the court of Lākṣhī Phulāni and espoused Lākṣhī's sister Rājyāji by whom he had a son named Rākhāich. This marriage proved the ruin of Rāji. In a dispute about precedence Lākṣhī slew Rāji and many of his Rājput followers, his wife Rājyāji becoming a Sati. Bīja the uncle of Mularāja urged his nephew to avenge his father's death and Mularāja was further incited against Lākṣhī because Lakha harboured Rākhāich the younger son of Rāji at his court as a rival to Mularāja.

According to the Dvyāśraya, either from the rising power of his son or from repentance for his own rough acts, after Chāmunda's victory over Bārappa Mularāja installed him as ruler and devoted himself to religion and charity. According to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi Mularāja built in Anahilavāda a Jain temple named Mūlavasatikā. But as the Nandi

<sup>1</sup> The mention of her name and of the language in which she wrote suggest something remarkable in the race and position of queen Nīlī.

<sup>2</sup> Perhaps Sītha in Jhālavad.

<sup>3</sup> The same account appears in the Kumārapālacharita.

symbol on his copperplate shows that Mularāja was a devoted Śaivite, it is possible that this temple was built by some Jain guild or community and named after the reigning chief.<sup>1</sup> Mularāja built a Mahādeva temple called Mūlasvāmi in Anahilavāda, and, in honour of Somanātha, he built the temple of Mūlesvara at Mandali-nagara where he went at the bidding of the god.<sup>2</sup> He also built at Anahilavāda a temple of Mahādevā called Tripurushaprāsāda on a site to which the tradition attaches that seeing Mularāja daily visiting the temple of Mūlanāthadeva at Mandali, Somanātha Mahādeva being greatly pleased promised to bring the ocean to Anahilavāda. Somanātha came, and the ocean accompanying the god certain ponds became brackish. In honour of these salt pools Mularāja built the Tripurushaprāsāda. Looking for some one to place in charge of this temple, Mularāja heard of an ascetic named Kauthak at Siddhapura on the banks of the Sarasvatī who used to fast every other day and on the intervening day lived on five morsels of food. Mularāja offered this sage the charge of the temple. The sage declined saying 'Authority is the surest path to hell.' Eventually Vayajalkadeva a disciple of the sage undertook the management on certain conditions. Mularāja passed most of his days at the holy shrine of Siddhapura, the modern Sidhpur on the Sarasvatī about fifteen miles north-east of Anahilavāda. At Sidhpur Mularāja made many grants to Brāhmins. Several branches of Gujarāt Brāhmins, Audichyas Śrīgaudas and Kanojias, trace their origin in Gujarāt to an invitation from Mularāja to Siddhapura and the local Puranas and Mahātmyas confirm the story. As the term Audichya means Northerner Mularāja may have invited Brāhmins from some such holy place as Kurukshetra which the Audichyas claim as their home. From Kanyakubja in the Madhyadesa between the Ganges and the Yamunā another equally holy place the Kanojias may have been invited. The Śrī Gaudas appear to have come from Bengal and Tirhut. Gauda and Tirhut Brāhmins are noted Tāntriks and Mantrasāstis a branch of learning for which both the people and the rulers of Gujarāt have a great fondness. Grants of villages were made to these Brāhmins. Sidhpur was given to the Audichyas, Simhapura or Sihor in Kathiavāda to some other colony, and Stambhatīrtha or Cambay to the Śrī Gaudas. At Siddhapura Mularāja built the famous temple called the Rudramahālaya or the great shrine of Rudra. According to tradition Mularāja did not complete the Rudramahālaya and Siddharāja finished it. In spite of this tradition it does not appear that Mularāja died leaving the great temple unfinished as a copperplate of A.D. 987 (S. 1043) records that

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS;  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Mularāja,  
A.D. 961 - 996

<sup>1</sup> Compare the Lakshmi-Vihāra Jain temple in Jesalmir built by the Jain Saṅgha and called after the reigning king Lakshmana.

<sup>2</sup> Dr. Bühler's copperplate of Mularāja records a grant to this temple, said to be of Mūlanāthadeva in Mandali in the Vardhi zilla, apparently the modern Mādal near Pāṭhchāsar in the Vaidhār province near Jhinjhuvāda. The grant is in Śamvat 1043 and is dated from Anahilapura though the actual gift was made at Śrīsthala or Sidhpur after bathing in the Sarasvatī and worshipping the god of the Rudramahālaya. The grant is of the village of Kamboika, the modern Kanboi near Modhera. Ind. Ant. VI. 192-193. The grant is said to have been written by a Kāyastha named Kaṣṭhapa and ends with the words "of the illustrious Mularāja."

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHATLUKYN,  
A.D. 961-1242  
Mularaja,  
A.D. 961-996.

Mularaja made the grant after worshipping the god of the Rudramahalaya on the occasion of a solar eclipse on the fifteenth of the dark half of Magha. It would seem therefore that Mularaja built one large Rudramahalaya which Siddharaja may have repaired or enlarged. Mularaja is said while still in health to have mounted the funeral pile, an act which some writers trace to remorse and others to unknown political reasons. The Vicharasreni gives the length of Mularaja's reign at thirty-five years A.D. 961-996 (S. 1017-1052); the Pralambachintamani begins the reign at A.D. 942 (S. 998) and ends it at A.D. 997 (S. 1053) that is a length of fifty-five years.<sup>1</sup> Of the two, thirty-five years seems the more probable, as, if the traditional accounts are correct, Mularaja can scarcely have been a young man when he overthrew his uncle's power.

Chamunda,  
A.D. 997-1010.

Of Mularaja's son and successor Chamunda no historical information is available. The author of the Pralambachintamani assigns him a reign of thirteen years. The author of the Dyvasraya says that he had three sons Vallabha Raja, Durlabha Raja, and Naga Raja. According to the account Chamunda installed Vallabha in A.D. 1010 (S. 1066) and went on pilgrimage to Benares. On his passage through Malwa Muñja the Malwa king carried off Chamunda's umbrella and other marks of royalty.<sup>2</sup> Chamunda went on to Benares in the guise of a hermit. On his return he prayed his son to avenge the insult offered by the king of Malwa. Vallabha started with an army but died of small-pox. The author of the Pralambachintamani gives Chamunda a reign of six months, while the author of the Vicharasreni entirely drops his name and gives a reign of fourteen years to Vallabha made up of the thirteen years of Chamunda and the six months of Vallabha. This seems to be a mistake. It would seem more correct, as is done in several copperplate lists, to omit Vallabha, since he must have reigned jointly with his father and his name is not wanted for purposes of succession. The Vicharasreni and the Pralambachintamani agree in ending Vallabha's reign in A.D. 1010 (S. 1066). The author of the Dyvasraya states that Chamunda greatly lamenting the death of Vallabha installed Vallabha's younger brother Durlabha, and himself retired to die at S'uklatirtha on the Nairadi.

Durlabha,  
A.D. 1010-1022

Durlabha whom the Sukritasankirtana also calls Jagatjampaka or World Guardian came to the throne in A.D. 1010 (S. 1066). The Pralambachintamani gives the length of his reign at eleven years and six months while the Vicharasreni makes it twelve years closing it in A.D. 1022 (S. 1078). The author of the Dyvasraya says that along with his brother Naga Raja, Durlabha attended the Svayamvara or bridegroom-choosing of Durlabha Devi the sister of Mahendra the

<sup>1</sup> The difference between 1052 and 1053 is probably only a few months.

<sup>2</sup> The fight with Muñja must have taken place about A.D. 1011 (S. 1067). As Chamunda started just after installing Vallabha the beginning of the reign must be before A.D. 997 as Tailapa who fought with Muñja died in that year. This is proved by a manuscript dated A.D. 994 (S. 1060) which gives the reigning king as Muñja. That Bhoja Muñja's successor was ruling in A.D. 1014 (S. 1070) makes it probable that Muñja's reign extended to A.D. 1011 (S. 1067).

Rāja of Nadol in Mārwar. The kings of Aṅga, Kāśī, Avantī, Chedi, Kuru, Hūna, Mathurā, Vindhya, and Andhra were also present.<sup>1</sup> The princess chose Durlabha and Mahendra gave his younger sister Lakshmi to Durlabha's brother Nāga Rāja. The princess' choice of Durlabha drew on him the enmity of certain of the other kings all of whom he defeated. The brothers then returned to Anahilavāḍa where Durlabha built a lake called Durlabhasarovara. The author of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi says that Durlabha gave up the kingdom to his son (?) Bhīma.<sup>2</sup> He also states that Durlabha went on pilgrimage and was insulted on the way by Muṇja king of Mālwa. This seems the same tale which the Dvyās'raya tells of Chāmunda. Since Muṇja cannot have been a cotemporary of Durlabha the Dvyās'raya's account seems correct.

Durlabha was succeeded by his nephew Bhīma the son of Durlabha's younger brother Nāga Rāja. The author of the Dvyās'raya says that Durlabha wishing to retire from the world offered the kingdom to his nephew Bhīma; that Bhīma declined in favour of his father Nāga Rāja; that Nāga Rāja refused; that Durlabha and Nāga Rāja persuaded Bhīma to take the government; and that after installing Bhīma the two brothers died together. Such a voluntary double death sounds unlikely unless the result was due to the machinations of Bhīma. The Prabandhachintāmaṇi gives Bhīma a reign of fifty-two years from A.D. 1022 to 1074 (S. 1078-1130), while the Vicharās'reṇi reduces his reign to forty-two years placing its close in A.D. 1064 (S. 1120). Forty-two years would seem to be correct as another copy of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi has 42.

Two copperplates of Bhīma are available one dated A.D. 1030 (S. 1086) eight or nine years after he came to the throne the other from Kacch in A.D. 1037 (S. 1093).

Bhīma seems to have been more powerful than either of his predecessors. According to the Dvyās'raya his two chief enemies were the kings of Sindh and of Chedi or Bundelkhand. He led a victorious expedition against Hammuka the king of Sindh, who had conquered the king of Sivasāna and another against Karna king of Chedi who paid tribute and submitted. The Prabandhachintāmaṇi has a verse, apparently an old verse interpolated which says that on the Mālwa king Bhoja's death, while sacking Dhārāpuri, Karna to Bhīma as his coadjutor, and that afterwards Bhīma's general Dāmara took Karna captive and won from him a gold *mandapukā* or canopy and images of Ganeśa and Nīlakaṭhes'vara Mahādeva. Bhīma is said to have presented the canopy to Śomanātha.

When Bhīma was engaged against the king of Sindh, Kulachandra the general of the Mālwa king Bhoja with all the Mālwa feudatories, invaded Anahilavāḍa, sacked the city, and sowed shell-money at the gate where the time-marking gong was sounded. So great was the

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Durlabha,  
A.D. 1010-1022.

Bhīma I.  
A.D. 1022-1064.

<sup>1</sup> This Svayamvara and the list of attendant and rival kings seem imaginary. The Nadol chiefship was not important enough to draw kings from the countries named.

<sup>2</sup> The text has son but Bhīma was Durlabha's nephew not his son.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAUUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.Bhīma I.  
A.D. 1022-1064.

loss that the 'sacking of Kulachandra' has passed into a proverb. Kulachandra also took from Anahilavāḍa an acknowledgment of victory or *jayapatra*. On his return Bhoja received Kulachandra with honour but blamed him for not sowing salt instead of shell-money.<sup>1</sup> He said the shell-money is an omen that the wealth of Mālwa will flow to Gujarāt. An unpublished inscription of Bhoja's successor Udayāditya in a temple at Udepur near Bhūlsā confirms the above stating that Bhīma was conquered by Bhoja's officers.<sup>2</sup>

The Solanki kings of Anahilapura being Śaivites held the god Somanātha of Prabhāsa in great veneration. The very ancient and holy shrine of Prabhāsa has long been a place of special pilgrimage. As early as the Yādavas of Dwarkā,<sup>3</sup> pilgrimages to Prabhāsa are recorded but the Mahābhārata makes no mention either of Somanātha or of any other Śaivite shrine. The shrine of Somanātha was probably not established before the time of the Valabhis (A.D. 480-767). As the Valabhi kings were most open-handed in religious gifts, it was probably through their grants that the Somanātha temple rose to importance. The Solankis were not behind the Valabhis in devotion to Somanātha. To save pilgrims from oppression Mūlarāja fought Graharipu the Abhīra king of Sorath.<sup>4</sup> Mūlarāja afterwards went to Prabhāsa and also built temples in Gujarāt in honour of the god Somanātha. As Mūlarāja's successors Chāmuṇḍa and Durlabha continued firm devotees of Somanātha during their reigns (A.D. 997-1022) the wealth of the temple must have greatly increased.

Mahmūd's  
Invasion,  
A.D. 1024.

No Gujarāt Hindu writer refers to the destruction of the great temple soon after Bhīma's accession.<sup>5</sup> But the Musalmān historians place beyond doubt that in A.D. 1024 the famous tenth raid of

<sup>1</sup> By sowing cowries Kulachandra may have meant to show the cheapness of Anahilavāḍa. Bhoja's meaning was that as shells are money, to sow shells was to sow Mālwa wealth in Gujarāt. If Kulachandra had sown salt all would have melted, and no trace been left. [This seems a symbolic later stage explanation. The sense seems to be shell-sowing keeps the Anahilavāḍa guardians in place since guardians can live in shells. Salt-sowing scares the guardian spirits and makes the site of the city a haunt of demons. Bhoja saw that thanks to his general the Luck of Anahilavāḍa would remain safe in the shells.]

<sup>2</sup> The Prabandachintāmaṇi tells other stories of the relations between Bhīma and Bhoja. Once when Gujarāt was suffering from famine Bhīma heard that Bhoja was coming with a force against Gujarāt. Alarmed at the news, Bhīma asked Dāmara his minister of peace and war to prevent Bhoja coming. Dāmara went to Mālwa, amused the king by witty stories, and while a play was being acted in court degrading and joking other kings, something was said regarding Tailapa of Telingana. On this Dāmara reminded the king that the head of his grandfather Muṇja was fixed at Tailapa's door. Bhoja grew excited and started with an army against Telingana. Hearing that Bhīma had come against him as far as Bhamapura (?) Bhoja asked Dāmara to prevent Bhīma advancing further. Dāmara stopped Bhīma by taking him an elephant as a present from Bhoja. The Prabandachintāmaṇi gives numerous other stories showing that at times the relations between Bhoja and Bhīma were friendly.

<sup>3</sup> See above page 9.

<sup>4</sup> See above page 160.

<sup>5</sup> With this silence compare the absence (Reinaud's *Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 67) of any reference either in Sanskrit or in Buddhist books to the victories, even to the name, of Alexander the Great. Also in modern times the ignoring of British rule in the many inscriptions of Jain repairers of temples on Śatruṅḡaya hill who belong to British territory. The only foreign reference is by one merchant of Daman who acknowledges the protection of the Phirangi pāti Purntakāli Pātasāhi the king of the Firangi of Portugāl. Bühler in *Epigraphia Indica*, II, 36.

Mahmūd of Ghazni, ended in the destruction and plunder of Somanātha.<sup>1</sup>

Of the destruction of Somanātha the earliest Musalmān account, that of Ibn Asīr (A.D. 1160 - 1229), supplies the following details: In the year A.D. 1024 (H. 414) Mahmūd captured several forts and cities in Hind and he also took the idol called Somanātha. This idol was the greatest of all the idols of Hind. At every eclipse<sup>2</sup> the Hindus went on pilgrimage to the temple, and there congregated to the number of a hundred thousand persons. According to their doctrine of transmigration the Hindus believe that after separation from the body the souls of men meet at Somanātha; and that the ebb and flow of the tide is the worship paid to the best of its power by the sea to the idol.<sup>3</sup> All that is most precious in India was brought to Somanātha. The temple attendants received the most valuable presents, and the temple was endowed with more than 10,000 villages.<sup>4</sup> In the temple were amassed jewels of the most exquisite quality and of incalculable value. The people of India have a great river called Ganga to which they pay the highest honour and into which they cast the bones of their great men, in the belief that the deceased will thus secure an entrance to heaven. Though between this river and Somanātha is a distance of about 1200 miles (200 *parasangs*) water was daily brought from it to wash the idol.<sup>5</sup> Every day a thousand Brahmans performed the worship and introduced visitors.<sup>6</sup> The shaving of the heads and beards of pilgrims employed three hundred barbers.<sup>7</sup> Three hundred and fifty persons sang and danced at the gate of the temple,<sup>8</sup> every one receiving a settled daily allowance. When Mahmūd was gaining victories and demolishing idols in North India, the Hindus said Somanātha is displeased with these idols. If Somanātha had been satisfied with them no one could have destroyed or injured them. When Mahmūd heard this he resolved on making a campaign to destroy Somanātha, believing that when the Hindus saw their prayers and imprecations to be false and futile they would embrace the Faith.

So he prayed to the Almighty for aid, and with 30,000 horse besides volunteers left Ghazni on the 10th Sha'bān (H. 414, A.D. 1024).

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1212.  
Somanātha,  
A.D. 1024.

<sup>1</sup> Elliot and Dowson, II. 468ff. For H. M. Elliot gives extracts for this expedition from the *Tārīkh-i-Alfi*, *Tabakāt-i-Akbari*, *Tabakāt-i-Nasiri*, and *Rauzat-us-safā*.

<sup>2</sup> Since the earliest times Hindus have held eclipse days sacred. According to the *Mahabharata* the Yadavas of Dwarka came to Somanātha for an eclipse fair. Great fairs are still held at Somanātha on the Kartika and Chaitra (December and April) fullmoons.

<sup>3</sup> This old Indian idea is expressed in a verse in an inscription in Somanātha Patan itself.

<sup>4</sup> Ten thousand must be taken vaguely.

<sup>5</sup> Compare Sachau's Alberuni, II. 104. Every day they brought Somanātha a jug of Ganges water and a basket of Kashmir flowers. Somanātha they believed cured every inveterate sickness and healed every desperate and incurable disease. The reason why Somanātha became so famous was that it was a harbour for those who went to and from Sofala in Zanzibar to China. It is still the practice to carry Ganges water to bathe distant gods.

<sup>6</sup> These must be the local Sompura Brahmans who still number more than five hundred souls in Somanātha Patan.

<sup>7</sup> Shaving is the first rite performed by pilgrims.

<sup>8</sup> Dancers are now chiefly found in the temples of Southern India.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHALUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Somanátha,  
A.D. 1021.

He took the road to Multán and reached it in the middle of Ramzán. The road from Multán to India lay through a barren desert without inhabitants or food. Mahmúd collected provisions for the passage and loading 30,000 camels with water and corn started for Anahilaváda. After he had crossed the desert he perceived on one side a fort full of people in which place there were wells.<sup>1</sup> The leaders came to conciliate him, but he invested the place, and God gave him victory over it, for the hearts of the people failed them through fear. He brought the place under the sway of Islám, killed the inhabitants; and broke in pieces their images. His men carrying water with them marched for Anahilaváda, where they arrived at the beginning of Zilkáda.

The Chief of Anahilaváda, called Bhím, fled hastily, and abandoning his city went to a certain fort for safety and to prepare for war. Mahmúd pushed on for Somanátha. On his march he came to several forts in which were many images serving as chamberlains or heralds of Somanátha. These Mahmúd called Shaitán or devils. He killed the people, destroyed the fortifications, broke the idols in pieces, and through a waterless desert marched to Somanátha. In the desert land he met 20,000 fighting men whose chiefs would not submit. He sent troops against them, defeated them, put them to flight, and plundered their possessions. From the desert he marched to Dabalwárah,<sup>2</sup> two days' journey from Somanátha. The people of Dabalwárah stayed in the city believing that the word of Somanátha would drive back the invaders. Mahmúd took the place, slew the men, plundered their property, and marched to Somanátha.

Reaching Somanátha on a Thursday in the middle of Zilkáda Mahmúd beheld a strong fortress built on the sea-shore, so that its walls were washed by the waves.<sup>3</sup> From the walls the people jeered at the Musalmáns. Our deity, they said, will cut off the last man of you and destroy you all. On the morrow which was Friday the assailants advanced to the assault. When the Hindus saw how the Muhammadaus fought they abandoned their posts and left the walls. The Musalmáns planted their ladders and scaled the walls. From the top they raised their war-cry, and showed the night of Islám. Still their loss was so heavy that the issue seemed doubtful. A body of Hindus hurried to Somanátha, cast themselves on the ground before him, and besought him to grant them victory. Night came on and the fight was stayed.

Early next morning Mahmúd renewed the battle. His men made greater havoc among the Hindus till they drove them from the town to the house of their idol Somanátha. At the gate of the temple the slaughter was dreadful. Band after band of the defenders entered the temple and standing before Somanátha with their hands clasped round their necks wept and passionately entreated him. Then they issued forth to fight and fought till they were slain. The few left alive took

<sup>1</sup> Mahmúd seems to have crossed the desert from Multán and Baháwalpur to Bikanír and thence to Ajmir.

<sup>2</sup> Apparently Delváda near Uná. Mahmúd's route seems to have been from Anahilaváda to Modhera and Mándal, thence by the Little Ban near Pátri and Bajána, and thence by Jalvād Gohelvād and Bábriavád to Delváda.

<sup>3</sup> The waves still beat against the walls of the ruined fort of Somanátha.

to the sea in boats but the Musalmáns overtook them and some were killed and some were drowned.

The temple of Somanátha rested on fifty-six pillars of teakwood covered with lead.<sup>1</sup> The idol was in a dark chamber. The height of the idol was five cubits and its girth three cubits. This was what appeared to the eye; two cubits were hidden in the basement. It had no appearance of being sculptured. Mahmúd seized it, part of it he burnt, and part he carried with him to Ghazni, where he made it a step at the entrance of the Great Mosque.<sup>2</sup> The dark shrine was lighted by exquisitely jewelled chandeliers. Near the idol was a chain of gold 200 *manas* in weight. To the chain bells were fastened. And when each watch of the night was over the chain was shaken and the ringing of the bells roused a fresh party of Bráhmans to carry on the worship. In the treasury which was near the shrine were many idols of gold and silver. Among the treasures were veils set with jewels, every jewel of immense value. What was found in the temple was worth more than two millions of *diráms*. Over fifty thousand Hindus were slain.<sup>3</sup>

After the capture of Somanátha, Mahmúd received intelligence that Bhím the chief of Apahlaváda had gone to the fort of Khandahat,<sup>4</sup> about 240 miles (40 *parasangs*) from Somanátha between that place and the desert. Mahmúd marched to Khandahat. When he came before it he questioned some men who were hunting as to the tide. He learned that the ford was practicable, but that if the wind blew a little the crossing was dangerous. Mahmúd prayed to the Almighty and entered the water. He and his forces passed safely and drove out the enemy. From Khandahat he returned intending to proceed against Mansúra in central Sindh, whose ruler was an apostate Muhammadan. At the news of Mahmúd's approach the chief fled into the date forests. Mahmúd followed, and surrounding him and his adherents, many of them were slain, many drowned, and few escaped. Mahmúd then went

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Somanátha,  
A.D. 1024.

<sup>1</sup> This shows that the temple was a building of brick and wood. According to Alberuni (Sachau, II. 106) the temple was built about a hundred years before Mahmúd's invasion. An inscription at Patan states that Bhimadeva I (A.D. 1022-1072) rebuilt the Somanátha temple of stone. In Dr. Bhayya's opinion the first dynasty in Gujarat to make stone buildings were the Solankis. Before them buildings and temples were of wood and brick.

<sup>2</sup> Of the fate of the great Linga Alberuni (Sachau, II. 103) writes: Prince Mahmúd ordered the upper part to be broken. The rest with all its coverings and trappings of gold jewels and embroidered garments he transported to Ghazni. Part of it together with the brass Chakravarti or Vishnu of Thaneshvar has been thrown into the hippodrome of the town; part lies before the mosque for people to rub their feet on.

<sup>3</sup> The next paragraph relating to Mahmúd's return will be found on page 219 of the same volume of Sir H. Elliott's work.

<sup>4</sup> Khandahat which must have been on the coast has not been identified. The description suggests some coast island in the gulf of Kacch. By the Ginnar route forty *parasangs* that is 240 miles would reach the Kacch coast. Kanthkot in Vagad in east Kacch suits well in sound and is known to have been a favourite resort of the Solankis. But the ebb and flow of the tide close to it are difficult to explain. The identification with Kanthkot is favoured by Dr. Bühler. Colonel Watson (Kathiawár Gazetteer, 80) prefers Gándhvi on the Káthiaváda coast a few miles north-east of Míáni. M. Re naud and Dr. Weil suggest Gandhár in Broach on the left bank of the mouth of the Dhádhar river. Sir H. Elliot (I. 445 and II. 473) prefers Khandadár at the north-west angle of Káthiaváda.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242,  
Somanátha,  
A.D. 1024.

to Bhátia, and after reducing the inhabitants to obedience, returned to Ghazni where he arrived on the 10th Safar 417 H. (A.D. 1026).

The Rauzatu-s-safá of Mirkhand supplements these details with the following account of Mahmúd's arrangements for holding Gujarát: 'It is related that when Sultan Mahmúd had achieved the conquest of Somanátha he wished to fix his residence there for some years because the country was very extensive and possessed many advantages among them several mines which produced pure gold. Indian rubies were brought from Sarandíp, one of the dependencies of the kingdom of Gujarát. His ministers represented to Mahmúd that to forsake Khurásán which had been won from his enemies after so many battles and to make Somanátha the seat of government was very improper. At last the king made up his mind to return and ordered some one to be appointed to hold and carry on the administration of the country. The ministers observed that as it was impossible for a stranger to maintain possession he should assign the country to one of the native chiefs. The Sultan accordingly held a council to settle the nomination, in concurrence with such of the inhabitants as were well disposed towards him. Some of them represented to him that amongst the ancient royal families no house was so noble as that of the Dabshilíms of whom only one member survived, and he had assumed the habit of a Bráhmaṇ, and was devoted to philosophical pursuits and austerity.'<sup>1</sup>

That Mahmúd should have found it necessary to appoint some local chief to keep order in Gujarát is probable. It is also probable that he would choose some one hostile to the defeated king. It has been suggested above that Bhíma's uncle Durlabha did not retire but was ousted by his nephew and that the story of Vallabha and Durlabha dying together pointed to some usurpation on the part of Bhíma. The phrase the Dabshilíms seems to refer either to Durlabhasena or his son. Whoever was chosen must have lost his power soon after Mahmúd's departure.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> According to Ferishta (*Bombay Persian Ed I 57*, Briggs' Translation, I 74) Mahmúd stayed and meant to make his capital at Anahlaváda not at Somanátha. That Mahmúd did stay at Anahlaváda the Martyr's Mound and the Ghazni Mosque in Patan are evidence. Still the mound was probably raised and the mosque may at least have been begun in honour of the capture of Anahlaváda on the journey south. Traces of a second mosque which is said to have had a tablet recording Mahmúd of Ghazni as the builder have recently (1878) been found at Munjpur about twenty-five miles south east of Radhanpur.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' Ferishta, I 75. This account of the Dabshilíms reads more like a tradition than an historical record. It is to be noted that the authors both of the 'Ain-i-Akbari (A.D. 1583) and of the Mirat-i-Ahmadí (A.D. 1762) give Chámunḍa as king at the time of Mahmúd's invasion. Their statements cannot weigh against Ibn Asfir's account. Compare Dr. Bühler's remarks in *Ind. Ant.* VI. 184. Of Mahmúd's return to Ghazni (A.D. 1026) the Tabakat-i-Akbari says 'When Mahmúd resolved to return from Somanátha he learned that Parama Dev, one of the greatest Rájás of Hindustán, was preparing to intercept him. The Sultan, not deeming it advisable to contend with this chief, went towards Multán through Sindh. In this journey his men suffered much in some places from scarcity of water in others from want of forage. After enduring great difficulties he arrived at Ghazni in A.D. 1029 (H. 417).' This Parama Dev would seem to be the Parmara king of A'bu who could well block the Ajmir-Gujarát route. The route taken by Mahmúd must have passed by Mansúra near Bráhmaṇabád, Bhátia, and Multán. It

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Bhīma I.  
A.D. 1022-1064.

An inscription at Somanátha shows that soon after Mahmūd was gone Bhīmadeva began to build a temple of stone in place of the former temple of brick and wood.

A few years later Bhīma was on bad terms with Dhandhuka the Paramāra chief of Abu, and sent his general Vimala to subdue him. Dhandhuka submitted and made over to Vimala the beautiful Chitrakūṭa peak of Abu, where, in A.D. 1032 (S. 1089), Vimala built the celebrated Jain temples known as Vimalavasahī still one of the glories of Abu.<sup>1</sup>

Bhīma had three wives Udayāmatī who built a step-well at Anulā-vaḍa, Bukulādevī, and another. These ladies were the mothers of Karna, Kshemarāja, and Mularāja. Of the three sons Mularāja, though his mother's name is unknown, was the eldest and the heir-apparent. Of the kindly Mularāja the author of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi tells the following tale: In a year of scarcity the Kutumbikas or cultivators of Vishopaka and Dandāhi found themselves unable to pay the king his share of the land-produce. Bhīmarāja sent a minister to inquire and the minister brought before the king all the well-to-do people of the defaulting villages. One day prince Mularāja saw these men talking to one another in alarm. Taking pity on them he pleased the king by his skilful riding. The king asked him to name a boon and the prince begged that the demand on the villagers might be remitted. The boon was granted, the ryots went home in glee, but within three days Mularāja was dead. Next season yielded a bumper harvest, and the people came to present the king with his share for that year as well as with the remitted share for the previous year. Bhīmdev declined to receive the arrears. A jury appointed by the king settled that the usual share of the produce for both years should be placed in the king's hands for the erection of a temple called the new Tripurushaprāsāda for the spiritual welfare of prince Mularāja.<sup>2</sup>

must have been in the crossing of the great desert that he suffered so severely from scarcity of water and forage. Ferishta (Briggs, I. 75) says that many of Mahmūd's troops died raging mad from the intolerable heat and thirst. The historian Muhammad 'U'n (A.D. 1200) alleges (Elliot, II. 192) that two Hindus disguised as countrymen offered themselves as guides and led the army three days' march out of the right course, where they were saved only by Mahmūd's fortuitous discovery of a pool of sweet water. [The tale of the self-sacrificing Brahman or priest and the miraculous find of water has gathered round Mahmūd as the latest of myth centres. It is Herodotus' (Book II. 154-158) old Zopyrus tale (Rawlinson's Seventh Monarchy, 318) it is revived in honour of the Great Kushān Kamshika, A.D. 78 (Begum in Elliot, II. 11), of the Sassanian Firoz A.D. 457-483 (Rawlinson's Seventh Monarchy, 318), and of a certain king of Zabulistan or Ghazni of uncertain date (Elliot II. 170). Similarly the puzzling Dabshilīm tale seems to be peculiar neither to Gujarat nor to Mahmūd of Ghazni. It seems a repetition of the tale of Dabshilīm the man of the royal race, who, according to the Panchatantra or Fables of Pilpai, was chosen successor of Porus after Alexander the Great's Viceroy had been driven out. (Compare Remand's *Mémoire Sur l'Inde*, 127-128.) The *Tabakat-i-Nāsiri* (A.D. 1227) adds (Elliot, II. 475) that the guide devoted his life for the sake of Somanátha and this account is adopted by Ferishta. Briggs' Translation, I. 78.]

<sup>1</sup> Vasahis Prākṛit for Vasati that is residence. The word is used to mean a group of temples.

<sup>2</sup> Several later mentions of a *Tripurushaprāsāda* show there was only one building of that name. The statement that the great Mularāja I. built a *Tripurushaprāsāda* seems a mistake, due to a confusion with prince Mularāja.

## Chapter II.

THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.Bhīma I.  
A.D. 1022-1064.

Bhīma reigned forty-two years. Both the Prabandhachintāmaṇi and the Vichārasaṇi mention Karna as his successor. According to the Dvyāśraya Bhīma, wishing to retire to a religious life, offered the succession to Kshemarāja. But Kshemarāja also was averse from the labour of ruling and it was settled that Karna should succeed.

Bhīma died soon after and Kshemarāja retired to a holy place on the Sarasvatī named Mundakeśvara not far from Anahilavāda. Karna is said to have granted Dahithālī a neighbouring village to Devaprāsāda the son of Kshemarāja that he might attend on his father in his religious seclusion. But as the Kumārāpālacharita mentions Kshemarāja being settled at Dahithālī as a ruler not as an ascetic it seems probable that Dahithālī was granted to Kshemarāja for maintenance as villages are still granted to the *bhāyās* or brethren of the ruler.

Karna,  
A.D. 1064-1094.

Karna who came to the throne in A.D. 1064 (S. 1120) had a more peaceful reign than his predecessors. He was able to build charitable public works among them a temple called Karna-meru at Anahilavāda. His only war was an expedition against Ashā Bhil, chief of six lakhs<sup>1</sup> of Bhils residing at Ashāpallī the modern village of Asāval near Ahmadābād.<sup>2</sup> Ashā was defeated and slain. In consequence of an omen from a local goddess named Kochharva,<sup>3</sup> Karna built her a temple in Asāval and also built temples to Jayantī Devī and Karneśvara Mahadeva. He made a lake called Karnasāgara and founded a city called Karnāvātī which he made his capital.

Karna had three ministers Munjāla, Sāntu, and Udaya. Udaya was a Śīmālī Vāṇiā of Mārwar, who had settled in Anahilavāda and who was originally called Udā. Sāntu built a Jain temple called Sāntu-vasahī and Udā built at Karnāvātī a large temple called Udaya-varāha, containing seventy-two images of Tirthankars, twenty-four past twenty-four present and twenty-four to come. By different wives Udā had five sons, Ahada or Asthāda, Chāhāda, Bāhāda, Āmbāda, and Sollā, of whom the last three were half brothers of the first two.<sup>4</sup> Except Sollā, who continued a merchant and became very wealthy, all the sons entered the service of the state and rose to high stations during the reign of Kumārāpāla.

In late life Karna married Mīyāṇalladevī daughter of Jayakeśi son of Subhakeśi king of the Karnaṭaka. According to the Dvyāśraya a wandering painter showed Karna the portrait of a princess whom he described as daughter of Jayakeśi the Kadamba king<sup>5</sup> of

<sup>1</sup> Meaning a large number of Bhils of whom Ashā was the head.

<sup>2</sup> Forbes' Rās Malī (New Ed.), 79.

<sup>3</sup> Probably a Bhil goddess. The name does not sound Sanskrit.

<sup>4</sup> In one passage the Prabandhachintāmaṇi calls these princes half-brothers of Udaya. Further details show that they were half-brothers of one another and sons of Udaya.

<sup>5</sup> This Jayakeśi is Jayakeśi I. son of Shashthadeva (S'uchakeśi) the third of the Goa Kadambas. Jayakeśi's recorded date A.D. 1052 (S. 974) fits well with the time of Karna (Fleet's Kānārese Dynasties, 91). The Prabandhachintāmaṇi tells the following story of the death of Jayakeśi. Jayakeśi had a favourite parrot whom he

Chandrapura<sup>1</sup> in the Dakhan, and who he said had taken a vow to marry Karna. In token of her wish to marry Karna the painter said the princess had sent Karna an elephant. Karna went to see the present and found on the elephant a beautiful princess who had come so far in the hope of winning him for a husband. According to the Prabandhachintamani Karna found the princess ugly and refused to marry her. On this the princess with eight attendants determined to burn themselves on a funeral pyre and Udayamatī Karna's mother also declared that if he did not relent she too would be a sacrifice. Under this compulsion Karna married the princess but refused to treat her as a wife. The minister Muñjala, learning from a *kañchukī* or palace-servant that the king loved a certain courtesan, contrived that Miyānalladevī should take the woman's place, a device still practised by ministers of native states. Karna fell into the snare and the queen became pregnant by him, having secured from the hand of her husband his signet ring as a token which could not be disclaimed. Thus in Karna's old age Miyānalladevī became the mother of the illustrious Siddharāja Jayasimha, who, according to a local tradition quoted by Mr. Forbes, first saw the light at Palanpur.<sup>2</sup> When three years old the precocious Siddharāja climbed and sat upon the throne. This ominous event being brought to the king's notice he consulted his astrologers who advised that from that day Siddharāja should be installed as heir-apparent.

The Gujarāt chronicles do not record how or when Karna died. It appears from a manuscript that he was reigning in A.D. 1089 (S. 1145).<sup>3</sup> The Hammīramahakāvya says 'The illustrious Karna-deva was killed in battle by king Duśśala of Śakambhārī,' and the two appear to have been contemporaries.<sup>4</sup> The author of the Dvyāśraya says that Karna died fixing his thoughts on Vishnu, recommending to Siddharāja his cousin Devaprasāda son of Kshemarāja. According to the Prabandhachintamani Vichārasreṇī and Sukṛitāsankīrtana Karna died in A.D. 1094 (S. 1150).

As, at the time of his father's death, Siddharāja was a minor<sup>5</sup> the reins of government must have passed into the hands of his mother Miyānalladevī. That the succession should have been attended with struggle and intrigue is strange. According to the Dvyāśraya Devaprasāda, the son of Kshemarāja burned himself on the funeral pile shortly after the death of Karna, an action which was probably the result of some intrigue regarding the succession. Another intrigue

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Karna,  
A.D. 1064 - 1094.

Siddharāja  
Jayasimha,  
A.D. 1094 - 1143.

one day asked to come out of his cage and dine with him. The parrot said: 'The cat sitting near you will kill me. The king seeing no cat replied: If any cat kills you I too will die. The parrot left his cage, ate with the king, and was killed by the cat. Jayakesī made ready his funeral pyre, and, in spite of his minister's prayers, taking the dead parrot in his hand laid himself on the funeral pyre and was burned.'

<sup>1</sup> Chandrapura is probably Chandāvar near Gokarn in North Kānara.

<sup>2</sup> Rās Malā (New Edition), 83.

<sup>3</sup> Kielhorn's Report on Sanskrit Manuscripts for 1881 page 22.

<sup>4</sup> Duśśala was sixth in descent from Vighraharāja the enemy of Mūlarāja from whom Karna was fifth in descent.

<sup>5</sup> The date of his installation is given by the author of the Vichārasreṇī as Vikrama S. 1160.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

ended in the death of Madanapāla brother of Karna's mother queen Udayāmati, at the hands of the minister Śāntu, who along with Muñjāla and Udā, helped the queen-mother Miyānalladevī during the regency. Muñjāla and Śāntu continued in office under Siddharāja. Another minister built a famous Jain temple named Mahārājabhuvana in Sidhpur at the time when Siddharāja built the Rudramālā. An inscription from a temple near Bhadrēsar in Kach dated A.D. 1139 (S. 1195 Āshāḍha Vād 10, Sunday), in recording grants to Andichya Brahmins to carry on the worship in an old temple of Udalesvara and in a new temple of Kumārapālesvara built by Kumārapāla son of the great prince Āsapala,<sup>1</sup> notes that Dadaka was then minister of Siddharāja. Among his generals the best known was a chief named Jagaddeva (Jag Dev), commonly believed to be a Paramāra, many of whose feats of daring are recorded in bardic and popular romances.<sup>2</sup> Though Jag Dev is generally called a Paramāra nothing of his family is on record. The author of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi describes Jagaddeva as a thrice valiant warrior held in great respect by Siddharāja. After Siddharāja's death Jagaddeva went to serve king Permādi to whose mother's family he was related.<sup>3</sup> Permādi gave him a chiefship and sent him to attack Malava.

When Siddharāja attained manhood his mother prepared to go in great state on pilgrimage to Somanātha. She went with rich offerings as far as Bāhuloda apparently the large modern village of Bholāda on the Gujarāt-Kathiavāda frontier about twenty-two miles south-west of Dholkā. At this frontier town the Anahilavāda kings levied a tax on all pilgrims to Somanātha. Many of the pilgrims unable to pay the tax had to return home in tears. Miyānalladevī was so saddened by the woes of the pilgrims that she stopped her pilgrimage and returned home. Siddharāja met her on the way and asked her why she had turned back. Miyānalladevī said, I will neither eat nor go to Somanātha until you order the remission of the pilgrim tax. Siddharāja called the Bholāda treasurer and found that the levy yielded 72 lakhs a year.<sup>4</sup> In spite of the serious sacrifice Siddharāja broke the board authorizing the levy of the tax and pouring water from his hand into his mother's declared that the merit of the remission was hers. The queen went to Somanātha and worshipped the god with gold presenting an elephant and other gifts and handing over her own weight in money.

According to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi while Miyānalladevī and Siddharāja were on pilgrimage Yasovarman king of Mālwa continually harassed the Gurjjara-Maṇḍala. Śāntu who was in charge of the kingdom asked Yasovarman on what consideration he would retire.

<sup>1</sup> Āsapala and Kumārapāla appear to be local chiefs.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Forbes' *Ras Mal*, I. 114-153.

<sup>3</sup> The Kulāmba inscriptions say that Jagaddeva was the cousin of the Goa Kādamba king Vijayarka the nephew of Miyānalladevī and call him by courtesy the younger brother of Vijayarka's son Jayakesī II. He would seem to have been held in esteem by Vijayarka and his son Jayakesī, to have then gone for some time to Siddharāja, and after leaving Siddharāja to have transferred his services to Permādi. His being called Paramāra may be due to his connection with Permādi. Fleet's *Kānarese Dynasties*, 91.

<sup>4</sup> Seventy-two a favourite number with Indian authors.

Yasovarman said he would retire if Siddharāja gave up to him the merit of the pilgrimage to Somesvara. Santu washed his feet and taking water in his hand surrendered to Yasovarman the merit of Siddharāja, on which, according to his promise, Yasovarman retired. On his return Siddharāja asked Santu what he meant by transferring his sovereign's merit to a rival. Santu said, 'If you think my giving Yasovarman your merit has any importance I restore it to you.' This curious story seems to be a Jain fiction probably invented with the object of casting ridicule on the Brāhmanical doctrine of merit. Yasovarman was not a cotemporary of Siddharāja. The Malwa king referred to is probably Yasovarman's predecessor Naravarman, of whom an inscription dated A.D. 1134 (S. 1190) is recorded.

Under the name Sadharo Jesingh, Siddharāja's memory is fresh in Gujarāt as its most powerful, most religious, and most charitable ruler. Almost every old work of architectural or antiquarian interest in Gujarāt is ascribed to Siddharāja. In inscriptions he is styled The great king of kings, The great lord The great Bhāṭṭāraka, The lord of Avantī, The hero of the three worlds, The conqueror of Barbaraka, The universal ruler Siddha, The illustrious Jayasinhadeva. Of these the commonest attributes are Siddhachakravartin the Emperor of Magic and Siddharāja the Lord of Magic, titles which seem to claim for the king divine or supernatural powers.<sup>1</sup> In connection with his assumption of these titles the Kumārapālprahandha, the Dyūśraya, and the Prābandhachintāmani tell curious tales. According to the Dyūśraya, the king wandering by night had subdued the Bhūtas, Sākinis, and other spirits. He had also learnt many *mantras* or charms. From what he saw at night he would call people in the day time and say 'You have such a cause of uneasiness' or 'You have such a comfort.' Seeing that he knew their secrets the people thought that the king knew the hearts of all men and must be the *avatāra* of some god. A second story tells how Siddharāja helped a Nāga prince and princess whom he met by night on the Sarasvatī.<sup>2</sup> According to a third story told in the Kumārapālprahandha two Yoginis or nymphs came from the Himalayas and asked the king by what mystic powers he justified the use of the title Siddharāja. The king agreed to perform some wonders in open court in the presence of the nymphs. With the help of a former minister, Lūpāka, the king had a dagger prepared whose blade was of sugar and its handle of iron set with jewels. When the king appeared in court to perform the promised wonders a deputation of ambassadors from king Permādi of Kalyānakataka<sup>3</sup> was

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

<sup>1</sup> Prābandhachintāmani and Kumārapālacharita.

<sup>2</sup> Dr. Kielhorn's Report on Sanskrit Manuscripts for 1881 page 22.

<sup>3</sup> The Kumārapālacharita says that the title was assumed on the conquest of Barbaraka. The verse is :

सिद्धो बर्बरकश्चास्य सिद्धराजस्ततोभवत्

that is, by him the demon Barbaraka was vanquished, therefore he became Siddharāja The Lord of Magical Power.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant. IV. 265.

<sup>5</sup> This Permādi may be the Goa Kādamba chief Permādi Sivachitta (A.D. 1147-1175), who was heir-apparent in the time of Siddharāja, or the Sinda chief Permādi who was a cotemporary of Siddharāja and flourished in A.D. 1144.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasinha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

announced. The deputation entered and presented the prepared dagger as a gift from their lord. The king kept the prepared dagger and in its stead sent all round the court a real dagger which was greatly admired. After the real dagger had been seen and returned the king said : I will use this dagger to show my mystic powers, and in its place taking the false dagger ate its sugar blade. When the blade was eaten the minister stopped the king and said 'Let the Yoginis eat the handle. The king agreed and as the Yoginis failed to eat the handle which was iron the superiority of the king's magic was proved.

A fourth story in the *Dvyāśraya* tells that when the king was planning an invasion of Mālwa a Yoginī came from Ujjain to Patan and said 'O Rāja, if you desire great fame, come to Ujjain and humbly entreat Kālīka and other Yoginīs and make friends with Yaśovarman the Rāja of Ujjain.' The king contemptuously dismissed her, saying, 'If you do not fly hence like a female crow, I will cut off your nose and ears with this sword.'

So also the king's acts of prowess and courage were believed to be due to magical aid. According to the common belief Siddharāja did his great acts of heroism by the help of a demon named Bābaro, whom he is said to have subdued by riding on a corpse in a burying ground. The story in the *Prabandhaśhūntāmāni* is similar to that told of the father of Harshavardhana who subdued a demon with the help of a Yogi. It is notable that the story had passed into its present form within a hundred years of Siddharāja's death. Somesvara in his *Kīrtikāumudī* says, 'This moon of kings fettered the prince of goblins Barbaraka in a burial-place, and became known among the crowd of kings as Siddharāja.' Older records show that the origin of the story, at least of the demon's name, is historical being traceable to one of Siddharāja's copperplate attributes Barbaraka-jishṇu that is conqueror of Barbaraka. The *Dvyāśraya*kosha represents this Barbara as a leader of Rākshasas or Mlechhas, who troubled the Brāhmanas at Sṛīsthala-Siddhapura. Jayasinha conquered him and spared his life at the instance of his wife Pīṅgalikā. Afterwards Barbara gave valuable presents to Jayasinha and 'served him as other Rajputs'.<sup>1</sup> Barbaraka

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. IV. 2. Regarding Barbaraka Doctor Buhler remarks in Ind. Ant. VI. 167 : 'The Varvarakas are one of the non Aryan tribes which are settled in great numbers in North Gujarat, Koli, Bhil, or Mer.' Siddharāja's contests with the Barbarakas seem to refer to what Tod (Western India, 173 and 196) describes as the inroads of mountaineers and foresters on the plains of Gujarat during the eleventh and twelfth centuries. To attempt to identify Bhūt Barbar or Varvaris is hazardous. The name Barbar is of great age and is spread from India to Morocco. Wilson (Works, VII. 176) says : The analogy between Barbaras and barbarians is not in sound only. In all Sanskrit authorities Barbaras are classed with borderers and foreigners and nations not Hindu. According to Sir Henry Rawlinson (Ferrier's Caravan Journeys, 223 note) tribes of Bezbars are found all over the east. Of the age of the word, Canon Rawlinson (Herodotus, IV. 252) writes : Barbar seems to be the local name for the early race of Accad. In India Ptolemy (A.D. 150; McCrindle's Edn. 146) has a town Barbarei on the Indus and the Periplus (A.D. 247; McCrindle's Ed. 108) has a trade-centre Barbarikon on the middle mouth of the Indus. Among Indian writings, in the Rāmāyana (Hall in Wilson's Works, VII. 176 Note \*) the Barbaras appear between the Tukharas and the Kambojas in the north; in the Mahābhārata (Muir's Sanskrit Texts, I. 481-2) in one list Var-varas are entered between Savaras and Sakas and in another list (Wilson's Works, VII. 176)

seems to be the name of a tribe of non-Aryans whose modern representatives are the Bābariās settled in South Kāthiāvāḍa in the province still known as Bābariāvāḍa.

A Dohad inscription of the time of Siddharāja dated A.D. 1140 (S. 1196) says of his frontier wars: 'He threw into prison the lords of Surāshtra and Mālwa; he destroyed Sindhurāja and other kings; he made the kings of the north bear his commands.' The Surāshtra king referred to is probably a ruler of the Khir or Chudāsamā tribe

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

Barbariās come between Kiratas and Siddhas. Finally (As. Res. XV. 47 footnote) Barbara is the northmost of the Seven Konkanas. The names Barbari in Ptolemy and Barbarikon in the Periplus look like some local place-name, perhaps Bambhara, altered to a Greek form. The Hindu tribe names, from the sameness in sound as well as from their position on the north-west border of India, suggest the Mongol tribe Juan-juān or Var-Var, known to the western nations as Avars who drove the Little Yurchi out of Balkh in the second half of the fourth century, and, for about a hundred years, ruled to the north and perhaps also to the south of the Hindu Kush. (Specht in *Journal Asiatique* 1883. II 390-410; Howorth in *Jour. R. A. S.* XXI 721-810.) It seems probable that some of these Var-Vars passed south either before or along with the White Huns (A.D. 450-550). Var, under its Mongol plural form Avarti (Howorth, *Ibid.* 722), closely resembles Avartiya one of the two main divisions of the Kāthiās of Kaerh (Mr. Erskine's List in *J. Bom. Geo. Soc.* II 59-60 for Aug. 1838). That among the forty-seven clans included under the Avartiyas four (Nos. 30, 35, 42, and 43) are Babariyas, suggests that the Kāthiās received additions from the Var-Vars at different times and places. Dr. Bühler (*Ind. Ant.* VI. 186) thinks that the Babato or Barbar or Var-Var who gave trouble to Siddharāja represent some early local non-Aryan tribe. The fact that they are called Rak-hasas and Mlecchas and that they stopped the ceremonies at Siddhpur north of Anahlavāḍa seems rather to point to a foreign invasion from the north than to a local uprising of hill tribes. Though no Musalmān invasion of Gujarat during the reign of Siddharāja is recorded a Jesalmir legend (*Forbes' Rās Mala*, I. 175) tells how Lanza Bhirao the Bhatti prince who married Siddharāja's daughter was hailed by his mother-in-law as the bulwark of Anahlavāḍa against the power of the king who grows too strong. This king may be Bahālm the Indian viceroy of the Ghaznavid Bahrām Shāh (A.D. 1116-1157). Bahālm (*Elliot*, II 279; *Bugge's Ferista*, I 151) collected an army of Arabs, Persians, Afghāns, and Khiljis, repaired the fort of Nagor in the province of Sewalik, and committed great devastations in the territories of the independent Indian rulers. He threw off allegiance to Ghazni and advancing to meet Bahrām Shāh near Multān was defeated and slain. Except that they were northerners and that Bahālm's is the only known invasion from the north during Siddharāja's reign nothing has been found connecting Barbar and Bahālm. At the same time that the Barbar or Var-Var of the Gujarāt writers may have been non-Hindu mercenaries from the north-west frontier whom Siddharāja admitted as Hindu subjects is made not unlikely by two incidents preserved by the Muhammadan historians. The *Tarikh-i-Sorāth* (Bayly's *Gujarat*, 36 Note \*) tells how in A.D. 1178 from the defeated army of Shahāb-ud-din Ghori the Turkish Afghān and Moghal women were distributed the higher class to high caste and the commoner to low caste Hindus. Similarly how the better class of male captives were admitted among Chakāval and Wāḍhal Rajputs and the lower among Khānts, Kohs, Bābriās, and Mers. Again about thirty years later (A.D. 1210) when his Turk mercenaries, who were not converted to Islām, revolted against Shamsu-ud-din Altamsh they seized Delhi and built Hindu temples (*Elliot*, II. 237-239). These cases seem to make it likely that among Bahālm's mercenaries were some un-Islamised North Indian Var-Vars and that they were admitted into Hindūsm by Siddharāja and as the story states served him as other Rajputs. Some of the new-comers as noted above seem to have merged into the Kāthiās. Others founded or joined the Babariās who give their name to Bābariāvāḍa a small division in the south of Kāthiāvāḍa. Though the tribe is now small the 79 divisions of the Babariās show that they were once important. One of their leading divisions preserves the early form Var (Kāthiawār Gazetteer, 132-133) and supports their separate northern origin, which is forgotten in the local stories that they are descended from Jetvas and Ahirs and have a Brāhman element in their ancestry. (Tod's *Western India*, 413; Kāthiawār Gazetteer, 132-123.) Of the Var-Vars in their old seats a somewhat doubtful trace remains in the Barbariās a tribe of Hazārās near Horas (Bollew in *Imp. and As. Quar. Review* Oct. 1891 page 328) and in the Panjāb (Ibbetson's *Census*, 588) Bhābras a class of Panjāb Jains.

## Chapter II.

THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.Siddharaja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

whose head-quarters were at Junágadh. According to the Prabandha-chintāmañi Siddharāja went in person to subdue Noghan or Navaghani the Khir ruler of Surāshtra; he came to Vardhamānapura that is Vadhvan and from Vadhvan attacked and slew Noghan. Jinaprabhasūri the author of the Tirthakalpa says of Gīrnār that Jayasinha killed the king named Khengār and made one Sajjana his viceroy in Surashtra. So many traditions remain regarding wars with Khengār that it seems probable that Siddharaja led separate expeditions against more than one king of that name. According to tradition the origin of the war with Khengār was a woman named Rānakadevi whom Khengāra had married. Rānakadevi was the daughter of a potter of Majevādi village about nine miles north of Junágadh, so famous for her beauty that Siddharaja determined to marry her. Meanwhile she had accepted an offer from Khengār whose subject she was and had married him. Siddharaja enraged at her marriage advanced against Khengār, took him prisoner, and annexed Sorath. That Khengār's kingdom was annexed and Sajjana, mentioned by Jinaprabhasūri, was appointed Viceroy is proved by a Gīrnār inscription dated A.D. 1120 (S. 1176).

An era called the Simha Samvatsara connected with the name of Jayasinha and beginning with A.D. 1113-1114 (S. 1169-70), occurs in several inscriptions found about Prabhāsa and South Kāthiavāḍa. This era was probably started in that year in honour of this conquest of Khengār and Sorath.<sup>1</sup> The earliest known mention of the Simha Samvatsara era occurs in a step-well at Māngrol called the Sodhali Yāv. The inscription is of the time of Kumārāpala and mentions Sahājiga the father of Mūlaka the grantor as a member of the bodyguard of the Chālukyas. The inscription states that Sahājiga had several sons able to protect Saurāshtra, one of whom was Somarāja who built the temple of Sahajigeśvara, in the enclosure of the Somanatha temple at Prabhāsa; another was Mūlaka the *nāyaka* of Surashtra, who is recorded to have made grants for the worship of the god by establishing cesses in Mangalapura or Māngrol and other places. The inscription is dated A. D. 1146 (Monday the 13th of the dark half of Aśvīn Vikrama S. 1202 and Simha S. 32). This inscription supports the view that the Simha era was established by Jayasinha, since if the era belonged to some other local chief, no Chālukya viceroy would adopt it. The Simha era appears to have been kept up in Gujarāt so long as Anahilapura rule lasted. The well known Verāval inscription of the time of Arjunadeva is dated Hijri 662, Vikrama S. 1320, Valabhi S. 945, Simha S. 151, Sunday the 13th of Aśhādha Vadi. This inscription shows that the Simha era was in use for a century and a half during the sovereignty of Anahilavāḍa in Surāshtra.

Regarding Sajjana Siddharāja's first viceroy in Surāshtra, the Prabandhachintāmañi says that finding him worthy the king appointed Sajjana the *daṇḍādhipati* of Surāshtradēśa. Without consulting his master Sajjana spent three years' revenue in building a stone temple of

<sup>1</sup> Abhayatilaka Gaṇi who revised and completed the *Dvyāsraya* in Vikrama S. 1312 (A.D. 1256) says, in his twentieth Sarga, that a new era was started by Kumārāpala. This would seem to refer to the Simha era.

## THE CHAULUKYAS.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAN,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

Neminātha on Girnār instead of a wooden temple which he removed. In the fourth year the king sent four officers to bring Sajjana to Ajahilavāda. The king called on Sajjana to pay the revenues of the past three years. In reply Sajjana asked whether the king would prefer the revenue in cash or the merit which had accrued from spending the revenue in building the temple. Preferring the merit the king sanctioned the spending of the revenues on the Tīrtha and Sajjana was reappointed governor of Sorath.<sup>1</sup> This stone temple of Sajjana would seem to be the present temple of Neminātha, though many alterations have been made in consequence of Muhammadan sacrilege and a modern enclosure has been added. The inscription of Sajjana which is dated A.D. 1120 (S. 1176) is on the inside to the right in passing to the small south gate. It contains little but the mention of the Śādhu who was Sajjana's constant adviser. On his return from a second pilgrimage to Somanātha Siddharāja who was encamped near Raivataka that is Girnār expressed a wish to see Sajjana's temple. But the Brāhmins envious of the Jains persuaded the king that as Girnār was shaped like a *ling* it would be sacrilege to climb it. Siddharāja respected this objection and worshipped at the foot of the mountain. From Girnār he went to Satruñjaya. Here too Brāhmins with drawn swords tried to prevent the king ascending the hill. Siddharāja went in disguise at night, worshipped the Jain god Adis'vara with Ganges water, and granted the god twelve neighbouring villages. On the hill he saw so luxuriant a growth of the *śallaki* a plant dear to elephants, that he proposed to make the hill a breeding place for elephants a second Vindhya. He was reminded what damage wild elephants would cause to the holy place and for this reason abandoned his plan.

Siddharāja's second and greater war was with Mālwa. The cotemporary kings of Mālwa were the Paramāra ruler Naravarman who flourished from A.D. 1104 to 1133 (S. 1160-1189) and his son and successor Yaśovarman who ruled up to A.D. 1143 (S. 1199) the year of Siddharāja's death. As the names of both these kings occur in different accounts of this war, and, as the war is said to have lasted twelve years, it seems that fighting began in the time of Naravarman and that Siddharāja's final victory was gained in the time of Yaśovarman in Siddharāja's old age about A.D. 1134 (S. 1190). This view is supported by the local story that his expedition against Yaśovarman was undertaken while Siddharāja was building the Sahasralinga lake and other religious works. It is not known how the war arose but the statement of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi that Siddharāja vowed to make a scabbard of Yaśovarman's skin seems to show that Siddharāja received grave provocation. Siddharāja is said to have left the building of the Sahasralinga lake to the masons and architects and himself to have

<sup>1</sup> The Kumārapālacharita states that Sajjana died before the temple was finished, and that the temple was completed by his son Paraśurāma. After the temple was finished Siddharāja is said to have come to Somanātha and asked Paraśurāma for the revenues of Sorath. But on seeing the temple on Girnār he was greatly pleased, and on finding that it was called Karuṣa-vihāra after his father he sanctioned the outlay on the temple.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHALUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

started for Málwa. The war dragged on and there seemed little hope of victory when news reached Siddharāja that the three south gates of Dhārā could be forced. With the help of an elephant an entrance was effected. Yaśovarman was captured and bound with six ropes, and, with his captured enemy as his banner of victory, Siddharāja returned to Aṇahilapura. He remembered his vow, but being prevented from carrying it out, he took a little of Yaśovarman's skin and adding other skin to it made a scabbard. The captured king was thenceforward kept in a cage. It was this complete conquest and annexation of Málwa that made Siddharāja assume the style of Avantinātha 'Lord of Avanti,' which is mentioned as his *biruda* or title in most of the Chalukya copperplates.<sup>1</sup> Málwa henceforward remained subject to Aṇahilavāda. On the return from Málwa an army of Bhīl, who tried to block the way were attacked by the minister Sāntu and put to flight.

Siddharāja's next recorded war is with king Madanavarman the Chandela king of Mahobaka the modern Mahobā in Bundelkhand. Madanavarman, of whom General Cunningham has found numerous inscriptions dating from A.D. 1130 to 1164 (S. 1186-1220),<sup>2</sup> was one of the most famous kings of the Chandela dynasty. An inscription of one of his successors in Kālanjar fort records that Madanavarman 'in an instant defeated the king of Gurjjara, as Krishna in former times defeated Kamsa,'<sup>3</sup> a statement which agrees with the Gujarāt accounts of the war between him and Jayasinha. In this conflict the Gujarāt accounts do not seem to show that Siddharāja gained any great victory; he seems to have been contented with a money present. The Kīrtikāumudī states that the king of Mahobaka honoured Siddharāja as his guest and paid a fine and tribute by way of hospitality. The account in the Kumārapālacharita suggests that Siddharāja was compelled to come to terms and make peace. According to the Kīrtikāumudī, and this seems likely, Siddharāja went from Dhārā to Kālanjara. The account in the Prabandhachintāmani is very confused. According to the Kumārapālacharita, on Siddharāja's way back from Dhārā at his camp near Patan a bard came to the court and said to the king that his court was as wonderful as the court of Madanavarman. The bard said that Madanavarman was the king of the city of Mahobaka and most clever, wise, liberal, and pleasure-loving. The king sent a courtier to test the truth of the bard's statement. The courtier returned after six months declaring that the bard's account was in no way exaggerated. Hearing this Siddharāja at once started against Mahobaka and encamping within sixteen miles of the city sent his minister to summon Madanavarman to surrender. Madanavarman who was enjoying himself took little notice of the minister. This king, he said, is the same who had to fight twelve years with Dhārā; if, as is probable, since he is a *kaḍādi* or wild king, he wants money, pay him what he wants. The money

<sup>1</sup> Ind. Ant. VI 194ff. Dr. Bühler (Ditto) takes Avantinātha to mean Siddharāja's opponent the king of Málwa and not Siddharāja himself.

<sup>2</sup> Archaeological Survey Report, XXI. 86

<sup>3</sup> Jour. B. A. Soc. (1848), 319.

was paid. But Siddharāja was so struck with Madanavarman's indifference that he would not leave until he had seen him. Madanavarman agreed to receive him. Siddharāja went with a large bodyguard to the royal garden which contained a palace and enclosed pleasure-house and was guarded by troops. Only four of Siddharāja's guards were allowed to enter. With these four men Siddharāja went in, was shown the palace garden and pleasure-houses by Madanavarman, was treated with great hospitality, and on his return to Patan was given a guard of 120 men.

The Dvyāsraya says that after his conquest of Ujjain Siddharāja seized and imprisoned the king of a neighbouring country named Sim. We have no other information on this point.

The Dohad inscription dated A.D. 1140 mentions the destruction of Sindhurāja that is the king of Sindhu and other kings. The Kīrtikaumudī also mentions the binding of the lord of Sindhu. Nothing is known regarding the Sindhu war. The Kīrtikaumudī mentions that after a war with Arjorāja king of Sāmbhar Siddharāja gave his daughter to Arjorāja. This seems to be a mistake as the war and alliance with Arjorāja belong to Kumārāpāla's reign.

Siddharāja, who like his ancestors was a Śaiva, showed his zeal for the faith by constructing the two grandest works in Gujarāt the Rudramahālaya at Siddhpur and the Sahasralinga lake at Patan. The Jain chroniclers always try to show that Siddharāja was favourably inclined to Jainism. But several of his acts go against this claim and some even show a dislike of the Jains. It is true that the Jain sage Hemāchārya lived with the king, but the king honoured him as a scholar rather than as a Jain. On the occasion of the pilgrimage to Somanātha the king offered Hemāchārya a palanquin, and, as he would not accept the offer but kept on walking, the king blamed him calling him a learned fool with no worldly wisdom. Again on one occasion while returning from Mālwa Siddharāja encamped at a place called Śrīnagura, where the people had decorated their temples with banners in honour of the king. Finding a banner floating over a Jain temple the king asked in anger who had placed it there, as he had forbidden the use of banners on Jain shrines and temples in Gujarāt. On being told that it was a very old shrine dating from the time of Bharata, the king ordered that at the end of a year the banner might be replaced. This shows the reverse of a leaning to Jainism. Similarly, according to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi, Hemāchārya never dared to speak to the king in favour of Jainism but used to say that all religions were good. This statement is supported by the fact that the opening verses of all works written by Hemāchārya in the time of Siddharāja contain no special praise of Jain deities.

So great is Siddharāja's fame as a builder that almost every old work in Gujarāt is ascribed to him. Tradition gives him the credit of the Dabhoi fort which is of the time of the Vāghelā king Vīradhavalā, A.D. 1220-1260. The Prabandhachintāmaṇi gives this old verse regarding Siddharāja's public works : ' No one makes a great temple (Rudramahālaya), a great pilgrimage (to Somanātha), a great Āsthāna (darbār hall), or a great lake (Sahasralinga)

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094 - 1143.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1212.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1113.

such as Siddharāja made.<sup>1</sup> Of these the Rudramahālaya, though very little is left, from its size and the beauty of its carving, must have been a magnificent work the grandest specimen of the architecture of the Solanki period. The remains of the Sahasralinga lake at Anahilapura show that it must have been a work of surprising size and richness well deserving its title of *mahāsara* or great lake. Numerous other public works are ascribed to Siddharāja.

At this period it seems that the kings of Gujarāt Sāmbhar and other districts, seeing the great reputation which his literary tastes had gained for Bhoja of Dhārā used all to keep ~~Pandits~~. Certain carvings on the pillars of a mosque at the south-west of the modern town of Dhārā show that the building almost as it stands was the Sanskrit school founded by Bhoja. The carvings in question are beautifully cut Sanskrit grammar tables. Other inscriptions in praise of Naravarman show that Bhoja's successors continued to maintain the institution. In the floor of the mosque are many large shining slabs of black marble, the largest as much as seven feet long, all of them covered with inscriptions so badly mutilated that nothing can be made out of them except that they were Sanskrit and Prakrit verses in honour of some prince. On a rough estimate the slabs contain as many as 4000 verses.<sup>2</sup> According to the old saying any one who drank of the Sarasvatī well in Dhārā became a scholar. Sarasvatī's well still exists near the mosque. Its water is good and it is still known as Akkal-kui or the Well of Talent. As in Dhārā so in Ajmir the Aṛhāt-dīnkā Jhopdā mosque is an old Sanskrit school, recent excavations having brought to light slabs with entire dramas carved on them. So also the Gujarāt kings had their Pandits and their halls of learning. Śrīpala, Siddharāja's poet-laureate, wrote a poetical eulogium or *prasaṁsī* on the Sahasralinga lake. According to the Prabandha-chintāmani Siddharāja gathered numerous Pandits to examine the eulogium. As has already been noticed Siddharāja's constant companion was the great scholar and Jain *śāharya* Hemachandra also called Hemāchārya, who, under the king's patronage, wrote a treatise on grammar called Siddhahema, and also the well-known Dvyāśrayakośha which was intended to teach both grammar and the history of the Solankis. Hemachandra came into even greater

<sup>1</sup> The original verse is महालयो महायात्रा महास्थानं महासरः यत्कृतं सिद्धराजेन कियते तन्न केनचित् ॥

<sup>2</sup> These, as quoted by Rāo Śāheb Mahipatrām Rāprām in his Sadhara Jesangh, are, the erection of charitable feeding-houses every *yojana* or four miles, of Dahhol fort, of a *lunda* or reservoir at Kipāivānj, of the Malavya lake at Dholkā, of small temples, of the Rudramahālaya, of the Rīnī's step-well, of the Sahasralinga lake, of reservoirs at Sihor, of the fort of Sūela, of the Daśasahasra or ten thousand temples, of the Muṇa lake at Virangām, of the *gadha* or forts of Dadharapur Vadhvān Anantapur and Ohlari, of the Sakthār lake, of the *gadha* of Jhinjhavāla, Virpur, Bhāuula, Vasingapura, and Thān, of the palaces of Kandola and Sihi Jagapura, of the reservoirs of Dedādrī and Kirtti stambha and of Jitpur-Anantapura. It is doubtful how many of these were actually Siddharāja's works.

<sup>3</sup> One of the best preserved slabs was sent by Sir John Malcolm when Resident of Malwa to the Museum of the B. B. & A. S., where it still lies. It has verses in twelfth century Prakrit in honour of a king, but nothing historical can be made out of it.

prominence in the time of Kumárapála, when he wrote several further works and became closely connected with the state religion. Several stories remain of Siddharāja assembling poets, and holding literary and poetic discussions.

Record is preserved of a *sabhá* or assembly called by the king to hear discussions between a Śvetámbara Jaina *ācharya* named Bhattáraka Devasúri and a Digambara Jaina *ācharya* named Kumudachandra who had come from the Karnatak. Devasúri who was living and preaching in the Jain temple of Arishtanemi at ~~Marwar~~<sup>Marwar</sup>, that is the modern Ahmadabad, was there visited by Kumudachandra. Devasúri treated his visitor with little respect telling him to go to Patan and he would follow and hold a religious discussion or *vada*. Kumudachandra being a Digambara or skyclad Jaina went naked to Patan and Siddharāja honoured him because he came from his mother's country. Siddharāja asked Hemachandra to hold a discussion with Kumudachandra and Hemachandra recommended that Devasúri should be invited as a worthy disputant. At a discussion held before a meeting called by the king Kumudachandra was vanquished, probably because the first principle of his Digambara faith that no woman can attain *nirvāṇa*, was insulting to the queen-mother, and the second that no clothes-wearing Jain can gain *mukti* or absorption, was an insult to the Jain ministers. The assembly, like Bráhmancial *sabhs* at the present day, appears to have declined into noise and Siddharāja had to interfere and keep order. Devasúri was complimented by the king and taken by one Ahada with great honour to his newly built Jaina temple.<sup>2</sup>

In spite of prayers to Somanátha, of incantations, and of gifts to Bráhmans, Siddharāja Jayasingha had no son. The throne passed into the line of Tribhuvanapála the great-grandson of Bhīmadeva I. (A.D. 1071-62) who was ruling as a feudatory of Siddharāja at his ancestral appanage of Dahithali. Tribhuvanapála's pedigree is Bhīmadeva I.; his son Kshemarāja by Bakuladeví a concubine; his son Haripála; his son Tribhuvanapála. By his queen Kásmiradeví Tribhuvanapála had three sons Mahipála, Kirttipála, and Kumárapála, and two daughters Premaladeví and Devaladeví. Premaladeví was married to one of Siddharāja's nobles a cavalry general named Kánbada or Krishnadeva; Devaladeví was married to Anorāja<sup>3</sup> or Anarāja

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS.  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Siddharāja  
Jayasingha,  
A.D. 1094-1143.

Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

<sup>1</sup> See above page 170.

<sup>2</sup> Devasúri was born in S. 1131 (A.D. 1078), took *dikshá* in S. 1152 (A.D. 1096), became a Súri in S. 1174 (A.D. 1118), and died on a Thursday in the dark half of Śrāvapa S. 1226 (A.D. 1170). His famous disciple Hemachandra was born on the fullmoon of Kartika S. 1145 (A.D. 1089), became an ascetic in S. 1150 (A.D. 1094), and died in S. 1229 (A.D. 1173).

<sup>3</sup> The Prákrit local name was Āno, of which the Sanskritised forms would appear to be Arno, Arnava, A'naka, and A'nalla as given in the Hammíramahákavya. The genealogy of these kings of Śákambhari or Sámbar is not settled. The Nadol copper-plate dated Śaivvat 1218 gives the name of its royal grantor as Alan and of Alan's father as Máharaja (Tod's Rajasthan, I. 804), the latter apparently a mistake for Anarāja which is the name given in the Dvyáraya. Alan's date being V. 1218, the date of his father A'na would fit in well with the early part of Kumárapála's reign. The order of the two names Alhana and Analla in the Hammíramahákavya would seem to be mistaken and ought to be reversed.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143 - 1174.

king of Sákambhari or Sámbar, the Analladeva of the Hammira-mahákavya. Kumárapála himself was married by his father to one Bhupáladeví. According to the Dvyáśraya, Tribhuvanapála was on good terms with Siddharāja serving him and going with him to war. The Kumárapálacharita also states that Kumárapála used to attend the court of Siddharāja. But from the time he came to feel that he would have no son and that the bastard Kumárapála would succeed him Siddharāja became embittered against Kumárapála. According to the Jain chronicles Siddharāja was told by the god Somanátha, by the sage Hemachandra, by the goddess Ambikā of Kodinār,<sup>1</sup> and by astrologers that he would have no son and that Kumárapála would be his successor. According to the Kumárapálacharita so bitter did his hate grow that Siddharāja planned the death of Tribhuvanapála and his family including Kumárapála. Tribhuvanapála was murdered but Kumárapála escaped. Grieved at this proof of the king's hatred Kumárapála consulted his brother-in-law Krishnadeva who advised him to leave his family at Dahithalí and go into exile promising to keep him informed of what went on at Anahilapura. Kumárapála left in the disguise of a *jaṭādhāri* or recluse and escaped the assassins whom the king had ordered to slay him. After some time Kumárapála returned and in spite of his disguise was recognized by the guards. They informed the king who invited all the ascetics in the city to a dinner. Kumárapála came but noticing that the king recognized him in spite of his disguise, he fled. The king sent a trusted officer with a small force in pursuit. Kumárapála persuaded some husbandmen, the chief of whom was Bhīmasimha, to hide him in a heap of thorns. The pursuers failing to find him returned. At night Kumárapála was let out bleeding from the thorns, and promised the husbandmen that the day would come when their help would be rewarded. He then shaved his topknot or *jaṭā* and while travelling met with a lady named Devaśrī of Udanbara village who pitying him took him into her chariot and gave him food. Kumárapála promised to regard her as a sister. He then came to Dahithalí where the royal troops had already arrived. Siddharāja sent an army which invested the village leaving Kumárapála without means of escape. He went to a potter named Sajjana or Alīṅga who hid him in the flues of his brick-kiln throwing hay over him. The troops searched the village, failed to find Kumárapála, and retired. The potter then helped Kumárapála from his hiding place and fed him. A former friend named Bosari joined Kumárapála and they went away together Kumárapála commending his family to the care of Sajjana. On the first day they had no food. Next day Bosari went to beg and they together ate the food given to Bosari in a monastery or *maṭh* where they slept. In time they came to Cambay where they called upon Hemachārya and asked him their future. Hemachārya knew and recognized Kumárapála. Kumárapála asked when fate would bless him. Before Hemachārya

<sup>1</sup> Kodinār is a town in Gáikwār territory in South Káthiavāda. This temple of Ambikā is noticed as a place of Jain pilgrimage by the sage Jinaprabhasūri in his *Tīrthakalpa* and was a well-known Jain shrine during the Anahilavāda period.

could reply Udayana, one of the king's ministers, came. Hemacharya said to Udayana, 'This is Kumarapala who shall shortly be your king.' Hemacharya also gave Kumarapala a writing stating that he would succeed to the throne. Kumarapala acknowledged his obligations to Hemacharya and promised to follow his advice. Udayana took him to his house and gave him food and clothes. Siddharaja came to know of this and sent his soldiers who began to search. Kumarapala returned to Hemacharya who hid him in a cellar covering its door with manuscripts and palm leaves. The soldiers came but failed to search under the manuscripts and returned. Kumarapala acknowledged his obligations to Hemacharya and said he owed him two great debts one for telling him the day on which he would come to the throne; the other for saving his life. Kumarapala left Cambay at midnight, the minister Udayana supplying him with provisions. From Cambay he went to Vatapadrapura probably Baroda, where feeling hungry he entered the shop of a Vania named Katuka and asked for parched gram. The Vania gave the gram and seeing that Kumarapala had no money accepted his promise of future payment. From Baroda he came to Bhargukachh or Broach where he saw a soothsayer and asked him his future. The soothsayer, seeing the bird *kali-devi* perched on the temple flagstaff, said 'You will shortly be king.' Kumarapala shaved his matted hair and went from Broach to Ujjain where he met his family. But as here too the royal troops followed him he fled to Kolhapura where he came across a Yogi who foretold his succession to a throne and gave him two spells or *mantras*. From Kolhapura Kumarapala went to Kanchi or Conjeveram and from there to the city of Kalambapattana.<sup>1</sup> The king of Kalambapattana Pratapasimha received him like an elder brother and brought him into his city, built a temple of Sivananda Kumarapalesvara in his honour, and even issued a coin called a Kumarapala. From Kalambapattana Kumarapala went to Chitrakuta or Chitor and from there to Ujjain whence he took his family to Siddhapura going on alone to Anahilapura to see his brother-in-law Krishnadeva. According to the Vicharasreni Siddharaja died soon after in A.D. 1143 on the 3rd of Karttika Suddha Samvat 1199.

In the dissensions that followed the king's death Kumarapala's interests were well served by his brother-in-law Krishnadeva. Eventually the names of three candidates, Kumarapala and two others, were laid before the state nobles sitting in council to determine who should be king. Of the three candidates the two others were found wanting, and Kumarapala was chosen and installed according to the Vicharasreni on the 4th of Margasirsha Suddha and according to the Kumarapalaprabandha on the 4th of Margasirsha Vadhya. At the time of his succession, according to the Prabandhachintamani and the Kumarapalaprabandha, Kumarapala was about fifty years of age.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumarapala,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

<sup>1</sup> The Kumarapalaprabandha has Kelambapattana and Kolambapattana probably Kolam or Quilon.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumārāpāla,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

On his accession Kumārāpāla installed his wife Bhopaladevi his anointed queen or *pattarāni*; appointed Udayana who had befriended him at Cambay minister; Bāhaḍa or Vāgbhaṭa son of Udayana<sup>1</sup> chief councillor or *mahāmātya*; and Alinga second councillor or *mahāpradhāna*. Ahada or Arabhaṭṭa, apparently another son of Udayana, did not acknowledge Kumārāpāla and went over to Arjorāja Anāka or Anō king of Sapādalaksha or the Sāmbhar territory who is probably the same as the Analladeva of the Hammīramahākāvya.<sup>2</sup>

The potter Sajjana was rewarded with a grant of seven hundred villages near Chitrakūṭa or Chitola fort in Rājputāṇṇa, and the author of the Prabandhachintāmaṇi notices that in his time the descendants of the potter ashamed of their origin called themselves descendants of Sagara. Bhūmasimha who hid Kumārāpāla in the thorns was appointed head of the bodyguard; Devasrī made the sister's mark on the royal forehead at the time of Kumārāpāla's installation and was granted the village of Devayo;<sup>3</sup> and Katuka the Vāniā of Baroda, who had given Kumārāpāla parched gram was granted the village of Vaṭapadra or Baroda. Bosari Kumārāpāla's chief companion was given Lātamandala, which seems to mean that he was appointed viceroy of Lāṭa or South Gujarāt.

Kanhada or Kṛishnadeva Kumārāpāla's brother-in-law and adviser overvaluing his great services became arrogant and disobedient insulting the king in open court. As remonstrance was of no avail the king had Kṛishnadeva waylaid and beaten by a band of athletes and taken almost dying to his wife the king's sister. From this time all the state officers were careful to show ready obedience.

The old ministry saw that under so capable and well served a ruler their power was gone. They accordingly planned to slay the king and place their own nominee on the throne. The king heard of the plot: secured the assassins: and employed them in murdering the conspirators. According to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi, Ahada or Arabhaṭṭa who had gone over to the Sāmbhar king and was in charge of the Sāmbhar infantry, bribed the local nobles as a preliminary to a war which he had planned against Kumārāpāla. He so far succeeded as to bring A'na or Anāka the Sāmbhar king with the whole of his army to the borders of Gujarāt to fight Kumārāpāla.<sup>4</sup> Kumārāpāla went to meet Anāka. But, in consequence of intrigues, in the battle that followed the Gujarāt army did not obey orders. Kumārāpāla advanced in front on an elephant, and Bāhaḍa trying to climb on Kumārāpāla's elephant was thrown to the ground and slain. Anāka was also pierced with arrows and the Sāmbhar army was defeated and plundered of its horses.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Kumārāpālaprabanda says that Udayana was appointed minister and Vāgbhaṭa general. Sollā the youngest son of Udayana did not take part in politics.

<sup>2</sup> Kirtane's Hammīramahākāvya, 13.

<sup>3</sup> Dhavalakka or Dhalkā according to the Kumārāpālaprabanda.

<sup>4</sup> According to the Kumārāpālacharita Kumārāpāla's sister who was married to A'na having heard her husband speak slightly of the kings of Gujarāt took offence, resented the language, and bandied words with her husband who beat her. She came to her brother and incited him to make an expedition against her husband.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143 - 1174.

The Dvyáśraya, probably by the aid of the author's imagination, gives a fuller account of this war. One fact of importance recorded in the Dvyáśraya is that Anáka though defeated was not slain, and, to bring hostilities to an end, gave his daughter Jalhaná to Kumárapála in marriage. The Kumárapálacharita calls the Sámbar king Arnorāja and says that it was Kumárapála who invaded the Sámbar territory. According to this account Kumárapála went to Chandrávatí near Abu and taking its Paramára king Vikramasimha with him marched to Sákambharior Sámbar and fought Arnorāja who was defeated but not killed. Kumárapála threatened to cut out Arnorāja's tongue but let him go on condition that his people wore a headdress with a tongue on each side. Arnorāja is said to have been confined in a cage for three days and then reinstalled as Kumárapála's feudatory. Vikramasimha of Chandrávatí, who in the battle had sided with Arnorāja, was punished by being disgraced before the assembled seventy-two feudatories at Anahilaváda and was sent to prison, his throne being given to his nephew Yaśodhavalá. After his victory over Arnorāja Kumárapála fought, defeated, and, according to the Kirtikaumudí, beheaded Ballála king of Málwa who had invaded Gujarát. The result of this contest seems to have been to reduce Málwa to its former position of dependence on the Anahilaváda kings. More than one inscription of Kumárapála's found in the temple of Udayáditya as far north as Udayapura near Bhilsa shows that he conquered the whole of Málwa, as the inscriptions are recorded by one who calls himself Kumárapála's general or *daṇḍanáyaka*.

Another of Kumárapála's recorded victories is over Mallikárjuna said to be king of the Konkan who we know from published lists of the North Konkan Śiláháras flourished about A.D. 1160. The author of the Prabandhachintámáni says this war arose from a bard of king Mallikárjuna speaking of him before king Kumárapála as *Rájapitámaha* or grandfather of kings.<sup>3</sup> Kumárapála annoyed at so arrogant a title looked around. Ámbadā,<sup>4</sup> one of the sons of Udayana, divining the king's meaning, raised his folded hands to his forehead and expressed his readiness to fight Mallikárjuna. The king sent him with an army which marched to the Konkan without halting. At the crossing of the Kaláviní<sup>5</sup> it was met and defeated by Mallikárjuna. Ámbadā returned in disgrace and shrouding himself his umbrella and his tents in crape retreated to Anahilaváda. The king finding Ámbadā though humiliated ready to make a second venture gave him a larger and better appointed force. With this army Ámbadā again started for the Konkan, crossed the Kaláviní, attacked Mallikárjuna, and in a hand-to-hand fight

<sup>1</sup> The Dvyáśraya does not say that Kumárapála's sister was married to A'na.

<sup>2</sup> This was a common title of the Śiláhára kings. Compare Bombay Gazetteer, XIII. 487 note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Ámbadā is his proper name. It is found Sanskritised into Ámrabhaṣa and Ámbaka.

<sup>4</sup> This is the Káveri river which flows through Chikhli and Balsár. The name in the text is very like Karabená the name of the same river in the Násik cave inscriptions (Bom. Gaz. XVI. 571) Kalavini and Karabená being Sanskritised forms of the original Káveri. Perhaps the Káveri is the Akabaron of the Periplus (A.D. 247).

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 901-1242.  
Kumārāpāla,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

climbed his elephant and cut off his head. This head cased in gold with other trophies of the war he presented to the king on his triumphant return to Anahilapura. The king was greatly pleased and gave Āmbaḍā the title of *Rājapitāmaha*. Of this Mallikārjuna two stone inscriptions have been found one at Chiplūn dated A.D. 1156 (Saka 1078) the other at Bassein dated A.D. 1160 (Saka 1082). If the story that Mallikārjuna was slain is true the war must have taken place during the two years between A.D. 1160 and 1162 (Saka 1082, 1084) which latter is the earliest known date of Mallikārjuna's successor Aparāditya.

The Kumārāpālacharita also records a war between Kumārāpāla and Samara king of Surāshṭra or south Kāthiāvāda, the Gujarāt army being commanded by Kumārāpāla's minister Udayana. The Prabandhachintāmaṇi gives Sausara as the name of the Surāshṭra king<sup>1</sup>: possibly he was some Gohilvād Mehr chief. Udayana came with the army to Vadhvān, and letting it advance went to Pālitāna. While he was worshipping at Pālitāna, a mouse carried away the burning wick of the lamp. Reflecting on the risk of fire in a wooden temple Udayana determined to rebuild the temple of stone. In the fight with Sausara the Gujarāt army was defeated and Udayana was mortally wounded.<sup>2</sup> Before Udayana died he told his sons that he had meant to repair the temple of Ādiśvara on Satruñjaya and the Sakunikā Vihāra at Broach and also to build steps up the west face of Gīrnār. His sons Bāhaḍa and Āmbaḍā promised to repair the two shrines. Subsequently both shrines were restored, Kumārāpāla and Hemachārya and the council of Anahilapura attending at the installation of Suvṛittinātha in the Sakunikā Vihāra. The Gīrnār steps were also cut, according to more than one inscription in A.D. 1166 (S. 1222).<sup>3</sup> This war and Udayana's death must have occurred about A.D. 1119 (S. 1205) as the temple of Ādnātha was finished in A.D. 1156-57 (S. 1211). Bāhaḍa also established near Satruñjaya a town called Bāhaḍapura and adorned it with a temple called Tīrbhuvanapalavasati.<sup>4</sup> After the fight with Sausara Kumārāpāla was threatened with another war by Karna<sup>5</sup> king of Dāhala or Chedi. Spies informed the king of the

<sup>1</sup> Sausara or Sāsar seems the original form from which Samara was Sanskritised. Sāsar corresponds with the Mehr name Chacher.

<sup>2</sup> The Kumārāpālacharita says that Samara was defeated and his son placed on the throne.

<sup>3</sup> The translation of the inscription runs: Steps made by the venerable A'mhaka, Samvat 1222. According to the Kumārāpalaprabandha the steps were built at a cost of a lākh of *drammas* a *dramma* being of the value of about 5 *annas*. According to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi an earthquake occurred when the king was at Gīrnār on his way to Pomanātha. The old ascent of Gīrnār was from the north called *Chhatraśūlā* that is the umbrella or overhanging rocks. Hemachārya said if two persons went up together the *Chhatraśūlā* rocks would fall and crush them. So the king ordered A'mrabhaṭṭa to build steps on the west or Junāgaḍh face at a cost of 63 *lāks* of *drammas*.

<sup>4</sup> The site of Bāhaḍapura seems to be the ruins close to the sea, of Pālitāna where large quantities of conch shell bangles and pieces of brick and tile have been found.

<sup>5</sup> This would appear to be the Kalachuri king Gayā Karna whose inscription is dated 902 of the Chedi era that is A.D. 1152. As the earliest known inscription of Gayā Karna's son Narasimhadeva is dated A.D. 1157 (Chedi 907) the death of Gayā Karna falls between A.D. 1152 and 1157 in the reign of Kumārāpāla and the story of his being accidentally strangled may be true.

impending invasion as he was starting on a pilgrimage to Somanátha. Next day he was relieved from anxiety by the news that while sleeping on an elephant at night king Karna's necklace became entangled in the branch of a banyan tree, and the elephant suddenly running away, the king was strangled.

The Prabandhachintāmaṇi records an expedition against Sāmbhar which was entrusted to Chāhāḍa a younger brother of Bāhāḍa. Though Chāhāḍa was known to be extravagant, the king liked him, and after giving him advice placed him in command. On reaching Sāmbhar Chāhāḍa invested the fort of Bābrānagar but did not molest the people as on that day 700 brides had to be married.<sup>1</sup> Next day the fort was entered, the city was plundered, and the supremacy of Kumārāpāla was proclaimed. This Bābrānagar has not been identified.\* There appears to be some confusion and the place may not be in Sāmbhar but in Bābariāvāda in Kāthiāvāda. Chahāḍa returned triumphant to Patan. The king expressed himself pleased but blamed Chāhāḍa for his lavish expenditure and conferred on him the title of *Rāja-gharatta* the King-grinder.

Though the Gujarāt chronicles give no further details an inscription in the name of Kumārāpāla in a temple at Udepur near Bhilsa dated A.D. 1166 records that on Monday, *Akshaya tritīyā* the 3rd of Vaiśākḥ Sud (S. 1222), Thakkara Chāhāḍa granted half the village of Sangavāda in the Ranganārikā district or *bhukti*. Just below this inscription is a second also bearing the name of Kumārāpāla. The year is lost. But the occasion is said to be an eclipse on Thursday the 15th of Pausḥ Sudī when a gift was made to the god of Udayapura by Yasodhavala the viceroy of Kumārāpāla.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> So many marriages on one day points to the people being either Kāvya Kunbis or Bhavāḍas among whom the custom of holding all marriages on the same day still prevails.

<sup>2</sup> The text of the inscription is :

- (1) .....पौषसुदीगुरौ अवोह श्रीमदण-
- (2) हिकपाटके [समस्त] राजावलीधिराजितपरममहारकमहा-
- (3) [राजधिराजनिजत] साकंभरीभूपालश्रीमदवन्तिनाथश्रीमत्कु
- (4) [मारपाळ] .....नियुक्तमहामात्यश्रीजसोधव—
- (5) छ श्रीकरणादौ समस्तमुद्राव्यापारान्परिपन्थयतीत्येवं
- (6) काले [प्रवर्तमाने महाराजा] धिराजश्रीकुमारपाळदेवेन विज
- (7) .....श्रीमदुदयपुरो ...शेचकान्वये महाराज—
- (8) पुत्र .....महाराजपुत्रवसन्तपाळ एवं अन
- (9) .....लिखिता यात्रा । अद्य सोमग्रहणपर्वणि
- (10) .....छयवने समाहृततीर्थोदके स्नात्वा जगद्गु
- (11) .... सुखपुण्यजयवृद्धये उदयपुरकारि
- (12) .....कारापित देवश्री.....

Lines broken below.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Kumārāpāla,  
A.D. 1143 - 1174.

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

Similar inscriptions of Kumárapála's time and giving his name occur near the ruined town of Kerádu or Kiráta-Kúpa near Bálmer in Western Rájputána. The inscriptions show that Kumárapála had another *Amátya* or minister there, and that the kings of the country round Kerádu had been subject to Gujarát since the time of Siddharája Jayasimha. Finally the inscription of Kumárapála found by Colonel Tod in a temple of Brahma on the pinnacle of Chitola fort<sup>1</sup> shows that his conquests extended as far as Mewáda.

According to the Kumárapálachintimani Kumárapála married one Padmavati of Padmapura. The chronicler describes the city as to the west of the Indus. Perhaps the lady belonged to Padmapura a large town in Kashmír. Considering his greatness as a king and conqueror the historical record of Kumárapála is meagre and incomplete. Materials may still come to light which will show his power to have been surprisingly widespread.

Mr. Forbes<sup>2</sup> records the following Bráhmancial tradition of a Mewáda queen of Kumárapála, which has probably been intentionally omitted by the Jain chroniclers. " - "

Kumárapála, says the Bráhmañ tradition, had wedded a Sisodanī Ráni, a daughter of the house of Mewáda. At the time that the sword went for her the Sisodanī heard that the Rája had made a vow that his wives should receive initiation into the Jain religion at Hemáchárya's convent before entering the palace. The Ráni refused to start for Patan until she was satisfied she would not be called on to visit the Áchárya's convent. Jayadeva Kumárapála's household bard became surety and the queen consented to go to Anahilapura. Several days after her arrival Hemáchárya said to the Rája 'The Sisodanī Ráni has never come to visit me.' Kumárapála told her she must go. The Ráni refused and fell ill, and the bard's wives went to see her. Hearing her story they disguised her as one of themselves and brought her privately home to their house. At night the bard dug a hole in the wall of the city, and taking the Ráni through the hole started with her for Mewáda. When Kumárapála became aware of the Ráni's flight he set off in pursuit with two thousand horse. He came up with the fugitives about fifteen miles from the fort of Idar. The bard said to the Ráni, 'If you can enter Idar you are safe. I have two hundred horse with me. As long as a man of us remains no one shall lay hands on you.' So saying he turned upon his pursuers. But the Ráni's courage failed and she slew herself in the carriage. As the fight went on and the pursuers forced their way to the carriage, the maids cried 'Why struggle more, the Ráni is dead.' Kumárapála and his men returned home.<sup>3</sup>

The Paramára chiefs of Chandrávatī near A'bu were also feudatories of Kumárapála. It has been noted that to punish him for siding with Arjorája of Sámbar Kumárapála placed Vikrama Simha the Chandrávatī chief in confinement and set Vikrama's

<sup>1</sup> Annals of Rájasthan, I. 803<sup>2</sup> Rás Málá (New Edition), 154.<sup>3</sup> Rás Málá (New Edition), 154.

nephew Yaśodhavalā on his throne. That Kumārapāla conquered the chiefs of Sāmbhar and Mālwa is beyond question. Among his names is the proud title Avanti-nātha Lord of Mālwa.

The Kumārapālaprabandha gives the following limits of Kumārapāla's sway. The Turushikas or Turks on the north; the heavenly Ganges on the east; the Vindhya mountains on the south; the Sindhu river on the west.<sup>1</sup> Though in tradition Kumārapāla's name does not stand so high as a builder as the name of Siddharāja Jayasimha he carried out several important works. The chief of these was the restoring and rebuilding of the great shrine of Somanātha or Somanātha Patan. According to the Prabandhachintāmaṇi when Kumārapāla asked Devasūri the teacher of Hemāchārya how best to keep his name remembered Devasūri replied: Build a new temple of Somanātha fit to last an age or *yuga*, instead of the wooden one which is ruined by the ocean billows. Kumārapāla approved and appointed a building committee or *pañchakula* headed by a Brāhman named Gaṇḍa Bhāva Brihaspati the state officer at Somanātha. At the instance of Hemāchārya the king on hearing the foundations were laid vowed until the temple was finished he would keep apart from women and would take neither flesh nor wine. In proof of his vow he poured a handful of water over Nīlakantha Mahādeva, probably his own royal god. After two years the temple was completed and the flag hoisted. Hemāchārya advised the king not to break his vow until he had visited the new temple and paid his obeisance to the god. The king agreed and went to Somanātha, Hemāchārya preceding him on foot and promising to come to Somanātha after visiting Satruñjaya and Gīrnār. On reaching Somanātha the king was received by Gaṇḍa-Brihaspati his head local officer and by the building committee, and was taken in state through the town. At the steps of the temple the king bowed his head to the ground. Under the directions of Gaṇḍa-Brihaspati he worshipped the god, made gifts of elephants and other costly articles including his own weight in coin, and returned to Anahilapura.

It is interesting to know that the present battered sea-shore temple of Somanātha, whose *garbhagūra* or shrine has been turned into a mosque and whose spire has been shattered, is the temple of whose building and consecration the above details are preserved. This is shown by the style of the architecture and sculpture which is in complete agreement with the other buildings of the time of Kumārapāla.<sup>2</sup>

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumārapāla,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

<sup>1</sup> The text is : यः कबीरामा तुरुष्कमैन्द्रीमा त्रिदिवापगं

यान्त्वामा विन्ध्यमा सिन्धुं पश्चिमा यो हातावयत्

<sup>2</sup> It is also interesting, if there is a foundation of fact to the tale, that this is the temple visited by the Persian poet Saadi (A.D. 1200-1230) when he saw the ivory idol of Somanātha whose arms were raised by a hidden priest pulling a cord. According to Saadi on pretence of conversion he was admitted behind the shrine, discovered the cord-puller, threw him into a well, and fled. Compare Journal Royal Asiatic Society Bengal VII. 3 pages 885-886. That Saadi ever visited Somanātha is doubtful. No ivory human image can ever have been the chief object of worship at Somanātha.

Chapter II.  
THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143 - 1174.

Kumárapála's temple seems to have suffered in every subsequent Muhammadan invasion, in Alaf Khan's in A.D. 1800, in Mozaffar's in A.D. 1390, in Mahmúd Begada's about A.D. 1490, and in Muzaffar II.'s about A.D. 1530. Time after time no sooner had the invader passed than the work of repair began afresh. One of the most notable restorations was by Khengár IV. (A.D. 1279-1333) a Chudásumá king of Junágadh who is mentioned in two Gírnár inscriptions as the repairer of Somanátha after its desecration by Ala-ud-din Khilji. The latest sacrilege, including the turning of the temple into a mosque, was in the time of the Ahmadábad king Muzaffar Sháh II. (A.D. 1511-1535). Since then no attempt has been made to win back the god into his old home.

In the side wall near the door of the little shrine of Bhadrakáli in Patan a broken stone inscription gives interesting details of the temple of Somanátha. Except that the right hand corners of some of the lines are broken, the inscription is clear and well preserved. It is dated A.D. 1165 (Valabhi 850). It records that the temple of the god Someśa was first of gold built by Soma; next it was of silver built by Rávana; afterwards of wood built by Krishna, and last of stone built by Bhímaśeva. The next restoration was through Gaṇḍa-Brihaspati under Kumárapála. Of Gaṇḍa-Brihaspati it gives these details. He was a Kanyákubja or Kanoj Bráhmaṇ of the Páśúpata school, a teacher of the Málwa kings, and a friend of Siddharāja Jayasinha. He repaired several other temples and founded several other religious buildings in Somanátha. He also repaired the temple of Kedáres'vara in Kumaon on learning that the Khas'a king of that country had allowed it to fall into disrepair. After the time of Kumárapála the descendants of Gaṇḍa-Brihaspati remained in religious authority in Somanátha.

Kumárapála made many Jain benefactions.<sup>1</sup> He repaired the temple of Sígala-Vasahiká at Stambha-tírttha or Cambay where Hemáchárya received his initiation or *dikshá*. In honour of the lady who gave him barley flour and curds he built a temple called the Karambaka-Vihára in Patan. He also built in Patan a temple called the Mouse or Mushuka-Vihára to free himself from the impurity caused by killing a mouse while digging for treasure. At Dhaudhuka Hemáchárya's birthplace a temple called the Jholiká-Vihára or cradle temple was built. Besides these Kumárapála is credited with building 1444 temples.

Though Kumárapála was not a learned man, his ministers were men of learning, and he continued the practice of keeping at his court scholars especially Sanskrit poets. Two of his leading Pandits were Rámachandra and Udayachandra both of them Jains. Rámachandra is often mentioned in Gujaráti literature and appears to have been a great scholar. He was the author of a book called the Hundred Accounts or Prabandhas'ata. After Udayana's death Kumárapála's chief minister was Kapardi a man of learning skilled in Sanskrit poetry. And all through his reign his principal adviser

was Hemachandra or Hemáchárya probably the most learned man of his time. Though Hemáchárya lived during the reigns both of Siddharája and of Kumárapála, only under Kumárapála did he enjoy political power as the king's companion and religious adviser. What record remains of the early Solankis is chiefly due to Hemachandra.

The Jain life of Hemáchárya abounds in wonders. Apart from the magic and mystic elements the chief details are. Cháchiga a Modh Vánia of Dhandhuka<sup>1</sup> in the district of Ardháshtama had by his wife Páhini<sup>2</sup> of the Chámunda gótra, a boy named Chángodeva who was born A.D. 1089 (Kartik fullmoon Samvat 1145). A Jain priest named Devachandra A'chárya (A.D. 1078-1170; S. 1134-1226) came from Patan to Dhandhuka and when in Dhandhuka went to pay his obeisance at the Modh Vasahukí. While Devachandra was seated Chángodeva came playing with other boys and went and sat beside the áchárya. Struck with the boy's audacity and good looks the áchárya went with the council of the village to Cháchiga's house. Cháchiga was absent but his wife being a Jain received the áchárya with respect. When she heard that her son was wanted by the council, without waiting to consult her husband, she handed the boy to the áchárya who carried him off to Karnávatí and kept him there with the sons of the minister Udayana. Cháchiga, disconsolate at the loss of his son, went in quest of him vowing to eat nothing till the boy was found. He came to Karnávatí and in an angry mood called on the áchárya to restore him his son. Udayana was asked to interfere and at last persuaded Cháchiga to let the boy stay with Devachandra.

In A.D. 1097, when Chángodeva was eight years old Cháchiga celebrated his son's consecration or *dikshá* and gave him the name of Somachandra. As the boy became extremely learned Devachandra changed his name to Hemachandra the Moon of gold. In A.D. 1110 (S. 1166) at the age of 21, his mastery of all the Sástras and Siddhántas was rewarded by the dignity of Súri or sage. Siddharája was struck with his conversation and honoured him as a man of learning. Hemachandra's knowledge wisdom and tact enabled him to adhere openly to his Jain rules and beliefs though Siddharája's dislike of Jain practices was so great as at times to amount to insult. After one of their quarrels Hemáchárya kept away from the king for two or three days. Then the king seeing his humility and his devotion to his faith repented and apologised. The two went together to Somanátha Patan and there Hemáchárya paid his obeisance to the *linga* in a way that did not offend his own faith. During Siddharája's reign Hemáchárya wrote his well known grammar with aphorisms or *sútras* and commentary or *vṛtti* called Siddha-Hemachandra, a title compounded of the king's name and his own. As the Bráhmans found fault with the absence of any detailed references to the king in the work Hemachandra

Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

<sup>1</sup> The head-quarters of the Dhandhuka sub-division sixty miles south-west of Ahmadábád.

<sup>2</sup> Another reading is Láhini.

## Chapter II.

## THE

CHAULUKYAN,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumārāpāla,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

added one verse at the end of each chapter in praise of the king. During Siddharāja's reign he also wrote two other works, the *Haimināmamālā* "String of Names composed by Hema(chandra)" or *Abhidhānachintāmaṇi* and the *Anekārthanāmamālā* a Collection of words of more than one meaning. He also began the *Dvyās'rayakosha*<sup>1</sup> or Double Dictionary being both a grammar and a history. In spite of his value to Kumārāpāla, in the beginning of Kumārāpāla's reign Hemāchārya was not honoured as a spiritual guide and had to remain subordinate to Brāhmins. When Kumārāpāla asked him what was the most important religious work he could perform Hemāchārya advised the restoring of the temple of Somanātha. Still Hemāchārya so far won the king to his own faith that till the completion of the temple he succeeded in persuading the king to take the vow of *ahimsā* or non-killing which though common to both faiths is a specially Jain observance. Seeing this mark of his ascendancy over the king, the king's family priest and other Brāhmins began to envy and thwart Hemāchārya. On the completion of the temple, when the king was starting for Somanātha for the installation ceremony, the Brāhmins told him that Hemāchārya did not mean to go with him. Hemāchārya who had heard of the plot had already accepted the invitation. He said being a recluse he must go on foot, and that he also wanted to visit Girnār, and from Girnār would join the king at Somanātha. His object was to avoid travelling in a palanquin with the king or suffering a repetition of Siddharāja's insult for not accepting a *pālki*. Soon after reaching Somanātha Kumārāpāla asked after Hemāchārya. The Brāhmins spread a story that he had been drowned, but Hemāchārya was careful to appear in the temple as the king reached it. The king saw him, called him, and took him with him to the temple. Some Brāhmins told the king that the Jain priest would not pay any obeisance to Siva, but Hemāchārya saluted the god in the following verse in which was nothing contrary to strict Jainism: 'Salutation to him, whether he be Brahmin, Vishnu, Hara, or Jina, from whom have fled desires which produce the sprouts of the seed of worldliness.'<sup>2</sup> After this joint visit to Somanātha Hemachandra gained still more ascendancy over the king, who appreciated his calmness of mind and his forbearance. The Brāhmins tried to prevent the growth of his influence, but in the end Hemachandra overcame them. He induced the king to place in the sight of his Brāhmanical family priests an image of Śāntinātha Tīrthaṅkara among his family gods. He afterwards persuaded Kumārāpāla publicly to adopt the Jain faith by going to the hermitage of Hemachandra and giving

<sup>1</sup> Prabandhachintāmaṇi.

<sup>2</sup> भवविजाङ्कुरजनना रागाद्याः क्षयमुपागता यस्य ।

ब्रह्मा वा विष्णुर्वा हरो जिनो वा नमस्तस्मै ॥

यत्र तत्र समये यथा तथा योति सोऽस्यभिषया यथा तथा ।

पीतदोषकक्षुषः स नेहवानेक एव भगवन्नमोस्तु ते ॥

numerous presents to Jain ascetics. Finally under his influence Kumárapála put away all Bráhmanical images from his family place of worship. Having gone such lengths Kumárapála began to punish the Bráhmans who insulted Hemachandra. A Bráhman named Vámarási, a Pandit at the royal court, who composed a verse insulting Hemachandra, lost his annuity and was reduced to beggary, but on apologising to Hemachandra the annuity was restored. Another Bráhmanical officer named Bháva Brihaspati, who was stationed at Somanátha, was re-called for insulting Hemachandra. But he too on apologising to Hemachandra was restored to Somanátha. Under Hemachandra's influence Kumárapála gave up the use of flesh and wine, ceased to take pleasure in the chase, and by beat of drum forbade throughout his kingdom the taking of animal life. He withdrew their licences from hunters, fowlers and fishermen, and forced them to adopt other callings. To what lengths this dread of life-taking was carried appears from an order that only filtered water was to be given to all animals employed in the royal army. Among the stories told of the king's zeal for life-saving is one of a Bania of Sámbar who having been caught killing a louse was brought in chains to Apahilavada, and had his property confiscated and devoted to the building at Apahilavada of a Louse Temple or Yúka-Vihára. According to another story a man of Nador in Marwár was put to death by Kelhana the chief of Nador to appease Kumárapála's wrath at hearing that the man's wife had offered flesh to a field god or *kshetrapála*. Hemachandra also induced the king to forego the claim of the state to the property of those who died without a son.

During Kumárapála's reign Hemachandra wrote many well known Sanskrit and Prakrit works on literature and religion. Among these are the Adhyátmopanishad or Yogaśástra a work of 12,000 verses in twelve chapters called Prakáśas, the Trisásthishálákápurushacharitra or lives of sixty-three Jain saints of the Utsarpiñi and Avasarpiñi ages; the Pañcishthaparvan, a work of 3500 verses being the life of Jain Sthaviras who flourished after Mahávira; the Prakṛita Śabdānuśāsana or Prakrit grammar; the Dvyáśraya<sup>1</sup> a Prakrit poem written with the double object of teaching grammar and of giving the history of Kumárapála; the Chhandanuśāsana a work of about 6000 verses on prosody; the Lūṅgānuśāsana a work on genders, the Deśanāmamālā in Prakrit with a commentary a work on local and provincial words; and the Alankārachūdāmañi a work on rhetoric. Hemachandra died in A.D. 1172 (S. 1229) at the age of 84. The king greatly mourned his loss and marked his brow with Hemachandra's ashes. Such crowds came to share in the ashes of the pyre that the ground was hollowed into a pit known as the Haima-Khadda or Hema's Pit.

Kumárapála lived to a great age. According to the author of the Prabandhachintāmañi he was fifty when he succeeded to the

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1244.  
Kumárapála,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

<sup>1</sup> संवत् १२२९ वैशाखशुद्धि ३ सोमे अग्रह श्रीमदण्डिकपट्टके समस्तराजावलीवि-  
श्रुतिमहाराजपिराजपरमेश्वर अजयपालदेवकल्याणविजयराज्ये तत्पादप्रापणीनि महा-  
मात्यश्रीसोमेश्वरे श्रीकरणादौ.

## Chapter II.

THE

CHAULUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.  
Kumārāpāla,  
A.D. 1143-1174.

throne, and after ruling about thirty-one years died in A.D. 1174 (S. 1230). He is said to have died of *lūta* a form of leprosy. Another story given by the Kumārāpālaprabandha is that Kumārāpāla was imprisoned by his nephew and successor Ajayapāla. The Kumārāpālaprabandha gives the exact length of Kumārāpāla's reign at 30 years 8 months and 27 days. If the beginning of Kumārāpāla's reign is placed at the 4th Māgśar Sud Samvat 1299, the date of the close, taking the year to begin in Kārtika, would be Bhādrapada Suddha Samvat 1229. If with Gujarāt almanacs the year is taken to begin in Āśhādha, the date of the close of the reign would be Bhādrapada of Samvat 1230. It is doubtful whether either Samvat 1229 or 1230 is the correct year, as an inscription dated Samvat 1229 Vaishākha Suddha 3rd at Udayapura near Bhilāi describes Ajayapāla Kumārāpāla's successor as reigning at Anahlapura. This would place Kumārāpāla's death before the month of Vaishakha 1229 that is in A.D. 1173.<sup>1</sup>

Ajayapāla,  
A.D. 1174-117

As Kumārāpāla had no son he was succeeded by Ajayapāla the son of his brother Mahīpāla.<sup>2</sup> According to the Kumārāpālaprabandha Kumārāpāla desired to give the throne to his daughter's son Pratāpamalla, but Ajayapāla raised a revolt and got rid of Kumārāpāla by poison. The Jain chroniclers say nothing of the reign of Ajayapāla because he was not a follower of their religion. The author of the Sukritasānikūtana notices a small silver canopy or pavilion shown in Ajayapāla's court as a feudatory's gift from the king of Sapādalaksha<sup>3</sup> or Sewālik. The author of the Kīrtikāumudī dismisses Ajayapāla with the mere mention of his name, and does not even state his relationship with Kumārāpāla. According to the Prabandhachintanani Ajayapāla destroyed the Jain temples built by his uncle. He showed no favour to Āmbadā and Kumārāpāla's other Jain ministers. Ajayapāla seems to have been of a cruel and overbearing temper. He appointed as his minister Kapardi because he was of the Brāhmanical faith.<sup>4</sup> But considering his manners arrogant he ordered him to be thrown into a caldron of boiling oil. On another occasion he ordered the Jain scholar Rāmachandra to sit on a red-hot sheet of copper. One of his nobles Āmra-bhata or Āmbadā refused to submit to

<sup>1</sup> Regarding the remarkable story that not long before their deaths both Hemachārya and Kumārāpāla inclined towards if they did not become converts to Islam (Toil's Western India, 184) no fresh information has been obtained. Another curious saying of Tod's (Ditto, 182) also remains doubtful. Kumārāpāla expelled the tribe of Lār from his kingdom. That this tribe of Lār can have had to do either with Lāta or South Gujarat or with the caste of Lād Vanis seems unlikely. The alternative is Pārsis from Lār on the Persian Gulf whom Tod (Annals of Rajasthan, I. 285) notices as sending an expedition from Laristan to Gujarāt. In this connection it is worthy of note that Lār remained the seat of a Gueber prince till A. D. 1600 the time of Shah Abbas (D'Herbelot Bib. Or. II. 477). A repetition of the Parsi riots (Cambay Gazetteer, VI. 215) may have been the cause of their expulsion from Gujarāt.

<sup>2</sup> See the Dvyaśraya. A Patan inscription lying at Verāval also calls Ajayapāla the brother's son of Kumārāpāla.

<sup>3</sup> It is stated in a grant of Bhīma II. dated S. 1283, that Ajayadeva, as he is there called, made the Sapādalaksha or Sāmbar king tributary. Ind. Ant. VI. 199ff.

<sup>4</sup> The Udayapura inscription mentions Someśvara as the minister of Ajayapāla in Samvat 1229 (A. D. 1173). See above page 193.

the king, saying that he would pay obeisance only to Vítarāja or Tirthaṅkara as god, to Hemachandra as guide, and to Kumārāpāla as king. Ajayapāla ordered the matter to be settled by a fight. Āmbaḍā brought some of his followers to the drum-house near the gate, and in the fight that followed Āmbaḍā was killed. In A.D. 1177 (S. 1233), after a short reign of three years, Ajayapāla was slain by a doorkeeper named Vijjaladeva who plunged a dagger into the king's heart.<sup>1</sup>

Ajayapāla was succeeded by his son Mūlarāja II. also called Bāla Mūlarāja as he was only a boy when installed. His mother was Nāikidevi the daughter of Paramardi, apparently the Kādamba king Permādi or Siva Chitta who reigned from A.D. 1147 to 1175 (S. 1203-1231).<sup>2</sup> The authors of the Kirtikaumudī<sup>3</sup> and the Sukritasankirtana say that even in childhood Mūlarāja II. dispersed the Turushka or Muhammadan army.<sup>4</sup> The Prabandha-chintāmaṇi states that the king's mother fought at the Gālarāra-ghatta and that her victory was due to a sudden fall of rain. Mūlarāja II. is said to have died in A.D. 1179 (S. 1235) after a reign of two years.

Mūlarāja II. was succeeded by Bhīma II. The relationship of the two is not clearly established. Mr. Forbes makes Bhīma the younger brother of Ajayapāla. But it appears from the Kirtikaumudī and the Sukritasankirtana that Bhīma was the younger brother of Mūlarāja. The Sukritasankirtana after concluding the account of Mūlarāja,<sup>5</sup> calls Bhīma 'asya bandhu' 'his brother,' and the Kirtikaumudī, after mentioning the death of Mūlarāja, says that Bhīma his younger brother 'anujannmāṣya' became king.<sup>6</sup>

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS.  
A.D. 961-1242.

Mūlarāja II.  
A.D. 1177-1179.

<sup>1</sup> The abuse of Ajayapala is explained if Tod's statement (Western India, 191) that he became a Musalmān is correct.

<sup>2</sup> Fleet's Kinnaree Dynasties, 93.

<sup>3</sup> Chapter II Verse 57.

<sup>4</sup> We know much less about this event than its importance deserves, for with the exception of a raid made in A.D. 1197 by one of the Ghori generals this victory secured Gujarāt from any serious Muhammadan attack for more than a century. We learn from various grants made by Bhīmadeva II (Ind. Ant VI. 195, 198, 200, 201) that Mūlarāja's regular epithet in the *Pāmsavālī* was "He who overcame in battle the ruler of the Garjjanakas, who are hard to defeat" and Dr. Bühler has pointed out (Ditto, 201) that Garjjanaka is a Sanskritising of the name Ghaznavi. As a matter of fact, however, the leader of the Muhammadan army was Muḥammad of Ghor, and the battle took place in A.D. 1178 (A. 574). One of the two Muhammadan writers who mentions the invasion (Muhammad 'Ufi, who wrote at Delhi about A.D. 1211) says that Muhammad was at first defeated, but invaded the country a second time two years later "and punished the people for their previous misconduct." But this is only mentioned incidentally as part of an anecdote of Muhammad's equity, and there is some confusion with Muhammad's victory in the second battle of Narāyan (in Jaipur territory) in A.D. 1192, as a better, though slightly later authority, Minhāj-us-Sirāj, speaks of no second expedition to Gujarāt led by Muhammad himself. Minhāj-us-Sirāj's account of the defeat is as follows (Elliott, II. 294): He (Muhammad) conducted his army by way of Uch and Multān towards Nahrwālā. The Rājā of Nahrwālā, Bhīmdeo, was a minor, but he had a large army and many elephants. In the day of battle the Muhammadans were defeated and the Sultan was compelled to retreat. This happened in the year 574 H. (1178 A.D.). Further on we read (Elliott, II. 300): "In 593 H. (1197 A.D.) he (Muhammad's general Kutb-ud-din) went towards Nahrwālā, defeated Rājā Bhīmdeo, and took revenge on the part of the Sultan." As no conquest of the country is spoken of, this expedition was evidently a mere raid. The only inaccuracy in the account is the mention of Bhīma instead of Mūlarāja as the king who defeated the first invasion.—(A. M. T. J.)

<sup>5</sup> Sarga II, Verse 47.

<sup>6</sup> Sarga II, Verse 60.

## Chapter II.

THE

CHAUUKYAS,  
A.D. 961-1242.Bhīma II.  
A.D. 1179-1242.

Mularāja we know came to the throne as a child. Of Bhīma also the Kīrtikaumudī says that he came to the throne while still in his childhood, and this agrees with the statements that he was the younger brother of Mularāja. Bhīma probably came to the throne in A.D. 1178 (S. 1234). There is no doubt he was reigning in A.D. 1179 (S. 1235), as an inscription in the deserted village of Kerālu near Bilmer of Anahilavāda dated A.D. 1179 (S. 1235) states that it was written 'in the triumphant reign of the illustrious Bhīmadeva.'<sup>1</sup> A further proof of his reigning in A.D. 1179 (S. 1235) and of his being a minor at that time is given in the following passage from the Tabakāt-i-Nāsihi: In A.D. 1178 (Hijri 574) the Rāi of Nahrwālā Bhīmadeo, was a minor, but he had a large army and many elephants. In the day of battle the Muhammadans were defeated and the Sultān was compelled to retreat.<sup>2</sup> Merutunga says that Bhīma reigned from A.D. 1179 (S. 1235) for sixty-three years that is up to A.D. 1242 (S. 1298), and this is borne out by a copperplate of Bhīma which bears date A.D. 1210 (S. 1296<sup>3</sup> Mārgha Vadi 14th Sunday<sup>4</sup>).

Bhīma was nicknamed Bholo the Simpleton. The chroniclers of this period mention only the Vāghelās and almost pass over Bhīma. The author of the Kīrtikaumudī says 'the kingdom of the young ruler was gradually divided among powerful ministers and provincial chiefs'; and according to the Sukṛitasankīrtana 'Bhīma felt great anxiety on account of the chiefs who had forcibly eaten away portions of the kingdom.' It appears that during the minority, when the central authority was weak, the kingdom was divided among nobles and feudatories, and that Bhīma proved too weak a ruler to restore the kingly power. Manuscripts and copperplates show that Bhīmadeva was ruling at Anahilavāda in S. 1217, 1251, 1261, 1263, and 1264,<sup>5</sup> and copperplates dated S. 1283, 1288, 1295, and 1296 have also been found. Though Bhīma in name enjoyed a long unbroken reign the verses quoted above show that power rested not with the king but with the nobles. It appears from an inscription that in A.D. 1224 (S. 1280) a Chālukya noble named Jayantasimha was supreme at Anahilavāda though he mentions Bhīma and his predecessors with honour and respect.<sup>6</sup>

It was probably by aiding Bhīma against Jayantasimha that the Vāghelās rose to power. According to the chroniclers the Vāghelās succeeded in the natural course of things. According to the Sukṛitasankīrtana Kumārāpāla appeared to his grandson Bhīma and directed him to appoint as his heir-apparent Virādhavala son of Lavanaprasāda and grandson of Arnorāja the son of Dhavala king of Bhīmāpalli. Next day in court, in the presence of his nobles, when Lavanaprasāda and Virādhavala entered the king said to

<sup>1</sup> The Vichitrāśreni also gives S. 1235 as the beginning of his reign.

<sup>2</sup> Elliot's History of India, II. 294. This event properly belongs to the reign of Mula. See above page 195 note 5.

<sup>3</sup> Ind. Ant. VI. 207.

<sup>4</sup> Chapter II. Verse 61.

<sup>5</sup> Kielhorn's and Peterson's Reports on Sanskrit Manuscripts.

<sup>6</sup> Ind. Ant. VI. 197.

Lavanaprasāda : Your father Arṇorāja seated me on the throne : you should therefore uphold my power : in return I will name your son Vīradhavalā my heir-apparent.<sup>1</sup> The author of the Kīrtikaumudī notes that Arṇorāja son of Dhavalā, opposing the revolution against Bhīma, cleared the kingdom of enemies, but at the cost of his own life. The author then describes Lavanaprasāda and Vīradhavalā as kings. But as he gives no account of their rise to supremacy, it seems probable that they usurped the actual power from Bhīma though till A.D. 1242 (S. 1295) Bhīma continued to be nominal sovereign.

Bhīma's queen was Līlādevī the daughter of a Chohān chief named Samarasimha.<sup>2</sup>

## Chapter II.

THE  
CHAULUKYAS  
A.D. 961 - 1242.  
Bhīma II.  
A.D. 1179 - 1242.

<sup>1</sup> The text is दत्त्वास्मै दोष्यते युवराज्यं गज्यं निरं कुरु.

<sup>2</sup> The text is चाहूँ राण that is चाहुमाग राणक. The term Rāṇaka would show him to be a Chohān chief.

## CHAPTER III.

## THE VÁGHELÁS

(A.D. 1219-1304)

## Chapter III.

THE VÁGHELÁS,  
A.D. 1219-1304.Anorāja,  
A.D. 1170-1200.

WHILE Bhīmadeva II. (A.D. 1178-1241) struggled to maintain his authority in the north, the country between the Śībarmatī and the Narbadā in the south as well as the districts of Dholkā and Dhandhukā in the south-west passed to the Vāghelās a branch of the Solāṅkis sprung from Anāka or Arjorāja, the son of the sister of Kumārapāla's (A.D. 1113-1173) mother. In return for services to Kumārapāla,<sup>1</sup> Anāka, with the rank of a noble or Śāmanā, had received the village of Vyāghrapalli or Vāghelā, the Tiger's Lair, about ten miles south-west of Anahilavāda. It is from this village that the dynasty takes its name of Vāghela.

Lavanaprasāda,  
A.D. 1200-1233.

Anāka's son Lavanaprasāda, who is mentioned as a minister of Bhīmadeva II. (A.D. 1179-1242)<sup>2</sup> held Vāghelā and probably Dhavalagadha or Dholkā about thirty miles to the south-west. The Kīrtikaumudī or Moonlight of Glory, the chief cotemporary chronicle,<sup>3</sup> describes Lavanaprasāda as a brave warrior, the slayer of the chief of Nadulā the modern Nāndol in Mārwar. "In his well-ordered realm, except himself the robber of the glory of hostile kings, robbers were unknown. The ruler of Mālava invading the kingdom turned back before the strength of Lavanaprasāda. The southern king also when opposed by him gave up the idea of war." The ruler of Mālava or Mālwa referred to was Sohada or Subhatavarman.<sup>4</sup> The southern king was the Devagiri Yādava Singhaṇa II. (A.D. 1209-1247)<sup>5</sup>

Lavanaprasāda married Madanarājñī and by her had a son named Vīradhavalā. As heir apparent Vīradhavalā, who was also called Vīra Vāghelā or the Vāghelā hero,<sup>6</sup> rose to such distinction as a warrior that in the end Lavanaprasāda abdicated in his favour. Probably to reconcile the people to his venturing to oppose his sovereign Bhīmadeva, Lavanaprasāda gave out that in a dream the Luck of Anahilavāda

<sup>1</sup> Anāka survived Kumārapāla and served also under Bhīmadeva II. Seeing the kingdom of his weak sovereign divided among his ministers and chiefs Anāka strove till his death to re-establish the central authority of the Solāṅki dynasty. Kāthavate's Kīrtikaumudī, xiii. <sup>2</sup> Rās Mālā (New Edition), 200.

<sup>3</sup> Kīrtikaumudī, Bombay Sanskrit Series Number XXV.

<sup>4</sup> Ind. Ant VI. 188 footnote. According to Merutunga a cotemporary chronicler an epigram of Bhīma's minister turned back Subhatavarman.

<sup>5</sup> Ind. Ant VI. 188.

<sup>6</sup> According to one story Madanarājñī left her husband's house taking Vīradhavalā with her, and went to live with Deva Rāja Pattakla the husband of her deceased sister. On growing up Vīradhavalā returned to his father's house. Rās Mālā (New Edition), 201.

appeared bewailing her home with unlighted shrines, broken walls, and jackal-haunted streets, and called on him to come to her rescue.<sup>1</sup> Though he may have gone to the length of opposing Bhīmadeva by force of arms, Lavanaprasāda was careful to rule in his sovereign's name. Even after Lavanaprasāda's abdication, though his famous minister Vastupāla considered it advisable, Viradhavala refused to take the supreme title. It was not until the accession of Viradhavala's son Visaladeva that the head of the Vaghelas took any higher title than Rājaka or chieftain. Lavanaprasāda's religious adviser or Guru was the poet Someśvara the author of the Kīrtikaumudī and of the Vastupalacharita or Life of Vastupāla, both being biographical accounts of Vastupāla. The leading supporters both of Lavanaprasāda and of Viradhavala were their ministers the two Jain brothers Vastupāla and Tejapāla the famous temple-builders on Ābu, Satruñjaya, and Gīrnār. According to one account Tejapāla remained at court, while Vastupāla went as governor to Stambhatīrtha or Cambay where he redressed wrongs and amassed wealth.<sup>2</sup>

One of the chief times of peril in Lavanaprasāda's reign was the joint attack of the Devagiri Yādava Singhana or Sinhana from the south and of four Mārwar chiefs from the north. Lavanaprasāda and his son Viradhavala in joint command marched south to meet Singhana at Brouh. While at Brouh the Vaghelas' position was made still more critical by the desertion of the Godhrāha or Godhrā chief to Mālwa and of the Lāṭa or south Gujarāt chief to Singhana. Still Lavanaprasāda pressed on, attacked Singhana, and gave him so crushing a defeat, that, though Lavanaprasāda had almost at once to turn north to meet the Mālwa army, Singhana retired without causing further trouble.<sup>3</sup> Someśvara gives no reason for Singhana's withdrawal beyond the remark 'Deer do not follow the lion's path even when the lion has left it.' The true reason is supplied by a Manuscript called Forms of Treaties.<sup>4</sup> The details of a treaty between Singhana and Lavanaprasāda under date Samvat 1288 (A.D. 1232) included among the Forms seem to show that the reason why Singhana did not advance was that Lavanaprasāda and his son submitted and concluded an alliance.<sup>5</sup> In this copy of the treaty Singhana is called the great king of kings or paramount sovereign *Mahārājādhirāja*, while Lavanaprasāda, Sanskritised into *Lavanaprasada* is called a Rājā and a tributary chief *Mahāmanūḍaleśvara*. The place where the treaty was concluded

## Chapter III.

THE VAGHELAS,  
A.D. 1219 - 1304,  
Lavanaprasāda,  
A.D. 1200 - 1233.

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Buhler in Ind. Ant. VI. 189.

<sup>2</sup> According to the Kīrtikaumudī, Kāthavate's Ed. XIV. note 1, under Vastupāla low people ceased to earn money by base means, the wicked turned pale; the righteous prospered. All honestly and securely plied their calling. Vastupāla put down piracy, and, by building platforms, stopped the mingling of castes in milk shops. He repaired old buildings, planted trees, sank wells, laid out parks, and rebuilt the city. All castes and creeds he treated alike.

<sup>3</sup> Kāthavate's Kīrtikaumudī, xv.

<sup>4</sup> The use of the date Monday the fullmoon of Vaiśākha, Samvat 1288 (A.D. 1232) in the second part of the Forms seems to shew that the work was written in A.D. 1232.

<sup>5</sup> Though the object is to give the form of a treaty of alliance, the author could not have used the names Singhana and Lavanaprasada unless such a treaty had been actually concluded between them. Apparently Singhana's invasion of Gujarāt took place but a short time before the book of treaties was compiled. Bhandarkar's Search for Sanskrit Manuscripts (1882-83), 40-41.

## Chapter III

THE VAGHEL(S),  
A.D. 1219-1301.Lavanaprasāda,  
A.D. 1200-1233.

is styled "the victorious camp," and the date is Monday the fullmoon of Vaisākha in the year Samvat 1288 (A.D. 1232). The provisions are that, as before, each of the belligerents should confine himself to his own territory; neither of them should invade the possessions of the other; if a powerful enemy attacked either of them, they should jointly oppose him; if only a hostile general led the attack, troops should be sent against him; and if from the country of either any noble fled into the territory of the other taking with him anything of value he should not be allowed harbourage and all valuables in the refugee's possession should be restored.<sup>1</sup> His good fortune went with Lavanaprasāda in his attack on the Mārwar chiefs whom he forced to retire. Meanwhile Sankha<sup>2</sup> who is described as the son of the ruler of Sindh but who seems to have held territory in Broach, raised a claim to Cambay and promised Vastupāla Lavanaprasāda's governor, that, if Vastupāla declared in his favour<sup>3</sup>, he would be continued in his government. Vastupāla rejected Sankha's overtures, met him in battle outside of Cambay, and forced him to retire. In honour of Vastupāla's victory the people of Cambay held a great festival when Vastupāla passed in state through the city to the shrine of the goddess Ekalla Vira outside of the town.<sup>4</sup>

Another of the deeds preserved in the Forms is a royal copperplate grant by Lavanaprasada or Lāvanyaprasada of a village, not named, for the worship of Somanātha. Lavanaprasāda is described as the illustrious Rāṇaka,<sup>5</sup> the great chief, the local lord or *Mandalesvara*, the son of the illustrious Rāṇaka Anādi born in the illustrious pedigree of the Chaulukya dynasty. The grant is noted as executed in the reign of Bhūmadeva II<sup>6</sup> while one Bhībhuva was his great minister. Though Bhūmadeva was ruling in A.D. 1232 (Samvat 1288) Lavanaprasada apparently had sufficient influence to make grants of villages and otherwise to act as the real ruler of Gujārat. It was apparently immediately after this grant (A.D. 1232<sup>7</sup>) that Lavanaprasada abdicated in favour of Virādhavala.<sup>7</sup>

Virādhavala,  
A.D. 1233-1239.

Soon after his accession Virādhavala, accompanied by his minister Tejapāla, started on an expedition against his wife's brothers Sangana and Chamunda the rulers of Vamanasthali or Vanthalī near Junāgadh. As in spite of their sister's advice Sangana and Chamunda refused to pay tribute the siege was pressed. Early in the fight the cry arose 'Virādhavala is slain.' But on his favourite horse Uparavata, Virādhavala put himself at the head of his troops, slew both the brothers, and gained the

<sup>1</sup> Bhandarkar's Search for Sanskrit Manuscripts (1882-83), 40.

<sup>2</sup> According to other accounts Sankha, a Broach chieftain, took up the cause of a certain Kayal or Musalmān merchant with whom Vastupāla had quarrelled. In the fight Lūmapāla a Gola, one of Vastupāla's chief supporters, was slain and in his honour Vastupāla raised a shrine to the Lord Lūmapāla. Rās Mālā (New Edition), 201-202.

<sup>3</sup> Kathavate's Kirtikaumudī, xv.-xvi.

<sup>4</sup> Kathavate's Kirtikaumudī, xv.-xvi.

<sup>5</sup> The modern Gujarati Rānī.

<sup>6</sup> Bhūmadeva's name is preceded by the names of his ten Chaulukya predecessors in the usual order. The attributes of each are given as in published Chaulukya copperplates. Ind Ant VI 180-213.

<sup>7</sup> Bhandarkar's Search for Sanskrit Manuscripts (1882-83), 39.

hoarded treasure of Vanthali.<sup>1</sup> In an expedition against the chief of Bhadresvara, probably Bhadresar in Kacch, Viradhavala was less successful and was forced to accept the Kacch chief's terms. The chroniclers ascribe this reverse to three Rájput brothers who came to Viradhavala's court and offered their services for 3,00,000 dramma (about £7500). "For 3,00,000 dramma I can raise a thousand men" said Viradhavala, and the brothers withdrew. They went to the court of the Bhadresar chief, stated their terms, and were engaged. The night before the battle the brothers sent to Viradhavala saying 'Keep ready 3000 men, for through a triple bodyguard we will force our way' The three brothers kept their word. They forced their way to Viradhavala, dismounted him, carried off his favourite steed Uparavata, but since they had been his guests they spared Viradhavala's life.<sup>2</sup>

Another of Viradhavala's expeditions was to East Gujarát. Ghughula, chief of Godhra or Godhrá, plundered the caravans that passed through his territory to the Gujarát ports. When threatened with punishment by Viradhavala, Ghughula in derision sent his overlord a woman's dress and a box of cosmetics. The minister Tejahpála, who was ordered to avenge this affront, dispatched some skirmishers ahead to raid the Godhra cattle. Ghughula attacked the raiders and drove them back in such panic that the main body of the army was thrown into disorder. The day was saved by the prowess of Tejahpála who in single combat unhorsed Ghughula and made him prisoner. Ghughula escaped the disgrace of the woman's dress and the cosmetic box with which he was decorated by biting his tongue so that he died. The conquest of Ghughula is said to have spread Viradhavala's power to the borders of Maháráshtra.<sup>3</sup> The chroniclers relate another success of Viradhavala's against Muizz-ud-dín apparently the famous Muhammad Gori Sultan Muizz-ud-dín Bahramsháh, the Sultan of Delhi (A.D. 1191-1205)<sup>4</sup> who led an expedition against Gujarát. The chief of Ábu was instructed to let the Musalmán force march south unmolested and when they were through to close the defiles against their return. The Gujarát army met the Musalmáns and the Ábu troops hung on their rear. The Musalmáns fled in confusion and cartloads of heads were brought to Viradhavala in Dholká. The chroniclers give the credit of this success to Vastupála. They also credit Vastupála with a stratagem which induced the Sultan to think well of Viradhavala and prevented him taking steps to wipe out the disgrace of his defeat. Hearing that the Sultan's mother, or, according to another story, the Sultan's religious adviser, was going from Cambay to Makka Vastupála ordered his men to attack and plunder the vessels in which the pilgrimage was to be made. On the captain's complaint Vastupála had the pirates arrested and the property restored. So grateful was the owner, whether mother or guide, that Vastupála was taken to Delhi and arranged a friendly treaty between his master and the Sultan.<sup>5</sup>

### Chapter III.

THE VAGHELAS,  
A.D. 1219-1304.

Viradhavala,  
A.D. 1233-1238.

<sup>1</sup> Káthavate's Kirtikaumudí, xxiii.

<sup>2</sup> Káthavate's Kirtikaumudí, xxiii.

<sup>3</sup> Káthavate's Kirtikaumudí, xxiii.-xxiv.

<sup>4</sup> Elliot and Dowson, II. 209.

<sup>5</sup> Káthavate's Kirtikaumudí, xxiv.-xxv.

## Chapter III.

THE VAGHĒLĪS,  
A.D. 1219-1301,  
Vīradhavalā,  
A.D. 1233-1238.

Their lavish expenditure on objects connected with Jain worship make the brothers Vastupāla and Tejappāla the chief heroes of the Jain chroniclers. They say when the Musalmān trader Sayad was arrested at Cambay his wealth was confiscated. Vīradhavalā claimed all but the dust which he left to Vastupāla. Much of the dust was gold dust and a fire turned to dust more of the Sayad's gold and silver treasure. In this way the bulk of the Sayad's wealth passed to Vastupāla. This wealth Vastupāla and his brother Tejappāla went to bury in Hadālaka in Kāthiāvāda. In digging they chanced to come across a great and unknown treasure. According to the books the burden of their wealth so preyed on the brothers that they ceased to care for food. Finding the cause of her husband Tejappāla's anxiety Anupamā said 'Spend your wealth on a hill top. All can see it; no one can carry it away.' According to the chroniclers it was this advice, approved by their mother and by Vastupāla's wife Lalitādevī, that led the brothers to adorn the summits of Abu, Gīrnār, and Satruñjaya with magnificent temples.

The Satruñjaya temple which is dedicated to the twenty-third Tīrthāṅkara Neminātha is dated A.D. 1232 (Samvat 1288) and has an inscription by Someśvara, the author of the Kīrtikaumudī telling how it was built. The Gīrnār temple, also dedicated to Neminātha, bears date A.D. 1232 (Samvat 1288). The Abu temple, surpassing the others and almost every building in India in the richness and delicacy of its carving, is dedicated to Neminātha and dated A.D. 1231 (Samvat 1287). Such was the liberality of the brothers that to protect them against the cold mountain air each of their masons had a fire near him to warm himself and a hot dinner cooked for him at the close of the day. The finest carvers were paid in silver equal in weight to the dust chiselled out of their carvings.<sup>1</sup>

The author Someśvara describes how he twice came to the aid of his friend Vastupāla. On one occasion he saved Vastupāla from a prosecution for peculation. The second occasion was more serious. Simha the maternal uncle of king Viśaladeva whipped the servant of a Jain monastery. Enraged at this insult to his religion Vastupāla hired a Rajput who cut off Simha's offending hand. The crime was proved and Vastupāla was sentenced to death. But according to the Jains the persuasions of Someśvara not only made the king set Vastupāla free, but led him to upbraid his uncle for beating the servant of a Jain monastery. Soon after his release Vastupāla was seized with fever. Feeling the fever to be mortal he started for Satruñjaya but died on the way. His brother Tejappāla and his son Jayantapāla burned his body on the holy hill, and over his ashes raised a shrine with the name Svargārohanaprāsāda. The shrine of the ascent into Heaven.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Kāthavate's Kīrtikaumudī, xx., J. B. R. A. S. XVIII. Number XLVIII. 28. The Jain writers delight in describing the magnificence of the pilgrimages which Vastupāla conducted to the holy places. The details are 4500 carts, 700 palanquins, 1800 camels, 2900 writers, 12,100 white-robed and 1100 naked or sky-clad Jains, 1450 singers, and 9000 boys. Kāthavate's Kīrtikaumudī, xvi.

<sup>2</sup> Kāthavate's Kīrtikaumudī, xviii. 111.

In A.D. 1238 six years after his father's withdrawal from power Viradhavala died. One hundred and eighty-two servants passed with their lord through the flames, and such was the devotion that Tejahpála had to use force to prevent further sacrifices.<sup>1</sup>

Of Viradhavala's two sons, Virama Visala and Pratápanalla, Vastupála favoured the second and procured his succession according to one account by forcing the old king to drink poison and preventing by arms the return to Anahilaváda of the elder brother Virama who retired for help to Jábálipura (Jabalpur). Besides with his brother's supporters Visala had to contend with Tribhuvanapála the representative of the Anahilaváda Solankis. Unlike his father and his grandfather Visala refused to acknowledge an overlord. By A.D. 1243 he was established as sovereign in Anahilaváda. A later grant A.D. 1261 (Samvat 1317) from Kadi in North Gujarát shows that Anahilaváda was his capital and his title *Mahárájádhirāja* King of Kings. According to his copperplates Visaladeva was a great warrior, the crusher of the lord of Málwa, a hatchet at the root of the turbulence of Meyád, a volcanic fire to dry up Singhana of Devagiri's ocean of men.<sup>2</sup> Visaladeva is further described as chosen as a husband by the daughter of Karítáta<sup>3</sup> and as ruling with success and good fortune in Anahilaváda with the illustrious Nágala as his minister.<sup>4</sup> The bards praise Visaladeva for lessening the miseries of a three years famine,<sup>5</sup> and state that he built or repaired the fortifications of Visalanagara in East and of Darbhavati or Dálhoi in South Gujarát.

During Visaladeva's reign Vághela power was established throughout Gujarát. On Visaladeva's death in A.D. 1261 the succession passed to Arjunadeva the son of Visaladeva's younger brother Pratápanalla.<sup>6</sup> Arjunadeva proved a worthy successor and for thirteen years (A.D. 1262-1274; Samvat 1318-1331) maintained his supremacy. Two stone inscriptions one from Verával dated A.D. 1264 (Samvat 1320) the other from Kacch dated A.D. 1272 (Samvat 1328) show that his territory included both Kacch and Káthiaváda, and an inscription of his successor Sáraṅgadeva shows that his power passed as far east as Mount Abu.

The Verával inscription of A.D. 1264 (Samvat 1320), which is in the temple of the god<sup>7</sup> *ś. 11.4 sūtá*,<sup>7</sup> describes Arjunadeva as the king

### Chapter III.

THE VAGHELAS,  
A.D. 1219-1304.

Visaladeva,  
A.D. 1243-1261.

Arjunadeva,  
A.D. 1262-1274.

<sup>1</sup> Rās Málá, 202.

<sup>2</sup> Ind. Ant. VI. 19J. The word for Meyád is Medapáta the Med or Mher land.

<sup>3</sup> The Karnáta king would probably be Someśvara (A.D. 1252) or his son Narasimha III. (A.D. 1254) of the Hoysala Ballalas of Dvārasamudra. Fleet's Kánarese Dynasties, 64, 69.

<sup>4</sup> These details are mentioned in a grant of land in Mándal in Ahmádábád to Bráhmans to fill a drinking fountain, repair temples, and supply offerings. Ind. Ant. VI. 210-213.

<sup>5</sup> Rās Málá (New Ed.), 212. A Jaina Pattávali or succession list of High-priests notices that the famine lasted for three years from Samvat 1315 (A.D. 1259). The text may be translated as follows: Vikrama Samvat 1315, three years' famine the king (being) Visaladeva. Bhandarkar's Search for Sanskrit Manuscripts for 1883-84, 18, 323.

<sup>6</sup> See Ep. Ind. I.

<sup>7</sup> The inscription was first noticed by Colonel Tod: Rajasthan, I. 705: Western India, 506.

## Chapter III.

THE VĀGHELĀS,  
A.D. 1219-1304.Arjunadeva,  
A.D. 1262-1271.

of kings, the emperor (*chakravartin*) of the illustrious Chaulukya race, who is a thorn in the heart of the hostile king Nihsankamalla, the supreme lord, the supreme ruler, who is adorned by a long line of ancestral kings, who resides in the famous Anahillapātaka. The grant allots certain income from houses and shops in Somanātha Patan to a mosque built by Piroz a Muhammadar shipowner of Ormuz which is then mentioned as being under the sway of Amīr Rukn-ud-dīn.<sup>1</sup> The grant also provides for the expenses of certain religious festivals to be celebrated by the Shiite sailors of Somanātha Patan, and lays down that under the management of the Muslim community of Somanātha any surplus is to be made over to the holy districts of Makka and Madina. The grant is written in bad Sanskrit and contains several Arabic Persian and Gujarāṭī words. Its chief interest is that it is dated in four eras, "in 662 of the Prophet Muhammad who is described as the teacher of the sailors, who live near the holy lord of the Universe that is Somanātha; in 1320 of the great king Vikrama; in 945 of the famous Valabhi; and in 151 of the illustrious Simha." The date is given in these four different eras, because the Muhammadan is the donor's era, the Samvat the era of the country, the Valabhi of the province, and the Simha of the locality.<sup>2</sup> The Kacch inscription is at the village of Rav about sixty miles east of Bhūj. It is engraved on a memorial slab at the corner of the courtyard wall of an old temple and bears date A.D. 1272 (Samvat 1328). It describes Arjunadeva as the great king of kings, the supreme ruler, the supreme lord. It mentions the illustrious Māladeva as his chief minister and records the building of a step-well in the village of Rav.<sup>3</sup>

Sāraṅgadeva,  
A.D. 1275-1296.

Arjunadeva was succeeded by his son Sāraṅgadeva. According to the Vichārasreṇī Sāraṅgadeva ruled for twenty-two years from A.D. 1274 to 1296 (Samvat 1331-1353). Inscriptions of the reign of Sāraṅgadeva have been found in Kacch and at Abu. The Kacch inscription is on a *pālī* or memorial slab now at the village of Khokhar near Kanthkot which was brought there from the holy village of Bhadresar about thirty-five miles north-east of Māndvi. It bears date A.D. 1275 (Samvat 1332) and describes Sāraṅgadeva as the great king of kings, the supreme ruler, the supreme lord ruling at Anahillapātaka with the illustrious Māladeva as his chief minister.<sup>4</sup> The Abu inscription dated A.D. 1294 (Samvat 1350) in the temple of Vastupāla regulates certain dues payable to the Jain temple and mentions Sāraṅgadeva as sovereign of Anahillapātaka and as having for vassal Visaladeva ruler of the old capital of Chandrávati about twelve miles south of Mount Abu.<sup>5</sup> A third inscription dated A.D.

<sup>1</sup> This is not Sultan Rukn-ud-din of the slave kings, who ruled from A.D. 1234 to A.D. 1235. Elliot and Dowson, II.

<sup>2</sup> All four dates tally. The middle of A.D. 1264 (Samvat 1320) falls in Hijra 662. As the Valabhi era begins in A.D. 318-319 and the Simha era in A.D. 1113, 915 of Valabhi and 151 of Simha tally with A.D. 1264.

<sup>3</sup> Bombay Government Selections CLII, New Series, 71.

<sup>4</sup> From an unpublished copy in the possession of Ráo Sáheb Dalpatram Pranjivan Khakhar, late Educational Inspector, Kacch. Only the upper six lines of the inscription are preserved.

<sup>5</sup> Asiatic Researches, XVI, 311; Rás Málá, 213.

1287 (Samvat 1343), originally from Somanátha, is now at Cintra in Portugal. It records the pilgrimages and religious benefactions of one Tripurántaka, a follower of the Nakulíśú Páśupata sect, in the reign of Śáraṅgadeva, whose genealogy is given. A manuscript found in Ahmadábád is described as having been finished on Sunday the 3rd of the dark fortnight of Jyeshtha in the Samvat year 1350, in the triumphant reign of Śáraṅgadeva the great king of kings, while his victorious army was encamped near Kśápalli (Ahmadábád).<sup>1</sup>

Śáraṅgadeva's successor Karnaḍeva ruled for eight years A.D. 1296 - 1304 (Samvat 1352 - 1360). Under this weak ruler, who was known as Ghelo or the Insane, Gujarát passed into Musalmán hands. In A.D. 1297 Alaf Khán the brother of the Emperor Ala-u-dín Khilji (A.D. 1296 - 1317) with Nasrat Khán led an expedition against Gujarát. They laid waste the country and occupied Anahilaváda. Leaving his wives, children, elephants, and baggage Karnaḍeva fled to Ramadeva the Yádava chief of Devagiri.<sup>2</sup> All his wealth fell to his conquerors. Among the wives of Karnaḍeva who were made captive, was a famous beauty named Kauládeví, who was carried to the harem of the Sultán. In the plunder of Cambay Nasrat Khán took a merchant's slave Malik Káfur who shortly after became the Emperor's chief favourite. From Cambay the Muhammadans passed to Káthiaváda and destroyed the temple of Somanátha. In 1304 Alaf Khán's term of office as governor of Gujarát was renewed. According to the Mirát-i-Ahmadí after the renewal of his appointment, from white marble pillars taken from many Jain temples, Alaf Khán constructed at Anahilaváda the Jáma Masjid or general mosque.

In A.D. 1306 the Cambay slave Káfur who had already risen to be Sultán Ala-u-dín's chief favourite was invested with the title of Malik Naib and placed in command of an army sent to subdue the Dakhan. Alaf Khán, the governor of Gujarát, was ordered to help Malik Káfur in his arrangements. At the same time Kauládeví persuaded the Emperor to issue orders that her daughter Devaladeví should be sent to her to Delhi. Devaladeví was then with her father the unfortunate Karnaḍeva in hiding in Báglán in Násik. Malik Káfur sent a messenger desiring Karnaḍeva to give up his daughter. Karnaḍeva refused and Alaf Khán was ordered to lead his army to the Báglán hill and capture the princess. While for two months he succeeded in keeping the Muhammadan army at bay, Karnaḍeva received and accepted an offer for the hand of Devaladeví from the Devagiri Yádava chief Śankaradeva. On her way to Devagiri near Elura Devaladeví's escort was attacked by a party of Alaf Khán's troops, and the lady seized and sent to Delhi where she was married to prince Khizar Khán.

Chapter III.  
THE VAGHELAS,  
A.D. 1219 - 1304.

Karnaḍeva,  
A.D. 1296 - 1304.

<sup>1</sup> Professor Bhandarkar's Report for 1883-84, 17-18.

<sup>2</sup> The hardie story is that king Karṇa had two Nágara Bráhmaṇa ministers Mádhava and Kesava. He slew Kesava and took Mádhava's wife from her husband. In revenge Mádhava went to Delhi and brought the Muhammadans. After the Muhammadan conquest Mádhava presented Ala-u-dín with 360 horses. In return Mádhava was appointed civil minister with Alaf Khán as military governor commanding a lákh of horsemen, 1500 elephants, 20,000 foot soldiers and having with him forty-five officers entitled to use kettledrums. *Rás Malá*, 214.

**Chapter III.**  
**THE VÁGHELÁS,**  
**A.D. 1219-1304.**

Nothing more is known of Karpadeva who appears to have died a fugitive.

Though the main cities and all central Gujarát passed under Musalmán rule a branch of the Vághelás continued to hold much of the country to the west of the Sábarmatí, while other branches maintained their independence in the rugged land beyond Ambá Bhawání between Vírpur on the Mahi and Posiná at the northmost verge of Gujarát.<sup>1</sup>

-----

**GENEALOGY OF THE VÁGHELÁS.**

Dhavala,  
 A.D. 1160  
 Married Kamárapála's Aunt.  
 |  
 Anorája,  
 A.D. 1170  
 Founder of Vághela.  
 |  
 Lavanaprasáda,  
 A.D. 1200  
 Chief of Dholká.  
 |  
 Viradhavala,  
 A.D. 1233-1239  
 Chief of Dholká.  
 |  
 Visaladeva,  
 A.D. 1243-1261  
 King of Anahilaváda.  
 |  
 Arjunadeva,  
 A.D. 1262-1274.  
 |  
 Sáraṅgadeva,  
 A.D. 1274-1295.  
 |  
 Karnadeva or Ghelo,  
 A.D. 1296-1304.

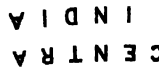
---

<sup>1</sup> Rás Malá, 222. The Jhálás were firmly fixed in the plains between the Lesser Ran of Kacch and the Gulf of Cambay. The Koli branches of these clans with other tribes of pure or of adulterated aboriginal descent, spread over the Chunvál near Viramgám and appeared in many remote and inaccessible tracts of hill or forest. On the east, under the protection of a line of Rájput princes, the banner of the goddess Káli floated from the hill of Pávágad; while in the west the descendants of Khengur held their famous fortress of Junágadh from within its walls controlling much of the peninsula over which they had maintained undisputed sway. Chiefs of Junágadh origin were scattered over the rest of the peninsula among whom were the Gohils of Gogo and Puram, and of the sea-washed province which from them derived its name of Gohilvád.



## of

Scale of Miles



## *PART II.*

### **MUSALMAN GUJARAT.**

**A.D. 1297 - 1760.**

THIS history of Musalman Gujarāt is based on translations of the *Mirāt-i-Sikandari* (A.D. 1611) and of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi* (A.D. 1758) by the late Colonel J. W. Watson. Since Colonel Watson's death in 1889 the translations have been revised and the account enriched by additions from the Persian texts of *Farishtah* and of the two *Mirāts* by Mr. Fazl Lutfullah Farīdi of Surat. A careful comparison has also been made with other extracts in Elliot's *History of India* and in Bayley's *History of Gujarāt*.



# MUSALMÁN GUJARÁT.

A.D. 1297-1760.

## INTRODUCTION.

MUHAMMADAN rule in Gujarát lasted from the conquest of the province by the Delhi emperor Alá-ud-din Khilji (A.D. 1295-1315), shortly before the close of the thirteenth century A.D., to the final defeat of the Mughal viceroy Momin Khán by the Maráthás and the loss of the city of Ahmedábád at the end of February 1758.

This whole term of Musalmán ascendancy, stretching over slightly more than four and a half centuries, may conveniently be divided into three parts. The First, the rule of the early sovereigns of Delhi, lasting a few years more than a century, or, more strictly from A.D. 1297 to A.D. 1403; the Second, the rule of the Ahmedábád kings, a term of nearly a century and three-quarters, from A.D. 1403 to A.D. 1573; the Third, the rule of the Mughal Emperors, when, for little less than two hundred years, A.D. 1573-1760, Gujarát was administered by viceroys of the court of Delhi.

In the course of these 450 years the limits of Gujarát varied greatly. In the fourteenth century the territory nominally under the control of the Musalmán governors of Patan (Anahilaváda) extended southwards from Jhálor, about fifty miles north of Mount Abu, to the neighbourhood of Bombay, and in breadth from the line of the Málwa and Khándesh hills to the western shores of peninsular Gujarát.<sup>1</sup> The earlier kings of Ahmedábád (A.D. 1403-1450), content with establishing their power on a firm footing, did not greatly extend the limits of their kingdom. Afterwards, during the latter part of the fifteenth and the beginning of the sixteenth centuries (A.D. 1450-1530), the dominions of the Ahmedábád kings gradually spread till they included large tracts to the east and north-east formerly in the possession of the rulers of Khándesh and Málwa. Still later, during the years of misrule between A.D. 1530 and A.D. 1573, the west of Khándesh and the north of the Konkan ceased to form part of the kingdom of Gujarát. Finally, under the arrangements introduced by the emperor Akbar in A.D. 1583, more lands were restored to Málwa and Khándesh. With the exception of Jhálor and Sirohi on the north, Dungarpur and Bānsvāda on the north-east, and Alirájpur on

### Introduction.

MUSALMÁN  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760.

### Territorial Limits.

<sup>1</sup> The first notice of the exercise of sovereignty by the Musalmán rulers of Gujarát, over lands further south than the neighbourhood of Surat is in A.D. 1428, when king Ahmed I. (A.D. 1412-1443) contested with the Dakhan sovereign the possession of Mahim (north latitude 19° 40'; east longitude 72° 47'). As no record remains of a Musalmán conquest of the coast as far south as Danda Rájapuri or Janjira, about fifty miles south of Bombay, it seems probable that the North Konkan fell to the Musalmáns in A.D. 1297 as part of the recognised territories of the lords of Anahilapura (Patan). *Ras Mala*, I, 350. One earlier reference may be noted. In A.D. 1422 among the leading men slain in the battle of Sarangpur, about fifty miles north-east of Ujjain in Central India, was Savant chief of Danda Rájapuri that is Janjira. *Mirát-i-Sikandari* (Persian Text), 40, and *Farihtah* (Persian Text), II, 468.

## Introduction.

MUSALMÁN  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297 - 1760.

Sorath.

the east, since handed to Rájputána and Central India, the limits of Gujarát remain almost as they were laid down by Akbar.

Though, under the Musalmáns, peninsular Gujarát did not bear the name of Káthiaváda, it was then, as at present, considered part of the province of Gujarát. During the early years of Musalmán rule, the peninsula, together with a small portion of the adjoining mainland, was known as Sorath, a shortened form of Sauráshtra, the name originally applied by the Hindus to a long stretch of sea-coast between the banks of the Indus and Daman.<sup>1</sup> Towards the close of the sixteenth century the official use of the word Sorath was confined to a portion, though by much the largest part, of the peninsula. At the same time, the name Sorath seems then, and for long after, to have been commonly applied to the whole peninsula. For the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi*, writing as late as the middle of the eighteenth century (A.D. 1756 : A.H. 1170), speaks of Sorath as divided into five districts or *zillás*, Hahír, Káthiaváda, Gohilváda, Bábriaváda, and Jetvada, and notices that though Navanagar was considered a separate district, its tribute was included in the revenue derived from Sorath.<sup>2</sup> In another passage the same writer thus defines Sauráshtra :

Saurashtra or Sorath comprehends the Sukár of Sorath the Sukár of Islamnagar or Navanagar and the Sukár of Kachh or Bhujnagar. It also includes several *zillás* or districts, Nayad which they call Jatwar, Halar or Navanagar and its vicinity, Káthiaváda, Gohilvada, Bábriaváda, Chorvar, Panchál, Okhadr in the neighbourhood of Jagat otherwise called Dwarka, Prabhas Khetar or Patán Somnath and its neighbourhood, Naghar also called Salgogha, and the Nalkantha.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The details of Akbar's settlement in A.D. 1583 show Sorath with sixty three subdivisions and Navanagar (Islamnagar) with seventeen. Similarly in the *Am-i-Akbari* (A.D. 1590) Sorath with its nine divisions includes the whole peninsula except Jhalaváda in the north, which was then part of Ahmedabad. Gladwin, II. 64 and 66 - 71.

<sup>2</sup> Bird's History of Gujarat, 118.

<sup>3</sup> Nayad is the present Navadkantha about ten miles south-west of Rádhanpur containing Jatwar and Vardha in the west near the Ran and spreading east to Sam and Munjpur thirty to forty miles south-west of Patán. Halar is in the north-west of the peninsula, Káthiavada in the centre, Gohilvada in the south-east; Bábriaváda south-west of Gohilvada, Chorvar or Chorvar north-west of Viraval; Panchál in the north-east centre; Okhadr or Okhamandal in the extreme west. Nalkantha is the hollow between Káthiaváda and the mainland. Besides these names the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi* gives one more district in Sorath and others in Gujarát. The name he gives in Sorath is Nágler or Naghar which he says is also called Sálkogah or Salgogah is apparently Sálbet and its neighbourhood, as Kodliár, Madhúpur, Chingaria, and Patán in south Káthiaváda are still locally known as Naghar, a tract famous for its fruitfulness. The *Mirát-i-Ahmedi* contains the following additional local names: For Káli thirty-five miles north-west of Ahmedabad, Dandál; for Dholka twenty-five miles south-west of Ahmedabad, Práth-Naghar for Cambay, Tánbánagri, for Viramgam forty miles north-west of Ahmedabad, Jhalawár; for Mánjpur twenty-two miles south-east of Rádhanpur and some of the country between it and Patán, Párpas, for the tract ten miles south-east of Rádhanpur to the neighbourhood of Patán, Kákre; for the town of Rádhanpur in the Palanpur Political Superintendency and its neighbourhood, Vágará, for the town of Palanpur and its neighbourhood up to Dfsa and Duntivada, Dhandar; for Biláshinor forty-two miles east of Ahmedabad with a part of Kapadvanj in the Kara district, Masulwada; for Baroda, Párkher; for the subdivision of Jambúar in the Broach district fifteen miles north-west of Broach city, Bámam; for Ahmednagar that is Chotá Udepur and the rough lands east of Godhra, Pálwara.

The present Sorath stretches no further than the limits of Jámágh, Bántwa, and a few smaller holdings.

The name Káthiáváda is of recent origin. It was not until after the establishment of Musalman-power in Gujarát that any portion of the peninsula came to bear the name of the tribe of Káthis. Even as late as the middle of the eighteenth century, the name Káthiáváda was applied only to one of the sub-divisions of the peninsula. In the disorders which prevailed during the latter part of the eighteenth century, the Káthis made themselves conspicuous. As it was from the hardy horsemen of this tribe that the tribute-exacting Maráthás met with the fiercest resistance, they came to speak of the whole peninsula as the land of the Káthis. This use was adopted by the early British officers and has since continued.

Under the Ahmedábád kings, as it still is under British rule, Gujarát was divided politically into two main parts; one, called the *khálsah* or crown domain administered directly by the central authority; the other, on payment of tribute in service or in money, left under the control of its former rulers. The amount of tribute paid by the different chiefs depended, not on the value of their territory, but on the terms granted to them when they agreed to become feudatories of the kings of Ahmedábád. Under the Gujarát Sultans this tribute was occasionally collected by military expeditions headed by the king in person and called *subhgar* or country-seizing circuits.

The internal management of the feudatory states was unaffected by their payment of tribute. Justice was administered and the revenue collected in the same way as under the Anahlapur kings. The revenue consisted, as before, of a share of the crops received in kind, supplemented by the levy of special cesses, trade, and transit dues. The chief's share of the crops differed according to the locality; it rarely exceeded one-third of the produce, it rarely fell short of one-sixth. From some parts the chief's share was realised directly from the cultivator by agents called *mantis*; from other parts the collection was through superior landowners.<sup>1</sup>

The Ahmedábád kings divided the portion of their territory which was under their direct authority into districts or *sarkárs*. These districts were administered in one of two ways. They were either assigned to nobles in support of a contingent of troops, or they were set apart as crown domains and managed by paid officers. The officers placed in charge of districts set apart as crown domains were called *mukhtá*.<sup>2</sup> Their chief duties were to preserve the peace and to collect the revenue. For the maintenance of order, a body of soldiers from the army head-quarters at Ahmedábád was detached for service in each of these divisions, and placed under the command of the district governor. At the same time, in addition to the presence of this detachment of regular troops, every district contained certain

## Introduction.

MUSALMAN  
GUJARAT  
A.D. 1297-1760.

Káthiáváda.

UNDER THE  
KINGS,  
1103-1573.

States.

Districts.

Crown Lands

<sup>1</sup> Ras Málá, I. 211.

<sup>2</sup> Mukhtá and *uktá*, the district administered by a *mukhtá*, come from the Arabic root *kata*, he cut, in allusion to the public revenue or the lands cut and apportioned for the pay of the officers and their establishments.

**Introduction.**

UNDER THE  
KINGS,  
A. D. 1403 - 1573.

fortified outposts called *thánās*, varying in number according to the character of the country and the temper of the people. These posts were in charge of officers called *thánādār* subordinate to the district governor. They were garrisoned by bodies of local soldiery, for whose maintenance, in addition to money payments, a small assignment of land was set apart in the neighbourhood of the post. On the arrival of the tribute-collecting army, the governors of the districts through which it passed were expected to join the main body with their local contingents. At other times the district governors had little control over the feudatory chiefs in the neighbourhood of their charge.

**Fiscal.**

For fiscal purposes each district or *sarkār* was distributed among a certain number of sub-divisions or *parganāhs*, each under a paid official styled *āmīt* or *tahsildār*. These sub-divisional officers realised the state demand, nominally one-half of the produce, by the help of the headmen of the villages under their charge. In the sharehold and simple villages of North Gujarāt these village headmen were styled *patels* or according to Musalmān writers *mulquddams* and in the simple villages of the south they were known as *dewāns*. They arranged for the final distribution of the total demand in joint villages among the shareholders, and in simple villages from the individual cultivators.<sup>1</sup> The sub-divisional officer presented a statement of the accounts of the villages in his sub-division to the district officer, whose record of the revenue of his whole district was in turn forwarded to the head revenue officer at court. As a check on the internal management of his charge, and especially to help him in the work of collecting the revenue, with each district governor was associated an accountant. Further that each of these officers might be the greater check on the other, king Ahmed I. (A.D. 1412 - 1443) enforced the rule that when the governor was chosen from among the royal slaves the accountant should be a free man, and that when the accountant was a slave the district governor should be chosen from some other class. This practice was maintained till the end of the reign of Muzaflar Shah (A.D. 1511-1525), when, according to the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi*, the army became much increased, and the ministers, condensing the details of revenue, farmed it on contract, so that many parts formerly yielding one rupee now produced ten, and many others seven eight or nine, and in no place was there a less increase than from ten to twenty per cent. Many other changes occurred at the same time, and the spirit of innovation creeping into the administration the wholesome system of checking the accounts was given up and mutiny and confusion spread over Gujarāt.<sup>2</sup>

**Assigned Lands.**

The second class of directly governed districts were the lands assigned to nobles for the maintenance of contingents of troops. As in other parts of India, it would seem that at first these assignments were for specified sums equal to the pay of the contingent. When such assignments were of long standing, and were large enough to swallow the whole revenue of a district, it was natural to simplify the

<sup>1</sup> Further particulars regarding these village headmen are given below.

<sup>2</sup> Bird's History of Gujarāt, 192; *Mirāt-i-Sikandari*, Persian Text, 41.

arrangement by transferring the collection of the revenue and the whole management of the district to the military leader of the contingent. So long as the central power was strong, precautions were doubtless taken to prevent the holder of the grant from unduly rackrenting his district and appropriating to himself more than the pay of the troops, or from exercising any powers not vested in the local governors of districts included within the crown domains. As in other parts of India, those stipulations were probably enforced by the appointment of certain civil officers directly from the government to inspect the whole of the noble's proceedings, as well in managing his troops as in administering his lands.<sup>1</sup> The decline of the king's power freed the nobles from all check or control in the management of their lands. And when, in A.D. 1536, the practice of farming was introduced into the crown domains, it would seem to have been adopted by the military leaders in their lands, and to have been continued till the annexation of Gujarāt by the emperor Akbar in A.D. 1573.

It was the policy of Akbar rather to improve the existing system than to introduce a new form of government. After to some extent contracting the limits of Gujarāt he constituted it a province or *sibah* of the empire, appointing to its government an officer of the highest rank with the title of *sibahdār* or viceroy. As was the case under the Ahmedābād kings, the province continued to be divided into territories managed by feudatory chiefs, and districts administered by officers appointed either by the court of Dehli or by the local viceroy. The head-quarters of the army remained at Ahmedābād, and detachments were told off and placed under the orders of the officers in charge of the directly administered divisions. These district governors, as before, belonged to two classes, paid officers responsible for the management of the crown domains and military leaders in possession of lands assigned to them in pay of their contingent of troops. The governors of the crown domains, who were now known as *farjīdārs* or commanders, had, in addition to the command of the regular troops, the control of the outposts maintained within the limits of their charge. Like their predecessors they accompanied the viceroy in his yearly circuit for the collection of tribute.

As a check on the military governors and to help them in collecting the revenue, the distinct class of account officers formerly established by king Ahmed I. (A.D. 1412-1413) was again introduced. The head of this branch of the administration was an officer, second in rank to the viceroy alone, appointed direct from the court of Dehli with the title of *dirān*. Besides acting as collector-general of the revenues of the province, this officer was also the head of its civil administration. His title *dirān* is generally translated minister. And though the word minister does not express the functions of the office, which corresponded more nearly with those of a chief secretary, it represents with sufficient accuracy the relation in which the holder of the office of *dirān* generally stood to the viceroy.

## Introduction.

UNDER THE  
MUGHAIS,  
A.D. 1553-1573.

Assigned Lands.

UNDER THE  
MUGHAIS,  
A.D. 1573-1760.  
Administration.

Crown Lands.

**Introduction.**

UNDER THE  
MUGHALS,  
A.D. 1573-1760.

Revenue  
Officials.

For its revenue administration each district or group of districts had its revenue officials called *amins* who corresponded to the collector of modern times. There were also *amins* in the customs department separate from those whose function was to control and administer the land revenue. Beneath the *amin* came the *amil*<sup>1</sup> who carried on the actual collection of the land revenue or customs in each district or *parganah*, and below the *amil* were the *jilts*, *mushrifs*, or *karkhans* that is the revenue clerks. The *amil* corresponded to the modern *mamlatdar*, both terms meaning him who carries on the *amal* or revenue management. In the leading ports the *amil* of the customs was called *mutasaddi* that is civil officer.

Village  
Officers.

The *amil* or *mamlatdar* dealt directly with the village officials, namely with the *mukaddam* or headman, the *putwari* or lease manager, the *kánungo* or accountant, and the *haraldar* or grain-yard guardian. The *haraldar* superintended the separation of the government share of the produce; apportioned to the classes subject to forced labour their respective turns of duty; and exercised a general police superintendence by means of subordinates called *pasáils* or *ragmanis*. In ports under the *mutasaddi* was a harbour-master or *sháh-bandar*.

DESÁIS.

Crown sub-divisions had, in addition, the important class called *desáis*. The *desái's* duty appears at first to have been to collect the *sálimi* or tribute due by the smaller chiefs, landholders, and *vántadars* or sharers. For this, in Akbar's time, the *desái* received a remuneration of 2½ per cent on the sum collected. Under the first viceroy Mirza Aziz Kokaltash (A.D. 1573-1575) this percentage was reduced to one-half of its former amount, and in later times this one-half was again reduced by one-half. Though the Muhammadan historians give no reason for so sweeping a reduction, the cause seems to have been the inability of the *desáis* to collect the tribute without the aid of a military force. Under the new system the *desái* seems merely to have kept the accounts of the tribute due, and the records both of the amount which should be levied as tribute and of other customary rights of the crown. In later times the *desáis* were to a great extent superseded by the district accountants or *majmulárs*, and many *desáis*, especially in south Gujarát, seem to have sunk to *patels*.

Land Tax.

Up to the viceroyalty of Mirza Isá Tarkhán (A.D. 1542-1544), the land tax appears to have been levied from the cultivator in a fixed sum, but he was also subject to numerous other imposts. Land grants in *waqifah* carried with them an hereditary title and special exemption from all levies except the land tax. The levy in kind appears to have ceased before the close of Mughal rule. In place of a levy in kind each village paid a fixed sum or *jama* through the district accountant or *majmulár* who had taken the place of the *desái*. As in many cases the *jama* really meant the lump sum at which the crown villages were assessed and farmed to the chiefs and *patels*, on the collapse of the empire many villages thus farmed to chiefs and landlords were

<sup>1</sup> In Marwát and in the north and north-east this official was styled *tahsilár* and in the Dakhan *karnavísár*.

retained by them with the connivance of the *mujmudárs desáís* and others.

The administration of justice seems to have been very complete. In each *kashah* or town *kázis*, endowed with glebe lands in addition to a permanent salary, adjudicated disputes among Muhammadans according to the laws of Islám. Disputes between Muhammadans and unbelievers, or amongst unbelievers, were decided by the department called the *sadrát*, the local judge being termed a *sadr*. The decisions of the local *kázis* and *sadrs* were subject to revision by the *kázi* or *sadr* of the *súbah* who resided at Ahmedábád. And as a last resort the Ahmedábád decisions were subject to appeal to the *Kázi-ul-Kuzat* and the *Sadr-ús-Sudán* at the capital.

The revenue appears to have been classed under four main heads: 1. The *Kharárah-i-Ámirah* or imperial treasury which comprehended the land tax received from the crown *paragánahs* or districts, the tribute, the five per cent customs dues from infidels, the import dues on stuffs, and the *saíyir* or land customs including transit dues, slave, market dues, and miscellaneous taxes. 2. The treasury of arrears into which were paid government claims in arrear either from the *ámils* or from the farmers of land revenue; *takávi* advances due by the *raiyats*; and tribute levied by the presence of a military force. 3. The treasury of charitable endowments. Into this treasury was paid the 2½ per cent levied as customs due from Muhammadans.<sup>1</sup> The pay of the religious classes was defrayed from this treasury. 4. The treasury, into which the *jaziáh* or capitation tax levied from *zimínis* or infidels who acknowledged Muhammadan rule, was paid. The proceeds were expended in charity and public works. After the death of the emperor Farrukhsiyar (A.D. 1713-1719), this source of revenue was abolished. The arrangements introduced by Akbar in the end of the sixteenth century remained in force till the death of Aurangzib in A.D. 1707. Then trouble and perplexity daily increased, till in A.D. 1721-25, Hamid Khán usurped the government lands, and, seeking to get rid of the servants and assignments, gradually obtained possession of the records of the registry office. The keepers of the records were scattered, and yearly revenue statements ceased to be received from the districts.<sup>2</sup>

Akbar continued the system of assigning lands to military leaders in payment of their contingents of troops. Immediately after the annexation in A.D. 1573, almost the whole country was divided among the great nobles.<sup>3</sup> Except that the revenues of certain tracts were

## Introduction.

UNDER THE  
MUGHALS,  
A.D. 1573-1760.

Justice.

Fiscal.

Assigned Lands.

<sup>1</sup> *Zakat*, literally purification or cleansing, is the name of a tax levied from Muslims for charitable purposes or religious uses. In the endowments-treasury the customs dues from Muslims at 2½ per cent (the technical 1 in 10) as contrasted with the five per cent levied from infidels (the technical 2 in 10) were entered. Hence in these accounts *zakat* corresponds with customs dues, and is divisible into two kinds *khushki zakat* or land customs and *tari zakat* or sea customs.

<sup>2</sup> Bird's History of Gujarat, 93. Though under the Mughal viceroys the state demand was at first realized in grain, at the last the custom was to assess each subdivision, and probably each village, at a fixed sum or *jama*. The total amount for the subdivision was collected by an officer called *mamdar*, literally keeper of collections, the village headmen, *patels* or *mukaddams*, being responsible each for his own village.

<sup>3</sup> Bird's History of Gujarat, 325.

**Introduction.**

UNDER THE  
MUGHALS,  
A.D. 1573-1760.

**Assigned Lands.**

set aside for the imperial exchequer the directly governed districts passed into the hands of military leaders who employed their own agents to collect the revenue. During the seventeenth century the practice of submitting a yearly record of their revenues, and the power of the viceroy to bring them to account for misgovernment, exercised a check on the management of the military leaders. And during this time a yearly surplus revenue of £600,000 (Rs. 60,00,000) from the assigned and crown lands was on an average forwarded from Gujarat to Delhi. In the eighteenth century the decay of the viceroy's authority was accompanied by the gradually increased power of the military leaders in possession of assigned districts, till finally, as in the case of the Nawābs of Broach and Surat, they openly claimed the position of independent rulers.<sup>1</sup>

**Minor Offices.**

Of both leading and minor officials the Mirāṭ-i-Ahmedi supplies the following additional details. The highest officer who was appointed under the seal of the minister of the empire was the provincial *dirān* or minister. He had charge of the fiscal affairs of the province and of the revenues of the *khālsa* or crown lands, and was in some matters independent of the viceroy. Besides his personal salary he had 150 *savārs* for two provincial *thanās* Arjanpur and Khambālia. Under the *dirān* the chief officers were the *pīshkār dirān* his first assistant, who was appointed under imperial orders by the patent of the *dirān*, the *dāroghah* or head of the office, and the *shāif* or *mushrif* and *tahwīldār* of the *daftar khānāhs*, who presided over the accounts with *munshis* and *muharrirs* or secretaries and writers. The *kāzis*, both town and city, with the sanction of the emperor were appointed by the chief law officer of the empire through the chief law officer of the province. They were lodged by the state, paid partly in cash partly in land, and kept up a certain number of troopers. In the *kāzis*'s courts *wakīls* or pleaders and *muftīs* or law officers drew 8 as. to Re. 1 a day. Newly converted Musalmāns also drew 8 as a day. The city censor or *muhtasib* had the supervision of morals and of weights and measures. He was paid in cash and land, and was expected to keep up sixty troopers. The news-writer, who was sometimes also *bakhshi* or military paymaster had a large staff of news-writers called *wākīlāh-nigār* who worked in the district courts and offices as well as in the city courts. He received his news-reports every evening and embodied them in a letter which was sent to court by camel post. A second staff of news-writers called *sawāntālnigār* reported rumours. A third set were the *harkānās* on the viceroy's staff. Postal *chankis* or stations extended from Ahmedābād to the Ajmīr frontier, each with men and horse ready to carry the imperial post which reached Shāh Jehānābād or Delhi in seven days. A line of posts also ran south through Broach to the Dakhan. The *faujdārs* or military police, who were sometimes commanders of a thousand and held estates, controlled both the city and the district police. The *kotwāl* or head of the city night-watch was appointed by the viceroy. He had fifty troopers and a hundred foot. In the treasury department were the *amīn* or chief, the *dāroghah*, the

<sup>1</sup> Bird's History of Gujarāt, 341.

*mushrif*, the treasurer, and five messengers. In the medical department were a Yúnání or Greek school and a Hindu physician, two under-physicians on eight and ten annas a day, and a surgeon. The yearly grant for food and medicine amounted to Rs. 2000.<sup>1</sup>

Besides the class of vernacular terms that belong to the administration of the province, certain technical words connected with the tenure of land are of frequent occurrence in this history. For each of these, in addition to the English equivalent which as far as possible has been given in the text, some explanation seems necessary. During the period to which this history refers, the superior holders of the land of the province belonged to two main classes, those whose claims dated from before the Musalman conquest and those whose interest in the land was based on a Musalman grant. By the Musalman historians, landholders of the first class, who were all Hindus, are called *zamindárs*, while landholders of the second class, Musalmáns as a rule, are spoken of as *jágirdárs*. Though the term *zamindár* was used to include the whole body of superior Hindu landholders, in practice a marked distinction was drawn between the almost independent chief, who still enjoyed his Hindu title of *rāja*, *rāval*, *rāe*, or *jān*, and the petty claimant to a share in a government village, who in a Hindu state would have been known as a *grāmsīd*.<sup>2</sup>

The larger landholders, who had succeeded in avoiding complete subjection, were, as noted above, liable only for the payment of a certain fixed sum, the collection of which by the central power in later times usually required the presence of a military force. With regard to the settlement of the claims of the smaller landholders of the superior class, whose estates fell within the limits of the directly administered districts, no steps seem to have been taken till the reign of Ahmed Shāh I (A.D. 1441-1443). About the year A.D. 1420 the peace of his kingdom was so broken by agrarian disturbances, that Ahmed Shāh agreed, on condition of their paying tribute and performing military service, to re-grant to the landholders of the *zamindār* class as hereditary possessions a one-fourth share of their former village lands. The portion so set apart was called *rānta* or share, and the remainder, retained as state land, was called *talpāt*. This agreement continued till in the year A.D. 1545, during the reign of Mubarriz Shāh II. (A. 1545-1553), an attempt was made to annex these private shares to the crown. This measure caused much discontent and disorder. It was reversed by the emperor Akbar who, as part of the settlement of the province in A.D. 1583, restored their one-fourth share to the landholders, and, except that the Marathas

### Introduction.

UNDER THE  
MUGHALS,  
A.D. 1573-1660.

### Land Tenures.

Hereditary  
Hindu  
Landholders

<sup>1</sup> Mirāt-i-Ahmedī Persian Text page 115.

<sup>2</sup> The title *rāja* is applicable to the head of a family only. The payment of tribute to the Mughals or Marāthas does not affect the right to use this title. *Rānta* and *rao* seem to be of the same dignity as *rāja*. *Rāval* is of lower rank. The sons of *rājas*, *rānts*, *raos*, and *ravals* are called *kutras* and their sons *thakurs*. The younger sons of *thakurs* became *bhūmīs*, that is landowners or *grāmsīds*, that is owners of *grāms* or a mouthful. *Jān* is the title of the chiefs of the Jadeja tribe both of the elder branch in Kachh and of the younger branch in Navsāgar, or Little Kachh in Kathiawād. R. S. M. II. 277.

**Introduction.**

UNDER THE  
MUGHALS,  
A.D. 1573-1760.

**Levies.**

afterwards levied an additional quit-rent from these lands, the arrangements then introduced have since continued in force.<sup>1</sup>

During the decay of Musalmán rule in Gujarat in the first half of the eighteenth century, shareholders of the *garásia* class in government villages, who were always ready to increase their power by force, levied many irregular exactions from their more peaceful neighbours, the cultivators or inferior landholders. These levies are known as *rol* that is a forced contribution or *pál* that is protection. All have this peculiar characteristic that they were paid by the cultivators of crown lands to petty marauders to purchase immunity from their attacks. They in no case partook of the nature of dues imposed by a settled government on its own subjects. *Tora garás*, more correctly *tola garás*, is another levy which had its origin in eighteenth century disorder. It was usually a readymoney payment taken from villages which, though at the time crown or *khalsa*, had formerly belonged to the *garásia* who exacted the levy. Besides a readymoney payment contributions in kind were sometimes exacted.

**Service Lands.**

The second class of superior landholders were those whose title was based on a Musalmán grant. Such grants were either assignments of large tracts of land to the viceroy, district-governors, and nobles, to support the dignity of their position and maintain a contingent of troops, or they were allotments on a smaller scale granted in reward for some special service. Land granted with these objects was called *jágir*, and the holder of the land *jágirdár*. In theory, on the death of the original grantee, such possessions were strictly resumable; in practice they tended to become hereditary. No regular payments were required from holders of *jágirs*. Only under the name of *peshkash* occasional contributions were demanded. These occasional contributions generally consisted of such presents as a horse or an elephant, or some other article of value. They had more of the nature of a freewill offering than of an enforced tribute. Under the Musalmans contributions of this kind were the only payments exacted from proprietors of the *jágirdár* class. But the Marathas, in addition to contributions, imposed on *jágirdárs* a regular tribute, similar to that paid by the representatives of the original class of superior Hindu landholders.

Under Musalmán rule great part of Gujarát was always in the hands of *jágirdárs*. So powerful were they that on two occasions under the Ahmedábád kings, in A.D. 1554 and A.D. 1572, the leading

<sup>1</sup> Under the Maráthás the title *zamindar* was bestowed on the farmers of the land revenue, and this practice was adopted by the earlier English writers on Gujarat. In consequence of this change small landholders of the superior class, in directly administered districts, came again to be called by their original Hindu name of *garásia*. Mr. Elphinstone (History, 79 and note 13) includes under the term *zamindar* (1) half-subdued chieftains, (2) independent governors of districts, and (3) farmers of revenue. He also notices that until Aurangzeb's time such chiefs as enjoyed some degree of independence were alone called *zamindars*. But in Colonel Walker's time, A.D. 1765, at least in Gujarát (Bombay Government Selections, XXXIX, 25) the term *zamindar* included *dehans*, *majmundars* (district accountants), *patils*, and *talafis* (village chiefs).

nobles distributed among themselves the entire area of the kingdom.<sup>1</sup> Again, during the eighteenth century, when Mughal rule was on the decline, the *patidars* by degrees won for themselves positions of almost complete independence.<sup>2</sup>

The changes in the extent of territory and in the form of administration illustrate the effect of the government on the condition of the people during the different periods of Musalmán rule. The following summary of the leading characteristics of each of the main divisions of the four-and-a-half centuries of Musalmán ascendancy may serve as an introduction to the detailed narrative of events.

On conquering Gujarát in A.D. 1297 the Musalmáns found the country in disorder. The last kings of Anahilapur or Patan, suffering under the defects of an incomplete title, held even their crown lands with no firmness of grasp, and had allowed the outlying territory to slip almost entirely from their control. Several of the larger and more distant rulers had resumed their independence. The Phils and Kolis of the hills, forests, and rough river banks were in revolt. And stranger chiefs, driven south by the Musalmán conquests in Upper India, had robbed the central power of much territory.<sup>3</sup> The records of the early Musalmán governors (A.D. 1297-1391) show suspicion on the side of the Delhi court and disloyalty on the part of more than one viceroy, much confusion throughout the province, and little in the way of government beyond the exercise of military force. At the same time, in spite of wars and rebellions, the country, in parts at least, seems to

## Introduction.

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760.

Under the  
Early Viceroys,  
1297-1403.

<sup>1</sup> Details of A.D. 1571 given in the *Munat-i Ahmed* show that the chief nobles were bound to furnish cavalry contingents varying from 1000 to 25,000 horse and held lands estimated to yield yearly revenues of £160,000 to £1,620,000. *Bur's Gujarat*, 109-127.

<sup>2</sup> According to the European travellers in India during the seventeenth century, provincial governors, and probably to some extent all large holders of service lands, employed various methods for adding to the profits which the assigned lands were meant to yield them. Of these devices two seem to have been specially common: the practice of supporting a body of horse smaller than the number agreed for, and the practice of purveyance that is of levying supplies without payment. Sir Thomas Roe, from A.D. 1615 to 1618 English ambassador at the court of the emperor Jahangir, gives the following details of these irregular practices. The Patan (that is Patna in Bengal) viceroy's government was estimated at 1000 horse, the yearly pay of each trooper being £20 (Rs. 2000), of which he kept only 150, being allowed the surplus as dead pay. On one occasion this governor wished to present me with 100 loaves of the finest sugar, as white as snow, each loaf weighing fifty pounds. On my declining, he said, 'You refuse these loaves, thinking I am poor, but being made in my government the sugar costs me nothing, as it comes to me gratis.' Sir Thomas Roe in *Kerr's Voyages*, IX 282-284. The same writer, the best qualified of the English travellers of that time to form a correct opinion, thus describes the administration of the Musalmán governors of the seventeenth century. 'They practise every kind of tyranny against the natives under their jurisdiction, oppressing them with continual exactions, and are exceedingly averse from any way being opened by which the king may be informed of their infamous proceedings. They grant the people under their government to extract money from them, often hanging men up by the heels to make them confess that they are rich, or to ransom themselves from faults merely imputed with a view to fleece them.' Sir Thomas Roe in *Kerr's Voyages*, IX, 334.

<sup>3</sup> Of these settlements the principal was that of the Rathod chief who in the thirteenth century established himself at Idar, now one of the states of the Mahi Kantha. In the thirteenth century also, Gohils from the north and Solha Parmárs and Kathis from Sindh entered Gujarát. *Ras Mala*, II, 260.

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760.

Under the  
Kings,  
1403-1573.

have been well cultivated, and trade and manufactures to have been flourishing.<sup>1</sup>

The period of the rule of the Ahmedābād kings (A.D. 1403-1573) contains two divisions, one lasting from A.D. 1403 to A.D. 1530, on the whole a time of strong government and of growing power and prosperity; the other the forty-three years from A.D. 1530 to the conquest of the province by the emperor Akbar in A.D. 1573, a time of disorder and misrule. In A.D. 1403 when Gujarāt separated from Dehli the new king held but a narrow strip of plain. On the north were the independent chiefs of Sirohi and Jhalor, from whom he occasionally levied contributions. On the east the Raja of Idar, another Rājput prince, was in possession of the western skirts of the hills and forests, and the rest of that tract was held by the mountain tribes of Bhils and Kolis. On the west the peninsula was in the hands of nine or ten Hindu tribes, probably tributary, but by no means obedient.<sup>2</sup> In the midst of so unsettled and warlike a population, all the efforts of Muzaffar I., the founder of the dynasty, were spent in establishing his power. It was not until the reign of his successor Ahmed I. (A.D. 1412-1443) that steps were taken to settle the different classes of the people in positions of permanent order. About the year A.D. 1420 two important measures were introduced. Of these one assigned lands for the support of the troops, and the other recognised the rights of the superior class of Hindu landholders to a portion of the village lands they had formerly held. The effect of these changes was to establish order throughout the districts directly under the authority of the crown. And though, in the territories subject to feudatory chiefs, the presence of an armed force was still required to give effect to the king's claims for tribute, his increasing power and wealth made efforts at independence more hopeless, and gradually secured the subjection of the greater number of his vassals. During the latter part of the fifteenth and the first quarter of the sixteenth century the power of the Ahmedābād kings was at its height. At that time their dominions included twenty-five divisions or *sarkārs*. Among nine of these namely Pātan, Ahmedābād, Sūnth, Godhra, Champāner, Baroda, Broach, Nāndod or Rājpipla, and Surat the central plain was distributed. In addition in the north were four divisions, Sirohi, Jhalor, Jodhpur, and Nāgor now in south-west and central Rajputāna; in the north-east two, Dungarpur and Bānsvāda, now in the extreme

<sup>1</sup> Gujarāt of about the year A.D. 1300 is thus described: 'The air of Gujarāt is healthy, and the earth picturesque, the vineyards bring forth blue grapes twice a year, and the strength of the soil is such that the cotton plants spread their branches like willow and plane trees, and yield produce for several years successively. Besides Cambay, the most celebrated of the cities of Hind in population and wealth, there are 70,000 towns and villages, all populous, and the people abounding in wealth and luxuries.' Elliot's History of India, III. 31, 32, and 33. Marco Polo about A.D. 1292, says: 'In Gujarāt there grows much pepper and ginger and indigo. They have also a great deal of cotton. Their cotton trees are of very great size, growing full six paces high, and attaining to an age of twenty years.' Yule's Edition, II. 324. The cotton referred to was probably the variety known as *derkapus* (*Gossypium religiosum* or *peruvianum*), which grows from ten to fifteen feet high, and bears for several years. Royle, 149-150.

<sup>2</sup> Elphinstone's History, 762.

south of Rājputāna; in the east and south-east three, Nandurbār now in Khāndesh Muller or Bāglān now in Nasik, and Rām Nagar or Dharāmpur now in Surat; in the south four, Dandā-Rājapuri or Janjira, Bombay, Bassein, and Daman now in the Konkan; in the west two, Sorath and Navānagar now in Kutchavāda, and Kachh in the north-west. Besides the revenues of these districts, tribute was received from the rulers of Ahmednagar, Burhānpur, Berār, Golkonda, and Bijāpur, and customs dues from twenty-five ports on the western coast of India and from twenty-six foreign marts, some of them in India and others in the Persian Gulf and along the Arabian coast.<sup>1</sup> The total revenue from these three sources is said in prosperous times to have amounted to a yearly sum of £11,160,000 (Rs. 11,16,00,000). Of this total amount the territorial revenue from the twenty-five districts yielded £5,840,000 (Rs. 5,84,00,000), or slightly more than one-half. Of the remaining £5,620,000 (Rs. 5,62,00,000) about one-fifth part was derived from the Dakhan tribute and the rest from customs-dues.<sup>2</sup>

The buildings at Ahmedābad, and the ruins of Chāmpāner and Mehmedābad, prove how much wealth was at the command of the sovereign and his nobles, while the accounts of travellers seem to show that the private expenditure of the rulers was not greater than the kingdom was well able to bear. The Portuguese traveller Duarte Barbosa, who was in Gujarāt between A.D. 1511 and A.D. 1514, found the capital Chāmpāner a great city, in a very fertile country of abundant provisions, with many cows, sheep and goats and plenty of fruit, so that it was full of all things.<sup>3</sup> Ahmedābad was still larger, very rich and well

## Introduction.

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760.

Under the  
Kings,  
1403-1573.

<sup>1</sup> Bird's History of Gujarat, 110, 129, and 130.

<sup>2</sup> The passage from the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi*, Bird 709, is 'A sum of 25 *lakh*s of *hans* and one *han* of *shrahims*, that were two parts greater, being altogether nearly equal to 5 *khors* and 62 *lakh*s of rupees, was collected from the Dakhan tribute and the customs of the European and Arab ports.' The word *han* from an old Kanatak word for gold, is the Musalman name for the coin known among Hindus as *varidha* or the wild-bear coin and among the Portuguese as the *pagoda* or temple coin. Prinsep Ind. Ant. Thomas' Ed. II. l. 17. 18. The old specimens of this coin weigh either 60 grams the *mada* or half *pagoda*, or 120 grams the *han* or full *pagoda*. Thomas, Chron. Pat. Ka. II. 224, note. The star *pagoda*, in which English accounts at Madras were formerly kept, weighs 52.56 grams, and was commonly valued at 8s. or Rs. 4 (Prinsep as above). At this rate in the present sum the 25 *lakh*s of *hans* would equal one *kor* (100 *lakh*s) of rupees. The *shrahims* 'two parts greater than the *han*,' would seem to be a gold coin, perhaps a variety of the Persian *ashkan* (worth about 9s. English. Marsden, N. O. 155). Taking the two parts of a *han* as *fanams* or sixteenths, this would give the *shrahims* a value of Rs. 4½, and make a total customs revenue of £25 *lakh*s of rupees. This statement of the revenues of the kingdom is, according to the author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi*, taken from such times as the power of the Gujarat kings continued to increase. The total revenue of the twenty-five districts (£5,840,000) is the amount recovered in the year A.D. 1571. But the receipts under the head of Tribute must have been compiled from accounts of earlier years. For, as will be seen below, the neighbouring kings ceased to pay tribute after the end of the reign of Bahadur (A.D. 1536). Similarly the customs-revenues entered as received from Daman and other places must have been taken from the accounts of some year previous to A.D. 1560.

<sup>3</sup> The remains at Chāmpāner in the British district of the Panch Mahāls are well known. Of Mehmedābad, the town of that name in the district of Kaira, eighteen miles south of Ahmedābad, a few ruins only are left. In A.D. 1590 this city is said to have contained many grand edifices surrounded with a wall eleven miles (7 *kos*) square with at every ½ mile (¼ *kos*) a pleasure house, and an enclosure for deer and other game. (Ain-i-Akbari, Gladwin, II. 61.) The *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi* makes no special reference to the sovereign's share of the revenue. The greater part of the £5,620,000 derived from

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760

Under the  
Kings,  
1103-1573.

supplied, embellished with good streets and squares, with houses of stone and cement. It was not from the interior districts of the province that the Ahmedābād kings derived the chief part of their wealth, but from those lying along the coast, which were enriched by manufactures and commerce.<sup>1</sup> So it was that along the shores of the gulf of Cambay and southward as far as Bombay the limit of the Gujarāt kingdom, besides many small sea-ports, Barbosa chooses out for special mention twelve 'towns of commerce, very rich and of great trade.' Among these was Diu, off the south coast of Kathiavādā, yielding so large a revenue to the king as to be 'a marvel and amazement.' And chief of all Cambay, in a goodly, fertile, and pretty country full of abundant provisions; with rich merchants and men of great prosperity; with craftsmen and mechanics of subtle workmanship in cotton, silk, ivory, silver, and precious stones, the people well dressed, leading luxurious lives, much given to pleasure and amusement.'

The thirty-eight years between the defeat of king Bahadur by the emperor Humayūn in A.D. 1535 and the annexation of Gujarāt by Akbar in A.D. 1573 was a time of confusion. Abroad, the superiority of Gujarāt over the neighbouring powers was lost, and the limits of the kingdom shrank; at home, after the attempted confiscation (A.D. 1545) of their shares in village lands the disaffection of the superior landowners became general, and the court, beyond the narrow limits of the crown domains, ceased to exercise substantial control over

tribute and customs would probably go to the king, besides the lands specially set apart as crown domains, which in A.D. 1571 were returned as yielding a yearly revenue of £90,000 (900,000,000 *tankees*). This would bring the total income of the crown to a little more than 6½ millions sterling.

<sup>1</sup> So Sikandar Lodi emperor of Dehli, A.D. 1488-1517, is reported to have said: 'The magnificence of the kings of Dehli rests on wheat and barley, the magnificence of the kings of Gujarāt rests on coral and pearls.' Bird, 32.

<sup>2</sup> The twelve Gujarāt ports mentioned by Barbosa are: On the south coast of the peninsula, two: Patemni (Patan South, now Veraval) very rich and of great trade, Surat-Mangalor (Mangruli, a town of commerce) and Diu. On the shores of the gulf of Cambay four: Goguin (Goghat a large town, Barbesy (Broach), Guandar or Gindar (Gandhar) a very good town, and Cambay. On the western coast five: Ravel (Rander), a rich place, Surat, a city of very great trade; Dny (Gandev), a place of great trade; Baxy (Bessim) a good seaport in which much goods are exchanged, and Tanamvambu (Phana-Mahim) a town of great Moorish mosque, but of little trade, (Stanley's Barbosa, 59-68). The only one of these ports whose identification seems doubtful is Ravel, described by Barbosa (page 67) as a pretty town of the Moors on a good river twenty leagues south of Gandhar. This agrees with the position of Rander on the Tāpti, nearly opposite Surat which appears in Al Biruni (A.D. 1030) as Rahanur one of the capitals of south Gujarāt and is mentioned under the name Raur, both in the Ain-i-Akhbari (A.D. 1590) and in the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi for the year A.D. 1571, as a place of trade, 'in ancient times a great city.' In his description of the wealth of Cambay, Barbosa is supported by the other European travellers of the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries. According to Nicolo de Conti (A.D. 1420-1441), the town, including its suburbs, was twelve miles in circuit abounding in spikenard, lac, indigo, myrobalans, and silk. Athanasius Nikitin (A.D. 1468-1474) found it a manufacturing place for every sort of goods as long gowns, damask and blankets, and Varthema (A.D. 1503-1508) says it abounds in grain and very good fruits, supplying Africa, Arabia and India with silk and cotton stuffs, it is impossible to describe its excellence.' Barbosa's account of Ahmedābād is borne out by the statement in the Ain-i-Akhbari (Gladwin II. 63) that the whole number of the suburbs (*puras*) of the city was 360, and in the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi, that it once contained 380 suburbs each of considerable size, containing good buildings and markets filled with everything valuable and rare, so that each was almost a city. Bird, 311, \*

either its chief nobles or the more turbulent classes. In spite of these forty years of disorder, the province retained so much of its former prosperity, that the boast of the local historians that in A.D. 1573 Gujarat was in every respect allowed to be the finest country in Hindustan is supported by the details shortly afterwards (A.D. 1590) given by Abul Fazl in the *Ain-i-Akbari*. The high road from Pātan to Baroda was throughout its length of 150 miles (100 *kos*) lined on both sides with mango trees; the fields were bounded with hedges; and such was the abundance of mango and other fruit trees that the whole country seemed a garden. The people were well housed in dwellings with walls of brick and mortar and with tiled roofs; many of them rode in carriages drawn by oxen: the province was famous for its painters, carvers, inlayers, and other craftsmen.<sup>1</sup>

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760

Under the  
Mughals,  
1573-1760.

Take the period of the rule of the Ahmedabād kings, the period of Mughal rule contains two divisions, a time of good government lasting from A.D. 1573 to A.D. 1700, and a time of disorder from A.D. 1700 to A.D. 1760. Under the arrangements introduced by the emperor Akbar in A.D. 1583, the area of the province was considerably curtailed. Of its twenty-five districts nine were restored to the states from which the vigour of the Ahmedabād kings had wrested them; Jalor and Jodhpur were transferred to Rājputāna; Nagor to Ajmir; Mulher and Nandurbar to Khandesh; Bombay, Bassen, and Daman were allowed to remain under the Portuguese; and Dand-Rajpuri (Dunpur) was made over to the Nizamsāhi (A.D. 1490-1595) rulers of the Dakhn Ahmednagar. Of the remaining sixteen, Sirohi, Dungarpur, and Bānsvada now in Rājputāna, Kachh, Sūmāh in Rewa Kantha, and Rāmāgar (Dharampur) in Surat were, on the payment of tribute, allowed to continue in the hands of their Hindu rulers. The ten remaining districts were administered directly by imperial officers. But as the revenues of the district of Surat had been separately assigned to its revenue officer or *mutasaddi*, only nine districts with 181 sub-divisions or *paraganās* were entered in the collections from the viceroy of Gujarat. These nine districts were in continental Gujarat, Pātan with seventeen sub-divisions, Ahmedābād with thirty-three, Godhra with eleven, Chumpaner with thirteen, Baroda with four, Broach with four, and Rajpipla (Nandod) with twelve. In the peninsula were South with sixty-two and Navanagar with seventeen sub-divisions. This lessening of area seems to have been accompanied by even more than a corresponding reduction in the state demand. Instead of £5,810,050 (Rs. 5,81,00,500), the revenue recovered in A.D. 1571, two years before the province was annexed, under the arrangement introduced by the emperor Akbar, the total amount, including the receipts from Surat and the tribute of the six feudatory

<sup>1</sup> Gladwin's *Ain-i-Akbari*, II, 62-63. Compare Terry (*Voyage*, 80, 131) in 1615: Gujarat a very greatly large and exceeding rich province with, besides its most spacious populous and rich capital Ahmedabad, four fair cities Canbay Baroda Broach and Surat with great trade to the Red Sea, Achin, and other places. At the same time (Ditto, 179-180) though the villages stood very thick, the houses were generally very poor and base, all set close together some with earthen walls and flat roofs, most of them cottages miserably poor little and base set up with sticks rather than timber.

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760.

Under the  
Mughals,  
1573-1760.

districts, is returned at £1,999,113 (Rs. 1,99,91,130) or little more than one-third part of what was formerly collected.<sup>1</sup>

According to the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi this revenue of £1,999,113 (Rs. 1,99,91,130) continued to be realised as late as the reign of Muhammad Shah (A.D. 1719-1748). But within the next twelve years (A.D. 1718-1762) the whole revenue had fallen to £1,235,000 (Rs. 1,23,50,000). Of £1,999,113 (Rs. 1,99,91,130), the total amount levied by Akbar on the annexation of the province, £520,501 (Rs. 52,05,010), or a little more than a quarter, were set apart for imperial use and royal expense, £55,000 (Rs. 5,50,000) were assigned for the support of the viceroy and the personal estates of the nobles, and the remainder was settled for the pay of other officers of rank and court officials. Nearly £30,000 (Rs. 3,00,000) were given away as rewards and pensions to religious orders and establishments.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The decrease in the Mughal collections from Gujarat compared with the revenues of the Ahmedabad kings may have been due to Akbar's moderation. It may also have been due to a decline in prosperity. Compiere Roe's (1617) account of Tola about fifty miles south-east of Ajmer. It was the best and most populous country Roe had seen in India. The district was level with fertile soil abounding in corn cotton and cattle and the villages were so numerous and near together as hardly to exceed a *kos* from each other. The town was the best built Roe had seen in India tiled two storied houses good enough for decent shopkeepers. It had been the residence of a Rajput Rapt before the conquests of Akbar Shah and stood at the foot of a good and strong rock about which were many excellent works of hewn stone, well cut, with many tanks arched over with well-turned vaults and large and deep descents to them. Near it was a beautiful grove two miles long and a quarter of a mile broad all planted with mangoes tamarinds and other fruit trees, divided by shady walks and interspersed with little temples and idol altars with many fountains wells and summer houses of carved stone curiously arched so that a poor banished Englishman might have been content to dwell there. This observation may serve universally for the whole country that ruin and devastation operate everywhere. For since the property of all has become vested in the king no person takes care of anything so that in every place the spoil and devastations of war appear and nowhere is anything repaired. Roe in Ker's Voyages, IX. 320-321.

<sup>2</sup> Bird's History of Gujarat. Another detailed statement of the revenue of Gujarat given in the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi, apparently for the time when the author wrote (A.D. 1760) gives. Revenue from crown lands £2,107,515, tribute-paying divisions or *sarkars* £12,700; Mala Kantha tribute £178,741, Wabak Kantha tribute £159,768, and Schar Kantha tribute £121,151, in all £2,579,878 adding to this £20,000 for Kachhi, £10,000 for Dungarpur, and £5000 for Sirohi gives a grand total of £2,614,878. According to a statement given by Bird in a note at page 108 of his History, the revenue of Gujarat under Jehangir (A.D. 1605-1627) averaged £1,250,000, under Aurangzib (A.D. 1658-1707) £1,519,622, and under Muhammad Shah (A.D. 1719-1748) £1,218,360. In this passage the revenue under the emperor Akbar (A.D. 1556-1605) is given at £66,846. This total is taken from Gladwin's Annals of Akbar. But at vol. II, page 78 of that work there would seem to be some miscalculation, for while the total number of *dams* (1/16th of a rupee) is 13,68,02,301, the conversion into rupees is Rs. 10,97,123 instead of Rs. 1,09,20,9574. The corresponding returns given by Mr. Thomas (Rev. of the Meg. Emp. page 52) are under Akbar, A.D. 1594, £1,092,412; under Shāh Jahān, A.D. 1648, £1,325,000; and under Aurangzib, A.D. 1658-£2,173,220, A.D. 1663-1666 £1,339,500, A.D. 1697-£2,320,500, and A.D. 1707 £1,519,623. The varieties in the currency employed in different parts of the accounts cause some confusion in calculating the Gujarat revenue. Under the Ahmedabad kings the accounts were kept in *tankas* or 1/16th of rupees, while under the Mughals *dams* or 1/16th of a rupee took the place of *tankas*. The revenues from Surat Baroda Broach and other districts south of the Mithi were returned in *chamtzi*, a coin varying in value from something over 3/4ths of a rupee to slightly less than 1/2; the revenues from Rādhanpur and Morvi were entered in *mahmudi*, a coin nearly identical in value with the *chamtzi*, while, as noticed above, the tribute and customs dues are returned in a gold currency, the tribute in *huns* of about 8s. (Rs. 4) and the customs in *ibrahtims* of 9s. (Rs. 4½).

## MUSALMAN PERIOD.

Besides lightening the state demand the emperor Akbar introduced three improvements: (1) The survey of the land; (2) The payment of the headmen or *mukaddams* of government villages; and (3) The restoration to small superior landholders of the share they formerly enjoyed in the lands of government villages. The survey which was entrusted to Rājā Todar Mal, the revenue minister of the empire, was completed in A.D. 1575. The operations were confined to a small portion of the whole area of the province. Besides the six tributary districts which were unaffected by the measure, Godhra in the east, the western peninsula, and a large portion of the central strip of directly governed lands were excluded, so that of the 181 sub-divisions only 64 were surveyed. In A.D. 1575, of 201,814 acres (12,360 594 *bighās*), the whole area measured, 4,920,818 acres (8,374,198 *bighās*, or about two-thirds were found to be fit for cultivation, and the remainder was waste. In those parts of the directly governed districts where the land was not measured the existing method of determining the government share of the produce either by selecting a portion of the field while the crop was still standing, or by dividing the grain heap at harvest time, was continued. In surveyed districts the amount paid was determined by the area and character of the land under cultivation. Payment was made either in grain or in money, according to the instructions issued to the revenue-collectors, 'that when it would not prove oppressive the value of the grain should be taken in ready money at the market price.'<sup>1</sup> The chief change in the revenue management was that, instead of each year calculating the government share from the character of the crop, an uniform demand was fixed to run for a term of ten years.

Another important effect of this survey was to extend to cultivators in simple villages the proprietary interest in the soil formerly enjoyed only by the shahholders of joint villages. By this change the power of the military nobles to make undue exactions from the cultivators in their assigned lands was to some extent checked. It was, perhaps, also an indirect effect of this more definite settlement of the crown demand that the revenue agents of government and of the holders of assigned lands, finding that the revenues could be realised without their help, refused to allow to the heads of villages certain revenue dues which, in return for their service, they had hitherto enjoyed. Accordingly, in A.D. 1589-90, these heads of villages appealed to government and Akbar decided that in assigned districts as well as in the crown domains from the collections of government lands two-and-a-half per cent should be set apart as a perquisite for men of this class.<sup>2</sup>

## Introduction

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297 - 1760.

Under the  
Mughals,  
1573 - 1760.

<sup>1</sup> Ain-i-Akbari (Gladwin), I. 365. The Ain-i-Akbari mentions four ways of calculating the state share in an unsurveyed field: (1) to measure the land with the crops standing and make an estimate; (2) to reap the crops, collect the grain in barns, and divide it according to agreement; (3) to divide the field as soon as the seed is sown, and (4) to gather the grain into heaps on the field and divide it there.

<sup>2</sup> The men to whom this 2½ per cent was granted are referred to in the Mirat-i-Ahmedi as *desais*. Whatever doubt may attach to the precise meaning of the term *desai* it seems clear that it was as village headmen that the *desais* petitioned for and received this grant. These *desais* were the heads of villages with whom, as noticed above, the government agent for collecting the revenue dealt, and who, agreeing for the

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT.  
A.D. 1297 - 1700.

Under the  
Mughals,  
1573 - 1700.

When the heads of villages laid their own private grievance before government, they also brought to its notice that the Koli and Rājput landowners, whose shares in government villages had been resumed by the crown in A.D. 1545, had since that time continued in a state of discontent and revolt and were then causing the ruin of the subjects and a deficiency in the government collections. An inquiry was instituted, and, to satisfy the claims of landowners of this class, it was agreed that, on furnishing good security for their conduct and receiving the government mark on their contingent of cavalry, they should again be put in possession of a one-fourth share of the land of government villages. While the province was managed agreeably to these regulations, says the author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi*, its prosperity continued to increase.<sup>1</sup>

Though these measures did much to check internal disorder, Gujarat, for several years after it came under Mughal control, continued disturbed by insurrections among the nobles, and so imperfectly protected from the attacks of foreign enemies that between the years A.D. 1573 and 1609 each of its three richest cities, Ahmedabad, Cambay and Surat, was in turn taken and plundered.<sup>2</sup> During the rest

whole village contribution, themselves carried out the details of allotment and collection from the individual cultivators. In the sharehold villages north of the Narbada, the headman who would be entitled to this 2½ per cent was the representative of the body of village shareholders. South of the Narbada, in villages originally colonised by officers of the state, the representatives of these officers would enjoy the 2½ per cent. In south Gujarat the *desais* or heads of villages also acted as district hereditary revenue officers, but it was not as district hereditary revenue officers, but as heads of villages, that they received from Akbar this 2½ per cent assignment. In north Gujarat there were *desais* who were only district revenue officers. These men would seem to have received no part of Akbar's grant in 1589-90, for as late as A.D. 1706 the emperor Aurangzib, having occasion to make inquiries into the position of the *desais*, found that hitherto they had been supported by cesses and illegal exactions, and ordered that a stop should be put to all such exactions, and a fixed assignment of 2½ per cent on the revenues of the villages under their charge should be allowed them. It does not appear whether the Surat *desais* succeeded in obtaining Aurangzib's grant of 2½ per cent as district revenue officers, in addition to Akbar's (A.D. 1589) assignment of 2½ per cent as heads of villages.

<sup>1</sup> Bird's History of Gujarat, 409.

<sup>2</sup> Ahmedabad (A.D. 1583) by Muzaffar Shāh the last king of Gujarat; Cambay (A.D. 1573) by Muhammad Husain Mirza; and Surat (A.D. 1609) by Malik Ambar the famous general of the king of Ahmednagar. In such unsettled times it is not surprising that the European travellers of the late sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries, between Ahmedabad and Cambay found native merchants marching in large weekly caravans which rested at night within a space barricaded by carts. (Kerr, IX, 127 and 201.) The English merchants, on their way from one factory to another, were accompanied by an escort, and, in spite of their guard, were on more than one occasion attacked by large bands of Rājputs. (Kerr, IX, 127, 187, 201, 203.) As regards the state of the different parts of the province, Nicholas Ufflet, who went from Agra to Surat about 1610, describes the north, from Jhalor to Ahmedabad, as throughout the whole way a sandy and woody country, full of thievish beastly men, and savage beasts such as lions and tigers; from Ahmedabad to Cambay the road was through sands and woods much infested by thieves, from Cambay to Broach it was a woody and dangerous journey; but from Broach to Surat the country was goodly, fertile, and full of villages, abounding in wild date trees. (Kerr, VIII, 303.) Passing from the mouth of the Tapi to Surat Mr. Copland (24th Dec. 1613) was delighted to see at the same time the goodliest spring and harvest he had ever seen. 'Often of two adjoining fields, one was as green as a fine meadow, and the other waving yellow like gold and ready to be cut down, and all along the roads were many goodly villages.' (Kerr, IX, 119.) At that time the state of north-west Gujarat was very different. Terry, 1617 (Voyage, 401), describes the passage of nineteen days from Mandu near Dhār to Ahmedabad as short journeys in

of the seventeenth century, though the country was from time to time disturbed by Koli and Rājput risings, and towards the end of the century suffered much from the raids of the Marāthās, the viceroys were, on the whole, able to maintain their authority, repressing the outbreaks of the disorderly classes, and enforcing the imperial claims for tribute on the more independent feudatory chiefs. Throughout the greater part of the seventeenth century the general state of the province seems to have been prosperous. Its cities were the wonder of European travellers. Surat, which only since the transfer of Gujarāt to the Mughal empire had risen to hold a place among its chief centres of trade, was, in A.D. 1664, when taken by Shivaji, rich enough to supply him with plunder in treasure and precious stones worth a million sterling<sup>1</sup>; and at that time Cambay is said to have been beyond comparison greater than Surat, and Ahmedābad much richer and more populous than either.<sup>2</sup>

From the beginning of the eighteenth century disorder increased. Unable to rely for support on the imperial court, the viceroys failed to maintain order among the leading nobles, or to enforce their tribute from the more powerful feudatories. And while the small Koli and Rājput landholders, freed from the control of a strong central power, were destroying the military posts, taking possession of the state share of village lands, and levying dues from their more peaceful neighbours, the burden of the Marāthā tribute was year by year growing heavier. During the last ten years of Musalman rule so entirely did the viceroy's authority forsake him, that, according to the author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi*, when the great landholders refused to pay their tribute, the viceroy had no power to enforce payment. And so faithless had the great landowners become that the viceroy could not pass the city gate without an escort.<sup>3</sup>

## Introduction.

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT.  
A.D. 1297-1760.

Under the  
Mughals,  
1573-1760.

<sup>1</sup> a wilderness where a way had to be cut and made even and the great space required for the Mughal's camp rid and made plain by grubbing up trees and bushes. And between Cambay and Ahmedabad De la Valle, A.D. 1623 (Travels, Hakluyt Ed. I. 92), resolved to go with the kafilā since the insecurity of the ways did not allow him to go alone. Still at that time Gujarāt as a whole (see above page 220 note 2) was an exceeding rich province, a description which twenty years later (1638) is borne out by Mandelslo (Travels, French Edition, 56): No province in India is more fertile; none yields more fruit or victuals. With the boast of the author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi* (A.D. 1756) that Gujarāt was the richest province in India, compare Khāfi Khan's (A.D. 1719) remark (Elliot, VII. 520), 'In this province which no other province in India can equal.'

<sup>2</sup> Ouse's Historical Fragments, 12.

<sup>3</sup> The following are some of the notices of Ahmedābad and Cambay by the European travellers of the seventeenth century: Cambay, 1598, trade so great that if he had not seen it he would not have believed it possible (Caesar Frederick); 1623, indifferent large with sufficiently spacious suburbs and a great concourse of vessels (De la Valle, Hakluyt Edition, I. 66-67); 1638, beyond comparison larger than Surat (Mandelslo, 101-108); 1663-1671, twice as big as Surat (Baldæus in Churchill, III. 506). Ahmedābad, 1598, a very great city and populous (Caesar Frederick); 1623, competently large with great suburbs, a goodly and great city, with large fair and straight but sadly dusty streets (De la Valle, Hakluyt Edition, I. 95); 1627, large and beautiful with many broad and comely streets, a rich and uniform bazar, and shops redundant with gums perfumes spices silks cottons and calicoes (Herbert's Travels, 3rd Edition, 66); 1638, great manufactures, satin and velvet, silk and cotton (Mandelslo, 80); 1696, the greatest city in India, nothing inferior to Venice for rich silks and gold stuffs (Gemelli Careri in Churchill, IV. 188).

<sup>4</sup> Bird, 411.

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1760.

SELF-GOVERNED  
ZAMINDARS.

The above summary contains frequent references to three classes of *zamindars*. (1) The *zamindars* of the self-governed states; (2) The greater *zamindars* of the crown districts; and (3) The lesser *zamindars* of the crown districts.

In the case of the *zamindars* of self-governed states the principle was military service and no tribute. The author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi* says that finally the *zamindars* of the self-governed states ceased to do service. In spite of this statement it seems probable that some of this class served almost until the complete collapse of the empire, and that tribute was rarely levied from them by an armed force. In the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi* account of the office of *sūbahdār* or *nā'im sūbah* the following passage occurs: When occasion arose the *nāims* used to take with their armies the contingents of the Rānās of Udepur Dūngarpur and Pansvada, which were always permanently posted outside their official residences (in Ahmedābād). This shows that these great *zamindars* had official residences at the capital, where probably their contingents were posted under *nakhils* or agents. It therefore seems probable that their tribute too would be paid through their representatives at the capital and that a military force was seldom sent against them. Accordingly notices of military expeditions in the tributary *sarkars* are rare though they were of constant occurrence in the crown districts.

CROWN  
ZAMINDARS.

The position of the *zamindars* of the *khālṣa* or crown districts was very different from that of the *zamindars* of self-governed territories. The *khālṣa zamindars* had been deprived of the greater portion of their ancestral estates which were administered by the viceregal revenue establishment. In some instances their capitals had been annexed. Even if not annexed the capital was the seat of a *junjdār* who possessed the authority and encroached daily on the rights and privileges of the chieftain. The principal chiefs in this position were those of Rājpipla and Idar in Gujarāt and the Jām of Navānagar in Kāthiāvāda. Of the three, Rājpipla had been deprived of his capital Nandol and of all the fertile districts, and was reduced to a barren sovereignty over rocks hills and Bhils at Rājpipla. Idar had suffered similar treatment and the capital was the seat of a Muhammadan *junjdār*. Navānagar, which had hitherto been a tributary *sarkar*, was during the reign of Aurangzib made a crown district. But after Aurangzib's death the Jām returned to his capital and again resumed his tributary relations.

SMALLER  
ZAMINDARS.

The lesser holders, including *grāsīās wāntūdārs* and others, had suffered similar deprivation of lands and were subject to much encroachment from the government officials. Throughout the empire widespread discontent prevailed among subordinate holders of this description as well as among all the *zamindars* of the crown districts, so that the successes of Shivaji in the Dakhan found ardent sympathisers even in Gujarāt. When the *zamindars* saw that this Hindu rebel was strong enough to pillage Surat they began to hope that a day of deliverance was near. The death of Aurangzib (A.D. 1707) was the signal for these restless spirits to bestir themselves. When the Marāthās began regular inroads they were hailed as deliverers from the yoke

of the Mughal. The Rájputra chief afforded them shelter and a passage through his country. The encouragement to anarchy given by some of the Rájput viceroys who were anxious to emancipate themselves from the central control further enabled many chieftains *girásiás* and others to absorb large portions of the crown domains, and even to recover their ancient capitals. Finally disaffected Muhammadan *faujdárs* succeeded in building up estates out of the possessions of the crown and founding the families which most of the present Muhammadan chieftains of Gujarat represent.

When the imperial power had been usurped by the Marátha leaders, the chiefs who had just shaken off the more powerful Mughal yoke were by no means disposed tamely to submit to Marátha domination. Every chief resisted the levy of tribute and Momin Khán reconquered Ahmedábád. In this struggle the Maráthas laboured under the disadvantage of dissensions between the Peshwa and the Gaikwár. They were also unaware of the actual extent of the old imperial domain and were ignorant of the amount of tribute formerly levied. They found that the *faujdárs*, who, in return for Marátha aid in enabling them to absorb the crown *parganás*, had agreed to pay tribute, now joined the *zamindárs* in resisting Marátha demands, while with few exceptions the *desáts* and *majmundárs* either openly allied themselves with the *zamindárs* or were by force or fraud deprived of their records. So serious were the obstacles to the collection of the Marátha tribute that, had it not been for the British alliance in A.D. 1802, there seems little doubt that the Gaikwár would have been unable to enforce his demands in his more distant possessions. The British alliance checked the disintegration of the Gaikwár's power, and the permanent settlement of the tribute early in this century enabled that chief to collect a large revenue at a comparatively trifling cost. Not only were rebels like Malharao and Kanhoji suppressed, but powerful servants like Vitthalrav Deváji, who without doubt would have asserted their independence, were confirmed in their allegiance and the rich possessions they had acquired became part of the Gaikwár's dominions.

It must not be supposed that while the larger chiefs were busy absorbing whole *parganás* the lesser chiefs were more backward. They too annexed villages and even Mughal posts or *thánás*, while *rántidárs* or sharers absorbed the *talpal* or state portion, and, under the name of *tora garás*,<sup>1</sup> daring spirits imposed certain rights over crown villages once their ancient possessions, or, under the name of *pál* or *rol*, enforced from neighbouring villages payments to secure immunity from pillage. Even in the Baroda district of the thirteen Mughal posts only ten now belong to the Gaikwár, two having been conquered by *girásiás* and one having fallen under Broach. In Saurashtra except Ráppur and Gogha and those in the Amreli district, not a single Mughal post is in the possession either of the British Government or of the

## Introduction.

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1700.

Marátha  
Ascendancy,  
1760-1802.

Gaikwár Saved  
by British  
Alliance,  
1802.

## Power of Chiefs.

<sup>1</sup> The usual explanation of *tora garás* is the word *tora* meaning the beam-end above each house door. The sense being that it was a levy exacted from every house in the village. A more likely derivation is *tora* a heap or money-bag with the sense of a ready-money levy. *Tora* differed from *rol* in being exacted from the *garás* or land once the property of the levier's ancestors.

**Introduction.**

CONDITION OF  
GUJARAT,  
A.D. 1297-1802.

Power of  
Local Chiefs.

Gáikwár. A reference to the Mughal posts in other parts of Gujarát shows that the same result followed the collapse of Musalmán power.

Since the introduction of Musalmán rule in A.D. 1297 each successive government has been subverted by the ambition of the nobles and the disaffection of the chiefs. It was thus that the Gujarát Sultáns rendered themselves independent of Dehli. It was thus that the Sultán's territories became divided among the nobles, whose dissensions reduced the province to Akbar's authority. It was thus that the chiefs and local governors, conniving at Maratha inroads, subverted Mughal rule. Finally it was thus that the Gáikwár lost his hold of his possessions and was rescued from ruin solely by the power of the British.

## CHAPTER I.

### EARLY MUSALMÁN GOVERNORS.

A.D. 1297-1403.

#### Chapter I.

#### Early Musalmán Governors.

• Ala-ud-din  
Khilji  
Emperor,  
1295-1315  
Ulugh Khan;  
1297-1317.

EXCEPT the great expedition of Mahmúd Ghaznawi against Somnáth in A.D. 1021<sup>1</sup>; the defeat of Muhammad Muiz-ud-dín or Shaháb-ud-dín Ghori by Bhím Dev II. of Anahilaváda about A.D. 1178<sup>2</sup>; and the avenging sack of Anahilaváda and defeat of Bhím by Kutb-ud-dín Ibak in A.D. 1194, until the reign of Alá-ud-dín Khilji in A.D. 1295-1315, Gujarat remained free from Muhammadan interference<sup>3</sup>. In A.D. 1297, Ulugh Khán general of Ala-ud-dín and Nasrat Khán Wazir were sent against Anahilaváda. They took the city expelling Karan Waghele, usually called *Ghelo* The Mad, who took refuge at Devgad with Rámdéva the Yadav sovereign of the north Dakhan.<sup>4</sup> They next seized Khamlút (the modern Cambay), and, after appointing a local governor, returned to Dehli. From this time Gujarát remained under Muhammadan power, and Ulugh Khán, a man of great energy, by repeated expeditions consolidated the conquest and established Muhammadan rule. The Kánadléva Rása says that he plundered Somnáth, and there is no doubt that he conquered Jhálór (the ancient Jhalandar) from the Songarha Choháns.<sup>5</sup> After Ulugh Khan had governed Gujarát for about twenty years, at the instigation of Malik Kafur, he was recalled and put to death by the emperor Alá-ud-dín.<sup>6</sup>

Ulugh Khán's departure shook Muhammadan power in Gujarát, and Kamál-ud-dín, whom Mubárak Khilji sent to quell the disturbances, was slain in battle. Sedition spread till Ain-ul-Mulk Multán arrived

Ain-ul-Mulk  
Governor,  
1318.

<sup>1</sup> Somnath (north latitude 0° 55', east longitude 70° 23'), the temple of Mahadev 'Lord of the Moon,' near the southern extremity of the peninsula of Kathiawar.

<sup>2</sup> Anahilaváda (north latitude 23° 48', east longitude 72° 2'), Nohrwál or Patan on the south bank of the Saraswati river, sixty-five miles north-east of Ahmedabad, was from A.D. 746 to A.D. 1298 the capital of the Rájput dynasties of Gujarát. As a result of Muhammad Ghori's defeat the Tárá-i-Somath (Burgess, II, 213) states that the Turkish-Afghan and Mughal prisoners according to the rule of the Kuráan (XXIV, 20) were 'put to death, the wicked women to the wicked men and the good women to the good men. Of the male prisoners the better class after having their heads shaved were enrolled among the Chakawal and Wadhel tribes of Rájputs. The lower class were allotted to the Kohs, Khants, Babrias, and Meras. All were allowed to keep their wedding and funeral ceremonies and to remain aloof from other classes.'

<sup>3</sup> The Mirat-i-Ahmedi gives an account of an expedition by one Altkhán a noble of Sultan Samana's against Anahilaváda in A.D. 1257. He is said to have built the large stone mosque without the city. Altkhán returned unsuccessful, but not without leaving tribute.

<sup>4</sup> Devgad near Daulatabad in the Dakhan, about ten miles north-west of Anrangábad (north latitude 19° 57', east longitude 75° 18'). The Mirat-i-Ahmedi has Devgad Chundah, which is in the Central Provinces.

<sup>5</sup> Jhálór (north latitude 25° 23', east longitude 72° 40') in the Rájput state of Jodhpur, seventy miles south-west by south from the city of Jodhpur.

<sup>6</sup> Bayley (Gujarat, 39) note shows strong ground for holding that, though Gujarát was conquered by Ulugh Khán a brother of Ala-ud-dín, its first governor was not Ulugh Khan but Alp Khán, a brother-in-law of Ala-ud-dín. According to this account Ulugh Khan died in A.D. 1299 and Alp Khán at Malik Kafur's instigation was killed in A.D. 1315. Zia Barui (Elliot, III, 169) supports this account.

**Chapter I.**

**Early  
Musalmán  
Governors.**

AIN-UL-MULK  
Governor,  
1318.  
Order  
Established,  
1318.

Muhammad  
Tughlak  
Emperor,  
1325-1351.  
Taj-ul-Mulk  
Governor,  
1320.

The Emperor  
Quel's an  
Insurrection,  
1317.

with a powerful army, defeated the rebels and restored order. He was succeeded by Zafar Khán, who after completing the subjection of the country was recalled, and his place supplied by Hísám-ud-dín Parmár.<sup>1</sup> This officer, showing treasonable intentions, was imprisoned and succeeded by Malik Wájud-ud-dín Kuráishi, who was afterwards ennobled by the title of Taj or Sadr-ul-Mulk. Khusráw Khán Parmár was then appointed governor, but it is not clear whether he ever joined his appointment. The next governor to whom reference is made is Taj-ul-Mulk, who about A.D. 1320, was, for the second time, chosen as governor by Sultán Ghás-ud-dín Tughlak. He was succeeded by Malik Mukbil, who held the titles of Khán Jahán and Náib-i-Mukhtar, and who was appointed by Sultan Muhammad Tughlak, A.D. 1325-1351. Subsequently the same emperor granted the government of Gujarát to Ahmad Ayáz, Malik Mukbil continuing to act as his deputy. Afterwards when Ahmad Ayáz, who received the title of Khwajah Jahán, proceeded as governor to Gujarát, Malik Mukbil acted as his minister. And about A.D. 1338, when Khwajah Jahán was sent against the emperor's nephew Karshásp and the Raja of Kampila<sup>2</sup> who had sheltered him, Malik Mukbil succeeded to the post of governor. On one occasion between Baroda and Dabhoi Malik Mukbil, who was escorting treasure and a caravan of merchants to Delhi, was plundered by some bands of the Amírání Sadah or Captains of Hundreds free-lances and freebooters, most of them New Musalmans or Mughal converts, and the rest Turk and Afghan adventurers. This success emboldened these banditti and for several years they caused loss and confusion in Gujarát. At last, about A.D. 1346, being joined by certain Muhammadan nobles and Hindu chieftains, they broke into open rebellion and defeated one Azíz, who was appointed by the emperor to march against them. In the following year, A.D. 1347, Muhammad Tughlak, advancing in person, defeated the rebels, and sacked the towns of Cambay and Surat. During the same campaign he drove the Gohil chief Mokheráji out of his stronghold on Piram Island near Gogha on the Gulf of Cambay, and then, landing his forces, after a stubborn conflict, defeated the Gohils, killing Mokheráji and capturing Gogha. Afterwards Muhammad Tughlak left for Daulatábád in the Dakhan, and in his absence the chiefs and nobles under Malik Tughán, a leader of the Amírání Sadah, again rebelled, and, obtaining possession of Patan, imprisoned Muizz-ud-dín the viceroy. The insurgents then plundered Cambay, and afterwards laid siege to Broach. Muhammad Tughlak at once marched for Gujarát and relieved Broach, Malik Tughán retreating to Cambay, whither he was followed by Malik Yúsuf, whom the emperor sent in pursuit of him. In the battle that ensued near Cambay, Malik Yúsuf was defeated and slain, and

<sup>1</sup> According to Zia Barni (Elliot, III. 218) Hísám-ud-dín was the mother's brother, according to others he was the brother of Hasan afterwards Khusráw Khán Parmár the favourite of Mubarak Sháh. On coming to Gujarát Hísám-ud-dín collected his Parmar kindred and revolted, but the nobles joining against him seized him and sent him to Delhi. To their disgust Mubárak in his infatuation for Hísám-ud-dín's nephew or brother, after slapping Hísám-ud-dín on the face set him at liberty.

<sup>2</sup> In the Kurnátak, probably on the Tungabhadra near Vijayanagar Briggs' Muhammadan Power in India, I. 418 and 428. Briggs speaks of two Kampilas one on the Ganges and the other on the Tungabhadra near Bijanagar.

## Chapter I.

Early  
Musalmán  
Governors.

Muhammad  
Tughlak  
Emperor,  
1325-1351

Taj-ul-Mulk  
Governor,  
1320.

Subhul  
Gond and  
Kachh,  
1350.

all the prisoners, both of this engagement and those who had been previously captured, were put to death by Malik Tughán. Among the prisoners was Muizz-ul-din, the governor of Gujarát. Muhammad Tughlak now marched to Cambay in person, whence Malik Tughán retreated to Pátan, pursued by the emperor, who was forced by stress of weather to halt at Asíwal.<sup>1</sup> Eventually the emperor came up with Malik Tughán near Kadi and gained a complete victory, Malik Tughán fleeing to Thatha in Sindh. To establish order throughout Gujarát Muhammad Tughlak marched against Gurnár,<sup>2</sup> reduced the fortress,<sup>3</sup> and levied tribute from the chief named Khengár. He then went to Kachh, and after subduing that country returned to Sorath. At Gondal he contracted a fever, and before he was entirely recovered, he advanced through Kachh into Sindh with the view of subduing the Sumra chief of Thatha, who had sheltered Malik Tughán. Before reaching Thatha he succumbed to the fever, and died in the spring of A.D. 1351. Shortly before his death he appointed Nizám-ul-Mulk to the government of Gujarát.

Firuz Tughlak  
Emperor,  
1351-1388

ZAFAR KHÁN  
Governor,

FARHAT-UL-  
MULK,  
Governor,  
1376-1391

In A.D. 1351, Firúz Tughlak succeeded Muhammad Tughlak on the throne of Delhi.\* Shortly after his accession the emperor marched to Sindh and sent a force against Malik Tughán. About A.D. 1360 he again advanced to Sindh against Jám Bámuní. From Sindh he proceeded to Gujarát, where he stayed for some months. Next year, on leaving for Sindh for the third time, he bestowed the government of Gujarát on Zafar Khán in place of Nizám-ul-Mulk. On Zafar Khán's death, in A.D. 1373 according to Farishtah and A.D. 1371 according to the Mirát-i-Ahmedí, he was succeeded by his son Daryá Khán who appears to have governed by a deputy named Shams-ul-din Anwar Khán. In A.D. 1375, besides presents of elephants, horses and other valuables, one Shams-ul-din Dámghání offered a considerable advance on the usual collections from Gujarat. As Daryá Khán would not agree to pay this sum he was displaced and Shams-ul-din Dámghání was appointed governor. Finding himself unable to pay the stipulated amount this officer rebelled and withheld the revenue. Firúz Tughlak sent an army against him, and by the aid of the chieftains and people, whom he had greatly oppressed, Shams-ul-din was slain. The government of the province was then entrusted to Farhat-ul-Mulk Rásti Khán. In about A.D. 1380, a noble named Skandar Khán was sent to supersede Farhat-ul-Mulk, but was defeated and slain by him. As the emperor Firúz Tughlak died shortly after no notice was taken of Farhat-ul-Mulk's conduct and in the short reign of Firúz's successor Ghias-ul-din Tughlak, no change was made in the government of Gujarát. During the brief rule of Abu Bakr, Farhat-ul-Mulk continued

<sup>1</sup> Asíwal (north latitude 23° 0'; east longitude 72° 36'), a town of some size, afterwards, A.D. 1413, made the capital of the Musalmán kings of Gujarat and called Ahmedabad.

<sup>2</sup> Gurnar (north latitude 21° 30'; east longitude 70° 42'), in the Sorath sub-division of the peninsula of Kathiawár.

<sup>3</sup> Both the Mirát-i-Ahmedí and the Tárikh-i-Firúz Sháh say that the fortress was taken. The Gparkot or citadel of Junághadh, in the plain about two miles west of Mount Gurnar, is probably meant.

**Chapter I.****Early  
Musalmán  
Governors.**

Muhammad  
Tughlak II  
Emperor,  
1391-1393

undisturbed. But in A.D. 1391, on the accession of Násir-ud-dín Muhammad Tughlak II., a noble of the name of Zafar Khán was appointed governor of Gujarát, and despatched with an army to recall or, if necessary, expel Farhat-ul-Mulk.

This Zafar Khán was the son of Wajih-ul-Mulk, of the Tank tribe of Rájputs who claim to be of Suryaवंsi descent and together with the Gurjjaras appear from very early times to have inhabited the plains of the Punjab. Of Wajih-ul-Mulk's rise to power at the Delhi court the following story is told. Before he sat on the throne of Delhi, Firáz Tughlak, when hunting in the Punjab, lost his way and came to a village near Thánesar, held by chief men of the Tank tribe. He was hospitably entertained by two brothers of the chief's family named Saháran and Sádhu, and became enamoured of their beautiful sister. When his hosts learned who the stranger was, they gave him their sister in marriage and followed his fortunes. Afterwards Firáz persuading them to embrace Islám, conferred on Saháran the title of Wajih-ul-Mulk, and on Sádhu the title of Shamshír Khán. Finally, in A.D. 1351, when Firáz Tughlak ascended the throne, he made Shamshír Khán and Zafar Khán, the son of Wajih-ul-Mulk, his cup-bearers, and raised them to the rank of nobles.

ZAFAR KHÁN  
Governor,  
1391-1403.

Battle of Jīpur;  
Farhat ul Mulk  
Slain,  
1391.

In A.D. 1391, on being appointed viceroy, Zafar Khán marched without delay for Gujarát. In passing Nágor<sup>1</sup> he was met by a deputation from Cambay, complaining of the tyranny of Rásti Khán. Consoling them, he proceeded to Pátan, the seat of government, and thence marched against Rásti Khán. The armies met near the village of Khambhoi,<sup>2</sup> a dependency of Pátan, and Farhat-ul-Mulk Rásti Khán was slain and his army defeated. To commemorate the victory, Zafar Khán founded a village on the battle-field, which he named Jīpur (the city of victory), and then, starting for Cambay, redressed the grievances of the people.

Zafar Khán  
Attacked Idar,  
1393.

Zafar Khán's first warlike expedition was against the Pávi of Idar,<sup>3</sup> who, in A.D. 1393, had refused to pay the customary tribute, and this chief he humbled. The contemporary histories seem to show that the previous governors had recovered tribute from all or most of the chiefs of Gujarát except from the Rax of Jámágnath<sup>4</sup> and the Raja of Rájpála,<sup>5</sup> who had retained their independence. Zafar Khán now planned an expedition against the celebrated Hindu shribe of Sonmáth, but, hearing that Adil Khán of Asír-Burhánpur had invaded Sultánpur and Nandurbar,<sup>6</sup> he moved his troops in that direction, and Adil Khán retired to Asír.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Nágor (north latitude 27° 10', east longitude 73° 50'), in the Rajhol state of Jodhpur, eighty miles north east of Jodhpur city.

<sup>2</sup> The Tabak-i Akbari has Khaupur or Kánpur. The place is Khambhoi about twenty miles west of Pátan.

<sup>3</sup> Idar is the principal state of the Mahi Kántha. The town of Idar is in north latitude 23° 50' and east longitude 73° 3'.

<sup>4</sup> Jámágnath in the Sorath sub-division of Kathiavada. This is Briggs' Rati of Jodhpur. Jámágnath was formerly called Jirangad, both names meaning ancient fortress.

<sup>5</sup> Rájpála is in the Rava Kántha division of Gujarát.

<sup>6</sup> Sultánpur and Nandurbar now form part of the British district of Khándesh.

<sup>7</sup> A. D. now Nimgat (north latitude 21° 26', east longitude 76° 26'), beyond the north-eastern frontier of Khándesh.

In A.D. 1394, he marched against the Rájá of Jánágadh and exacted tribute. Afterwards, proceeding to Somnáth, he destroyed the temple, built an Assembly Mosque, introduced Islám, left Musalmán law officers, and established a *thána* or post in the city of Pátan Somnáth or Deva Patan. He now heard that the Hindus of Mándu<sup>1</sup> were oppressing the Muslims, and, accordingly, marching thither, he beleaguered that fortress for a year, but failing to take it contented himself with accepting the excuses of the Rájá. From Mándu he performed a pilgrimage to Ajmur.<sup>2</sup> Here he proceeded against the chiefs of Sámbar and Dandwána, and then attacking the Rájputs of Delvada and Jhalavada,<sup>3</sup> he defeated them, and returned to Pátan in A.D. 1396. About this time his son Tátár Khan, leaving his baggage in the fort of Pánpat,<sup>4</sup> made an attempt on Dehli. But Ikbál Khán took the fort of Pánpat, captured Tátár Khán's baggage and forced him to withdraw to Gujarat. In A.D. 1397, with the view of reducing Idar, Zafar Khán besieged the fort, laying waste the neighbouring country. Before he had taken the fort Zafar Khan received news of Tímúr's conquests, and concluding a peace with the Idar Rájá, returned to Patan.<sup>5</sup> In A.D. 1398, hearing that the Somnáth people claimed independence, Zafar Khán led an army against them, defeated them, and established Islám on a firm footing.

# Chapter I.

## Early Musalmán Governors.

ZAFAR KHÁN  
Governor,  
1391-1403.

Exact's Tribute  
from Junagadh,  
1394.

Lays Siege to  
Idar Fort,  
1397.

Establishes  
Islám at  
Somnath,  
1398.

<sup>1</sup> Mándu (north latitude 22° 20', east longitude 75° 27'), one of the most famous forts in India, the capital of the Fathmídynasty of Malwa, A.D. 1401-1561, stands on the east of the Vindhya. About twenty-five miles south of Dhár. During a considerable part of the fifteenth century Mándu was either directly or indirectly under Gujrat. An account of Mándu is given in the Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Ajmur (north latitude 26° 29', east longitude 74° 43') the chief town of the district of the same name to which Sámbar and Dandwána belong.

<sup>3</sup> Delvada and Jhalavada are somewhat difficult. The context suggests either Jhalor in Marwar or Jhalavada in the extreme south-east of Rajputana south of Kotah. The combination Delvada and Jhalavada seems to favour Kachhāvada since there is a Delvada in the south of the peninsula near Diu and a Jhalavada in the north-east. But the Delvada of the text can hardly be near Diu. It apparently is Delvada near Bklingji about twenty miles north of Udepur. The account of Ahmed Shah's expedition to the same place in A.D. 1431 (below page 239) confirms this identification.

<sup>4</sup> Pánpat (north latitude 29° 23', east longitude 77° 21', seventy-eight miles north of Dehli.

<sup>5</sup> Firishtah (II, 365) calls the Idar chief Rámhal.

## CHAPTER II.

## A'HMEDA'BA'D KINGS.

A.D. 1403-1573.

Chapter II.  
Ahmedabad  
Kings.  
A.D. 1403-1573.

THE rule of the Ahmedabad kings extends over 170 years and includes the names of fifteen sovereigns. The period may conveniently be divided into two parts. The first, lasting for a little more than a century and a quarter, when, under strong rulers, Gujarāt rose to consequence among the kingdoms of Western India, the second, from A.D. 1536 to A.D. 1573, an evil time when the sovereigns were minors and the wealth and supremacy of Gujarāt were wasted by the rivalry of its nobles.

The date on which Zafar Khān openly threw off his allegiance to Delhi is doubtful. Farishtah says he had the Friday prayer or *khutbah* repeated in his name after his successful campaign against Jhalāvāda and Delvāda in A.D. 1396. According to the *Mirāt-i-Sikandari* he maintained a nominal allegiance till A.D. 1403 when he formally invested his son Tātār Khān with the sovereignty of Gujarāt, under the title of Nāsir-ud-din Muhammad Shāh.

Muhammad I  
1403-1404

On ascending the throne in A.D. 1403, Muhammad Shāh made Asāwal his capital, and, after humbling the chief of Nāndod or Nādōt in Rājputlā, marched against Delhi by way of Pātan. On his way to Pātan the king sickened and died. His body was brought back to Pātan, and the expedition against Delhi came to nothing. It seems probable that this is a courtly version of the tale; the fact being that in A.D. 1403 Tātār Khān imprisoned his father at Asāwal, and assumed the title of Muhammad Shāh, and that Tātār Khān's death was caused by poison administered in the interest, if not at the suggestion, of his father Zafar Khān.<sup>1</sup>

Zafar Khān  
reigns as  
Muzaffar.  
1407-1419.

After the death of Muhammad Shāh, Zafar Khān asked his own younger brother Shams Khān Dandāni to carry on the government, but he refused. Zafar Khān accordingly sent Shams Khān Dandāni to Nāgor in place of Jalāl Khān Khokhar, and in A.D. 1407-8, at Bīrpur, at the request of the nobles and chief men of the country, himself formally mounted the throne and assumed the title of Muzaffar Shāh. At this time Alp Khān, son of Dilawar Khān of Mālwa, was rumoured to have poisoned his father and ascended the throne with the title of Sultān Hushang Ghorī. On hearing this Muzaffar Shāh marched against

<sup>1</sup> Compare Farishtah, II. 355-356. After his death Muhammad was known as Khudāi-gān-i-Shahīd, Our Lord the Martyr, according to the custom of the Sultans of Delhi, all of whom had three names, their family name, their throne name, and their after-death name whose letters contain the date of the monarch's decease. Thus the emperor Akbar's after-death title is 'Arsh Ashīqām, The Holder of the Heavenly Throne; the emperor Jehangīr's is Jannat Makām, The Dweller in Heaven; the emperor Shāh Jehān's is Firdaus Makām, He Whose Home is Paradise; and the emperor Aurangzīb's is Khuld Makām, The Occupier of the Eternal Residence. Similarly the after-death title of Muzaffar Shāh, Zafar Khān's father, is Khudāgān-i-Kabīr, The Great Lord.

Hushang and besieged him in Dhár.<sup>1</sup> On reducing Dhár Muzaffar handed Hushang to the charge of his brother Shams Khán, on whom he conferred the title of Nasrat Khán. Hushang remained a year in confinement, and Músa Khán one of his relations usurped his authority. On hearing this, Hushang begged to be released, and Muzaffar Sháh not only agreed to his prayer, but sent his grandson Ahmed Khán with an army to reinstate him.<sup>2</sup> This expedition was successful; the fortress of Mándu was taken and the usurper Músa Khán was put to flight. Ahmed Khán returned to Gujarát in A.D. 1409-10. Meanwhile Muzaffar advancing towards Delhi to aid Sultán Mahmúd (A.D. 1393-1413), prevented an intended attack on that city by Sultán Ibrahim of Jaunpúr. On his return to Gujarát Muzaffar led, or more probably despatched, an unsuccessful expedition against Kambhkot.<sup>3</sup> In the following year (A.D. 1410-11), to quell a rising among the Kols near Asáwal, Muzaffar placed his grandson Ahmed Khán in command of an army. Ahmed Khan camped outside of Patán. He convened an assembly of learned men and asked them whether a son was not bound to exact retribution from his father's murderer. The assembly stated in writing that a son was bound to exact retribution. Armed with this decision, Ahmed suddenly entered the city, overpowered his grandfather, and forced him to drink poison. The old Khán said: 'Why so hasty, my boy. A little patience and power would have come to you of itself.' He advised Ahmed to kill the evil counsellors of murder and to drink no wine. Remorse so embittered Ahmed's after-life that he was never known to laugh.

On his grandfather's death, Ahmed succeeded with the title of Násir-ud-dunyá Wad-dín Abúl fateh Ahmed Sháh. Shortly after Ahmed Sháh's accession, his cousin Moid-ud-dín Fírúz Khán, governor of Paroda, allying himself with Husám or Nizám-ul-Mulk Bhandári and other nobles, collected an army at Nadrúd in Kára, and, laying claim to the crown, defeated the king's followers. Jivandas, one of the insurgents, proposed to march upon Patán, but as the others refused a dispute arose in which Jivandas was slain, and the rest sought and obtained Ahmed Sháh's forgiveness. Moid-ud-dín Fírúz Khán went to Camlay and was there joined by Masti Khán, son of Muzaffar Sháh, who was governor of Surat: on the king's advance they fled from Camlay to Broach, to which town Ahmed Sháh laid siege. As soon as the king arrived, Moid-ud-dín's army went over to the king, and Masti Khán also submitted. After a few days Ahmed Sháh sent for and forgave Moid-ud-dín, and returned to Asáwal victorious and triumphant.

In the following year (A.D. 1413-14)<sup>3</sup> Ahmed Sháh defeated Asa Bhíl, chief of Asáwal, and, finding the site of that town suitable for his capital, he changed its name to Ahmedábád, and busied himself

## Chapter II.

### Ahmedábád Kings,

A.D. 1403-1573.

Muzaffar,  
1407-1410.

Ahmed I.  
1411-1441.

Budda  
Ahmedabad,  
1413.

<sup>1</sup> Dhár (north latitude 22° 35'; east longitude 75° 20'), the capital of the state of Dhár thirty-three miles west of Mhow in Central India.

<sup>2</sup> The Tabakát-i-Akbári has Kanthkot a dependence of Kachh. This is probably correct.

<sup>3</sup> The date is doubtful. Farishtah (II, 630) gives A.D. 1412, the Ain-i-Akbári (Blochman's Edition, I, 507) A.D. 1411.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedabad  
Kings.

A.D. 1403-1573.

Ahmed I.  
1411-1441.  
Defeats the  
Idar Chut, 1411.Supposes  
a revolt,  
1411.Spread of Islam  
1411.

in enlarging and fortifying the city.<sup>1</sup> During this year Moid-ud-din Firuz Khan and Masti Khan again revolted, and, joining the Idar Raja, took shelter in that fortress. A force under Fatch Khan was despatched against the rebels, and finally Firuz Khan and the Idar Raja were forced to flee by way of Kheralu a town in the district of Kadi. Moid-ud-din now persuaded Rukn Khan governor of Modasa, fifty miles north of Ahmedabad, to join. They united their forces with those of Bahir-ula, Masti Khan, and Rammal Raja of Idar and encamped at Rangpura an Idar village about five miles from Modasa and began to strengthen Modasa and dig a ditch round it. The Sultan camped before the fort and offered favourable terms. The besieged bent on treachery asked the Sultan to send Nizam-ul-Mulk the minister and certain other great nobles. The Sultan agreed, and the besieged imprisoned the envoys. After a three days' siege Modasa fell. Bahir-ula and Rukn Khan were slain, and Firuz Khan and the Raja of Idar fled. The imprisoned nobles were released unharmed. The Raja seeing that all hope of success was gone, made his peace with the king by surrendering to him the elephants horses and other baggage of Moid-ud-din Firuz Khan and Masti Khan, who now fled to Nagor, where they were sheltered by Shams Khan Daudani. Ahmed Shah after levying the stipulated tribute departed. Moid-ud-din Firuz Khan was afterwards slain in the war between Shams Khan and Rana Mokal of Chitor. In A.D. 1414-15 Uthman Ahmed and Sheikh Mahk, in command at Patan, and Suleiman Afghin called Azam Khan, and Isa Salur rebelled, and wrote secretly to Sultan Hushang of Malwa, inviting him to invade Gujarat, and promising to seat him on the throne and expel Ahmed Shah. They were joined in their rebellion by Jhalu Satarsalji of Patdi and other chiefs of Gujarat. Ahmed Shah despatched Latif Khan and Nizam-ul-Mulk against Sheikh Mahk and his associates, while he sent Imad-ul-Mulk against Sultan Hushang, who retired, and Imad-ul-Mulk, after plundering Malwa, returned to Gujarat. Latif Khan, pressing in hot pursuit of Satarsal and Sheikh Mahk, drove them to Sorath. The king returned with joyful heart to Ahmedabad.

Though, with their first possession of the country, A.D. 1297-1318, the Muhammadans had introduced their faith from Patan to Broach, the rest of the province long remained unconverted. By degrees, through the efforts of the Ahmedabad kings, the power of Islam became more directly felt in all parts of the province. Many districts, till then all but independent, accepted the Muslim faith at the hands of Ahmed Shah and agreed to the payment of a regular tribute. In A.D. 1411 he led an army against the Ravi of Junagadh and defeated him. The Ravi retired to the hill fortress of Ginnar. Ahmed Shah, though unable to capture the hill, gained the fortified citadel of Junagadh. Finding further resistance vain, the chief tendered his submission, and Junagadh was admitted among the tributary states.

<sup>1</sup> Four Ahmeds who had never missed the afternoon prayer helped to build Ahmedabad. Said Sheikh Ahmed Khattu, Sultan Ahmed, Sheikh Ahmed, and Mulla Ahmed. Comp. in Bombay Gazetteer, IV, 249 note 5.

<sup>2</sup> Called in the Tabakat-i-Akbari the Raja of Mandla.

This example was followed by the greater number of the Sorath chiefs, who, for the time, resigned their independence. Sayad Abul Khair and Sayad Kasim were left to collect the tribute, and Ahmed Shah returned to Ahmedabad. Next year he marched against Sidhpur,<sup>1</sup> and in A.D. 1115 advanced from Sidhpur to Dhar in Malwa. At this time the most powerful feudatories were the Ray of Junagadh, the Rival of Champner,<sup>2</sup> the Raja of Nandol, the Ray of Idar, and the Raja of Jhalavada. Trimbekdas of Champner, Pujia of Idar, Sini of Nandol, and Mandlik of Jhalavada, alarmed at the activity of Ahmed Shah and his zeal for Islam, instigated Sultan Hushang of Malwa to invade Gujarat. Ahmed Shah promptly marched to Modasa,<sup>3</sup> forced Sultan Hushang of Malwa to retire, and broke up the conspiracy, reproving and pardoning the chiefs concerned. About the same time the Sorath chiefs withheld their tribute, but the patience and unwearied activity of the king overcame all opposition. When at Modasa Ahmed heard that, by the treachery of the son of the governor, Nasir of Asir and Gheirat of Ghazni Khan of Malwa had seized the fort of Thalner in Sirpur in Khandesh, and, with the aid of the chief of Nandol, were marching against Sultanpur and Nandurbár. Ahmed sent an expedition against Nasir of Asir under Malik Mahmud Barki or Turki. When the Malik reached Nandol he found that Gheirat Khan had fled to Malwa and that Nasir had retired to Thalner. The Malik advanced, besieged and took Thalner, capturing Nasir whom Ahmed forgave and dignified with the title of Khan.<sup>4</sup>

After quelling these rebellions Ahmed Shah despatched Nizam-ul-Mulk to punish the Raja of Mandal near Viramgam, and himself marched to Malwa against Sultan Hushang, whom he defeated, capturing his treasure and elephants. In A.D. 1118, in accordance with his policy of separately engaging his enemies, Ahmed Shah marched to chastise Trimbekdas of Champner, and though unable to take the fortress he laid waste the surrounding country. In A.D. 1119 he ravaged the lands round Sankheda<sup>5</sup> and built a fort there and a mosque within the fort; he also built a wall round the town of Mangni<sup>6</sup> and then marched upon Mandi. On the way ambassadors from Sultan Hushang met him suing for peace, and Ahmed Shah, returning towards Champner, again laid waste the surrounding country. During the following year (A.D. 1120) he remained in Ahmedabad bringing his own dominions into thorough subjection by establishing fortified posts and by humbling the chiefs and destroying their strongholds. Among other works he built the forts of Dohad<sup>7</sup> on the

## Chapter II.

## Ahmedabad Kings,

A.D. 1103 - 1573.

Ahmed I.  
1411-1441.Ahmed II.  
Quells a Second  
Revolt,  
1416.Expedition  
against Malwa,  
1417.Attacks  
Champner,  
1418.

<sup>1</sup> Sidhpur (north latitude  $25^{\circ} 50'$ , east longitude  $72^{\circ} 20'$ ), on the Samsvati, fifty-eight miles north of Ahmedabad.

<sup>2</sup> Champner (north latitude  $22^{\circ} 30'$ ; east longitude  $72^{\circ} 30'$ ), in the British district of the Panch Mahals, from A.D. 1483 to A.D. 1560 the chief city of Gujarat, now in ruins.

<sup>3</sup> Modasa (north latitude  $23^{\circ} 27'$ ; east longitude  $73^{\circ} 21'$ ), fifty miles north-east of Ahmedabad.

<sup>4</sup> Mirat-i-Ikbalani Persian Text, 31, 35; Faushtah, II, 363, 364.

<sup>5</sup> Sankheda is on the left bank of the Or river about twenty miles south-east of Baroda.

<sup>6</sup> Mangni Makam or Minku, famous for its witches, eight miles east of Sankheda. Mr. J. Pollen, I.C.S., LL.D., Compare Bom Gov. Re. N. S. XXII, 98.

<sup>7</sup> Dohad (north latitude  $22^{\circ} 50'$ ; east longitude  $74^{\circ} 10'$ ), seventy-seven miles north-east of Baroda, now the chief town of the sub-division of the same name in the British district of the Panch Mahals. Mr. J. Pollen, I.C.S., LL.D.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedābād  
Kings.

A.D. 1403-1573.

Ahmed I  
1411-1441War with Málwa,  
1422.Defeats the  
Ídar Chief,  
1425.

Málwa frontier and of Jítpur in Lúnáváda.<sup>1</sup> In A.D. 1421 he repaired the fort in the town of Káhréth, otherwise called Meimún in Lúnáváda, which had been built by Ulugh Khán Sanjar in the reign of Sultán Aká-ud-dín (A.D. 1295-1315) and changed the name to Sultānpur. He next advanced against Málwa and took the fort of Mesar. After an unsuccessful siege of Mándu he went to Ujjain.<sup>2</sup> From Ujjain he returned to Mándu, and failing to capture Mandu, he marched against Sarangpur.<sup>3</sup> Sultán Hushang sent ambassadors and concluded a peace. In spite of the agreement, while Ahmed Sháh was returning to Gujarát, Sultán Hushang made a night attack on his army and caused much havoc. Ahmed Sháh, collecting what men he could, waited till dawn and then fell on and defeated the Málwa troops, who were busy plundering. Sultán Hushang took shelter in the fort of Sárangpur to which Ahmed Sháh again laid siege. Failing to take the fort Ahmed retreated towards Gujarát, closely followed by Sultán Hushang, who was eager to wipe out his former defeat. On Hushang's approach, Ahmed Sháh, halting his troops, joined battle and repulsing Hushang returned to Ahmedābād.

In A.D. 1425 Ahmed Sháh led an army against Ídar, defeating the force brought to meet him and driving their leader to the hills. Ídar was always a trouble-some neighbour to the Ahmedābād kings and one difficult to subdue, for when his country was threatened, the chief could retire to his hills, where he could not easily be followed. As a permanent check on his movements, Ahmed Sháh, in A.D. 1427, built the fort of Ahmednagar,<sup>4</sup> on the banks of the Málhmati eighteen miles south-west of Ídar. In the following year the Ídar chief, Ráy Púnja, attacked a foraging party and carried off one of the royal elephants. He was pursued into the hills and brought to bay in a narrow path-way at the edge of a steep ravine. Púnja was driving back his pursuers when the keeper of the Sultán's elephant urged his animal against the Ráy's horse. The horse swerving lost his foothold and rolling down the ravine destroyed himself and his rider.<sup>5</sup>

During the two following years Ahmed Sháh abstained from foreign conquests, devoting himself to improving his dominions and to working out a system of paying his troops. The method he finally adopted was payment half in money and half in land. This arrangement attached the men to the country, and, while keeping them dependent on the state, enabled them to be free from debt. Further to keep his officials in check he arranged that the treasurer should be one of the king's slaves while the actual paymaster was a native of the particular locality. He also appointed *amils* that is sub-divisional revenue officers. After Ráy Púnja's death Ahmed Sháh marched upon Ídar, and did not return until Ráy Púnja's son agreed to pay an annual tribute of £300 (Rs. 3000). In the following year, according to Farishtah (II. 361) in spite of the young chief's promise

<sup>1</sup> Jítpur about twelve miles north-east of Bilásinor.

<sup>2</sup> Ujjain (north latitude 23° 10'; east longitude 75° 47'), at different times the capital of Málwa.

<sup>3</sup> Sarangpur about fifty miles north-east of Ujjain.

<sup>4</sup> Ahmednagar (north latitude 23° 31'; east longitude 73° 1') in the native state of Ídar.

Mirát-i-Sikandari Persian Text, 13.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedābād  
Kings.

A.D. 1403-1573

Ahmed I  
1411-1441Gujarat  
Mahmud  
1429Mah. 1429  
1431

to pay tribute, Ahmed Shāh attacked Idar, took the fort, and built an assembly mosque. Fearing that their turn would come next the chief of Jhalavāda and Kānha (apparently chief of Dungarpur) fled to Nasir Khān of Asir. Nasir Khān gave Kānha a letter to Ahmed Shāh Bahmani, to whose son Alā-ud-dīn Nāsir's daughter was married, and having detached part of his own troops to help Kānha they plundered and laid waste some villages of Nandurbār and Sultānpur. Sultān Ahmed sent his eldest son Muhammad Khān with Mukarrabul Mulk and others to meet the Dakhāns who were repulsed with considerable loss. On this Sultān Ahmed Bahmani, under Kadr Khān Dakhami, sent his eldest son Alā-ud-dīn and his second son Khan Jehān against the Gujaratis. Kadr Khan marched to Daulatābād and joining Nasir Khan and the Gujarat rebels fought a great battle near the pass of Mānek Pūj, six miles south of Nandgaon in Nasik. The confederates were defeated with great slaughter. The Dakhan princes fled to Daulatābād and Kanha and Nasir Khan to Kalanda near Chālisgaum in south Khandesh.

In the same year (A.D. 1429), on the death of Kutub Khān the Gujarat governor of the island of Mahim, now the north part of the island of Bombay, Ahmed Shāh Bahmani smarting under his defeats, ordered Hasan Izzat, otherwise called Malik-ut-Tujjar, to the Konkan and by the Malik's activity the North Konkan passed to the Dakhāns. On the news of this disaster Ahmed Shāh sent his youngest son Zafar Khān with an army under Malik Bakhār Khan, to retake Mahim. A fleet, collected from Dui Gogha and Cambay sailed to the Konkan, attacked Thāna by sea and land, captured it and regained possession of Mahim. In A.D. 1431 Ahmed Shāh advanced upon Champaner, and Ahmed Shāh Bahmani anxious to retrieve his defeat at Mahim, marched an army into Baglan and laid it waste. This news brought Ahmed Shāh back to Nandurbār. Destroying Nāndel he passed to Tambol, a fort in Baglan which Ahmed Shāh Bahmani was besieging, defeated the besiegers and relieved the fort. He then went to Thana, repaired the fort, and returned to Gujarat by way of Sultānpur and Nandurbār. In A.D. 1432, after contracting his son Faeh Khan in marriage with the daughter of the Rājā of Māhm to the north of Bassem Ahmed Shāh marched towards Nasik and exacted tribute and presents from the Rājā of Dungarpur. From Dungarpur he went to Mewar, enforcing his

<sup>1</sup> There are two Mahims on the North Konkan coast, one about twenty two miles north of Bassem (north latitude 19° 10', east longitude 72° 17'), and the other in the northern extremity of the island of Bombay (north latitude 19° 2', east longitude 72° 54'). The southern Mahim, to which Faiztāh (II, 370-371) is careful to apply the term *pradesh* or island, is the town referred to in the text. The northern Mahim, now known as Kalya Mahim, was, as is noted in the text, the head quarters of a Hindu chief.

<sup>2</sup> Thāna (north latitude 19° 11', east longitude 72° 6'), the head-quarters of the British district of that name, about twenty-four miles north by east of Bombay, was from the tenth to the sixteenth century A.D. the chief city in the Northern Konkan.

<sup>3</sup> Bāglin, now called Satma, is the northern subdivision of the British district of Nasik. In A.D. 1590 the chief commanded 8000 cavalry and 5000 infantry. The country was famous for fruit. Amir Akbari (Gladwin), II, 73. The chief, a Rithod, was converted to Islam by Aurangzib (A.D. 1656-1707).

<sup>4</sup> Dungarpur (north latitude 23° 50', east longitude 73° 50') in Rājputāna, 150 miles north west of Mhow.

**Chapter II.**  
**Ahmedābād**  
**Kings.**

A.D. 1403-1453.

Ahmed I.  
 1411-1441

claims on Būndi and Kota, two Hāra Rajput states in south-east Rajputāna. He then entered the Delvāda country, levelling temples and destroying the palace of Rana Mokalsingh, the chief of Chitor. Thence he invaded Nagor in the country of the Rāthods, who submitted to him. After this he returned to Gujarat, and during the next few years was warring principally in Mālwa, where according to Farishtah, his army suffered greatly from pestilence and famine. Ahmed died in A.D. 1441 in the fifty-third year of his life and the thirty-third of his reign and was buried in the mausoleum in the Manek Chauk in Ahmedabad. His after-death title is Khudagān-i-Maghfir the Forgiver. Lord in token that, according to his merciful promise, Allah the pitiful, moved by the prayer of forty believers, had spread his forgiveness over the crime of Ahmed's youth, a crime bewailed by a lifelong remorse.

Sultān Ahmed is still a name of power among Gujarāt Musalmāns. He is not more honoured for his bravery, skill, and success as a war leader than for his piety and his justice. His piety showed itself in his respect for three great religious teachers Sheikh Rukn-ud-din the representative of Sheikh Moin-ud-din the great Khwājah of Ajmeer, Sheikh Ahmed Khattu who is buried at Sarkhej five miles west of Ahmedabad, and the Bukhāran Sheikh Buhān-ud-din known as Kutbi Alam the father of the more famous Shah Alam. Of Ahmed's justice two instances are recorded. Sitting in the window of his palace watching the Sabarmati in flood Ahmed saw a large earthen jar float by. The jar was opened and the body of a murdered man was found wrapped in a blanket. The potters were called and one said the jar was his and had been sold to the headman of a neighbouring village. On inquiry the headman was proved to have murdered a gram merchant and was hanged. The second case was the murder of a poor man by Ahmed's son-in-law. The Kazi found the relations of the deceased willing to accept a blood fine and when the fine was paid released the prince. Ahmed hearing of his son-in-law's release and in the case of the rich fine is no punishment and ordered his son-in-law to be hanged.<sup>1</sup>

Muhammad II  
 1441-1452

Ahmed Shah was succeeded by his generous pleasure-loving son Muhammad Shah, Ghias-ud-dunya Wad-din, also styled Zaubaksh the Gold Giver. In A.D. 1445 Muhammad marched against Bīr Rāi of Idar, but on that chief agreeing to give him his daughter in marriage, he confirmed him in the possession of his state. His next expedition was against Kanha Rai of Dūngarpur, who took refuge in the hills, but afterwards returned, and paying tribute, was given charge of his country. Muhammad married Bibi Mughli, daughter of Jām Jūna of Thalha in Sindh. She bore a son, Fatch Khān, who was afterwards Sultan Mahmūd Begada. In A.D. 1450, Muhammad marched upon Chāmpāner, and took the lower fortress. Gangadās of Chāmpāner had a strong ally in Sultan Mahmūd Khilji, the ruler of Malwa, and on his approach Muhammad Shah retired to Godhra, and Mahmūd

<sup>1</sup> Mirāt-i-Sikandari Persian Text, 15, 46.

<sup>2</sup> Godhra (north latitude 22° 45' ; east longitude 73° 36'), the chief town of the subdivision of that name in the British district of the Panch Mahals. The Mirāt-i-Sikandari (Persian Text, 49) gives, probably rightly, Koshra a village of Samli or Savli about twenty miles north of Baroda.

Khilji continued his march upon Gujara't at the head of 80,000 horse. Muhammad Shah was preparing to fly to Diu, when the nobles, disgusted at his cowardice, caused him to be poisoned. Muhammad Shah's after-death title is Khûdagün-i-Karim-the Gracious Lord.

## Chapter II

Ahmedabad  
Kings.

A.D. 1403-1573

Kutb-ud-din,  
1451-1459  
War with Malwa  
1451.Battle of  
Kapadvanj,  
1451.

In A.D. 1451 the nobles placed Muhammad's son Jal'ûl Khân on the throne with the title of Kutb-ud-din. Meanwhile Sultân Mahmûd of Malwa had laid siege to Sultânpur.<sup>1</sup> Malik Alâ-ud-din bin Sohrâb Kutb-ud-din's commander surrendered the fort, and was sent with honour to Mâlwa and appointed governor of Mându. Sultân Mahmûd, marching to Sârsa-Palî, summoned Broach, then commanded by Sîkh Marjân on behalf of Gujara't. The Sîkh refused, and, fearing delay, the Mâlwa Sultân after plundering Baroda proceeded to Nadiad, whose Brahmans astonished him by their bravery in killing a mad elephant. Kutb-ud-din Shah now advancing met Sultân Mahmûd at Kapadvanj, where, after a doubtful fight of some hours, he defeated Sultân Mahmûd, though during the battle that prince was able to penetrate to Kutb-ud-din's camp and carry off his crown and jewelled girdle. The *Mirât-i-Sikandari* ascribes Kutb-ud-din's victory in great measure to the gallantry of certain inhabitants of Dholka<sup>2</sup> called Darwâziyahs. Muzaffar Khan, who is said to have incited the Malwa Sultân to invade Gujara't, was captured and beheaded, and his head was hung up at the gate of Kapadvanj. On his return from Kapadvanj Kutb-ud-din built the magnificent Hauzî Kutb or Kankariyâ Tank about a mile to the south of Ahmedabad. According to the *Mirât-i-Sikandari* (Persian Text, 50-51) this war between Malwa and Gujara't was controlled by the spiritual power of certain holy teachers. The war was brought on by the prayers of Shêih Kamâl Malwî, whose shrine is in Ahmedabad behind Khudawand Khan's mosque near Shah-i-Alam's tomb, who favoured Malwa. Kutb-ud-din's cause was aided by the blessing of Kutb-i-Alam who sent his son the famous Shah Alam time after time to persuade Kamâl to be loyal to Gujara't. At last Kamâl produced a writing said to be from heaven giving the victory to Malwa. The young Shah Alam tore this charter to shreds, and, as no evil befel him, Kamâl saw that his spiritual power paled before Shâh Alam and fell back dead. Shâh Alam against his will accompanied Kutb-ud-din some marches on his advance to Kapadvanj. Before leaving the army Shah Alam blessed a mean camp elephant and ordered him to destroy the famous Malwa champion elephant known as the Butcher. He also, against his wish for he knew the future, at the Sultân's request bound his own sword round Kutb-ud-din's waist. In the battle the commissariat elephant ripped the Butcher and some years later Kutb-ud-din by accident gashed his knee with the saint's sword and died.

<sup>1</sup> Sultânpur (north latitude 21° 43', east longitude 74° 10'), in the north of the Shikha sub-division of the British district of Kheda, till A.D. 1904 a place of consequence and the head quarters of a large district.

<sup>2</sup> Kapadvanj (north latitude 23° 2'; east longitude 73° 1'), the chief town of the sub-division of that name in the British district of Kaira.

<sup>3</sup> Dholka (north latitude 22° 12', east longitude 72° 25'), the chief town of the sub-division of that name in the British district of Ahmedabad.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedabad  
Kings.

A.D. 1403-1573.

Kutb-ud-din  
1454-1459War with Nagor,  
1461-1469War with Chitor,  
1465-1469.

In the same year Sultan Mahmūd Khilji attempted to conquer Nāgor then held by Firūz Khān, a cousin of the Ahmedabad Sultan. Kutb-ud-din Shah despatched an army under the command of Sayad Atāullah and, as it drew near Sāmbar,<sup>1</sup> the Mālwa Sultan retired and shortly after Firūz Khān died. Kūmbhā Rāna of Chitor<sup>2</sup> now began interfering in the Nāgor succession on behalf of Shams Khān, who had been dispossessed by his brother Mujāhid Khān, and expelled Mujāhid. But as Shams Khān refused to dismantle the fortifications of Nāgor, the Chitor chief collected an army to capture Nāgor, while Shams Khān repaired to Kutb-ud-din Shah for aid and gave that sovereign his daughter in marriage. Upon this Kutb-ud-din sent Bai Anupchand Mānek and Malik Gadai with an army to Nāgor to repulse the Rāna of Chitor. In a battle near Nāgor the Gujarāt troops were defeated, and the Rāna after laying waste the neighbourhood of that city, returned to Chitor. In A.D. 1455-56, to avenge this raid, Kutb-ud-din Shah marched against Chitor. On his way the Devra Raja of Sirohi<sup>3</sup> attended Kutb-ud-din Shah's camp, praying him to restore the fortress of Abu,<sup>4</sup> part of the ancestral domain of Sirohi, which the Rāna of Chitor had wrested from his house. The king ordered one of his generals, Malik Shaabān, to take possession of Abu and restore it to the Devra chieftain while he himself continued to advance against Kūmbhāner. Malik Shaabān was entangled in the defiles near Abu, and defeated with great slaughter, and shortly after Kutb-ud-din Shah, making a truce with Chitor, retired to his own country. On his return the Mālwa sovereign proposed that they should unite against Chitor, conquer the Rāna's territories, and divide them equally between them. Kutb-ud-din agreed and in A.D. 1466-57 marched against the Rāna by way of Abu, which fortress he captured and handed to the Devra Raja. Next advancing upon Kūmbhāner, he plundered the country round, and then turned towards Chitor. On his way to Chitor, he was met by the Rāna, and a battle was fought, after which the Rāna fell back on his capital, and was there besieged by the Gujarāt army. The siege was not pressed, and, on the Rāna agreeing to pay tribute and not to harass Nagor, Kutb-ud-din withdrew to Gujarāt, where he gave himself up to licentious excess. Meanwhile, the Rāna by sending Mandi-ori<sup>5</sup> to Malwa, came to terms with the Sultan of Māndu, and within three months attacked Nāgor. Kutb-ud-din Shah though so overcome with drink as to be unable to sit his horse, mustered his troops and started in a palanquin. As soon as the Rāna heard that the Gujarāt army was in motion he retired, and the king returned Ahmedābād. A.D. 1458, he again led an army by way of Sirohi

<sup>1</sup> Sāmbar (north latitude 26° 53'; east longitude 75° 13'), a town in the province of Ajmer, about fifty-one miles north-north-east from the city of Ajmer.

<sup>2</sup> Chitor (north latitude 24° 52'; east longitude 74° 14'), for several centuries before A.D. 1567 the capital of the principality of Udaipur.

<sup>3</sup> Sirohi (north latitude 24° 59'; east longitude 72° 56'), the capital of the principality of the same name in the province of Ajmer.

<sup>4</sup> Abu (north latitude 24° 45'; east longitude 72° 49') in the state of Sirohi.

<sup>5</sup> The Rājā is called Krishna Kishan or Kāsh Devia. Abu is still held by the Sirohi Devia.

<sup>6</sup> Mandi-ori (north latitude 24° 1'; east longitude 75° 9'), the chief town of a large district of the same name in the province of Malwa.

and Kumbhalmer against Chitor, and laid waste the country. Soon after his return, according to one account by an accidental sword wound, according to another account poisoned by his wife, Kutb-ud-din died in May A.D. 1459 after a reign of seven years and seven days. He was brave with a sternness of nature, which, under the influence of wine, amounted to fierceness. His after-death title is Sultān-i-Ghāzi the Warrior King.

On the death of Kutb-ud-din Shāh, the nobles raised to the throne his uncle Daūd, son of Ahmed Shah. But as Daūd appointed low-born men to high offices and committed other foolish acts, he was deposed, and in A.D. 1459 his half-brother Fatch Khan (the son of Muhammad Shah, son of Ahmed Shah by Bibi Mughli a daughter of Jam Jūna of Thātha in Sindh, was seated on the throne at the age of little more than thirteen with the title of Mahmud Shah.

The close connection of Fatch Khān with the saintly Shah Alam is a favourite topic with Gujarāt historians. According to the *Mnā-i-Sikandar* (Persian Text, 69-70) of his two daughters Jām Jūna intended Bibi Mughli the more beautiful for the Saint and Bibi Mughli the less comely for the Sultan. By bribing the Jām's envoys the king secured the prettier sister. The enraged Saint was consoled by his father who said—My son, to you will come both the cow and the calf. After Muhammad II's death, fear of Kutb-ud-din's designs against the young Fatch Khan forced Bibi Mughli to seek safety with her sister, and on her sister's death she married the Saint. Kutb-ud-din made several attempts to seize Fatch Khan. But by the power of the Saint when Kutb-ud-din attempted to seize him Fatch Khān in body as well as in dress became a girl. According to one account Kutb-ud-din met his death in an attempt to carry off Fatch Khān. As he rode into the Saint's quarter Death in the form of a mad camel met the king. The king struck at the phantom, and his sword cleaving the air gashed his knee. This was the Saint's sword, which against his will, for he knew it would be the death of the king, Kutb-ud-din forced Shāh Alam to bind round him before the battle of Kapadvanj.

The death of his uncle, the late Sultān Daūd, who had become a religious devotee, relieved Fatch Khān of one source of danger. Shortly after certain of the nobles including Seif-ul-Mulk, Kabir-ud-din Sultān and Khwāja Khwāja ul-Mulk, Buman ul-Mulk and Hisam-ul-Mulk represented to the Sultān that the minister Shaibūn Imād-ul-Mulk contemplated treason and wished to set his son on the throne. Having seized and imprisoned the minister in the Bhadra citadel and set five hundred of their trusted retainers as guards over him, the rebels retired to their homes. At nightfall Abdullah, the chief of the elephant stables, going to the young Sultān represented to him that the nobles who had imprisoned Imād-ul-Mulk were the real traitors and had determined to place Habib Khān, an uncle of the Sultān's, on the throne. The Sultān consulting his mother and some of his faithful friends ordered Abdullah at daybreak to equip all his elephants in full armour and draw them up in the square before the Bhadra. He then seated himself on the throne and in a voice of feigned anger ordered one of the courtiers to bring out Shaibūn Imād-ul-Mulk, that he might wreak his vengeance

Chapter II.  
Ahmedābād  
Kings.  
A.D. 1403-1573.

Mahmud I  
(Begdān),  
1459-1513

Defeats a  
Conspiracy,  
1459.

**Chapter II.****Āhmedābād  
Kings.**

A.D. 1103-1573.

**Mahmūd I.  
(Bogada).  
1459-1513.**Improves the  
Soldiery,  
1159-1461.Helps the King  
of the Dakhan,  
1461.

upon him. As these orders were not obeyed the Sultān rose, and walking up the Bhadra called : " Bring out Shaābān ! " The guards brought forth Imad-ul-Mulk, and the Sultān ordered his fetters to be broken. Some of the nobles' retainers made their submission to the Sultān, others fled and hid themselves. In the morning, hearing what had happened, the refractory nobles marched against the Sultān. Many advised the Sultān to cross the Sabarmati by the postern gate and retire from the city, and, after collecting an army, to march against the nobles. Giving no ear to these counsels the young Sultān ordered Abdullāh to charge the advancing nobles with his six hundred elephants. The charge dispersed the malcontents who fled and either hid themselves in the city or betook themselves to the country. Some were killed, some were trampled by the Sultān's orders under the elephants' feet, and one was pardoned.<sup>1</sup> His religious ardour, his love of justice, his bravery, and his wise measures entitle Mahmūd to the highest place among the Gujarāt kings. One of the measures which the *Mirāt-i-Sikandari* specially notices is his continuance of land grants to the son of the holder, and in cases where there was no male issue of half the grant to the daughter. His firm policy of never ousting the landholder except for proved oppression or exaction was productive of such prosperity that the revenue increased two three and in some cases tenfold. The roads were safe from freebooters and trade was secure. A rule forbidding soldiers to borrow money at interest is favourably noticed. A special officer was appointed to make advances to needy soldiers with the power to recover from their pay in fixed instalments.<sup>2</sup> Mahmūd also devoted much attention to the culture of fruit trees.<sup>3</sup> In A.D. 1161, or A.D. 1462 according to Farishtah, Nizām Shāh Bahmanū (A.D. 1461-1463), king of the Dakhan, whose country had been invaded by Sultān Mahmūd Khulji of Mālwa, applied for help to the Gujarāt king. Mahmūd Shāh at once started to Nizām Shāh's aid, and on his way receiving another equally pressing letter from the Dakhan sovereign, and being joined by the Bahmani general Khwājāh Jehān Gāwan, he

<sup>1</sup> Persian Text, *Mirāt-i-Sikandari*, 75-76.

<sup>2</sup> The Portuguese merchant and traveller Barbosa (A.D. 1511-1514) gives the following details of Mahmūd Beza's cavalry. The Moors and Gentiles of this kingdom are bold riders mounted on horses bred in the country, for it has a wonderful quantity. They ride on small saddles and use whips. Their arms are very thick round shields edged with silk; each man has two swords, a dagger, and a Turkish bow with very good arrows. Some of them carry maces, and many of them coats-of-mail, and others tunics quilted with cotton. The horses have housings and steel headpieces, and so they fight very well and are light in their movements. The Moorish horsemen are white and of many countries, Turks and Mamelukes, military slaves from Georgia Circassia and Mingrelia, Arabs Persians Khorasmins Turkomans, men from the great kingdom of Dehli, and others born in the country itself. Their pay is good and they receive it regularly. They are well dressed with very rich stuffs of gold silk cotton and goat's wool, and all wear caps on their heads, and their clothes long, such as morisco shirts and drawers, and leggings to the knee of good thick leather worked with gold knots and embroidery, and their swords richly ornamented with gold and silver are borne in their grilles or in the hands of their pages. Their women are very white and pretty also very richly decked out. They live well and spend much money. Stanley's Barbosa, 55-56.

<sup>3</sup> Mahmūd's favourite trees were the mango *ambo* *Mangifera indica*, *raia* *Mimusops alexandra*, *jamhu* *Eugenia jambolana*, *gular* *Ficus glomerata*, tamarind *imli* *Tamarindus indica*, and the shrubby *phyllanthus donlu* *Embolia officinalis*.

pushed on with all speed by way of Burhānpur.<sup>1</sup> When Sultān Mahmūd Khilji heard of his approach, he retired to his own country by way of Gondwana,<sup>2</sup> from thirst and from the attacks of the Gonds, losing 5000 to 6000 men. The king of Gujarāt, after receiving the thanks of the Dakhan sovereign, returned to his own dominions. In A.D. 1462 Sultān Mahmūd Khilji made another incursion into the Dakhan at the head of 90,000 horse, plundering and laying waste the country as far as Daulatabad. Again the Dakhan sovereign applied for help to Mahmūd Shāh, and on hearing of Mahmūd's advance the Malwa Sultān retired a second time to his own dominions. Mahmūd Shāh now wrote to the Malwa Sultān to desist from harassing the Dakhan, threatening, in case of refusal, to march at once upon Māndu. His next expedition was against the prade zamīndars of the hill fort of Barūr and the bandar of Dūn or Dahanu, whose fort he took, and after imposing an annual tribute allowed the chief to continue to hold his hundred villages.<sup>3</sup>

Mahmūd Shāh next turned his thoughts to the conquest of the mountain citadel of Gurnar in central Kāthiavāda.<sup>4</sup> In A.D. 1467 he made an attack on the fort of Jūnāgadh, and receiving the submission of Rāv Mandlik, the local ruler, returned to his capital. In the following year, hearing that the Jūnāgadh chief continued to visit his idol temple in state with a golden umbrella and other ensigns of royalty, Mahmūd despatched an army to Jūnāgadh, and the chief sent the obnoxious umbrella to the king, accompanied by fitting presents. In A.D. 1469 Mahmūd once more sent an army to ravage Sorath, with the intention of finally conquering both Jūnāgadh and Gurnar. While Mahmūd was on the march the Rāv Mandlik suddenly joined him, and asking why the Sultān was so bent on his destruction when he had committed no fault, agreed to do whatever Mahmūd might command. The king replied there is no fault like infidelity, and ordered the Rāv to embrace Islam. The chief, now thoroughly alarmed, fled by night and made his way into Gurnar. In A.D. 1472-73 after a siege of nearly two years, forced by the failure of his stores, he quitted the fort and handing the keys to the king, repeated after him the Muhammadan profession of faith. Though the Rāv's life was spared Sorath from this date became a crown possession, and was governed by an officer appointed by the king and stationed at Jūnāgadh. At the close of the war Mahmūd Shāh repaired the fort Jehānpānah, the present outer or town wall of Jūnāgadh, and, charmed with the beauty of the neighbourhood, settled sayads and learned men at Jūnāgadh and other towns

## Chapter II.

### Ahmedābād Kings.

A.D. 1403-1573.

Mahmūd I.  
(Begada),  
1459-1513.

Expedition  
against  
Jūnāgadh,  
1467.

Capture of  
Gurnar,  
1472.

<sup>1</sup> Burhānpur (north latitude 21° 18'; east longitude 76° 20'), under the Musalmāns the capital of Khandesh, now within the limits of the Berārs.

<sup>2</sup> Gondwana, a large hilly tract lying between north latitude 19° 30' and 24° 30' and east longitude 77° 30' and 87° 20'.

<sup>3</sup> The Muāṭ-i-Sikandari (Persian Text, page 89) gives the hill fort of Barudai. The Persian *r* may be a miswritten *g* and the *d* a mistake for *z* that is Baguwar or Baguwarah. The seaport Dūn may be Dūngri hill six miles from the coast. But Dūn for Dahanu a well-known port in north Phana is perhaps more likely. Farishtah (Biggs, IV. 51) gives Bavur for Barū and Dura for Dūn. Compare Tabakat-i-Akbari in Bayley's Gujarat, page 178 note 2.

<sup>4</sup> Under the quadern of Kāthiavāda. See above page 231 note 2.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedábád  
Kings,

A.D. 1403-1573.

Mahmūd I.  
(Bégada),  
1459-1513.Disturbances  
in Champāner,  
1172.

in Sorath. He induced the nobles to build houses, himself raised a palace and made the new city his capital under the name of Mustafábád and enforced his claims as overlord on all the neighbouring chiefs. It is true that in the times of Ahmed Sháh these chieftains, including even the Júnágadh Ráv himself, had paid tribute. But Mahmūd established Ahmedábád rule so firmly that the duty of collecting the tribute was entrusted to an officer permanently settled in the country. The author of the *Mirát-i-Sikandar* dilates on the dense woods round Júnágadh, full of mango, *rién*, *jímbr*, *gúlar*, *ámli*, and *áoñla*<sup>1</sup> trees, and notes that this forest tract was inhabited by a wild race of men called Khánts.<sup>2</sup>

During Mahmūd Sháh's prolonged absence from his capital, Malik Jamál-ud-dín was appointed governor of Ahmedábád, with the title of Muháliz Khán that is Care-taker. At this time Jesingh, son of Gangádás the chief of Champāner, harassed the country round Pavágadh. The king appointed Bahá-ul-Mulk, who had the title of Imad-ul-Mulk, to the command of Sankheda; Malik Súrang Kiwám-ul-Mulk to the command of Godhra; and Taj Khan bin Salár to the command of Norkha and Dákhna on the Mahi. In consequence of these precautions Jesingh abstained from rebellion. At this time the Ráv Mandlik received the title of Khán Jahan, and lands were bestowed on him, while the golden idols, which had been taken from the Júnágadh temples, were broken and distributed among the soldiers.

Conquest of  
Kachh.

Mahmūd Sháh's next expedition was against the turbulent inhabitants of the confines of Smálh. These were Jádejás, though they are described as Rájputs of the Sumra and Sodha tribes.<sup>3</sup> They appear to have readily submitted, and to have voluntarily sent men to Júnágadh to be instructed in Islám and to settle in Gujarat. Shortly afterwards they again became troublesome, and the king advancing into Kachh completely defeated them. About this time a learned man, Mulla Mahmūd Samarkandi on his way from the Dakhan to Central Asia, complained to the king that he had been robbed by the pirates of Jagat or Dwárka.<sup>4</sup> On hearing of this outrage Mahmūd Sháh marched to Jagat, took the fort, and destroyed the idol temples. The pirates, in the first instance, retired to the island of Shankhodár<sup>5</sup> or Bet, but from this, too, after a stout resistance they were driven with great slaughter. The king built a mosque at Jagat, entrusted the government to Farhat-ul-Mulk, and himself returned to Júnágadh. Before this Dwárka had never been conquered. Bhím, the Raja of Dwarka, was sent to Muháliz Khán, the governor of Ahmedábád, with orders that he was to be hewn in pieces and a piece fastened to every gate of the city. After settling the affairs of Sorath, the king turned

Jagat  
Destroyed.

<sup>1</sup> *Mangifera indica*, *Mimusops hexandra*, *Eugenia jambolana*, *Ficus glomerata*, *Tamarindus indica*, and *Embilica officinalis*.

<sup>2</sup> Khánts are still found chiefly in Sorath. See *Bombay Gazetteer*, VIII. 112.

<sup>3</sup> The *Tabakát-i-Akbari* says they were Jats. Sir H. Elliot (*History of India*, I. 496) represents the Sumras to be Agnikula Rájputs of the Parmára stock. The Jádejás had been ruling in Kachh since A.D. 1350-1365.

<sup>4</sup> Dwárka (north latitude 22° 15'; east longitude 69°), on the north-western shore of Káthiáwár, famous for its temple of Krishna.

his face towards Ahmedabad.\* On the way hearing that a fleet of Malabar craft were annoying the Gujarát ports, he marched to Gogha, equipped a fleet to oppose the pirates, and stopping at Cambay returned to Ahmedabad.

In A.D. 1480, when Mahmúd Sháh was at Jánágadh, Khudáwand Khán and others, who were weary of the king's constant warfare, incited his eldest son Ahmed to assume royal power. But Inád-ul-Mulk, by refusing to join, upset their plans, and on the king's return the conspiracy was stamped out. In the previous year (A.D. 1479) Mahmúd Sháh sent an army to ravage Chámpánér, which he was determined to conquer. About this time, hearing that the neighbourhood was infested with robbers, he founded the city of Mehmutábad on the banks of the Vátrak, about eighteen miles south of Ahmedabad. In A.D. 1482 there was a partial famine in Gujarát, and the Chámpánér country being exempt from scarcity the commandant of Morámli or Rasúlábad, a post in the Gáekwár's Ságolli district on the Chámpánér frontier, made several forays across the border. In return the chief attacked the commandant and defeated him, killing most of his men and capturing two elephants and several horses. On hearing this Mahmúd Sháh set out for Baroda with a powerful army. When Mahmúd reached Baroda the Rával of Chámpánér, becoming alarmed, sent ambassadors and sued for forgiveness. The king rejected his overtures, saying: 'Except the sword and the dagger no message shall pass between me and you.'<sup>1</sup> The Rával made preparations for a determined resistance, and sent messengers to summon Ghiás-ud-dín Khilji of Málwa to his aid. To prevent this junction Mahmúd Sháh entrusted the siege to his nobles and marched to Dohad, on which Sultán Ghiás-ud-dín withdrew to Mándu. On his return from Dohad the Sultán began building a Jáma Mosque at Chámpánér to show that he would not leave the place till he had taken the hill-fort of Pávagaḍ. After the siege had lasted more than twenty months (April 1483 - December 1484), the Musalmáns noticed that for an hour or two in the morning most of the Rájputs were off duty bathing and dressing. A morning assault was planned and the first gate carried. Then Malik Ayáz Sultáni finding a practicable breach pushed through with some of his men and took the great gate. The Rával and his Rájputs, throwing their women children and valuables into a huge fire, rushed out in a fierce but unavailing charge.<sup>2</sup>

The Rával and his minister Dúngarshi fell wounded into the conqueror's hands, and, on refusing to embrace Islám, were put to death. The Rával's son, who was entrusted to Seif-ul-Mulk, and instructed by him in the Muhammadan religion, afterwards, in the reign of Muzaffar Sháh (A.D. 1523 - 1526), was ennobled by the title of Nizám-ul-Mulk. On the capture of Pávagaḍ in A.D. 1484, Mahmúd Sháh built a wall round the town of Chámpánér, and made it his capital under the name of Muhammadabad. Under Mahmúd's orders the neigh-

## Chapter II.

## Ahmedabad.

## Kings,

A.D. 1403 - 1573.

## Mahmúd

(Begada)

1459 - 1513.

## Conspiracy,

1480.

## War against

(Chámpánér,

1482 - 1484.

## Capture of

Pávagaḍ,

1484.

<sup>1</sup> The Tabakát-i-Akbari has 'To-morrow the sword of adamant shall answer your message.'

<sup>2</sup> Fariishtah, II. 396-397.

Chapter II.  
 Ahmedābād  
 Kings,  
 A.D. 1103 - 1573.  
 Mahmūd  
 (Begdād),  
 1459-1513.

bourhood became stocked with mangoes, pomegranates, figs, grapes, sugarcane, plantains, oranges, custard apples, *khurnis* or *raens* (*Mimusops indica* or *hexandra*), jackfruit, and cocoapalms, as well as with roses, chrysanthemums, jasmims, *champs*, and sweet pandanus. A sandal grove near Chāmpāner is said to have had trees large enough to help the Musalmān nobles to build their mansions. At the instance of the Sultān a Khurāsāni beautified one of the gardens with fountains and cascades. A Gujarātī named Hāfur learning the principle improved on his master's design in a garden about four miles west of Chāmpāner, which in his honour still bears the name Hālol.<sup>1</sup>

In Mahmūd's reign an instance is mentioned of the form of compensation known as *valter*. Some merchants bringing horses and other goods for sale from Irāk and Khurāsān were plundered in Sirohi limits. The king caused them to give in writing the price of their horses and stuffs, and paying them from his own treasury recovered the amount from the Raja of Sirohi.

In A.D. 1194-95 Mahmūd went against Bahādūr Khān Gīlāni, a vassal of the Bahmanis, who from Goa and Dābhol<sup>2</sup> had so harassed the Gujarāt harbours that, from the failure of the supply of betelnut, coriander seed had to be eaten with betel leaves. The Bahmanī Sultān, fearing the consequences to himself, marched against Bahādūr Khān, and, capturing him alive, struck off his head, and sent it to the Gujarāt monarch, who returned to his own country. In A.D. 1499-1500, hearing that Nāsir-ud-dīn of Mālwa had killed his father Ghīās-ud-dīn and seated himself on the throne, the Sultān prepared to advance against him, but was appeased by Nāsir-ud-dīn's humble attitude. The next seven years passed without any warlike expedition. In A.D. 1507, near Daman on his way to Cheul, Mahmūd heard of the victory gained at Cheul over the Portuguese by the Gujarāt squadron under Malik Ayāz Sultān, in concert with the Turkish fleet.<sup>3</sup> In A.D. 1508 Mahmūd succeeded in placing his nephew Miran Muhammad Adil Khān Fārūkī on the throne of Asir-Burhānpur. From 1508 Mahmūd remained at his capital till his death in December A.D. 1513 at the age of sixty-seven years and three months, after a reign of fifty-four years and one month. Mahmūd was buried at Sarkhej,<sup>4</sup> and received

\*The Khāndesh  
 Succession,  
 1508.

<sup>1</sup> Mirāt-i-Sikandarī, 112-114.

<sup>2</sup> Dābhol (north latitude 17° 34'; east longitude 73° 16'), on the north bank of the river Vāshishti (called Halewacko and Kalewacko by the early navigators. See Badger's Varthema, page 114 note 1) in the British district of Ratnāgiri. About this time, according to Athanasius Nikitin (A.D. 1468-1474), Dābhol was the great meeting place for all nations living along the coast of India and Ethiopia. In A.D. 1501 it was taken by the Portuguese. Between A.D. 1626 and 1630 an English factory was established here, but by the end of the century trade had left Dābhol and has never returned.

<sup>3</sup> Cheul, now Revdanda (north latitude 18° 33'; east longitude 71° 59'), from about A.D. 1500 to 1650 a place of much trade.

<sup>4</sup> Mahmūd Begada greatly impressed travellers, whose strange tales of him made the king well-known in Europe. Varthema (1503-1508) thus describes his manner of living: 'The king has constantly 20,000 horsemen. In the morning when he rises there come to his palace 60 elephants, on each of which a man sits astride, and the said elephants do reverence to the king, and, except this, they have nothing else to do. When the

the after-death title of Khúdaigán-i-Halím or the Meek Lord. Immediately before his death Sultán Mahmúd was informed that Sháh Ismáíl Safawí of Persia had sent him a friendly embassy headed by Yádgár Beg Kazil-básh. As the Kazil-báshes were known to be Shíáhs the Sultán, who was a staunch Sunni, prayed that he might not be forced to see a Shíah's face during his last days. His prayer was heard. He died before the Persian embassy entered the city.<sup>1</sup> During the last days of Sultán Mahmúd, Sayad Muhammad of Jaunpur, who claimed to be the Mahdí or Messiah, came from Jaunpur and lodged in Tájkhán Sálár's mosque near the Jamálpur gate of Ahmedábád. His sermons drew crowds, and were so persuasive that he gained a large body of followers, who believed his eloquence to be due to *hál* or inspiration. Mahmúd's ministers persuaded him not to see the Jaunpur preacher.

## Chapter II.

## Ahmedábád

Kings,

A.D. 1403 - 1573.

Mahmúd\*

(Begada),

1459-1513.

king eats, fifty or sixty kinds of instruments, drums, trumpets, flageolets and fife play, and the elephants again do him reverence. As for the king himself, his mustachios under his nose are so long that he ties them over his head as a woman would tie her tresses, and he has a white beard that reaches to his girdle. As to his food, every day, he eat poison (Hushibras' Prince whose daily food was asp and basilisk and toad'), not that he fills his stomach with it, but he eats a certain quantity, so that when he wishes to destroy any great person he makes him come before him stripped and naked, and then eats certain fruits which are called *chufale* (*jackfruit*, nutmeg), like a muscatel nut. He also eats certain leaves called *tambali* (*pin* or betel leaf) like the leaves of a sour orange, and with these he eats lime of oyster shells. When he has chewed this well he spurs it out on the person he wishes to kill, and so in the space of half an hour the victim falls to the ground dead. The Sultán has also three or four thousand women, and every night that he sleeps with one, she is found dead in the morning.' Barbosa (A.D. 1511) goes further (Stanley's Trans. 17), saying that so soaked was the king with poison that if a fly settled on his hand it swelled and immediately fell dead. This was the result of his early training. For, on Varthema's companion asking how it was that the king could eat poison in this manner, certain merchants, who were older than the Sultán, answered that his father had fed him upon poison from his childhood. (Badger's Varthema, 110.) Of the origin of Mahmúd's surname Begada two explanations are given: (1) 'From his mustachios being large and twisted like a bullock's horn, such a bullock being called Begado; (2) that the word comes from the Gujarátí *be*, two, and *gad*, a fort, the people giving him this title in honour of his capture of Jónágadh (A.D. 1472) and Chámpner (A.D. 1484).' (Bird's History of Gujarát, 202; Mirát-i-Ahmedí Persian Text, 74.) Varthema's account of the poison-eating is probably an exaggeration of the Sultán's habit of opium-eating to which from his infancy he was addicted. The Mirát-i-Sikandari (Persian Text, 751) speaks of the great physical power of Mahmúd and of his wonderful appetite. Mahmúd's daily food weighed forty *seers* the *seer* being 15 *hahfuls* a little over half a pound. He used to eat about three pounds (5 *seers*) of parched gram to dessert. For breakfast, after his morning prayer, Mahmúd used to consume a cupfull of pure Makkah honey with a second cupfull of clarified butter and fifty small plantains called *sohan kelas*. At night they set by his bed two plates of *sambúsas* or minced mutton sausages. In the morning Mahmúd seeing the empty plates used to give thanks. 'Oh Allah,' he said, 'hast thou not given this unworthy slave rule over Gujarát, who could have filled his stomach.' His virile powers were as unusual as his appetite. The only woman who could bear his embraces unharmed was a powerful Abyssinian girl who was his great favourite. Of the wealth and weapons kept in store the Mirát-i-Sikandari gives the following details regarding the great expedition against Jónágadh (Persian Text, 94): The Sultán ordered the treasurer to send with the army gold coins worth five *krors*, 1700 Egyptian Allemann Moorish and Khurasáni swords with gold handles weighing 2½ to 3 pounds (4-5 *seers*), 1700 daggers and poignards with gold handles weighing 1 to 1½ pounds (2-3 *seers*), and 2000 Arab and Turki horses with gold-embroidered housings. All this treasure of coin and weapons the Sultán spent in presents to his army (Ditto, 94-95).

\*Ferishtah, II. 404. The Mirát-i-Sikandari (Persian Text, 148, 149) calls the Persian ambassador Ibráhim Khán.

Chapter II.  
Ahmedabad  
Kings.  
A.D. 1403-1573.  
Mahmūd  
(Begada),  
1459-1513.

Mahmūd Begada's court was adorned by several pious and high-minded nobles. In life they vied with one another in generous acts; and after death, according to the Persian poet Urfi, they left their traces in the characters and carvings of stone walls and marble piles. First among these nobles the *Mirāt-i-Sikandari* (Persian Text, 132, 142) mentions Dāwar-ul-Mulk, whose god-fearing administration made his estates so prosperous that they were coveted by princes of the blood. As Thānadār of Amron in north Kāthiāvāda, he spread the light of Islām from Morvi to Bhūj, and after his death his fame as a spirit-ruling guardian drew hosts of sick and possessed to his shrine near Morvi. The second was Malik Ayāz, governor of Diu, who built the strong fortress afterwards reconstructed by the Portuguese. He also built a tower on an under-water rock, and from the tower drew a massive iron chain across the mouth of the harbour. A substantial bridge over the creek, that runs through the island of Diu, was afterwards destroyed by the Portuguese. The third was Khudāwand Khān Ālim, the founder of Ālīmpura a suburb to the south of Ahmedābād, adorned with a mosque of sandstone and marble. He introduced the cultivation of melons, figs and sugarcane into Gujarāt from Bijāpur. The fourth was Imād-ul-Mulk Āsas who founded Īsanpur, a suburb between Shāh Ālam's suburb of Īslāmpur and Batwa, and planted along the road groves of *khirnis* and mangoes. The fifth was Tājkhān Sālār, so loved of his peers that after his death none of them would accept his title. The sixth was Malik Sārang Kiwām-ul-Mulk, a Rājput by birth, the founder of the suburb of Sārangpur and its mosque to the east of Ahmedābād. The seventh and eighth were the Khurāsāni brothers Āzām and Moāzzām, who built a cistern, a mosque, and a tomb between Ahmedābād and Sarkhej.

Besides Khalīl Khān, who succeeded him, Mahmūd had three sons: Muhanunad Kāla, Apā Khān, and Ahmed Khān. Kāla, son of Rāni Rūp Manjūri died during his father's lifetime as did his mother, who was buried in Mānek Chauk in Ahmedābād in the building known as the Rāni's *Hazira*. The second son Apā Khān was caught trespassing in a noble's *harim*, and was ordered by the Sultan to be poisoned. The third son was the Ahmed Khān whom Khudāwand Khān sought to raise to the throne during Saltān Mahmūd's lifetime.

Muzaffar II.  
1513-1526.

Muhammad was succeeded by Khalīl Khān, the son of Rāni Hīrābāi the daughter of a Rājput chieftain named Nāgā Rāna who lived on the bank of the Mahi. On ascending the throne, at the age of twenty-seven, Khalīl adopted the title of Muzaffar Shāh. For some time before his father's death, Prince Khalīl Khān had been living at Baroda and shortly after his accession he visited that neighbourhood, and founded a town which he named Daulatābād. In A.D. 1514 Rāv Bhīm, the son of Rāv Bhān of Īdar, defeated Ain-ul-Mulk, governor of Pātān, who was coming to Ahmedābād to pay his respects to the king. This officer had turned aside to punish the Rāv for some disturbance he had created, but failing in his purpose, was himself defeated. On the approach of Muzaffar Shāh, Īdar was abandoned by the Rāv, who made his peace with difficulty and only by agreeing to pay a heavy tribute. Meanwhile the king marched to Godhra, and so to Mālwa by way of Dohad, whose fort he caused to be repaired, and soon after went on to Dhār.

Expedition  
against Īdar,  
1514.

After a short stay in Málwa, thinking it mean to take advantage of the distracted condition of Mahmúd of Málwa, who was at war with his nobles, Muzaffar returned to Muhammadábád (Chámpáner). . At this time Ráimal, nephew of the late Ráv Bhím of Ídar, expelled the Ráv's son Bhármal by the aid of his father-in-law Rána Sága of Chitor, and succeeded to the chieftainship of Ídar. The king was displeased at the interference of the Rána, and directed Nizám Khán, the governor of Ahmednagar, to expel Ráimal and reinstate Bhármal. Nizám Khán took Ídar and gave it to Bhármal. Ráimal betook himself to the hills where Nizám Khán incautiously pursuing and engaging him lost many men. When the rains were over the Sultán visited Ídar. Shortly after, Nizám Khán, the governor of Ahmednagar, fell sick and was called to court. He left Ídar in charge of Zahír-ul-Mulk at the head of a hundred horse. Ráimal made a sudden raid on Ídar and killed Zahír-ul-Mulk and twenty-seven of his men. On hearing of this reverse Sultán Muzaffar ordered Nizám Khán to destroy Bijápur.<sup>1</sup> In A.D. 1517, the nobles of Málwa besought Muzaffar's interference, alleging that the Hindu minister Medáni Rái was planning to depose the Málwa Sultán, Mahmúd Khilji, and usurp the throne. Muzaffar Sháh promised to come to their help, and shortly after Sultán Mahmúd Khilji, escaping from the surveillance of Medáni Rái, himself sought the aid of the Gujarát monarch. In A.D. 1518 Muzaffar Sháh marched by Godhua into Málwa, and on his arrival at Dhúr, that town was evacuated by Medáni Rái. The Gujarát king next besieged Mándu and Medáni Rái summoned the Chitor Rána to his aid. When the Rána had reached Sárangpur, Muzaffar Sháh detaching a force caused the Rána to retire, while the Gujarát soldiers exerted themselves so strenuously that they captured Mándu, recovering the girdle which Kutb-ud-dín had lost at the battle of Kapadvanj. This conquest virtually placed Malwa in Muzaffar's power, but he honourably restored the kingdom to Sultán Mahmúd Khilji, and, withdrawing to Gujarát, proceeded to Muhammadábád. In A.D. 1519, news was received of the defeat and capture of Sultán Mahmúd Khilji by the Rána of Chitor. Muzaffar Sháh sent a force to protect Mándu. But the Rána, who distinguished himself by releasing the Sultán of Málwa and keeping his son in his stead as a hostage, enjoyed continued good fortune. Some time before these events a *bhāt* or hard in the presence of Nizám Khán, the governor of Ídar, boasted that the Rána of Chitor would never fail to help Rána Ráimal of Ídar. The angry governor said 'Whose dog is Rána Sága to help Ráimal while we are here.' Nizám Khán called a dog Sága, chained him in the fort, and dared the Rána to carry him away. His successes enabled Sága to answer the challenge. In consequence of dissensions at head-quarters Nizám Khán withdrew to Ahmednagar leaving a small garrison in Ídar. When Rána Sága appeared before Ídar the garrison resisted but were slain to a man. The Rána advanced to Ahmednagar and severely defeated Nizám Khán who withdrew to Ahmedábád, while the Rána plundered Vjshálnagar.<sup>2</sup> In A.D. 1521, Malik Ayáz Sultáni, the governor of

Chapter II.  
Ahmedábád  
Kings,  
A.D. 1408 - 1573.  
Muzaffar II.  
1513-1526.

Disturbances  
in Málwa,  
1517.

Capture of  
Mándu,  
1518.

War with Chitor,  
1519.

<sup>1</sup> Farishtah, II. 408.

<sup>2</sup> Mirát-i-Sikandari, 166-167; Farishtah, II. 411.

**Chapter II.****Ahmedábád  
Kings.**

A.D. 1403-1573.

**Muzaffar II.  
1513-1526.**• The Rana of  
Chitor Submits,  
1521.Dies,  
1526.

Sorath, was sent with a large and carefully equipped force to revenge this inroad. Dissensions between Malik Ayáz and the Gujarát nobles prevented this expedition doing more than burn and despoil both Dungarpur and Bānsvāda. Muzaffar Sháh, greatly displeased with the result, was preparing to march against Chitor, when he was dissuaded by a submissive embassy from that chief, who sent his son to Ahmedábád with valuable presents for the king. Shortly afterwards, on the death of Malik Ayáz, Muzaffar Sháh confirmed his elder son Malik Is-hák in his father's rank and possessions. Malik Is-hák remained in Sorath which was confirmed as his *jágir*. In the following year the Sultán went about his dominions strengthening his frontier posts, especially the fort of Modása, which he rebuilt. About A.D. 1524 prince Bahádur Khán, ostensibly dissatisfied with the smallness of his estates but really to remove himself from the jealousy of his brother Sikandar who being appointed heir-apparent was seeking his life, left Gujarát and withdrew to Hindustán. King Muzaffar, after formally appointing his son Sikandar Khán his heir, died at Ahmedábád in A.D. 1526, after a reign of fourteen years and nine months. Muzaffar was buried in the shrine of Sheikh Ahmed Khattu at Sarkhej near his father's grave. He was the most learned and one of the most pious of the Ahmedábád Sultáns. So extreme an abstainer was he that not only during his whole life did he eschew intoxicating drugs and liquor but he never again rode a favourite horse because the horse was cured by a draught of wine. He was an accomplished musician, a finished horseman, a practised swordsman, and withal so modest and humble in his dress and temper that observing once to a favourite page how simple and yet graceful his own turban was the boy laughed: 'Ay, if the turbans of Mullahs and Bohoras are graceful, then is your Majesty's.' The Sultán said 'I should have been proud to have my turban likened to a Mullah's, why compare it with the headdress of a schismatic Bohora.' Muzaffar was careful never to pain the feelings of those around him. He suspected Kiwám-ul-Mulk who was in charge of his drinking water but contented himself with breathing over the water one of the verses of the Kuráán which make poison harmless.<sup>1</sup> During his reign cultivation increased so much in Jhaláwāda that it became necessary to reserve certain waste land for pasture. In 1526 the rains held off so long that famine began to rage. The Sultán exclaimed, 'Oh Allah! If thou scourgest the country for the sins of its king take his life and spare thy creatures.' The prayer was heard and the soul of the guardian Sultán passed in a flood of gracious rain.<sup>2</sup>

Sikandar,  
1526.Mahmūd II.  
1526.

After Sikandar Sháh had been in power a few months he was murdered by Imád-ul-Mulk Khush Kadam, who seated a younger brother of Sikandar's, named Násir Khán, on the throne with the title of Mahmūd II. and governed on his behalf. The only event of Sikandar's reign was the destruction of an army sent against his brother

<sup>1</sup> The verse supposed to possess the highest virtue against poison is the last verse of Chap. cvi. of the Kuráán. . . . Serve the Lord of this House who supplieth them with food against hunger and maketh them free from fear.

<sup>2</sup> Mirát-i Sikandari (Pers. Manuscript), 174, 175, 194.

Latif Khán who was helped by Rána Bhím of Munga.<sup>1</sup> The nobles deserted Imád-ul-Mulk's cause, and prince Bahádur Khán, returning to Gujarát from Hindustán, was joined by many supporters prominent among whom was Táj Khán, proprietor of Dhandhuka. Bahádur marched at once on Chámpáner, captured and executed Imád-ul-Mulk and poisoning Násir Khán ascended the throne in A.D. 1527 with the title of Bahádur Sháh. His brother Latif Khán, aided by Rája Bhím of the Kohistan or hill land of Pál,<sup>2</sup> now asserted his claim to the throne. He was defeated, and fell wounded into the hands of the Gujarát army and died of his wounds and was buried at Hálol. Rája Bhím was slain. As Bhím's successor Ráisingh plundered Dohad, a large force was sent against him, commanded by Táj Khán, who laid waste Ráisingh's country and dismantled his forts. Soon after Bahádur Sháh visited Cambay, and found that Malik Is-hák the governor of Sorath had, in the interests of the Portuguese, attempted to seize Diu but had been repulsed by the Gujarát admiral Mahmúd Áka. The Sultán entrusted Diu to Kiwám-ul-Mulk and Júnághadh to Mujahid Khán Bhikan and returned to Ahmedábád. In 1527 he enforced tribute from Idar and the neighbouring country. During one of his numerous expeditions he went to hunt in Nándod and received the homage of the Rája. As the Portuguese were endeavouring to establish themselves on the coast of Sorath, and, if possible, to obtain Diu, the king was constantly at Cambay Diu and Gogha to frustrate their attempts, and he now directed the construction of the fortress of Broach. At this time Muhammad Khán, ruler of Ásir and Burhánpur, requested Bahádur's aid on behalf of Imád-ul-Mulk, ruler of Berar. Bahádur Sháh started at once, and at Nandurbár was joined by Muhammad Khán Ásíri, and thence proceeded to Burhánpur, where he was met by Imád Sháh from Gávalgad. After certain successes he made peace between Burhán Nízám Sháh and Imád Sháh Gávali, and returned to Gujarát. Jám Fírúz the ruler of Tatha in Sindh now sought refuge with Bahádur Sháh from the oppression either of the Ghoris or of the

**Chapter II.**  
**Ahmedábád**  
**Kings,**  
A.D. 1403-1573.  
**Bahá'dur,**  
1527-1536.

Portuguese  
Intrigues,  
1526.

Khandesh  
Affairs,  
1528.

<sup>1</sup> Both the *Mirát-i-Sikandari* (287) and *Faizishah* (II. 119) place Munga in Nandurbár-Sultánpur. The further reference to Rána Bhím of Pál seems to apply to the same man as the Rána Bhím of Munga. Munga may then be Mohangad that is Chota Udepur.

<sup>2</sup> *Mirát-i-Sikandari* Persian Text, 225-226. *Faizishah*, II. 425-428. The Gujarát Musalman historians give a somewhat vague application to the word Pál which means a bank or step downwards to the plain. In the *Mirát-i-Ahmedí* (Páhanpur Edition, page 168) Pálvarah, whose climate is proverbially bad, includes Godhra Ah Mohan and Rajpipla that is the rough eastern fringe of the plain land of Gujarát from the Mahi to the Tapi. As the Rája of Nandod or Rajpipla was the leading chief south of Idar Colonel Watson took reference to the Rája of Pál to apply to the Rája of Rajpipla. An examination of the passages in which the name Pál occurs seems to show that the hill country to the east rather than to the south of Pávagad or Chámpáner is meant. In A.D. 1527 Latif Khán the rival of Bahádur Sháh after joining the Rája Bhím in his *kohistan* or highlands of Pál when wounded is taken into Hálol. The same passage contains a reference to the Rája of Nándod as some one distinct from the Rája of Pál. In A.D. 1531 Ráisingh of Pál tried to rescue Mahmúd Khilji on his way from Mándu in Malwa to Chámpáner. In A.D. 1551 Násir Khán fled to Chámpáner and died in the Pál hills. These references seem to agree in allotting Pál to the hills of Bária and of Mohan or Chhota Udepur. This identification is in accord with the local use of Pál. Mr. Pollen, I.C.S., LL.D., Political Agent, Rewa Kántha, writes (8th Jan. 1895): Pháls Kolis and traders all apply the word Pál to the Bária Pál which besides Bária takes in Sanjeli and the Navánagar-Saliát uplands in Godhra.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedābād  
Kings.

A.D. 1403 - 1573.

Bahādur,  
1527-1536.

Mughals and was hospitably received. In A.D. 1528 Bahādur made an expedition into the Dakhan which ended in a battle at Daulatābād. The issue of this battle seems to have been unfavourable as hardly any reference to the campaign remains. Next year (A.D. 1529) at the request of Jaāfar or Khizr Khān, son of Imād Shāh Gāvali, who was sent to Gujarāt to solicit Bahādur's help, he again marched for the Dakhan. As he passed through Māler Bihārjī the Rāja of Bāglān gave him his daughter in marriage and in return received the title of Bāhr Khān. From Bāglān Bāhr Khān was told off to ravage Cheul which by this time had fallen into the hands of the Portuguese. Bahādur himself advanced to Ahmednagar, took the fort and destroyed many of the buildings. Purandhar also was sacked of its stores of gold.<sup>1</sup> From Ahmednagar Bahādur Shāh passed to Burhānpur, and there his general Kaisar Khān gained a victory over the united forces of Nizām Shāh, Malik Berid, and Ain-ul-Mulk. After having the public sermon read in his name both in Ahmednagar and in Burhānpur Bahādur returned to Gujarāt and for some time refrained from interfering in the affairs of the Dakhan.

Turks at Diu,  
1526 - 1530.

Between A.D. 1526 and 1530 certain Turks under one Mūstafa came to Gujarāt, traders according to one account according to another part of a Turkish fleet expected to act against the Portuguese. Diu was assigned them as a place of residence and the command of the island was granted to Malik Tūghān, son of Malik Ayāz, the former governor. In A.D. 1530 the king marched to Nāgor, and gave an audience both to Prathirāj Rāja of Dūngarpur and to the ambassadors from Rāna Ratanji of Chitor. The Rāna's ambassadors complained of encroachments on Chitor by Mahmūd of Mālwa. Mahmūd promised to appear before Bahādur to explain the alleged encroachments. Bahādur waited. At last as Mahmūd failed to attend Bahādur said he would go and meet Mahmūd. He invested Māndu and received with favour certain deserters from Mahmūd's army. The fortress fell and Sultān Mahmūd and his seven sons were captured. The success of the siege was due to Bahādur's personal prowess. He scaled an almost inaccessible height and sweeping down from it with a handful of men took the fort, a feat which for daring and dash is described as unsurpassed in the history of Musalmān Gujarāt.<sup>2</sup> After passing the rainy season at Māndu Bahādur Shah went to Burhānpur to visit his nephew Mirān Muhammad Shah. At Burhānpur Bahādur under the influence of the great priest-statesman Shāh Tāhir, was reconciled with Burhān Nizām and gave him the royal canopy he had taken from Mālwa. Bahādur offered Shāh Tāhir the post of minister. Shāh Tāhir declined saying he must make a pilgrimage to Makkah. He retired to Ahmednagar and there converted Burhān Nizām Shāh to the Shāhī faith.<sup>3</sup> In the same year, hearing that Māhsingji, Rāja of

Capture of Māndu  
1530.

<sup>1</sup> Purandhar about twenty miles south by east of Poona, one of the greatest of Dakhan hill forts.

<sup>2</sup> Mirāt-i-Sikandari, 238, 239; Farishtah, II, 430. According to the Mirāt-i-Sikandari (239) the Sultan enquired on which side was the loftiest height. They told him that in the direction of Songad-Chitauri the hill was extremely high. These details show that the cliff scaled by Bahādur was in the extreme south-west of Māndu where a high nearly isolated point stretches out from the main plateau. For details see Appendix II, Māndu.

<sup>3</sup> Mirāt-i-Sikandari, 241-242; Farishtah, II, 432.

Halvad,<sup>1</sup> had killed the commandant of Dasáda Bahádur despatched Khán Khánín against him. Virangám and Mándal were reft from the Jhála chieftains, and ever after formed part of the crown dominions. When Sultan Mahmúd Khulji and his sons were being conveyed to the fortress of Chámpáner, Ráisingh, Rája of Pál, endeavoured to rescue them. The attempt failed, and the prisoners were put to death by their guards. In A.D. 1531, on Bahádur's return from Burhánpur to Dhár, hearing that Silehdi the Rájput chief of Ráisin in east Málwa kept in captivity certain Muhammadan women who had belonged to the *harám* of Sultán Násir-ud-dín of Málwa, Bahádur marched against him and forced him to surrender and embrace Islám. The chief secretly sent to the Rána of Chitor for aid and delayed handing over Ráisin. On learning this Bahádur despatched a force to keep Chitor in check and pressed the siege. At his own request, Silehdi was sent to persuade the garrison to surrender. But their reproaches stung him so sharply, that, joining with them, and after burning their women and children, they sallied forth sword in hand and were all slain. Ráisin fell into Bahádur's hands, and this district together with those of Bhílsa and Chanderi were entrusted to the government of Sultán Alam Lodhí. The king now went to Gondwána to hunt elephants, and, after capturing many, employed his army in reducing Gágraun and other minor fortresses.<sup>2</sup> In A.D. 1532 he advanced against Chitor, but raised the siege on receiving an enormous ransom. Shortly afterwards his troops took the strong fort of Rantanbhur.<sup>3</sup> About this time on receipt of news that the Portuguese were usurping authority the Sultán repaired to Dhu. Before he arrived the Portuguese had taken to flight, leaving behind them an enormous gun which the Sultán ordered to be dragged to Chámpáner.

Before A.D. 1532 was over Bahádur Sháh quarrelled with Humáyún, emperor of Delhi. The original ground of quarrel was that Bahádur Sháh had sheltered Sultán Muhammad Zamán Mirza the grandson of a daughter of the emperor Bábar (A.D. 1482-1530). Humáyún's anger was increased by an insolent answer from the Gujarát king. Without considering that he had provoked a powerful enemy, Bahádur Sháh again laid siege to Chitor, and though he heard that Humáyún had arrived in Gwálior, he would not desist from the siege. In March 1535 Chitor fell into the hands of the Gujarát king but near Mandasúr his army was shortly afterwards routed by Humáyún. According to one account, the failure of the Gujarát army was due to Bahádur and his nobles being spell-bound by looking at a heap of salt and some cloth soaked in indigo which were mysteriously left before Bahádur's tent by an unknown elephant. The usual and probably true explanation is that Rúmí Khán the Turk, head of the Gujarát artillery, betrayed Bahádur's interest.<sup>4</sup> Still though Rúmí Khán's treachery may have had a share in Bahádur's defeat it seems probable that in valour, discipline, and tactics the Gujarát army was

Chapter II.  
Ahmedábád  
Kings,  
A.D. 1403-1573.

Bahádur,  
1527-1536.

Quarrel with  
Humáyún,  
1532.

Fall of Chitor,  
1535.

<sup>1</sup> Halvad is a former capital of the chief of Dhraagadhra in Kathiáváda.

<sup>2</sup> Gágraun in Central India about seventy miles north-east of Ujjain.

<sup>3</sup> Rantanbhúr about seventy-five miles south by east of Jaipur.

<sup>4</sup> Mirát-i-Bikandari Persian Text, 266, 268; Farishtah, II. 430.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedábád  
Kings,

A.D. 1403-1573.

Bahádur.  
1527-1536.Mughal Conquest  
of Gujarát,  
1535.Are Driven Out,  
1536.The Portuguese  
at Diu,  
1536.Death of  
Bahádur,  
1536Muhammad II  
(Asiri),  
1536

inferior to the Mughals. Bahádur Sháh, unaccustomed to defeat, lost heart and fled to Mándá, which fortress was speedily taken by Humáyún. From Mándá the king fled to Chámpáner, and finally took refuge in Diu. Chámpáner fell to Humáyún, and the whole of Gujarát, except Sorath, came under his rule. At this time Sher Sháh Sír revolted, in Bihár and Jaunpur, and Humáyún returned to Agra to oppose him leaving his brother Hindál Mírza in Ahmedábád, Kásam Beg in Broach, and Yádgár Násir Mírza in Pútan. As soon as Humáyún departed, the country rose against the Mughals, and his old nobles requested the king to join them. Bahádur joined them, and, defeating the Mughals at Kanj near Mahmúdábád, expelled them from Gujarát. During Humáyún's time of success Bahádur Sháh, being forced to court the Portuguese, had granted them leave to erect a factory in Diu. Instead of a factory the Portuguese built a fort. When he recovered his kingdom, Bahádur, repenting of his alliance with the Portuguese, went to Sorath to persuade an army of Portuguese, whom he had asked to come to his assistance, to return to Goa. When the Portuguese arrived, at Diu five or six thousand strong the Sultán hoping to get rid of them by stratagem, repaired to Diu and endeavoured to get the viceroy into his power. The viceroy excused himself, and in return invited the king to visit his ship. Bahádur agreed, and on his way back was attacked and slain, in the thirty-first year of his life and the eleventh of his reign. According to the author of the *Mirát-i-Sikandari* the reason of Bahádur's assassination was that a paper from him to the kings of the Dakhan, inviting them to join him in an alliance against the Portuguese, had fallen into the hands of the Portuguese viceroy. Whatever may have been the provocation or the intention, the result seems to show that while both sides had treacherous designs neither party was able to carry out his original plan, and the end was unpremeditated, hurried on by mutual suspicions.<sup>1</sup> Up to the defeat of Sultán Bahádur by Humáyún, the power of Gujarát was at its height. Cadets of noble Rájput houses, Prithiráj, the nephew of Rána Sanga of Chitor, and Narsingh Deva the cousin of the Rája of Gwalior, were proud to enrol themselves as the Sultán's vassals. The Rája of Baglana readily gave Bahádur Shah his daughter. Jámi Firúz of Tatha in Sindh and the sons of Bahlúl Lodhi were suppliants at his court. Malwa was a dependency of Gujarát and the Nizám Sháh of Ahmednagar and Nasir Khan of Burhanpur acknowledged him as overlord, while the Fárúkis of Khándesh were dépendent on Bahádur's constant help.<sup>2</sup>

On the death of king Bahádur in A.D. 1536, the nobles of Gujarát invited his sister's son Muhammad Sháh Asiri to succeed him. Muhammad Shah died shortly after his accession, and the nobles conferred the crown on Mahmúd Khán, son of Latíf Khán, brother of Bahádur Sháh, and he ascended the throne in A.D. 1536, when only eleven years of age. The government of the country was carried on by Darya Khán and Imád-ul-Mulk, who kept the king under

A detailed account of the death of Sultán Bahádur is given in the Appendix, *Mirát-i-Sikandari* Persian Text, 233. Compare *Farishtah*, II, 427.

strict surveillance. Darya Khán resolved to overthrow Imád-ul-Mulk and acquire supreme power. With this object, he obtained an order from the king, whom, on the pretence of a hunting expedition, he removed from Ahmedábád, directing Imád-ul-Mulk to retire to his estates in Jháláváda. Six months later, taking the Sultán with him, Darya Khán led an army into Jháláváda, and defeating Imád-ul-Mulk in a battle at Pátri, fifty two miles west of Ahmedábád, pursued him to Burhánpur, and there defeated Imád-ul-Mulk's ally the ruler of Khándesh and forced Imád-ul-Mulk to fly to Málwa.<sup>1</sup> After this success Darya Khán became absorbed in pleasure, and resigned the management of the kingdom to Alam Khán Lodhi. The king, dissembling his dissatisfaction at the way he was treated, pretended to take no interest in affairs of state. Alam Khán Lodhi, seeing the carelessness of Darya Khán, began to entertain ambitious designs, and retiring to his estate of Dhandhúka invited the king to join him. Mahmúd Sháh, believing him to be in earnest, contrived to escape from surveillance and joined Alam Khán. On discovering the king's flight, Darya Khán raised to the throne a descendant of Ahmed Sháh by the title of Muzaffar Sháh, and striking camp in his name set out with an army towards Dhandhúka. Alam Khán and the king met him at Dhúr in Dholka, and a battle was fought in which Mahmúd and Alam Khán were defeated. The king fled to Ránpur, and thence to Páliád, while Alam Khán fled to Sádra. Darya Khán occupied Dhandhúka; but his men, dissatisfied at being placed in opposition to the king, rapidly deserted, some joining Alam Khan and some Mahmúd Sháh. Soon after the king joined Alam Khan and marched on Ahmedábád, whither Darya Khán had preceded them. The citizens closed the gates against Darya Khán, but he forced an entry by way of the Burhánpur wicket. Hearing of the king's approach Darya Khán fled to Mubárah Sháh at Burhánpur, leaving his family and treasure in the fortress of Chámpáner.

The king entered Ahmedábád, and soon after captured Chámpáner. Alam Khán now obtained the recall of Imád-ul-Mulk, who received a grant of Broach and the port of Surat. Shortly afterwards Mahmúd Sháh began to show favour to men of low degree, especially to one Charji, a birdcatcher, whom he ennobled by the title of Muháfiz Khán. Charji counselled Mahmúd to put to death Sultán Alá-ud-dín Lodhi and Shujáát Khán, two of the principal nobles; and the king, without consulting his ministers, caused these men to be executed. The nobles joining together besieged Mahmúd Sháh in his palace, and demanded that Muháfiz Khán should be surrendered to them, but the king refused to give him up. The nobles then demanded an audience, and this the king granted, Muháfiz Khán, though warned of his danger, being foolishly present. On entering the royal presence Alam Khán signalled to his followers to slay Muháfiz, and he was killed in spite of the king's remonstrances. Mahmúd then attempted to kill himself, but was prevented and placed under guard, and the chief nobles took it in turn to watch him. Strife soon arose between Alam Khán and Mujáhid

## Chapter II.

Ahmedábád  
Kings.

A. D. 1103-1373.

Mahmúd II.  
1536-1554.Escapes from  
Control.Tooze Evil  
Favourites.<sup>1</sup> Mirát-i-Ikandari, Persian Text, 292.

## Chapter II.

Ahmedábád  
Kings,  
A.D. 1503-1573.

Mahmūd II  
1536-1554.  
Quarrels among  
the Nobles.

Disturbance  
1545.

Death of  
Mahmūd,  
1554.

Khán and his brother, and the two latter nobles contrived the king's escape and sacked the houses of Alam Khán and his followers. Alam Khán escaped to Pethápúr in the Mahi Kántha. He then joined Darya Khán, whom he called from the Dakhan, and obtained help in money from Imád-ul-Mulk of Surat and from Alp Khan of Dholka. Imád-ul-Mulk wrote to the Sultán a king forgiveness for the rebels. But before the Sultán, who was mercifully disposed, could grant them pardon, Alam Khan and Darya Khan again committed themselves by acts of open revolt. The Sultán displeased with the part Imád-ul-Mulk had taken in the rising summoned him to Chāmpápur where, with the Sultán's connivance, his camp was given over to pillage. The Sultán disclaimed all knowledge of this attack and at Imád-ul-Mulk's request allowed him to go on pilgrimage to Makkah. In A.D. 1545 as he was preparing to start for Makkah Imád-ul-Mulk was killed. He was succeeded in Surat by Khudáwánd Khán Rūmí, who had held Surat under him, and who, in spite of Portuguese opposition and intrigue, had five years before completed the building of Surat Castle.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile Alam Khán and Darya Khán were driven from Gujarát and forced to take shelter with the sovereign of Dehli. The king now appointed as his own minister Afzal Khán, the minister of the late Bahádur Shah, and though Afzal Khán lived in retirement, his counsel was taken on measures of importance. Other great nobles were Sayad Mulárák, Fateh Khán Baloch, and Abdul Karím Khán, who received the title of Itimád Khán, and was so entirely in the Sultán's confidence that he was admitted to the harem. Mahmūd now consulted Asif Khán as to the propriety of conquering Málwa. Asif Khán advised him rather to deprive the Rajput chiefs and proprietors of their *wántas* or hereditary lands. The attempt to follow this advice stirred to resistance the chief men of Ídar, Sirohi, Dúngarpur, Bánsvāda, Lúná-vāda, Rájpipla, Dohad, and the banks of the Mahi. The king strengthened his line of outposts, establishing one at Sirohi and another at Ídar, besides fresh posts in other places. At the same time he began to persecute the Hindus, allowing them to be killed on the slightest pretence, branding Rájputs and Kolis, forcing them to wear a red rag on the right sleeve, forbidding them to ride in Ahmedábád, and punishing the celebration of Holi and Diwáli. In A.D. 1551 Burhán, a servant of the king's, conceived the idea of killing him and reigning in his stead. He accordingly gave his master an intoxicating drug, and when he was overcome with sleep stabbed him to the heart. Then summoning the principal nobles in the king's name, he put to death Asaf Khan the prime minister and twelve others, and endeavoured to have himself accepted as Sultán. No one aided him; even his

<sup>1</sup> A poet of the time, Mulla Muhammad of Astarábád, enshrined the date H. 947 (A.D. 1540) in the words:

SADD BUWAD RAR SINAH-O-JANAI FIRANGI'IN BINAI.  
Māy this fabric press like a pillar on the breast  
and the life of the Frank.

Faustah, II. 147. The letter values that make 947 are: S=60, d=4, b=2, w=6, d=4, b=2, i=200, s=60, y=10, n=50, h=5, r=6, j=3, a=1, n=60, f=80, i=200, n=50, y=20, y=10, a=1, y=10, n=50, b=2, n=60, a=J, y=10. Total 947.

<sup>2</sup> Murát-i-Bakandari, Persian Text, 326-27.

accomplices deserted him. Imád-ul-Mulk Rumi,<sup>1</sup> Ulugh Khán, and others joined to oppose him, and when marching against them he was cut down by Shírwán Khán. Mahmúd's persecutions had raised such bitter hate among the Hindus, that they regarded Burhán as a saviour, and after Burhán's death are said to have made a stone image of him and worshipped it.<sup>2</sup> Mahmúd moved his capital from Ahmedábád to Mehmedábád, eighteen miles south of Ahmedábád where he built a palace and enclosed a deer park. At each corner of the park he raised a palace the stone walls and ceilings of which were ornamented with beautiful and precious gold traceries and arabesques.<sup>3</sup> His strict regard for public morals led him to forbid Muhammadan women visiting saints' tombs as the practice gave rise to irregularities. He died at the age of twenty-eight after a reign of eighteen years.

On the death of Burhán, the nobles elected as sovereign a descendant of the stock of Ahmed Shah of the name of Ahmed Khán, and proclaimed him king by the title of Ahmed Sháh II. At the same time they agreed that, as the king was young, Ítmád Khán should carry on the government and they further divided the country among themselves, each one undertaking to protect the frontiers and preserve the public peace. Mubárák Sháh of Khándesh, considering this a good opportunity, preferred a claim to the crown and marched to the frontier.<sup>4</sup> An army led by the chief Gujarát nobles and accompanied by the young king met the invaders at the village of Rampur Kotria in Broach, the Gujarát army encamping on the north bank and the Khándesh army on the south bank of the Nerbada. Násir-ul-Mulk, one of the Gujarát nobles, taking certain of his friends into his confidence, determined to remain neutral till the battle was over and then to fall on the exhausted troops and possess himself of both kingdoms. Sayad Mubárák, a descendant of the saint Sháhi Alam, who led the van of the Gujarát army, becoming aware of Násir-ul-Mulk's design opened communications with Mubárák Sháh of Khándesh and induced him to withdraw.<sup>5</sup> Násir-ul-Mulk, who still aspired to supreme power, gaining several nobles to his side near Baroda, surprised and defeated the forces of Ítmád Khán and Sayad Mubárák. The Sayad withdrew to his estate of Kapadvanj and he was joined by Ítmád Khán, while Násir-ul-Mulk, taking Sultán Ahmed with him to Ahmedábád, assumed the entire government of the country. After a short time he assembled an army and marched against Sayad Mubárák and Ítmád Khán encamping at Kamand, the village now called Od Kámod, ten miles north-east of Ahmedábád at the head of 50,000 horse. Ítmád feared to attack so

**Chapter II.****Ahmedábád  
Kings.**

A.D. 1403 - 1573.

**Mahmúd II.**  
1536-1554.**Ahmed II.**  
1554-1561.  
**Ítmád Khán**  
Regent.

<sup>1</sup> This Imad-ul-Mulk is different from the Imad-ul-Mulk mentioned above (page 258) as receiving a grant of Broach and Surat. The latter had before this retired to Surat, and was killed there in A.D. 1545. (Hind, 266.) Imad-ul-Mulk II. who attacked Burhán, was originally called Mahk Arslán (Bird, 272). He is also called the leader of the Turks and Rámi. This Imad-ul-Mulk Rumi, who was the father of Changíz Khán, was ultimately killed in A.D. 1560 at Surat by his own son-in-law Khudrwand or Ikhtiyar Khán.

<sup>2</sup> Mirát-i-Sikandari, Persian Text, 326-27.

<sup>3</sup> This seems to be the palace referred to in the Tabak't-i-Akbari (Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, V. 369) : After his second settlement of Gujarát (A.D. 1573, II. 961) Akbar left Ahmedábád for Mehmedábád and rested in the lofty and fine palace of Sultán Mahmúd of Gujarát.

<sup>4</sup> Mirát-i-Sikandari, Persian Text, 332.

**Chapter II.**  
**Ahmedábád**  
**Kings,**  
**A.D. 1403-1573.**  
**Ahmed II.**  
**1554-1561.**

**Partition of**  
**the Province.**

strong a force. But Sayad Mubarak, who knew of the defection of Ulugh Khán and Imád-ul-Mulk, surprised Násir-ul-Mulk's army at night. During the confusion Ulugh Khán and Imád-ul-Mulk, disgusted with the assumption of Násir-ul-Mulk, deserted him and, bringing the young Sultán with them joined Sayad Mubarak and Ítimád Khán. Násir-ul-Mulk was forced to fly, and after a short time died in the mountains of Pál.<sup>1</sup> Ikhtiyár-ul-Mulk, Fateh Khán Balúch, and Hasan Khán Dakhani now set up another king, a descendant of Ahmed, named Sháhu. A battle was fought near Mehmúdábád in which Shíbu and his supporters were defeated and Hasan Khán Dakhani was slain. Before the battle Fateh Khán Balúch had been induced to forsake Sháhu, and Ikhtiyár-ul-Mulk, taking Sháhu with him, fled. The nobles now divided Gujarat into the following shares :

Ahmed Sháh for Private Purse ...	{ Ahmedábád and the Da-krohi sub-division.
Ítimád Khán and Party ...	{ Kadi, Jhalávada, Patlád, Nadiad, Bhil, Radhanpur, Patu, Múnjpur, Godhra, and Sorath.
Sayad Mubarak and Party ...	{ Patan and Cambay, with its Chorasi or 84 villages, Dholka, Gogha, and Dhandhuka Chámpáner, Samal, Bálasiar, and Kapadvanj.
Imád-ul-Mulk Rúmi and Party ...	{ Broach, Baroda, and Surat as far as the Sultanpur-Nandurbar frontier.
Nobles under Ítimád Khán ..	Modása and surrounding districts

Of these shares Ítimád Khán bestowed the country of Sorath on Tátár Khan Ghori; the districts of Radhanpur, Sami, and Múnjpur on Fateh Khán Baluch; Nadiad on Malik-ush-Shark, and some of the dependencies of Jhalávada on Alaf Khán Habshi. Sayad Mubarak conferred the territory of Patan on Músa Khán and Sher Khán Fuládi, Imád-ul-Mulk Rúmi bestowed the district of Baroda on Alaf Khán Habshi and the port of Surat on his wife's brother Khudáwand Khán Rúmi.

**Dissensions.**

About this time (A.D. 1552) Alam Khán returned, and, through the influence of Sayad Mubarak, was allowed to remain. The Sayad gave him and Azam Humáyun Chámpáner, and Ítimád Khán gave Godhra to Alp Khán Khatri, a follower of Alam Khán. Alam Khán and Ítimád Khán shortly after expelled Aláf Khán Habshi from Jhalávada, and he fled to Imád-ul-Mulk Rúmi at Broach, and at his intercession Alaf Khán received the Bhil district. Alam Khán's success tempted him to try and get rid of Ítimád Khán and govern in his stead. Ítimád Khán, discovering his intention, made him leave the city and live in his own house in the Asáwal suburb. Alam Khán now made overtures to Imád-ul-Mulk Rúmi and became very friendly with him. One day Alam Khán proposed to get rid of Ítimád Khán;

<sup>1</sup> For Pál compare note 2 page 253.

but seeing that Imád-ul-Mulk Rûmî did not take to his proposal, he next endeavoured to ruin Sayad Mubárak. But when the Gujarát army marched against him the Sayad made peace, and Alam Khán's intrigues being apparent, he was attacked and compelled to fly. He now went to Berúr and sought aid of Mubárak Sháh, who marched an army towards the Gujarát frontier. The Gujarát nobles, taking Ahmed Shah with them, advanced to oppose him, and he retired. Alam Khán now repaired to Sher Khán Fauládi at Pátan, and they together seized Ítimád Khán's district of Káli, but, through the exertions of Ikhtiyár-ul-Mulk, Alam Khán was slain and Sher Khán forced to retire to Pátan. Imád-ul-Mulk Rûmî and Ítimád Khán now carried on the government, but dissension springing up between them, Ítimád Khán fled to Mubárak Shah in Khandesh, and induced him to lead an army against Gujarát. The nobles, fearing this combination, made peaceful overtures and it was eventually settled that the lands of Sultánpur and Nandurbár should be given to Mubárak Sháh, and that Imád Khán should be restored to his former position. Since this date the districts of Sultánpur and Nandurbár have been permanently severed from Gujarát and have formed a part of Khándesh, to which province they now belong. Ahmed Sháh, finding himself more strictly guarded than ever, contrived to flee to Sayad Mubárak at Sayadpur, who, though vexed at his coming, would not refuse him shelter. At this time Haji Khán, a Delhi noble, on his way from Chitor to help Humayún, passed through Gujarát with a well equipped force, and arrived at Pátan. The Gujarát nobles, especially Ítimád Khán and Imád-ul-Mulk Rûmî, conceiving that he came at the Sayad's invitation, and that the flight of the king was part of the plot, determined to crush the Sayad ere Haji Khan could join him, and on their march to Sayadpur meeting Sayad Mubárak near Mohmúdábád defeated him. The Sayad fell and was buried on the field of battle. His estates were resumed, though eventually Dholka was restored to his son Sayad Mírán.

The army and the two protectors returned to Ahmedábád. Dissensions again sprang up between them, and Imád-ul-Mulk Rûmî summoned to his aid his son Changíz Khán from Broach, while Ítimád Khán sent for Tátár Khán G'ori from Sorath. Tátár Khán arrived first and Imád Khán further strengthened by contingents from the Fauladis of Patan and Fatch Khan Balúch from Rádhampur ordered Imád-ul-Mulk Rûmî to return to his estate; and he, seeing it would be useless for him to contend against so overwhelming a force, retired to his possessions at Broach. Shortly after, having marched against Surat at the request of the inhabitants who were wearied of the tyranny of Khudáwand Khán, he was decoyed by that chief to an entertainment and was there assassinated. His son Changíz Khán marched against Surat to take vengeance for his father's death, and, finding the fortress too strong for him, summoned to his aid the Portuguese, to whom, as the price of their assistance, he surrendered the districts of Daman and Sanján.<sup>1</sup> The Portuguese, bringing a strong

**Chapter II.****Ahmedábád  
Kings.**

A.D. 1403 - 1573.

**Ahmed II.  
1554-1561.**Sultánpur and  
Nandurbár  
handed to  
Khándesh,  
1560.Defeat and  
Death of Sayad  
Mubárak.Death of Imád-  
ul Mulk Rûmî.Daman District  
ceded to the  
Portuguese,  
1560.

<sup>1</sup> The fort of Daman was taken by the Portuguese in A.D. 1530, and, according to Portuguese accounts (Faria y Souza in Kerr's Voyages, VI. 413) the country round was

**Chapter II.**  
**Ahmedábád**  
**Kings,**  
**A.D. 1403-1573.**

**Ahmed II**  
**1554-1561.**

**Assassinated,**  
**1560.**

**Muzaffar III.**  
**1561-1572.**  
**A Minor.**

fleet up the Tápti, cut off the supplies, and Khudáwánd Khán was forced to surrender, and was slain by Changíz Khán in revenge for his father's death. Shortly afterwards Changíz Khan quarrelled with Jhujhár Khán Habsli of Baroda because the Habsli had installed his nephew, son of Afif Khán Habsli, without consulting Changíz. Jhujhár and his nephew being defeated fled to Ítimád Khán, who allotted them a grant of land. At this time Fatch Khan Balúch, the proprietor of Radhanpur and Sami, was Ítimád Khán's chief supporter, and with his assistance Ítimád Khán marched to besiege Changíz Khán in Broach. Tátár Khan Ghori and other nobles, fearing lest Ítimád Khán should become too powerful, endeavoured to make peace.\* As their efforts failed, Tátár Khán wrote to the Fauladis to attack Fatch Khán Balúch. They did so, and Fatch Khán, after being defeated near Radhanpur, took refuge in the fort of Fatchkot or Dhúlkot, which is close to the town. Ítimád Khán raised the siege of Broach and came to Ahmedábád, where he busied himself in checking the intrigues of king Ahmed, who was doing all in his power to become independent. Finally, in A.D. 1560-61, at the instigation of Wajih-ul-Mulk and Razí-ul-Mulk Ítimád Khán caused Ahmed II. to be assassinated. The murder took place in the house of Wajih-ul-Mull. The Sultán's body was thrown on the sands of the Sabarmati and the story circulated that the Sultán had been killed by robbers. Ahmed's nominal reign had lasted about eight years.

Ítimád Khán then raised to the throne a youth, whom he styled Muzaffar Sháh III., and who, he asserted, was a posthumous son of Mahmúd Sháh,<sup>1</sup> and then marched towards Pátan to take his revenge on the Fauladis for their attack on Fatch Khán Balúch. The nobles unwilling to crush the Fauladis, fearing lest their turn might come next, entered into secret correspondence with them, and withdrew when battle was joined. The nobles were now independent in their respective *jágirs*, in which according to the *Talakát-i-Aklari* they allowed no interference though still owing nominal allegiance to the throne.<sup>2</sup> Ítimád Khan, forced to return unsuccessful to Ahmedabád, with a view of again attacking the Fauladis, summoned Tátár Khán Ghori from Jámagadh. The nobles remained aloof, and even Tátár

annexed by them in 1558. According to a statement in Bird's History, 128, the districts surrendered by Changíz Khan contained 700 towns (villages) yielding a yearly revenue of £150,000 (Rs. 43,00,000). Surjan, since known as St. John's Head (north latitude 20° 13', east longitude 72° 47'), between Daman and Bassen, seems to be one of the two Sindans, the other being in Kachh, mentioned by the ninth to twelfth century Arab geographers. According to Idrisi (Jaubert's Edition, 172) the mainland Sindán was a great town with a large import and export trade and well peopled with rich warlike and industrious inhabitants. Idrisi's (Elliot, I, 85) notice of an island of the same name to the east is perhaps a confused reference to the Kachh Sindán which is generally supposed to be the Sindan of the Arab geographers. In A.D. 842, Sindán then a city of some size, is mentioned by Al-Biláduri (Reinaud's Fragments, 216-217) as having been taken by a Musalmán slave Fazl son of Máhn. This Fazl is related to have sent an elephant from Sindán to the Khaliffah Al Maamún the Abbási (A.D. 813-833) and to have built an Assembly Mosque at Sindán. (Al-Biláduri in Elliot, I, 129.)

<sup>1</sup> According to Abul Fazl (Akbarnāma, III. 404; Elliot, V. 730) Muzaffar was a slave-born boy of the name of Nathu.

<sup>2</sup> *Tabakat-i-Akbari* in Elliot's India, V. 339 note 2.

Khán Ghori made excuses, which so exasperated Ítimád Khán that he sought to slay him. Tátár Khán escaped to Sorath, and there openly sided with the Fauládis. Sayad Mirán also left Ahmedábád for his estate at Dholka, and joining Tátár Khán at Ránpur they both went over to the Fauládis at Pátan. Meanwhile Ítimád Khán, again collecting an army, marched once more towards Pátan. He was met by the Fauládis near the village of Jhotáná, about thirty miles south of Pátan, where he was defeated and compelled to return to Ahmedábád. Sayad Mirán now intervened and made peace. Ítimád Khán still thirsting for revenge on the Fauládis, invited Changíz Khán, son of Imád-ul-Mulk Rímul, to the capital, and by courteous treatment induced him to join in another expedition against the Fauládis. Like the other nobles Changíz Khán was lukewarm; and as Músa Khán Fauládi died while Ítimád Khán was marching on Pátan, Changíz Khán assigned this as a reason for not proceeding further, averring that it was not fit to war with people in misfortune. Ítimád Khán perforce returned to Ahmedábád.

Though Ítimád Khán had disgusted the nobles, both by causing the assassination of Ahmed Sháh and by his enmity with the Fauládis, as he had charge of Muzaffar Sháh and possession of the capital, the government of the country was in his hands. At this time the Mirzís,<sup>1</sup> who were the sons of Sultán Hussán of Khurásán, quarrelling with Jalál ul din Muhammad Akbar, entered Gujráat, and joined Changíz Khán. Changíz Khán now proposed to Sher Khán Fauládi that they should expel Ítimád Khán and divide Gujarat between them, the capital and the country south of the Sábarmati falling to the share of Changíz Khán, and that to the north to Sher Khán Fauládi. Sher Khán agreed, and Changíz Khán joining him they marched on Ahmedábád. Sayad Mirán induced Sher Khán to stay in Kadi. But Changíz Khán refused to listen to him, and a battle was fought between him, Ítimád Khán, and the Sayad on the right bank of the Khari about eight miles south of Ahmedábád. Ítimád Khán was defeated, and fled with the king to Modása, while Changíz Khán took possession of the capital. Sher Khán Fauládi now advanced to the Sábarmati, and, after dividing the province as had been agreed, Sher Khán retired to Kadi. Ítimád Khán entreated Mirán Muhammad Sháh, king of Khándesh, to march to his aid, and Changíz Khán invited Ítimád Khán to return. He came to Mehmudábád, where hearing that Muhammad Sháh had sustained a defeat and retired to his own country, he took Muzaffar Sháh with him and returned through Modása to Dungarpur. Changíz Khán remained in Ahmedábád, and Sher Khán withdrew to Kadi. After this success all the chief nobles of Gujarat, including the Habshis, joined Changíz Khán, who was now at the zenith of his power, and began to think of subduing Sher Khán Fauládi,

## Chapter II.

### Ahmedábád Kings.

A.D. 1403 - 1573.

### Muzaffar III. 1561 - 1572.

Ítimád Khán and the Fauládis.

The Mirzís,  
1571.

They Defert  
Ítimád Khán.

<sup>1</sup> These Mirzís were the great grandsons of a Muhammad Sultán Mirza, the ruler of Khurásán, who, on being driven out of his dominions, sought refuge in India. This prince and his family on the ground of their common descent from Taimur, were entertained first by Babur (A.D. 1526 - 1531), and afterwards by Humayún (A.D. 1531 - 1556). Before this quarrel Akbar had treated the Mirzís with great honour. Elliot's History, VI. 122.

**Chapter II**  
**Ahmedabad**  
**Kings,**

A.D. 1403-1573

**Muzaffar III.**  
**1561-1572.**

Death  
of Changiz  
Khan

who on his part was anxious and fearful. At this time Bijli Khán a Habshi eunuch who was offended with Changiz Khán, because he had resumed the grant of Cambay, persuaded Alif Khán and Jhujhár Khan Habshi that Changiz Khán had determined to kill them. The Habshi Kháns, resolving to be beforehand, invited Changiz Khán, with whom they were intimate, to play a game of *chaugán* or polo.<sup>1</sup> Changiz agreed and when near the Farhat-ul-Mulk mosque, between the Bhadar and the Three Gates, Alif Khán, after making Jhujhár Khán a signal, attracted Changiz Khán's notice to the horse on which he was riding saying it was the best of the last batch imported from the Persian Gulf. As Changiz Khan turned to look at the horse, Jhujhár Khán cut him down. The Habshis now plundered Changiz Khan's house, while the Mírzá's, mounting, went south and took possession of Broach, Baroda, and Chámpner. Sher Khan advanced from Kadi, and ordered the Habshis to hand him over Ahmedabad. While treating with him the Habshis secretly summoned Ítimád Khán, who, returning with Muzaffar Shah, entered the city. It was arranged that Ítimád Khán should take the place of Changiz Khán, and that the division of Gujarat between Changiz Khán and Sher Khán should be maintained. Ítimád Khán found the Habshis so domineering that he withdrew from public affairs. Afterwards Alaf Khan and Jhujhár Khan, quarrelling over the division of Changiz Khán's property, Alaf Khan left Ahmedabad and joined Sher Khan, who, advancing from Kadi, laid siege to Ahmedabad. Ítimád Khán now sought aid from the Mírzá's, and Mírza Ibrahim Husam marched from Broach and harassed Sher Khán's army with his Mughal archers.

Ítimád Khán  
and the  
Emperor Akbar,  
1572

At the same time Ítimád Khan turned for help to the emperor Akbar, who, glad of any pretext for driving the Mírzá's from their place of refuge in Gujarat, was not slow in availing himself of Ítimád Khan's proposal. Early in July 1572 he started for Ahmedabad, and with his arrival in the province, the history of Gujarat as a separate kingdom comes to an end.

<sup>1</sup> The modern game of polo. Lane in his translation of the *Thousand and One Nights* (1. 76 1883 Edition) calls it the golf-stick but the nature of the game described there does not in any way differ from polo. *Chaugán* is the Persian and *As-sudjan-wal-ka-ah* the Arabic name for the game.

## CHAPTER III.

## MUGHAL VICEROYS.

A D 1573-1758.

To the nobles thus fighting among themselves, news was brought that the emperor Akbar was at Dīsa. Ibrāhīm Husain Mīrza returned to Broach and the army of the Fāulādīs dispersed. From Dīsa the imperial troops advanced to Pātan and thence to Jhotāna thirty miles south of Pātan. Sultān Muzaffar, who had separated from the Fāulādīs, fell into the hands of the emperor, who granted him his life but placed him under charge of one of his nobles named Karam All.<sup>1</sup> When the imperial army reached Kadi, Itimād Khān, Ikhtiyār Khān, Alaf Khān and Jhujhār Khān met Akbar and Sayad Hāmid also was honoured with an audience at Hajipur.<sup>2</sup> The emperor imprisoned Alaf Khān and Jhujhār Khān Habsht and encouraged the other Gujarāt nobles. Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk now fled to Lunāvada, and the emperor, fearing that others of the Gujarāt nobles might follow his example, sent Itimād Khān to Cambay and placed him under the charge of Shahbāz Khān Kambo.<sup>3</sup> From Ahmedābād Akbar advanced to Cambay. At this time Ibrāhīm Mīrza held Baroda, Muhammad Husain Mīrza held Surat, and Shah Mīrza held Champriner. On leaving Cambay to expel the Mīrzas, Akbar appointed Mīrza Āzīz Kokaltash his first viceroy of Gujarāt. At Baroda Akbar heard that Ibrāhīm Mīrza had treacherously killed Rustam Khān Rūmī, who was Changiz Khān's governor of Broach. The emperor recalled the detachment he had sent against Surat, and overtaking the Mīrza at Sarnal or Thīra on the right bank of the Mahi about twenty-three miles north-east of Nadiid, after a bloody conflict routed him. The Mīrza fled by Ahmednagar to Sirohi, and Akbar rejoined his camp at Baroda. The emperor now sent a force under Shāh Kul Khān to invest the fort of Sura', and following in person pitched his camp at Gopi Talao, a suburb of that city. After an obstinate defence of one month and seventeen days, the garrison under Hamzabān, a slave of Humayūn's who had joined the Mīrzas, surrendered. Hamzabān was in treaty with the Portuguese. Under his invitation a large party of Portuguese came to

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Akbar  
Emperor,  
1573-1605

<sup>1</sup> The emperor Akbar took Muzaffar Shāh with him to Agra, and settled on him the district of Srirangpur and Ujjain in Malwa with a revenue of Rs 20,00,000 (50 *lakh* of *tank*) (Elliot, V. 353). When Mun'im Khān Khān Khānān was going to Bengal the emperor made Muzaffar over to him. Mun'im Khān gave his daughter Shāhzādah Khānām in marriage to Muzaffar, but shortly afterwards having reason to suspect him imprisoned him, whence Muzaffar finding an opportunity fled to Gujarāt in A.D. 1591 (H. 989) according to Farishta (II. 460), 1583 according to the *Virat-i-Sikandari*.

<sup>2</sup> Both the *Tabakāt-i-Akbari* (Elliot, V. 342) and *Farishta* (I. 491) name four other nobles Mir Abu Turāb, Sayad Ahmed Bhukhārī, Malik Ashraf, and Wajih-ul-Mulk. The Sayad Ahmed of these two writers is a misprint for the Sayad Hāmid of the text.

<sup>3</sup> *Virat-i-Sikandari*, 415; *Tabakāt-i-Akbari* in Elliot, V. 343.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Akbar  
Emperor,  
1573-1605.**  
Akbar captures  
Broach and  
Surat, and  
advances to  
Ahmedabad,  
1573.

Surat during the siege, but seeing the strength of the imperial army, represented themselves as ambassadors and besought the honour of an interview<sup>1</sup>. While at Surat the emperor received from Bihār or Vihārjī the Rājā of Baglāna, Sharfuddīn Husain Mīrza whom the Rājā had captured.<sup>2</sup> After the capture of Surat, the emperor ordered the great Sulaimāni cannon which had been brought by the Turks with the view of destroying the Portuguese forts and left by them in Surat, to be taken to Agra. Surat was placed in the charge of Kāfī Khān. The emperor now advanced to Ahmedābād, where the mother of Changīz Khān came and demanded justice on Jhujhār Khān for having wantonly slain her son. As her complaint was just, the emperor ordered Jhujhār Khān to be thrown under the feet of an elephant. Muhammad Khān, son of Sher Khān Faulādī, who had fled to the Idar hills, now returned and took the city of Pātan, besieging the imperial governor, Sayad Ahmed Khān Bārha, in the citadel. At this time Mīrza Muhammad Husain was at Rānpūr near Dhundhūka. When Sher Khān Faulādī, who had taken refuge in Sorath, heard of Muhammad Khān's return to Pātan, he met Mīrza Muhammad Husain, and uniting their forces they joined Muhammad Khān at Pātan. The viceroy Mīrza Āziz Kokaltāsh with other nobles marched against them, and after a hard-fought battle, in which several of the imperial nobles were slain, Mīrza Āziz Kokaltāsh was victorious. Sher Khān again took refuge in Sorath, and his son fled for safety to the Idar hills, while the Mīrza withdrew to the Khāndesh frontier. As the conquest of Gujarāt was completed, Akbar returned to Agra.

From A.D. 1573, the date of its annexation as a province of the empire, to A.D. 1758, the year of the final capture of Ahmedābād by the Marāthās, Gujarāt remained under the government of officers appointed by the court of Delhi. Like the rule of the Ahmedābād kings, this term of 184 years falls into two periods: the first of 124 years from A.D. 1573 to the death of Aurangzib in A.D. 1707, a time on the whole of public order and strong government; the second from A.D. 1707 to A.D. 1758, fifty-one years of declining power and growing disorder.

**SECTION I.—A.D. 1573-1707.**

**Mirza Āziz  
First Viceroy,  
1573-1575.**

Before leaving Gujarāt Akbar placed the charge of the province in the hands of Mīrza Āziz Kokaltāsh.<sup>3</sup> At the same time the emperor rewarded his supporters by grants of land, assigning Ahmedābād with Ptlād and several other districts to the viceroy Mīrza Āziz, Pātan to the Khān-i-Kalān Mīr Muhammad Khān, and Baroda to Nawāb Aurang Khān. Broach was given to Kutb-ud-dīn Muhammad, and Dholka Khānpur and Sami were confirmed to Sayad Hāmūd and Sayad Mahmūd Bukhārī. As soon as the emperor was gone Ikhtiyār-ul-

<sup>1</sup> These details of the Surat expedition are taken from the *Tabakat-i-Akbari* in Elliot, V. 313-346 and Abūl Fazl's *Akbar-namah* in Elliot, VI. 42.

<sup>2</sup> The emperor Jehāngir in his *Diary* (*Tuzuk-i-Jehāngiri*, Persian Text, Sir Sayad Ahmed's Edition, page 196) says that Bihārjī or Vihārjī was the hereditary title of the chiefs of Baglān. The personal name of the Baglān Bihārjī of his time was Fartāp.

<sup>3</sup> According to the *Ain-i-Akbari* (Blochmann, I. 325) the province of Gujarāt over which the Kokaltash was placed did not pass further south than the river Mahi.

Mulk and Muhammad Khán, son of Sher Khán, who had taken shelter in the Idar hills, issued forth, and the viceroy marched to Ahmednagar to hold them in check. Mírza Muhammad Husain advancing rapidly from the Nandurbár frontier, took the fort of Broach, and went thence to Cambay which he found abandoned by its governor Husain Khan Karkarah, while he himself marched to Ahmednagar and Idar against Ikhtiyár-ul-Mulk. The viceroy ordered Sayad Hámíd Bukhári, Nawab Naurang Khán, and others to join Kutb-ud-dín Muhammad Khán. They went and laid siege to Cambay, but Mírza Muhammad managed to evacuate the town and join Ikhtiyár-ul-Mulk and Muhammad Khán. After several unsuccessful attempts to scatter the enemy the viceroy retired to Ahmedábad, and the rebels laid siege to the city. Kutb-ud-dín Khán, Sayad Mírán, and others of the imperial party succeeded in entering the city and joining the garrison. After the siege had lasted two months Akbar, making his famous 600 mile (100 kos) march in nine days from Agra, arrived before Ahmedábad, and, at once engaging the enemy, totally defeated them with the loss of two of their leaders Mírza Muhammad Husain and Ikhtiyár-ul-Mulk.

On the day before the battle Akbar consulting a Hazíra Afghan versed in drawing omens from sheep's shoulder-blades, was told that victory was certain, but that it would be won at the cost of the life of one of his nobles. Seif Khan, brother of Zem Khán Koka, coming in prayed that he should be chosen to receive the crown of martyrdom. At the end of the day the only leading noble that was killed was Seif Khan<sup>1</sup>.

After only eleven days' stay, Akbar again entrusting the government of Gujarat to Mírza Aziz Koka, returned to Agra. Mírza Aziz Koka did not long continue viceroy. In A.D. 1575, in consequence of some dispute with the emperor, he retired into private life. On his resignation Akbar conferred the post of viceroy on Mírza Khán, son of Behráin Khan, who afterwards rose to the high rank of Khán Khánán or chief of the nobles. As this was Mírza Khán's first service, and as he was still a youth, he was ordered to follow the advice of the deputy viceroy, Wázir Khán, in whose hands the administration of the province remained during the two following years. Soon after the insurrection of 1573 was suppressed the emperor sent Raja Todar Mal to make a survey settlement of the province. In A.D. 1575 after the survey was completed Wajih-ul-Mulk Gujaráti was appointed *diwán* or minister. Some historians say that in A.D. 1576 Wázir Khán relieved Mírza Aziz Koka as viceroy, but according to the Mírát-i-

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Akbar  
Emperor,  
1573-1605.  
Mírza Áziz  
First Viceroy,  
1573-1575.

Insurrection  
Quelled by  
Akbar,  
1573.

Mírza Khán  
Second Viceroy,  
1575-1577.

Survey by Rája  
Todar Mal.

<sup>1</sup> Tuzukí Jehángíri or Jehangír's Memoirs, Pers. Text, Fayad Ahmed Khán's Edition page 20. For Akbar's march compare Tabakat-i-Akbari in Elliot, V. 365 and Blochman's Ain-i-Akbari, I. 325 and note. The Mírát-i-Ahmedí (Pers. Text, 131) records these further details: When starting from his last camp Akbar began to mount his horse on the day of the battle that took place near Ahmedábad. The royal steed unable to bear the weight of the hero laden with the spirit of victory sat down. Raja Bhagwándás Kachwáh ran up to the rather embarrassed emperor and offered him his congratulations saying: 'This, your Majesty, is the surest sign of victory. There are also two further signs: the wind blows from our back and the kites and vultures accompany our host.'

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Akbar  
Emperor,  
1573-1605.  
Mírza Khán  
Second Viceroy,  
1575-1577.

Ahmedí Mirza Khán held office with Wazír Khán as his deputy. One Prágidas, a Hindu, succeeded Wajih-ul-Mulk as *diwan*. Troops were sent to reduce the Nándod and Ídar districts, and the fort of Sirohi was captured by Tarsu Khán, the military governor of Patan. Afterwards, through the intervention of Páhar Khán Jálóri, the Sirohi Rájá, at an interview with Rájá Todar Mal, presented £ 500 (Rs. 12,000) and other articles and was allowed to serve the provincial governor of Gujarát with 1500 horse.

During Wazír Khán's administration Muzaffar Husain Mirza, son of Ibrahim Husain Mirza, raised an insurrection in Gujarát. This Mirza Muzaffar was as an infant carried to the Dakhan from Surat shortly before its investment by Akbar. He lived peacefully till under the influence of an ambitious retainer Míhr Ah by name, he gathered an army of adventurers and entered Nandurbár. Wazír Khán distrusting his troops shut himself in a fortress, and wrote to Rájá Todar Mal, who was in Patan settling revenue affairs. The Mirza defeated the imperial forces in Nandurbár and failing to get possession of Cambay marched straight to Ahmedábád. On the advance of Rájá Todar Mal the Mirza fell back on Dholka. The Rájá and the Khán pursuing defeated him, and he retired to Júnágadh. The Rájá then withdrew, but the Mirza again advanced and besieged him in Ahmedábád. In an attempt to scale the city wall Míhr Ah was killed. Muzaffar Mirza withdrew to Khándesh and the insurrection came to an end.

SHAHÁB-UD-DÍN  
Third Viceroy,  
1577-1583.

In the end of A.D. 1577, as Wazír Khán's management was not successful, the post of viceroy was conferred upon Shaháb-ul-dín Ahmed Khán, the governor of Málwa. Shaháb-ul-dín's first step was to create new military posts and strengthen the old ones. At this time Fateh Khán Shírwáni, the commander of Amín Khán Ghori's army, quarrelled with his chief, and, coming to Shaháb-ul-dín, offered to capture the fort of Júnágadh. Shaháb-ul-dín entertained his proposal, and sent his nephew Mírza Khán and 4000 horse with him. When the troops crossed the Sorath frontier, they were met by envoys from Amín Khán, agreeing, in his name, to pay tribute and surrender the country, provided he were permitted to retain the fortress of Júnágadh and were allotted a sufficient grant of land. Mírza Khán rejected these proposals and continued his march against Júnágadh. Amín Khán made a vigorous resistance and applied for aid to the Jám of Navánagar. At this juncture Fateh Khán died, and Mírza Khán went and besieged Mángarúl. The Jám's minister Isá now joined Amín Khán with 4000 horse, and he, quitting Júnágadh, marched to Mángarúl.<sup>2</sup> On their approach Mírza Khán retired to the town of

Sends a Force  
against  
Júnágadh.

<sup>1</sup> Tabakat-i-Akbari in Elliot, V. 405.

<sup>2</sup> Mángarúl (north latitude 21° 8'; east longitude 70° 10'), a seaport on the south coast of Káthiaváda, about twenty miles west of Somnath. This town, which is supposed to be the Monoglossum emporium of Ptolemy (A.D. 150) (see Bird, 116), is spelt Manglár by the Muhammadan historians. Barbosa (A.D. 1511-1514), under the name of Surat-magalar, calls it a 'very good port where many ships from Málabar touch for horses, wheat, rice, cotton goods, and vegetables.' In A.D. 1531 the city was taken by the Portuguese general Sylveira with a vast booty and a great number of prisoners (Churchill's Travels III. 529). It is incidentally mentioned in the Ain-i-Akbari (A.D. 1600). In A.D. 1638 Mandelstam describes it as famous for its linen cloth, and in A.D. 1700 it is mentioned by Hamilton (New Account, I. 136) as a place of trade.

Kodinār<sup>1</sup> followed by Amīn Khān. Here a pitched battle was fought, and Mīrza Khān was defeated with the loss of his baggage. Many of his men were slain, and he himself, being wounded, escaped with difficulty to Ahmedabad. Shahab ud-dīn, who had meanwhile been giving his attention to revenue matters, and to the more correct measurement of the lands of the province, was rudely recalled from these peaceful occupations by his nephew's defeat. At the same time news was brought of the escape of the former king, Muzaffar Khān, who, eluding the vigilance of the imperial servants, appeared in Gujarāt in A.D. 1583. Muzaffar remained for some time in the Rājpipla country, and thence came to one Lūna or Lūmbha Kāthī, at the village of Khiri in the district of Sardhār in Sorath.

Before he could march against Muzaffar, Shahāb-ud-dīn was recalled, and in A.D. 1583 or 1584<sup>2</sup> Ītimād Khan (Gujarāṭi) was appointed viceroy. At this time a party of 700 or 800 Mughals, called Wazīr Khānīs, separating from Shahāb-ud-dīn, remained behind in hope of being entertained by the new viceroy. As Ītimād Khān declared that he was unable to take them into his service, they went off in a body and joined Muzaffar at Khīr, and he with them and three or four thousand fighting horse marched at once on Ahmedabad. On hearing this Ītimād Khān, leaving his son Sher Khān in Ahmedabad, followed Shahāb-ud-dīn to Kadi, and entreated him to return. Shahāb-ud-dīn at first affected indifference telling Ītimād that as he had given over charge he had no more interest in the province. After two days he consented to return if Ītimād stated in writing that the country was on the verge of being lost and that Ītimād being unable to hold it was obliged to relinquish charge to Shahab ud dīn. Ītimād Khān made the required statement and Shahāb ud-dīn returned with him.<sup>3</sup> Meanwhile Muzaffar Shah reached Ahmedabad, which was weakly defended, and in A.D. 1583, after a brief struggle, took possession of the city. While the siege of Ahmedabad was in progress Shahāb-ud-dīn and Ītimād Khān were returning, and were within a few miles of the city, when news of its capture reached them. They continued their advance, but had barely arrived at Ahmedabad when Muzaffar Shah totally defeated them taking all their baggage. Seeing the issue of the fight, most of their army went over to Muzaffar Shah, and the viceroy and Shahāb-ud-dīn with a few men fled to Pātana. Kutb-ud-dīn Muhammad Khān Atkah, one of the imperial commanders, who was on the Khāndash frontier, now advanced by forced marches to Baroda. Muzaffar marched against him with a large army, recently strengthened by the union of the army of Sayad Daulāt ruler of Cambay. Kutb-ud-dīn threw himself into Baroda, and, in spite of the treachery of his troops, defended the city for some time. At last, on Muzaffar's assurance that his life should be spared Kutb-ud-dīn repaired to the enemies' camp to treat for peace. On his arrival he was treated with respect, but next day was treacherously put to death. The fort of Broach was also at this

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Akbar  
Emperor,  
1573-1605.  
SHAHĀB-UD-DĪN  
Third Viceroy,  
1577-1583.

ĪTIMĀD KHĀN  
GUJARĀṬI  
Fourth Viceroy,  
1583-4.

Muzaffar captures  
Ahmedabad,  
1583.

<sup>1</sup> This has been rendered by Bird, 363, 'the mountain of Dīnār,' as if Koh Dīnār.

<sup>2</sup> H. 992 (1584 A.C.) according to the *Tabakat-i-Akbari* (Elliot, V. 428).

<sup>3</sup> *Murāt-i-Bakandari*, 422. Compare Blochman's *Am-i-Akbari*, I. 396.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

**Akbar**  
Emperor,  
1573-1605.  
**MIRZA ABDUR-  
RAHIM KHAN**  
(KHAN KHANAN)  
Fifth Viceroy  
1583-1587.  
Defeat  
of Muzaffar,  
1581.

time traitorously surrendered to Muzaffar by the slaves of the mother of Naurang Khān, liefe-holder of the district.

On learning of the Gujarāt insurrection the emperor, at the close of A.D. 1583, conferred the government of the province on Mīrza Ablūr-Rahīm Khān, son of Be'ram Khān, who had formerly (A.D. 1575) acted as viceroy. Muzaffar, who was still at Broach, hearing of the advance of the new viceroy with a large army, returned rapidly to Ahmedābād, and in A.D. 1584 fought a pitched battle with Mīrza Abdur-Rahīm Khān between Sirkhej and Shah Bhukan's tomb.<sup>1</sup> In this engagement Muzaffar was entirely defeated, and fled to Cambay pursued by Mīrza Ablūr-Rahīm Khān. Muzaffar now hearing that Mīrza Abdur-Rahīm Khān had been joined by Naurang Khān and other nobles with the imperial army from Mālwa, quitted Cambay, and made for his old place of shelter in Rajpīpla. Finding no rest in Rajpīpla, after fighting and losing another battle in the Rajpīpla hills, he fled first to Patan and then to Idar, and afterwards again repaired to Lūmbhā'Kāthi in Khiri. In reward for these two victories, the emperor bestowed on Mīrza Ablūr-Rahīm Khān the title of Khān Khānān. Broach now submitted, and Muzaffar sought shelter with Amīn Khān Ghori at Jūnāgadh, by whom he was allotted the waste town of Gondal as a residence. Muzaffar made one more attempt to establish his power. He advanced to Morvi, and thence made a raid on Radhanpūr and plundered that town, but was soon compelled to return to Kāthiāvada and seek safety in flight. Amīn Khān, seeing that his cause was hopeless, on pretence of arming him, induced Muzaf-

<sup>1</sup> Mirāt-i Sikandari, 426. Farishtah, I. 503, Elliot V. 431. In honour of this victory the Khān Khānān built on the site of the battle a palace and garden enclosing all with a high wall. This which he named Jitpur the City of Victory was one of the chief ornaments of Ahmedābād. In November 1613 the English merchant Warrington writes (Kerr's Voyages, IX. 127). A kos from Sirkhej is a pleasant house with a large garden all round on the banks of the river which Chon-Chin-Naw (Khan Khānān) built in honour of a great victory over the last king of Gujarāt. No person inhabits the house. Two years later (1615) another English merchant Dodsworth (Kerr, IX. 203) describes the field of Victory as strongly walled all round with brick about 1½ miles in circuit all planted with fruit trees and delightfully watered having a costly house called by a name signifying Victory in which Khan Khānān for some time resided. In 1615, the emperor Jahangir (Memoirs Persian Text, 210-213) on his way to Sirkhej visited the Khān Khānān's Bagh Fāth or Garden of Victory which he had built at a cost of two lakhs of rupees ornamenting the garden with buildings and surrounding it with a wall. The natives he notices call it Fāth-Wādī. In 1626 the English traveller Herbert (Travels, 66) writes Two miles nearer Ahmedābād than Sirkhej are the curious gardens and palace of Khān Khānān where he defeated the last of the Cambay kings and in memory built a stately house and spacious gardens the view whereof worthily attracts the traveller. Mandelslo writing in 1638 is still louder in praise of Tschetbāg the Garden of Victory. It is the largest and most beautiful garden in all India because of its splendid buildings and abundance of fine fruits. Its site is one of the pleasantest in the world on the border of a great tank having on the water side many pavilions and a high wall on the side of Ahmedābād. The lodge and the caravanserai are worthy of the prince who built them. The garden has many fruit trees oranges, citrons, pomegranates, dates, almonds, mulberries, tamarinds, mangoes, and cocoanuts so closely planted that all walking in the garden is under most pleasing shade (Mandelslo's Travels, French Ed. 111-112). When (A.D. 1750) the Mirāt-i Ahmedi was written several of the buildings and the remains of the summer house were still to be seen (Bird's History of Gujarāt, 375). A few traces of the buildings known as Fāth Bādi or Victory Garden remain (1879). (Ahmedābād Gazetteer, 292.)

far to give him about £10,000.<sup>1</sup> When he had obtained the money, on one pretext or another, Amín Khán withheld the promised aid. The Khán Khánán now marched an army into Sorath against Muzaffar. The Jám of Navánagar and Amín Khán sent their envoys to meet the viceroy, declaring that they had not sheltered Muzaffar, and that he was leading an outlaw's life, entirely unaided by them. The viceroy agreed not to molest them, on condition that they withheld aid and shelter from Muzaffar, and himself marched against him. When he reached Upleta, about fifteen miles north-west of the fortress of Júnágadh, the viceroy heard that Muzaffar had sought shelter in the Barda hills in the south-west corner of the peninsula. Advancing to the hills, he halted his main force outside of the rough country and sent skirmishing parties to examine the hills. Muzaffar had already passed through Navánagar and across Gujarát to Dánta in the Mahi Kantha. Here he was once more defeated by the Parántej garrison, and a third time took refuge in Rájpipla. The viceroy now marched on Navánagar to punish the Jám. The Jám sent in his submission, and the viceroy taking from him, by way of fine, an elephant and some valuable horses, returned to Khmedábád. He next sent a detachment against Ghazni Khán of Jhá'or who had favoured Muzaffar. Ghazni Khán submitted, and no further steps were taken against him.

In A.D. 1587 the Khán Khánán was recalled and his place supplied by Ismail Kuli Khán. Ismail's government lasted only for a few months, when he was superseded by Mirza Aziz Kokaltásh, who was a second time appointed viceroy. In A.D. 1591, Muzaffar again returned to Sorath. The viceroy, hearing that he had been joined by the Jám, the Kachh chief, and Daulat Khán Ghori the son of Amín Khán, marched with a large army towards Sorath, and, halting at Virangám, sent forward a detachment under Naurang Khán, Sayad Kásim, and other officers. Advancing as far as Morvi,<sup>2</sup> Naurang Khán entered into negotiations with the Jám, who, however, refused to accede to the demands of the imperial commander. On this the viceroy joined Naurang Khán with the bulk of his army, and after a short delay marched on Navánagar. On his way, at the village of Dhokar near Navánagar, Muzaffar and the Jám opposed him, and an obstinate battle in which the imperialists were nearly worsted, ended in Muzaffar's defeat. The son and minister of the Jám were slain, and Muzaffar, the Jám, and Daulat Khán who was wounded, fled to the fortress of Júnágadh. The viceroy now advanced and plundered Navánagar, and remaining there sent Naurang Khán, Sayad Kásim, and Gújar Khán against Júnágadh. The day the army arrived before the fortress Daulat Khán died of his wounds. Still the fortress held out, and though the viceroy joined them the siege made little progress as the imperial troops were in great straits for grain. The viceroy returned to Khmedábád, and after seven or eight months again marched against Júnágadh. The Jám, who was still a fugitive, sent envoys

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Akbar  
Emperor,  
1583-1605  
MIRZA ABDUR-  
RAHÍM KHÁN  
(KHÁN KHÁNÁNA)  
Fifth Viceroy,  
1583-1587.

ISMAÍL KULÍ  
KHÁN  
Sixth Viceroy,  
1587.

MIRZA ÁZÍZ  
KOKALTÁSH  
Seventh Viceroy,  
1588-1592.

Muzaffar seeks  
Refuge in  
Kathiavada.

Is attacked by  
the Imperial  
Army.

<sup>1</sup> Two *lákhs* of *mahmúdis*. The *mahmúdi* varied in value from about one-third to one-half of a rupee. See Introduction page 222 note 2.

<sup>2</sup> Morvi (north latitude 29° 48'; east longitude 70° 30'), a town in Káthiaváda, about twenty-one miles south of Kachh.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Akbar  
Emperor,  
1583-1605.MIRZA ĀZĪZ  
KOKALTASH  
Seventh Viceroy,  
1587.Muzaffar Flies  
to Kachh.Commits Suicide,  
1591-92.SULTĀN MURĀD  
BAKSH  
Eighth Viceroy,  
1592-1600.

and promised to aid the viceroy if his country were restored to him. The viceroy assented on condition that, during the operations against Jūnāgadh, the Jām should furnish his army with grain. The Jām agreed to provide grain, and after a siege of three months the garrison surrendered.

News was next received that Muzaffar had taken refuge at Jagat.<sup>1</sup> The viceroy at once sent Naurang Khān and others with an army in pursuit. On reaching Jagat it was found that Muzaffar had already left for a village owned by a Rajput named Sewa Wādhel. Without halting Naurang Khān started in pursuit, nearly surprising Muzaffar, who escaping on horseback with a few followers, crossed to Kachh. Sewa Wādhel covering Muzaffar's retreat was surprised before he could put to sea and fought gallantly with the imperial forces till he was slain. Naurang Khān then came to Arāmra, a village belonging to Singrām Wādhel, Rājā of Jagat, and after frustrating a scheme devised by that chief to entrap a body of the troops on board ship under pretence of pursuing Muzaffar's family, led his men back to Jūnāgadh. The viceroy, hearing in what direction Muzaffar had fled, marched to Morvi, where the Jām of Navānagar came and paid his respects. At the same time the Kachh chief who is called Khengār by Farishtah and in the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi and Bhāra in the Mirāt-i-Sikandri, sent a message that if the viceroy would refrain from invading his country and would give him his ancestral district of Morvi and supply him with a detachment of troops, he would point out where Muzaffar was concealed. The Khān-i-Azam agreed to these terms and the chief captured Muzaffar and handed him to the force sent to secure him. The detachment, strictly guarding the prisoner, were marching rapidly towards Morvi, when, on reaching Dhol, about thirty miles east of Jām-nagar, under pretence of obeying a call of nature, Muzaffar withdrew and cut his throat with a razor, so that he died. This happened in A.D. 1591-92. The viceroy sent Muzaffar's head to court, and though he was now recalled by the emperor, he delayed on pretence of wishing to humble the Portuguese. His real object was to make a pilgrimage to Makkah, and in A.D. 1592, after obtaining the necessary permission from the Portuguese, he started from Verāval.<sup>2</sup> During this viceroyalty an imperial *farman* ordered that the state share of the produce should be one-half and the other half should be left to the cultivator and further that from each half five per cent should be deducted for the village headmen. All other taxes were declared illegal, and it was provided that when lands or houses were sold, half the government demand should be realized from the seller and half from the buyer.

The emperor, who was much vexed to hear of the departure of the viceroy, appointed prince Sultān Murād Baksh in his stead with as his minister Muhammad Sādikkhān one of the great nobles. In A.D. 1593-94 Mirza Āziz Kokaltash returned from his pilgrimage and

<sup>1</sup> Jagat (north latitude 22° 15'; east longitude 69° 1'), the site of the temple of Dwārka, at the western extremity of the peninsula of Kāthiāvāda.

<sup>2</sup> Verāval (north latitude 20° 55'; east longitude 70° 21'), on the south-west coast of Kāthiāvāda. On the south-east point of Verāval bay stood the city of Dev or Muugi Pātan and within its walls the temple of Somanātha.

repaired to court, and next year on prince Murád Bakhsh going to the Dakhan, Surajsingh was appointed his deputy. In A.D. 1594-95 Bahádur, son of the late Muzaffar Sháh, excited a rebellion, but was defeated by Surajsingh. In A.D. 1600, owing to the death of Sultán Murád, Mirza Áziz Kokaltásh was a third time appointed viceroy of Gujarát, and he sent Shams-ud-dín Husain as his deputy to Ahmedábád. Further changes were made in A.D. 1602 when Mirza Áziz sent his eldest son Shádmán as deputy; his second son Khurram as governor of Junágadh; and Sayad Báyázid as minister. Khurram was afterwards relieved of the charge of Sorath and Junágadh by his brother Abdulláh.

In A.D. 1605 Núr-ud-dín Muhammad Jehángir ascended the imperial throne. Shortly after his accession the emperor published a decree remitting certain taxes, and also in cases of robbery fixing the responsibility on the landowners of the place where the robbery was committed. The decree also renewed Akbar's decree forbidding soldiers billeting themselves forcibly in cultivators' houses. Finally it directed that dispensaries and hospital wards should be opened in all large towns. In the early days of Jehángir's reign disturbance was caused in the neighbourhood of Ahmedábád by Bahádur a son of Muzaffar Sháh. Jehángir despatched Patráis Rája Vikramájit as viceroy of Gujarát to put down the rising. The Rája's arrival at Ahmedábád restored order. Some of the rebel officers submitting were reinstated in their commands; the rest fled to the hills.<sup>1</sup> On the Rája's return Jehángir appointed Kalij Khán to be viceroy of Gujarát; but Kalij Khán never joined his charge, allowing Mirza Áziz Kokaltásh to act in his place. In A.D. 1606, on the transfer of Mirza Áziz to the Lahor viceroyalty, Sayad Murtaza Khán Bukhári, who had recently been ennobled in consequence of crushing the rebellion under Jehángir's son Khusráo, was entrusted with the charge of Gujarát, Sayad Báyázid being continued as minister. Sayad Murtaza, who is said to have further ingratiated himself with the emperor by the present of a magnificent ruby, appears to have been more of a scholar than a governor. His only notable acts were the repair of the fort of Kadi<sup>2</sup> and the populating of the Bukhára quarter of Ahmedábád. During his tenure of power disturbances broke out, and Rái Gopináth, son of Rája Todar Mal, with Rája Sursingh of Jodhpur, were sent to Gujarát by way of Málwa Surat and Baroda. They overcame and imprisoned Kalián, chief of Belpár,<sup>3</sup> but were defeated by the Mándwa<sup>4</sup> chieftain, and withdrew to Ahmedábád. Rái Gopináth, obtaining reinforcements, returned to Mándwa and succeeded in capturing the chief. He then marched against the rebellious Kolis of the Kánkrej, and took prisoner their

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Akbar  
Emperor,  
1583-1605.  
Mirza Áziz  
Kokaltásh  
Ninth Viceroy,  
1600-1606.

Jehangir  
Emperor,  
1605-1627.

Kalij Khán  
Tenth Viceroy,  
1606.

Sayad Murtaza  
Eleventh Viceroy,  
1606-1609.

<sup>1</sup> Jehángir's Memoirs, Persian Text, 28; Blochman's Ain-i-Akbari, I. 470. Bahádur died about A.D. 1614: Jehángir's Memoirs, 134.

<sup>2</sup> Now belonging to His Highness the Gaikwár about twenty-seven miles north-west of Ahmedábád.

<sup>3</sup> Belpár, belonging to the Thakor of Umets in the Rewa Kantha.

<sup>4</sup> This Mándwa is probably the Mándwa under His Highness the Gaikwár in his district of Atarsumba, but it may be Mándwa on the Narbada in the Rewa Kantha. Atarsumba is about ten miles west of Kapadvanj in the British district of Kaira.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.****Jehāngir  
Emperor,  
1605-1607****Mírza Ázíz  
KOKALTASH  
Twelfth Viceroy,  
1609-1611.**

leader, whom, on promising not to stir up future rebellions, he afterwards restored to liberty.

The first connection of the English with Gujarát dates from Sayad Murtaza's viceroyalty. In A.D. 1608 he allowed Captain Hawkins to sell goods in Surat.

In A.D. 1609 the Khán-i-Ázam Mírza Ázíz Kokaltash was for the fourth time appointed viceroy of Gujarát. He was allowed to remain at court and send his son Jehāngír Kuli Khán as his deputy with Mohandás Diván and Masúd Beg Hamadám.<sup>1</sup> This was the beginning of government by deputy, a custom which in later times was so injurious to imperial interests.

**Sack of Surat by  
Malik Ámbar,  
1609.**

In 1609 Malik Ámbar, chief minister of Nizám Shih's court and governor of Daulatabád, invaded Gujarát at the head of 50,000 horse, and after plundering both the Surat and Baroda districts retired as quickly as he came. To prevent such raids a body of 25,000 men was posted at Ramnagar<sup>2</sup> on the Dakhan frontier, and remained there for four years. The details of the contingents of this force are :

The Viceroy of Ahmedábád	...	...	...	1000	Men.
The Nobles of his Court	...	...	...	5000	"
The Chiefs of Sáler and Mulher (Báglán)	...	...	...	3000	"
The Son of the Kachh Chief	...	...	...	2500	"
The Chief of Navanagar	...	...	...	2500	"
The Chief of Idar	...	...	...	2000	"
The Chief of Dúngarpúr	} Now under the Mully Tracts { Agency, Rájpútana.	...	...	2000	"
The Chief of Bānsvada				2000	"
The Chief of Rámnagar (Dharampur)	...	...	...	1000	"
The Chief of Ráppipla	...	...	...	1000	"
The Chief of Ah (Ahráppur under the Bhopáwar Agency)	...	...	...	300	"
The Chief of Mohan (a former capital of the state of Chhota Udepur in the Rewa Kántha)	...	...	...	350	"
Total				25,650	Men.

**ABDULLAH KHAN  
FIRÚZ JANG  
Thirteenth  
Viceroy,  
1611-1616.**

In A.D. 1611 Abdulláh Khán Bahádúr Firúz Jang was appointed thirteenth viceroy of Gujarát, with Ghías-ud-dín as his minister, under orders to proceed to the Dakhan to avenge the recent inroad.<sup>3</sup> The viceroy marched to the Dakhan but returned without effecting anything. In A.D. 1616, he was again, in company with prince Shah

<sup>1</sup> Jehāngír's Memoirs, Persian Text, 75.

<sup>2</sup> Now belonging to the Rája of Dharampur, east of the British district of Surat.

<sup>3</sup> In this year (A.D. 1611) the English East India Company sent vessels to trade with Surat. The Portuguese made an armed resistance, but were defeated. The Mughal commander, who was not sorry to see the Portuguese beaten, gave the English a warm reception, and in A.D. 1612-13 a factory was opened in Surat by the English, and in A.D. 1614 a fleet was kept in the Tápti under Captain Downton to protect the factory. In A.D. 1615, Sir Thomas Roe came as ambassador to the emperor Jehāngír, and obtained permission to establish factories, not only at Surat but also at Broach Camlay and Gogha. The factory at Gogha seems to have been established in A.D. 1613. The emperor Jehāngír notes in his memoirs (Persian Text, 105) that Mukarrab Khan, viceroy from A.D. 1616-1618, regardless of cost had bought from the English at Gogha a turkey a lemur and other curiosities. On his return from Jehāngír's camp at Ahmedábád in January 1618 Roe obtained valuable concessions from the viceroy. The governor of Surat was to lend ships to the English, the resident English might carry arms, build a house, practise their religion, and settle their disputes. Kerr's Voyages, IX. 263. The Dutch closely followed the English at Surat and were established there in A.D. 1618.

Jehán, directed to move against Ahmednagar. This second expedition was successful. The country was humbled, and, except Malik Ambar, most of the nobles submitted to the emperor. During this viceroy's term of office an imperial decree was issued forbidding nobles on the frontiers and in distant provinces to affix their seals to any communications addressed to imperial servants.

In A.D. 1616 on their return to Delhi, Mukarrab Khán, a surgeon who had risen to notice by curing the emperor Akbar and was ennobled by Jehángir, and who, since A.D. 1608, had been in charge of Surat or of Cambay, was appointed fourteenth viceroy of Gujarát, with Muhammad Sáfí as his minister. In the following year (A.D. 1617) the emperor Jehángir came to Gujarát to hunt wild elephants in the Dohad forests. But owing to the density of the forest only twelve were captured. Early in A.D. 1618 he visited Cambay which he notes only vessels of small draught could reach and where he ordered a gold and silver *tanka* twenty times heavier than the gold *mohar* to be minted. From Cambay after a stay of ten days he went to Ahmedábád and received the Rájá of Idar. As the climate of Ahmedábád disagreed with him Jehángir retired to the banks of the Mahi.<sup>1</sup> Here the Jám of Navábnagar came to pay homage, and presented fifty Kachh horses, a hundred gold *mohars*, and a hundred rupees, and received a dress of honour. The emperor now returned to Ahmedábád, where he was visited by Rai Bhara of Kachh, who presented 100 Kachh horses 100 *ashrafs*<sup>2</sup> and 2000 rupees. The Rai, who was ninety years of age,

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Jehángir  
Emperor,  
1605-1627.

MUKARRAB  
KHÁN  
Fourteenth  
Viceroy,  
1616.

Elephant-hunting  
in the Panch  
Mahals,  
1616.

<sup>1</sup> At first Jehangir, who reached Ahmedabad in the hot weather (March A.D. 1618), contented himself with abusing its sandy streets, calling the city the 'abode of dust' *girdabad*. After an attack of fever his dislike grew stronger, and he was uncertain whether the 'home of the moon' *sumustan*, the 'place of sickness' *hamustan*, the 'thorn brake' *zakhm-dar*, or 'hell' *jahannamabad*, was its most fitting name. Even the last title did not satisfy his dislike. In derision he adds the verse, 'Oh essence of all goodnesses by what name shall I call thee.' Elliot's History of India, VI. 358; Jehangir's Memoirs, Persian Text, 231. Of the old buildings of Ahmedabad, the emperor (Memoirs, Persian Text, 208-210) speaks of the Kankariya tank and its island garden and of the royal palaces in the Bhadar as having nearly gone to ruin within the last fifty years. He notes that his Bakhshi had repaired the Kankariya tank and that the viceroy Mukarrab Khán had partly restored the Bhadar palaces against his arrival. The emperor was disappointed in the capital. After the accounts he had heard it seemed all at variance with its narrow streets, its shops with ignoble fronts, and its dust, though to greet the emperor as he came on elephant-back scattering gold the city and its population had put on their holiday dress. The emperor speaks (Memoirs, Persian Text page 211) of having met some of the great men of Gujarát. Chief among these was Sayad Muhammad Bukhari the representative of Shahi Alam and the sons of Shah Wajih ud-din of Ahmedabad. They came as far as Cambay to meet the emperor. After his arrival in the capital Jehangir with great kindness informally visited the house and garden of Sikandar Gujarati the author of the *Mirát-i-Sikandari*, to pick some of the author's famous figs off the trees. Jehangir speaks of the historian as a man of a refined literary style well versed in all matters of Gujarát history, who six or seven years since had entered his (the imperial) service (Memoirs, 207-211). On the occasion of celebrating Shah Jehán's twenty-seventh birthday at Ahmedabad Jehangir records having granted the territory from Mandu to Cambay as the estate of his son Shah Jehán (Prince Khurram). Memoirs, Persian Text, 210-211. Before leaving Gujarát the emperor ordered the expulsion of the Sevadas or Jain priests, because of a prophecy unfavourable to him made by Mán Sing Senda (Memoirs, Persian Text, 217).

<sup>2</sup> This was probably the gold *ashrafi* or scraph of which Hawkins (1609-1611) says, 'Sevraffins Ekberi, which be ten rupees a-piece.' Thomas Chron. Pat. Kings of Delhi, 425.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Jehangir  
Emperor,  
1605-1627PRINCE SHAH  
JEHAN  
Fifteenth Viceroy,  
1618-1622.Shah Jehan  
Rebels,  
1622-1623.  
Builds the  
Shahi Bagh  
at Ahmedabad.  
SULTAN DAWAR  
BAKSH  
Sixteenth Viceroy,  
1622-1624.

had never paid his respects to any emperor. 'Jehangir, much pleased with the greatest of Gujarát Zamíndars, who, in spite of his ninety years was hale and in full possession of all his senses, gave him his own horse, a male and female elephant, a dagger, a sword with diamond-mounted hilt, and four rings of different coloured precious stones. As he still suffered from the climate, the emperor set out to return to Agra, and just at that time (A.D. 1618-19) he heard of the birth of a grandson, afterwards the famous Abúl Muzaffar Muhiyy-ud-dín Muhammad Aurangzib who was born at Dohad in Gujarát.<sup>1</sup> In honour of this event Sháh Jehán held a great festival at Ujjain.

Before the emperor started for Agra, he appointed prince Sháh Jehán fifteenth viceroy of Gujarát in the place of Mukarrab Khán whose general inefficiency and churlish treatment of the European traders he did not approve. Muhammad Safi was continued as minister. As Sháh Jehán preferred remaining at Ujjain he chose Rustam Khán as his deputy; but the emperor, disapproving of this choice, selected Raja Vikramajit in Rustam Khán's stead. Shortly after, in A.D. 1622-23, Sháh Jehán rebelled, and in one of the battles which took place Raja Vikramajit was killed. Sháh Jehán, during his viceroyalty, built the Shahi Bagh and the royal bath in the Bhadar at Ahmedabad. After the death of Vikramajit, his brother succeeded as deputy viceroy. While Sháh Jehán was still in rebellion, the emperor appointed Sultán Dawar Baksh the son of prince Khusráo, sixteenth viceroy of Gujarát, Muhammad Safi being retained in his post of minister. Shah Jehán, who was then at Mándu in Málwa, appointed on his part Abdullah Khán Bahádur Fíruz Jang viceroy and a *khájahsara* or eunuch of Abdullah Khán his minister. Sultán Dawar Baksh, the emperor's nominee, was accompanied by Khán-i-Azam Mirza Áziz Kokaltásh to instruct him in the management of affairs. Prince Shah Jehán had directed his minister to carry away all the treasure; but Muhammad Safi, who appears to have been a man of great ability, at once imprisoned the prince's partisans in Ahmedabad, and, among others, captured the eunuch of Abdullah Khán. When this news reached the prince at Mándu, he sent Abdullah Khán Bahádur with an army to Gujarát by way of Baroda. Muhammad Safi Khán met and defeated him, and forced him to fly and rejoin the prince at Mándu. For his gallant conduct Muhammad Safi received the title of Safi Khán, with an increase in his monthly pay from £70 to £300 (Rs. 700-3000) and the command of 3000 horse. Meanwhile Sultán Dawar Baksh, with the Khán-i-Azam, arrived and assumed the charge of the government, but the Khán-i-Azam died soon after in A.D. 1624, and was buried at Sarkhej. Sultán Dawar Baksh was

<sup>1</sup> The peaked masonry tomb over Aurangzib's after-birth with its mosque, enclosure, and intact endowment is one of the curiosities of Dohad. In a letter to his eldest son Muhammad Muazzam then (A.D. 1704) viceroy of Gujarát the aged Aurangzib writes: My son of exalted rank, the town of Dohad, one of the dependencies of Gujarát, is the birth-place of this sinner. Please to consider a regard for the inhabitants of that town incumbent on you, and continue in office its decrepid old Faujdár. In regard to that old man listen not to the whisperings of those suffering from the disease of self-interest. "Verily they have a sickness in their hearts and Allah addeth to their ailments" (Letters of the Emperor Aurangzib: Persian Text, Cawnpur Edition, Letter 31.)

re-called, and Khán Jehán was appointed deputy viceroy with Yásuf Khán as his minister. On his arrival at Ahmedábád, prince Sháh Jehán employed Khán Jehán in his own service, and sent him as his ambassador to the emperor. Saif Khán, who acted for him, may be called the seventeenth viceroy, as indeed he had been the governing spirit for the last eight or ten years. He held the post of viceroy of Gujarát until the death of the emperor in A.D. 1627.

On the death of the emperor Jehángir, his son Abul Muzaffar Shaháb-ud-dín Sháh Jehán ascended the throne. Remembering Saif Khán's hostility he at once caused him to be imprisoned, and appointed Sher Khán Tíar eighteenth viceroy with Khwájah Hayát as his minister. When the emperor was near Surat, he appointed Mír Shamsuddín to be governor of Surat castle. In A.D. 1627, Sháh Jehán on his way to Dehli visited Ahmedábád and encamped outside of the city near the Kánkariya lake. Sher Khán was advanced to the command of 5000 men, and received an increase of salary and other gifts. At the same time Khán Jehán was appointed his minister, and Mirza Ísa Tarkhán was made viceroy of Thatta in Sindh. In A.D. 1628 Khwájah Abul Hasan was sent to conquer the country of Násik and Sangamner which he ravaged, and returned after taking the fort of Chándod and levying tribute from the chief of Báglán. In A.D. 1630, Jamal Khán Karáwal came to the Gujarát-Khándesh frontier and captured 130 elephants in the Sultánpur forests, seventy of which valued at a lák of rupees were sent to Dehli. In A.D. 1631-32 Gujarát was wasted by the famine known as the *Satiásia Kál* or '87 famine. So severe was the scarcity that according to the Bádsháh Náma, rank sold for a cake, life was offered for a loaf, the flesh of a son was preferred to his love. The emperor opened soup kitchens and alms-houses at Surat and Ahmedábád and ordered Rs. 5000 to be distributed.<sup>1</sup>

Sher Khán was re-called in A.D. 1632, but died ere he could be relieved by Islám Khán, the nineteenth viceroy of Gujarat, along with whom Khwájah Jehán was chosen minister. Islám Khán's monthly salary was £400 (Rs. 4000), and his command was raised from 5000 to 6000. In A.D. 1632, Khwájah Jehán went on pilgrimage to Makkah, and was succeeded as minister by Agha Afzal with the title of Afzal Khán. Afzal Khan was soon appointed commander of Baroda, and Riáyat Khán succeeded him as minister. The post of viceroy of Gujarát appears to have been granted to whichever of the nobles of the court was in a position to make the most valuable presents to the emperor. Government became lax, the Kolis of the Kánkrej committed excesses, and the Jám of Navánagar withheld his tribute. At this time Bákar Khán presented the emperor with golden and jewelled ornaments to the value of Rs. 2,00,000 and was appointed viceroy, Riáyat Khán being continued as minister. In A.D. 1633 Sipáhdar Khán was appointed viceroy, and presented the emperor with costly embroidered velvet tents with golden posts worthy to hold the famous *Takhti-Táús* or Peacock Throne which was just completed at a cost of one *kror* of rupees. Riáyat Khán was continued as minister.

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

SAIF KHÁN  
Seventeenth  
Viceroy,  
1621-1627.

SHAH JEHA N  
Emperor,  
1627-1658.  
SHER KHÁN TÍAR  
Eighteenth  
Viceroy,  
1627-1632.

Famine,  
1631-32.

ISLÁM KHÁN  
Nineteenth  
Viceroy,  
1632.

Disorder,  
1632.

BÁKAR KHÁN  
Twentieth  
Viceroy,  
1632.

SIPÁHDAR  
KHÁN  
Twenty-first  
Viceroy,  
1633.

<sup>1</sup> Elliot, VII. 24.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.****Shah Jehan  
Emperor,  
1627-1658.****SAIF KHAN  
Twenty-second  
Viceroy,  
1633-1635.****AZAM KHAN  
Twenty-third  
Viceroy,  
1635-1642.**Punishes the  
Kolis,Subdues  
the Kathis.

In A.D. 1635 Saif Khán was appointed twenty-second viceroy, with Riyat Khán as minister. During Saif Khán's tenure of power Mirza Isa Tarkhán received a grant<sup>1</sup> of the province of Sorath, which had fallen waste through the laxity of its governors. Before he had been in power for more than a year Saif Khán was recalled. As he was preparing to start, he died at Ahmedábád and was buried in Sháhi Alám's shrine to which he had added the dome over the tomb and the mosque to the north of the enclosure.

At the end of A.D. 1635 Azam Khán was appointed twenty-third viceroy, with Riyat Khán in the first instance, and afterwards with Mir Muhammad Sábir, as minister. The men who had recently been allowed to act as viceroys had shown themselves unfit to keep in order the rebellious chiefs and predatory tribes of Gujarat. For this reason the emperor's choice fell upon Azam Khán, a man of ability, who perceived the danger of the existing state of affairs, and saw that to restore the province to order, firm, even severe, measures were required. When Azam Khán reached Sítthpur, the merchants complained bitterly of the outrages of one Kanji, a Chúnvália Koli, who had been especially daring in plundering merchandise and committing highway robberies. Azam Khán, anxious to start with a show of vigour, before proceeding to Ahmedábád, marched against Kanji, who fled to the village of Bhádar in the Kheralu district of Kadi, sixty miles north-east of Ahmedábád. Azam Khán pursued him so hotly that Kanji surrendered, handed over his plunder, and gave security not only that he would not again commit robberies, but that he would pay an annual tribute of ₹1000 (Rs. 10,000). Azam Khán then built two fortified posts in the Koli country, naming one Azamábád after himself, and the other Khalilábád after his son. He next marched to Káthiáváda<sup>2</sup> and subdued the Káthis, who were continually ravaging the country near Dhandhúka, and to check them erected a fortified post called Sháhpúr, on the opposite side of the river to Chuda-Ránpur. Agha Fázil known as Fázil Khán, who had at one time held the post of minister, and had, in A.D. 1635, been appointed governor of Baroda, was now selected to command the special cavalry composing the bodyguard of prince Muhammad Aurangzib. At the same time Sayad Ilahdíad was appointed governor of Surat fort, Isa Tarkhán remaining at Júnágadh. In A.D. 1637, Mir Muhammad Sábir was chosen minister in place of Riyat Khán, and in A.D. 1638 Muiz-zul-Mulk was re-appointed to the command of Surat fort. Shortly after Azam Khán's daughter was sent to Delhi, and espoused to the emperor's son Muhammad Shujá Bahádur. In A.D. 1639, Azam Khán, who for his love of building was known as Udhai or the Whiteant, devoted his attention to establishing fortified posts to check rebellion and robbery in the country of the Kolis and the Káthis. So complete were his arrangements that people could travel safely all over Jháláváda,

<sup>1</sup> The words used in the text is *tuyál*. In meaning it does not differ from *jadgir*.

<sup>2</sup> This is one of the first mentions in history of peninsular Gujarat as Káthiáváda, or as anything other than Sorath or Fauráshtira. The district referred to was probably united to the eastern possessions of the Kháchar Káthis and Panchál.

Kāthiāváda, Navánagar, and Kachh. The Jám, who of late years had been accustomed to do much as he pleased, resented these arrangements, and in A.D. 1610 withheld his tribute, and set up a mint to coin *koris*. When Azam Khán heard of this, he marched with an army against Navánagar, and, on arriving about three miles from the city, he sent the Jám a peremptory order to pay the arrears of tribute and to close his mint, ordering him, if any disturbance occurred in that part of the country, at once to send his son to the viceroy to learn his will. He further ordered the Jám to dismiss to their own countries all refugees from other parts of Gujarát. The Jám being unable to cope with Azam Khán, acceded to these terms, and Azam Khán, receiving the arrears of tribute, returned to Ahmedábád. As Azam Khán's stern and somewhat rough rule made him unpopular, Sáýad Jalál Bukhári whose estates were being deserted from fear of him brought the matter to the emperor's notice.

In consequence in A.D. 1612 the emperor recalled Azam Khán and appointed in his place Mírza Ísa Tarkhan, then governor of Sorath, twenty-fourth viceroy of Gujarát. And as it was feared that in anger at being recalled Azam Khán might oppress some of those who had complained against him, this order was written by the emperor with his own hand. Thanks to Azam Khán's firm rule, the new viceroy found the province in good order, and was able to devote his attention to financial reforms, among them the introduction of the share, *bhāgyatār*, system of levying land revenue in kind. When Mírza Ísa Tarkhán was raised to be viceroy of Gujarát, he appointed his son Inayát-ulláh to be governor of Júnágadh, and Muiz-zul-Mulk to fill the post of minister. During the vicerealty of Mírza Ísa Sáýad Jalál Bukhári a descendant of Saunt Shahu Alam was appointed to the high post of Sadr-us-Sudúr or chief law officer for the whole of India. This was a time of prosperity especially in Surat, whose port dues which were settled on the Pádshah Begum had risen from two and a half to five lakhs. Mírza Ísa Tarkhan's term of power was brief. In A.D. 1644 the emperor appointed prince Muhammad Aurangzib to the charge of Gujarát, Muiz-zul-Mulk being ordered by the emperor to continue to act as his minister. An event of interest in the next year (A.D. 1645) is the capture of seventy-three elephants in the forests of Dohad and Chámpáner.<sup>1</sup>

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Shah Jehan  
Emperor,  
1627-1658  
Azam Khán  
Twenty-third  
Viceroy,  
1635-1642.  
Revolt of  
the Jam of  
Navánagar,  
1610.

ÍSA TARKHÁN  
Twenty fourth  
Viceroy,  
1642-1644.

<sup>1</sup> The author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi* says that in his time, A.D. 1746-1762, these Navánagar *koris* were current even in Ahmedábád, two *koris* and two-thirds being equal to one imperial rupee. They were also called *jitmas*. The *Mirát-i-Ahmedi* (Persian Text, 225) calls them *mahmudis*. The legend on the reverse was the name of the Gujarát Sultan Muzaáffar and on the obverse in Gujarati the name of the Jám. Usually two *mahmudis* and sometimes three went to the imperial rupee. The author says that in Ahmedábád up to his day (A.D. 1756) the account for *gha* clarified butter was made in *mahmudis*. When the order for melting the *mahmudis* was passed a mint was established at Júnágadh but was afterwards closed to suit the merchants from Diu and other parts who transmitted their specie to Ahmedábád.

<sup>2</sup> The traveller Mandelstam, who was in Ahmedábád in 1638, says: "No prince in Europe has so fine a court as the governor of Gujarát. Of none are the public appearances so magnificent. He never goes out without a great number of gentlemen and guards on foot and horse. Before him march many elephants with housings of brocade and velvet, standards, drums, trumpets, and cymbals. In his palace he is served like a king and suffers no one to appear before him unless he has asked an audience. (Travels, French

Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Shah Jehan  
Emperor,  
1627-1658.

Prince  
Muhammad  
Aurangzeb  
Twenty-fifth  
Viceroy,  
1644-1658.

Shah-Tam  
Khan  
Twenty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1646-1648

Prince  
Muhammad  
Dara Shikoh  
Twenty-seventh  
Viceroy,  
1648-1652

Prince Aurangzeb's rule in Gujarat was marked by religious disputes. In 1641 a quarrel between Hindus and Musalmans ended in the prince ordering a newly built (1638) temple of Chintaman near Saraspur, a suburb of Ahmedabad, above a mile and a half east of the city, to be desecrated by slaughtering a cow in it. He then turned the building into a mosque, but the emperor ordered its restoration to the Hindus. In another case both of the contending parties were Musalmans, the orthodox believers, aided by the military under the prince's orders, who was enraged at Sayad Raju one of his followers joining the heretics, attacking and slaughtering the representatives of the Mahdawiyeh sect in Ahmedabad. Sayad Raju's spirit, under the name of Raju Shahid or Raju the martyr, is still worshipped as a disease-searing guardian by the Pinjaris and Mansuris and Dúdhwálas of Ahmedabad.<sup>1</sup> In consequence of the part he had taken in promoting these disturbances, prince Aurangzeb was relieved and Shaistah Khan appointed twenty-sixth viceroy of Gujarat. In the following year Munz-zul-Mulk, who had till then acted as minister, was recalled, and his place supplied by Háfiz Muhammad Násir. At the same time the governorship of Surat and Cambay was given to Ali Akbar of Isfahan. This Ali Akbar was a Persian horse merchant who brought to Agra several horses of pure Arabian breed. For six of these Shahi Jehan paid Rs. 25,000. The seventh a bay so pleased the emperor that he paid Rs. 15,000 for it, named it the Priceless Ruby, and considered it the gem of the imperial stud. In A.D. 1646 Ali Akbar was assassinated by a Hindu and Munz-zul-Mulk succeeded him as governor of Surat and Cambay. As Shaistah Khan failed to control the Gujarat Kols, in A.D. 1648 prince Muhammad Dara Shikoh was chosen viceroy, with Ghaitat Khan as his deputy and Háfiz Muhammad Násir as minister, while Shaistah Khan was sent to Malwa to relieve Shah Nawáz Khan. While Dara Shikoh was viceroy an ambassador landed at Surat from the court of the Turkish Sultan Muhammad IV (A.D. 1648-1657).<sup>2</sup> In A.D. 1651, Mir Yahya was appointed minister in place of Háfiz Muhammad Násir, and in A.D. 1652 prince Dara was sent to Kandahar. On

Edition, 151.) Of the general system of government he says: The viceroy is absolute. It is true he summons leading lords of the country to deliberate on judgments and important matters. But they are called to ascertain their views not to adopt them. On the one hand the king often changes his governors that they may not grow over-powerful. On the other hand the governors knowing they may be recalled at any time take immense sums from the rich merchants especially from the merchants of Ahmedabad against whom false charges are brought with the view of forcing them to pay. As the governor is both civil and criminal judge if the merchants did not temper his greed they would be ruined beyond remedy. (Ditto, 150.) The frequent changes of viceroys in Gujarat is explained by Terry, 1675-17 (*Voyage to East Indies*, 361): To prevent them from becoming popular the king usually removes his viceroys after one year sending them to a new government remote from the old one. Terry adds a curious note: When the king sends any one to a place of government they never cut their hair till they return into his presence as if they desired not to appear beautiful except in the king's sight. As soon as he sees them the king bids them cut their hair (Ditto, 365). It does not seem to have been cheating to keep up fewer horse than the number named. Terry (*Voyage to East Indies*, 361) says: He who hath the pay of five or six thousand must always have one thousand or more in readiness according to the king's need of them, and so in proportion all the rest.

<sup>1</sup> Mirat-i-Almehi Persian Text, II, 16-47. Pinjaris are cotton weavers, Mansuris are Pinjaris who worship Mansur a tenth century (3rd century Hijrah) saint.

<sup>2</sup> Mirat-i-Almehi Persian Text, 287.

the transfer of the prince Shāistah Khān became viceroy for the second time, with Mir Yahyā as minister and Sulṭān Yār governor of Baroda with the title of Himmat Khān. Mirza Isa Tarkhān was summoned to court from his charge of Sorath and his son Muhammad Sāhib was appointed his successor. In A.D. 1653 an ill-advised imperial order reducing the pay of the troopers, as well as of the better class of horsemen who brought with them a certain number of followers, created much discontent. During this year several changes of governors were made. Muhammad Nāsir was sent to Surat, Himmat Khān to Dholka, the governor of Dholka to Baroda, Kutb-ud-din to Jūnāgadh, Sayad Sheikhan son-in-law of Sayad Diler Khān to Tharad under Pātan, and Jagmal, the holder of Sānand, to Dholka. In the same year Shāistah Khān made an expedition against the Chunvālīa Kols, who, since Azam Khān's time (A.D. 1612), had been ravaging Viramgām, Dholka, and Kadi, and raiding even as far as the villages round Ahmedābād.

In spite of Shāistah Khān's success in restoring order the emperor in A.D. 1654 appointed in his place prince Muhammad Murād Bakhsh twenty-ninth viceroy of Gujarāt. Dīnāt Khān, and immediately after him Rehnat Khān, was appointed minister in place of Mir Yahyā. Mujahid Khān Jhalori relieved Mir Shams-ud-din as governor of Pātan and Godhra was entrusted to Sayad Hasan, son of Sayad Diler Khān, and its revenues assigned to him. When prince Murād Bakhsh reached Jhabua<sup>1</sup> on his way to Ahmedābād, the chief presented him with 1500 (Rs. 15,000) as tribute; and when he reached Ahmedābād, Kanji, the notorious leader of the Chunvālīa Kols, surrendered through Sayad Sheikhan, and promised to remain quiet and pay a yearly tribute of 1000 (Rs. 10,000). Dildost, son of Sarfaraz Khān, was appointed to the charge of the post of Bijāpur under Pātan; while Sayad Sheikhan was made governor of Sadia and Pīplod, and Sayad Ali paymaster, with the title of Radawi Khān. Many other changes were made at the same time, the prince receiving a grant of the district of Jūnāgadh. One Pirji, a Bohora, said to have been one of the richest merchants of Surat, is noted as sending the emperor four Arab horses and prince Murād as presenting the emperor with eighteen of the famous Gujarāt hawks. During the vicerealty of Darā Shikoh sums of Rs. 1,00,000 to Rs. 2,00,000 used to be spent on articles in demand in Arabia. The articles were sent under some trustworthy officer and the proceeds applied to charitable purposes in the sacred cities.

At the end of A.D. 1657, on the receipt of news that Shāh Jahan was dangerously ill prince Murād Bakhsh proclaimed himself emperor by the title of Murawwaj-ud-din and ordered the reading of the Friday sermon and the striking of coin in his own name.<sup>2</sup> His next step was to put to death the minister Ali Naki, and direct his men to seize the fort of Surat then held by his sister the Begam Sāhibah and to take possession of the property of the Begam. He imprisoned Abdul-Ḥatīf, son of Islām Khān, an old servant of the empire. Darā Shikoh representing Murād's conduct to the emperor obtained an order to

## Chapter III.

## Mughal Viceroy.

Shah Jahan  
Emperor,  
1627-1658.  
Sulṭān  
Khān  
Twenty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1652-1654.

PRINCE MURAD  
BAKSH  
Twenty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1654-1657

Murad proclaimed  
himself Emperor,  
1657.

<sup>1</sup> Jhabua, now under the Bhopāwar Agency.

<sup>2</sup> Mirāt-i Ahmedi, Persian Text, 249.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Shah Jehan  
Emperor,  
1627-1658.KASAM KHAN  
Thirtyeth  
Viceroy,  
1657-1659Victory of  
Murad and  
Aurangzib.Aurangzib  
names Murad  
1668.Aurangzib  
Emperor  
1658-1707.  
SHAH NAWAZ  
KHAN SALAVI  
Fifty-first  
Viceroy,  
1659.Prince Dara  
RebelsIs Defeated,  
1659.JASVANTSINGH,  
Thirty-second  
Viceroy,  
1659-1662.

transfer him to the governorship of the Berárs Murád Bakhsh borrowing 55,000 (5½ *lákhs* of rupees) from the sons of Santidás Jauhár, 44000 (Rs. 40,000) from Ravidás partner of Santidás, and 28800 (Rs. 28,000) from Sámual and others, raised an army and arranged to meet his brother prince Aurangzib, and with him march against the Mahārāja Jasvatsingh of Jodhpur and Kasam Khán, whom Sháh Jehán had appointed viceroys of Malwa and Gujarat, and had ordered to meet at Ujjain and march against the princes Murad Bakhsh and Aurangzib, uniting their forces early in A.D. 1658, fought an obstinate battle with Jasvantsingh, in which they were victorious, and entered Ujjain in triumph. From Ujjain prince Murád Bakhsh wrote Muatamid Khán his eunuch an order allotting to Mamkehand 15,000 (Rs. 1,50,000) from the revenues of Surat, 10,000 (Rs. 1,00,000) from Cambay, 10,000 (Rs. 1,00,000) from Pittlād, 7500 (Rs. 75,000) from Dholka, 5000 (Rs. 50,000) from Broach, 1500 (Rs. 15,000) from Virangám, and 3000 (Rs. 30,000) from the salt works, in all 55,000 (5½ *lákhs* of rupees). Further sums of 1000 (Rs. 10,000) are mentioned as due to Ravidás partner of Santidás, and 28800 (Rs. 28,800) to Sámual and others. From Ujjain the princes advanced on Agra. At Dholpúr they fought a still more obstinate battle with the imperial forces commanded by prince Dara Shukoh and after a long and doubtful contest were victorious. Prince Darí Shikoh fled to Delhi, and the princes advanced and took possession of Agra. After confining his father, Aurangzib marched for Mathura, and having no further use of Murád, he there seized and imprisoned him. From Mathura, Aurangzib went to Delhi from which Dara Shukoh had meanwhile retired to Láhor.

In A.D. 1653, while his father was still alive, Aurangzib assumed the imperial titles and ascended the throne. In A.D. 1659 he appointed Sháh Nawáz Khán Salavi thirty-first viceroy of Gujarat, with Rahmat Khán as minister. On this occasion Santidás received a decree directing that the provincial officials should settle his accounts and Kutb-ud-dín Kheshgi was appointed to Sorath. Sháh Nawáz Khán was the father-in-law of both Aurangzib and Murád Bakhsh. Shortly after his appointment, while Murad's wife was paying a visit to her father, prince Dara Shikoh leaving Kachh, where he had been hospitably received by the Rájá, made a sudden descent on Gujarat. The viceroy, won over by the entreaties of his daughter who saw in the success of Darí a hope of release for her husband, joined the prince who entered Ahmedábád. After raising funds from Surat and Ahmedábád he collected an army of 22,000 horse and, appointing Sayad Ahmed deputy viceroy, marched towards Ajmír, once more to try his chance of empire. He was defeated and fled to Ahmedábád, where Sardár Khán, who had confined Sayad Ahmed, closed the gates of the city in his face. The unhappy prince retired to Kachh, but finding no support fled to Sindh, where he was treacherously seized and handed to his brother by the chief of Jún. The emperor Aurangzib, forgiving Jasvantsingh his opposition at Ujjain, conferred on him the government of Gujarat, and in the place of Rahmat Khán appointed Makramat Khán to act as minister. Sardár

Khán was thanked for his loyal conduct and made governor of Broach. Praise was also given to Sher and Abid of the Bábi family. Presents were bestowed on Kutb-ud-din, governor of Sorath, and, shortly after, for his refusal to help prince Dárá, Tamáchi chief of Kachh was rewarded. These measures removed all signs of disaffection at the accession of Aurangzib. A decree was issued directing Raimat Khan the minister to forbid the cultivation of the bhang plant. *Mohlasib* or censors were appointed to prevent the drinking of wine or the use of intoxicating drugs and preparations. On the formal installation of Aurangzib in A.D. 1658:50 the Ahmedabad Kázi was ordered to read the sermon in his name. The Kázi objected that Sháh Jehán was alive. Sheikh Abdul Wahhab, a Sunni Bohora of Pattan, whom on account of his learning and intelligence Aurangzib had made Kazi of his camp, contended that the weakness and age of Sháh Jehán made a success necessary. The Bohora prevailed and the sermon was read in Aurangzib's name.

In A.D. 1662 Jasyamsingh received orders to march to the Dakhan and join prince Muázam against Shiváji the Maratha leader, and Kutb-ud-din, governor of Sorath, was directed to act for him in his absence. In this year Mahabat Khan was appointed thirty-third viceroy of Gujarat, and Sardár Khan, the governor of Broach, was sent to Idar to suppress disturbances. About A.D. 1664 Rammaji or Satarsahijon of Navanagar died, leaving by a Rahthod mother a child named Lakha whom the late chief's brother Rámsinghji with the aid of the Ray of Kachh and other Jadejis, set aside and himself mounted the throne. Malik Isa a servant of the family, took Lakha to Ahmedabad and invoked the aid of the viceroy. Kutb-ud-din marching on Navanagar, defeated and slew Rámsingh, took possession of Navanagar, and annexed the territory, changing the name of the city into Islamnagar. Rámsingh's son, Tamáchi, then an infant, escaped and was sheltered in Kachh. In the same year (A.D. 1664) a Balúch personating Dárá Shukoh, was joined by many Kolis and disturbed the peace of the Chinvál, now a portion of the Ahmedabad collectorate north of Virangam. With the aid of Sherkhan Bábi, Mahabat Khan quelled these disturbances, and established two new military posts, one at Gájna under Cumbay and one at Belpár under Petlád.

In this year an imperial decree was received requiring the discontinuance of the following abuses: The charging of blackmail by executive subordinates; A tax on private individuals on their cutting their own trees; Forced purchases by state servants; The levy by local officers of a tax on persons starting certain crafts; The levy of a tax on Jaden carts and on cattle for sale. The closing of Hindu shops on the Jain *Pachusan* and at the monthly elevenths or *Ehadasa*; Forced labour; The exclusive purchase of new grain by revenue officers; The exclusive sale by officers of the vegetables and other produce of their gardens; A tax on the slaughtering of cattle in addition to that on their sale; Payments to the Ahmednagar Kolis to prevent Musalmáns praying in the Ahmednagar mosque; The re-opening of certain Hindu temples; The aggressive conduct and obscenity practised during the Holi and Diváli holidays; The sale by Hindus of toy horses and elephants

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707  
JASYAM-SINGH  
Thirty-second  
Viceroy,  
1659-1662

JASYAM-SINGH  
at Ahmednagar,  
1662.

MAHABAT  
KHAN  
Thirty-third  
Viceroy,  
1662-1664.

Capture of  
Navanagar  
(Islamnagar),  
1664. •

## Chapter III

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.

Mayur  
Kutub  
Thirty-third  
Viceroy,  
1662-1668.

Shivaji Plunder  
Surat,  
1664.

Copper Coinage  
Introduced,  
1665.

Khan Jehan  
Thirty-fourth  
Viceroy,  
1665-1671.

during Musalmán holidays; The exclusive sale of rice by certain rich Banias; The exclusive purchase by Imperial officers of roses for the manufacture of rosewater; The mixed gatherings of men and women at Musalmán shrines; The setting up of *nezas* or holy hands and the sitting of harlots on roadsides or in markets; The charging by revenue officers of security rates; The special tax in Parāntij, Modasa, Vadnagar, Bisanpur, and Harsol on Musalmán owners of mango trees; The levy of duty both at Surat and Ahmedabad from English and Dutch merchants.<sup>1</sup>

In the same year (A.D. 1664) Shivaji made a rapid descent on Surat, then undefended by walls, and, by plundering the city, created great alarm over the whole province. The viceroy Mahabat Khan marched to Surat with the following chiefs and officers; Jazmai, proprietor of Samad; the governor of Dholka; Shadmāl, chief of Idar; Sayid Hasan Khan, governor of Idar; Muhammad Abd with 200 superior landholders of the district of Kadi; the Raja of Dúngapur; Sahasinsingh Raja of Wadhwan and other chiefs of Jhalavadh; Lal Kahan chief of Mandva in the Ginkwar's dominions near Atarsutba; the chief of Elol under Ahmednagar in the Mahi Kantha Agency; Prathamaj of Haldaryas; and the chief of Belpar. Before the viceroy's army arrived at Surat Shivaji had carried off his plunder to his head-quarters at Raygad.<sup>2</sup> After remaining three months at Surat levying tribute from the superior landholders, the viceroy returned to Ahmedabad, and Inayat Khan, the revenue collector of Surat, built a wall round the town for its protection. About this time Kutb-ud-din Khan, governor of Sorth, was sent with an army to aid the Maharaja Jasvantsingh in the Dakhan and Samlār Khan was appointed in his place. In A.D. 1666 the Marāthās again attacked and plundered Surat, and in the same year the deposed emperor Shah Jehan died. Aurangzib attempted to induce the English to supply him with European artillerymen and engineers. The request was evaded. In this year the viceroy, Mahabat Khan, in place of the old iron coins, introduced a copper coinage into Gujarāt. Sardār Khan, the governor of Jūnāgadh, was put in charge of Iskhanagar (Navānagar) and 500 additional horsemen were placed under him. Special checks by branding and inspection were introduced to prevent nobles and others keeping less than their proper contingent of horse. In the same year the cultivator who paid the rent was acknowledged to be the owner of the land and a system of strengtheners or *lukāni* after due security was introduced.

In A.D. 1668, Bahādur Khan Khān Jehān, who had formerly been viceroy of Allahābad, was appointed viceroy of Gujarāt, with Ilāji Shahi Khān, and afterwards Khwājah Muhammad Hashim, as his ministers. Khān Jehān joined his government in A.D. 1669, and in A.D. 1670 Shivaji again plundered Surat. In A.D. 1670 Shivaji made

<sup>1</sup> Mirāt-i-Ahmedī, Persian Text, 274, 279.

<sup>2</sup> Raygad (north latitude 18° 14'; east longitude 73° 30'), the name given in A.D. 1662 to Rari, a hill fortress in the Mahād sub-division of the Kolāba collectorate. Shivaji took the place and made it his capital in A.D. 1662.

an attempt on Janjira,<sup>1</sup> the residence and stronghold of the Sîfi or Abyssinian admirals of Bijâpûr. Sîfi Yâkût the commander of Janjira applied for aid to the governor of Surat. On his offering to become a vassal of the emperor and place his fleet at the emperor's disposal, Sîfi Yâkût received the title of Yâkût Khân, and a yearly subsidy of £15,000 (Rs. 1,50,000) payable from the port of Surat. About the same time Sayad Diler Khân, who had accompanied Maharâja Jasyantsingh to the Dakhan, was recalled by the viceroy. Khân Jehân and appointed governor of Sorath in place of Sardâr Khân, who was sent to Idar. Sayad Haidar, in charge of the military post of Haidarâbad, about twenty-four miles south of Ahmedabad, reported that he had put down the rebellion but recommended that a small fort should be built. In A.D. 1670 the emperor summoned Diler Khân to discuss Dakhan affairs, and sent him to the seat of war, replacing him in the government of Sorath by Sardâr Khân.

In A.D. 1671, Bahadur Khân Khân Jehan was sent as viceroy to the Dakhan. He was relieved by the Maharâja Jasyantsingh, who, as viceroy, received an assignment of the districts of Dhandhuka and Pithla. In A.D. 1673 through the intercession of the viceroy, Jam Tamacha, the son of Râisingh, on condition of serving the viceroy and of keeping order was restored to Navanagar, and twenty-five villages were granted to certain dependent Jâdeja Râpputs. So long as the emperor Aurangzib lived the city of Navanagar (Islamnagar) remained in the hands of a Musalmân noble, the Jam residing at Khambhôla, a town about thirty miles south-west of the head-quarters of the state. In A.D. 1707 on Aurangzib's death, the Jam was allowed to return to Navanagar where he built a strong fort. Similarly so long as Aurangzib lived, the Jam forbore to work the pearl fisheries in the Gulf of Kachh, but afterwards again made use of this source of revenue. Early in 1674 an order issued forbidding the levy from Musalmâns of *rahûdarî* or transit dues, of taxes on fish vegetables grass firewood and other forest produce, or Muhammadan artisans, and many other miscellaneous dues. The officer in charge of Morvi, which was then an imperial district, was ordered to strive to increase its population and revenue, and the chief of Porbandar, also an imperial district, on condition of service and of protecting the port was allowed a fourth share of its revenue. Much discontent was caused by enforcing this iniquitous and confiscating all *waqf* land, that is all land held on religious tenure by Hindus.

About the close of the year A.D. 1674, Maharâja Jasyantsinghji was relieved and sent to Kabul, and Muhammad Amîn Khân Umrat-ul-Mulk, who had just been defeated at Kabul, was appointed thirty-sixth viceroy of Gujarât, receiving an assignment of the districts of Pâtah and Virangam. Among the military posts mentioned in the Mirât-i-Ahmedi is that of Sâdra or Shâhdarâh the present head-quarters of the Mahi Kantha Agency, also called Islâmâbâd,<sup>2</sup> which was under the

### Chapter III. Mughal Viceroys.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.  
KHÂN JEHÂN  
Thirty-fourth  
Viceroy,  
1668-1671.

Sîfi Yâkût the  
Mughal Admiral,  
1670.

MAHARAJA  
JASYANTSINGH  
Thirty-fifth  
Viceroy,  
1671-1674.

MUHAMMAD  
AMIN KHÂN  
UMRAT-UL-MULK  
Thirty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1674-1683.

<sup>1</sup> Janjira (north latitude 17° 59' to 18° 32') that is *Jazira*, the island, on the western coast, about forty-four miles south of Bombay.

<sup>2</sup> Another post of Islâmâbâd was at Pindâra in the *parganah* of Azamâbâd on the Wairak about twenty-one miles east-south-east of Ahmedâbâd. Azamâbâd was built

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.  
MUHAMMAD  
AMIN KHAN  
UMDAT-UL-MULK  
Thirty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1674-1683.Increased  
Power of the  
Babi Family.

command of Sayad Kannil, son of Sayad Kamil. The Babi family were now rising into importance. Muhammad Muzaffar, son of Sher Khan Babi, was governor of Kadi, and Muhammad Mubáriz, another son of Sher Babi, was in charge of one of the posts under Kadi Kamál Khán Jhalorí, who had been removed from the government of Palanpur and replaced by Muhammad Fateh, was now restored to his former post. About the same time, at the representation of Mulla Hasan Gujarati, twenty-one villages were taken from Bijapur and Kadi and Patan and formed into the separate division of Visalnagar. In A.D. 1676, the fort of Júnagádh was put into repair, and Sheikh Nizam-ud-din Ahmed, minister of Gujarát, was sent to Malwa, and was succeeded by Muhammad Sharif. The Kankrej Kolis were again rebellious, and Muhammad Amin Khan Umdat-ul-Mulk went against them and remained four months in their country, subduing them and enforcing tribute. In the end of A.D. 1678 the viceroy paid his respects to the emperor at Ajmir. The emperor forbade the fining of Musalman officials as contrary to the Muhammadan law and directed that if guilty of any fault they should be imprisoned or degraded from office, but not fined. An order was also given to change the name of the new Visalnagar district to Rasalnagar.

Revolt of Idar,  
1679.

At this time (A.D. 1679) the emperor was doing his utmost to crush both the Rana of Udepur and the Rathods of Marwar. While the emperor was at Chitor, Blunising the Rana's youngest son ruled into Gujarat plundering Vadnagar Visalnagar and other towns and villages. The chief of Idar, thinking the opportunity favourable for regaining his independence, expelled the Muhammadan garrison from Idar and established himself in his capital. Muhammad Amin Khan sent Muhammad Bahlol Khan Shirwani who with the help of the Kasbatis of Parantij re-took Idar, and the chief pursued by Bahlol Khan fled to the hills, where he died in a cave from want of his usual dose of opium to which he was much addicted. His body was found by a woodcutter who brought the head to Bahlol Khán. The head was recognized by the chief's widow, who from that day put on mourning. Muhammad Bahlol Khan was much praised, and was appointed to the charge of Idar, and at the same time the minister Muhammad Sharif was succeeded by Abdúl Latif.<sup>1</sup>

To this time belongs an imperial decree imposing the *jazyah* or head tax on all subjects not professing the Muhammadan faith, and another regulating the levy from Musalmáns of the *zakat* or poor rate.<sup>2</sup> In 1681 a severe famine led to riots in Ahmedábád. As the

by Azam Khan during his viceroyalty (A.D. 1635-1642) and at his request by permission of the emperor Sháh Jahan was erected into a *pargana*. For the pay of the garrison twelve villages were attached from the neighbouring *parganahs* of Bahyal and Kapadvanj.

<sup>1</sup> The *Mirát-i-Ahmadi* (Persian Text, 311) adds that Bahlol's following of *Kasbatís* was so poorly equipped that he had to mount many of them, for whom he could not find horses, on bullocká. The sense of security in the mind of the Idar chief bred by contempt at the sight of this motley crowd was the chief cause of Bahlol's success.

<sup>2</sup> The *zakat* or purification is the tax required by law to be given annually to the poor. It is levied on camels, oxen, buffaloes, sheep, goats, horses, asses, mules, and gold or silver whether in money or ornaments or vessels. The tax is not levied on any

viceroys Muhammad Amín was returning in state from the 1d prayers Abu Bakr an Ahmedabád Sheikh instigated the people to throw stones and dust. The viceroy's bodyguard attacked the mob, but owing to the viceroy's forbearance no serious results followed. On hearing of the riot the emperor ordered the city to be put under martial law. The more politic viceroy contented himself by inviting Sheikh Abu Bakr and others to a banquet. After dinner he gave a piece of a poisoned watermelon to Abu Bakr, who died and the riot with him. In A.D. 1683 Muhammad Amín the viceroy died.. According to the Mirát-i-Ahmedi, Muhammad Amín was one of the best of Gujarát governors. The emperor Aurangzib used to say 'No viceroy of mine keeps order like Amín Khán.'

Amín Khán was succeeded by Mukhtár Khán as thirty-seventh viceroy, Abdul Latíf continuing to hold the office of minister. Fresh orders were passed forbidding import dues on merchandise, fruit, grass, firewood, and similar produce entering Ahmedabad. In 1682 a decree was received ordering pauper prisoners to be provided with rations and dress at the cost of the state. In 1683 the Sahamiti rose so high that the water reached as far as the *Tin Darwázah* or Triple Gateway in the west of Ahmedabad city. In consequence of disturbances in Sorath the viceroy called on the minister to advance funds for an expedition. The minister refused to make advances without special orders from the emperor. On a reference to court the minister was directed to make advances in emergent cases. In A.D. 1684, at the request of the inhabitants of that city Abdúr Rahmán Krom, the governor of Deva Patan, was removed and in his place Muhammad Sayad chose Sardár Khán as governor of Sorath. In the following year on the death of Sardár Khán at Thatha in Sindh, where he had gone as viceroy, he was, in the first instance, succeeded in the government of Sorath by Sayad Muhammad Khán. Not long after Sorath was assigned as a personal estate to the emperor's second son prince Muhammad Azam Sháh Bahádúr and during the prince's absence Sháhwardi Khán was sent to manage its affairs. In A.D. 1684 a famine in Gujarát raised the price of grain in Ahmedabád to such a degree that Sheikh Muhy-ud-dín, the son of the Kázi and regulator of prices, was mobbed.

On the death of the viceroy in 1684 prince Muhammad Azam Sháh was nominated to succeed him with Kártalab Khán, governor of Sorath, as his deputy. Before the prince took charge Kártalab Khán was raised to the post of viceroy, and Muhammad Tahir appointed minister. In addition to his command as viceroy of Gujarát, Kártalab Khán was afterwards placed in charge of Jodhpur. In this rearrangement besides his previous personal estate, the district of Petlád was assigned to prince Muhammad Azam Sháh, and Sher Afghan Khán, son of Sháhwardi Khán, was appointed governor of Sorath. In A.D.

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.

MUKHTÁR  
KHÁN  
Thirty-seventh  
Viceroy,  
1683-1684.

Famine,  
1684.

SHRÍ ŚR KHÁN  
(KÁRTALAB  
KHÁN)  
Thirty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1684-1703.

one who owns less than a minimum of five camels, thirty oxen, forty-five sheep, five horses, two hundred *dirhems* or twenty *dirirs*. The proportion to income is generally one-fortieth; the amount may be paid either in kind or in money. Compare Stanley Lane Poole's Arabian Society in the Middle Ages, 14.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroy.**

**Aurangzib**  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.  
**SHUJA'AT KHAN**  
(KARTALAB  
KHAN)

Thirty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1684-1703.

He Quells a  
Mutiny,  
1689.

1687, Sher Afghan Khan was relieved by Bahlol Shirwani, but in the following year was restored to his command. In A.D. 1689, on the news of the death of its governor Inayat Khan, Kartalab Khan started to settle the affairs of Jodhpur. As soon as he left Ahmedabad, a rumour spread that a new viceroy was coming, and the troops, with whom as well as with the people of Gujarāt Kartalab was most popular, grew mutinous. On hearing of this disturbance Kartalab Khan at once returned to Ahmedabad and quelled the mutiny. His firmness so pleased the emperor that he gave him the title of Shuja'at Khan, and placed the governor of Jodhpur under his orders. Shuja'at Khan now proceeded to Jodhpur, where Durgadas Rathod, who had incited prince Abkar to rebellion, and Ajitsingh, the son of Mahārāja Jasyantsingh, were causing disturbance. Finding that a strong resident governor was required to keep the insurgents in check, Shuja'at Khan appointed Kāzim Beg Muhammad Amin, a brave and resolute soldier, to be his deputy and returned to Ahmedabad. During this vicerealty the pay of the leader or *jamadar* of a troop of fifty horse was fixed at ₹10 (Rs. 100); of a *do-aspah* or two-horse trooper at ₹5 (Rs. 50); and of an *ek-aspah* or one-horse trooper at ₹3 (Rs. 30) a month. An imperial order was also issued directing the levy on merchandise to be taken at the place and time of sale instead of the time and place of purchase. As this change caused loss to the revenue the old system was again adopted. In A.D. 1690 the minister Amanat Khan, with the title of Imad Khan, was made military governor of Surat, and Sayad Muhsin was chosen minister in his place. To prevent the peons of great officials extorting fees and dues officials were forbidden to entertain peons without payment.

Revolt of Matias  
and Momnas,  
1691.

In the following year (A.D. 1691) an attempt on the part of the emperor to suppress a body of Muslim setarians led to a somewhat serious insurrection. Sayad Shahji was the religious preceptor of the Matias of Khandesh and the Momnas of Gujarāt—two classes of converted Hindus closely allied to the Khojas of Kathiavāda, all of them being followers of Sayad Imam-ud-din an Ismailiah missionary who came to Gujarat during the reign of Mahmūd Begada (A.D. 1459-1513). Hearing that his followers paid obeisance to their veiled spiritual guide by kissing his toe, the emperor ordered the guide to be sent to court to be examined before the religious doctors. Afraid of the result of this examination, the Sayad committed suicide and was buried at Karamtah nine miles south of Ahmedabad. The loss of their leader so enraged his followers that, collecting from all sides, they marched against Broach, seized the fort, and slew the governor. The insurgents held the fort of Broach against the governor of Baroda who was sent to punish them, and for a time successfully resisted the efforts of his successor Nazar Ali Khan. At last, at an unguarded spot, some of the besiegers stole over the city wall and opening the gates admitted their companions. The Momnas were defeated and almost all slain as they sought death either by the sword or by drowning to merit their saint's favour in the next world.

Disturbances in  
Kathiavāda,  
1692;

In A.D. 1692 Shuja'at Khan, during his tribute-gathering campaign in Jhalavāda and Sorath, stormed the fort of Than, the head-quarters

of the plundering Káthis and after destroying the fort returned to Ahmedabad. Shujáát Khán was one of the ablest of Gujarát viceroys. He gave so much of his attention to the management of Jodhpur, that he used to spend about six months of every year in Mírwar. He beautified Ahmedabad by building the college and mosque still known by his name near the Lál Gate. In A.D. 1612 two hundred cart-loads of marble were received from the ancient buildings at Pátan and the deputy governor Safdar Khán Babi wrote that if a thousand cart-loads more were required they could be supplied from the same source. At this time the emperor ordered that Sheikh Akram-ul-din, the local tax-collector, should levy the head tax from the Hindus of Palanpur and Jhalor. The viceroy deputed Muhammad Mujahid, son of Kamál Khán Jhálóri, governor of Palanpur to help in collecting. As Durgadas Báthod was again stirring tumults and sedition in Mírwar, the viceroy went to Jodhpur, and by confirming their estates to the chief vassals and landholders and guaranteeing other public measures on condition of service, persuaded them to abandon their alliance with Durgadas against whom he sent his deputy Kazim Beg, who expelled him from Mírwar. After appointing Kunvar Mukhamsingh, governor of Mertha in Mírwar, Shujáát Khán returned to Ahmedabad. In A.D. 1693, at the request of Sher Afghan Khán governor of Sorath, the walls of the fort of Jagat were restored. In this year the viceroy went to Jhálaváda to exact tribute. On his return to Ahmedabad Safdar Khán Babi, governor of Pátan, wrote to the viceroy, and at his request the forts of Kamblá and Sámprah were repaired. The viceroy now went to Jodhpur and from that returned to Ahmedabad. A circumstance in connection with a sum of Rs. 7000 spent on the repairs of forts illustrates the close imperial supervision of provincial accounts. The item having come to imperial notice from the provincial disbursement sheets was disallowed as unfair and ordered to be refunded under the rule that such charges were to be met out of their incomes by the local governors and military deputy governors. Imperial officers were also from time to time deputed to collect from the books of the *desái's* statements of provincial disbursements and receipts for periods of ten years that they might render an independent check. In this year the emperor hearing that Ajít-singh and Durgadas were again contemplating rebellion ordered the viceroy to Jodhpur. Muhammad Mahabiz Babi was at the same time appointed deputy governor of Vadnagar, and an order was issued that the revenue of Pátan should be paid to Shujáát Khán instead of as formerly into the imperial treasury. In this year also Safdar Khán Babi, governor of Pátan, was succeeded by Mubáriz Khán Babi. Not long afterwards under imperial orders the viceroy directed Muhammad Mubáriz Babi to destroy the Vadnagar temple of Hateshwar-Mahádev the Nágara Bráhmans' special guardian.

In A.D. 1696, Muhammad Bahlol Shírwáni, governor of Baroda, died, and his place was supplied by Muhammad Beg Khán. During this year the viceroy again went to Jodhpur and remained there for some months. In A.D. 1697 Buláki Beg the mace-bearer arrived from the imperial court to settle disputes connected with the Navánagar succes-

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.  
SHUJÁAT KHÁN  
(KÁRFALAB  
KHÁN)  
Thirty eighth  
Viceroy,  
1684-1703.

Disturbances  
in Marwar.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707

SHUJĀ'AT KHĀN  
(KĀRĀLĀB  
KHĀN)

Thirty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1684-1703.

Durgadas Rathod  
reconciled to  
the Emperor,  
1697.

sion, and to inquire into complaints made by the inhabitants of Sorath. In 1696 an imperial circular was addressed to all officers in charge of districts ordering them to show no respect or consideration for royalty in their efforts to capture or kill the rebel prince Akbar. About the same time Durgādās Rāthod, in whose charge were the son and daughter of prince Akbar, made an application to Shujā'at Khān, proposing a truce, and saying that he wished personally to hand the children to their grandfather. Shujāat Khān agreed and Durgādās restored Akbar's children to the emperor. Aurangzib finding the children able to repeat the whole Kurān was much pleased with Durgāda, and made peace with him, assigning him as a personal estate the lands of Mertha in Jodhpur, and afterwards adding to this the grant of Dhan-dhūka and other districts of Gujarat. In consequence of a failure of crops the price of grain rose so high that the government share of the produce was brought to Ahmedabād and sold in public to the poor and needy. About this time Muhammad Mubārīz Babi was killed by a Koli who shot him with an arrow while he was sacking the village of Sāmpurah<sup>1</sup>. Safdar Khān Bābi was appointed deputy governor of Pātan in his stead.

In the same year it was reported to the emperor that the money-changers and capitalists of Ahmedabad in making payments passed money short of weight to poor men and in receiving charged an exchange of two to three *tanhās* the rupee. The Subah and minister were ordered to stop the currency of rupees more than two *sukhs* short<sup>2</sup>.

Scarcity,  
1698.

In A.D. 1698, on the death of Ītimād Khān, his son Muhammad Muḥ-sin was made minister, and he was ordered to hand the district of Mertha to Durgādās Rathod. Among other changes Muhammad Munīm was raised to the command of the fort of Jodhpur and Khwājah Abdul Hamīd was appointed minister. Owing to a second failure of rain 1698 was a year of much scarcity in Mārwar and north Gujarat. The accounts of this year notice a petition addressed to the viceroy by a Sīnor Brāhmin, praying that he might not be seized as a carrier or labourer<sup>3</sup>. In connection with some revenue and civil affairs, a difference of opinion arose between Shujā'at Khān and Safdar Khān Bābi, deputy governor of Pātan. Safdar Khān resigned, and, until a successor was appointed, Muhammad Bahlol Shīrwani was directed to administer the Pātan district. In the same year the emperor bestowed the government of Sorath on Muhammad Beg Khān. In A.D. 1699 Durgādās Rāthod obtained from the emperor not only a pardon for Ajitsingh, son of the late Maharāja Jasvantsingh, but procured him

<sup>1</sup> This Sāmpurah according to the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi, Persian Text, II, 127, was a small police post or *thana* in Pargana Bahyal twenty miles north-east of Ahmedabād. It is now in the Gackwar's territory. Bahyal was under Pātan, so in the text the place is described as under Pātan.

<sup>2</sup> The *sukh* or little black-dotted red seed of the *Abrus precatorius* is called *ghāngēhi* in Hindi and cock's-eye, *chashm-i-khuras*, in Persian. As a weight the seed is known as a *rat* 96 going to the *tolā*. It is used in weighing precious stones. Blochmann's *Āin-i-Alīgarī*, I, 16 note 1 and Mirāt-i-Ahmedi Persian Text, 366.

<sup>3</sup> Sīnor in Baroda territory on the right bank of the Narbada about thirty miles south of Baroda.

an assignment of lands in, as well as the official charge of, the districts of Jhalor and Sâchor in Marwâr. Mujahid Khan Jhâlori, who as representing a family of landholders dating as far back as the Gujarât Sultâns, had held Jhalor and Sâchor, now received in their stead the lands in Palanpur and Dîsa which his descendants still hold. In this year also (A.D. 1699) Amanat Khân, governor of Surat, died, and the Marâthâs making a raid into the province, Shujâât Khân sent Nazar Ali Khân to drive them out. About this time an imperial order arrived, addressed to the provincial *dînda* directing him to purchase 1000 horses for the government at the average rate of £20 (Rs. 200).

In A.D. 1700 on the death of Fîrûz Khân Mewâtî, deputy governor of Jodhpûr, the viceroy appointed in his place Muhammad Zâhid from Vînamgam.\* Râja Ajîtsingh of Marwar was now ordered to repair to court, and as he delayed, a *mohsal* or speed fine was imposed upon him in agreement with Shujâât Khân's directions. About this time an order came to Kamal Khan Jhâlori for the despatch to the emperor of some of the Palanpur *chîdâhs* or hunting leopards which are still in demand in other parts of India. In the same year the manager of Dhandhuka on behalf of Durgadâs Rathod, asked the viceroy for aid against the Kâthûs, who were plundering that district. The viceroy ordered Muhammad Beg, governor of Sorath, to march against them. At this time Shujaat Khan despatched Nazar Ali Khân with a large force to join the imperial camp which was then at Panhala in Kolhâpur. Shujâât Khân, who had so long and ably filled the office of viceroy in a most critical time, died in A.D. 1703. In his place prince Muhammad Aazam Shah, who was then at Dhar in Mâlwa, was appointed thirty-ninth viceroy of Gujarat, as well as governor of Ajmir and Jodhpur; and until his arrival the minister Khwajah Abdul Hamid Khân was ordered to administer the province. Owing to the recall of the late governor's troops from many of the posts disorders broke out in the Patan districts and the Kols plundered the country and made the roads impassable.

On his way from the Dakhan to Ahmedâbâd, the chief of Jhâbua, a state now under the Bhopawar Agency, paid his respects to the new viceroy and presented him with a tribute of £1600 (Rs. 16,000). Among other arrangements the prince sent to Jodhpur Jâfar Kuli, son of Kazim Beg, as deputy governor, and appointed Durgadâs Rathod governor of Patan. Shortly after, on suspicion of his tampering with the Rathod Rajputs, an order came from the emperor to summon Durgadâs to the prince's court at Ahmedâbâd, and there confine him or slay him.† Saifdar Khân Bâbi, who, in displeasure with Shujâât Khân had retired to Mâlwa, returned and offered to slay or capture Durgadâs, who was accordingly invited to the prince's court at Ahmedâbâd. Durgadâs came and pitched his camp at the village of Bâreja on the Sâbarmati near Ahmedâbâd. On the day Durgadâs was to present himself, the prince, on pretence of a hunt, had ordered the attendance of a strong detachment of the army.

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.  
SHUJAAT KHÂN  
(KÂRTALAB  
KHÂN)  
Thirty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1691-1703.

PRINCE  
MUHAMMAD  
AAZAM  
Thirty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1703-1706.

Intrigue against  
Durgadâs Rathod,  
1703.

\* Mirât i-Ahmedi, Persian Text, 372.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Aurangzib  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.PRINCE  
MUHAMMAD  
AAZAMThirty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1703-1705.Durgadas  
Rathod  
Escapes.

When all was ready and Safdar Khán Babi and his sons appeared mailed and gauntleted the prince sent for Durgadās. As this day was an eleventh or *aqīqah* Durgadās had put off waiting on the prince until the last was over. Growing suspicious of the number of messengers from the prince, he burned his tents and fled. Safdar Khan Babi was sent in pursuit. He was overtaking Durgadās when Durgadās' grandson, praying his grandfather to make good his escape, stayed behind with a band of followers, charged the pursuers, and after a gallant combat, he and his Rajputs were slain. The grandson of Durgadās was killed in a hand-to-hand fight with Salabat Khán, the son of Safdar Khán Babi. Emerald rings are to this day worn by youths of the Babi families of North Gujarāt in memory of the emerald earrings which adorned the young Rajput and were afterwards worn by Salabat as trophies of this fight. Meanwhile Durgadās had reached Unjah-Unáwa, forty miles east of Pátan, and from Unjah made his way to Patan. From Patan, taking his family with him, he retired to Tharād, and from that to Marwár, where he was afterwards joined by Ajítsingh of Mārwar, whom the emperor opposed on the ground of illegitimacy. The imperial troops followed and took possession of Patan, putting to death the head of the city police.

In his old age the emperor Aurangzib became more and more strict in religious matters. In 1702 an imperial order forbade the making of almanacs as contrary to the Muhammadan law. Hindus were also forbidden to keep Muhammadan servants.

About this time (A.D. 1700) news arrived that the Maráthís with a force of 10,000 horse were threatening Surat from the foot of the Kására pass and the confines of Sultánpur and Nandurbár. The viceroy despatched a body of troops to guard Surat against their incursions. Disputes between the government and the Portuguese were also injuring the trade of the province. In A.D. 1701 the viceroy received an order from Court directing him to destroy the temple of Somnáth beyond possibility of repair. The despatch adds that a similar order had been issued at the beginning of Aurangzib's reign. In A.D. 1703, at the request of the merchants of Gujarāt, with the view of inducing the Portuguese to let ships from Surat pass unmolested and release some Musalmáns who had been imprisoned on their way back from Makkah, orders were issued that certain confiscated Portuguese merchandise should be restored to its owners. An imperial order was also received to encourage the art of brocade weaving in Ahmedábád. In A.D. 1704, Safdar Khán Babi was raised to be governor of Bijápur, about fifty miles north-east of Ahmedábád. Sarandáz Khán was at the same time appointed to Sorath instead of Muhammad Beg Khan, who was placed in charge of the lands round Ahmedábád. As the Maráthás once more threatened Surat, Mustafa Kuli, governor of Broach, was sent with 1000 horse to defend the city.

Certain passages in Aurangzib's letters to prince Aázam when (A.D. 1703-1705) viceroy of Gujarāt, show how keen and shrewd an interest the aged emperor maintained in the government of his viceroys. In Letter 19 he writes to prince Aázam: To take the government of Sorath

Surat,  
1700-1703.

from Fatch Jang Khán Bábi and give it to your chamberlain's brother is to break a sound glass vessel with your own hands. These Bábis have been time out of mind a respected race in Gujarát and are well versed in the arts of war. There is no sense in giving the management of Sorath to anyone but to a Bábi. Sorath is a place which commanders, of five thousand like Hasan Álikhán and Safshikan Khán have with difficulty administered. If your officers follow the principles laid down by the late Shuját Khán, it will be well. If they do not, the province of Gujarát is such that if order is broken in one or two places, it will not soon be restored. For the rest you are your own master. I say not, do this or do that; look that the end is good, and do that which is easiest. In another passage (Letter 37 to the same prince Áázam) Aurangzib writes: You who are a well intentioned man, why do you not retaliate on oppressors? Over Hájpur Ammúpúr and other posts where atrocities occur every day, and at Kapadvanj where the Kolis rob the highways up to the posts, you have made your chamberlain and artillery superintendent your commandant. He entrusted his powers to his carion-eating and fraudulent relatives. Owing to his influence the oppressed cannot come to you. . . . You ought to give the command to one of the Gujaratis like Safdar Khan Babi or one of the sons of Bahúl Shírwani who have earned reputations during the administration of the late Shuját Khán and who are popular with the people. Else I tell you plainly that on the Day of Justice we shall be caught for neglecting to punish the oppressions of our servants.

In A.D. 1705, as the climate of Gujarát did not agree with prince Áázam, Ibrahim Khán, viceroy of Kashmír, was appointed fortieth viceroy of Gujarát, and his son Zabardast Khan, viceroy of Lahor, was appointed to the government of Ajmír and Jodhpur. Prince Áázam at once went to Burhanpur in Khándesh, handing charge of Gujarát to the minister Abdul Hamíd Khan until the new viceroy should arrive. Durgadas Báthod now asked for and received pardon. Abdul Hamíd Khán was ordered to restore the lands formerly granted to Durgadas, and Durgadas was directed to act under Abdul Hamíd's orders. In A.D. 1705 the emperor learned that Khánji, a successor of Kutb the high priest of the Ismailia Bohoras had sent out twelve missionaries to win people to his faith, and that his followers had subscribed Rs 1,11,000 to relieve those of their number who were imprisoned. The emperor ordered that the twelve missionaries should be secured and sent to him and appointed Sunni Mullás to preach in their villages and bring the Bohoras' children to the Sunni form of faith.

About this time (A.D. 1705) the Marathás, who had long been hovering on the south-east frontiers of the province, bursting into south Gujarát with an army 15,000 strong, under the leadership of Dhanáji Jadhav, defeated the local forces and laid the country waste. Abdul Hamíd Khán, who was then in charge of the province, ordered all governors of districts and officers in charge of posts to collect their men and advance to Surat. Between Nazar Ali Khán and Safdar Khán Bábi, the officers in command of this

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Aurangzib**  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.

PRINCE  
MUHAMMAD  
ÁZAM  
Thirty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1703-1705.

IBRAHÍM KHÁN  
Fortieth Viceroy,  
1705.

The Marathás  
enter Gujarát.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Aurangzib**  
Emperor,  
1658-1707.  
**IBRAHIM KHÂN**  
Fortieth Viceroy,  
1705.

Battle of  
Ratanpûr.  
Defeat of the  
Musalmans,  
1705.

Battle of the  
Bāba Pīrah  
Ford. Second  
Defeat of the  
Musalmans,  
1705.

Koli  
Disturbances.

**PRINCE**  
**MUHAMMAD**  
**BIDAR BAKHT**  
Forty-first  
Viceroy,  
1705-1706.

army, an unfortunate jealousy prevailed. Not knowing where the Marathās were to be found, they halted on the Narbada near the Bāba Pīrah ford. Here they remained for a month and a half, the leaders contenting themselves with sending out spies to search for the enemy. At last, hearing of the approach of the Marathās, they sent to head-quarters asking for artillery and other reinforcements. In reply, Abdūl Hamīd Khān, a man of hasty temper, upbraided them for their inactivity and for allowing so much time to pass without making their way to Surat. Orders were accordingly at once issued for an advance, and the army next halted at Ratanpûr in Rājpipla. Here, apparently from the jealousy of the commanders, the different chiefs pitched their camps at some distance from each other. Finding the enemy's forces thus scattered, the Marathās under the command of Dhanaji Jadhav, lost no time in advancing against them. First attacking the camp of Safdar Khan Bābi, they defeated his troops, killed his son, and took prisoner the chief himself. Only a few of his men, with his nephew Muhammad Aāzam, escaped to the camp of Nazar Ali Khān. Next, the Marathās attacked the army under Muhammad Purdil Khān Shurwān; and it also they defeated. Of the Muslim army those who were not slain, drowned in the Narbada, or captured, reached Broach in miserable plight, where they were relieved by Akbar Ali Khān. Nazar Ali Khan burned his tents and surrendered to the Marathās, by whom he was well treated.

The Marathās now heard that Abdūl Hamīd Khān was coming with an army to oppose them. Thinking he would not risk a battle, they went to the Bāba Pīrah ford, and there crossed the Narbada. That very day Abdūl Hamīd Khān, with Muhammad Sher and Muhammad Salabat, sons of Safdar Khān Bābi, and others came to the spot where the Marathās were encamped. All night long they were harassed by the Marathās, and next morning found the enemy ready for a general attack. The Muhammadans, weary with watching, dispirited from the defeats of Safdar Khan and inferior in number to their assailants, were repulsed and surrounded. The two sons of Safdar Khān Bābi, and two other nobles, seeing that the day was lost, cut their way through the enemy and escaped, Abdūl Hamīd Khān, Nazar Ali Khān, and many others were taken prisoners. The Marathās plundered the Muhammadan camp, declared their right to tribute, levied sums from the adjacent towns and villages and extorted heavy ransoms which in the case of Abdūl Hamīd Khān was fixed at as large a sum as £30,000 (Rs 3 *lāks*). The Kolis, seeing the disorganized state of Gujarāt, began ravaging the country, and plundered Baroda for two days. At Ahmedabād Muhammad Beg Khān, who had been appointed governor of Sorath, was recalled to defend the capital. When the news of the defeat at Bāba Pīrah reached Dehli, the emperor despatched prince Muhammad Bidar Bakht with a large army to drive out the invaders. Before this force reached Gujarāt the Marathās had retired.

Prince Muhammad Bidar Bakht arrived in A.D. 1705 as forty-first viceroy, and appointed Amānat Khān governor of the ports of Surat and Canbay. News was now received that Ajitsingh of Jodhpur and Verisālji of Rājpipla were about to rebel, and the prince took

measures to check their plans. About this time the emperor, hearing that an attack had been made on the Muhammadan post at Dwárka, ordered the temple to be levelled to the ground. It seems doubtful whether this order was carried out. Nazar Ali Khán, who had formerly enjoyed a grant of Halvad in Jhaláwáda, had been driven out by Chandrasingh, chief of Vánkánér; but, on condition of his expelling Chandrasingh, these lands were again granted to him. Kamál Khán Jhalori, leaving under his son Firúz Khán at Pálanpur a body of men for the defence of his charge, advanced to Ahmedabád to guard the city from Marátha attack. He petitioned that according to Gujarát custom his troops should receive rations so long as they were employed on imperial service. To this request the emperor agreed and issued orders to the provincial minister. Shortly after Durgádas Báthod took advantage of the general confusion to rejoin Ajitsingh, and an army was sent to Tharád against them. Ajitsingh was at first forced to retire. Finally he succeeded in defeating Kunvar Mukhamsingh, and marching on Jodhpur recovered it from Jaafar Kuli, son of Kázim Beg. Durgádas meanwhile had taken shelter with the Kolis. At the head of a band of robbers, meeting Shah Kuli the son of Kázim Beg on his way to join his appointment as deputy governor of Patan, Durgádas attacked and killed him. And soon after at Chamúr in the Chunvál, laying in wait for Maasúm Kuli, the governor of Viramgám, he routed his escort, Maasúm Kuli escaping with difficulty. On condition of being appointed governor of Patan Safdar Khán Bábi now offered to kill or capture Durgádas. His offer was accepted, and as from this time Durgádas is no more heard of, it seems probable that Safdar Khán succeeded in killing him. As the disturbed state of the province seemed to require a change of government Ibrahim Khán, who had been appointed viceroy in the previous year, was ordered to join his post. This order he reluctantly obeyed in A.D. 1705.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

Aurangzib  
Emperor  
1658-1707.

PRINCE  
MUHAMMAD  
BIDAR BAKHSH  
Forty-first  
Viceroy.  
1705-1706.

Durgádas  
Báthod again

IBRAHIM KHÁN  
Forty-second  
Viceroy.  
1706

**SECTION II.—Fifty Years of Disorder, 1707-1757.**

With the death of the emperor Aurangzib, early in A.D. 1707, the period of strong government which had latterly from year to year been growing weaker came to an end. As soon as Aurangzib's death was known, the Maráthas under Bálaji Vishvanáth burst into east Gujarat, marching by Jálma and Godhra, where they were met by the governor Murad Baksh. From Godhra they went to and plundered the town of Mahuda in Kaira, and proposed marching on Ahmedabád by way of Nabhád. The viceroy prepared to resist them, and, enlisting special troops, camped outside of the city near the Kankariya lake. Of the warlike population on the north bank of the Sabarmatí opposite Ahmedabád nearly eight thousand Musalmán horse and three thousand foot together with four thousand Rájputs and Kolis in three days gathered at the Kankariya camp. The viceroy was also joined by Abdúl Hádi Pandemal the viceroy's minister, Abdúl Hamíd Khán provincial minister, Muhammad Beg Khán, Nazar Ali Khán, Safdar Khán Bábi, and several other deputy governors with their retinues and artillery. Though strong in numbers the practised eye of the viceroy failed to find in the host that

The Mar  
advanc  
Álu  
and levy th  
1707.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Bahā'dur  
Shah I.  
Emperor,  
1707-1712.  
Ibrāhīm Khān  
Forty-second  
Viceroy,  
1706.

firmness and unity of purpose which could alone ensure victory over the Marāṭha hordes. The Marāṭhās did much mischief, plundering as far as Batva, only four-and-a-half miles from the viceroy's camp. The author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi*, whose father was an actor in these scenes, describes the panic in the capital of Gujarāt which since its capture by Muzaffar in A.D. 1583 had been free from the horrors of war. Crowds of scared and terror-stricken men women and children laden with as much of their property as they could carry were pressing from the suburbs into the city. In the city the streets were crowded with squatters. The cries of parents bereft of children, added to the din and turmoil of the soldiery, was like the horror of the Day of Resurrection. The dejected faces of the soldiers beaten in the late engagements added to the general gloom. The viceroy, thoroughly alarmed, concluded a treaty with Balaji, and on receiving a tribute of £21,000 (Rs. 2,10,000) the Marāṭhas withdrew. Meanwhile, in the contest between the princes for the throne of Delhi, prince Muhammad Āzam Shah was defeated and slain, and prince Muhammad Muazzam Shah mounted the throne with the title of Bahā'dur Shah. Ibrāhīm Khān was confirmed in the post of viceroy of Gujarāt, but, fearing that the emperor might be displeased at his concession of tribute to the Marāṭhās, he went to Delhi to explain his conduct, and there resigned office.

Ghāzi-ud-dīn  
Forty-third  
Viceroy,  
1708-1710.

In A.D. 1708, in consequence of Ibrāhīm Khān's resignation, Ghāzi-ud-dīn Khān Bahādur Firūz Jang was appointed forty-third viceroy of Gujarāt. The leaning of the new emperor towards Shī'ah tenets and his order to insert in the Friday sermon the words the lawful successor of the Prophet after the name of 'Alī, the fourth Khalifah, besides giving general dissatisfaction, caused a small disturbance in Ahmedabad. On the first Friday on which the sermon was read the Turani or Turk soldiers publicly called on the preacher to desist on pain of death. The preacher disregarding their threats on the next Friday was pulled down from the pulpit by the Turānis and brained with a mace. In the same year (A.D. 1708), hearing that the representative of Shahi Alam had a copy of a Kurān written by the Imam Ali Fakison of Musa Razā (A.C. 810-820), the emperor expressed a wish to obtain a sight of it, and the viceroy sent it to him at Mandu in charge of Sayad Akīl and Salabat Khān Babā. In A.D. 1709, Shariāt Khān, brother of Abdūl Hamīd Khān, was appointed minister in place of his brother, who obtained the office of chief Kazi. Much treasure was sent to the imperial camp by order of the emperor. Ajitsingh of Marwar rebelled and recovered Jodhpur. As the emperor wished to visit Ajmīr the viceroy of Gujarāt was directed to join him with his army. At this time the pay of a horseman is said to have been £3 8s. (Rs. 34) and of a footman 8s. (Rs. 4) a month. During his administration Firūz Jang introduced the practice, which his successors continued, of levying taxes on grain piece-goods and garden produce on his own account, the viceroy's men by degrees getting into their hands the whole power of collecting. In A.D. 1710, when on tour exacting tribute, the viceroy fell ill at Dānta and was brought to Ahmedābād, where he died. As Firūz Jang had not submitted

satisfactory accounts, his property was confiscated, and in A.D. 1711 Amamat Khán, governor of Surat, was appointed deputy viceroy with the title of Sháhámát Khán. When Sháhámát Khán was levying tribute from the Kadi and Bijápur districts, he heard that a Maráthá force had advanced to the Bába Párah ford on the Nerbada. He at once marched to oppose them, summoning Sayad Ahmed Gílání, governor of Sorath, to his assistance. When he reached Ankleshvar, the Maráthís met him, and a battle was fought in which the Maráthís were defeated. Sháhámát Khán then proceeded to Surat, and, after providing for its safety returned to Ahmedabád. In spite of their reverse at Ankleshvar the Maráthas from this time began to make yearly raids into Gujaráti.

In A.D. 1712, the emperor died, and was succeeded by his son Abúl Fateh Muizz-ud-din Jehándar Sháh, and Asif-ud-daulah Asad Khan Bahadur was appointed forty-fourth viceroy of Gujaráti. As Muhammad Beg Khán, who was then at Kharkol, was a favourite of the new viceroy and through his interest was appointed deputy, he went to Ahmedabad, and Sháhámát Khán was transferred to Malwa as viceroy. In the meantime Muhammad Beg Khan was appointed governor of Surat, and Sarbuland Khan Bahadur was sent to Ahmedabad as deputy viceroy. On his way to Gujaráti, Sarbuland Khan was robbed in the Sagbára wilds to the east of Rajpúra. On his arrival he promptly marched against the rebellious Kolís of the Chumval and subdued them. At the end of the year, as Farrukhsiyar son of Azím-us-Shán, second son of the late emperor, was marching with a large army on the capital, Sarbuland Khan returned to Dehli.

This expedition of Farrukhsiyar was successful. He put Jehándar Sháh to death and mounted the throne in A.D. 1713. As he had been raised to the throne mainly by the aid of Sayads Husain Ali and Abdullah Khan, the new emperor fell under the power of these nobles. Husain Ali was sent against Ajítsingh of Marwar, and concluded a treaty with that chief, whereby Ajítsingh engaged to send his son to court and to give his daughter to the emperor in marriage: and the marriage was solemnised in A.D. 1715. In A.D. 1714, shortly after this treaty was concluded, Ajítsingh sent his son Abheysingh to court, and on him in place of one Sayad Ahmed Gílání was conferred the post of governor of Sorath. Abheysingh remained at court and sent his deputy Fatehsingh to Júnagadh. Abdul Hamid Khán was appointed revenue officer of Surat. After some time he resigned his Surat office and went to court, where on being made superintendent of the shrine of Sheikh Ahmed Khattu he returned to Ahmedabád. In A.D. 1713 Muhtarm Khán was appointed to succeed him in Surat. Early in A.D. 1714, Sháhámát Khán, who had been appointed forty-fifth viceroy of Gujaráti, was superseded by Dáud Khan Panní as forty-sixth viceroy. The reckless courage of Dáúd Khán Panní was renowned throughout India. His memory survives in the tales and proverbs of the Dakhan. On giving battle he used to show his contempt for his enemies by wearing nothing stronger than a muslin jerkin. So stern was his discipline that none of his Afghán soldiers dared to touch a leaf of the standing crops where they were encamped. When at

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

Bahadur  
Shah I.  
Emperor,  
1707-1712  
Ghazi-ud-din  
Forty-third  
Viceroy,  
1708-1710.

Jehándar  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1712-1713.  
Asif-ud-daulah  
Forty-fourth  
Viceroy,  
1712-13.

Farrukhsiyar  
Emperor,  
1713-1719

Shahwar  
Khan  
Forty-fifth  
Viceroy,  
1713.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys**

**Farrukhsiyar**  
Emperor,  
1713-1719.

**DAUD KHAN**  
Viceroy,  
1714-15.

Religious Riots  
in Ahmedabad,  
1714.

Ahmedābād he was either engaged in scattering the Kolis or in coursing with greyhounds. He preferred life under canvas on the Sābarmati sands to the viceregal surroundings of the Bhadar Palace. His civil work he used to trust to Dakhān Brāhmins and Pandits. He was much devoted to the use of bhang. Until Daud Khān's arrival Abdūl Hamīd Khān was appointed viceroy and took charge of the province from Shāhīmāt Khān. At this time, on the security of Raja Mulkamsingh of Nāgor, a sum of ₹5000 (Rs. 50,000) was granted to the brother of Durgādās Rāthod. In A.D. 1714 in Ahmedābād Harīrām, the agent of Madan Gopal a successful North Indian banker, who came to Ahmedābād as treasurer with Firūz Jang, while celebrating the Holi with his friends, seized a Musalman gentleman and handled him with great roughness. Aggrieved with this treatment the Musalman complained to a preacher of much eloquence and influence, Mulla Muhammad Ali. The preacher took the Muslim to the Assembly Mosque and sent for Mulla Abdūl Āzīz the chief or leading member of the Sunni Bohora community. He answered the call with a strong party of his men, and on his way was joined by numbers of Musalmans both soldiers and citizens. With cries of 'Dīn' 'Dīn' they went to the mosque and carried off the insulted man and the priest and the Bohra leader to the house of the Kazi Khair-ul-lah. The kazi closed his doors against the crowd who returned abusing him to the Jewellers' quarter pillaging and killing as they went. They next swarmed towards Madan Gopal's Haveli in the Jewellers' quarters. But the Nagarsheth Kapurchand Bhansālī closed its strong gates and with his Musalman soldiers met the swarm with firearms. The viceroy who was camped at the Shāhi Bagh sent soldiers and under the influence of the leading citizens of both classes the disturbance was quelled. When the particulars of the riots were known in the imperial camp the Hindus, clamouring against Mulla Muhammad Ali and Sheikh Abdūl Āzīz Gujarātī, struck business and closed their shops. The emperor ordered mace-bearers to proceed to Gujarat and bring the Musalmān ringleaders together with the Hindu Nagarsheth Kapurchand Bhansālī. Some Bohoras at the imperial camp, sending advance news to Ahmedābād, the Mullah and the Bohora Sheth and after him the Bhansālī started for the imperial camp. On reaching the camp the Mulla, who was very impressive and eloquent, preached a sermon in the Assembly Mosque and his fame reaching the emperor he was called to court and asked to preach. He and the Sheth were now able to explain their case to the emperor and the Bhansālī was imprisoned. It is said that the Bhansālī made the Mulla the medium of his release and that he and the Bohora returned to Gujarāt while the Mulla remained in honour at court till he died. About the same time a great flood in the Sābarmati did much damage.

Abdūl Hamīd Khān was now chosen governor of Sorath in place of Abheysingh, and Momnin Khān was appointed from Dehli, governor of Surat, and was at the same time placed in charge of Baroda, Broach, Dholka, Petlad, and Nadiād. Daud Khān the viceroy now went into Kāthiavāda and Navānagar to collect tribute, and on his return to Ahmedābād, married the daughter of the chief of Halvad in the

Jhálaváda sub-division of Káthiaváda. It is related that this lady, who was with child, on hearing of Dáud Khán's death cut open her womb and saved the child at the sacrifice of her own life.<sup>1</sup> Dáud Khán, though an excellent soldier and strict disciplinarian failed to distinguish himself as a civil administrator. He introduced Dakhani *pandits* into official posts, who levied a fee called *chithyáman* from landholders and took taxes from the holdings of Sayads and otherwise made themselves unpopular.

About this time Momin Khán, governor of Surat, arrived in Gujarát; and placing his deputies in Petlád, Dholka, Baroda, and Nadiád, went himself to Surat in A.D. 1715. Here he was opposed by the commandant of the fort, Zaa Khan, who was obliged to give way, his subordinate, Sayad Kasim, being defeated by Feká-ud-din Khán. At this time much ill-feeling was caused by the plunder by Muhammadan troops of the shops of some Hindu merchants in Ahmedábád. On this account, and for other reasons, Dáud Khán was recalled, and Gházni Khán Jhálori was directed to act in his place until the arrival of a new viceroy. In this year, A.D. 1715, the Mahárája Ajitsingh was appointed forty-seventh viceroy of Gujarát, and his son Kunvar Abheysingh was appointed governor of Sorath. Ajitsingh sent Vajeráj Bhandári to act as his deputy until his arrival, and Fatehsingh Kayath was chosen deputy governor of Sorath. Perhaps one of the most remarkable appointments of this time was that of Haider Kuli Khán to be minister as well as military commandant of Baroda, Nándod, Arhar-Mátar in the district of Kaira, and of the ports of Surat and Cambay. Haider Kuli chose an officer to act for him as minister, and after appointing deputies in his different charges himself went to Surat.

The Mahárája Ajitsingh, on reaching Ahmedábád, appointed Gházni Khán Jhálori governor of Pálanpur and Jawán Mard Khán Kabi governor of Radhanpur.<sup>2</sup> During this year an imperial order conferred on Haider Kuli Khan, Sorath and Gohlyád or south-east Káthiaváda<sup>3</sup> then in charge of Fatehsingh, the viceroy's deputy. On receiving this order Haider sent Sayad Ákil as his deputy, and that officer went to Jambúsar, and collecting men, set out to join his appointment. He

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Farrukhsiyar  
Emperor,  
1713-1719.

DAUD  
KHAN PANSI  
Forty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1714-15.

Further Riots  
in Ahmedábád,  
1715.

MAHARAJA  
AJITSINGH  
Forty-seventh  
Viceroy,  
1715-16.

<sup>1</sup> Mirát-i Ahmedi, Persian Text, 427-434.

<sup>2</sup> Arhar-Matar is according to the Mirát-i Ahmedi (Persian Text, II, 126) the present Kaira sub-division of Malwa. The Mirát-i Ahmedi places it twenty miles south-west of Ahmedabad. It is four miles south-west of Kaira.

<sup>3</sup> In the beginning of Ajitsingh's administration the Sacrifice Id of the Musalmáns very nearly ended in a riot. An overzealous police officer belonging to the Káthiávar section of Ahmedábád, hoping to please the Hindu viceroy, by force deprived some of the Sunni Bohoras of that quarter of a cow which they had purchased for the sacrifice. The Bohoras in a mass appealed to the Kazi who not succeeding in his representation to the viceroy was obliged to allay the popular excitement by publicly sacrificing a cow after the Id prayers. Mirát-i Ahmedi Royal Asiatic Society MS., I, 567-568.

<sup>4</sup> This is the first known mention of Gohlyáda, the Gohils country, as a separate district.

<sup>5</sup> During the governorship of Haider Kuli at Surat the Mirát-i Ahmedi (Royal Asiatic Society MS., I, 567-568) notices the death of Mulla Abdul Ghafur the founder of the wealthy family of the Mullás of Surat. Haider Kuli confiscated Abdul Ghafur's property representing to the emperor that the Mulla died issueless. But the Mulla's son Abdúl Hye proceeding to Delhi not only obtained from the emperor an order of restitution of property, but the title of chief of merchants, Umda-ut-Tujjar, and an elephant.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.****Farrukhsiyar**  
Emperor,  
1713-1719.**MAHARAJA**  
**AJITSINGH**  
Forty-seventh  
Viceroy,  
1715-16Disagreement  
between the  
Viceroy and  
Haidar Kuli  
Khan,  
1715.**KHÂN DATTAN**  
**NA-SIR JANG**  
Bahadur  
Forty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1716-1719.Famine  
1719.

first camped at Lolianah, where the province of Sorath begins, and from Lohanah marched against Pālitāna and plundered the town. The viceroy, who was by no means well disposed to Haidar Kūli Khan, sent a message that if any injury was done in Sorath he would take vengeance on the aggressors; and as neither Ajitsingh nor Haidar Kūli Khan was of a very compliant temper, civil war was on the point of breaking out. By the help of Salabat Khān Babi, the deputy in Gohlvāda, matters were arranged, and Sayad Akil returned from Sorath. Haidar was anxious to send Salabat Khan as deputy to Sorath. But as Salabat demanded too high a salary, Raza Kūli, brother of the late governor of Baroda, was chosen. When this officer, with his brother Maasum Kūli, reached Ameli Fatchsingh, the viceroy's deputy, evacuated Jūnāgadh. After this Haidar Kuli Khān, in company with Kāzīm Beg, governor of Baroda, marched against and defeated the chief of Munjpūr, now under Rādhampūr, who had refused to pay the usual tribute. The viceroy went to Sorath to collect the imperial revenue, and, owing to his excessive demands, met with armed resistance from the Jam of Navānagar. Finally, the matter of tribute was settled, and after visiting the shrine of Dwārka, the viceroy returned to Ahmedabad.

In A.D. 1716, while the viceroy was at Dwārka, in consequence of numerous complaints against Ajitsingh and his Marwari followers, the emperor sent Samsam-ud-daulah Khan Daurān Nasir Jang Bahādur as forty-eighth viceroy of Gujarat. As it was expected that Ajitsingh would not give up his government without a contest, an army was prepared to compel him to leave. On the arrival of the army Ajitsingh marched straight on Ahmedabad and encamped at Sarkhej, but Nahar Khān persuaded him to retire to Jodhpur without giving battle. In A.D. 1717, after the departure of Ajitsingh Haidar Kūli Khan, who had been appointed deputy viceroy, leaving Surat set out for Ahmedabad. When Haidar arrived at Petlad, some of the Ahmedabad nobles, among whom was Safdar Khan Babi, went out to meet him. A dispute arose between one of Haidar's water carriers and a water-carrier in the army of the Babi, which increased to a serious affray, which from the camp followers spread to the soldiers and officers, and the Babi's baggage was plundered. Safdar Khān took serious offence, and returning to Ahmedabad collected his kinsmen and followers and marched against Haidar Kūli Khān. In a battle fought on the following day Safdar Khān was defeated. The other Babis escaped to Palanpur, and Safdar Khān, who in the first instance had fled to Atasumba, joined his party at Palanpur. Muhammad Fīrīz Jhalori, governor of Palanpur, with the title of Ghazni Khān, afterwards succeeded in reconciling the Babis and Haidar Kūli Khān. A.D. 1719 was a year of great famine. Abdāl Hamīd Khān, who had filled so many appointments in Gujarāt, went to court, and was made governor of Sorath. Haidar Kūli Khān now marched against the Mahi Kolis. In the meantime news was received of the appointment of a new viceroy, and Ghazni Khān, governor of Palanpur, was ordered to stay at Ahmedabad for the defence of the city.

Early in A.D. 1719, the emperor Farrákhsiyar was deposed and put to death by the Sayads, and a prince named Rafiá-ud-Daraját, a grand-son of the emperor, was raised to the throne. Rafiá-ud-Daraját was put to death by the Sayads after a reign of three months, and his brother Rafiá-ud-daulah, who succeeded him, also died after a few days' reign. The Sayads then raised to the throne prince Raushan Akhtar with the title of Muhammad Shah. After the murder of Farrákhsiyar, the most powerful vassal in the neighbourhood of Delhi was Ajitsingh of Márwar. To win him to their side the Sayads granted him the viceroyalty of Gujarát, and Mihr Ali Khán was appointed to act for him until his arrival, while Muhammad Bahádur Bábí, son of Salabat Muhammad Khán Bábí, was placed in charge of the police of the district immediately round Ahmedabad. Shortly after, through the influence of the Maharája Ajitsingh, Nahr Khan superseded Mihr Ali Khán as deputy viceroy. Nahr Khan was also appointed to the charge of Dholka, Dohad and Pottad, and made superintendent of customs. About this time the head tax was repealed, and orders were issued that its levy in Gujarát should cease.

In the same year, A.D. 1719, Pílaji Gáukwár marched on Surat with a large army and defeated the imperial troops commanded by Sayad Akel and Muhammad Panah, the latter commander being taken prisoner and forced to pay a heavy ransom. Pílaji, finding Gujarát an easy prey, made frequent incursions, and taking Songad in the extreme south-east established himself there. Mihr Ali Khán, who had been acting for Nahr Khán, marched against and subdued the Kolis, who were committing piracy in the Mahi estuary. From this year Mughal rule in Gujarát was doomed. Pílaji Gáukwár was established at Songad, and in the anarchy that ensued, the great Gujarát houses of the Babis and Jhaloris as well as the newly arrived Momín Khán, turned their thoughts to independence. Ajitsingh so hated Muhammadan rule that he secretly favoured the Marathas, and strove to establish his own authority over such portions of Gujarát as bordered on Marwár. In after years, Sarbuland Khán made a vigorous attempt to reassert imperial dominion, but the seeds of dissolution were sown and efforts at recovery were vain.

In A.D. 1720, Ajitsingh the viceroy sent Anopsingh Bhandári to Gujarát as his deputy. In this year Nizam-ul-Mulk, viceroy of Ujjain, was superseded by Sayad Dilawar Khán. While Dilawar Khán was yet on the Málwa frontiers the Nizám desirous of possessing himself of the Dakhan and its resources retired to Burhánpur pursued by Sayad Dilawar Khán, who giving battle was killed, the Nizám retiring to Aurangábád in the Dakhan. Alam Ali Khán, deputy viceroy of the Dakhan, was directed to march against him, while from north Gujarát Anopsingh Bhandári was ordered to send 10,000 horse to Surat, and Nahr Khán, the deputy viceroy, was instructed to proceed thither in person. The Nizám and Alam Ali Khán met near Bálápur in the Berárs and a battle was fought in which the Nizám was successful and Alam Khán was slain. At this time Anopsingh Bhandári committed many oppressive acts, of which the

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Muhammad Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
MAHARAJA  
AJITSINGH  
Forty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1719-1721.

Pílaji Gáukwár  
at Songad,  
1719.

Decay  
of Imperial  
Power,  
1720.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroy.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

Nizam-ul-Mulk  
Prime Minister,  
of the Empire,  
1721.

HAIDAR KULI  
KHAN  
Fiftieth Viceroy,  
1721-22.

Disorder in  
Ahmedabad,  
1721.

Leaves Delhi  
for Gujarat,  
1722.

chief was the murder of Kapurchand Bhansáli, the leading merchant of Ahmedabad. The cause of Kapurchand's murder was that he had hired a number of armed retainers who used to oppose the Bhandári's orders and set free people unjustly imprisoned by him. To remove this meddler from his way the Bhandári got him assassinated. In A.D. 1721, Nizám-ul-Mulk was appointed prime minister of the empire, Abdúl Hamíd Khán was recalled from Sorath, and in his stead Asad Kuli Khán, with the title of Amir-ul-Umara, was appointed governor of Sorath and sent Muhammad Sharif Khán into Sorath as his deputy.

In A.D. 1721, in conjunction with Muhammad Amín and Saádat Khán, Haidar Kúli Khan freed the emperor from the tyranny of the Sayads, and was rewarded with the title of Mu'iz-ul-daulah Haidar Kúli Khán Bahádur Zafar Jang and the viceroyalty of Gujarát. He obtained the appointment of minister for his brother Jaafar Kúli Khán. Maisúm Kuli Khán was dignified by the title of Shujáat Khán Bahádur and appointed deputy viceroy. As soon as this change was notified, the people of Ahmedabad, who were discontented with the rule of Anopsingh, attacked his palace, the Bhadar, and he escaped with difficulty. In consequence of the enmity between Haidar Kúli Khán and the Mérwaris, Shujáat Khán, the deputy viceroy, attacked the house of Nahir Khán who had been Ajítsingh's minister, and forced him to pay £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*) and leave the city. Shujáat Khán next interfered with the lands of Safdar Khán Babi, the deputy governor of Godhra, and his brothers. On one of the brothers reparing to Delhi and remonstrating, Haidar Kuli, who, above all things, was a Muhammadan and anxious to strengthen himself with the Muhammadan nobility of Gujarát, restored their lands to the Babas. In consequence of this decision ill-feeling sprung up between Shujáat Khán and the Babas, and when Shujáat Khán went to exact tribute he forced Muhammad Khán Bibi, governor of Kaira, to pay a special fine of £1000 (Rs. 10,000). Shortly after one of the viceroy's officers, Kásim Ali Khán, while employed against the Kohis of that part of the country, was killed at Pethápur. Shujáat Khán advanced, and revenged Kásim Ali's death by burning the town. Next, he passed into Sorath, and after exacting tribute, crossed to Kachh. The chief opposed him, and in the fight that followed was beaten and forced to pay about £22,500 (Rs. 2 *lákhs*).<sup>1</sup> In A.D. 1721, a Sayad was sent to Sorath as deputy governor in place of Muhammad Sharif and Haidar Kúli was appointed governor of Kadi, the Chúnvál, and Halvad (called Muhammadnagar), and put in charge of Tharád, Arjanpur, Bhámnárlí, Pethápur, and Kherálu in place of Vakhatsingh, son of the Mahárája Ajítsingh.

Early in A.D. 1722, Nizám-ul-Mulk took up the office of prime minister of the empire, to which he had been appointed in the previous year. Strenuous efforts were made to embroil him with Haidar Kúli

<sup>1</sup> The sum is 6,75,000 *mahmúdis*. Like the *changtzi* (see above page 222 note 2) the *mahmudi* seems to have varied in value from one-third to one-half of a rupee.

Khán, as the Nizám's austerity and craft were a source of not less anxiety to the Delhi court than Haidar Kúli's more daring and restless ambition. Haidar Kúli Khán, unable to contend with the Nizám, left Delhi and retired to Gujarát. On his way the villagers of Dabháli opposed him killing one of his chief men named Alif Beg Khán. Haidar burned the village and put all the people to death, a severity which caused such terror that throughout his rule no difficulty was experienced in realizing tribute or in keeping the roads safe. About this time, among other changes, Muhammad Bahadúr, son of Salabat Khán Bábi, was placed in charge of Sadra and Virpur, with the title of Sher Khán. Shortly after his arrival the viceroy marched against, and subdued the rebellious Kolis of the Chunval, appointing Rustam Ali Khán his governor there. Then, returning to Ahmedábád, he took up his residence in the Bhadra. There is little doubt that at this time Haidar Kúli aimed at bringing all Gujarát under his rule. He seized the imperial horses which passed through Ahmedabad on their way to Delhi, and confiscated many estates and gave them to his own men. On his way to enforce tribute from the Dungarpúr chiefs, he levied £8000 (Rs. 80,000) from Jamáwada. Through the mediation of the Udepúr Rana, and as he agreed to pay a tribute of £10,000 (1 *lakh* of rupees), the Rával of Dungarpur escaped. Haidar Kúli next proceeded to Bijapur, north of Ahmedábád, but hearing that the emperor was displeased at his assumption of the power of giving and changing grants of land, he returned to Ahmedábád and restored several estates which he had confiscated. The court continued to distrust him, and at the close of A.D. 1722 appointed Jankat-ul-Mulk Nizám-ul-Mulk fifty-first viceroy.

Haidar Kúli Khán, finding himself no match for the Nizám, was induced to retire quietly, and accordingly left Gujarát by way of Dungarpur. Shujáat Khán and Rustam Ali Khán accompanied him as far as Dungarpúr, and then returned to Ahmedábád. In the meantime the Nizám had reached Ujjain, and thence directed Sadar Khán Bábi to carry on the government till he should arrive, appointing at the same time his uncle Hámid Khán as deputy viceroy and Fátwi Khán as minister. Subsequently the Nizám came to Gujarát and chose officers of his own for places of trust, the chief of whom was Momín Khan, who was appointed governor of Surat. The Nizám then returned to Delhi, but, after a short time, disgusted with his treatment at court, he retired to the Dakhan, where, making Haidarabad his capital, he gradually began to act as an independent ruler. Meanwhile in Gujarát dissensions sprang up between Hámid Khán and other officers, but matters were arranged without any outbreak of hostility. Tribute was exacted from the chiefs on the banks of the Vátrak and from Modhera an unruly Koli village was burned down, and garrisons were placed in the Koli country. In A.D. 1723 Rustam Ali Khán and Shujáat Khán were ordered from Delhi to march on Jodhpur, which they captured and plundered, and then returned to Ahmedábád.

In A.D. 1723 Piláji Gáikwár, who had been long hovering on the frontier, marched on Surat and was opposed by Momín Khán, whom he defeated. After levying contributions from the surrounding country,

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

Haidar Kúli  
Khán  
Fiftieth Viceroy,  
1721-22.

Shows Signs of  
Independence  
and is called,  
1722.

Nizám-ul-Mulk  
Fifty-first  
Viceroy,  
1722.

Hámid Khán  
Deputy Viceroy;  
Momín Khan  
Governor of  
Surat,  
1722.

Increase of  
Marátha Power,  
1723.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
SARBULAND  
KHAN  
Fifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.

Appoint-  
Shujaat  
Khan  
his Deputy.

Nizam-ul-Mulk  
and Sarbuland  
Khan

Sarbuland  
Khan's  
Deputy  
Defeated,  
1724.

he returned to his head-quarters at Songad, and from this overran a considerable portion of the Surat territory, building several forts in the Rájpipla country. At the same time Kántaji Kadam Bānde, invading Gujarāt from the side of Dohad, began to levy fixed contributions. Though before this occasional demands had often been made, A.D. 1723 was the first year in which the Marathās imposed a regular tribute on Gujarāt. Momín Khán was now appointed provincial minister, and Rustam Ali Khán succeeded him as revenue officer of Surat, and, as the Nizām had gone to the Dakhan without the emperor's leave, Mubáriz-ul-Mulk Sarbuland Khán Bahadur Diláwar-Jang was appointed fifty-second viceroy of Gujarāt. He selected Shujaat Khán as his deputy, and made other arrangements for the government of the province. Hámid Khán, uncle and deputy of the Nizām, prepared to oppose Shujaát Khán, but through the intervention of Bábis Salábat Khán, Saifdar Khán, and Jawán Mard Khán, Hámid Khán evacuated the Bhadra, and withdrew to Dohad. Shujaát Khán now went to collect tribute, leaving Ibráhím Kúli Khán at Ahmedábád, while Rámraí was posted at Mahudha in Kaínra, with orders to watch the movements of Hámid Khán. As the viceroy was in need of money, he farmed to one Jivan Jugal the districts of Jamúnsar, Makbúlábád or Amol about twenty-two miles north of Broach, Dholka, and Broach. In A.D. 1724, he came to Ahmedábád with Ali Muhammad Khán father of the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedí*, as his private minister.

Rustam Ali, governor of Surat, having succeeded twice or thrice in defeating the Marathās under Pílaji Gaikwar, now offered, in conjunction with his brother Shujaát Khán, that if 20,000 men were placed under their orders, they would march against the Nizām. The emperor accepted this offer, allowing Rustam Ali to draw on the Surat treasury to the extent of £20,000 (Rs. 2 *lakh*s). Rustam Ali accordingly, with the aid of Ahmed Kúli his brother's son, equipped an army. In the meantime the Nizām was not idle. He promised to Kántaji Kadam Bānde a one-fourth share of the revenue of Gujarāt, provided he should be able, in concert with Hámid Khán, to re-conquer the province from Mubáriz-ul-Mulk. Shujaát Khan, who was now at Kadí, instead of following the advice of his minister and carefully watching Hámid Khán's movements from Kapadvanj, went to a distant part of the province. Hámid Khán seeing his opportunity, united his forces with those of Kántaji Kadam, and marched to Kapadvanj. Shujaát Khán hearing of this, advanced towards Ahmedábád and encamped at Dabhora under Bahyal, eighteen miles east of Ahmedábád and thence proceeded to Mota Medra, about six miles east of the capital. When he came so near Ahmedábád, many of his soldiers went without leave into the city to visit their families. The Marathās attacked his rear guard, and his men giving way took to flight. Hámid Khán seeing that Shujaát Khán had but a small force, marched between him and the capital. A battle was fought, in which Shujaát Khán was slain, and his two sons Hasán Kúli and Mustafa Kúli were taken prisoners. Shujaát Khán's head was cut off and sent to Saifdar Khán Bábi, to be sent to Ibráhím Kúli his son, who was doing duty as commandant at Ahmedábád. Hámid Khán took up his quarters in

the Shāhi Bāgh, and got possession of all Ahmedābād except the city. Hāmid Khān now sent a message to the emperor, that the Marāthās had been successful in defeating Shujāat Khān and conquering Gujarāt, but that he had defended Ahmedābād against them. The emperor sent him a dress of honour, but after a few days discovered that Hāmid's message was false. The Marāthās now marched through the country, collecting their *chaauth* or one-fourth and their *sardeshmukhi* or one-tenth shares of the revenue. Kāntāji went to Vīramgām and besieged the town, but on the promise of one of the chief inhabitants to raise a sum of £35,000 (Rs. 3½ *laks*) the Marāthās retired. Hāmid Khān who was now independent began to bestow lands and districts many of which remained with the grantees and were never recovered by future governors. Ibrāhīm Kūli, son of Shujāat Khān, in revenge for his father's death, determined to assassinate Hāmid Khān. The attempt failed. Hāmid Khān escaped and Ibrāhīm Kūli was slain.

Rustam Ali Khān, governor of Surat, in the hope of being revenged on Hāmid Khān, invited the aid of Pilāji Gāukwār, and it was agreed that they should meet on the north bank of the Narbada. Pilāji promised to aid Rustam Khān, and the allied armies, crossing the Mahi, encamped at Aras in the plain between Anand and the Mahi. Hāmid Khān, accompanied by Mīr Nathu, Muhammad Salabat Rohila, and Kāntāji Kadam, marched to oppose Rustam Khān. Hāmid Khān also entered into secret negotiations with Pilāji Gāukwār, who resolved to remain neutral and side with the conqueror. A battle was fought, in which, though Pilāji took no part, Hāmid Khān was defeated and put to flight, and Mīr Nathu was killed. After the fight Rustam Ali remained on the field of battle and liberated his nephews, plundering Hāmid Khān's camp. Pilāji plundered Rustam Ali's camp and then moved off, while Kāntāji carried away what was left in the camp of Hāmid Khān. Hāmid Khān reproached Kāntāji for his inactivity; but he pleaded in excuse that he was watching the mode of warfare amongst Muhammadans, and promised to attack Rustam Ali shortly. Now, as the Marāthās really desired to ruin Rustam Ali, who was their bitter foe, they after a few days surrounded him and cut off his supplies. Rustam Ali stood a blockade of eight days, and then forced his way through his enemies and went to Nāpād, about fourteen miles west of the Vāsud railway station in the Anand sub-division of the Xāra district, and thence through Kalamsar to Nāpa or Nāba under Petlād. The Marāthās still pursuing Rustam Ali retired to Vasu under Petlād, ten miles east of Nadiād and about twenty-five miles south of Ahmedābād, where he gave battle, and by a furious charge broke the Māratha line. The Marāthās rallied, and Rustam Ali and his men were defeated, Rustam Ali being slain and his nephews again taken prisoners. Rustam was buried on the field of battle and his head sent to Ahmedābād.

Hāmid Khān returned to Ahmedābād with the Marāthās, who saw that their only means of effecting a permanent footing in the province was by supporting him. Hāmid Khān then assigned a one-fourth share of the revenue of the territory north of the Mahi to Kāntāji, and to Pilāji a corresponding interest in the territory south of the Mahi,

## Chapter III.—

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
SARBI LAND  
KHAN  
Fifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.

The Marāthās  
engaged as  
Allies.

Battle of Aras.  
Hāmid Khān  
defeated by  
Rustam Ali,  
1723.

Marāthās join  
Hāmid Khān  
against  
Rustam Ali.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
SAHIB AND  
KHAN  
Fifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.**

**Mubariz-ul Mulk  
sent against the  
Marathas,  
1725.**

**Hamid Khan  
and other  
Maráthás  
Retire.**

**Mubariz-ul-  
Mulk enters  
Ahmedabad,  
1725.**

including Surat and Baroda. After this Hámid Khán acted tyrannically. He extorted large sums from the rich, and poisoned the two sons of Shujáát Khán. When the news of Kántáji's and Píláji's success reached the Dakhan, Trimbakráv Dhábáde, son of Khanderáv Senápati, came with a large army and laid siege to Cambay. While the siege was being pressed a quarrel among the Marátha leaders culminated in strife and bloodshed. Trimbakráv Senápati was wounded and the Marátha army had to disperse and retire.<sup>1</sup> Salábat Khán, leaving Ahmedábád, went to Virangám, and after some time, placing his nephew at Virangám, he went into Gohlyáda. When the news of the defeat and death of Rustam Ali reached Dehli, the emperor ordered Mubariz-ul-Mulk to take a strong army and proceed in person to Gujarát and expel Hámid Khán and the Maráthás. Mubáriz-ul-Mulk marched on Gujarát with a large army, assisted by Mahárája Abheysingh of Jodhpur, Chatarsingh Rája of Narwar in Bundelkhand, Chandrasingh, and the Mahárána of Udepur. On his arrival at Ajmír Mubáriz-ul-Mulk was received by his private minister Ali Muhammad Khan, who afterwards joined Jawán Mard Khan Babi in Rádhanpur, and united their troops with those under Mubariz-ul-Mulk. At that time Salábat Khán was removed from his government, and Saifdar Khan Bábi died. In obedience to the imperial order, Mubáriz-ul-Mulk marched from Ajmír and came to the Gujarát frontier. On his approach Hámid Khán returned to Ahmedábád. He placed Rúpsingh and Sardar Muhammad Ghorni in charge of the city and himself withdrew to Mehmúdábád. Mubáriz-ul-Mulk now sent Sheikh Ahlyár in advance with an army against Ahmedábád. When Sheikh Ahlyár arrived before the city, Muhammad Ghorni, who was dissatisfied with Hámid Khán for bringing in the Marathas, persuaded Rúpsingh to fly. In the meantime Mubáriz-ul-Mulk with the main body of his forces reached Sidhpur. Hámid Khán accompanied by a detachment of Marátha horse, now returned to Ahmedábád; but Muhammad Ghorni closed the gates, and would not suffer him to enter the city. Mubáriz-ul-Mulk marched to Mesána. About this time Ali Muhammad Khán, the father of the author of the *Mi'at-i-Ahmedi*, who was now with Mubáriz-ul-Mulk at Mesána, advised him to conciliate the influential Muhammadan family of Babi. Under his advice, Salábat Muhammad Khán Bábi was appointed governor of Virangam, and Jawán Mard Khán governor of Pátan. Shortly afterwards Murli-dhardás, the Gujaráti minister of Hámid Khán, deserted his master's declining cause. When Kántáji heard that Mubáriz-ul-Mulk had arrived at Pethápúr, only eighteen miles from Ahmedábád, he retired to Mehmúdábád. Before the close of A.D. 1725, Mubáriz-ul-Mulk reached Ahmedábád, where he was well received by the officials and merchants.

<sup>1</sup> See note 1 page 312. The author of the *Mi'at-i-Ahmedi* (Persian Text Royal Asiatic Society's Library Edition, I. 658) says Trimbakrav was slain. This seems an oversight as in another passage (Ditto, 738-739 see below page 312) he states that Trimbakrav was killed in 1731. The latter statement is in agreement with Grant Duff (*History of the Maráthás*, I. 364).

Hāmid Khān and Kantāji, who had by this time reached the banks of the Mahi, were now joined by Pīlāji Gāikwār. The Marāthā leaders, seeing that the only way to preserve their footing in the province was to espouse the cause of Hāmid Khān, united their forces with his, and prepared to march on Ahmedābād. Mubārīz-ul-Mulk deputed his son Khānahzād Khān with an army to oppose them, and made several appointments, among other changes raising Ali Muhammad Khān to the post of minister. Khānahzād Khān met the Marāthās near Sojitra, about ten miles north-west of Petlād, and defeated them, pursuing them as far as the Mahi. Then, returning, he was reinforced by his brother Shah Nawaz Khan, and marched against the Marāthās, who were encamped at Kapadvanj. Another battle was fought, and the Marāthās were again defeated and pursued as far as the hills of Ali-Mohan now Chota Udepur in the extreme east of the province. Khānahzād Khān now appointed Hasan-ud-dīn governor of Baroda, Broach, Jambūsar, and Makbulabad. Meanwhile Antāji Bhāskar, a Marāthā noble, entering Gujarāt from the side of Idar, laid siege to the town of Vadnagar, which, according to the old Gujarāt proverb, with Umreth in the Kana district, are the two golden leathers of the kingdom of Gujarāt. Vadnagar was inhabited by wealthy Brahmans of the Nagar caste who prayed Mubārīz-ul-Mulk to march to their relief; but as both his sons were in pursuit of the other Marāthā lands defeated at Kapadvanj, the viceroy had no troops to spare from the Ahmedabad garrison. The Nāgars accordingly, seeing no prospect of help, paid a sum of £10,000 (Rs. 4 lakhs) and Antāji Bhāskar retired. Kantāji and Pīlāji, encouraged by this raid of Antāji's, entered Gujarāt from different quarters. Kantāji again laid siege to Vadnagar. The Nāgars, unable to pay the contribution demanded, leaving their property fled and Kantāji in his attempts to unearth the buried treasure burned down the town. Shortly afterwards Umreth in the Kana district suffered a similar fate at the hands of Kantāji. In one of his raids Pīlāji Gāikwār advancing as far as Baroda was met by Khānahzād Khān, the son of the viceroy. Distrusting the issue of a battle Pīlāji fled to Cambay, and from Cambay withdrew to Sorath. For these services the emperor raised Khānahzād Khān to the rank of a noble, with the title Ghālib Jang. About this time Ali Muhammad Khān was dismissed from the post of minister, and in his stead first Muhammad Sayad Beg and afterwards Muhammad Sulaiman were appointed. Not long afterwards Ali Muhammad Khan was again entrusted with a command and raised to be governor of Dholka.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

SARRUJAND  
KHAN  
Fifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.

Defeat of the  
Marāthās at  
Sojitra and  
Kapadvanj,  
1725.

Marāthā  
Expedition  
against  
Vadnagar,  
1725.

Mubārīz-ul-Mulk  
pays the Marāthā  
Tribute,  
1726.

The Marāthās retired to the Dakhan, but, returning in A.D. 1726, compelled Mubārīz-ul-Mulk to confirm his predecessor's grants in their favour. The emperor refused to acknowledge any cessions of revenue to the Marāthās; and the viceroy, hard pressed for money, unable to obtain support from the court and receiving little help from his impoverished districts, was forced to impose fresh taxes on the citizens of Ahmedābād, and at the same time to send an army to collect their tribute from the Mahi chiefs. As part of the agreement between Mubārīz-ul-Mulk and the Marāthā chiefs Pīlāji was to receive a share in the

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor.  
1721-1748  
SARBF LAND  
KHAN  
Fifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.

Alliance with  
the Peshwa,  
1727.

Pilaji Garkwar  
obtains Baroda  
and Dabhoi,  
1727.

Capture of  
Champaner by  
the Marathas,  
1728.

revenue of the districts south of the Mahi. But Peshwa Bājirāv Balāl, to whom, as agent of his rival Khandegāv Dabhade, Pilāji was obnoxious, sent Udāji Pavār to drive Pilāji away. In this Udāji was successful, and defeating Pilāji forced him to seek the aid of Kāntāji. Kāntāji, perceiving that if the Peshwa became supreme his own independence would suffer, joined Pilāji, and marching together upon Baroda they endeavoured, but without success, to prevent the Musalmān governor Sadr-ud-dīn Khān from entering the city. About this time want of funds forced Mubārīz-ul-Mulk to sell the greater part of the Dholka district to different landholders.

In the following year, i.e. 1727, Bājirāv Peshwa began to negotiate with Mubārīz-ul-Mulk, undertaking that if the one-fourth and one-tenth shares in the revenue of the province were guaranteed to him, he would protect Gujarāt from other invaders. Though he did not consent to these proposals, the viceroy so far accepted the alliance of the Peshwa as to allow the governor of Baroda to aid Udāji Pavār against Pilāji. Pilāji and Kāntāji outmanœuvred Udāji and prevented him from effecting a junction with the governor of Baroda, who in the end was forced to abandon both that city and the stronghold of Dabhoi, while Udāji retired to Malwa. Pilāji Garkwar now obtained possession of Baroda. Mubārīz-ul-Mulk, still sorely pressed for funds, marched into Sorath to exact tribute. On reaching Viramgām, Salābat Muhammad Khān Bābi, on behalf of the Jām of Navānagar, presented the viceroy with ₹10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*), and for this service was rewarded with the gift of an elephant. Mubārīz-ul-Mulk then marched against Chhāva, the capital of the chief of Porbandar in the south-west of Kāthiāvāda. This chief, by putting to sea, hoped to escape the payment of tribute. But on hearing that the viceroy proposed to annex his territory and appoint an officer to govern it, he returned and agreed to pay a tribute of ₹4000 (Rs. 10,000).<sup>1</sup> On his way back to Ahmedābād, Mubārīz-ul-Mulk passed through Halvad in Jhālāvāda, and there married the daughter of Jhāla Pratāpsingh, the chief of that district, whom he accordingly exempted from the payment of tribute. About this time the viceroy received orders from the emperor to restore certain land which he had confiscated, and as he neglected to obey, certain estates of his in the Panjab were resumed. In the meantime Kṛishnāji, foster son of Kāntāji, made a sudden attack upon Chānpāner and captured that fortress, and from that time Kāntāji's agents remained permanently in Gujarāt to collect his share of the tribute.

In A.D. 1728 the minister Momīn Khān died, and in his place the emperor selected Momīn Khān's brother Abd-ul-Ghani Khān. About this time Asad Ali, governor of Jūnāgadh, also died, and on his death-bed appointed Salābat Muhammad Khān Bābi deputy governor of that fortress. Salābat Muhammad Khān sent his son Sher Khān Bābi to act on his behalf. When the emperor heard of the death of Asad Ali, he appointed Ghulām Muhy-ud-din Khān, son of the late Asad Ali, governor. Ghulām Muhy-ud-din did not proceed to Jūnāgadh but continued Sher Khān Bābi as his deputy. Mubārīz-ul-Mulk, now

<sup>1</sup> The amount was 1,25,000 *mahmūdīs*.

perceiving that neither Píláji nor Kántáji afforded any protection to Gujarát, but rather pillaged it, closed with the offers of Bájiráv Peshwa, and in A.D. 1729 formally granted to him the one-fourth and one-tenth shares of the revenue of the province. The Peshwa accordingly sent his brother Chinnájiráv to collect the tribute. Chinnáji plundered Dholka and the country near Chámpáner, while Muwáriz-ul-Mulk exacted tribute from the chiefs on the banks of the Vátrak. Kántáji now entered Gujarát and prepared for war in case Chinnáji and the viceroy should unite against him. His movements were not interfered with, and after collecting his share of the tribute, he retired to Sorath. The viceroy now marched against the Kolis, and after destroying many of them together with their wives and children, returned to Ahmedábád by way of Modasa and Ahmednagar. Ghulam Muhy-ud-dín Khán, governor of Júnágadh, who had not yet proceeded to his command, appointed a second deputy. Through the influence of the viceroy this appointment was not confirmed, and instead Sher Khán Bábi, son of Salábat Muhammad Khán, was placed in charge of that fortress.

In Surat the year A.D. 1729 was marked by a severe flood in the Tapti and by a somewhat serious local disturbance. The chief cause of the disturbance was Mulla Muhammad Ali, a rich Musalman trader of Surat. This man who, as Umda-tut-tujjár or chief of the merchants, had already a special rank in the city, was tempted to take advantage of the disorders of the time to raise himself to the position of an independent ruler. With this object he chose as his head-quarters the island of Piram in the Gulf of Cambay, near the port of Gogha, and there spent considerable sums in strengthening the island and tempting settlers to place themselves under his protection. As Piram was not popular Mulla Muhammad fixed on the village of Athva, on the left bank of the Tapti, about twelve miles from its mouth. Here he began to build a fort, but was ordered to desist by Sohráb Khán, the governor of Surat, from which city the proposed stronghold was only three miles distant. Mulla Muhammad so far from obeying, persuaded Beglar-Beg Khán the commander of the fort of Surat to side with him. Accordingly, next day, Beglar-Beg Khán bombarded the governor Sohráb Khán's residence, proclaiming that his own brother Teghbeg Khán was appointed governor of Surat. In the end Mulla Muhammad Ali induced the chief merchants of the city to pray for the removal of Saurál who pending receipt of orders from the emperor was made to hand over his official residence in the city to Teg-Beg Khán.

In the same year, A.D. 1729, Jawán Mard Khán Bábi was chosen governor of Pottlád, Ali Muhammad Khán was made collector of Ahmedábád, and Ali Muhammad's son, the author of the Mirát-i-Ahmedi and his brother were appointed governor and superintendent of the customs of that district. Ali Muhammad Khán shortly resigned and was succeeded by Rú-ín Khán. At this time Jawán Mard Khán Bábi, while punishing the Kolis of Bálór, probably Bhátod about fifteen miles east of Broach, was killed by a man of that tribe, and in revenge for his death the town of Bálór was plundered. On the death of Jawán Mard Khán, at the request of Salábat Muhammad Khán Bábi, his eldest son Kamál-ud-dín Khán Bábi received the districts of

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.Muhammad  
ShahEmperor,  
1721-1748.SARBI LAND  
KHANFifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.Grant of Tribute  
to the Peshwa,  
1729.Mulla  
Muhammad  
Ali raises a  
Disturbance  
at Surat,  
1729.Nadiad given  
in Farm,  
1729.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748**  
**SARBOJIT AND  
KHAN**  
**Fifty-second  
Viceroy,  
1723-1730.**

**Athva Fort,  
1730.**

**The Viceroy  
in Kathiyāda  
and Kachh,  
1730.**

**Riots at  
Ahmedabad.**

**MAHARAJA  
ABHEYSINGH  
Fifty-third  
Viceroy,  
1730-1733.**

Sami and Munjpur and the title of Jawān Mard Khān. At the same time the second son, Muhanamad Anwar, with the title of Saldar Khān, was appointed to the government of Rādhanpur. The viceroy now went to Nadiād, where Rāi Kishandās, agent of Jawān Mard Khān, received the district of Petlād in fann. From Nadiād Mubārīz-ul-Mulk went to collect tribute from Saudārsingh, the chief of Bhādarva in the Rewa Kantha about fifteen miles north of Baroda, on the banks of the Mahi, who, after some fighting, agreed to pay a sum of £2000 (Rs. 20,000). On his way back to Ahmedabad the viceroy levied tribute from the chief of Umeta, fifteen miles west of Baroda. As Rāi Kishandās failed to pay the sum agreed on for the fann of Petlād, an order was issued for his imprisonment. To save himself from the indignity he committed suicide.

When Kāntaji returned from Sorath he camped at Sānand, and his advanced guard carried off some of the viceroy's elephants which were grazing there. Men were sent in pursuit, but in vain, and the Marāthas escaped. Meanwhile, at Surat, Mulla Muhammad Ali continued to build the fort at Athva. At last his accomplice Beglar-Beg Khān the commander of the Surat fort, began to perceive that if the Athva fort were completed the Mulla would be in a position to obstruct the trade of the port of Surat. He consequently ordered him to stop building. In spite of this the Mulla succeeded in persuading Sohrab Khān to allow him to go on with his fort promising in return to get him confirmed as governor of Surat. Sohrab Khān agreed, and the fort was completed and Sohrab Khan was duly appointed governor. As the fort was immediately below Surat the revenue of Surat was greatly diminished, and Sohrab Khān, when it was too late, saw his mistake.

In A.D. 1730 Mubārīz-ul-Mulk went into Gohiyāda in south east Kathiyāda and levied tribute from Bhāysingh, chief of Sīhor; thence he proceeded to Mādhpur, a town under Porbandar, and laid it waste. While engaged at Mādhpur, Momīn Khan, son-in-law of the late Momīn Khan, owing to some misunderstanding with the viceroy suddenly set out for Ahmedabad and from Ahmedabad proceeded to Agra. The viceroy now marched in the direction of Kachh and refusing the offer of a yearly tribute of about £33,000 (10,00,000 *māhmūdīs*), advanced against Bhūj. He experienced great difficulty in crossing the Ran, and as the Rao had cut off all supplies, and as at the same time news arrived of disturbances in Ahmedābād, he was obliged, after a month and a half, to retire to Rādhanpur. The author of the *Mitr-i-Ahmedi* was ordered to suppress the Ahmedābād riots, which had arisen out of the levy of some fresh taxes, and was invested with the title of Hasan Muhammad Khān. In this year Udaikaran, Desāi of Viramgām, was murdered by a Kachbātī<sup>1</sup> of that town named Ali, and Sakābāt Muhammad Khān Babi, who was sent to investigate this murder, died on his way at Pāldi, a village on the right bank of the Sūbarnati opposite to Ahmedābād.

News was now (A.D. 1730) received that Mahārāja Abheysingh of Jodhpur had been appointed viceroy and had reached Pālanpur.

<sup>1</sup> Kachbātis are the descendants of the Musalman garrisons of some towns of north Gujarat. The Kachbātis of Viramgām were originally Tānk Rajputs.

The friends of order endeavoured to arrange a peaceable transfer between the Mahārāja and the late viceroy, but Mubārīz-ul-Mulk determined to try the chances of war, and prepared for resistance. At this time Mīr Ismaīl, deputy of Ghulām Muhy-ud-dīn Khān; arrived and took charge of the government of Jūnāgadh from Sher Khān Bābi. Mahārāja Abheysingh, after making various appointments, set out with his brother Vakhatsingh and 20,000 men to take over the government of Gujarāt. When he reached Pālanpur and saw that Mubārīz-ul-Mulk was determined on resistance, he sent an order to Sardār Muhammad Ghorn appointing him his minister and directing him to take possession of the city of Ahmedābād and drive out the late viceroy. As Sardār Muhammad was not strong enough to carry out these orders he awaited the Mahārāja's arrival. When the Mahārāja reached Sidhpur he was joined by Saifdar Khān Bābi and Jawān Mard Khān Bābi from Rādhanpur. They then advanced together to Adālaī, distant only about eight miles from the capital, their army increasing daily. Mubārīz-ul-Mulk was already encamped between Adālaī and the city, and on the approach of the Mahārāja a battle was fought in which the Mahārāja was defeated. Abheysingh changed his position, and another and bloodier engagement took place, in which both sides tried to kill the opposing commander. But as both Mubārīz-ul-Mulk and the Mahārāja fought disguised as common soldiers, neither party succeeded. At first the Mahārāja who had the advantage in position repulsed the enemy, but Mubārīz-ul-Mulk fought so desperately in the river-bed that the Rāthods gave way. They rallied and made one more desperate charge, but were met, repulsed, and finally pursued as far as Sarkhej. The Mahārāja, who had not expected so determined an opposition, now sent Momīn Khān and Amarsingh to negotiate with Mubārīz-ul-Mulk, who was still determined to resist to the uttermost. It was finally agreed that Mubārīz-ul-Mulk should receive a sum of £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*) and should surrender Ahmedābād to the Mahārāja. Mubārīz-ul-Mulk accordingly quitted the city and left for Agra by way of Udepur.

The Mahārāja entering Ahmedābād, appointed Ratansingh Bhandāri his deputy, and placed Fidā-ud-dīn Khān, cousin of Momīn Khān, in charge of the city police. Shortly afterwards Karīmūd Khān Jhālōri, governor of Pālanpur, who had accompanied the Mahārāja into Gujarāt, died. After the death of Salābat Muhammad Khān Bābi, his son, Sher Khān Bābi, was dismissed from the government of Jūnāgadh. He retired to his estate of Gogha, and when the Mahārāja arrived in Ahmedābād he paid his respects, presenting the viceroy with an elephant and some horses. The Mahārāja confirmed the lands assigned to his father, and reported his action to the emperor. Momīn Khān was made ruler of Cambay, and Fidā-ud-dīn Khān, his cousin, was made governor of the lands near that city, the revenue of which had been assigned to the Mahārāja. So great was the fear of the Marāthās, that Mustafīd Khān, the governor elect of Surat, instead of proceeding direct by land, went to Cambay. From Cambay he moved to Broach, and from Broach entered into negotiations with Pilāji Gāikwār, promising, if allowed to retain

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

Mahammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

Mahārāja  
Abheysingh  
Fifty-third  
Viceroy,  
1730-1733.

Mubārīz ul Mulk  
Replaces the New  
Viceroy.

Battle of Adālaī;  
the Mahārāja  
defeated by  
Mubārīz-ul-Mulk,  
1730.

Mubārīz-ul-Mulk  
Retires.

Government of  
Abheysingh.

Momīn Khān  
Ruler of Cambay,  
1730.

## Chapter III.

**Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748**  
**MAHARAJA  
ABHEYSINGH**  
Fifty-third  
Viceroy,  
1730-1733.

The Peshwa and  
Viceroy against  
Pilaji Gaikwar,  
1731.

The Peshwa  
Withdraws.

Defeats his  
Opponents.

Abdullah Beg  
appointed the  
Nizam's Deputy  
at Broach

possession of Surat, to pay Pilaji the one-fourth share of its revenues. Pilaji agreed, but Sohrab Khan, who was still in possession of Surat, refused to hand it over to Mustafid Khan. In this year also Vakhatsingh, brother of the Maharaja Abheysingh, was appointed governor of Patan, and sent a deputy to act for him. About the same time Mir Fakhr-ud-din, a follower of the late viceroy Mubáriz-ul-Mulk, leaving him secretly, came to Ahmedabad, and in an interview with the Maharaja obtained for himself the post of deputy governor of Junagadh. When he proceeded to take up his appointment he was opposed by Mir Ismail, and was killed in a battle fought near Amreli in central Kathiavada. Muhammad Pahar, son of Karimdad Khan Jhalori, was appointed governor of Palanpur in succession to his father, and Jawan Mard Khan was sent to Vadnagar.

In the following year, A.D. 1731, Bajirav Peshwa, entering Gujarat at the head of an army, advanced against Baroda, then in the possession of Pilaji Gaikwar. Afterwards, at the invitation of the Maharaja, he visited Ahmedabad and had a meeting with the viceroy in the Shahi Bagh. At this meeting it was agreed that Bajirav should assist Azmatullah, the governor of Baroda, in taking possession of that town and in expelling Pilaji Gaikwar. By this arrangement the viceroy hoped by playing off the Peshwa against Pilaji, to succeed in getting rid of the latter, while the Peshwa intended that if Pilaji was forced to give up Baroda, he himself should gain possession of that city. Accordingly the Peshwa, together with an army from the viceroy, marched on Baroda. They had scarcely laid siege to the city when the Peshwa heard that Nizam-ul-Mulk was advancing on Gujarat against him. Abandoning all operations against Baroda, the Peshwa withdrew, with all speed, to the Dakhan. On his way he encountered the army of Trimbakrav Senapati, who, together with Pilaji Kantaji and Udaji Pavar, had united to resist the pretensions of the Peshwa in Gujarat, and were also secretly leagued with the Nizam. An engagement was fought in which the Peshwa was victorious and Trimbakrav was slain.<sup>1</sup> The Peshwa at once pushed on to the Dakhan, contriving to avoid the Nizam, though his baggage was plundered by that chief, who had camped at Ghala Karmrej, on the river Tapi, about ten miles above Surat.

During these changes the city of Broach, which on account of the strength of its fort the Marathas had failed to take, was governed by Abdullah Beg, an officer originally appointed to that command by Mubáriz-ul-Mulk. Dissatisfied that the government of Gujarat should be in the hands of Abheysingh, Abdullah Beg, in A.D. 1731, entered into negotiations with the Nizam, offering to hold Broach as the Nizam's deputy. Nizam-ul-Mulk agreed, appointed Abdullah his deputy, and ennobled him with the title of Nek Alam Khan. About the same time Vakhatsingh, brother of the viceroy, withdrew to his chiefship of Nagar in Jodhpur, and Azmat-ullah went to Agra. After his safe arrival in the Dakhan Bajirav Peshwa entered into an agreement

<sup>1</sup> See note on page 306.

with the Nizám under the terms of which the grants of Dholka, Broach, Jambusar, and Makbulábád were continued to the Nizám. Momin Khán received the farm of Petlád, and Kántáji was confirmed in the share he had acquired of the revenues of Gujarát. In A.D. 1732 the paymaster, Amánatdí Khán, died, and was succeeded by Ghulám Hasan Khan, who sent Mujahid-ud-dín Khán to act as his deputy. Through the influence of Mulla Muhammad Ali, Sohráb Ali was now confirmed as governor of Surat, and Mustafid Khán was obliged to return to Ahmedábád.

Piláji Gaikwár as the agent of the deceased Khandaráv Dálháde Senápati, as the owner of the fort of Songad, and as the ally of the Bhils and Kolis, was naturally a thorn in the side of the viceroy Abheysingh. The recent acquisition of the town of Baroda and of the strong fortress of Dabhoi had made Piláji still more formidable. Under these circumstances, Abheysingh, who had long wished to recover Baroda and Dabhoi determined to assassinate Piláji, and this was effected by a Márvádi at the holy village of Dákor. The Marathás slew the assassin and withdrew across the Mahi, burning the body of Piláji at the village of Sánoli or Saonli, fourteen miles north of Baroda. They then evacuated the district of Baroda, retiring to the fortress of Dabhoi. On hearing of the death of Piláji the viceroy immediately advanced against the Marathás, and, after taking possession of Baroda, laid siege to Dabhoi. He failed to capture this fortress, and as the rainy season had set in and provisions were scarce, he was obliged to retire. He then went to Baroda, and after placing Sher Khán Babi in charge of the city, returned to Ahmedábád. In this year, A.D. 1732, Gujarát was wasted by famine.

Meanwhile at Surat Mulla Muhammad Ali of Athva was again the cause of disturbance. Resisting with force the demand of a sum of £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*) by Sohráb Khan, the governor of Surat, he succeeded in driving Sohráb Khán out of the city, and the government of Surat was then usurped by Teghbeg Khán, a brother of Beglar-Beg Khán. The success of the Mulla against Soráb Khán made him so forgetful of his position that he arrogated to himself all the emblems of the governor's office and wrote to the emperor asking a patent of the governorship of Surat in the name of his son Mulla Fakr-ud-din. The messengers bearing these communications were intercepted at Broach by the partisans of Teghbeg, who determined to remove this powerful cause of anxiety. Teghbeg Khán, inviting Muhammad Ali to an entertainment, placed him in confinement, and after keeping him in prison for two years, in A.D. 1734 put him to death. Teghbeg also took possession of the fort of Athva, and plundered it. Sohráb Khán, seeing that he could not recover Surat, went with Sayad Wali to Gogha, where his relatives lived, and from that, proceeding to Bhávnagar settled there. When the emperor heard what had happened, he appointed Momin Khán to Surat and Teghbeg Khán to Cambay. Momin Khán sent Sayad Núrullah to act for him, but he was defeated by Teghbeg Khán, who afterwards contrived, in A.D. 1733, to be formally appointed governor of Surat with the title of Bahádúr.

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Muhammad Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
MAHARAJA  
ABHEYSINGH  
Fifty-third  
Viceroy,  
1730-1733.

The Viceroy  
procures the  
Death of  
Piláji Gaikwár,  
1732 ;

and takes Baroda.

Famine,  
1732.

Affairs at Surat,  
1732.

Teghbeg Khán  
Governor of  
Surat.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721 - 1748.  
MAHARAJA  
ABHAYSINGH  
Fifty-third  
Viceroy,  
1730-1733.**

**RATANSINGH  
BHANDARI  
Deputy Viceroy,  
1733-1737.**

**The Maráthás  
Return.**

**Contest for the  
government of  
Gogha.**

**Disturbance  
at Viramgám,  
1734.**

**Baroda  
recovered by the  
Maráthás,  
1734.**

When Umábái, widow of Khandaráv Senápati, heard of the assassination of Piláji Gáikwár, she determined to avenge his death. Collecting an army and taking with her Kántáji Kadam and Dímaji Gáikwár, son of Piláji, she marched upon Ahmedábád. As the Maráthás failed to do more than slay a Rájput leader named Jívaráj they came to terms. In the end it was agreed that in addition to the one-fourth and the one-tenth shares of the revenue a sum of £8000 (Rs. 80,000) should be paid from the Ahmedábád treasury, Jawán Mard Khán being kept as a hostage till the payments were made. For his services on this occasion Jawan Mard Khán was made governor of Viramgám. During this year an imperial order appointed Khushálchand Sheth, son of Sántidás, Nagar Sheth or chief merchant of Ahmedábád. The Maráthás plundered Rasúlibád a mile south of Ahmedábád and its excellent library was pillaged. Umábái now marched upon Baroda, and the governor, Sher Khan Bábi, prepared to oppose the Maráthás. But Umábái, sending a message to Sher Khán, explained that she had just concluded a peace with the Mahárája, and was suffered to pass unmolested. The emperor, satisfied with the arrangements made by the Mahárája, presented him with a dress of honour. In this year the Mahárája went to court by way of Jodhpur, and appointed Ratansingh Bhandári as his deputy, and the author of the *Marát-i-Ahmedí* as news recorder. In the same year, A.D. 1733, Ghulám Muhy-ud-dín Khán, governor of Júnágadh died, and his son Mír Hazabr Khán was selected to fill his place.

Meanwhile as the Maráthás had not received their rights, Jádoji Dábháde, son of Umábái, returned to Gujarat. Peace was concluded on the former basis, and Jádoji marched into Sorath to exact tribute. In this year the Kols of the Chúnvál and Kámkrej committed many excesses, and a Rájput noble was robbed in the Pátan district. In the meantime Sohráb Khán, the former governor of Surat, who had been kindly received by Bhávsinghji the chief of Sihor, began to raise a following and was appointed collector of arrears in Sorath. He chose Sayad Núrullah as his deputy, and sent him to recover the revenue for the current year.

On the death of Salábat Khán Bábi, though the Mahárája had endeavoured to get Sher Khán Bábi appointed in place of his father, Gogha had been granted to Burhán-ul-Mulk, who chose Sohráb Khán as his deputy. At this time Sher Khán Bábi was at Baroda, and his younger brother, though he resisted, was compelled to leave Gogha. The deputy governor of Sorath complained to the governor of the oppressive conduct of Sohráb Khán. But Burhán-ul-Mulk supported Sohráb and having obtained for himself the government of Sorath, sent Sohráb Khán as his deputy to Júnágadh. In A.D. 1734, Ratansingh Bhandári, the deputy viceroy, who held in hatred Bhávsingh, son of Udaikaran, the hereditary officer of Viramgám, persuaded Jawán-Mard Khán to imprison him and send him to Ahmedábád. Jawán-Mard Khán went so far as to arrest Bhávsingh, but was forced by his supporters to release him.

In this year Sher Khán Bábi, governor of Baroda, went to visit his lands at Bálásinor, leaving Muhammad Sarbúz in command at Baroda,

Mahādāji Gaikwār, brother of Pilāji, who then held Jambúsar, sending to Songad to Dāmāji for aid, marched on Baroda with a strong force. The garrison made a brave defence, and Sher Khán hearing of the attack at Bálásinor, called for aid from Ratansingh Bhandári, the deputy viceroy, who directed Momín Khán, the governor of Cambay, to join Sher Khán and drive back the Maráthás. Sher Khán started at once for Baroda. But Mahādāji leaving a sufficient force before the town pushed on with the bulk of his army to meet Sher Khán, and, though he and his men fought bravely, defeated him, and then returned to Baroda, Sher Khán retiring to Bálásinor. Momín Khán, who arrived after Sher Khán's defeat, did not deem it prudent to engage the Maráthás, and retired to Cambay. In the meantime the garrison of Baroda, hopeless of succour, surrendered the town, and since that day Baroda has continued to be the head-quarters of the Gaikwār family.

Since Jawán Mard Khán's capture of Bhávsingh of Víramgám he had become much disliked. For this reason Ratansingh Bhandári, the deputy viceroy, transferred him to Kadi and Bijapur, and in his place appointed Sher Khán Bábi, whose father Muhammad Salábát Khán. Bábi had been a popular governor of Víramgám. At this time Dhanrúp Bhandári, governor of Petlād, died, and the farm of the districts of Nakhad, Arhar-Matar, Petlād, and Mahudhr was given to Momín Khán. Mulla Muhammad Ali managed to write letters from his confinement at Surat to the Nizám; and as that chief was now not far from Surat, he wrote urgently to Teghbeg Khán to release him. Teghbeg Khán put the Mulla to death, and bribing the Nizám's messenger, gave out that he had died of joy at his release. Khushálehband, the chief of the merchants of Ahmedábad, having had a difference with Ratansingh, was forced to leave the city, and sought shelter at Cambay and afterwards at Júnágadh. Jawán Mard Khán, who was of an ambitious temperament, now conceived the design of conquering Ídar from Auandsingh and Ráisingh, brothers of the Maharája Abheysingh. He accordingly marched upon Ídar, taking with him as allies Aghráji Koli of Katosan and Koli Amra of Elol Kánrah. In this strait Anandsingh and Ráisingh sought the aid of Malhárráv Holkár and Ráñoji Sindia, who were at this time in Málwa. The Marátha chiefs at once marched to the help of Ídar, and Jawán Mard Khán, disbelieving the report of Marátha aid, continued to advance until he found himself opposed by an overwhelming force. Negotiations were entered into, and Jawán Mard Khán agreed to pay a sum of £17,500 (Rs. 1,75,000). Of the total amount £2500 (Rs. 25,000) were paid at once, and Zoríwar Khán, brother of Jawán Mard Khán, and Ajabsingh, agent of Aghráji Koli, were kept as hostages until the balance should be paid. In this year Teghbeg Khán of Surat caused a wealthy merchant named Ahmed Chalabi to be assassinated, and confiscated his property. He also caused a fanatic named Sayad Ali to be put to death by certain Afgháns, as he considered that he might excite sedition.

In the following year (A.D. 1735) Dholka was assigned to Ratansingh Bhandári, and through the influence of Burhán-ul-Mulk, Sohráb

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

RATANSINGH  
BHANDÁRI  
Deputy Viceroy  
in charge,  
1733-1737.

Change of  
Governor at  
Víramgám.

Jawán Mard  
Khán fails in  
an attempt on  
Ídar.

Rivalry of Ratan-  
singh Bhandari and  
Sohrab Khan,  
1735.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

RATANSINGH  
BHANDARI

Deputy Viceroy  
in charge,  
1733-1737.

Battle of Dhol.  
Defeat and Death  
of Sohrab Khan,  
1735.

Khán was appointed governor of Vírangám. Ratansingh resented this, and eventually Vírangám was conferred on the Mahárája Abheysingh. When this order reached Sohrab Khán, he forwarded it to Burhán-ul-Mulk, and in consequence of Burhán-ul-Mulk's remonstrances, the arrangements were changed and Sohráb khán appointed governor. Upon this Sohráb Kháu, leaving Sádak Ali as his deputy in Junágadh, marched for Vírangám; while Ratansingh Bhandári, hearing of Sohráb Khán's approach, summoned Momín Khín and others to his assistance, and with his own army proceeded to Dholka and plundered Koth. From Koth he advanced and pitched at Harálah, about ten miles from Sohrab Khán's camp, and here he was joined by Momín Khán and others whom he had summoned to support him. After the union of these forces he marched to Dholi, six miles from Dhandhuka, at which place Sohrab Khán was then encamped. Ratansingh Bhandári now proposed that peace should be concluded, and that Sohráb Khán should enjoy Vírangám until final orders were passed by the emperor. Safdar Khán Bábi and others went to Sohrab Khán and endeavoured to bring him to consent to these terms, but he would not listen, and on both sides preparations were made for battle. During the following night Ratansingh Bhandári planned an attack on Sohrab Khán's camp. The surprise was complete. Sohráb Khán's troops fled, and himself, mortally wounded, shortly afterwards died. By the death of Sohráb Khán the family of Kázim Beg khán became extinct. He was buried at Sihor in Káthiaváda.

Rivalry between  
Ratansingh  
Bhandari and  
Momín Khan,  
1735.

After this success a single horseman attacked and wounded Ratansingh Bhandári in two places. The horseman was at once slain, but no one was able to recognize him. Ratansingh, who in two months had recovered from his injuries, now determined to attack Momín Khán, as that officer in the recent struggle had taken part with Sohrab Khán. Momín Khán hearing of Ratansingh's intentions, withdrew to Cambay. In the course of this year, on the expiry of the period of the farm of Mahudha, Arhar-Mátar, and Nadiad, these districts were transferred from Momín Khán to Safdar Khán Bábi. Kalánehand, a man of low origin, was appointed to Vírangám in place of Sher Khán Bábi, and instead of Sohráb khán, Muhsin Khán Khálvi was made deputy governor of Sorath.

MARATHA  
AFFAIRS.

Dámaji Gáikwár  
and Kántaji,  
1735.

Battle of  
Anand Mogri.  
Defeat of  
Kántaji.

About this time Dámaji Gáikwár, who had been chosen by Umábái as her representative in Gujarát, appointed Rangoji to act as his agent. Kántaji being dissatisfied with this arrangement, in which his rights were ignored, marched into Gujarát. Rangoji met him, and a battle was fought at Anand-Mogri, twenty-five miles south-east of Kaira, in which Kántaji was defeated and his son killed. In consequence of this reverse Kántaji retired to Petlád. Momín Khán, who with his army was drawn up near Petlád to oppose Rangoji, was compelled to retire to Cambay, where peace was concluded on condition that Dámaji should receive the one-fourth share of the revenues of the country north of the Mahi. As the districts where these battles were fought were held in farm by Safdar Khán Bábi, he suffered much loss, and consequently retired to Rádhanpur. Rangoji was joined by Dámaji Gáikwár, and these two leaders went together to Dholka. While they

were there, Bhávsingh of Viramgám invited them to that town, both on account of the annoyance he suffered from the Márvádís and that he might take vengeance on the Kasbátís for the murder of his father Udaikaran. He accordingly treacherously admitted the Maráthás and slew Daulat Muhammad Tank, brother of the murderer of his father, and expelled the rest of the Kasbátís, while Kalián, the Márvádi administrator, was permitted to go to Ahmedábád. Leaving Rangoji at Viramgám, Dimáji marched into Sorath to levy tribute from the chiefs, and after collecting a portion of his dues, returned to the Dakhan. In the following year (A.D. 1736) Rangoji advanced as far as Bávla near Dholka wasting the country. Ratansingh Bhandári, the deputy viceroy, marched against him, and forced him to retire to Viramgám. Ratansingh pursued the Maráthás to Viramgám, attacked and defeated them capturing their baggage, but failed to prevent them taking shelter in the town. About this time some Maráthá horse who were at Sarnal, otherwise called Thásra, joined the Kolís of those parts, advanced with them against Kapadvanj and without any serious resistance succeeded in capturing the town. Meanwhile though Ratansingh had summoned Momín Khán to his aid, he delayed coming, as he began to scheme independence at Camlay.

• Ratansingh Bhandári heard that Pratápráy, brother of Dimáji, and Deváji Takpar were advancing on Ahmedábád with 10,000 horse. At first he thought this a device to draw him from Viramgám, to whose walls his mines had reached. On ascertaining from trusty spies that the report was true, he raised the siege of Viramgám, returned rapidly to Ahmedábád, and pushing forward to meet Pratápráy, exacted tribute from the chiefs on the banks of the Vátrak. As Pratápráy drew near, the governor of the Bhil district retired before him, and he continuing his advance, passed through Valad and Pethápur, and so by way of Chhíla reached Dholka. Here through Muhammad Ismaíl, the governor of Dholka, he demanded from the Bhandári his share of the revenue. Afterwards, leaving 2000 horse in Dholka, he went to Dhandhúka. In the meantime Kántáji, who was a follower of Bajráv Peshwa, joining with Malhírráy Holkar, advanced upon Ídar, and coming against Danta, plundered that town. Some Nágár Bráhmans of the town of Vadnagar, who were settled in Danta, tried to escape to the hills, but were intercepted and pillaged. The Maráthás then proceeded to Vadnagar and plundered the town. From Vadnagar they went as far as Palampur, where Pahar Khán Jhálóri, being unable to oppose them, agreed to pay a tribute of £10,000 (Rs. 1·lakh). Kántáji and Malhírráy Holkar then marched into Márvár, while Pratápráy and Rangoji crossed over from Dhandhuka into Káthiávada and Gohilváda. About this time Muhammad Pahár Khán Jhálóri was appointed deputy governor of Pátan on behalf of Vakhatsingh. As no settlement of his demands on the revenues of Dholka had yet been made, Pratápráy returned to that town and sent Narhar Pandit to receive the tribute due to him. Afterwards proceeding to Baroda with Rangoji they were summoned to Sorath by Dámáji to assist him. • Sher Khán Bábi, who up to his time had been at Kaira, now came to Ahmedábád, and as the deputy viceroy

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

RATANSINGH  
BHANDÁRI  
Deputy Viceroy  
in charge,  
1733-1737.

The Maráthás  
help Bhávsingh  
to expel the  
Viramgám  
Kasbátís.

The Garkvár  
and Peshwa  
plunder the  
Country.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

Momin Khan  
Fifty-fourth  
Viceroy,  
1737.

was displeased with Momin Khán's conduct when Viramgám was besieged, he appointed Sher Khán his own deputy at Petlād, Arhar-Mātar, and Nadiād. Afterwards on Momin Khán's remonstrance Subhāchand Mārvādi was appointed to examine the accounts and receive the revenue in place of Sher Khán. In A.D. 1737 Dāmājī's brother Pratiaprāv, returning to his country after exacting tribute from the chiefs of Sorath, died of small-pox at Kānkar near Dholka. Momin Khán seeing that Sher Khán had not yet left Kaira, collected some men and came to Petlād, while Sher Khán went to Dehgam and awaited the departure of Rangoji. Ratansingh Bhandari made preparations to help Sher Khán and Momin Khán returned to Cambay.

At this time as the Mahārāja Abheysingh was not in favour at court, Momin Khán was appointed fifty-fourth viceroy. As he was unable to effect anything by himself he persuaded Jawán Mard Khán Bābi to join him by a promise of the government of Pātan and directed him to proceed and take up that appointment. Now the Jhaloris were allies of the Rāthods, and Pahir Khán Jhalori, then in command of Pātan, opposed Jawán Mard Khán, but was finally obliged to vacate Pātan. Momin Khán, who had not hitherto produced the order appointing him viceroy, now made it public and began to act as viceroy with the title of Najm ud-daulah Momin Khán Bahādur Firūz Jang, and in A.D. 1737 sent a copy of this order to Abdūl Husain Khán, the deputy minister, and to Mustafid Khán, who held the office of Kāzi.

Sher Khán Bābi, wishing to remain neutral, retired to Balāsiner and Momin Khán summoned Rangoji, who was in the neighbourhood of Cambay, to his assistance. Rangoji agreed to aid him in expelling the Mārvadis, on condition that, if successful, he should be granted one-half of the produce of Gujarāt except the city of Ahmedābād, the lands in the neighbourhood of the city, and the port of Cambay. This disastrous alliance with the Marāthās gave the last blow to Mughal power in Gujarāt, which otherwise might have lingered for at least a quarter of a century. Momin Khán lived to repent his conduct.

When Ratansingh Bhandari heard of the appointment of Momin Khán to be viceroy he wrote to Mahārāja Abheysingh for orders. Meanwhile he sent Muhammadan officials to Cambay to persuade Momin Khán to take no further steps until a reply should be received to the reference Momin Khán had made to Agra. The reply of the Mahārāja was that Ratansingh should resist Momin Khán if he could. Ratansingh prepared to defend Ahmedābād while Momin Khán collecting an army, camped at the Nāransar lake.

From the Nāransar lake where Momin Khán remained encamped for one and a half months collecting his partisans he advanced to Sojitra, where he was joined by Jawán Mard Khán Bābi; and proceeding together they came to Vasu under Petlād, about twenty-six miles from Ahmedābād, and from Vasu to Kaira, about eighteen miles from the capital. At Kaira they encamped on the banks of the Vātrak, where, owing to the incessant rain, they were forced to remain for about a month. When the rain abated and the rivers were fordable, Momin Khán, moving to Ahmedābād, encamped in front of the city

on the Kānkariya tank and prepared for a siege. About the same time Momín Khān's manager, Vajerim, whom he had sent to Songad to solicit Dāmāji to march in person to his assistance, arrived and informed him that Dāmāji would join him shortly. Zorāwar Khān, who had been left at the Maratha camp as security for the payment of the tribute, was recalled, and instead the district of Parāntij was formally assigned to the Maráthās in payment of their demands. Some of the Mahārāja's guns, which were being sent to Ahmedābād by his agents at Surat through Cambay for facility of transit, were about this time captured by a party of Momín Khān's men. When Ratansingh Bhandari wrote to the Mahārāja of Momín Khān's advance on Ahmedābād, the Mahārāja was much displeased, and went from the emperor's presence in anger. The nobles fearing the consequences, recalled him, and persuaded the emperor to re-appoint him viceroy of Gujarāt.

Momín Khān was secretly enjoined to disregard the Mahārāja's appointment and persevere in expelling the Rāthods, and was assured of the emperor's approbation of this line of conduct. He therefore continued to prosecute the siege with vigour. In the meantime another order was received from the imperial court, confirming the reappointment of the Mahārāja and appointing Fidā-ud dīn Khān to guard the city with 500 men, directing also that Momín Khān should return to Cambay. It was further stated that, as Ratansingh Bhandari had acted oppressively, some other person should be appointed deputy to fill his place, and that in the meantime a Rājput noble, named Abhaikaran, was to carry on the government. Shortly before this Muhammad Bākīr Khān, son of Muṭamad Khān, joined Momín Khān from Surat, while Sadik Ali Khān and his nephew reinforced him from Junāgadh. When Momín Khān was informed of the purport of the imperial order he agreed to return to Cambay, provided Ratansingh Bhandari would quit the city, hand over charge to Abhaikaran, and admit Fidā-ud-dīn Khān and his men into the city.

Ratansingh Bhandari determined not to leave the city, and prepared to defend himself to the last. Dāmāji Gāikwār now joined Momín Khān from Songad. Momín Khān met Dāmāji at L'sanpur, three miles from Ahmedabad, and made great show of friendship, calling him his brother. When Ratansingh Bhandari heard of the arrangements made between Dāmāji and Momín Khān, he sent a message to Dāmāji saying, 'Momín Khān has promised Rangoji half of the revenues of Gujarāt excepting the city of Ahmedabad, the lands immediately round it, and Cambay. If you will join me, I will give you half of everything not excepting the city nor Cambay, and will send to your camp some of my chief landholders as security if you agree.' Dāmāji showed this to Momín Khān, and asked him what he proposed to do. Momín Khān now perforce agreed to do the same; but instead of Cambay offered to make over to the Maráthās the whole district of Viramgam. Dāmāji, accepting these terms, ceased to negotiate with Ratansingh. He then went on pilgrimage to Dūdesar, and returning in the same year, A.D. 1738, he and Rangoji began active operations against Ahmedābād. Their bombardment did so much

**Chapter III.****Mughal Viceroy.**

Muhammad Shāh  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
Momín Khān  
Fifty-fourth  
Viceroy,  
1737.

Lays Siege to  
Ahmedābād.

MAHARAJA  
ABHAISINGH  
Fifty-fifth  
Viceroy,  
1737.

Momín Khān  
continues the  
Siege of  
Ahmedābād.

Defence of the  
City by  
Ratansingh  
Bhandari.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
MAHARAJA  
ARJUNSINGH  
Fifty-fifth  
Viceroy,  
1737.

Momin Khan  
captures  
Ahmedabad,  
1738.

damage to the city that Momin Khan repented having called them to his aid, and foresaw that if the Maráthás once gained any portion of the city it would be no easy matter to drive them out. Momin Khan now sent the writer of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi* to Ratansingh Bhandári, in hopes that he might withdraw peaceably, but Ratansingh refused to listen to any terms. After some time the Musalmáns under Kázim Ali Khan and others, and the Maráthás under Báburáv endeavoured to take the city by storm, but after a bloody contest were forced to retire. Next day Ratansingh, seeing that he could not long hold the city, entered into a negotiation with Momin Khan, and, on receiving a sum of money for his expenses, and on being allowed to retire with the honours of war, left the city.

Momin Khan entered Ahmedábád. On the capture of the city, in accordance with Momin Khan's engagement, half of it was handed to the Maráthás. Momin Khan sent news of what had taken place to the emperor, and appointed Fida-ud-dín Khan his deputy. Dámáji, who in the meantime had been to Sorath, now returned and was met by Rangoji, who accompanied him as far as the banks of the Mahi, whence Rangoji proceeded to Dholka. After spending a few days at Dholka, Rangoji returned to Ahmedabad and took charge of his share of the city, which comprised the Bákhar, Khánjehán, and Jamálpur quarters as far as the Astoria and Raipur gates. The city was thus equally divided, and the Astoria and Raipur gates were guarded by the Maráthas. At that time the inhabitants of Ahmedábád were chiefly Muhammadans, and the Maráthás, accustomed to extortion, attempting to oppress them, they rose against the strangers, and after a severe affray expelled the greater part of them from the city. Momin Khan, though secretly pleased, affected ignorance and sent Fida-ud-dín Khan to reassure Rangoji. This with some difficulty he succeeded in doing and Rangoji remained in the city. Jawán Mard Khan was sent to Pátan, and, instead of Parántij, the district of Kherálu was granted to Zoráwar Khan Babi.

Momin Khan  
Fifty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1738-1743.  
Prosperity of  
Ahmedabad,  
1738.

With the cessation of Marátha oppression, Ahmedábád began to recover its splendour and opulence. The emperor was much pleased with Momin Khan, and, raising his rank, presented him with a dress of honour, a sword, and other articles of value. At the close of the rainy season Momin Khan went to levy tribute from the chiefs on the banks of the Sílarnati, and Rangoji was asked to accompany him. They marched to Adálatj whence Fida-ud-dín Khan, the deputy viceroy, returned to the city accompanied by Rámáji as deputy of Rangoji. Jawán Mard Khan and Sher Khan Babi now joined the viceroy's camp, and, about the same time Hathising, chief of Pethápur, paid a visit to the viceroy and settled his tribute. From Adálatj they advanced to Mánasa, and were met by the Mánasa chief. From Mánasa they proceeded to Kadi, and from Kadi to Bijápur. After Momin Khan left the people of Ahmedábád were badly treated, and Rangoji, leaving his brother Akoji, in camp, returned to the capital, whence he marched towards Víramgám and Sorath. Momin Khan went from Bijápur to Ídar, and there levied tribute from the chiefs of Mohanpur and Ranasan.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor.  
1721-1749.

Momin Khan  
Fifty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1738-1743.

The Viceroy  
collects Tribute,  
1738.

When Momin Khan arrived at Idar, Anandsingh and Raisingh, brothers of Maharaja Abheysingh, went to him and paid the tribute of Mohanpur and Ranasan as being within the limits of the Idar territory. The matter was amicably settled, and the two brothers accompanied the viceroy as far as the Idar frontier, when Anandsingh returned to Idar, and Raisingh, at Momin Khan's request, remained with him, Momin Khan undertaking to pay the expenses of his men. Prathiraj, the chief of Mansa, agreed to pay £2300 (Rs. 23,000) and the chief of Varsola £1000 (Rs. 10,000) as tribute. At this time Sher Muhammad Khan Babi was appointed to succeed Mir Dost Ali as deputy governor of Sorath. The Marathas, who had attempted to deprive some of the Rasulabad and Batwa Sayads of their land, were attacked by the Muhammadan population, and a few men were wounded on either side. Momin Khan, receiving tribute from various chiefs, had now reached Palanpur, and Pahar Khan Jhalori, the governor of that place, was introduced to the viceroy by Sher Khan Babi. As news was now received that Devaji Takpur was advancing through the Baroda districts, Momin Khan marched towards Ahmedabad, dismissing Pahar Khan Jhalori on the Palanpur frontier. Jawan Marid Khan Babi, appointing his brother Safdar Khan Babi as his deputy at Patan, pushed forward in advance for Ahmedabad. Momin Khan, who had been chosen by Mir Huzabr Ali as his deputy in Sorath, now arrived and complained to Momin Khan regarding Sher Khan Babi's appointment. Momin Khan said that, as neither had assumed charge of their duties, they should await final orders from the emperor. He then advanced to Hajipur, and thence encamped on the side of the city near Bahrampur and occupied himself in strengthening the city defences. From that camp he proceeded to Isanpur four miles south of Ahmedabad on his way to levy tribute from the Koli chiefs of the banks of the Vatrak. After this he proceeded to Kulej on the Vatrak and levied tribute from the Koli chiefs of that neighbourhood. Hearing that Damaji had left Songad, and crossing the Mahi had gone to Aris, Momin Khan struck his camp and returned to the city, while Damaji going to Dholka marched from that to Sorath. Momin Khan now permitted Sher Khan to return to his lands in Gogha, whence he proceeded to Junagadh and took charge of the office of deputy governor.

In 1738, Mir Huzabr Khan, the governor of Sorath, died, and as Sher Khan had occupied Junagadh, and taken into his employ all the troops of Mir Dost Ali, Momin Khan was obliged to resign his pretensions and return. The emperor now appointed Himmat Ali Khan, nephew of Momin Khan, governor of Sorath, and he wrote to his uncle to choose a fitting deputy. Momin Khan, as the Maratha incursions into Sorath increased yearly, and as Sher Khan Babi was a man able to hold his own with them, suffered him to remain as deputy. When Damaji returned to Viramgam, after levying tribute from the chiefs of Sorath, he was obliged to march against Kanji Koli, the chief of Chhaniar in the Chuvál. As he could not prevail against them he was forced to call on Momin Khan for aid. Momin Khan sent Fida-ud-din Khan at the head of a well-equipped army. On their approach the

Sher Khan Babi  
Deputy Governor  
of Sorath,  
1738.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

Momin Khan  
Fifty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1738-1743.

The  
Deputy Viceroy  
collects tribute,  
1739.

Kolis fled, and the village was burned, and Fida-ud-din Khan returned to the capital. Dámáji, leaving Rangoji as his deputy, returned to Songad. In this year, A.D. 1738, Hindustán was invaded by the great Persian Nádir Sháh, Delhi sacked, and the emperor made prisoner. Except that coin was struck in Nádir's name, the collapse of Mughal power caused little change in Gujarát.

In A.D. 1739 Fida-ud-din Khan was sent to levy tribute from the chiefs on the banks of the Sábarmati, and, accompanied by Jawán Mard Khán Babi and Rájá Ráisingh of Idar, marched to Charárah. As the village of Pánnul under Bijápúr had been assigned to the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi*, he accompanied Fida-ud-din Khan, who marched to Ahmednagar, and demanded tribute from Jitsingh of Mohánpur and Rámásan. Jitsingh resisted and a doubtful battle was fought. Next day Fida-ud-din Khan changed his position and again attacked Jitsingh, who being defeated agreed to pay £1000 (Rs. 10,000). They then went to Idar, where they were hospitably received by Rájá Raising, who presented the leaders with horses. From Idar they proceeded to Vadnagar, which was under Jawán Mard Khán, who also received them courteously and presented horses. The army then marched to Visalnagar. On the arrival of the troops at Visalnagar, Jawán Mard Khán requested Fida-ud-din Khan to subdue Jámáji the Koli chief of Thara-Jámpur in the Kámkrej, who was then at Bálisána under Pátan and who was continually plundering the country. Fida-ud-din Khan marched to Bálisána, but Jámáji fled to Thara-Jámpur without risking a battle and the Muhammadans plundered Thara-Jámpur. From Bálisána Fida-ud-din Khan marched to Kadi, and allowing Jawán Mard Khán to return to Patan proceeded to Ahmedabád.

At Ahmedabád disputes between Rangoji and Momin Khán regarding the government of the city were frequent. In one serious disturbance Momin Khán was worsted and forced to sue for peace and grant Rangoji his half share both in the government and revenue, which, since the affray in A.D. 1738, Momin Khán had withheld. A formal agreement was drawn up but did not long remain in force. About this time Momin Khán's nephew Muhammad Momin Khán Bakhsh received a patent granting him the title of Nazar Ali Khán. The year A.D. 1739 was marked by a disastrous flood in the Sábarmati. In this year also the Marathás under Chinnáji Ápa achieved the memorable success of taking the fort of Bassein from the Portuguese.

Capture of  
Bassein by  
the Marathas,  
1739.

Tribute  
Expedition,  
1740

In A.D. 1740 on his return from Sorath, Dámáji Gáikwár took Rangoji to the Dakhan and appointed Malhárrav Khúni his deputy at Ahmedabád. Fida-ud-din Khán met the new deputy at Isanpur and escorted him to the city. Shortly after Fida-ud-din Khán and Nazar Ali Khán started to collect tribute, and Jawán Mard Khán sent his brother Zoráwar Khán Babi to accompany them. They advanced against Dábhora under Bahyal eighteen miles east of Ahmedabád in the Bhil district and fought with the chief, who agreed to pay tribute. Thence they went to Atarsumba, where the Kolis after a vain attempt to carry off their cannon agreed to pay tribute. The force then proceeded to Mándva and levied a contribution from the Mándva chief. They next went to Kapadvanj, and passing

through Bálásinor reached Vírpur under Lunáváda. Here, from Sultánsingh, agent of the Lunáváda chief, they received two horses and £300 (Rs 3000) as tribute. While at Lunáváda an order of recall came from Momín Khán, who intimated that Mallárráv Khúm had laid up large stores of grain and contemplated war. Fidá-ud-dín Khan at once pushed forward through Balásinor and Kapadvanj, advancing rapidly towards the capital. On the way he received a second despatch from Momín Khán saying that, as the risk of war had for the present passed, they should advance to Petlad, where they would find Mallárráv Khúm and settle with him about the revenue accounts. They continued their march, and in two days reached Kara, being joined on the way by Muhammad Kúli Khan, who was charged with messages from Momín Khán. At Kara they found Muhammad Husam, nephew of Fidá-ud-dín Khan who had been sent with a force to Mahudha. As Mallárráv Khúm was at Púj near Kara, Fidá-ud-dín Khan expressed a wish to meet him, and it was agreed that both sides should go to the Petlad district and there settle the disputed collections. Shortly after they met and arrangements were in progress when the Kols of the Bhil district rebelled and Abdúl Husam Khan and Vajerúm were sent against them. After burning two or three villages this detachment rejoined the main body, and not long after all returned to Ahmedabád. During A.D. 1710 Bajráv Peshwa died.

In A.D. 1711 Momín Khán went to Cambay, and while residing at Ghospur near that city received information that Damaji had again appointed Rangoji his deputy in place of Mallárráv Khúm, and shortly after Rangoji arrived at Petlad. At this time Momín Khan turned his attention to the falling off in the customs revenue of Cambay and appointed Ismaíl Muhammad collector of customs. As he was anxious to clear some misunderstanding between Rangoji and himself, Momín Khán set out to visit Rangoji and assure him of his good wishes. At this time Bhávsingh of Vítangam, who found the Maráthas even more troublesome than the Muhammadans, as soon as he heard of Mallárráv's recall, suddenly attacked the fort of Vítangam and with the aid of some Arabs and Rohillas expelled the Marátha garrison and prepared to hold the fort on his own account. Shortly after Rangoji demanded that a tower in Ahmedabád, which had been raised a story by Momín Khán so as to command the residence of the Marátha deputy at the Jamálpur gate, should be reduced to its original height. At the same time he suggested that Momín Khán and he, uniting their forces, should advance and expel Bhávsingh from Vítangam. Momín Khán agreed to both proposals. The addition to the tower was pulled down, and Momín Khan and Rangoji, marching against Vítangam, laid siege to the town. Bhávsingh made a gallant defence, and Momín Khan, who was not sorry to see the Maráthas in difficulties, after a time left them and marched to Kadi and Bijápur to levy tribute. Rangoji continued the siege, and as Bhávsingh saw that even without Momín Khán the Marátha army was sufficient to reduce the place, he agreed to surrender Vítangam, provided the fort of Pátdi and its dependent villages were granted

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
Momín KHÁN  
Fifty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1738-1743.

The Viceroy  
at Cambay,  
1741.

Bhávsingh  
surrenders  
Vítangam  
and receives  
Pátdi.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.****Muhammad****Shah****Emperor,****• 1721-1748.****MOMIN KHAN****Fifty-sixth****Viceroy,****1738-1743****Siege of Broach  
by the Maráthas,  
1741.****Battle of Dholka,****Defeat of the****Maráthas,****1711.****Contests between  
the Muhammadans  
and Maráthas.**

to him. Rangoji agreed, and thus the Maráthas again obtained possession of Viramgam, while Bhávsingh acquired Pátdi,<sup>1</sup> a property which his descendants hold to this day.

When Momín Khán arrived at Mánsa, about twenty-six miles north-west of Ahmedábád, hearing that Dámáji had crossed the Mahi with 10,000 men, he at once returned to the capital. Dámáji arrived at Mánsa and besieged it. The chiefs and Kolis defended the place bravely for about a month, when it fell into Dámáji's hands, who not only cleared the prickly-pear stockade which surrounded it, but also burned the town. From Mansa Dámáji marched to Sorath. On his return he laid siege to Broach, a fort which, from its natural strength as well as from its favourable position on the Narbáda, it had been the constant ambition both of Dámáji and of his father, Piláji to capture. On the approach of Dámáji, Nek Alam Khan, who held the place in the interests of the Nizam, prepared to defend the fort, and wrote to the Nizam for aid. In reply the Nizam warned Dámáji not to attack his possessions. On receiving this letter Dámáji raised the siege and returned to Songad. It seems probable that concessions were made to tempt Dámáji to retire from Broach, and that the Gáikvár's share in the Broach customs dates from this siege.

\* In A.D. 1711 in a battle between Káim Kúli Khán, governor of Dholka, and Rangoji's deputy, the Maráthas were defeated. Momín Khán, at the request of Rangoji, made peace between them. Fidí-ud-dín Khan, who had recently been raised in rank with the title of Bahádur, starting to collect tribute burned down the refractory Koli village of Dabhora, and placing a post there, passed to Satumba, Balasnor and Thasra. After the battle at Dholka, the building by Rangoji of the fort of Borsad, caused renewed fighting between the Muhammadans and Maráthas of Dholka. At the request of Muhammad Hadi Khán, governor of Dholka, Fidá-ud-dín Khán, passing through Mahudha to Petlad pushed forward to help him. In the meantime a battle was fought, in which the Maráthas under Malhárrav attacked Muhammad Hadi Khán, and after a short contest withdrew. Next day the Muhammadans, strengthened by the arrival of Fidí-ud-dín Khan, besieged Sojitra. A letter was written to Rangoji, asking the meaning of the attack, and he replied excusing himself and attributing it to the ignorance of Malhárrav. Muhammad Hadi Khán and the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedí* eventually met Rangoji at Borsad, and settled that he and Fidá-ud-dín Khán should come together and arrange matters. But Rangoji in his heart intended to fight and wrote to his deputy Rámáji at Ahmedábád to be ready for war. Malhárrav now joined Rangoji at Borsad. At this time many misunderstandings and several fights between the Maráthas and the Muhammadans were appeased by Momín Khán and Rangoji, who; in spite of the ill-feeling among their subordinates and a certain distrust of each other's designs, appear throughout to have maintained a warm

<sup>1</sup> Pátdi (north latitude 23° 10'; east longitude 71° 41'), at the south east angle of the Ran of Cutch, fifty-two miles west of Ahmedábád.

mutual regard. Dāmāji from his stronghold at Songad was too much occupied in Dakhañ politics to give much attention to Gujarat. Rangoji, on the other hand, gained so much influence with the Gujarat chiefs, that at one time he succeeded in engaging Sajansingh Hazārī in his service, and also induced Rāja Raisingh of Idar to join him. But Momīn Khān detached Rāisingh from this alliance, by placing him in charge of the post of Amālūra and granting him the districts of Modasa, Meghrej, Ahmednagar, Parantij, and Harsol. Moreover the customary Gujarāt sum at first sent daily by Rangoji to Rāja Raisingh for the expenses of his troops had begun to fall into arrears. Rāja Rāisingh made his peace with Momīn Khān through the mediation of Nazar Ali Khān, Momīn Khān's nephew, who appears to have been one of the leading spirits of the time.

In A.D. 1712 in another fight between the Marāthās and Muhammadans in Ahmedabād, the Muhammadans gained a slight advantage. After this Rangoji left the city, appointing as before Dāmāji as his deputy, and joining Jagjiwan Pavar went to Borsad, where he had built a fort. At this time one Jivandas came with authority from the Nizām to act as collector of Dholka, part of the lands assigned to the Nizām as a personal grant, but failed to enforce his position. Shortly after this Rāja Anandsing of Idar was killed, and his brother Rāising, taking leave, went to Idar to settle matters. Momīn Khān had his patent increased to the personal rank of commander of 6000 with a contingent of 6000 cavalry. He received a dress of honour, a jewelled turban, a plume, six pieces of cloth, an elephant, the order of Mahi-maratib,<sup>1</sup> and the title of Najm-ud-daulah Momīn Khān Bahādur Dilawar Jang. Differences again broke out between Momīn Khān and Rangoji, and again matters were settled by a friendly meeting between the two chiefs at Borsad, where Rangoji had taken up his residence. Momīn Khān now went to Petlad, and from that to Cambay, where he was taken ill, but after six weeks came to Vasu, where Rangoji visited him. Here though again unwell he went to Dholka, and shortly afterwards he and Rangoji marched upon Limbdi, which at this time is mentioned as under Virāngam. While before Limbdi, Rangoji was summoned by Dāmāji to help him against Bāpu Nāik, and at once started to his assistance. Momīn Khān now marched into Gohlyāde and proceeded by Lohāna to Gogha, then under the charge of a resident deputy of Sher Khān Babi. Here he received tribute from the chief of Sihor, and from that, marching into Hālār, went against Navānagar. The Jām resisted for twenty days, and eventually, on his agreeing to pay £5000 (Rs. 50,000) as tribute, Momīn Khān returned to Ahmedabād. During his absence in spite of stubborn resistance Nazar Ali Khān and Vajerām had collected tribute from the Koli chiefs. Rangoji, who had now left Dāmāji, joined battle with Bāpu Nāik ere he crossed the Mahi, and Bāpu Nāik turned back. Rangoji therefore remained at Borsad, but hearing that Momīn Khān's illness had become serious, he went once or twice to Ahmedabād to visit him.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
Momīn Khān  
Fifty-sixth  
Viceroy,  
1738-1743.

Disturbance at  
Ahmedabād,  
1742.

The Viceroy  
collects Tribute  
in Kathiāvada.

<sup>1</sup> The Mahi-maratib was a banner having the likeness of a fish at its top.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

• **Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.**  
Death of Momín  
Khan,  
• 1713.  
Fida-ud-din  
acts as Viceroy,  
1743.

**Muftakhr Khán  
Defeats the  
Maráthas**

**Dámáji Garkwá  
Returns to  
Gujarat.**

**Abdúl Azíz  
Khán  
• of Junnar,  
Viceroy  
(by a forged  
order).**

**Mutiny of the  
Troops.**

In A.D. 1713 Momín Khán died. His wife, fearing lest Fida-ud-dín Khán and Muftakhr Khán, Momín Khan's son, would deprive her of her estate, sought the protection of Rangoji. In the meantime Fida-ud-dín Khán and Muftakhr Khan received an imperial order to carry on the government until a new viceroy should be appointed. At this time a man named Anandram, who had been disgraced by Momín Khan, went over to Rangoji and incited him to murder Fida-ud-dín Khán and Muftakhr Khan. Rangoji with this intention invited them both to his house, but his heart failed him, and shortly afterwards Fida-ud-dín Khán went to Cambay. Rangoji now determined at all hazards to assassinate Muftakhr Khan. With this object he took Muftakhr Khan's associates, Vajragám and Kamá Kúli Khan, into his confidence. Muftakhr Khan accidentally heard of his designs, and remained on his guard. As Rangoji had failed to carry out his promise to raise Sher Khán Bábí to the post of deputy viceroy, Sher Khan advanced to Dholka and began plundering some Cambay villages. Rangoji, after another futile attempt to assassinate Muftakhr Khan, sent for his deputy Rámáji, who was then in the neighbourhood, and prepared to fight. Muftakhr Khan, on his part, summoned Fida-ud-dín Khán from Cambay, and in a few days they succeeded in uniting their forces. Sher Khán Bábí deserting the cause of Rangoji, the Maráthas were worsted and Rangoji's house was besieged. Rangoji, being hard pressed, agreed to give up Anandram and to surrender both Borsad and Virangam, Sher Khan Bábí becoming his security. In this way Fida-ud-dín Khan became sole master of Gujarat.

Shortly after Dámáji Garkwár returned from Satara and came to Cambay. In the meantime Rangoji, who had been living with Sher Khán Bábí, his security, contrived, with the connivance of Sher Khan, to escape together with his family. Fida-ud-dín Khán was so greatly enraged with Sher Khan for this treachery, that Sher Khan leaving Ahmedábad on pretence of hunting, escaped to Balasnor, where his wife joined him. Fida-ud-dín Khan put Anandram to death, while Rangoji through the aid of Sher Khan Bábí's wife, made good his escape to Borsad. Fida-ud-dín Khán had set out to collect tribute, when news arrived that Khanderaý Garkwar, brother of Damáji had crossed the Mahi and joining Rangoji had laid siege to Petlad. On hearing this, Fida-ud-dín at once returned to Ahmedábad, and sent Valabhdas Kotwál to Khanderaý to complain of the misconduct of Rangoji.

After the death of Momín Khán, Jawán Mard Khán Bábí was the greatest noble in Gujarat. He began to aspire to power, and Fida-ud-dín, who was not good in the field, had thoughts of appointing him as a deputy. While matters were in this state, and Jawan Mard Khan was already laying claim to the revenue of the district round Ahmedábad, an order was received appointing Abdúl Azíz Khán the commander of Junnar, near Poona, to be viceroy of Gujarat. This order was forged by Abdúl Azíz Khán in Jawán Mard Khán's interests, whom he appointed his deputy. Though Fida-ud-dín Khán doubted the genuineness of the order, he was not powerful enough to remove Jawan Mard Khán, who accordingly proclaimed himself deputy viceroy. At this time the troops, clamorous on account of arrears,

placed both Fidá-ud-dín Khán and Muftakhir Khán under confinement. Jawan Mard Khán assumed charge of the city and stationed his own men on guard. While Fidá-ud-dín Khán and Muftakhir Khán were in confinement, Khanderáy Gúikwár sent them a message that if they would cause the fort of Pettád to be surrendered to him, he would help them. To this they returned no answer. Fidá-ud-dín Khán now entreated Jawan Mard Khán to interfere between him and his troops. Jawan Mard Khán accordingly persuaded the mutineers to release Fidá-ud-dín Khán, who eventually escaped from the city and went to Ágra.

Meanwhile Rangoji continued to press the siege of Pettád and the commander, Ágha Muhammad Husam, after in vain appealing for help to Jawan Mard Khán, was forced to surrender. Rangoji demolished the fort of Pettád and marched upon Ahmedabád. As he approached the city Jawan Mard Khan sent the writer of the Mirát-i-Ahmedi and Ajalsingh to negotiate with Rangoji, who demanded all his former rights and possessions.

News had now reached Dehli that a false viceroy was governing Gujarát, and accordingly Muftakhir Khán was chosen fifty-seventh viceroy, the adder explaining that Abdúl Azíz had never been appointed viceroy, and directing Jawán Mard Khán to withdraw from the conduct of affairs. Muftakhir Khan was perplexed how to act. He succeeded in persuading his troops that he would be able to pay them their arrears, and he sent a copy of the order to Jawán Mard Khán; and, as he dared not displace him, he informed Jawán Mard Khán that he had appointed him as his deputy, and that he himself would shortly leave Ahmedabád. Jawán Mard Khan, so far from obeying, ordered Muftakhir Khán's house to be surrounded. Eventually Muftakhir Khán, leaving the city, joined Rangoji, and then retired to Cambay.

Khanderáy Gúikwar returned, and, with the view of enforcing his claims, uniting with Rangoji, marched to Banjar, about five miles south of Ahmedabád. Jawan Mard Khán issuing from the city camped near the Kankariya lake. Nathar Pandit and Krishnáji on behalf of the Maráthha leaders were sent to Jawán Mard Khán to demand their former rights and possessions. Jawán at first refused, but in the end gave way and the Maráthas appointed Dadu Morár deputy of the city. Sher Khán Babi now returned to Bálasmor. Khanderáy and Kanáji then went to Dholka, Rangoji to Pettád, and Khanderáy Gúikwár to Sorath. Fidá-ud-dín Khán requested Rangoji to help Muftakhir Khan; he replied that he was willing to help him, but had no money. Rangoji then accompanied Fidá-ud-dín Khán to Cambay, where Muftakhir Khán was. Negotiations were entered into, and the Kháns tried to collect £10,000 (Rs. 1 lakh) which Rangoji asked for to enable him to make military preparations to aid them. They raised £8000 (Rs. 80,000) with great difficulty and admitted Rangoji's Náib to a share in the administration. Rangoji withdrew to Borsad with the £8000 (Rs. 80,000) under the pretext that when the remaining £2000 (Rs. 20,000) were paid he would take action. Fidá-ud-dín Khán, annoyed at Rangoji's conduct, went to reside at Dhowan, a village belonging to Jálam Jáha Koli.

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Muhammad Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.

Maráthas  
Capture  
Pettád

MUFTAKHIR  
KHÁN  
Fifty-seventh  
Viceroy,  
1713-11.

Appoints Jawan  
Mard Khan his  
Deputy.

The Maráthas  
in Ahmedabád.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748  
MUTAKHİR  
KHAN  
Fifty-seventh  
Viceroy,  
1713-14  
Battle of Km  
Kathodra  
Defeat and  
Death of  
Abdul Aziz  
Khan,  
1741.

FAKHR UD-  
DAULAH  
Fifty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1744-1748.

Jawan Mard  
Khan Babi,  
Deputy Viceroy

\*Khanderāv  
Gaikwār called  
to Satara.

In A.D. 1711 Jawān Mard Khān, after appointing one of his brothers, Zorāwar Khān, his deputy at Pātan, and keeping his other brother Sāfdar Khān at Ahmedābād, advanced from the city to Kadi to collect tribute. His next step was to invite Abdūl Azīz Khān, the commander of Junnar, near Poona, to join him in Gujarāt. Abdūl Azīz accordingly set out from Junnar, taking with him Fatehyab Khān, commander of the fort of Mulher in Baglān and Rustamrāv Marāthā. Directing his march in the first instance to Surat he was there watched in the interests of Damājī Gaikwār, by Devājī Takpar, the lieutenant of that chief, who, seeing that on leaving Surat, Abdūl Azīz continued to advance to Ahmedabad, pursued him to Km Kathodra, about fifteen miles north-west of Surat, and there attacked him. In the engagement Devājī Takpar, who had gained over Rustamrāv Marāthā, one of the leading men in Abdūl Azīz's army, was victorious. Abdūl Azīz Khān retired, but was so closely followed by the Marāthās, that at Pānoli he was forced to leave his elephant, and, mounting a horse, fled with all speed towards Breach. On reaching the Nerbada he failed to find any boats, and as his pursuers were close upon him, putting his horse at the water, he tried to swim the river, but, sticking fast in the mud, he was overtaken and slain by the Marāthās.

On hearing of the death of Abdūl Azīz Jawān Mard Khān thought of joining Muftakhr Khān. Ere he could carry this plan into effect, the emperor receiving, it is said, a present of £20,000 (Rs. 2 *lakh*s) for the nomination, appointed Fakhr-ud-daulah Fakhr-ud-din Khān Shujāāt Jang Bahādūr fifty-eighth viceroy of Gujarāt. The new viceroy forwarded a blank paper to a banler of his acquaintance named Sitarām, asking him to enter in it the name of a fitting deputy. Sitarām filled in the name of Jawān Mard Khān, and Fakhr-ud-daulah was proclaimed viceroy. About this time Sāfdar Khān Babi, after levying tribute from the Sabarmati chiefs, returned to Ahmedabad, and Khanderāv Gaikwār, as he passed from Sorath to Songad, appointed Rangoji his deputy. On being appointed deputy Rangoji sent Krishnaji instead of Morār Nāik as his deputy to Ahmedabad, and himself proceeded to Arbat-Matar on the Vatrak, and from that moved to Kaira to visit Jawān Mard Khān, with whom he established friendly relations. In the same year Ali Muhammad Khān, superintendent of customs, died, and in his place the author of the *Mirāt-i-Ahmedi* was appointed. In this year, too, Pahar Khān Jhalori died, and his uncle, Muhammad Bahādūr, was appointed governor of Pālanpur in his stead.

About this time Umībāi, widow of Khanderāv Dābhūde, summoned Khanderāv Gaikwār to help her in her attempt to lessen the power of the Peshwa. As Damājī Gaikwar could not be spared from the Dakhan Khanderāv was appointed his deputy in Gujarāt, and he chose one Rāmchandra to represent him at Ahmedābād. When Fakhr-ud-daulah advanced to join his appointment as viceroy he was received at Bālasinor with much respect by Sher Khān Babi. Jawān Mard Khān Babi, on the other hand, determining to resist Fakhr-ud-daulah to the utmost of his power, summoned Gangādhar with a body of Marāthā horse from Pellād, and posting them at Isanpur, about ten miles south-west of the city, himself leaving the fortifications of Ahmedābād, encamped at

Asírva, about a mile and a half from the walls. During his progress towards the capital the new viceroy was joined by Ráisinghji of Idar at Kapadvanj, and, advancing together, they arrived at Bhilpur, eighteen miles east of Ahmedabad. On their approach Jawán Mard Khán sent Safdar Khán and Gangádar to oppose them, and the two armies met about six miles from the capital. After some fighting Fakhr-ud daulah succeeded in forcing his way to the suburb of Rájpura, and next day continuing to drive back the enemy occupied the suburb of Bahrámpura and began the actual siege of the city. At this point affairs took a turn. Fakhr-ud-daulah was wounded and returned to his camp, while Jawán Mard Khán succeeded in winning over to his side Sher Khán Babi and Raisinghji of Idar, two of the viceroy's chief supporters. The Mirát-ü-Ahmedí especially notes that Rája Ráisingh asked for money to pay his troops but Fakhr-ud daulah, not knowing that this rule had long been a dead letter, said that as he held a district on service tenure, it was not proper for him to ask for a money and when on imperial service. Next day Fakhr-ud-daulah was surrounded by Safdar Khán Babi and the Maráthás, and himself one wife and some children were taken prisoners, while another of his wives and his son, who had managed to escape to Sidhpur, were captured and brought back to Ahmedabad.

After this Khanderav Gáukwár returned to Gujarát to receive his share of the spoil taken from Fakhr-ud-daulah. Reaching Borsad, he took Rangoji with him as far as Ahmedabad, where he met Jawan Mard Khán and obtained from Rangoji a share of the tribute. Khanderav was not satisfied with Rangoji's accounts, and appointing a fresh deputy, he attached Rangoji's property, and before leaving Ahmedabad for Saitli, put him in confinement at Borsad. He also confined Fakhr-ud-daulah in the Gháspur outpost on the bank of the river Mahi. Meanwhile in consequence of some misunderstanding between Jawán Mard Khán Babi and his brother Safdar Khán, the latter retired to Udepur, and Jawan Mard Khán went to Visalnagar then in the hands of his brother Zoríwar Khán. From Visalnagar, Jawán Mard Khán proceeded to Rádhaupur, and meeting his brother Safdar Khán, they became reconciled, and returned together to Ahmedabad. Khanderav Gáukwár, who had in the meantime returned from Sorath, encamping at Jhella appointed Trimbakrav Pandit as his deputy at Ahmedabad in place of Moro Pandit. On hearing that Rangoji had been thrown into confinement, Umábái sent for him, and he along with Khanderav Gáukwár repaired to the Dakhán.

Shortly afterwards Punáji Vithal, in concert with Trimbak Pandit, being dissatisfied with Jawán Mard Khán, began to intrigue with Fakhr-ud-daulah. In the meantime Umábái had appointed Rangoji as her deputy, and, as he was a staunch friend of Jawan Mard Khán, he expelled Trimbakrav from Ahmedabad, and himself collected the Maráthha share of the city revenues. Upon this Punáji Vithal sent Gangádhara and Krishnáji with an army, and they, expelling the Muhammadan officers from the districts from which the Maráthás levied the one-fourth share of the revenue, took the management of them into their own hands. Rangoji now asked Sher Khán Babi to help him, Sher

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
Fakhr-ud-  
Daulah  
Fifty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1744-1749.

Defeat and  
capture of the  
Viceroy by  
Jawan Mard  
Khán Babi.

Rangoji  
Disgraced  
by Khanderav  
Gáukwár.

Punáji Vithal and  
Fakhr-ud-daulah  
oppose Rangoji  
and Jawán Mard  
Khán.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Vice-roys.**

Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748  
FAKHR-UD-  
DAULAH  
Fifty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1741-1748.

\* Siege of  
Kapadvanj  
by Fakhr-ud-  
daulah,  
1746.

At the approach  
of Holkar the  
Siege is raised.

Khán agreed; but as he had not funds to pay his troops, he delayed, and afterwards plundered Mahudha and Nadiad. As Rangoji failed to join him, Sher Khán proceeded by himself to Kapadvanj, and from Kapadvanj marched against the Maráthá camp, with which Fakhr-ud-daulah was then associated. On the night after his arrival, the Maráthás made an attack on Sher Khán's camp, in which many men on both sides were slain. Next morning the battle was renewed, but on Sher Khán suggesting certain terms the fighting ceased. That very night, hearing that Rangoji had reached Balasinor, Sher Khán stole off towards Kapadvanj. Punaji and Fakhr-ud-daulah followed in pursuit but failed to prevent Rangoji and Sher Khán from joining their forces.

In A.D. 1746 a battle was fought in the neighbourhood of the town of Kapadvanj in which Sher Khán was wounded. He was forced to take shelter with Rangoji in Kapadvanj, while Fakhr-ud-daulah, Gangadhar, and Krishnaji laid siege to that town. At this time the Lamávéda chief asked Malharáy Holkar on his way back from his yearly raid into Malwa, to join him in attacking Vapur. Holkar agreed and Vapur was plundered. Rangoji, hearing of the arrival of Holkar, begged him to come to his aid, and on promise of receiving a sum of £20,000 (Rs. 2 *lakh*s) and two elephants, Holkar consented. Gangadhar, Krishnaji, and Fakhr-ud-daulah, hearing of the approach of Holkar, raised the siege of Kapadvanj, and marching to Dholka expelled the governor of that district. Shortly afterwards on a summons from Damaji and Khanderav Gaikwar Rangoji retired to Baroda. Meanwhile Fakhr-ud-daulah, Krishnaji, and Gangadhar advanced to Jetalpur in the Daskroi sub-division of Ahmedabad and, taking possession of it, expelled Ambar Habsi, the deputy of Jawán Mard Khán. Damaji and Khanderav Gaikwar passed from Baroda to Vasu, where they were met by Krishnaji and Gangadhar, whom Damaji censured for aiding Fakhr-ud-daulah. On this occasion Damaji bestowed the districts of Baroda, Nadiad and Borsad on his brother Khanderav, an act on which for ever removed any ill feeling on the part of Khanderav. Then, proceeding to Goklej, Damaji had an interview with Jawán Mard Khán. From Goklej he sent Kánoji Takpar with Fakhr-ud-daulah to Sorath, and himself returned to Songad. As Borsad had been given to Khanderav, Rangoji fixed on Unreth as his residence.

In this year, A.D. 1746, Teghbég Khán, governor of Surat, died, and was succeeded by his brother Saifdar Muhammad Khán, who, in acknowledgment of a present of seven horses, received from the emperor the title of Bahadur. At this time Tálíb Áli Khán died, and the writer of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi* was appointed minister by the emperor. In A.D. 1747 Rangoji returned to Ahmedábad, and Jawán Mard Khán had an interview with him a few miles from the city. Shortly after this the Kolis of Mehmúdábád and Mahudha rebelled, but the revolt was speedily crushed by Sháhábáz Rohilla.

During this year Najm Khán, governor of Cambay, died. Muftakhir Khán, son of Najm-ud-daulah Momín Khán I., who had also received the title of Momín Khán, informed the emperor of Najm

Momín Khán, II.,  
Governor of  
Cambay,  
1748.

Khán's death, and himself assumed the office of governor in which in A.D. 1748 he was confirmed. On hearing of the death of Najm Khan, on pretence of condoling with the family of the late governor, Fida-ud-din Khán marched to Cambay, but as he was not allowed to enter the town he retired. He afterwards went to Umreth and lived with Rangoji Kánoji Tíkpar, who had gone with Fakhr-ud-daulah into Sorath, now laid siege to and took the town of Vantali. As it was nearly time for the Maráthás to return to their country, Kánoji and Fakhr-ud-daulah, returning to Dholka, expelled Muhammad Jámhá, the deputy governor. Rangoji, who had at this time a dispute with Jawán Mard Khán regarding his share of tribute, now came and joined them, and their combined forces marched upon Sanand, where, after plundering the town, they encamped. It was now time for Kánoji to withdraw to the Dakhan. Rangoji and Fakhr-ud-daulah, remaining behind to collect tribute from the neighbouring districts, marched to Isanpur, where they were opposed by Jawán Mard Khán. On this occasion both Jawán Mard Khán and Fakhr-ud-daulah sought the alliance of Raja Raisingh of Idar. But, as he offered more favourable terms, Raja Raisingh determined to join Fakhr-ud-daulah. Sher Khan B. also joined Fakhr-ud-daulah, who, thus reinforced, laid siege to Ahmedabad. While these events were passing at Ahmedabad, Hariba, an adopted son of Khanderao Gaikwar, at that time in possession of the fort of Borsad, began to plunder Rangoji's villages under Pettad, and, attacking his deputy, defeated and killed him. On this Rangoji withdrew from Ahmedabad, attacked and captured the fort of Borsad, and forced Hariba to leave the country. Jawán Mard Khán now sent for Janardhan Pandit, Khanderao's deputy at Nudra, and, in place of Rangoji's representative, appointed him to manage the Maratha share of Ahmedabad.

During these years important changes had taken place in the government of Surat. In A.D. 1731, when Mulla Muhammad Ali, the chief of the merchants and builder of the Athva fort, was killed in prison by Teghbeg Khan, the Nizam sent Sayad Miththan to revenge his death. Sayad Miththan was forced to return unsuccessful. After Teghbeg Khán's death Sayad Miththan again came to Surat and lived there with his brother Sayad Achehan, who held the office of paymaster. Sayad Miththan tried to get the government of the town into his hands, but, again failing, committed suicide. His brother Sayad Achehan then attacked and took the citadel, expelling the commander; and for several days war was waged between him and the governor Safdar Muhammad Khán with doubtful success. At last Sayad Achehan called to his aid Mallháráy, the deputy at Baroda, and their combined forces took possession of the whole city. During the sack of the city Mallháráy was killed and the entire management of affairs fell into the hands of Sayad Achehan. Safdar Muhammad Khán, the late governor, though obliged to leave the city, was determined not to give up Surat without a struggle, and raising some men opened fire on the fort. Sayad Achehan now begged the Arab Turk English Dutch and Portuguese merchants to aid him. A deed addressed to the emperor and the Nizam, begging that Sayad Achehan should be appointed

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748.  
FAKHR-UD-  
DAULAH  
Fifty-eighth  
Viceroy,  
1711-1748.**

Increased  
Strength of  
Fakhr-ud-daulah's  
Party.

Dissensions  
among the  
Marathás.

**SURAT AFFAIRS.  
1718.**

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**Muhammad  
Shah  
Emperor,  
1721-1748**  
FAKHR-UD-  
DAULAH  
Fifty eighth  
Viceroy,  
1744-1748.

Mulla Fakhr-ud-  
din Escapes to  
Bombay.

Cession of Surat  
Revenue to the  
Golkara,  
1747.

Famine,  
1747.

Maratha  
Discussions.

Fall of Borsad.

MAHARAJA  
VAKHATSINGH  
Fifty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1748.

governor, was signed by all the merchants except by Mr. Lamb the English chief, and though he at first refused, he was in the end persuaded by the other merchants to sign. The merchants then assisted Sayad Achehan, and Safdar Muhammad Khán retired to Sindh.

Meanwhile, on account of some enmity between Mulla Fakhr-ud-din, the son of Mulla Muhammad Ali chief of the merchants, and Sayad Achehan, the Mulla was thrown into prison. Mr. Lamb went to Sayad Achehan, and remonstrating with him suggested that the Mulla should be sent for. Sayad Achehan agreed, but on the way Mr. Lamb carried off Mulla Fakhr-ud-din to the English factory, and afterwards sent him to Bombay in disguise. In the meantime Kedaji Garkwar, a cousin of Dámaji's, whom, with Malhárav, Sayad Achehan had asked to his help, arrived at Surat, and though Sayad Achehan had been successful without his aid, Kedaji demanded the £30,000 (Rs. 3 lakhs) which had been promised him. As the Sayad was not in a position to resist Kedaji's demands, and as he had no ready money to give him, he made over to him a third of the revenues of Surat until the amount should be paid. As before this another third of the revenues of Surat had been assigned to Hafiz Masud Khán, the deputy of Yakut Khán of Janjua, the emoluments of the governor of Surat were reduced to one-third of the entire revenue and this was divided between the Mutasaddi and Bakhshi.

In this year (A.D. 1747, S. 1803) there was a severe shock of earthquake and a great famine which caused many deaths. In the following year Jawán Mard Khán endeavoured to recapture Jetalpur, but failed. About the same time Umaba died and Dámaji's brother Khandarav who was on good terms with Ambika wife of Baburáv Senapati, the guardian of Umaba's son, procured his own appointment as deputy of his brother Dámaji in Gujarat. On being appointed deputy Khandarav at once marched against Rangoji to recover Borsad, which, as above mentioned, Rangoji had taken from Hariba. Their forces were joined by two detachments, one from Momín Khán under the command of Agha Muhammad Husain, the other from Jawáf Mard Khán commanded by Janárdhan Pandit. The combined army besieged Borsad. After a five months' siege Borsad was taken, and Rangoji was imprisoned by Khandarav. On the fall of Borsad Sher Khan Babi and Raja Rámsingh of Idar, who were allies of Rangoji, returned to Bálasingar and Íoar; Fakhr-ud-daulah was sent to Petlad and Fidá-ud-dín Khán, leaving Umreth, took shelter with Jetha, the chief of Atarsumba.

In this year the emperor Muhammad Sháh died and was succeeded by his son Ahmed Sháh (A.D. 1748-1754). Shortly after Ahmed's accession Mahárája Vakhatsingh, brother of Mahárája Abheysingh, was appointed fifty-ninth viceroy of Gujarát. When he learned what was the state of the province, he pleaded that his presence would be more useful in his own dominions, and never took up his appointment of viceroy. Vakhatsingh was the last viceroy of Gujarát nominated by the imperial court, for although by the aid of the Maráthás Fakhr-ud-daulah was of importance in the province, he had never been able

to establish himself as viceroy. In this year also occurred the death of Khushalehand Sheth, the chief merchant of Ahmedabad.

Khanderav Gaikwar appointed Raghavshankar his deputy at Ahmedabad, and Sardar Khan Babi issued from Ahmedabad with an army to levy tribute from the chiefs on the banks of the Sabarmati. When Fakir-ud-daulah, the former viceroy, heard of the appointment of Maharaja Vakhatsingh, seeing no chance of any benefit from a longer stay in Gujarat, he retired to Dehli. In A.D. 1748 Asif Jah, Nizam-ul-Mulk, died at an advanced age, leaving six sons and a disputed succession.

About the same time Balaji Peshwa, who was jealous of the power of the Gaikwar, sent a body of troops, and freed Rangoji from the hands of Khanderav Gaikwar. During these years adventurers, in different parts of the country, taking advantage of the decay of the central power, endeavoured to establish themselves in independence. Of these attempts the most formidable was the revolt of one of the Patan Kashimis who established his power so firmly in Patan that Jawan Mard Khan found it necessary to proceed in person to reduce him. Shortly afterwards Jawan Mard Khan deemed it advisable to recall his brothers Sardar Khan and Zorawar Khan, who were then at Unja under Patan, and took them with him to Ahmedabad. Fida-ud-din Khan who had been residing at Atansumba now asked permission to return to Ahmedabad, but as Jawan Mard Khan did not approve of this suggestion, Fida-ud-din departed to Broach and there took up his residence. Janardhan Pandit marched to Kara and the Bhil district to levy tribute, and Khanderav appointed Shevakram his deputy.

In the meantime at Surat, Sayad Achchan endeavoured to consolidate his rule, and with this view tried to expel Hafiz Masud Habshi, and prevent him again entering the city. But his plans failed, and he was obliged to make excuses for his conduct. Sayad Achchan then oppressed other influential persons, until eventually the Habshi and others joining, attacked him in the citadel. Except Mr. Lamb who considered himself bound by the deed signed in A.D. 1717 in favour of Sayad Achchan all the merchants of Surat joined the assailants. Among the chief opponents of Sayad Achchan were the Dutch, who sending ships brought back Sardar Muhammad Khan from Thatta, and established him as governor of Surat. The English factory was next besieged, and, though a stout resistance was made, the guards were killed, and the factory plundered. In A.D. 1750 Sayad Achchan, surrendering the citadel to the Habshi, withdrew first to Bombay and then to Poona, to Balaji Peshwa. Shortly afterwards, in consequence of the censure passed upon him by the Bombay Government for his support of Sayad Achchan, Mr. Lamb committed suicide. Wearied by these continual contests for power, the merchants of Surat asked Raja Raghunathdas, minister to the Nizam, to choose them a governor. Raja Raghunathdas accordingly nominated his own nephew, Raja Harprasad, to be governor, and the writer of the Mirat-i-Ahmedi to be his deputy. But before Raja Harprasad could join his appointment at Surat, both he and his father were slain in battle.

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroys.

Ahmed Shah  
Emperor,  
1748-1754.

MAHARAJA  
VAKHATSINGH  
Fifty-ninth  
Viceroy,  
1748.

Disorder  
spreads.

SURAT AFFAIRS.  
A.D. 1750.

Sayad Achchan  
Unpopular.

Sardar  
Muhammad  
brought back  
by the Dutch.

Sayad Achchan  
Retires.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Ahmed Shah  
Emperor,  
1748-1754.  
Jawán Mard  
Khán and  
the Peshwa,  
1750.

The Peshwa  
and Gaikwár,  
1751.

Broach  
Independent,  
1752.

In the same year, A.D. 1750, occurred the deaths of Rája Raisingh of Idar, of Safdar Khán Bábi of Bálásinor, and of Fida-ud-dín Khan, who had for some time been settled at Broach. Jawán Mard Khan, who, seeing that they were inclined to become permanent residents in Gujarát, was always opposed to the Gaikwar's power, now entered into negotiations with Bálajiráv Peshwa. He chose Patel Sukhdev to collect the Maráthá revenue and asked the Peshwa to help him in expelling Dámáji's agents. The Peshwa, being now engaged in war in the Dakhan with Salábat Jang Bahádur, son of the late Nizám, was unable to send Jawán Mard Khán any assistance. Towards the close of the year Jawán Mard Khán started from Ahmedabád to collect tribute from the Sábarmati chiefs. Returning early in A.D. 1751, at the request of Jetha Patel a subordinate of Bhavsingh Desái, he proceeded to Banod or Vanod under Virangám and reduced the village. Ali Muhammad Khán, the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedí*, who about this time was raised in rank with the title of Bahádur, states that owing to the Maráthá inroads most of the districts had passed entirely into their possession, in others according to agreements with Jawán Mard Khán they held a half share. Consequently in spite of new taxes, the entire remaining income of the province was only four *lákhs* of rupees, and it was impossible to maintain the military posts or control the rebellious Kols.

It was in this year (A.D. 1751) that the Peshwa, decoying Dámájráv into his power, imprisoned him and forced him to surrender half of his rights and conquests in Gujarát. Taking advantage of the absence of the Gaikwár and his army in the Dakhan, Jawán Mard Khán marched into Sorath. He first visited Gogha and then levying tribute in Gohil-váda advanced into Kathaváda and marched against Navanagar, and, after collecting a contribution from the Jám, returned to Ahmedabád. In the following year (A.D. 1752), as soon as the news reached Gujarát that the Maráthís' share in the province had been divided between the Peshwa and Gaikwár, Momín Khán, who was always quarrelling with the Gaikwár's agent, sending Varajlál his steward to Bálajiráv Peshwa begged him to include Cambay in his share and send his agent in place of the Gaikwar's agent. Bálajiráv agreed, and from that time an agent of the Peshwa was established at Cambay. In the same year Raghunáthráv, brother of the Peshwa, entering Gujarát took possession of the Rewa and Mahi Kántha districts and marched on Surat. Shaji Dhangar was appointed in Shevakráim's place as Dámáji's deputy, and Krishnaji came to collect the Peshwa's share.

Up to this time the city of Broach had remained part of the Nizám's personal estate, managed by Abdúllah Beg, whom, with the title of Nek Alam Khán, Asif Jáh the late Nizám-ul-Mulk had chosen his deputy. On the death of Abdúllah Beg in A.D. 1752 the emperor appointed his son to succeed him with the same title as his father, while he gave to another son, named Mughal Beg, the title of Khertalab Khán. During the contests for succession that followed upon the death of the Nizám in A.D. 1752, no attempt was made to enforce the Nizám's claims on the lands of Broach; and for the future, except for the share of the revenue paid to the Maráthás, the governors of Broach were practically independent.

The Peshwa now sent Pándurang Pandit to levy tribute from his share of Gujarát, and that officer crossing the Mahi marched upon Cambay. Momín Khán prepared to oppose him, but the Pandit made friendly overtures, and eventually Momín Khán not only paid the sum of £700 (Rs. 7000) for grass and grain for the Pandit's troops, but also lent him four small cannon. Pándurang Pandit then marched upon Ahmedábád, and encamping near the Kankariya lake laid siege to the city which was defended by Jawán Mard Khán. During the siege Pándurang Pandit, sending some troops, ravaged Nikol, part of the lands of Ali Muhammad Khán Bahádur, the author of the *Mirát-i-Ahmedi*. Meanwhile, as the operations against Ahmedábád made no progress, Pándurang Pandit made offers of peace. These Jawán Mard Khán accepted, and on receiving from Jawán Mard Khán the present of a mare and a small sum of money under the name of entertainment, the Maráthá leader withdrew to Sorath.

About this time the Peshwa released Dámáji Gaikwár on his promise to help the Peshwa's brother Raghunáthráv, who was shortly afterwards despatched with an army to complete the conquest of Gujarát. Meanwhile Jawán Mard Khán's anxiety regarding the Maráthás was for a time removed by the departure of Pándurang Pandit. And, as the harvest season had arrived, he with his brother Zorawar Khán Bábu, leaving Muhammad Mubáriz Sherwáni behind as his deputy, set out from Ahmedábád to levy tribute from the chiefs of the Sábár Kántha. Certain well informed persons, who had heard of Raghunáthráv's preparations for invading Gujarát, begged Jawán Mard Khán not to leave the city but to depute his brother Zorawar Khán Bábu to collect the tribute. Jawán Mard Khán, not believing their reports, said that he would not go more than from forty-five to sixty miles from the city, and that, should the necessity of any more distant excursion arise, he would entrust it to his brother. Jawán Mard Khán then marched from the city, levying tribute until he arrived on the Pálanpur frontier about seventy-five miles north of Ahmedábád. Here meeting Muhammad Bahádur Jhálori, the governor of Pálanpur, Jawán Mard Khán was foolishly induced to join him in plundering the fertile districts of Sirohi, till at last he was not less than 150 miles from his head-quarters. Meanwhile Raghunáthráv, joining Dámáji Gaikwar, entered suddenly by an unusual route into Gujarát, and news reached Ahmedabad that the Maráthás had crossed the Narbada. On this the townspeople sent messenger after messenger to recall Jawán Mard Khán, and building up the gateways prepared for defence, while the inhabitants of the suburbs, leaving their houses, crowded with their families into the city for protection. Raghunáthráv, hearing that Jawán Mard Khán and his army were absent from the city, pressed on by forced marches, and crossing the river Mahi despatched an advance corps under Vithal Sukhdev. Kosáji, proprietor of Nadiád, at Dámáji Gaikwár's invitation also marched towards Ahmedábád, plundering Mehmúdábád Khokhri, only three miles from the city. In the meantime Vithal Sukhdev reached Kaira, and taking with him the chief man of that place, Muhammad Daurán, son of Muhammad Bábu, continued his march. He was shortly joined by Raghunáthráv, and the combined forces now proceeded to Ahmedábád and encamped by the Kankariya

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Ahmed Sha'h  
Emperor,  
1748-1754.

Pándurang  
Pandit Repulsed  
at Ahmedabad,  
1752.

Maráthá  
Invasion.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroy.Ahmed Shah  
Emperor,  
1748-1754.Return of Jawán  
Mard Khán.He enters  
Ahmedabad.Gallant Defence  
of the City.

lake. Next day Raghunáthráv moved his camp to near the tomb of Hazrat Sháh Bhíkan,<sup>1</sup> on the bank of the Sábarmati to the south-west of the city. Raghunáthráv now proceeded to invest the city, distributing his thirty to forty thousand horse into three divisions. The operations against the north of the city were entrusted to Dámáji Gaikwár; those on the east to Gopál Hari; while the troops on the south and west were under the personal command of Raghunáthráv and his officers.

After leaving Sirohi Jawán Mard Khán had gone westwards to Tharád and Váv, so that the first messengers failed to find him. One of the later messengers, Mándan by name, who had not left Ahmedábád until the arrival of Raghunáthráv at the Kánkariya lake, made his way to Váv and Tharád, and told Jawán Mard Khán what had happened. Jawán Mard Khán set out by forced marches for Rádhanpur, and leaving his family and the bulk of his army at Pátan, he pushed on with 200 picked horsemen to Kadi and from that to Ahmedábád, contriving to enter the city by night. The presence of Jawán Mard Khán raised the spirits of the besieged, and the defence was conducted with ardour. In spite of their watchfulness, a party of about 700 Maráthas under cover of night succeeded in scaling the walls and entering the city. Ere they could do any mischief they were discovered and driven out of the town with much slaughter. The bulk of the besieging army, which had advanced in hopes that this party would succeed in opening one of the city gates, were forced to retire disappointed. Raghunáthráv now made proposals for peace, but Jawán Mard Khán did not think it consistent with his honour to accept them. On his refusal, the Marátha general redoubled his efforts and sprung several mines, but owing to the thickness of the city walls no practicable breach was effected. Jawán Mard Khán now expelled the Marátha deputies, and continuing to defend the city with much gallantry contrived at night to introduce into the town by detachments a great portion of his army from Pátan. At length, embarrassed by want of provisions and the clamour of his troops for pay, he extorted £5000 (Rs. 50,000) from the official classes. As Jawán Mard was known to have an ample supply of money of his own this untimely meanness caused great discontent. The official classes who were the

---

<sup>1</sup>Of the death at the age of nine years of this son of Saint Sháh-i-Alam the Mirát-i-Ahmadi (Printed Persian Text, II, 26) gives the following details: Malik Seif ud-din, the daughter's son of Sultan Ahmed I., had a son who he believed was born to him by the prayer of Saint Sháh-i-Alam. This boy who was about nine years old died. Malik Seif ud-din ran to Sháh-i-Alam, who used then to live at Asdwal, two or three miles east of Ahmedábád, and in a transport of grief and rage said to the Saint: 'Is this the way you deceive people? Surely you obtained me the gift of that boy to live and not to die? This I suppose is how you will keep your promise of mediating for our sinful souls before Allah also?' The Saint could give no reply and retired to his inner apartments. The stricken father went to the Saint's son Sháh Bhíkan, who, going in to his father, entreated him to restore the Malik's boy to life. The Saint asked his son 'Are you prepared to die for the boy?' Sháh Bhíkan said 'I am ready.' The Saint, going into an inner room, spread his skirts before Allah crying 'Rájanji,' a pet name by which the Saint used to address Allah, meaning Dear King or Lord, 'Rájanji, here is a goat for a goat; take thou this one and return the other.' Lamentations in the Saint's harem showed that half of the prayer was granted and the Malik on returning to his house found the other half fulfilled.

repository of all real power murmured against his rule and openly advocated the surrender of the city; and Jawán Mard Khán, much against his will, was forced to enter into negotiations with Raghunáthráv.

Raghunáthráv was so little hopeful of taking Ahmedábád that he had determined, should the siege last a month longer, to depart on condition of receiving the one-fourth share of the revenue and a safe conduct. Had Jawán Mard Khán only disbursed his own money to pay the troops, and encouraged instead of disheartening the official class, he need never have lost the city. At last to Raghunáthráv's relief, Jawán Mard Khán was reduced to treat for peace through Vithal Sukhdev. It was arranged that the Maráthás should give Jawán Mard Khán the sum of £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*) to pay his troops, besides presenting him with an elephant and other articles of value. It was at the same time agreed that the garrison should leave the city with all the honours of war. And that, for himself and his brothers, Jawán Mard Khán should receive, free from any Maráthá claim, the districts of Pátan, Vadnagar, Sami, Munjpur, Visalnagar, Tharád, Kherálu, and Rádhanpur with Tervala and Bijápur. It was further agreed that one of Jawán Mard Khán's brothers should always serve the Maráthás with 300 horse and 500 foot, the expenses of the force being paid by the Maráthás. It was also stipulated that neither the Peshwa's army nor his deputy's, nor that of any commander should enter Jawán Mard Khán's territory, and that in Ahmedábád no Maráthá official should put up at any of the Khán Bahádúr's mansions, new or old, or at any of those belonging to his brothers followers or servants. Finally that the estates of other members of the family, namely Kaira, Kasha Mátar and Bánsa Mahudha, which belonged to Muhammad Khán, Khán Daurán, and Abid Khán were not to be meddled with, nor were encroachments to be allowed on the lands of Káyam Kúli Khán or of Zoráwar Khán. This agreement was signed and sealed by Raghunáthráv, with Dámáji Gaikwár (half sharer), Malhárráv Holkar, Jye Apa Sindhia, Rámehandar Vithal Sukhdev, Sakháram Bhagvant, and Máulhavráv Gopálráv as securities. The treaty was then delivered to Jawán Mard Khán, and he and his garrison, marching out with the honours of war, the Maráthás took possession of Ahmedábád on April 2nd, 1753.

On leaving Ahmedábád Jawán Mard Khán retired to Pátan. At Ahmedábád Raghunáthráv with Dámáji arranged for the government of the city, appointing Shripatráv his deputy. He then marched into Jháláýáda to levy tribute from the Limbdi and Wadhván chiefs; and was so far successful that Harbhamji of Limbdi agreed to pay an annual tribute of £4000 (Rs. 40,000). As the rainy season was drawing near Raghunáthráv returned to Dholka, while Patel Vithal Sukhdev forced Muhammad Bahádúr, the governor of Pálanpur, to consent to a payment of £11,500 (Rs. 1,15,000). From Dholka Raghunáthráv went to Tárápur, about twelve miles north of Cambay, and compelled Momín Khán to submit to an annual payment of £1000 (Rs. 10,000). At the same time Ali Muhammad Khán Bahádúr, the author of the Mirát-i-Ahmedi, was appointed collector of customs, and his former grants were confirmed and he was allowed to retain

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Ahmed Sháh  
Emperor,  
1748-1754.  
Jawán Mard  
Khán  
Surrendered.

The Maráthás  
take  
Possession,  
1753.

Collect Tribute.

## Chapter III.

Mughal  
Viceroys.

Ahmed Sha'h  
Emperor,  
1748-1754.  
Mughal Conango  
Censuses.

Failure of an  
Attempt on  
Cambay,  
1753.

The Kolis.

his villages of Sayadpur and Kūjādh close to Ahmedābād, as well as the village of Pānmūl in Bijāpur. Dāmāji Gāikwār, after levying tribute in the Vātrak Kānthā, went to Kapadvanj, which he took from Sher Khān Bābi. From Kapadvanj he passed to Nadiād and appointed Shevakrāi to collect his half share of the revenue of Gujarāt. In the Ahmedābād mint, coin ceased to be struck in the emperor's name and the suburbs of the city which had been deserted during the siege were not again inhabited. The Kolis commenced a system of depredation, and their outrages were so daring that women and children were sometimes carried off and sold as slaves. After the rains were over (A.D. 1751) Shetuji, commander of the Ahmedābād garrison, and Shankarji, governor of Viramgām, were sent to collect tribute from Sorath. Though the imperial power was sunk so low, the emperor was allowed to confer the post of Kāzi of the city on Kāzi Rūkn-ul-Hak Khān who arrived at Ahmedābād and assumed office. At the close of the year Shripatrāv, who was anxious to acquire Cambay, marched against Momīn Khān. After two doubtful battles in which the Marāthās gained no advantage, it was agreed that Momīn Khān should pay a sum of £700 (Rs. 7000), and Shripatrāv departed from Ahmedābād early in A.D. 1754. When the Kolis heard of the ill success of the Marāthās at Cambay, they revolted and Rāghoshankar was sent to subdue them. In an engagement near Luhāra in Bahyal in His Highness the Gāikwār's territory about eighteen miles east of Ahmedabad, Rāghoshankar scattered the Kolis, but they again collected and forced the Marāthās to retire. At this time Shetuji and Shankarji returned from Sorath, where they had performed the pilgrimage to Dwārka. Shetuji was sent to the Bhil district against the Kolis. He was unsuccessful, and was so ashamed of his failure that he returned to the Dakhan and Daudu Dātātri was appointed in his place.

In this year died Nek Alam Khān II, governor of Broach. He was succeeded by his brother Khertalab Khān who expelled his nephew Hāmīd Beg, son of Nek Alam Khān. Hāmīd Beg took refuge in Surat. At Bālāsīnor a dispute arose between Sher Khān Bābi and a body of Arab mercenaries who took possession of a hill, but in the end came to terms. With the Peshwa's permission his deputy Bhagvantrāv marched on Cambay. But Varajlāl, Momīn Khān's steward, who was then at Poona, sent word to his master, who prepared himself against any emergency. When Bhagvantrāv arrived at Cambay he showed no hostile intentions and was well received by Momīn Khān. Subsequently a letter from Bhagvantrāv to Sālim Jamāldār at Ahmedābād ordering him to march against Cambay fell into Momīn Khān's hands. He at once surrounded Bhagvantrāv's house and made him prisoner. When the Peshwa heard that Bhagvantrāv had been captured, he ordered Gamesh Apt, governor of Jambusar, as well as the governors of Viramgām, Dhandhuka, and other places to march at once upon Cambay. They went and besieged the town for three months, but without success. Eventually Shripatrāv, the Peshwa's deputy, sent the author of the Mirāt-i-Ahmedi to negotiate, and it was agreed that Bhagvantrāv should be released and that no alteration should be made in the position of Momīn Khān. Shortly afterwards Shripatrāv was recalled by the Peshwa and his place supplied by an

Marāthās  
Attack  
Cambay,  
1754.

officer of the name of Rágho. About this time Khertalab Khán, governor of Broach, died, and quarrels arose regarding the succession. Ultimately Hamid Beg, nephew of Khertalab Khán, obtained the post, and he afterwards received an imperial order confirming him as governor, and bestowing on him the title of Neknúm Khán Bahádur.

At Dehli, during A.D. 1754, the emperor Ahmed Sháh was deposed, and Áziz-ud-dín, son of Jahándár Sháh, was raised to the throne with the title of Alamgir II. After his release Bhagvantrav established himself in the Cambay fort of Nápid and not long after began to attack Momín Khán's villages. After several doubtful engagements peace was concluded on Momín Khán paying £1000 (Rs. 10,000) on account of the usual share of the Maráthas which he had withheld. This arrangement was made through the mediation of Tukáji, the steward of Sadáshiv Dámodar, who had come to Gujarát with an army and orders to help Bhagvantrav. As Momín Khán had no ready money Tukáji offered himself as security and Bhagvantrav and Tukáji withdrew to the Dakhan. Momín Khán's soldiery now clamoured for pay. As he was not in a position to meet their demands he sent a body of men against some villages to the west belonging to Limbdi and plundered them, dividing the booty among his troops. In the following year, A.D. 1755, Momín Khán went to Gogha, a port which, though at one time subordinate to Cambay, had fallen into the hands of Sher Khán Bábi, and was now in the possession of the Peshwa's officers. Gogha fell and leaving a garrison of 100 Arabs under Ibráhím, Kúli Khán, Momín Khán returned to Cambay, levying tribute. He then sent the bulk of his army under the command of Muhammad Zamán Khán, son of Fidá-ud-dín Khán, and Varajlál his own steward, to plunder and collect money in Gohlváda and Káthiáwáda. Here they remained until their arrears were paid off, and then returned to Cambay. After this Momín Khán plundered several Potlád villages and finally, in concert with the Kolis of Dhowan, attacked Jambusar and carried off much booty. Momín Khán next marched against Borsad, and was on the point of taking the fort when Sayáji, son of Dámáji Gáikwár, who lived at Baroda, hearing of Momín Khán's success, came rapidly with a small body of men to the relief of the fort and surprised the besiegers. The Muhammadan troops soon recovered from the effect of the surprise, and Sayáji fearing to engage them with so small a force retired. On Sayáji's departure Momín Khán raised the siege of Borsad and returned to Cambay.

In the year A.D. 1756 the rains were very heavy, and the walls of Ahmedábád fell in many places. Momín Khán, hearing of this as well as of the discontent of the inhabitants, resolved to capture the city. He sent spies to ascertain the strength of the garrison and set about making allies of the chief men in the province and enlisting troops. About this time Rághoji, the Marátha deputy, was assassinated by a Rohilla. As soon as Momín Khán heard of Rághoji's death he sent his nephew, Muhammad Zamán Khán, with some men in advance, and afterwards himself at the close of the year, A.D. 1756, marched from Cambay and camped on the Vátrak. From this camp they moved to Kaira, and from Kaira to Ahmedábád. After one or two fights in

### Chapter III. Mughal Viceroys.

Alamgir II.  
Emperor,  
1754-1759.

Contest with  
Momín Khán  
Renewed,  
1754.

Momín Khán  
takes Gogha,  
1755.

Momín Khán  
recovers  
Ahmedábád,  
17th Oct. 1756.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.****Alamgir II.  
Emperor,  
1754-1759.****Jawán Mard  
Khán allies  
himself with  
the Maráthás.**

the suburbs the Muhammadans, finding their way through the breaches in the walls, opened the gates and entered the town. The Kolis commenced plundering, and a hand-to-hand fight ensued, in which the Maráthás were worsted and were eventually expelled from the city. The Kolis attempted to plunder the Dutch factory, but met with a spirited resistance, and when Shambhúrám, a Nágár Bráhmaṇ, one of Momín Khán's chief supporters, heard it he ordered the Kolis to cease attacking the factory and consoled the Dutch.

In the meantime Jawán Mard Khán, who had been invited by the Maráthás to their assistance, set out from Pátan, and when he arrived at Pethápur and Mánasa he heard of the capture of Ahmedábád. On reaching Kalol he was joined by Harbhamráṁ, governor of Kadi. They resolved to send Zoráwar Khán Bábi to recall Sadáshiv Dámodar, and to await his arrival at Víramgám. Shevakráṁ, the Gaikwár's deputy, had taken refuge at Dholka. Momín Khán himself now advanced, and entering Ahmedabad on the 17th October 1756, appointed Shambhúrám his deputy. Sadáshiv Dámodar now joined Jawán Mard Khán at Víramgám, and at Jawán Mard Khán's advice it was resolved, before taking further steps, to write to the Peshwa for aid. Jawán Mard Khán, although he held large service estates, charged the Maráthás £150 (Rs. 1500) a day for his troops. Jawán Mard Khán and the Maráthás then advanced to Sínand and Jitalpur, and thence marched towards Cambay. On their way they were met, and, after several combats, defeated by a detachment of Momín Khán's army. Momín Khán sent troops to overrun Kadi, but Harbhamráṁ, the governor of Kadi, defeated the force, and captured their guns. When the emperor heard of the capture of Gogha, he sent a sword as a present to Momín Khán; and when the news of the capture of Ahmedábád reached Ágra, Momín Khán received many compliments. Bálijirav Peshwa on the other hand was greatly enraged at these reverses. He at once sent off Sadáshiv Rámchandra to Gujarát as his deputy, and Dámáji and Khanderav Gaikwár also accompanied him with their forces. Momín Khán refusing to give up Ahmedábád, prepared for defence. Sadáshiv Rámchandra, Damaji and Khanderav Gaikwár advanced, and, crossing the Mahi, reached Kaira. Here they were met by Jawán Mard Khán and the rest of the Maráthá forces in Gujarát, and the combined army advancing against the capital camped by the Kankariya lake.

**Maráthás Invest  
Ahmedábád,  
1756.**

The Maráthás now regularly invested the city, but Momín Khán, aided by Shambhúrám, made a vigorous defence. Up to this time Jawán Mard Khán was receiving £150 (Rs. 1500) daily for the pay of his own and his brother's troops. Sadáshiv Rámchandra, considering the number of the troops too small for so large a payment, reduced the amount and retained the men in his own service. After a month's siege, Momín Khán's troops began to clamour for pay, but Shambhúrám, by collecting the sum of £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*) from the inhabitants of the town managed for the time to appease their demands. When they again became urgent for pay, Shambhúrám diverted their thoughts by a general sally from all the gates at night. On this occasion many men were slain on both sides, and many of the inhabitants deserted the town. The copper vessels of such of the townspeople as had fled

were melted and coined into money and given to the soldiery. In this state of affairs an order arrived from the imperial court bestowing on Momín Khán a dress of honour and the title of Bahádur. Although the imperial power had for years been merely a name Momín Khán asked and obtained permission from the besiegers to leave the city and meet the bearers of the order. The Maráthás redoubled their efforts. Still though the besiegers were successful in intercepting supplies of grain the garrison fought gallantly in defence of the town.

At this juncture, in A.D. 1757, Rája Shivesingh of Idar, son of the late Anandasingh, who was friendly to Momín Khán, sent Sajánsingh Hazáfi with a force to assist the besieged. On their way to Ahmedábád, Harbhamráam with a body of Maráthas attacked this detachment, while Momín Khán sent to their aid Muhammad Láil Rolulla and others, and a doubtful battle was fought. Shortly afterwards Sadáshiv Rámchandar made an attempt on the fort of Kálikot. The fort was successfully defended by Jamadár Núr Muhammad, and the Maráthas were repulsed. The Maráthas endeavoured in vain to persuade Shambhúrám to desert Momín Khán, and though the garrison were often endangered by the faithlessness of the Kolis and other causes, they remained staunch. Momín Khán, though frequently in difficulties owing to want of funds to pay his soldiery, continued to defend the town. The Maráthas next tried to seduce some of Momín Khán's officers, but in this they also failed, and in a sally Shambhúrám attacked the camp of Sadáshiv Rámchandar, and burning his tents all but captured the chief himself.

When the siege was at this stage, Hassan Kúli Khán Bahádur, viceroy of Oudh, relinquishing worldly affairs and dividing his property among his nephews, set out to perform a pilgrimage to Makkah. Before he started Shuja-úd-daulah, the Nawab of Lucknow, requested him on his way to visit Bárájráv, and endeavour to come to some settlement of Ahmedábád affairs. Accordingly, adopting the name of Shah Núr, and assuming the dress of an ascetic, Hassan Kúli made his way to Poona, and appearing before the Peshwa offered to make peace at Ahmedábád. Shah Núr with much difficulty persuaded the Peshwa to allow Momín Khán to retain Cambay and Gogha without any Maráthas share, and to grant him a *lák* of rupees for the payment of his troops on condition that he should surrender Ahmedábád. He obtained letters from the Peshwa addressed to Sadáshiv Rámchandra to this effect, and set out with them for Ahmedábád. When he arrived Sadáshiv Rámchandra was unwilling to accede to the terms, as the Ahmedábád garrison were reduced to great straits. Shah Núr persuaded him at last to agree, provided Momín Khán would surrender without delay. Accordingly Shah Núr entered the city and endeavoured to persuade Momín Khán. Momín Khán demanded in addition a few Petlál villages, and to this the Maráthas refused their consent. Shah Núr left in disgust. Before many days Momín Khán was forced to make overtures for peace. After discussions with Dámáji Gáikwár, it was agreed that Momín Khán should surrender the city, receive £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lák*) to pay his soldiery, and be allowed to retain Cambay as heretofore, that is to say that the Peshwa should, as

### Chapter III.

#### Mughal Viceroy.

Alamgir II.  
Emperor,  
1754-1759.

Ráj of Idar  
helps Momín  
Khán,  
1757.

Successful  
Sally under  
Shambhúrám.

Negotiations  
for Peace.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.****Akbar II.  
Emperor,  
1754-1759.****Marátha  
Arrangements  
in Ahmedabad.****New Coins.****Momín Khan  
at Cambay.****Expedition from  
Kachh against  
Sindh,  
1758.**

formerly, enjoy half the revenues. In addition to this Momín Khán had to promise to pay the Maráthás a yearly tribute of £1000 (Rs. 10,000) and to give up all claims on the town of Gogha and hand over Shambhurám to the Maráthás. It was also arranged that the £3500 (Rs. 35,000) worth of *ashrafs* which he had taken through Jamádar Sáhmi should be deducted from the £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*). Momín Khán surrendered the town on February 27th, 1758.

Sadáshiv Rámchandar and Dámáji Gáikwár entered the city and undertook its management on behalf of the Maráthás. Of the other chiefs who were engaged in prosecuting the siege, Sadáshiv Dághdar returned to the Dakhan and Jawán Mard Khán receiving some presents from Sadáshiv Rámchandar departed for Pátan after having had a meeting with Dámáji Gáikwár at a village a few miles from the capital. Shambhurám, the Nágar Bráhmaṇ, who had so zealously supported Momín Khán, when he saw that further assistance was useless, tried to escape, but was taken prisoner and sent in chains to Baroda. Sadáshiv Rámchandar, on taking charge of the city, had interviews with the principal officials, among whom was the author of the *Mirat-i-Ahmedi*, and, receiving them graciously, confirmed most of them in their offices. Then, after choosing Náro Pandit, brother of Pándurang Pandit, to be his deputy in Ahmedábád, he started on an expedition to collect tribute in Jhálaváda and Sorath. On receiving the government of the city the Marátha generals ordered new coin bearing the mark of an elephant gourd to be struck in the Ahmedábád mint. Sayájiráv Gáikwár remained in Ahmedábád on behalf of his father Dámáji, and shortly afterwards went towards Kapadvanj to collect tribute. Thence at his father's request he proceeded to Sorath to arrange for the payment of the Gáikwár's share of the revenues of that district. On his return to Cambay Momín Khán was much harassed by his troops for arrears of pay. The timely arrival of his steward Varajlál with the Peshwa's contribution of £10,000 (Rs. 1 *lakh*) enabled him to satisfy their demands.

Momín Khán now began to oppress and extort money from his own followers, and is said to have instigated the murder of his steward Varajlál. Sadáshiv Rámchandar went from Porbandar to Júnágadh, where he was joined by Sayájiráv Gáikwár. At Júnágadh Sher Khán Bábi presented Sadáshiv Rámchandra and Sayájiráv with horses and they spoke of the necessity of admitting a Marátha deputy into Júnágadh. Nothing was settled as the Maráthás were forced to return to Ahmedábád. In accordance with orders from the Peshwa, Shambhurám and his sons, who were still in confinement, were sent to Poona. Dámáji Gáikwár was also summoned to Poona, but he did not go. In this year Ráo Lakhpát of Kachh presented Kachh horses and Gujarát bullocks to the emperor, and in return received the title of Mírza Rája.

About this time the Ráo of Kachh, who planned an expedition against Sindh, solicited aid both from Dámáji Gáikwár and Sadáshiv Rámchandar to enable him to conquer Thatta, and, as he agreed to pay expenses, Sadáshiv sent Ranchordás, and Dámáji sent Shevakrámi to help him. In this year also Nekkám Khán, governor of Broach, received the title of Bahádur and other honours. In A.D. 1758, Sadáshiv Rámchandar advanced to Kaira and after settling accounts

with Dámáji's agent proceeded against Cambay. Momín Khán, who was about to visit the Peshwa at Poona, remained to defend the town, but was forced to pay arrears of tribute amounting to £2000 (Rs. 20,000). In this year Sher Khán Bábi died at Júnághadh, and the nobles of his court seated his son Muhammad Mahábat Khán in his place.

Shortly after at the invitation of the Peshwa, Dámáji Gáikwár went to Poona, and sent his son Sayájiráv into Sorath. After his success at Cambay Sadáshiv Rámchandra levied tribute from the chiefs of Umeta, and then returned. On his way back, on account of the opposition caused by Sardár Muhammad Khán son of Sher Khán Bábi, the chief of Bálásinor, Sadáshiv Rámchandar besieged Bálásinor and forced the chief to pay £3000 (Rs. 30,000). Next marching against Lunáváda, he compelled the chief Dípsingh to pay £5000 (Rs. 50,000). Sadáshiv then went to Visalnagar and so to Pálanpur, where Muhammad Khán Bahádur Jhálori resisted him; but after a month's siege he agreed to pay a tribute of £3500 (Rs. 35,000). Passing south from Pálanpur, Sadáshiv went to Únja-Unáva, and from that to Katosan where he levied £1000 (Rs. 10,000) from the chief Shuja, and then proceeded to Límbedi.

**Chapter III.**  
**Mughal**  
**Viceroy.**

**Alamgir II.**  
Emperor,  
1754-1759.

The Maráthas  
levy Tribute.

**SURAT AFFAIRS,**  
1758.

The English  
take command  
of Surat,  
1759.

Momín Khán\*  
Visits Poona,  
1759.

During A.D. 1758 important changes took place in Surat. In the early part of the year Sayad Muin-ul-dín, otherwise called Sayad Achchan, visited the Peshwa at Poona, and received from him the appointment of governor of Surat. Sayad Achchan then set out for his charge, and as he was aided by a body of Marátha troops under the command of Muzaffar Khán Gárdi and had also secured the support of Nekkám Khán, the governor of Broach, he succeeded after some resistance in expelling Ali Nawáz Khán, son of the late Safdar Muhammad Khán, and establishing himself in the government. During the recent troubles, the English factory had been plundered and two of their clerks murdered by Ahmed Khán Habshi, commandant of the fort. The English therefore determined to drive out the Habshi and themselves assume the government of the castle. With this object men-of-war were despatched from Bombay to the help of Mr. Spencer, the chief of the English factory, and the castle was taken in March A.D. 1759, and Mr. Spencer appointed governor. The Peshwa appears to have consented to this conquest. The Marátha troops aided and made a demonstration without the city, and a Marátha man-of-war which had been stationed at Bassein, came to assist the English. A Mr. Glass appears to have been appointed *kiledár* under Governor Spencer.

Shortly afterwards Momín Khán, by the advice of Sayad Husain, an agent of the Peshwa, contracted friendship with the English through Mr. Erskine, the chief of the English factory at Cambay. Momín Khán then asked Mr. Erskine to obtain permission for him to go to Poona by Bombay. Leave being granted, Momín Khán set out for Surat, and was there received by Mr. Spencer. From Surat he sailed for Bombay, where the governor, Mr. Bouchier, treating him with much courtesy, informed the Peshwa of his arrival. The Peshwa sending permission for his further advance to Poona, Momín Khán took leave of Mr. Bouchier and proceeded to Poona.

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroy.****Alamgir II  
Emperor.  
1754 1759.****SADASHIV  
RAMCHANDRA  
Peshwa's  
Viceroy,  
1760.****The Maráthás  
in Káthiávájá,  
1759.**

From Limbdi, to which point his tribute tofr has been traced, Sadáshiv Rámchandra advanced against Dhrangadhra, when the chief who was at Halvad sent an army against him. The Maráthás, informed of the chief's design, detaching a force, attacked Halvad at night, and breaching the walls forced open the gates. The chief retired to his palace, which was fortified, and there defended himself, but was at last forced to surrender, and was detained a prisoner until he should pay a sum of £12,000 (Rs. 1,20,000). The neighbouring chiefs, impressed with the fate of Halvad, paid tribute without opposition. Sadáshiv Rámchandra now went to Júnágadh, but ere he could commence operations against the fortress, the rainy season drew near, and returning to Ahmedabád he prepared to depart for Poona. Sayáji Gaikwár, who was also in Sorath collecting tribute, amongst other places besieged Kundla, and levying from that town a tribute of £7500 (Rs. 75,000) returned to the capital. During this time Khanderáv Gaikwár had been levying tribute from the Kolis, and after visiting the Bhil district went to Bijápur, Ídar, Kadi, Dholka, and Nadiad. The chief of Halvad on paying his £12,000 (Rs. 1,20,000) was allowed to depart, and Dipsingh of Lunaváda, who was also a prisoner, was sent to Lunavada and there released after paying his tribute. On receiving the news of the capture of the Surat fort by the English the emperor issued an order, in the name of the governor of Bombay, confirming the command of the fort to the English instead of to the Habshis of Janjira, appointing the Honourable East India Company admirals of the imperial fleet, and at the same time discontinuing the yearly payment of £2000 (Rs. 20,000) formerly made to the Habshis on this account. When in the course of the following year, A.D. 1760, this imperial order reached Surat, Mr. Spencer and other chief men of the city went outside of the walls to meet and escort the bearers of the despatch. Sadáshiv Rámchandra was appointed viceroy of Ahmedabad on behalf of the Peshwa. Bhagvantrav now conquered Balasinor from Sardar Muhammad Khan Babi, and then marching to Sorath, collected the Peshwa's share of the tribute of that province, according to the scale of the previous year. Sayáji Gaikwar, when Bhagvantrav had returned, set out to Sorath to levy the Gaikwár's share of the tribute. He was accompanied by Harbhamiam whom Damáji Gaikwár had specially sent from his own court to act as Kámdár to Sayáji. When Sadáshiv Rámchandra reported to the Peshwa the conquest of Balásinor by Bhagvantráv, he was highly pleased, and gave Bhagvantráv a dress of honour and allowed him to keep the elephant which he had captured at Lunaváda; and passed a patent bestowing Balásinor upon him. Momín Khán, after making firm promises to the Peshwa never to depart from the terms of the treaty he had made with the Maráthás, left Poona and came to Bombay, where he was courteously entertained by the Governor, and despatched by boat to Surat. From Surat he passed to Camháy by land through Broach. Sayáji Gaikwár had returned to Ahmedábad from Sorath in bad health, and his uncle Khánderáv Gaikwár, who had been vainly endeavouring to subdue the Kolis of Lúhára, came to Ahmedábad and took Sayáji Gaikwár to Nadiád. In 1761 Sadáshiv Rámchandra was displaced as viceroy of Gujarát by

**Apa Ganesh.** This officer acted in a friendly manner to Momín Khán, and marching to Cambay, he fixed the Maráthá share of the revenues of that place for that year at £8400 (Rs. 84,000), and then went to Ahmedábád by way of Dákor. Narbherám collected this year the Gaikwár's share of the tribute of Sorath and Sayaji Gaikwár went to Baroda. On his return to Ahmedábád at the end of the year, Sayaji sacked and burned the Koli village of Láhíra in Bahyal about eighteen miles east of Ahmedábád. Jawán Mard Khan now issued from Patan and levied small contributions from the holdings in Vágad, as far as Anjár in Kachh. From Vágad he proceeded to Sorath, and in concert with Muhammad Mahabat Khan of Júnágadh and Muhammad Muzaffar Khán Bábi, between whom he made peace, he levied tribute in Sorath as far as Lohyana, and returned to Patan.

While their power and plunderings were thus prospering in Gujaráť the crushing ruin of Pámpat (A.D. 1761) fell on the Maráthas. Taking advantage of the confusion that followed, the Delhi court despatched instructions to the chief Musalmán nobles of Gujarat, directing Momín Khán, Jawán Mard Khan, and the governor of Broach to join in driving the Maráthas out of the province. In consequence of this despatch Sardár Muhammad Khán Bábi, defeating the Maráthá garrison, regained Balasnor, while the governor of Broach, with the aid of Momín Khan, succeeded in winning back Jambú-ar. Apa Ganesh, the Peshwa's viceroy, remonstrated with Momín Khán for this breach of faith. In reply his envoy was shown the despatch received from Delhi, and was made the bearer of a message, that before it was too late, it would be wisdom for the Maráthas to abandon Gujarat. Things were in this state when Dámáji Gaikwar, wisely forgetting his quarrels with the Peshwa, marched to the aid of Sadáshiv with a large army. Advancing against Cambay he attacked and defeated Momín Khán, plundering one of his villages. But the Maráthas were too weak to follow up this success, or exact severer punishment from the Musalmán confederates. Apa Ganesh invited Sardár Muhammad Khán Bábi to Kaira, and on condition of the payment of tribute, agreed to allow him to keep possession of Balasnor. Subsequently Dámáji's energy enabled him to enlarge the power and possessions of the Gaikwár's house, besides acquisitions from other chiefs, recovering the districts of Vámbagán, Kherálú, Vádnagar, Bijápur, and Pátan from Jawán Mard Khan. After the death of the great Dámáji, the importance of the Gaikwár's power sensibly diminished. Had it not been for their alliance with the British, the feeble hands of Sayajiráv I. (A.D. 1771-1778) would probably have been the last to hold the emblem of Gaikwár rule. If in the zenith of Gaikwár power Momín Khán could reconquer, and for so long successfully defend Ahmedábád, what might not have been possible in its decline?

**Chapter III.****Mughal  
Viceroys.**

**A lamgir II.**  
Emperor,  
1754-1759-  
**APA GANESH**  
Viceroy,  
1761.

**Pámpat,**  
1761.



## APPENDIX I.

### The Death of Sulta'n Baha'dur, A.D. 1526-1536.<sup>1</sup>

COLONEL BRIGGS (Muhammadian Power in India, IV. 132) gives the following summary of the events which led to the fatal meeting of Sultán Bahádúr and the Portuguese viceroy Nono da Cunha in the beginning of 1536-37:

When in 1529 Nono daCunha came as viceroy to India he held instructions to make himself master of the island of Diu. In the following year a great expedition, consisting of 400 vessels and 15,600 men, met in Bombay and sailed to the Káthiáwáda coast. After vigorous assaults it was repulsed off Diu on the 17th February 1531. From that day the Portuguese made ceaseless efforts to obtain a footing on the island of Diu. In 1531 besides harrying the sea trade of Gujarát the Portuguese sacked the towns of Tárápur, Balsár, and Surat, and, to give colour to their pretensions, received under their protection Chánd Khán an illegitimate brother of Bahádúr. In 1532, under James de Sylveira, the Portuguese burned the south Kathiáwáda ports of Pattan-Somnáth, Mangrul, Talája, and Muzaffarábád, killing many of the people and carrying off 4000 as slaves. Shortly after the Portuguese took and destroyed Bassein in Thána obtaining 400 cannon and much ammunition. They also burned Daman, Thána, and Bombay. "All this," says the Portuguese historian "they did to straiten Diu and to oblige the king of Gujarát to consent to their raising a fort on the island of Diu." When Bahádúr was engaged with the Mughals (A.D. 1532-1534) the Portuguese Governor General deputed an embassy to wait on Humáyún to endeavour to obtain from him the cession of Diu, hoping by this action to work indirectly on the fears of Bahádúr. At last in 1534 Bahádúr consented to a peace by which he agreed to cede the town of Bassein to Portugal; not to construct ships of war in his ports; and not to combine with Turkish fleets against Portugal.

Permission was also given to the Portuguese to build in Diu. In consideration of these terms the Portuguese agreed to furnish Bahádúr with 500 Europeans of whom fifty were men of note. According to the Portuguese historian it was solely because of this Portuguese help that Bahádúr succeeded in driving the Mughals out of Gujarát. Bahádúr's cession of land in Diu to the Portuguese was for the purpose of building a mercantile factory. From the moment Bahádúr discovered they had raised formidable fortifications, especially when by the withdrawal of the Mughals he no longer had any motive for keeping on terms with them, he resolved to wrest the fort out of the hands of the Portuguese. On the plea of separating the natives from the Europeans, Bahádúr instructed his governor of Diu to build a wall with a rampart capable of being mounted with guns. But as this created much dispute and ill-will the rampart was given up. Bahádúr next attempted to seize Emanuel de Souza the captain of Diu fort. With this object he invited DeSouza to his camp. DeSouza was warned but determined to accept Bahádúr's invitation. He went attended by only one servant, an act of courage which

### Appendix I.

THE DEATH  
OF SULTÁN  
BAHÁDÚR,  
A.D. 1526-1536.

<sup>1</sup> See above page 256. The Portuguese details have been obtained through the kindness of Dr. Gerson DaCunha.

**Appendix I.**  
**THE DEATH**  
**OF SULTÁN**  
**BAHÁDUR,**  
**A.D. 1526 - 1536.**

Bahádúr so greatly admired that he treated him with honour and allowed him to return in safety. Bahádúr next schemed to secure DeSouza in the fort by surprise. With this end he began to pay the Portuguese officers visits at all hours. But DeSouza was always on his guard and Bahádúr's surprise visits failed to give him an opportunity. In 1536 DeSouza wrote to the viceroy complaining of the bad feeling of the Gujarát Moors towards the Portuguese in Diu and of the efforts of the king to drive them out of the fort. In consequence of DeSouza's letter Nono da Cunha the viceroy arrived at Diu early in 1536-7. Bahádúr went to visit the viceroy on board the viceroy's ship. On his return he was attacked and leaping into the water was killed by a blow on the head and sank.

Of the unplanned and confused circumstances in which the brave Bahádúr met his death four Musalmán and four Portuguese versions remain. The author of the *Mirát-i-Sikandari* (Persian Text, 280-281) states that the Portuguese, who offered their help to Bahádúr in the days of his defeat by the emperor Humáyún, obtained from him the grant of land at Diu, and on this land built a fort. After the re-establishment of his power the Sultán, who had no longer any need of their help, kept constantly planning some means of ousting the Portuguese from Diu. With this object Bahádúr came to Diu and opened negotiations with the Portuguese viceroy, hoping in the end to get the viceroy into his power. The viceroy knowing that Bahádúr regretted the concessions he had made to them was too wary to place himself in Bahádúr's hands. To inspire confidence Bahádúr, with five or six of his nobles all unarmed, paid the viceroy a visit on board his ship. Suspecting foul play from the behaviour of the Portuguese the king rose to retire, but the Portuguese pressed upon him on all sides. He had nearly reached his boat when one of the Portuguese struck him a blow with a sword, killed him, and threw his body overboard.

The same author gives a second version which he says is more generally received and is probably more accurate. According to this account the Portuguese had come to know that Bahádúr had invited the Sultáns of the Dakhan to co-operate with him in driving the Portuguese from the Gujarát, Konkau, and Dakhan ports. That the Portuguese viceroy had come with 150 ships and had anchored at Diu off the chain bastion. That Sultán Bahádúr not suspecting that the Portuguese were aware of his insincerity went in a barge to see the fleet, and when he got in the midst of their ships, the Portuguese surrounded his barge and killed him with lances.

According to Farishtah (II. 442, 443, Pers Text) on the invasion of Gujarát by the emperor Humáyún, Sultán Bahádúr had asked help of the Portuguese. When his power was re-established, Bahádúr, hearing of the arrival of between five and six thousand Portuguese at Diu, feared they would take possession of that port. He therefore hastened to Diu from Junágadh. The Portuguese who were aware that Humáyún had withdrawn and that Bahádúr had re-established his power, preferred to attempt to gain Diu by stratagem rather than by force. Bahádúr asked the viceroy to visit him. The viceroy feigned sickness and Bahádúr with the object of proving his goodwill offered to visit the viceroy on board his ship. On leaving the viceroy's ship to enter his own barge the Portuguese suddenly moved their vessel and Bahádúr fell overboard. While in the water a Portuguese struck the king with a lance and killed him.

Abul Fazl's account A.D. 1590 (Akbar-námah in Elliot, VI. 18) seems more natural and in better keeping with Bahádúr's impetuous vigour and bravery than either the Gujarát or Farishtah's narratives. The Portuguese chief was apprehensive that as the Sultan was no longer in want of assistance he meditated treachery. So he sent to inform the Sultán that he had come as requested, but that he was ill and unable to go on shore, so that the interview must be deferred till he got better. The Sultan, quitting the royal road of safety, embarked on the 12th February 1536 (3rd Ramazan H. 943) with a small escort to visit the viceroy on board the viceroy's ship. As soon as Bahádúr reached the vessel he found the viceroy's sickness was a pretence and regretted that he had come. He at once sought to return. But the Portuguese were unwilling that such a prey should escape them and hoped that by keeping him prisoner they might get more ports. The viceroy came forward and asked the Sultán to stay a little and examine some curiosities he had to present. The Sultán replied that the curiosities might be sent after him and turned quickly towards his own boat. A European *kázi* or priest placed himself in the Sultan's way and bade him stop. The Sultán, in exasperation, drew his sword and cleft the priest in twain. He then leaped into his own boat. The Portuguese vessels drew round the Sultán's boat and a fight began. The Sultan and Rúmi Khán threw themselves into the water. A friend among the Portuguese stretched a hand to Rúmi Khan and saved him: the Sultán was drowned in the waves.

Of the four Portuguese versions of Bahádúr's death the first appears in Correa's (A.D. 1512 - 1550) *Decadas Da Asia*, A.D. 1497 to 1550; the second in DeBarros' (died A.D. 1570) *Decadas*, A.D. 1497 to 1539; the third in De Couto's (died A.D. 1600?) continuation of DeBarros, A.D. 1529 to 1600, and the fourth in Faria-e-Souza's (died A.D. 1650) *Portuguese Asia* to A.D. 1640. A fifth reference to Bahádúr's death will be found in Castaneda's *Historia* which extends to A.D. 1538.

As Correa was in India from A.D. 1512 till his death in Goa in A.D. 1550, and as his narrative which was never published till A.D. 1856-57 has the highest reputation for accuracy of detail his version carries special weight. According to Correa (*Decadas Da Asia*, Vol. III. Chap. XC.V.) during the monsoon of 1536, Nono DaCunha the viceroy received by land a letter from Manoel deSouza the captain of Diu fort, telling him of the discontent of the Gujarát Moors with king Bahádúr for allowing the Portuguese to build a fort at Diu. In consequence of this information early in the fair season Nono DaCunha sailed from Goa in his own galleon accompanied by about ten small vessels *fastas* and *katugs* under the command of Antonio de Sylveira. Nono reached Diu about the end of December. King Bahádúr was glad that the viceroy should come to Diu almost alone since it seemed to show he was not aware of Bahádúr's designs against the Portuguese. When Bahádúr arrived at Diu he sent a message to the viceroy inviting him to come ashore to meet him as he had important business to transact. The king's messenger found the viceroy ill in bed and brought back a message that the viceroy would come ashore to meet the king in the evening. Immediately after the king's messenger left, Manoel deSouza, the captain of Diu fort, came on board to see the viceroy. The viceroy told Manoel to go and thank the king and to return his visit. The king expressed his grief at the viceroy's illness and proposed to start at once to see him. He went to his barge and rowed straight to the viceroy's

## Appendix I.

THE DEATH  
OF SULTÁN  
BAHÁDÚR,  
A.D. 1526 - 1536.

**Appendix I.**

**THE DEATH  
OF SULTÁN  
BAHÁDUR,  
A.D. 1526 - 1536.**

galleon. The king had with him, besides the interpreter St. Jago, seven men and two pages one carrying a sword and the other a bow. The captain of the fort and some other officers in their own barges followed the king. Bahádur, who was the first to arrive, came so speedily that the viceroy had hardly time to make preparations to receive him. He put on heavy clothes to show he was suffering from ague and ordered all the officers to be well armed. When Bahádur came on board he saw the men busy with their weapons but showed no signs that he suspected foul play. He went straight to the viceroy's cabin. The viceroy tried to get up but Bahádur prevented him, asked how he was, and returned at once to the deck. As Bahádur stood on the deck the captain of the fort boarded the galleon, and, as he passed to the cabin to see the viceroy, Bahádur laughingly upbraided him with being behind time. Then without taking leave of the viceroy Bahádur went to his barge. When the viceroy learned that the king had left he told the captain to follow the king and to take him to the fort and keep him there till the viceroy saw him. The captain rowed after the king who was already well ahead. He called to the king asking him to wait. The king waited. When the captain came close to the king's barge he asked the king to come into his vessel. But the interpreter without referring to the king replied that the captain should come into the king's barge. DeSouza ordered his boat alongside. His barge struck the king's barge and DeSouza who was standing on the poop tripped and fell into the water. The rowers of the royal barge picked him out and placed him near the king who laughed at his wet clothes. Other Portuguese barges whose officers thought the Moors were fighting with the captain began to gather. The first to arrive was Antonio Cardoza. When Cardoza came up the interpreter told the king to make for land with all speed as the Portuguese seemed to be coming to seize and kill him. The king gave the order to make for the shore. He also told the page to shoot the hollow arrow whose whistling noise was a danger signal. When the Moors in the king's barge heard the whistle they attacked Manoel deSouza, who fell dead into the sea. Then Diogo de Mesquita, D'Almeida, and Antonio Correa forced their way on to the king's barge. When the king saw them he unsheathed his sword and the page shot an arrow and killed Antonio Cardoza, who fell overboard and was drowned. D'Almeida was killed by a sword-cut from a Moor called Tiger and Tiger was killed by Correa. At that moment Diogo de Mesquita gave the king a slight sword-cut and the king jumped into the sea. After the king, the interpreter and Rúmi Khán, two Moors, and all the rowers leapt into the water. The Portuguese barges surrounded them and the men struck at the three swimmers with lances and oars. The king twice cried aloud 'I am Sultán Bahádur,' hoping that some one would help him. A man who did not know that he was the king struck Bahádur on the head with a club. The blow was fatal and Bahádur sank. The second version is given by Barros (A.D. 1560) in his *Decadas da Asia*, Vol. V page 357 of the 1707 edition. The third version by Do Couto (A.D. 1600) in his continuation of Barros' *Decadas*, and the fourth by Faria-e-Souza (A.D. 1650) in his *Portuguese Asia* are in the main taken from De Barros. The following details are from Steevens' (A.D. 1697) translation of Faria given in Briggs' *Muhammadan Power in India*, IV. 135-138.

Bahádur king of Cambay, who had recovered his kingdom solely by the assistance of the Portuguese, now studied their ruin, and repenting of the leave he had granted to build a fort at Diu endeavoured to

## Appendix I.

THE DEATH

OF SUULTAN

BAHADUR.

A.D. 1526-1586.

take it and to kill the commander and the garrison. Nono da Cunha the Portuguese viceroy understood his designs and prepared to prevent them. Emanuel deSouza who commanded at Diu was warned by a Moor that the king would send for him by a certain Moor and kill him. DeSouza determined to go, and, when sent for, appeared with only one servant. Admiring DeSouza's courage the king treated him honourably and allowed him to return in safety. The king's mother tried to dissuade her son from plotting against DeSouza but to no effect. To remove suspicion Bahádur began to pay the Portuguese officers visits at unreasonable hours, but was ever received by DeSouza on his guard. Meanwhile, on the 9th January 1536, Nono da Cunha the Portuguese viceroy set out from Goa for Diu with 300 sail. When he put in at Choul he found Nizám-ul-Mulk who pretended he had come to divert his women at sea but really with designs on that place. When Nono reached Diu the king was hunting in the mountains and Nono apprised him of his arrival. The king sent for him by a Portuguese apostate of the name of John de St. Jago called Firangi Khán, but Nono da Cunha pleaded illness. The king pretending great friendship came to Diu accompanied by Emanuel deSouza, who had brought the last message from DaCunha. At Diu the king went on board the viceroy's ship and for a time they discoursed. The king was troubled at a page whispering something to DaCunha, but as DaCunha took no notice his suspicions were allayed. The message was from DeSouza, stating that the captains whom he had summoned were awaiting orders to secure or kill the king. DaCunha thought it strange that DeSouza had not killed the king while he was in his power in the fort; and DeSouza thought it strange that DaCunha did not now seize the king when he was in his power in the ship. DaCunha directed all the officers to escort the king to the palace and then accompany DeSouza to the fort, where DaCunha intended to seize the king when he came to visit him. The king on his part had resolved to seize DaCunha at a dinner to which he had invited him and send him in a cage to the Great-Turk. De Souza who was going to invite the king to the fort after DaCunha had entered it, came up with the king's barge and delivered his invitation through Rúmi Khán. Rúmi Khán warned the king not to accept it. The king disregarding this warning invited DeSouza into his barge. While stopping into the king's barge DeSouza fell overboard, but was picked up by officers who carried him to the king. At this time three Portuguese barges came up and one of the officers seeing DeSouza hastily enter the king's barge drew close to the king's barge. The king remembering Rúmi Khán's warning ordered Emanuel deSouza to be killed. James deMesquita understanding the order flew at and wounded the king. An affray followed and four Portuguese and seven of the king's men were killed. The king tried to get away in a boat but a cannon shot killed three of his rowers and he was stopped. He next attempted to escape by swimming, but being in danger of drowning discovered himself by crying for help. A Portuguese held out an oar to him; but others struck him fatal blows, so that he sank.

The conclusion to be drawn from these four Musalmán and four Portuguese versions is that on either side the leader hoped by some future treachery to seize the person of the other; and that mutual suspicion turned into a fatal affray a meeting which both parties intended should pass peacefully and lull the other into a false and favourable security.

## APPENDIX II.

### THE HILL FORT OF MA'NDU.

#### PART I.—DESCRIPTION.

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MA'NDU.**  
**DESCRIPTION.**

MA'NDU, about twenty-three miles south of Dhār in Central India, is a wide waving hill-top, part of the great wall of the Vindhyan range. The hill-top is three to four miles from north to south and four to five miles from east to west. On the north, the east, and the west, Māndū is islanded from the main plateau of Malwa by valleys and ravines that circle round to its southern face, which stands 1200 feet out of the Nīmār plain. The area of the hill-top is over 12,000 English acres, and, so broken is its outline, that the encircling wall is said to have a length of between thirty-seven and thirty-eight miles. Its height, 1950 feet above the sea, secures for the hill-top at all seasons the boon of fresh and cool air.

About twenty miles south of Dhār the level cultivated plateau breaks into woody glades and uplands. Two miles further the plain is cleft by two great ravines, which from their deeper and broader southern mouths 700 to 800 feet below the Dhār plateau, as they wind northwards, narrow and rise, till, to the north of Mandu hill, they shallow into a woody dip or valley about 300 yards broad and 200 feet below the south crest of Mālwa. From the south crest of the Malwa plateau, across the tree tops of this wild valley, stand the cliffs of the island Māndu, their crests crowned by the great Delhi gateway and its long lofty line of flanking walls. At the foot of the sudden dip into the valley the Âlamgir or World-Guarding Gate stands sentinel.<sup>1</sup> Beyond the gateway, among wild reaches of rock and forest, a noble causeway with high domed tombs on either hand fills the lowest dip of the valley. From the south end of the causeway the road winds up to a second gateway, and beyond the second gateway between side walls climbs till at the crest of the slope it passes through the ruined but still lofty and beautiful Delhi or northern gateway, one of the earliest works of Dilāwar Khan (A.D. 1400), the founder of Musalmān Māndu.

Close inside of the Delhi gate, on the right or west, stands the handsome Hindola Palace. The name Hindola, which is probably the title of the builder, is explained by the people as the Swingcot palace, because, like the sides of the cage of a swinging cot, the walls of the hall bulge

<sup>1</sup> The following Persian verses are carved on the Âlamgir gateway:

In the time of A'lamgir Aurangzib (A.D. 1658-1707), the ruler of the World,

This gate resembling the skies in altitude was built anew.

In the year A.H. 1079 (A.D. 1668) the work of renewal was begun and completed

By the endeavour of the exalted Kha'n Muhammad Beg Kha'n.

From the accession of this Emperor of the World Aurangzib.

This was the eleventh year by way of writing and history.

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
**DESCRIPTION.**

below and narrow towards the top. Its great baronial hall and hanging windows give the Hindola palace a special merit and interest, and an air of lordly wealth and luxury still clings to the tree-covered ruins which stretch west to large underground cisterns and hot weather retreats. About a quarter of a mile south stand the notable group of the Jaház Mehel or Ship palace on the west, and the Tapela Mehel or Caldron palace on the south, with their rows of lofty pointed arches below deep stone caves, their heavy windowless upper stories, and their massive arched and domed roof chambers. These palaces are not more handsomely built than finely set. The massive ship-like length of the Jaház Mehel lies between two large tree-girt ponds, and the Tapela, across a beautiful foreground of water and rum, looks east into the mass of tangled bush and tree which once formed part of the 130 acres of the Lal Bāgh or Royal Gardens.

The flat palace roofs command the whole 12,000 acres of Mándu hill, north to the knolls and broken uplands beyond the great ravine-mount and south across the waving hill-top with its miles of glades and ridges, its scattered villages hamlets and tombs, and its gleaming groves of mangos, *khairis*, banyans, *muluwas*, and *pipals*. In the middle distance, out from the tree-tops, stand the lofty domes of Hoshang's tomb and of the great Jámá mosque. Further south lies the tree-girt hollow of the Sagar Taláy or Sea Lake, and beyond the Sagar lake a woody plateau rises about 200 feet to the southern crest, where, clear against the sky, stand the airy cupolas of the pavilion of Rúp Matí, the beautiful wife of Báz Bahádur (A.D. 1551-1561), the last Sultan of Malwa. Finally to the west, from the end of the Rúp Matí heights, rises even higher the bare nearly isolated shoulder of Songad, the citadel or inner fort of Mándu, the scene of the Gujarat Bahádur's (A.D. 1531) daring and successful surprise. This fair hill-top, beautiful from its tangled wildness and scattered ruins, is a strange contrast to Mándu, the capital of a warlike independent dynasty. During the palmy days of the fifteenth century, of the 12,000 acres of the Mándu hill-top, 560 were fields, 370 were gardens, 200 were wells, 780 were lakes and ponds, 100 were bazar roads, 1500 were dwellings, 200 were rest-houses, 260 were baths, 470 were mosques, and 834 were palaces. These allotments crowded out the wild to a narrow pittance of 1560 acres of knolls and ridges.

From the Jaház Mehel the road winds through fields and woods, gemmed with peafowl and droll with monkeys, among scattered palaces mosques and tombs, some shapely some in heaps, about a mile south to the walled enclosure of the large domed tomb of the establisher of Mándu's greatness, Hoshang Sháh Ghori (A.D. 1405-1432). Though the badly-fitted joinings of the marble slabs of the tomb walls are a notable contrast to the finish of the later Mughal buildings, Hoshang's tomb, in its massive simplicity and dim-lighted roughness, is a solemn and suitable resting-place for a great Pathán warrior. Along the west of the tomb enclosure runs a handsome flat-roofed colonnade. The pillars, which near the base are four-sided, pass through an eight-sided and a sixteen-sided belt into a round upper shaft. The round shaft ends in a square under-capital, each face of which is filled by a group of leafage in outline the same as the favourite Hindu *Singh-múkh* or horned face. Over the entwined leafy horns of this moulding, stone brackets support heavy stone beams, all Hindu in pattern.<sup>1</sup> Close to the east of Hoshang's tomb is Hoshang's

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Fergusson (Indian Architecture, page 543) says: "The pillars appear to have been taken from a Jain building." But the refinement on the square capital of each pillar of the Hindu *Singh-múkh* or horned face into a group of leaves of the same

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
**DESCRIPTION.**

Jāmā Masjid or Great Mosque, built of blocks of red limestone. Hoshang's mosque is approached from the east through a massive domed gateway and across a quadrangle enclosed on the east north and south by wrecked colonnades of pointed arches. The west is filled by the great pointed arches of the mosque in fair repair. On the roof of the mosque from a thick undergrowth of domelets rise three lofty domes.<sup>1</sup>

In front of the gateway of the Great Mosque, in the centre of a masonry plinth about three feet high, stands an iron pillar about a foot in diameter at the base and twenty feet high. Close to the east of the gateway is the site of Mehmūd's (A.D. 1442) Tower of Victory, traces of which remained as late as A.D. 1840. About fifty yards farther east are the ruins of a great building called the Ashrafi Mehel, said to have been a Musalmān college. To the north-east a banner marks a temple and the local state offices. South the road passes between the two lines of small houses and huts that make modern Mānd'n. Beyond the village, among ruins and huge swollen baobab stems, the road winds south along a downward slope to the richly-wooded lowland, where stretches to the west the wide coolness of the Sāgar Talāv or Sea lake. Its broad surface covering 600 acres is green with fanlike lotus leaves, reeds, and water-grasses. Its banks are rough with brakes of tangled bush from which, in uncramped stateliness, rise lofty *nhauras*, mangoes, *karnis*, and *pipals*. To the east round a smaller tank, whose banks are crowned by splendid mangoes and tamarinds, stand the domes of several handsome tombs. Of some

outline shows that the pillars were specially carved for use in a Muslim building. The porch on the north side of the tomb enclosure is described (Ditto, page 543) as composed of pillars avowedly re-erected from a Jain building. This note of Mr. Fergusson's must have gone astray, as the north porch of Hoshang's tomb enclosure is in the plain massive pointed arch and square-shafted style of the tomb and of the great mosque. Mr. Fergusson's note apparently belongs to the second and smaller Jāmā Masjid, about a hundred yards east of the Sea or Sāgar lake, the pillars of whose colonnade and porch are still enlivened by rows of the lucky face of the Hindu old horn.

<sup>1</sup> Hoshang's great mosque has the following much damaged Persian inscription:

The mosque of exalted construction, the temple of heavenly altitude,

Whose every thick pillar is a copy of the (pillars of the) Sacred Temple (the Temple of Makkah).

On account of the greatness of its dignity, like the pigeons of the Temple of Makkah,

Sacred angels of high degree are always engaged in hovering around it,

The result of the events born of the merciless revolution of the skies.

When the sun of his life came as far as the balcony (i.e. was ready to set).

A'azam Humayun (that is Malik Mugh's) said . . .

The administration of the country, the construction of buildings, and the driving back of enemies

Are things which I leave you (the son of A'azam Humayun) as parting advice with great earnestness.

The personification of the kindness of Providence, the Sulta'n A'la'-ud-di'n (Mehmud I. A.D. 1436-1469), who is

The outcome of the refulgence of the Faith, and the satisfier of the wants of the people,

In the year A.H. 858 (A.D. 1454),

In the words of the above parting advice, finished, the construction of this building.

of these domes the black masses are brightened by belts of brilliant pale and deep-blue enamel. To the north of this overflow-pool a long black wall is the back of the smaller Jāma or congregation mosque, badly ruined, but of special interest, as each of its numerous pillars shows the uninjured Hindu *Śaṅkha-mukha* or horned face. By a rough piece of constructive skill the original cross corners of the end cupolas have been worked into vaulted Musalmān domes.<sup>1</sup>

From the Sea Lake, about a mile across the waving richly-wooded plain, bounded by the southern height of the plateau, the path leads to the sacred Rewa Kund or Narbada Pool, a small shady pond lined with rich masonry, and its west side enriched by the ruins of a handsome Bath or Hammām Khānah. From the north-east corner of the Rewa Pool a broad flight of easy stairs leads thirty or forty feet up the slope on whose top stands the palace of Bāz Bahadur (A.D. 1551-1561) the last independent chief of Mandu. The broad easy flight of steps ends in a lofty arched gateway through which a roomy hall or passage gives entrance into a courtyard with a central masonry cistern and an enclosing double colonnade, which on the right opens into an arched balcony overlooking the Rewa Kund and garden. Within this courtyard is a second court enclosed on three sides by an arched gallery. The roof of the colonnades, which are reached by flights of easy steps, are shaded by arched pavilions topped by cupolas brightened by belts of blue enamel.

<sup>1</sup> This Jāma Mosque has the following Persian inscription dated H. 835 (A.D. 1431)

With good omens, at a happy time, and in a lucky and well-started year,

On the 4th of the month of Allah (Ramazān) on the great day of Friday,

In the year 835 and six months from the Hijrah (A.D. 1431)

Counted according to the revolution of the moon in the Arabian manner,

This Islamic mosque was founded in this world,  
The top of whose dome rubs its head against the green canopy of Heaven

The construction of this high mosque was due to Mughis-ud-din-wad dunya (Malik Mughis), the father of Mehmu'd I. of Malwa (A.D. 1436-1469), the redresser of temporal and spiritual wrongs.

Ulugh (brave), A'azam (great), Humayun (august), the Khan of the seven climes and the nine countries,

By the hands of his enterprise this so great mosque was founded,

That some call it the House of Peace, others style it the Ka'bah.

This good building was completed on the last of the month of Shawwa'l (A.H. 835, A.D. 1431).

May the merit of this good act be inserted in the scroll of the Khan's actions!

In this centre may the praises of the sermon read (in the name) of Mehmu'd Shāh

Be everlasting, so long as mountains stand on the earth and stars in the firmament.

<sup>2</sup> The following Persian inscription carved on the entrance arch shows that though it may have been repaired by Bāz Bahadur, the building of the palace was fifty years earlier (H. 914, A.D. 1508):

"In the time of the Sulta'n of Nations, the most just and great, and the most knowing and munificent Kha'ka'n Na'sir Sha'h Khilji (A.D. 1500-1512). Written by Yu'suf, the year (H. 914) (A.D. 1508)."

## Appendix II.

### THE HILL FORT OF MANDU.

#### DESCRIPTION.

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
**DESCRIPTION.**

To the south of Báz Buládur's Palace a winding path climbs the steep slope of the southern rim of Mándu to the massive pillared cupolas of Rūp Matī's palace, which, clear against the sky, are the most notable ornament of the hill-top. From a ground floor of heavy masonry walls and arched gateways stairs lead to a flat masonry terrace. At the north and south ends of the terrace stand massive heavy-eaved pavilions, whose square pillars and pointed arches support lofty deep-grooved domes. The south pavilion on the crest of the Vindhyan cliff commands a long stretch of the south face of Mándu with its guard-wall crowning the heights and hollows of the hill-top. Twelve hundred feet below spreads the dim hazy Nímár plain brightened eastwards by the gleaming coil of the Nerbada. The north pavilion, through the clear fresh air of the hill-top, looks over the entire stretch of Mándu from the high shoulder of Songad in the extreme south-west across rolling tree-brightened fields, past the domes, the tangled bush, and the broad gray of the Sea Lake, to the five-domed cluster of Hoshang's mosque and tomb, on, across a sea of green tree tops, to the domed roof-chambers of the Jaház and Tūpela palaces, through the Delhi gateway, and, beyond the deep cleft of the northern ravine, to the bare level and the low ranges of the Málwa plain.

From the Rewa Pool a path, along the foot of the southern height among noble solitary *mahāras* and *khums*, across fields and past small clusters of huts, guides to a flight of steps which lead down to a deep, shady rock-cut dell where a Muhammadan chamber with great open arched front looks out across a fountained courtyard and sloping scalloped water table to the wild western slopes of Mándu. This is Nilkanth, where the emperor Akbar lodged in A.D. 1574, and which Jehángir visited in A.D. 1617.<sup>1</sup>

From the top of the steps that lead to the dell the hill stretches west bare and stony to the Songad or Tārāpūr gateway on the narrow neck beyond which rises the broad shoulder of Songad, the lofty south-west limit of the Mándu hill-top.<sup>2</sup>

## PART II—HISTORY.

**HISTORY.**  
 The  
 Málwa Sultāns,  
 A.D. 1400 - 1570.

The history of Mándu belongs to two main sections, before and after the overthrow by the emperor Akbar in A.D. 1563 of the independent power of the Sultāns of Málwa.

### SECTION I—THE MÁLWA SULTĀNS, A.D. 1400-1570.

Of early Hindu Mándu, which is said to date from A.D. 313, nothing is known.<sup>3</sup> Hind spire stones are built into the Hindola palace walls; and the pillars of the lesser Jámá mosque, about a hundred yards from the east end of the sea or Sagar Lake, are Hindu apparently Jain. Of these local Hind chiefs almost nothing is known except that their fort was

<sup>1</sup> Translations of its two much-admired Persian inscriptions are given below pages 370-371.

<sup>2</sup> On the Tārāpūr gateway a Persian inscription of the reign of the emperor Akbar (A.D. 1556-1605) states that the royal road that passed through this gateway was repaired by Tāhir Mūhammad Hasan Imad-ud-din.

<sup>3</sup> The Persian references and extracts in this section are contributed by Khān Sáheb Fazl-ul-lah Lutfullah Faizī of Surat.

<sup>4</sup> Sir John Malcolm in Eastwick's Handbook of the Panjāb, 119. This reference has not been traced. Farishtah (Elliot, VI. 563) says Mándu was built by Anand Dev of the Bais tribe, who was a contemporary of Khusrāo Parwís the Sassanian (A.D. 591-621).

taken and their power brought to an end by Sultán Shams-ud-dín Altamsh about A.D. 1234.<sup>1</sup> Dhár, not Mándu, was at that time the capital. It seems doubtful whether Mándu ever enjoyed the position of a capital till the end of the fourteenth century. In A.D. 1401, in the ruin that followed Timúr's (A.D. 1398-1400) conquest of Northern India, a Pathán from the country of Ghôr, Diláwar Khán Ghôrî (A.D. 1387-1405), at the suggestion of his son Alp Khán, assumed the white canopy and scarlet pavilion of royalty.<sup>2</sup> Though Dhár was Diláwar's head-quarters he sometimes stayed for months at a time at Mándu, strengthening the defences and adorning the hill with buildings, as he always entertained the desire of making Mándu his capital.<sup>3</sup> Three available inscriptions of Diláwar

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.  
HISTORY.

The  
Málwa Sultáns,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

<sup>1</sup> The date is uncertain. Compare Elphinstone's History, 323; Briggs' Farishtah, I, 210-211; Tabakat-i-Násiri in Elliot II, 328. The conquest of Mándu in A.D. 1237 is not Mándu in Málwa as Elphinstone and Briggs supposed, but Mándur in the Siwálik Hills. See Elliot, Vol. II, page 325 Note 1. The Persian text of Farishtah (I, 115), though by mistake calling it Mándu (not Mándu), notes that it was the Mándu in the Siwálik hills. The poetical date-script also terms it Bilad-i-Siwálik or the Siwálik countries. The date of the conquest of the Siwálik Mándu by Altamsh is given by Farishtah (Ditto) as A.H. 624 (A.D. 1226). The conquest of Málwa by Altamsh, the taking by him of Bhilsah and Ujjain, and the destruction of the temple of Maha Kál and of the statue or image of Bhikannút are given as occurring in A.H. 631 (A.D. 1233). The Mirat-i-Sikandari (Persian Text, 13) notices an expedition made in A.D. 1395 by Zafar Khán (Muẓaffar I, of Gujarat) against a Hindu chief of Mándu, who, it was reported, was oppressing the Musalmáns. A siege of more than twelve months failed to capture the fort.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 170.

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 168. According to the Wakáit-i-Musháká (Elliot, IV, 552) Diláwar Khán, or as the writer calls him Amín Sháh, through the good offices of a merchant whom he had reclaimed from plundering obtained the grant of Mándu, which was entirely desolate. The king sent a robe and a horse, and Amín gave up walking and took to riding. He made his friends ride, enlisted horsemen, and promoted the cultivation of the country (Elliot, IV, 552). Farishtah (Pers. Text, II, 160-61) states that when Sultan Muhammad, the son of Firúz Tughlak, made Khwajah Sarwar his chief minister with the title of Khwajah Jahan, and gave Zafar Khán the vicereignty of Gujarat and Khizr Khán that of Multán, he sent Diláwar Khán to be governor of Málwa. In another passage Farishtah (II, 461) states that one of Diláwar's grandfathers, Sultan Shahab-ud-dín, came from Ghôr and took service in the court of the Delhi Sultáns. His son rose to be an *Amir*, and his grandson Diláwar Khán, in the time of Sultan Firúz, became a leading nobleman, and in the reign of Muhammad, son of Firúz, obtained Málwa in fief. When the power of the Tughlaks went to ruin Diláwar assumed the royal emblems of the umbrella and the red-tent.

<sup>4</sup> Diláwar Khán (Ghori), whose original name was Húsein, was one of the grandsons of Sultan Shahab-ud-dín Muhammad bin Sam. He was one of the nobles of Muhammad, the son of Firúz Tughlak, who after the death of that monarch, settled in and asserted his power over Málwa. (Pers. Text Farishtah, II, 160). The emperor Jehangir (who calls him Amíd Sháh (Ghori) attributes to him the construction of the fort of Dhár. He says (Memoirs Pers. Text, 201-202) : Dhár is one of the oldest cities of India. Rája Bhôj, one of the famous ancient Hindu kings, lived in this city. From his time up to this a thousand years have passed. Dhár was also the capital of the Muhammadan rulers of Málwa. When Sultan Muhammad Tughlak (A.D. 1325) was on his way to the conquest of the Dakhan he built a cut stone fort on a raised site. Its outline is very elegant and beautiful, but the space inside is empty of buildings. Amíd Sháh (Ghori), known as Diláwar Khán, who in the days of Sultan Muhammad the son of Sultan Firúz, king of Delhi, gained the independent rule of Málwa, built outside this fort an assembly mosque, which has in front of it fixed in the ground a four-cornered iron column about four feet round. When Sultan Bahádur of Gujarát took Málwa (A.D. 1530-31) he wished to carry this column to Gujarát. In digging it up the pillar fell and broke in two, one piece measuring twenty-two feet the other thirteen feet. As it was lying here uncared-for I (Jehangir) ordered the big piece to be carried to Agra to be put up in the courtyard of the shrine of him whose abode is the heavenly throne (Akbar), to be utilised as a lamp post. The mosque has two gates. In

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
**HISTORY.**

The  
 Málwa Sultáns,  
 A.D. 1100 - 1570.

Khán (A.D. 1387-1405) seem to show that he built an assembly mosque near the Ship Palace, a mosque near the Dehli Gate, and a gate at the entrance to Songadh, the south-west corner and citadel of Mándu, afterwards known as the Tárápúr Gate.

In A.D. 1398 Alp Khán, son of Diláwar Khán, annoyed with his father for entertaining as his overlord at Dhár Mehmúd Tughlak, the refugee monarch of Dehli, withdrew to Mándu. He stayed in Mándu for three years, laying, according to Farishtah, the foundation of the famous fortress of solid masonry which was the strongest fortification in that part of the world.<sup>1</sup> On his father's death in A.D. 1405 Alp Khán took the title of Sultán Hoshang and moved the capital to Mándu. The rumour that Hoshang had poisoned his father gave Diláwar's brother in arms, Muzaffar Sháh of Gujarát (A.D. 1399-1411), an excuse for an expedition against Hoshang.<sup>2</sup> Hoshang was defeated at Dhar, made prisoner, and carried to Gujarát, and Muzaffar's brother Nasrat was appointed in his place. Nasrat failed to gain the goodwill either of the people or of the army of Málwa, and was forced to retire from Dhár and take refuge in Mándu. In consequence of this failure in A.D. 1408, at Hoshang's request Muzaffar set Hoshang free after a year's confinement, and deputed his grandson Ahmed to take Hoshang to Málwa and establish Hoshang's power.<sup>3</sup> With Ahmed's help Hoshang took Dhár and shortly after secured the fort of Mándu. Hoshang (A.D. 1405-1431) made Mándu his capital and spread his power on all sides except towards Gujarát.<sup>4</sup> Shortly after the death of Muzaffar I. and the accession of Ahmed, when (A.D. 1411) Ahmed was quelling the disturbances raised by his cousins, Hoshang, instead of helping Ahmed as requested, marched towards Gujarát and created a diversion in favour of the rebels by sending two of his nobles to attack Brouch. They were soon expelled by Ahmed Sháh. Shortly after Hoshang marched to the help of the chief of Jhaláváda in Káthiáváda,

front of the arch of one gate they have fixed a stone tablet engraved with a prose passage to the effect that Áhmed Sháh Ghori in the year H. 808 (A.D. 1405) laid the foundation of this mosque. On the other arch they have written a poetic inscription of which the following verses are a part:

The hege lord of the world.  
 The star of the sphere of glory.  
 The stay of the people.  
 The sun of the zenith of perfection.  
 The bulwark of the law of the Prophet, Á'mid Sháh Da'ud.  
 The possessor of amiable qualities, the pride of Ghor.  
 Diláwar Khan, the helper and defender of the Prophet's faith.  
 The chosen instrument of the exalted Lord, who in the city of  
     Dhar constructed the assembly mosque  
 In a happy and auspicious moment on a day of lucky omen.  
 Of the date 808 years have passed (A.D. 1405)  
 When this fabric of Hope was completed.

<sup>1</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 169.

<sup>2</sup> When fellow-nobles in the court of the Tughlak Sultán, Zafar Khán (Sultán Muzaffar of Gujarát) and Diláwar Khán, bound themselves under an oath to be brothers in arms. Farishtah, Pers. Text II. 462.

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 173; Elphinstone's History, 678.

<sup>4</sup> Though their temples were turned into mosques the Jains continued to prosper under the Ghoris. At Deogarh in Lalitpura in Jhansi in the North-West Provinces an inscription of Samvat 1481, that is of A.D. 1424, records the dedication of two Jaina images by a Jain priest named Holi during the reign of Sháh Alambhaka of Mandapapura, that is of Sháh Alp Khán of Mándu that is Sultán Hoshang Ghori. Archaeological Survey of India, New Series, II. 120.

and ravaged eastern and central Gujarāt.<sup>1</sup> To punish Hoshang for these acts of ingratitude, between A.D. 1418 and 1422, Ahmed twice besieged Māndu, and though he failed to take the fort his retirement had to be purchased, and both as regards success and fair-dealing the honours of the campaign remained with Ahmed.<sup>2</sup> In A.D. 1421 Hoshang went disguised as a horse-dealer to Jājnagar (now Jājpur) in Cuttack in Orissa. He took with him a number of cream-coloured horses, of which he had heard the Rāja was very fond. His object was to barter these horses and other goods for the famous war elephants of Jājnagar. An accident in the camp of the disguised merchants led to a fight in which the Rāja was taken prisoner and Hoshang was able to secure 150 elephants to fight the Gujarāt Sultan.<sup>3</sup> During Hoshang's absence at Jājnagar Ahmed pressed the siege of Māndu so hard that the garrison would have surrendered had Hoshang not succeeded in finding his way into the fort through the south or Tārāpur Gate.<sup>4</sup> For ten years after the Gujarāt campaign, by the help of his minister Malik Mughis of the Khilji family and of his minister's son Mahmūd Khān, Mālwa prospered and Hoshang's power was extended. Hoshang enriched his capital with buildings, among them the Great Mosque and his own tomb, both of which he left unfinished. Hoshang's minister Malik Mughis (who received the title of Ulugh Aāzam Humayūn Khān) appears to have built the assembly mosque near the Sagar Lake in Hoshang's lifetime, A.D. 1411. Another of his buildings must have been a mint, as copper coins remain bearing Hoshang's name, and Māndu Shādābād as the place of mintage.<sup>5</sup> In A.D. 1432, at Hoshangābād, on the left bank of the Nerbada, about 120 miles east of Māndu, Hoshang, who was suffering from diabetes, took greatly to heart the fall of a ruby out of his crown. He said: A few days before the death of Fīrūz Tughlak a jewel dropped from his crown. Hoshang ordered that he should be taken to Māndu. Before he had gone many miles the king died. His nobles carried the body to the Madrasah or college in Shādābād or Māndu, and buried him in the college on the ninth day of Zul Hajjah, the twelfth month of A.H. 838 = A.D. 1434. The year of Hoshang's death is to be found in the letters

Ah Shah Hoshang na mund: Ales, Shah Hoshang stayed not.

On Hoshang's death his son Ghazni Khan, with the title of Sultān Muhammad Ghori, succeeded. Malik Mughis, his father's minister, and the minister's son Mahmūd were maintained in power. In three years

## Appendix II

### THE HILL FORT OF MĀNDU. HISTORY.

The  
Malwa Sultāns,  
A.D. 1400-1570

<sup>1</sup> Farishtah, Pers. Text II. 161-62.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 176, 177, 180-181, 183.

<sup>3</sup> Farishtah, Pers. Text II. 166-67.

<sup>4</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 180. In connection with the Tārāpur Gate Farishtah says (Pers. Text, II. 468): 'The fort of Māndu is built on the top of a mountain, and the line of its fortification is about twenty-eight miles in length. In place of a moat it is surrounded by a deep chasm, so that it is impossible to use missiles against it. Within the fort water and provisions are abundant and it includes land enough to grow grain for the garrison.' The extent of its walls makes it impossible for an army to invest it. Most of the villages near it are too small to furnish supplies to a besieging force. The south or Tārāpur gate is exceedingly difficult of access. A horseman can hardly approach it. From whichever side the fort may be attempted, most difficult heights have to be scaled. The long distances and intervening hills prevent the watchers of the besieging force communicating with each other. The gate on the side of Delhi is of easier access than the other gates.

<sup>5</sup> It follows that Farishtah (Briggs, IV. 196) is mistaken in stating that Hoshang's son Muhammad gave Māndu the name of Shādābād, the abode of Joy.

<sup>6</sup> Farishtah, Pers. Text II. 472-475. It seems to follow that from the first the monument to Hoshang in Hoshangābād was an empty tomb. Compare Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 180-190.

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FOLK  
OF MANDU.

History.

The  
Malwa Sultans,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

(A.D. 1433-1436), as Sultán Muhammad proved dissipated cruel and suspicious, Mehmúd, the minister's son, procured his death by poison. Mehmúd Khilji then asked his father to accept the succession, but his father declined, saying that Mehmud was fitter to be king. In A.D. 1436 Mehmud was accordingly crowned with the royal turban of Hoshang.<sup>1</sup> He conferred on his father the honour of being attended by mace-bearers carrying gold and silver sticks, who, when the Khan mounted or went out, bad, like the mace-bearers of independent monarchs, the privilege of repeating the *Bismillah* 'In the name of the compassionate and merciful Alláh.'<sup>2</sup> He gave his father royal honours, the white canopy and the silver quiver, and to his title of Malik Ashraf Khán Jehan he added among others Amír-ul-Umra and Aazam Humayun.<sup>3</sup> Mehmud quelled a revolt among his nobles. An outbreak of plague in the Gujarát camp relieved him from a contest with Ahmed Shah.<sup>4</sup> In A.D. 1439 Mehmúd repaired the palace of Sultan Hoshang and opened the mosque built in commemoration of that monarch which Farishtah describes as a splendid edifice with 208 columns.<sup>5</sup> About the same time Mehmúd completed Hoshang's tomb which Hoshang had left unfinished. On the completion of this building Hoshang's remains seem to have been moved into it from their first resting-place in the college. In A.D. 1441 Mehmud built a

<sup>1</sup> The following more detailed, but also more confused, story is told in the Waká'at-i-Mushráfi (Elliot IV, 552-51). A man named Mehmud, son of Mughis Khilji, came to Hoshang and entered his service. He was a treacherous man, who secretly aspired to the throne. He became minister, and gave his daughter in marriage to the king. [Farishtah Pers. Text II, 171 says: 'Malik Mughis gave his daughter (Mehmud's sister) in marriage not to Hoshang, but to Hoshang's son Muhammad Shih.'] His father Malik Mughis, coming to know of his son's ambitious designs, informed the king of them. In repon Mehmud feigned illness, and to deceive the king's physicians shut him off in a dark room and drank the blood of a newly killed goat. When the physicians came Mehmud rose lustily, throw up the blood into a basin, and tossing back his head rolled on the floor as if in pain. The physicians, called for a light. When they saw that what Mehmud had spat up was blood they were satisfied of his sickness, and told the king that Mehmud had not long to live. The king refrained from killing a dying man. This strange story seems to be an embellishment of a passage in Farishtah (Pers. Text II, 177). When Khan Jehan, that is Malik Mughis the father of Mehmud, was ordered by Sultan Muhammad to take the field against the Rájpút rebels of Nadiá (Hírodi) many of the old nobles of Malwa went with him. In their absence the party hostile to the Khiljis represented to Sultan Muhammad that Mehmud Khilji was plotting his death. On hearing that the Sultan was enraged against him Mehmud secluded himself from the Court on pretence of illness. At the same time he worked secretly and bribed Sultan Muhammad's cup-bearer to poison his master. On the death of Sultan Muhammad the party of nobles opposed to Mehmud, concealing the fact of Muhammad's death, sent word that Muhammad had ordered him immediately to the palace, as he wanted to send him on an embassy to Gujarát. Mehmud, who knew that the Sultan was dead, returned word to the nobles that he had vowed a life-long seclusion as the sweeper of the shrine of his patron Sultan Hoshang but that if the nobles came to him and convinced him that the good of his country depended on his going to Gujarát he was ready to go and see Sultán Muhammad. The nobles were caught in their own trap. They went to Mehmúd and were secured and imprisoned by him.

<sup>2</sup> Farishtah, Pers. Text II, 180.

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah IV, 196. These titles mean 'The Chief of Nobles, the Great, the August

<sup>4</sup> It is related that one of the pious men in the camp of Sultán Ahmed of Gujarát had a warning dream, in which the Prophet (on whom be peace) appeared to him and said: "The calamity of (spirit of) pestilence is coming down from the skies. Tell Sultán Ahmed to leave this country." This warning was told to Sultán Ahmed, but he disregarded it, and within three days pestilence raged in his camp. Farishtah Pers. Text, II, 484.

<sup>5</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 205, gives 230 minarets and 360 arches. This must have been an addition in the Text used by Briggs. These details do not apply to the building. The Persian text of Farishtah, II, 185, mentions 208 columns or pillars (*duyást o haast i stūnānah*). No reference is made either to minarets or to arches.

garden with a dome and palaces<sup>1</sup> and a mosque at Naālehah about three miles north of the Delhi Gate of Māndu, a pleasing well-watered spot where the plateau of Mālwa breaks into glades and knolls.<sup>2</sup> In A.D. 1413 in honour of his victory over Rāna Kūmbha of Chitor, Mehmud built a beautiful column of victory,<sup>3</sup> seven storeys high, and a college in front of the mosque of Hoshang Ghori. Facing the east entrance to the Great Mosque stands a paved ramp crowned by a confused ruin. As late as A.D. 1843 this ruin is described as a square marble chamber. Each face of the chamber had three arches, the centre arch in two of the faces being a door. Above the arches the wall was of yellow stone faced with marble. Inside the chamber the square corners were cut off by arches. No roof or other trace of superstructure remained.<sup>4</sup> This chamber seems to be the basement of the column of victory which was raised in A.D. 1413 by Mehmud I. (A.D. 1412-1469) in honour of his victory over Rāna Kūmbha of Chitor.<sup>5</sup> Mehmud's column has the special interest of being, if not the original, at least the cause of the building of Kūmbha Rāna's still unimpaired Victory Pillar, which was completed in A.D. 1454 at a cost of £900,000 in honour of his defeat of Mehmud.<sup>6</sup> That the Māndu Column of Victory was a famous work is shown by Abul Fazl's reference to it in A.D. 1590 as an eight-storeyed minaret. Farishtah, about twenty years later (A.D. 1610), calls it a beautiful Victory Pillar seven storeys high.<sup>7</sup> The emperor Jehangir (A.D. 1605-1627) gives the following account of Mehmud's Tower of Victory: "This day, the 29th of the month *Ti*, corresponding to July-August of A.D. 1617, about the close of the day, with the ladies of the palace, I went out to see the *Haft Manzār* or Seven Storeys, literally Seven Prospects. This building is one of the structures of the old rulers of Malwa, that is of Sultan Mehmud Khilji. It has seven storeys, and on each storey there are four porticoes, and in each portico are four windows. The height of this tower is about 163 feet and its circumference 150 feet. From the surface of the ground to the top of the seventh storey there are one hundred and seventy-one steps." Sir Thomas Herbert the traveller, in A.D. 1626 describes it from hearsay, or at least at second-hand as a tower 170 steps high, supported by massive pillars and adorned with gates and windows very observable. It was built, he adds, by Khān Jehān who there has buried.<sup>10</sup>

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

## HISTORY.

The  
Mālwa Sultāns,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

<sup>1</sup> Farishtah, Pers. Text II. 187.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 207; *Male Annals of Central India*, I. 33. In A.D. 1817 Sir John Malcolm (*Central India*, I. 32 Note) found one of Mehmud's palaces as a hot weather residence.

<sup>3</sup> Of the siege of Kūmbhājpur a curious incident is recorded by Farishtah (Pers. Text, II. 185). He says that a temple outside the town destroyed by Mehmud had a marble idol in the form of a goat. The Sultan ordered the idol to be ground into lime and sold to the Rajputs as beetle-killing lime, so that the Hindus might eat their god. The idol was perhaps a ram, not a goat. The temple would then have been a Sun-temple and the ram, the carrier or *vehicle* of the Sun, would have occupied in the porch a position similar to that held by the bull in a Mahadeva temple.

<sup>4</sup> Ruins of Māndu, 13.

<sup>5</sup> In the end of A.H. 846 (A.D. 1442) Mehmud built a seven-storeyed tower and a college opposite the Jamī Mosque of Hoshang Shah. Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 210; Persian Text, II. 188.

<sup>6</sup> Compare Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 323.

<sup>7</sup> Gladwin's *Am-i-Akbari*, II. 41.

<sup>8</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 210; Farishtah, Persian Text II. 188.

<sup>9</sup> Memoirs of the emperor Jehangir (Pers. Text) Sir Sayad Ahmad's Edition, page 188, eleventh year of Jehangir, A.D. 1617.

<sup>10</sup> Herbert's Khān Jehān is doubtless Mehmud's father the minister Malik Mughis, Khān-Jahān Aḥmad Humāyūn. It cannot be Khān Jehān Pīr Muhammad, Akbar's general, who after only a few months' residence was slain in Māndu in A.D. 1561, nor can it be Jehangir's great Afghan general, Khān Jehān Lōlī (A.D. 1600-1630), as he

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

History.

The

Malwa Sultans,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

Two years later (A.D. 1445) Mehmūd built at Māndu, and endowed with the revenues of several villages a large *Shifa Khānah* or Hospital, with wards and attendants for all classes and separate apartments for nannies. He placed in charge of it his own physician Maulana Fazlullāh.<sup>1</sup> He also built a college to the east of the Jama mosque, of which traces remain.<sup>2</sup>

In A.D. 1453, though defeated, Mehmūd brought back from Gujarat the jewelled waistbelt of Gujarat, which in a daring charge he had taken from the tent of the Gujarat king Kutb-ud-din Shāh.<sup>3</sup> In A.D. 1441 Mehmūd's father died at Māndisor. Mehmūd felt the loss so keenly that he tore his hair like one bereft of reason.<sup>4</sup> After his father's death Mehmūd made his son Ghās-ud-din minister, and conferred the command of the army and the title of Aāzam Humayun on his kinsman Taj Khan. In A.D. 1469, after a reign of thirty-four years (A.D. 1436-1469) of untiring energy and activity<sup>5</sup> Mehmūd died. Farishtah says of him: "His tent was his home, the field of battle his resting-place. He was polite, brave, just and learned. His Hindu and Musalmān subjects were happy and friendly. He guarded his lands from invaders. He made good his loss to any one who suffered from robbery in his dominions, recovering the amount from the village in whose lands the robbery had taken place, a system which worked so well that theft and robbery became almost unknown. Finally by a systematic effort he freed the country from the dread of wild beasts."<sup>6</sup>

In A.D. 1469 Mehmūd was succeeded by his son and minister Ghās-ud-din, to whose skill as a soldier much of Mehmūd's success had been due. On his accession Ghās-ud-din made his son Abdul Kadir Prime Minister and heir-apparent and gave him the title of Nāsir-ud-din. He called his nobles and in their presence handed his sword to Nāsir-ud-din, saying: "I have passed thirty-four years in ceaseless fighting. I now devote my life to rest and enjoyment."<sup>7</sup> Ghās-ud-din, who never left Māndu during the whole thirty years of his reign (A.D. 1469-1499), is said to have completed the Jahāz Mehel or Ship Palace,<sup>8</sup> and the widespread buildings

was not in Mandu until A.D. 1628, that is more than a year after Herbert left India, Compare Herbert's *Travels*, 107-118; Elliot, VI, 249-323, VII, 7, 8, and 21, and Blochman's *Amir Akbar*, 503-506.

<sup>1</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 214.

<sup>2</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 13. Farishtah has three mentions of colleges. One (Pers. Text, II, 175) as the place where the body of Hoshang was carried, probably that prayers might be said over it. In another passage in the reign of Mehmūd I, (Pers. Text, II, 480) he states that Mehmūd built colleges in his territories which became the envy of Shiraz and Samarkand. In a third passage he mentions a college (page 488) near the Victory Tower.

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 217. A different but almost incredible account of the capture of the royal belt is given in the *Mirāt-i-Fikandari*, Pers. Text, 159: When Sultan Kutb-ud-din, son of Sultan Muhammad, defeated Sultan Mahmud Khilji at the battle of Kapadvanj, there was such a slaughter as could not be exceeded. By chance, in the heat of the fray, which resembled the Day of Judgement, the wardrobe-keeper of Sultan Kutb-ud-din, in whose charge was the jewelled belt, was by the restiveness of his horse carried into the ranks of the enemy. The animal there became so violent that the wardrobe-keeper fell off and was captured by the enemy, and the jewelled belt was taken from him and given to Sultan Mehmud of Malwa. The author adds: This jewelled waistband was in the Malwa treasury at the time the fortress of Māndu was taken by the strength of the arm of Sultan Muẓaffar (A.D. 1531). Sultan Mehmūd sent this belt together with a fitting sword and horse to Sultan Muẓaffar by the hands of his son.

<sup>4</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 209.

<sup>5</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 231-235; Pers. Text, II, 503.

<sup>6</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 236.

<sup>7</sup> Ruins of Māndu, 6.

which round it. \*It seems probable that the Tapela Palace close to the south-east of the Ship palace and the lake and royal gardens immediately to the north and north-east of the Tapela palace were part of Ghias-ud-din's pleasure-houses and grounds. The scale of the ruins behind the Hindola or Swingeot palace to the north, and their connection with the out-build to the west of the Jahaz Mehel, suggest that they also belonged to the palaces and women's quarters of the pleasure-loving Ghias-ud-din.

Of the surprising size and fantastic arrangements of Ghias-ud-din's pleasure city the true Mandu Shadabad or Abode of Joy, curious details have been preserved. This Abode of Pleasure was a city not a palace. It contained 15,000 inhabitants, all of them women, none either old or plain-featured, and each trained to some profession or craft. Among them were the whole officers of a court besides courtiers, teachers, musicians, dancers, prayer-readers, embroiderers, and followers of all crafts and callings. Whenever the king heard of a beautiful girl he never rested till he obtained her. This city of women had its two regiments of guards, the Archers and the Carabineers, each 500 strong, its soldiers dressed like men in a distinguishing uniform. The archers were beautiful young Turki damsels all armed with bows and arrows, the carabineers were Abyssinian maidens, each carrying a carbine. Attached to the palace and city was a deer park, where the Lord of Leisure used to hunt with his favourites. Each dweller in the city of women received her daily dole of grain and coppers, and besides the women were many pensioners, mice, parrots and pigeons, who also received the same dole as their owners. So evenly just was Ghias-ud-din in the matter of his allowances, that the prettiest of his favourites received the same allowance as the roughest carabineer.<sup>1</sup>

The Lord of the City of Pleasure was deeply religious. Whenever he was amusing himself two of his companions held in front of him a cloth to remind him of his shroud. A thousand *Hajizahs*, that is women who knew the Kur'an by heart, constantly repeated its holy verses and, under the orders of the king, whenever he changed his raiment the *Hajizahs* blow on his body from head to foot with their prayer-hallowed breath.<sup>2</sup> None of the five daily prayers passed unprayed. If at any of the hours of prayer the king was asleep he was sprinkled with water, and when water failed to arouse him, he was dragged out of bed. Even when dragged out of bed by his servants the king uttered no improprie or querulous word.

So keen was his sense of justice that when one of his courtiers pretending he had purchased her, brought to him a maiden of ideal beauty and her relations, not knowing she had been given to the king, came to complain, though they gladly resigned her, the king grieved over his unconscious wrong. Besides paying compensation he mourned long and truly, and ordered that no more inmates should be brought to his palace.<sup>3</sup> So great was the king's charity that every night below his pillow he placed a bag containing some thousand gold-mohurs, and before evening all were distributed to the deserving. So religious was the king that he paid 50,000 *tankas* for each of the four feet of the ass of Christ. A nun came bringing a fifth hoof, and one of the courtiers said, "My Lord, an ass has four feet. I never heard that it had five, unless perhaps the ass of Christ had five." "Who knows," the king replied, "it may be that this

**Appendix II.**  
THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.  
HISTORY.  
The  
Malw ultans,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

<sup>1</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II. 504-505.

<sup>2</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II. 505.

<sup>3</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II. 507.

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

HISTORY.

The  
Málwa Sultáns  
A.D. 1400-1570.

last man has told the truth, and one of the others was wrong. See that he is paid.' So sober was the king that he would neither look upon nor hear of intoxicants or stimulants. A potion that had cost 100,000 *tankas* was brought to him. Among the 300 ingredients one was nutmeg. The king directed the potion to be thrown into a drain. His favourite horse fell sick. The king ordered it to have medicine, and the horse recovered. "What medicine was given the horse?" asked the king. "The medicine ordered by the physicians" replied his servants. Fearing that in this medicine there might be an intoxicant, the king commanded that the horse should be taken out of the stables and turned loose into the forest.<sup>1</sup>

The king's spirit of peace steeped the land, which, like its ruler, after thirty years of fighting yearned for rest. For fourteen years neither inward malcontent nor foreign foe broke the quiet. In A.D. 1482 Bahlol Lodi advanced from Delhi to subdue Malwa. The talk of Mándu was Bahlol's approach, but no whisper of it passed into the charmed City of Women. At last the son-minister forced his way into the king's presence. At the news of pressing danger his soldier-spirit awoke in Ghiás-ud-dín. His orders for meeting the invaders were so prompt and well-planned that the king of Delhi paid a ransom and withdrew. A second rest of fifteen years ended in the son-minister once more forcing his way into the Presence. In A.D. 1500 the son presented his father, now an aged man of eighty, with a cup of sherbet and told him to drink. The king, whose armlet of bezom stone had already twice made poison harmless, drew the stone from his arm. He thanked the Almighty for granting him, unworthy, the happiest life that had ever fallen to the lot of man. He prayed that the sin of his death might not be laid to his son's charge, drank the poison, and died.<sup>2</sup>

Ghiás-ud-dín can hardly have shut himself off so completely from state affairs as the story-tellers make out. He seems to have been the first of the Málwa kings who minted gold. He also introduced new titles and ornaments, which implies an interest in his coinage.<sup>3</sup> Farishtah says that

<sup>1</sup> Wakiat-i-Mushitaki in Elliot IV, 551-555. Probably these are stock tales. The Gujarat historians give Muzaafir and Muhammad the Gold-giver (A.D. 1411-1451) credit for the horse scrupulosity. See Mirat-i-Sikandar Pers. Text, 178.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 236-239; Wakiat-i-Jahangiri in Elliot, VI, 319-350; Wakiat-i-Mushitaki in Elliot, IV, 551-555; Madsen's Central India, I, 35-36. The Mirat-i-Sikandar (Pers. Text 160) has the following notice of Ghiás-ud-dín: "The Sultans of Mandu had reached such a pitch of luxury and ease that it is impossible to imagine aught exceeding it. Among them Sultán Ghiás-ud-dín was so famous for his luxurious habits, that at present (A.D. 1611) if any one exceeds in luxury and pleasure, they say he is a second Ghiás-ud-dín. The orders of the Sultán were that no event of a painful nature or one in which there was any touch of sadness should be related to him. They say that during his entire reign news of a sad nature was only twice conveyed to him: once when his son-in-law died and once when his daughter was brought before him clothed in white. On this occasion the Sultán is related to have simply said: 'Perhaps her husband is dead.' This he said because the custom of the people of India is that when the husband of a woman dies she gives up wearing coloured clothes. The second occasion was when the army of Sultán Bahlol Lodi plundered several of the districts of Chanderi. Though it was necessary to report this to the Sultán, his ministers were unable to communicate it to him. They therefore asked a band of actors (*bhatts*) to assume the dress of Afgháns, and mentioning the districts to represent them as being pillaged and laid waste, Sultán Ghiás-ud-dín exclaimed in surprise: "But is the governor of Chanderi dead that he does not avenge upon the Afgháns the ruin of his country?"

(Compare Catalogue of Indian Coins, The Mahomedan States, pages LIV, LV, and 116-121.)

Ghiás-ud-din used to come out every day for an hour from his *harim*, sit on the throne and receive the salutations of his nobles and subjects, and give orders in all weighty matters of state. He used to entrust all minor affairs to his ministers; but in all grave matters he was so anxious not to shirk his responsibility as a ruler, that he had given strict orders that all such communications should be made to him at whatever time they came through a particular female officer appointed to receive his orders.<sup>1</sup>

According to most accounts Násir-ud-din was led to poison his father by an attempt of his younger brother Shajpat Khán, supported if not organised by some of Ghiás-ud-din's favourite wives to oust Nasir-ud-din from the succession.<sup>2</sup> In the struggle Nasir-ud-din triumphed and was crowned at Mandu in A.D. 1500.<sup>3</sup> The new king left Mandu to put down a revolt. On his return to Mandu he devoted himself to debauchery and to hunting down and murdering his brother's adherents. He subjected his mother Khurshid Rám to great indignities and torture to force from her information regarding his father's concealed treasures.<sup>4</sup> In a fit of drunkenness he fell into a reservoir. He was pulled out by four of his female slaves. He awoke with a headache, and discovering what his slaves had done put them to death with his own hand.<sup>5</sup> Some time after in A.D. 1512, he again fell into the reservoir, and there he was left till he was dead.<sup>6</sup> Nasir-ud-din was fond of building. His palace at Akharpúr in the Nimar plain about twenty miles south of Mandu was splendid and greatly admired.<sup>7</sup> And at Mandu besides his sepulchre<sup>8</sup> which the emperor Jehangír (A.D. 1617) mentions,<sup>9</sup> an

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.  
HISTORY.

The  
Málwa Sultans,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

<sup>1</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II. 507.

<sup>2</sup> Farishtah (Pers. Text, II. 508) detailing how Nasir-ud-din came to power, says: 'There was a difference between Nasir-ud-din and his brother Alá-ud-din. The mother of these princes, Khurshid Rám, who was the daughter of the Hindu chief of Baglana had taken Alá-ud-din the younger brother's side. After killing his father Nasir-ud-din ordered his mother to be dragged out of the *harim* and Alá-ud-din and his children to be slaughtered like lambs.'

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 238-239. Farishtah holds that Nasir-ud-din's murder of his father is not proved. He adds (Pers. Text, II. 515) that Nasir-ud-din was at Dhar where he had gone to quell the rebellion of the nobles when the news of Ghiás-ud-din's death reached him. He argues that as a parricide cannot flourish more than a year after his father's murder, and as Nasir-ud-din ruled for years after that event, he could not have killed his father.

<sup>4</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II. 516.

<sup>5</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 243. "The emperor Jehangír (Memoirs Pers. Text, 181) says that Násir-ud-din had a disease which made him feel so hot that he used to sit for hours in water."

<sup>6</sup> Wákiát-i-Jehángíri in Elliot, VI. 350. Farishtah (Pers. Text, II. 517-18) says that Násir-ud-din died of a burning fever he had contracted by hard drinking and other evil habits, that he showed keen penitence before his death and bequeathed his kingdom to his third son Mahmúd. The emperor Jehangír (Memoirs Pers. Text, 181) confirms the account of the Wákiát as to the manner of Nasir-ud-din's death.

<sup>7</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 243.

<sup>8</sup> The emperor Jehangír thus describes (Memoirs Pers. Text 181) his visit to Nasir-ud-din's grave. It is related that when during his reign Sher Khán Afghán rúr (A.D. 1540-1556) visited Násir-ud-din's grave he ordered his attendants to flagellate the parricide's tomb. When I visited the sepulchre I kicked his grave and ordered those with me to do the same. Not satisfied with this I ordered his bones to be dug out and burned and the ashes to be thrown into the Nabada.

<sup>9</sup> Wákiát-i-Jehángíri in Elliot, VI. 350. The emperor Jehangír (Memoirs Pers. Text, 202) refers to the well-known bridge and water palace about three miles north of Ujjain as the work of Násir-ud-din. He says: 'On Sunday I reached Saadulpur near Ujjain. In this village is a river house with a bridge on which are alcoves both built by Nasir-ud-din Khilji (A.D. 1500-1512). Though the bridge is not specially praiseworthy the water-courses and alcaves connected with it have a certain merit.'

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**

**HISTORY.**

The  
 Málwa Sultáns,  
 A.D. 1400-1570.

inscription shows that the palace now known by the name of Báz Bahádúr was built by Násir-ud-dín

Násir-ud-dín was succeeded by his younger son (Mehmúd A.D. 1512-1530), who, with the title of Mehmúd the Second, was crowned with great pomp at Mandu. Seven hundred elephants in gold-embroidered velvet housings adorned the procession.<sup>1</sup> Shortly after his accession Mehmúd II. was driven out of Mandu by the revolt of the commandant Muháfiz Khán, but was restored by the skill and courage of Medani Rái his Rájput commander-in-chief.<sup>2</sup> A still more dangerous combination by Muzaffar II. (A.D. 1511-1526) of Gujarát and Sikandar Sháh Lodi (A.D. 1488-1516) of Delhi, was baffled by the foresight and energy of the same Rájput general. Mehmúd, feeling that his power had passed to the Hindus, tried to disband the Rájputs and assassinate Medani Rái. Failing in both attempts Mehmúd fled from Mandu to Gujarát, where he was well received by Sultán Muzaffar (A.D. 1514-1526).<sup>3</sup> They advanced together against Mandu, and in A.D. 1519, after a close siege of several months, took the fort by assault. The Rájput garrison, who are said to have lost 19,000 men fought to the last consecrating the close of their defence by a general *jauhar* or fire-sacrifice. Sultán Mehmúd entered Mandu close after the storming party, and while Mehmúd established his authority in Mandu, Muzaffar withdrew to Dhar. When order was restored Mehmúd sent this message to Muzaffar at Dhar: "Mandu is a splendid fort. You should come and see it." "May Mandu," Muzaffar replied, "bring good fortune to Sultán Mehmúd. He is the master of the fort. For the sake of the Lord I came to his help. On Friday I will go to the fortress, and having had the sermon read in Mehmúd's name will return." On Muzaffar's arrival in Mandu Mehmúd gave a great entertainment;<sup>4</sup> and Muzaffar

<sup>1</sup> Briggs' *Parishat*, IV, 216.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' *Parishat*, IV, 217-249; Malcolm's *Central India*, I, 38) writes the Rájput's name Madhav. The *Mirát-i-Sikandari* (Persian Text, 149-155), gives the form Medani Rái the Lord of the Battlefield, a title which the author says (page 149) Mehmúd conferred on the Rájput in acknowledgment of his prowess.

<sup>3</sup> The *Mirát-i-Sikandari* (Pers. Text, 154) gives the following details of Mehmúd's flight: Sultán Mehmúd, on pretence of hunting left Mandu and remained hunting for several days. The Hindus, whom Medani Rái had placed on guard over him, slept after the fatigue of the chase. Only some of the more trusted guards remained. Among them was a Rájput named Krishna, a Málwa *zamindar* who was attached to the Sultán. Mehmúd said to Krishna: "Can you find me two horses and show me the way to Gujarát that I may get aid from Sultán Muzaffar to punish these rascals? If you can, do so at once, and, Allah willing, you shall be handsomely rewarded." Krishna brought two horses from the Sultán's stables. Mehmúd rode on one and seated his dearest of wives, Rám Kanya Kuar, on the other. Krishna marched in front. In half the night and one day they reached the Gujarát frontier.

<sup>4</sup> *Tarikh-i-Sher Shahi* in Elliot, IV, 386. The *Mirát-i-Sikandari* (Pers. Text, 160) gives the following details of the banquet: Sultán Mehmúd showed great hospitality and humility. After the banquet as he led the Sultán over the palace, they came to a mansion in the centre of which was a four-cornered building like the Kaabah, carved and gilded, and round it were many apartments. When Sultán Muzaffar placed his foot within the threshold of that building the thousand beauties of Sultán Mehmúd's *harem*, magnificently apparelled and jewelled, all at once opened the doors of their chambers and burst into view like horns and fannies. When Muzaffar's eyes fell on their charms he bowed his head and said: "To see other than one's own *harem* is sinful." Sultán Mehmúd replied: "These are mine, and therefore your's, seeing that I am the slave purchased by your Majesty's kindness." Muzaffar said: "They are more suitable for you. May you have joy in them. Let them retire." At a signal from Sultán Mehmúd the ladies vanished.

retired to Gujarát leaving a force of 3000 Gujarátis to help to guard the hill.<sup>1</sup> Immediately after Muzaffar's departure, as Sultan Mehmúd was anxious to recover Chandern and Gágraun, which still remained in the possession of Medáni Rái and his supporters, he marched against them. Rána Sanga of Chitor came to Medáni's aid and a great battle was fought.<sup>2</sup> Mehmúd's hastiness led him to attack when his men were weary and the Rajputs were fresh. In spite of the greatest bravery on the part of himself and of his officers the Musalmán army was defeated, and Mehmúd, weakened by loss of blood, was made prisoner. Rána Sanga had Mehmúd's wounds dressed, sent him to Chitor, and on his recovery released him.<sup>3</sup>

In A.D. 1526, by giving protection to his outlawed brother Chánd Khán and to Razí-ul-Mulk, a refugee Gujarát noble, Mehmúd brought on himself the wrath of Bahádúr Shah of Gujarat (A.D. 1526-1536). The offended Bahádúr did not act hastily. He wrote to Mehmúd asking him to come to his camp and settle their quarrels. He waited on the Gujarát frontier at Kaup Ghat, east of Bauswar, until at last satisfied that Mehmúd did not wish for a peaceful settlement he advanced on Mándu. Meanwhile Mehmúd had repaired the walls of Mándu, which soon after was invested by Bahádúr. The siege was proceeding in regular course by mines and batteries, and the garrison, though overtaxed, were still loyal and in heart, when in the dim light of morning Mehmúd suddenly found the Gujarát flag waving on the battlements. According to the Mirát-i-Sikandari<sup>4</sup> Bahádúr annoyed by the slow progress of the siege asked his spies where was the highest ground near Mándu. The spies said: Towards Songad-Chitor the hill is extremely high. With a few followers the Sultan scaled Songad, and rushing down the slope burst through the wall and took the fort (May 20th, 1526).<sup>5</sup> Mehmúd surrendered. Near Dohad, on his way to his prison at Champaur an attempt was made to rescue Mehmúd, and to prevent their escape he and some of his sons were slain and buried on the bank of the Dohad tank.<sup>6</sup> Bahádúr spent the rainy season (June-October 1526) in Mándu, and Malwa was incorporated with Gujarát.

Mándu remained under Gujarát, till in A.D. 1531, after Bahádúr's defeat by Humayún at Mandasor Bahádúr retired to Mándu. Humayún followed. At night 200 of Humayún's soldiers went to the back of the fortress, according to Farishtah the south-west height of Songad<sup>7</sup> by which Bahádúr had surprised Chánd's garrison, scaled the walls by ladders and ropes, opened the gate, and let others in. Mallu Khán, the commandant of the batteries, a native of Málwa, who afterwards gained the title of Kádr Shah, went to Bahádúr and awakened him. Bahádúr rushed out with four or five attendants. He was joined by about twenty more, and reaching the gate at the top of the *mandú*, apparently the Tárápúr gate by which Humayún's men had entered, cut through 200 of Humayún's troops and went off with Mallu Khán to the fort of Songad,

Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

HISTORY.

The  
Málwa Sultáns,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

Sultan Bahádúr  
of Gujarát,  
A.D. 1526-1536.

The Emperor  
Humayún,  
A.D. 1534-1535.

<sup>1</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 250-262.

<sup>2</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II. 527. According to the Mirát-i-Sikandari (Pers. Text, 161) Mehmúd marched against Gágraun first, and slew Hemkaran, a partisan of Medáni Rái, in a hand-to-hand fight. On this the Rána and Medáni Rái joined their forces against Mehmúd.

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 262-263.

<sup>4</sup> Persian Edition, 230.

<sup>5</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 267-68. Sultan Bahádúr apparently surprised the party in charge of the Tárápúr or Southern Gate.

<sup>6</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 269; Mirát-i-Ahmedi, Persian Text, I. 76.

<sup>7</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, II. 77.

**Appendix II****THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.****HISTORY.**

The  
Malwa Sultans,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

Local  
Musalmán Chiefs,  
A.D. 1536-1542.

Sher Shah Súr,  
A.D. 1542-1545.

the citadel of Mándu. While two of Bahádur's chiefs, Sadr Khán and Sultán Alam Lodi, threw themselves into Songad, Bahádur himself let his horses down the cliff by ropes and after a thousand difficulties made his way to Chámpánir.<sup>1</sup> On the day after Bahádur's escape Sadr Khan and Sultán Alam Lodi came out of Songad and surrendered to Humáyún.<sup>2</sup>

In the following year (A.D. 1535) the combined news of Sher Sháh's revolt in Bengal, and of the defeat of his officers at Broach and Cambay, forced Humáyún to retire from Gujarát. As he preferred its climate he withdrew, not to Agra but to Mándu.<sup>3</sup> From Mándu, as fortune was against him in Bengal, Humáyún went (A.D. 1535-36) to Agra.

On Humáyún's departure three chiefs attempted to establish themselves at Mándu: Bhupat Rai, the ruler of Bijagar, sixty miles south of Mándu; Mallu Khán of Kadu Sháh, a former commandant of Mándu; and Mirán Muhammad Faruki from Burhanpur.<sup>4</sup> Of these three Mallu Khan was successful. In A.D. 1536 when Humáyún fled from Sher Sháh to Persia, Mallu spread his power from Mándu to Ujjain Sārangpur and Rantambhor, assumed the title of Kadu Shah Malwa, and made Mándu his capital. Sometime after Sher Sháh, who was now supreme, wrote to Mallu Kádir Sháh ordering him to co-operate in expelling the Mughals. Kádir Sháh resenting this assumption of overlordship, addressed Sher Sháh as an inferior. When Sher Sháh received Mallu's order he folded it and placed it in the scabbard of his pommel to keep the indignity fresh in his mind. Allah willing, he said, we shall ask an explanation for this in person.<sup>5</sup> In A.D. 1542 (or 949) a Kadu Sháh failed to act with Kutb Khán, who had been sent to establish Sher Sháh's overlordship in Malwa, Sher Sháh advanced from Gwahar towards Mándu with the object of punishing Kadu Sháh.<sup>6</sup> As he knew he could not stand against Sher Sháh Kadu Sháh went to Sārangpur to do homage. Though on arrival Kádir Sháh was well received, his kingdom was given to Shujaat Khan, one of Sher Sháh's chief followers, and himself placed in Shujaat Khan's keeping.<sup>7</sup> Suspicious of what might be in store for

<sup>1</sup> Abul Fazl's Akbar Namah in Elliot, VI, 14, Briggs' Farishtah, II, 77.

<sup>2</sup> Abul Fazl's Akbar Namah in Elliot, V, 192.

<sup>3</sup> Abul Fazl's Akbar Namah in Elliot, VI, 15, Briggs' Farishtah, II, 80-81.

<sup>4</sup> Abul Fazl's Akbar Namah in Elliot, VI, 18. According to Farishtah (Pers. Text, II, 532) Mallu, the son of Mallu, was a native of Malwa and a Khilji slave noble. Mallu received his title of Kadu Sháh from Sultan Mahmud III, of Gujarát (A.D. 1536-1544) at the recommendation of his minister Imad-ul-Mulk who was a great friend of Mallu. Mu'it-i-Sikandar Persian Text, 298.

<sup>5</sup> Farishtah Pers. Text, II, 532.

<sup>6</sup> Tankhi-Sher Shah in Elliot, IV, 391, Briggs' Farishtah, IV, 271-72.

<sup>7</sup> Farishtah (Pers. Text, 533-34) refers to the following circumstance as the cause of Kadu Sháh's suspicion. On his way to Sher Sháh's dakh at Ujjain Kádir saw some Mughal prisoners in chains making a road. One of the prisoners seeing him began to sing.

*Maya me tui dayin ahead o pker khorshon se kun'*

*In this plight thou seest me to-day,*

*Thine own turn is not far away.*

When Kádir Sháh escaped, Sher Sháh on hearing of his flight exclaimed:

*Ba me che kard shu*

*Mallu chalon asub,*

*Thus he treats us with scorn,*

*Mallu the slave base born.*

To this one of Sher Sháh's men replied.

*Kard-e Rasul bar haik*

*Lo khata ul aban,*

*The words of the Prophet are true,*

*No good can a slave ever do.*

him Kádir Sháh fled to Gujarát. Sher Sháh was so much annoyed at Shujáat Khán's remissness in not preventing Kádir Sháh's escape that he transferred the command at Dhar and Mandu from Shujáat Khan to Hapi Khan and Junaid Khán. Shortly after Kádir Sháh brought a force from Gujarat and attacked Mandu. Shujáat came to Hapi Khán's help and routed Kádir Sháh under the walls of Mádu. In reward Sher Sháh made him ruler of the whole country of Mandu.<sup>1</sup> Shujáat Khán established his head-quarters at Mandu with 10,000 horse and 7000 matchlockmen.

During the reign of Sher Sháh's successor Salim Sháh (A.D. 1545-1553), Shujáat was forced to leave Malwa and seek shelter in Dúngarpúr. Selim pardoned Shujáat, but divided Malwa among other nobles. Shujáat remained in Hindustan till in A.D. 1553 on the accession of Salim's successor, Akbar, he recovered Malwa and in A.D. 1554, on the decay of Akbar's power, assumed independence.<sup>2</sup> He died almost immediately after, and was succeeded by his eldest son Malik Báyzid. Shujáat Khan was a great builder. Besides his chief works at Shujawalpur near Uppan, he left many memorials in different parts of Malwa.<sup>3</sup> So far none of the remains at Mandu are known to have been erected during the rule of Shujáat Khan.

On the death of his father Malik Báyzid killed his brother Daulat Khán and was crowned in A.D. 1555 with the title of Baz Bahadur. He attacked the Gond's but met with so crushing a defeat that he forswore fighting.<sup>4</sup> He gave himself to enjoyment and became famous as a musician,<sup>5</sup> and for his poetic love of Rup Man or Rup Matu, who according to one account was a wise and beautiful courtesan of Saharanpur in Northern India, and according to another was the daughter of a Nimar Ráput, the master of the town of Dharanpur.<sup>6</sup> In A.D. 1560 Pir Muhammad, a general of Akbar's, afterwards ennobled as Khan Jehán, defeated Baz Bahadur, drove him out of Mandu, and made the hill his own head-quarters.<sup>7</sup> In the following year (A.D. 1561), by the help of the Berar chief Pir Muhammad was slain and Baz Bahadur reinstated. On news of this defeat (A.D. 1562) Akbar sent Abdullah Khán Uzbek with almost unlimited power to reconquer the province. Abdullah was successful, but, as he showed signs of assuming independence, Akbar moved against him and he fled to Gujarat.<sup>8</sup> Akbar remained in Mádu during the greater part of the following years (A.D. 1563), examining with interest the buildings erected by the Khilji kings.<sup>9</sup> At Mandu Akbar married the daughter of Miran Mubárak Khán of Khandesh.<sup>10</sup> When Akbar left (August 1564) he appointed Kurra Bahádúr Khan governor of Mandu and returned to Agra.<sup>11</sup> In A.D. 1568 the Mirzas Akbar's cousins, flying from Gujarat attacked

## Appendix II.

### THE HILL FORT OF MANDU. HISTORY.

The  
Malwa Sultáns,  
A.D. 1400-1570.

Salim Shah Súr,  
A.D. 1545-1553.

Baz Bahadur,  
A.D. 1555-1570.

<sup>1</sup> *Tárikh-i-Sher Sháh* in Elliot, IV, 397.

<sup>2</sup> *Tárikh-i-Alfi* in Elliot, V, 168; Elphinstone's India, 402-403.

<sup>3</sup> *Tárikh-i-Alfi* in Elliot, V, 168.

<sup>4</sup> Briggs' *Farishtah*, IV, 276.

<sup>5</sup> When Baz Bahadur attacked the Gond's their chief was dead and his widow, Ránu Durgávati, was ruling in his place. The Ránu led the Gond's against the invaders, and hemming them in one of the passes, inflicted on them such a defeat that Baz Bahádúr fled from the field leaving his baggage and camp in her hands. *Farishtah Pers. Text*, II, 538.

<sup>6</sup> According to *Farishtah* (Pers. Text, II, 538) Baz Bahadur was already an adept in music.

<sup>7</sup> Malcolm's *Central India*, I, 39, *Ruins of Mandu*, 30.

<sup>8</sup> Briggs' *Farishtah*, II, 210.

<sup>9</sup> Blochman's *Am-i-Akbari*, 331.

<sup>10</sup> Briggs' *Farishtah*, IV, 211.

<sup>11</sup> Briggs' *Farishtah*, IV, 216.

<sup>12</sup> *Tabakát-i-Akbari* in Elliot, V, 291.

**Appendix II.****THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.****HISTORY.**

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

Ujjain. From Ujjain they retreated to Mándu and failing to make any impression on the fort withdrew to Gujjarát<sup>1</sup>. The Mirzás' failure was due to the ability of Akbar's general, Háji Muhammad Khán, to whom Akbar granted the province of Mándu<sup>2</sup>. At the same time (A.D. 1568) the command of Mandu hill was entrusted to Sháh Budágh Khán, who continued commandant of the fort till his death many years later. During his command, in a picturesque spot overlooking a well-watered ravine in the south of Mándu, between the Sagar Lake and the Tárápur Gateway, Budagh Khan built a pleasure-house, which he named, or rather perhaps which he continued to call Nilkanth or Blue Throat. This lodge is interesting from the following inscriptions, which show that the emperor Akbar more than once rested within its walls<sup>3</sup>.

The inscription on the small north arch of Nilkanth, dated A.D. 1574, runs :

(Call it not waste) to spend your life in water and earth (i.e. in building).

If perchance a man of mind for a moment makes your house his lodging.

Written by Shah Budagh Khan in the year A.H. 983-87.<sup>4</sup>

The inscription on the great southern arch of Nilkanth, dated A.D. 1574, runs

This pleasant building was completed in the reign of the great Sultan, the most munificent and just Khakan, the Lord of the countries of Arabia and Persia,<sup>5</sup> the shadow of God on the two earths, the ruler of the sea and of the land, the exalter of the standards of those who war on the side of God, Abul Fatah Jalal-ud-din Muhammad Akbar, the warrior king, may his dominion and his kingdom be everlasting

Written by Faridun Ilum, son of Hatim-al-Wardi, in the year A.H. 982<sup>6</sup>

The inscription on the right wall of Nilkanth, dated A.D. 1591-92, runs :

In the year A.H. 1000, when on his way to the conquest of the Dakhan, the slaves of the Exalted Lord of the Earth, the holder of the sky-like Throne, the shadow of Allah (the Emperor Akbar), passed by this place.

That time wastes your home cease, Soul, to complain,

Who will not scorn a complainer so vain.

From the story of others this wisdom derive,

Ere naught of thyself but stories survive.

The inscription on the left wall of Nilkanth, dated A.D. 1600, runs :

The (Lord of the mighty Presence) shadow of Allah, the Emperor Akbar, after the conquest of the Dakhan and

<sup>1</sup> Tabakat-i-Akbari in Elliot, V. 330-31.

<sup>2</sup> Blochman's Ain-i-Akbari, 375.

<sup>3</sup> The emperor Jahangir thus describes (Memoirs Pers. Text, 372) a visit to this building : On the third day of Amardad (July, 1617) with the palace ladies I set out to see Nilkanth which is one of the pleasantest places in Mandu fort. Sháh Budágh Khán, who was one of the trusted nobles of my august father, built this very pleasing and joy-giving lodge during the time he held this province in fief (A.D. 1572-1577). I remained at Nilkanth till about an hour after nightfall and then returned to my state quarters.

<sup>4</sup> An officer who distinguished himself under Humáyún, one of Akbar's commanders of Three Thousand, long governor of Mandu, where he died. Blochman's Ain-i-Akbari, 372.

<sup>5</sup> When opposed to Arab the word Ájam signifies all countries except Arabia, and in a narrow sense, Persia. The meaning of the word Ájam is dumbness, the Arabs so glorying in the richness of their own tongue as to hold all other countries and nations dumb.

<sup>6</sup> The stones on which this inscription is carved have been wrongly arranged by some restorer. Those with the latter portion of the inscription come first and those with the beginning come last. Múshir Abdur Rahím of Dhár.

Da'ndes (Kha'pdes) in the year A.H. 1009 set out for Hind (Northern India).

May the name of the writer last for ever !

At dawn and at eve I have watched an owl sitting

On the lofty wall-top of Shirwan Shah's Tomb.<sup>1</sup>

The owl's plaintive hooting convey'd me this warning

"Here pomp, wealth,\* and greatness lie dumb."

In A.D. 1573, with the rest of Málwa, Akbar handed Mandu to Muzaffar III the dethroned ruler of Gujarát. It seems doubtful if Muzaffar ever visited his new territory.<sup>2</sup> On his second defeat in A.D. 1562 Baz Bahádur retired to Gondwána, where he remained, his power gradually waning, till in A.D. 1570 he paid homage to the emperor and received the command of 2000 horse.<sup>3</sup> His decoration of the Rewa Pool, of the palace close by, which though built by Násur-ud-din Khilji (A.D. 1500-1512) was probably repaired by Baz Bahádur, and of Rúp Matí's pavilion on the crest of the southern ridge make Baz Bahádur one of the chief beautifiers of Mandu. According to Farishtah (Pers. Text. II. 538-39) in 1562, when Baz Bahádur went out to meet Akbar's general, Adham Khán Atkah, he placed Rúp Matí and his other singers in Suangpur under a party of his men with orders to kill the women in case of a reverse. On hearing of Baz Bahádur's defeat the soldiers hastily sabred as many of the women as they could and fled. Among the women left for dead was Rúp Matí, who, though dangerously wounded, was not killed. When Adham Atkah entered Suangpur his first care was to enquire what had become of Rúp Matí. On hearing of her condition he had her wound attended to by the best surgeons, promising her as a help to her cure, a speedy union with her beloved. On her recovery Rúp Matí claimed the general's promise. He prevaricated and possessed his own suit. Rúp Matí temporised. One night the impatient Turk sent her a messengering her to come to him. Rúp Matí to gain time invited him to her own pavilion which she said was specially adorned to be the abode of love. Next night the Atkah went to her house in disguise. Her women directed him to Rúp Matí's couch. Adham bound her robed and garlanded, but cold in death. Rúp Matí was buried on an island in a lake at Ujjain, and there, according to the *Áin-i-Akbari*, Baz Bahádur when he died was laid beside her.<sup>4</sup>

#### SECTION II.—MUGHALS (A.D. 1570-1720) AND MARÁTHÍS (A.D. 1720-1820).

About A.D. 1590 Akbar's historian, the great Abul Fazl, described Mandu as a large city whose fortress is twenty-four miles (twelve *kos*) in circuit. He notices that besides in the centre of the hill where stands an eight-storeyed minaret, the city had many monuments of ancient magnificence, among them the tombs of the Khilji Sultans. And that from the dome which is over the sepulchre of Sultan Mehmud, the son of Hoshang (this should be the sepulchre of Hoshang built by his successor Sultan Mehmúd) water drops in the height of summer to the astonishment of the ignorant. But, he adds, men of understanding know how to account for the water-drops.<sup>5</sup> Abul Fazl farther notices that on Mandu Hill is found a species of tamarind whose fruit is as big as the coconut, the pulp of

#### Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

##### HISTORY.

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

<sup>1</sup> The maternal uncle of Naushirwán (A.D. 586-635) 'the Assenian, Shirwán Sháh was ruler of a district on Mount Caucasus. Al Masúdi, Arabic Text Prairies d'Or, II. 4, and Rauzat-us-Safa, Persian Text, I. 259.

<sup>2</sup> Blochman's *Áin-i-Akbari*, 353.

<sup>4</sup> Blochman's *Áin-i-Akbari*, 429.

<sup>3</sup> Briggs' Farishtah, IV. 279.

<sup>5</sup> Gladwin's *Áin-i-Akbari*, II. 41.

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU**  
*HISTORY.*  
 The Mughals,  
 A.D. 1570-1720.

which is very white. This is the African baobab or *Adansonia digitata*, known in Hindustani as *goramli* or white tamarind, whose great fruit is about the size of a coconut. Its monster baobabs are still a feature of Mandu. Some among them look old enough to have been yielding fruit 300 years ago. Finally Abul Fazl refers to Mandu as one of twenty-eight towns where Akbar's copper coins were struck.<sup>1</sup> About twenty years later (A.D. 1610) the historian Farishtah<sup>2</sup> thus describes the hill. The fort of Mandu is a work of solid masonry deemed to be one of the strongest fortifications in that part of the world. It is built on an insulated mountain thirty-eight miles in circumference.<sup>3</sup> The place of a ditch round the fortification is supplied by a natural ravine so deep that it seems impossible to take the fort by regular approaches. Within the fort is abundance of water and forage, but the area is not large enough to grow a sufficient store of grain. The hill cannot be invested. The easiest access is from the north by the Delhi Gate. The south road with an entrance by the Tarapur Gate is so steep that cavalry can with difficulty be led up. Like Abul Fazl Farishtah notices that, except during the rains, water constantly oozes from between the chinks in the masonry of the dome of Sultan Hoshang's tomb. He says the natives of India attribute this dripping to universal veneration for Sultan Hoshang, for whose death, they say, the very stones shed tears.

Except that copper coins continued to be minted and that it was nominally one of the four capitals of the empire, during the emperor Akbar's reign Mandu was practically deserted. The only traces of Akbar's presence on the hill are in two of the five inscriptions already quoted from the Nilkanth pleasure house, dated A.D. 1591 and A.D. 1600.

After about fifty years of almost complete neglect the emperor Jehángir, during a few months in A.D. 1617, enabled Mandu once more to justify its title of Shadabad, the Abode of Joy. Early in March A.D. 1617, in the eleventh year of his reign, the emperor Jehángir after spending four months in travelling the 189 miles from Ajmur by way of Ujjain, arrived at Naalehah on the main land close to the north of Mandu. The emperor notices that most of the forty-six marches into which the 189 miles were divided ended on the bank of some lake, stream or great river in green grass and woody landscape, brightened by poppy fields. We came, he writes, enjoying the beauty of the country and shooting, never weary, as if we were moving from one garden to another.

Of the country round Naalehah Jehángir says: <sup>1</sup> What can be written worthy of the beauty and the pleasantness of Naalehah. The neighbourhood is full of mango trees. The whole country is one unbroken and restful evergreen. Owing to its beauty I remained there three days. I granted the place to Kamal Khán taking it from Keshava Marú, and I changed its name to Kamálpur. I had frequent meetings with some of the wise men of the *joges*, many of whom had assembled here. Naalehah is one of the best places in Málwa. It has an extensive growth of vines, and among its mango groves and vineyards wander streamlets of water. I arrived at a time when, contrary to the northern climes, the vines were in blossom and fruit, and so great was the vintage that the meanest boor could eat grapes to his fill. The poppy was also in flower, and its fields delighted the eye with their many-coloured beauty.

<sup>1</sup> Blochman's *Ain-i-Akbari*, 31.

<sup>2</sup> Briggs' *Farishtah*, IV. 169, 181, 190.

<sup>3</sup> Nineteen *kos*, taking the *kos* to be two miles.

<sup>4</sup> The emperor Jehángir's *Memoirs*, Pers. Text, Sir Sayad Ahmed's Edition, 173-203.

Of the emperor's entrance into Mándu the Memoirs have the following note: On Monday the 23rd of Ispandád, the last month of the Persian year, that is according to Sir Thomas Roe's account on the 6th of March 1617, when one quarter of the day had passed, I mounted my elephant, and, in good fortune and under kindly influences, made my happy entry into the fort of Mándu. About an hour (three *ghadis*) later I entered the quarters which had been prepared to receive me. During my passage across the hull-top I scattered Rs. 1500. Before my arrival Abdul Karim the engineer had been sent by me to repair the buildings of the former kings of Mándu. While my fortunate standards were at Ajmír Abdul Karim repaired such of the old Mándu buildings as were fit to be repaired and built others anew. On the whole he had provided quarters for me the like of which have probably never been built in any other place. Three *lakhs* of rupees were spent on these repairs and buildings. I wish it had been possible to construct buildings like these in all cities likely to be visited by royalty. This fortress, he continues, stands on the top of a hill about thirty-six miles (18 *kos*) in circumference. They say that before the days of Raja Bikramájit a king was reigning over these parts whose name was Jaisingh Deva. In his time a man went to the forest to cut grass. When he brought the grass back he found that the blade of his sickle had turned yellow. The grasscutter in his surprise went to Mandan, an ironsmith. Mandan knew that the sickle was gold. He had heard that in those parts was to be found the philosopher's stone, whose touch turns iron and copper into gold. He told the grasscutter to lead him to the place where the sickle had turned yellow, and there he found the philosopher's stone. The smith presented this treasure to his king. The king amassed untold wealth, part of which he spent in building Mándu fortress which he completed in twelve years. At the request of the smith on most of the stones in the walls a mark was cut in the form of an anvil. Towards the close of his life when king Jaisingh Deva withdrew his heart from the world he called many Brahmans together on the bank of the Nerbada close to Mándu. He gave each Brahman a share of his wealth. And to the Brahman in whom he hid the greatest faith he gave the philosopher's stone. Enraged at the gift of a paltry stone the Brahman threw it into the Nerbada, and there the philosopher's stone still lies. The emperor continues. On the 20th of *Farvardin*, five weeks after my arrival (11th April 1617) in reward for his services in repairing the buildings of Mándu, I conferred on my engineer Abdul Karim the command of 1200 horse, with the title of Maanur Khan.

Mándu had for the emperor the strong attraction of abundance of game. Among numerous entries of *ulgar*, or blue-bull shooting the following occur. On the 4th of the first month of *Farvardin* (16th March) the watchmen of the chase brought word that they had marked down a lion near the Nágur Lake, which is a construction of the ancient rulers of Mándu. I mounted and proceeded towards the lake. When the lion broke cover he attacked and wounded ten or twelve of the *Machis*<sup>1</sup> and other men of my retinue. In the end I brought him down with three gun shots and saved God's creatures from his evil. On the 22nd of the same month (April 3rd, 1617) the watchmen brought news of a tiger. I mounted forthwith and despatched him with three bullets. On the 7th of *Ardí Bihisht* (April 18th, 1617) the watchmen brought word that they had marked down four tigers. At one in the afternoon I started for the

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU,  
HISTORY,  
The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

<sup>1</sup> Literally single-men. The Ahadis were a corps of men who stood immediately under the emperor's orders. Blochman's *Ain-i-Akbari*, 20 note 1.

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
**HISTORY.**  
**The Mughals,**  
**A.D. 1570-1720.**

place with Núr Jehán Begam. Núr Jehán asked my leave to shoot the tigers with her gun. I said "Be it so." In a trice she killed these four tigers with six bullets. I had never seen such shooting. To shoot from the back of an elephant from within a closed *howdah* and bring down with six bullets ten or wild beasts without giving them an opportunity of moving or springing is wonderful. In acknowledgment of this capital marksmanship I ordered a thousand *ashrafs* (Rs. 4500) to be scattered<sup>1</sup> over Núr Jehán and granted her a pair of ruby wristlets worth a lách of rupees.<sup>2</sup>

Of the mangoes of Mándu Jehángir says: "In these days many mangoes have come into my fruit stores from the Dakhan, Burhánpur, Gujarát, and the districts of Malwa. This country is famous for its mangoes. There are few places the mangoes of which can rival those of this country in richness of flavour, in sweetness, in freedom from fibre, and in size."<sup>3</sup>

The rains set in with unusual severity. Rain fell for forty days continuously. With the rain were severe thunderstorms accompanied by lightning which injured some of the old buildings.<sup>4</sup> His account of the beauty of the hill in July, when clear sunshine followed the forty days of rain, is one of the pleasantest passages in Jehángir's Memoirs. What words of mine can describe the beauty of the grass and of the wild flowers! They clothe each hill and dale, each slope and plain. I know of no place so pleasant in climate and so pretty in scenery as Mandu in the rainy season. This month of July, which is one of the months of the hot season, the sun being in Leo, one cannot sleep within the house without a coverlet, and during the day there is no need for a fan. What I have noticed is but a small part of the many beauties of Mandu. Two things I have seen here which I had seen nowhere in India. One of them is the tree of the wild plantain which grows all over the hill top, the other is the nest of the *mamoolah* or wagtail. Till now no bird-catcher could tell its nest. It so happened that in the building where I lodged we found a wagtail's nest with two young ones.

The following additional entries in the Memoirs belong to Jehángir's stay at Mándu. Among the presents submitted by Mahábat Khán, who received the honour of kissing the ground at Mandu, Jehángir describes a ruby weighing eleven *miskals*.<sup>5</sup> He says, "This ruby was brought to Ajmir last year by a Frankish jeweller who wanted two láchs of rupees for it. Mahábat Khán bought it at Burhanpur for one lakh of rupees."<sup>6</sup>

On the 1st of *Thi*, the fourth month of the Persian year (15th May 1617), the Hindu chiefs of the neighbourhood came to pay their

<sup>1</sup> This scattering of gold, silver or copper coin, called in Arabic and Persian *naar*, is a common form of offering. The influence of the evil eye or other baneful influence is believed to be transferred from the person over whom the coin is scattered to the coin and through the coin to him who takes it.

<sup>2</sup> This feat of Núr Jehán's drew from one of the Court poets the couplet:

*Núr Jehán qat' chah ba'arat zamat*  
*Dar safi Marhan az shir atkanat*

Núr Jehán the tiger-slayer's woman

Ranks with men as the tiger-slaying woman.

Sheraffkan, that is tiger-slayer, was the title of Núr Jehán's first husband Ali-Kuli Istajlu.

<sup>3</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehángiri Pers. Text, 187.

<sup>4</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehángiri Pers. Text, 189.

<sup>5</sup> The *miskal* which was used in weighing gold was equal in weight to ninety-six barley-corns. Blochman's *Afn-i-Akbari*, 36.

<sup>6</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehángiri Pers. Text, 195.

respects and presents their tribute. The Hindu chief of Jitpūr in the neighbourhood of Māndu, through his evil fortune, did not come to kiss the threshold.<sup>1</sup> For this reason I ordered Fidaīkhān to pillage the Jitpūr country at the head of thirteen officers and four or five hundred matchlockmen. On the approach of Fidaīkhān the chief fled. He is now reported to regret his past conduct and to intend to come to Court and make his submission. On the 9th of Yār, the sixth month of the Persian calendar (late July, A.D. 1617), I heard that while raiding the lands of the chief of Jitpūr, Ruh-ul-lāh, the brother of Fidaīkhān, was slain with a lance in the village where the chief's wives and children were in hiding. The village was burned, and the women and daughters of the rebel chief were taken captives.<sup>2</sup>

The beautiful surroundings of the Sagar lake offered to the elegant taste of Nūr Jehān a fitting opportunity for honouring the Shab-i-Barāt or Night of Jubilee with special illuminations. The emperor describes the result in these words: On the evening of Thursday the 19th of *Amrūdād*, the fifth month of the Persian year (early July, A.D. 1617), I went with the ladies of the palace to see the buildings and palaces on the Sagar lake which were built by the old kings of Māndu. The 26th of *Amrūdād* (about mid-July) was the Shab-i-Barāt holiday. I ordered a jubilee or assembly of joy to be held on the occasion in one of the palaces occupied by Nūr Jehān Begam in the midst of the big lake. The nobles and others were invited to attend this party which was organized by the Begam, and I ordered the cup and other intoxicants with various fruits and minced meats to be given to all who wished them. It was a wonderful gathering. As evening set in the lanterns and lamps gleaming along the banks of the lake made an illumination such as never had been seen. The countless lights with which the palaces and buildings were ablaze shining on the lake made the whole surface of the water appear to be on fire.<sup>3</sup>

The Memoirs continue: On Sunday the 9th of Yār, the sixth Persian month (late July), I went with the ladies of the palace to the quarters of Asaf Khān, Nūr Jehān's brother, the second son of Mirza Ghias Beg. I found Asaf Khān lodged in a glen of great beauty surrounded by other little vales and dells with waterfalls and running streamlets and green and shady mango groves. In one of these dells were from two to three hundred sweet pandanus or *keu li* trees. I passed a very happy day in this spot and got up a wine party with some of my lords-in-waiting, giving them bumpers of wine.<sup>4</sup> Two months later (early September) Jehāngīr has the following entry regarding a visit from his eldest son and heir prince Khurram, afterwards the emperor Shah Jehān, who had lately brought the war in the Dakhn to a successful close. On the 8th of the month of *Māh* (H. 1026: according to Roe September 2nd, 1617), my son of exalted name obtained the good fortune of waiting upon me in the fort of Māndu after three-quarters and one *ghadi* of the day had passed, that is about half an hour after sunrise. He had been absent fifteen months and eleven days. After he had performed the ceremonies of kissing the ground and the *kurnish* or prostration, I called him up to my bay window or *jharokah*. In a transport of affection I could not restrain myself from getting up and taking him into my arms. The more

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

## HISTORY.

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.<sup>1</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehāngīrī Pers. Text, 195.<sup>2</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehāngīrī Pers. Text, 192-194.<sup>3</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehāngīrī Pers. Text, 190.<sup>4</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehāngīrī Pers. Text, 192.<sup>5</sup> Tuzuk-i-Jehāngīrī Pers. Text, 194-5.

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

HISTORY.

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

I increased the measure of affection and honours the more humility and respect did he show. I called him near me and made him sit by me. He submitted a thousand *ashrafis* (— Rs. 1500) and a thousand rupees as a gift or *nazar* and the same amount as sacrifice or *nisbat*. As there was not time for me to inspect all his presents he produced the elephant Sarnak, the best of the elephants of Adil Khán of Bijapur. He also gave me a case full of the rarest precious stones. I ordered the military paymasters to make presents to his nobles according to their rank. The first to come was Khan Jehan, whom I allowed the honour of kissing my feet. For his victory over the Rana of Ghor I had before granted to my fortunate child Kuram the rank of a commander of 20,000 with 10,000 horse. Now for his service in the Dakhan I made him a commander of 30,000 and 20,000 horse with the title of Shah Jehan. I also ordered that henceforward he should enjoy the privilege of sitting on a stool near my throne, an honour which did not exist and is the first of its kind granted to anyone in my family. I further granted him a special dress. To do him honour I came down from the window and with my own hand scattered over his head as sacrifice a trayfull of precious stones as well as a large trayfull of gold.

Jehangir's last Mándu entry is this: On the night of Friday in the month of *Abán* (October 24th 1617) in all happiness and good fortune I marched from Mandu and halted on the bank of the lake at Naulahab.

Jehangir's stay at Mándu is referred to by more than one English traveller. In March 1617, the Rev. Edward Terry, chaplain to the Right Honourable Sir T. Roe Lord Ambassador to the Great Mughal, came to Mándu from Barhanpúr in east Khandesh<sup>1</sup>. Terry crossed a broad river, the Nurbada, at a great town called Anehabpur (Akbarpur)<sup>2</sup> in the Nimár plain not far south of Mandu hill. The way up probably by the Bhauray pass a few miles east of Mándu, seemed to Terry exceeding long. The ascent was very difficult, taking the carriages, apparently meaning coaches and wagons, two whole days.<sup>3</sup> Terry found the hill of Mandu stuck round with fan trees that kept their distance so, one from and below the other, that there was much delight in beholding them from either the bottom or the top of the hill. From one side only was the ascent not very high and steep. The top was flat plain and spacious with vast and

<sup>1</sup> A Voyage to East India 181. Terry gives April 1616, but Roe seems correct in saying March 1617. Compare *Wakáat-i-Jehangir* in Elliot, VI, 351.

<sup>2</sup> Akbarpur lies between Dharampur and Wairat. Malcolm's Central India, I, 81 note.

<sup>3</sup> Carriages may have the old meaning of things carried, that is baggage. The time taken favours the view that wagons or carts were forced up the hill. For the early seventeenth century use of carriages in its modern sense compare Terry (Voyage, 161). Of our wagons drawn with oxen . . . and other carriages we made a ring every night, also Dodsworth (1614), who describes a band of Rajpúts near Baroda cutting off two of his carriages (Kerr's Voyages, IX, 203), and Roe (1616), who journeyed from Ajmir to Mandu with twenty camels, four carts and two coaches (Kerr, IX, 308). Terry's carriages seem to be Roe's coaches, to which Dela Valle (A.D. 1623) Haklyt's Edition, I, 21 refers as much like the Indian chariots described by Strabo (p. 60) covered with crimson silk fringed with yellow about the roof and the curtains. Compare Idrisi (A.D. 1100-1150, but probably from Al Istikhiri, A.D. 960) Elliot, I, 87). In all Nahrwala or north Gujarat the only mode of carrying either passengers or goods is in chariots drawn by oxen with harness and traces under the control of a driver. When in 1616 Jehangir left Ajmir for Mandu the English carriage presented to him by the English ambassador Sir Thomas Roe was allotted to the Sultanah Núr Jehán Begum. It was driven by an English coachman. Jehangir followed in the coach his own men had made in imitation of the English coach. Corryat (1613, *Crudities* III., Letters from India, unpagged) calls the English chariot a gallant coach of 150 pounds price.

far-stretching woods, in which were lions tigers and other beasts of prey and many wild elephants. Terry passed through Mándu a few days' march across a plain and level country, apparently towards Dhár, where he met the Lord Ambassador Sir Thomas Roe, who had summoned Terry from Surat to be his chaplain. Sir Thomas Roe was then marching from Ajmir to Mándu with the Court of the emperor Jehángir, whom Terry calls the Great King.

On the 3rd of March, says Roe, the Mughal was to have entered Mándu. But all had to wait for the good hour fixed by the astrologers. From the 6th of March, when he entered Mándu, till the 24th of October, the emperor Jehángir, with Sir Thomas Roe in attendance, remained at Mándu.<sup>1</sup> According to Roe before the Mughal visited Mandu the hill was not much inhabited, having more ruins by far than standing houses.<sup>2</sup> But the moving city that accompanied the emperor soon overflowed the hill-top. According to Roe Jehangir's encampment was walled round half a mile in circuit in the form of a fortress, with high screens or curtains of coarse stuff, somewhat like Aras hangings, red on the outside, the inside dyed into compartments with a variety of figures. This enclosure had a handsome gateway and the circuit was formed into various combs and bulwarks. The posts that supported the curtains were all surmounted with brass tops.<sup>3</sup> Besides the emperor's encampment were the noblemen's quarters, each at an appointed distance from the king's tents, very handsome, some having their tents green, others white, others of mixed colours. The whole composed the most curious and magnificent sight Roe had ever beheld.<sup>4</sup> The hom taken by Jehangir in passing from the Delhi Gate to his own quarters, the two English miles from Roe's lodge which was not far from the Delhi Gate to Jehangir's palace, and other reasons noted below make it almost certain that the Mughal's encampment and the camps of the leading nobles were on the open slopes to the south of the Sea Lake between Baz Bahádur's palace on the east and Songad on the west. And that the palace at Mándu from which Jehángir wrote was the building now known as Baz Bahádur's palace.<sup>5</sup> A few months before it reached Mandu the imperial camp had turned the whole valley of Ajmir into a magnificent city,<sup>6</sup> and a few weeks before reaching Mandu at Thoda, about fifty miles south-east of Ajmir, the camp formed a settlement not less in circuit than twenty English miles, equalling in size almost any town in Europe.<sup>7</sup> In the middle of the encampment were all sorts of shops so regularly disposed that all persons knew where to go for everything.

The demands of so great a city overtaxed the powers of the deserted Mándu. The scarcity of water soon became so pressing that the poor were commanded to leave and all horses and cattle were ordered off the hill.<sup>8</sup> Of the scarcity of water the English traveller Corryat, who was then a guest of Sir Thomas Roe, writes: On the first day one of my Lord's people, Master Herbert, brother to Sir Edward Herbert, found a fountain which, if he had not done, he would have had to send ten course

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MÁNDU.

### HISTORY.

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

<sup>1</sup> Kerr's Voyages, IX, 335; Wákiat-i-Jehangir in Elliot, VI, 377.

<sup>2</sup> Roe writing from Ajmir in the previous year (29th August 1616) describes Mándu as a castle on a hill, where there is no town and no buildings. Kerr, IX, 267.

<sup>3</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX, 313.

<sup>4</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX, 314.

<sup>5</sup> Compare Wákiat-i-Jehangir in Elliot, VI, 377.

<sup>6</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX, 314.

<sup>7</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX, 321.

<sup>8</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX, 336.

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

## HISTORY.

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

(*koa*) every day for water to a river called Narbada that falleth into the Bay of Cambye near Broach. The custom being such that whatsoever fountain or tank is found by any great man in time of drought he shall keep it proper to his without interruption. The day after one of the king's *Hadis* (*Thádís*) finding the same and striving for it was taken by my Lord's people and bound.<sup>1</sup> Corryat adds: During the time of the great drought two Moor nobles daily sent ten camels to the Narbada and distributed the water to the poor, which was so dear they sold a little skin for 8 pias (one penny).<sup>2</sup>

Terry notices that among the piles of buildings that held their heads above ruin were not a few unfrequented mosques or Muhammadan churches. Though the people who attended the king were marvellously straitened for room to put their most excellent horses, none would use the churches as stables, even though they were forsaken and out of use. This abstinence seems to have been voluntary, as Roe's servants, who were sent in advance, took possession of a fair court with walled enclosure in which was a goodly temple and a tomb. It was the best in the whole circuit of Mandu, the only drawback being that it was two miles from the king's house.<sup>3</sup> The air was wholesome and the prospect was pleasant, as it was on the edge of the hill.<sup>4</sup> The emperor, perhaps referring rather to the south of the hill, which from the elaborate building and repairs carried out in advance by Abdul Karim seems to have been called the New City, gives a less deserted impression of Mandu. He writes (24th March 1617): Many buildings and relics of the old kings are still standing, for as yet decay has not fallen upon the city. On the 24th I rode to see the royal edifices. First I visited the *Jāmi Masjid* built by Sultan Hoshang Ghorī. It is a very lofty building and erected entirely of hewn stone. Although it has been standing 180 years it looks as if built to-day. Then I visited the sepulchres of the kings and rulers of the Khilji dynasty, among which is the sepulchre of the eternally cursed Nasir-ud-din.<sup>5</sup> Sher Shāh to show his horror of Nasir-ud-din, the father-slaver, ordered his people to beat Nasir-ud-din's tomb with sticks. Jhangir also kicked the grave. Then he ordered the tomb to be opened and the remains to be taken out and burnt. Finally, fearing the remains might pollute the eternal light, he ordered the ashes to be thrown into the Narbada.<sup>6</sup>

The pleasant outlying position of Roe's lodge proved to be open to the objection that out of the vast wilderness wild beasts often came, seldom returning without a sheep, a goat, or a kid. One evening a great lion leapt over the stone wall that encompassed the yard and snapt up the Lord Ambassador's little white neat shock, that is as Roe explains a small Irish mastiff, which ran out barking at the lion. Out of the ruins of the mosque and tomb Roe built a lodge,<sup>7</sup> and here he passed the rains with his 'family,' including besides his secretary, chaplain, and cook twenty-three Englishmen and about sixty native servants, and during part of the time the sturdy half-crazed traveller Tom Coryate or Corryat.<sup>8</sup> They had

<sup>1</sup> Corryat's *Credities*, III. Extracts (unpaged). This Master Herbert was Thomas, brother of Sir Edward Herbert, the first Lord Herbert. It seems probable that this Thomas supplied his cousin Sir Thomas Herbert who was travelling in India and Persia in A.D. 1627 with his account of Mandu. See below pages 381-382.

<sup>2</sup> Corryat's *Credities*, III. Extracts (unpaged).

<sup>3</sup> Terry's *Voyage*, 183; Roe in Kerr, IX. 335.

<sup>4</sup> Wākī-i Jhangiri in Elliot, VI. 349.

<sup>5</sup> Terry's *Voyage*, 228.

<sup>6</sup> Roe in Kerr, IX. 335.

<sup>7</sup> Wākī-i Jhangiri in Elliot, VI. 350.

<sup>8</sup> Terry's *Voyage*, 69.

their flock of sheep and goats, all necessaries belonging to the kitchen and every thing else required for bodily use including bedding and all things pertaining thereto.<sup>1</sup> Among the necessaries were tables<sup>2</sup> and chairs, since the Ambassador refused to adopt the Mughal practice of sitting cross-legged on mats "like tailors on their shopboards." Roe's diet was dressed by an English and an Indian cook and was served on plate by waiters in red taffata cloaks guarded with green taffata. The chaplain wore a long black cassock, and the Lord Ambassador wore English habits made as light and cool as possible.<sup>3</sup>

On the 12th of March, a few days after they were settled at Mándu, came the festival of the Persian New Year. Jehángir held a great reception seated on a throne of gold bespangled with rubies emeralds and turquoises. The hall was adorned with pictures of the King and Queen of England, the Princess Elizabeth, Sir Thomas Smith and others, with beautiful Persian hangings. On one side, on a little stage, was a couple of women singers. The king commanded that Sir T. Roe should come up and stand beside him on the steps of the throne where stood on one side the Persian Ambassador and on the other the old king of Kandahár with whom Sir T. Roe ranked. The king called the Persian Ambassador and gave him some stones and a young elephant. The Ambassador knelt and knocked his head against the steps of the throne to thank him.<sup>4</sup> From time to time during Terry's stay at Mandu, the Mughal, with his stout daring Persian and Tartarian horsemen and some gaudies, went out to take young wild elephants in the great woods that environed Mándu. The elephants were caught in strong coils prepared for the purpose and were manned and made fit for service. In these hunts the king and his men also pursued lions and other wild beasts on horseback, killing some of them with their bows, cubines and lances.<sup>5</sup>

The first of September was Jehángir's birthday. The king, says Corryat,<sup>6</sup> was forty-five years old, of middle height, corpulent, of a seemly composition of body, and of an olive coloured skin. Roe went to pay his respects and was conducted apparently to Báiz Bahádúr's Gardens to the east of the Rewa Pool. This tangled orchard was then a beautiful garden with a great square pond or tank set all round with trees and flowers and in the middle of the garden a pavilion or pleasure-house under which hung the scales in which the king was to be weighed.<sup>7</sup> The scales were of beaten gold set with many small stones as rubies and turquoises. They were hung by chains of gold, large and massive, but strengthened by silken rope. The beam and tressels from which the scales hung were covered with thin plates of gold. All round were the nobles of the court seated on rich carpets waiting for the king. He came laden with diamonds rubies pearls and other precious vanities, making a great and glorious show. His sword, targets and throne were corresponding in riches and splendour. His head, neck, breast and arms above the elbows and at the wrist were decked with chains of precious stones, and every finger had two or three rich rings. His legs were as it were fettered with chains of diamonds and rubies as large as walnuts and amazing pearls. He got into the scales crouching or sitting on his legs like a woman. To counterpoise his weight bugs said to contain Rs. 9000 in

**Appendix II.**  
—  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MÁNDU.**  
**HISTORY.**  
The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

<sup>1</sup> Terry's Voyage, 183.    <sup>2</sup> Terry's Voyage, 186, 198.    <sup>3</sup> Terry's Voyage, 198, 205.

<sup>4</sup> Roe in Kerr's Voyages, IX. 337; Pinkerton's Voyages, VIII. 35.

<sup>5</sup> Terry's Voyage, 103.

<sup>6</sup> Corryat's Crudities, III. Letter 2. Extracts unpagged.

<sup>7</sup> Roe in Kerr's Voyages, IX. 343.

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
*HISTORY.*  
 The Mughals,  
 A.D. 1570-1720.

silver were changed six times. After this he was weighed against bags containing gold jewels and precious stones. Then against cloth of gold, silk stuffs, cotton goods, spices, and all commodities. Last of all against meal, butter, and corn. Except the silver, which was reserved for the poor, all was said to be distributed to Janahs (that is Brāhmans).<sup>1</sup> After he was weighed Jehāngir ascended the throne and had basons of nuts almonds and spices of all sorts given him. These the king threw about, and his great men scrambled prostrate on their bellies. Roe thought it not decent that he should scramble. And the king seeing that he stood aloof reached him a bason almost full and poured the contents into his cloak.<sup>2</sup> Terry adds: 'The physicians noted the king's weight and spoke flatteringly of it. Then the Mughal drank to his nobles in his royal wine and the nobles pledged his health. The king drank also to the Lord Ambassador, whom he always treated with special consideration, and presented him with the cup of gold curiously enamelled and crusted with rubies turkesses and emeralds.'<sup>3</sup>

Of prince Khurram's visit Roe writes: 'A month later (October 2nd) the proud prince Khurram, afterwards the emperor Shāh Jehan (A.D. 1626-1657), returned from his glorious success in the Dakhan, accompanied by all the great men, in wondrous triumph.'<sup>4</sup> A week later (October 9th), hearing that the emperor was to pass near his lodging on his way to take the air at the Naubada, in accordance with the rule that the masters of all houses near which the king passes must make him a present, Roe took horse to meet the king. He offered the king an Atlas neatly bound saying he presented the king with the whole world. The king was pleased. In return he praised Roe's lodge, which he had built out of the ruins of the temple and the ancient torab and which was one of the best lodges in the camp. Jehangir left Mandu on the 24th October. On the 30th when Roe started the hill was entirely deserted.<sup>5</sup>

Terry mentions only two buildings at Māndu. One was the house of the Mughal, apparently Baz Bahadur's palace, which he describes as large and stately, built of excellent stone, well squared and put together, taking up a large compass of ground. He adds: 'We could never see how it was contrived within, as the king's wives and women were there.'<sup>6</sup> The only other building to which Terry refers, he calls "The Grot." Of the grot, which is almost certainly the pleasure-house Nilkanth, whose Persian inscriptions have been quoted above, Terry gives the following details: 'To the Mughal's house, at a small distance from it, belonged a very curious grot. In the building of the grot a way was made into a

<sup>1</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX. 340-343.

<sup>2</sup> Roe in Kerr's Travels, IX. 344.

<sup>3</sup> Terry's Voyage, 377. Terry's details seem not to agree with Roe's who states (Kerr's Voyages, IX. 344 and Pinkerton's Voyages, VIII. 37). I was invited to the drinking, but desired to be excused because there was no avoiding drinking, and their liquors are so hot that they burn out a man's very bowels. Perhaps the invitation Roe declined was to a private drinking party after the public weighing was over.

<sup>4</sup> Roe in Kerr's Voyage, IX. 347; Elphinstone's History, 194. Kerr (IX. 347) gives September 2 but October 2 is right. Compare Pinkerton's Voyages, VIII. 39.

<sup>5</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 57. As the emperor must have passed out by the Delhi Gate, and as Roe's lodge was two miles from Baz Bahādur's palace, the lodge cannot have been far from the Delhi Gate. It is disappointing that, of his many genial gossipy entries Jehangir does not devote one to Roe. The only reference to Roe's visit is the indirect entry (Wakāt-i-Jehangiri in Elliot, VI. 447) that Jehangir gave one of his nobles a coach, apparently a copy of the English coach, with which, to Jehangir's delight Roe had presented him.

<sup>6</sup> Roe in Kerr's Voyages, IX. 353.

<sup>7</sup> Terry's Voyage, 180.

firm rock which showed itself on the side of the hill canopied over with part of that rock. It was a place that had much beauty in it by reason of the curious workmanship bestowed on it and much pleasure by reason of its coolness.<sup>1</sup> Besides the fountain this grot has still one of the charmingly cool and murmuring scalloped millstones where, as Terry says, water runs down a broad stone table with many hollows like to scallop shells, in its passage over the hollows making so pretty a murmur as helps to tie the senses with the bonds of sleep.

Sháh Jehán seems to have been pleased with Mándu. He returned in A.D. 1621 and stayed at Mandu till he marched north against his father in A.D. 1622.<sup>2</sup> In March A.D. 1623, Shah Jehan came out of Mandu with 20,000 horse, many elephants, and powerful artillery, intending to fight his brother Shah Parwiz.<sup>3</sup> After the failure of this expedition Shah Jehan retired to Mandu.<sup>4</sup> At this time (A.D. 1623) the Italian traveller Dela Valle ranks Mandu with Agra, Láhor and Ahmedabad, as the four capitals, each endowed with an imperial palace and court. Five years later the great general Khán Jehan Lodi besieged Mandu, but apparently without success.<sup>5</sup> Khán Jehan Lodi's siege of Mándu is interesting in connection with a description of Mandu in Herbert's Travels. Herbert who was in Gujrat in A.D. 1626, says Mandu is seated at the side of a declining hill (apparently Herbert refers to the slope from the southern crest northwards to Sagar Lake and the Grot or Nilkanth) in which both for ornament and defence is a castle which is strong in being encompassed with a defensive wall of nearly five miles (probably *kos* that is ten miles) the whole, he adds, heretofore had fifteen miles circuit. But the city later built is of less time yet fresher beauty, whether you behold the temples (in one of which are entombed four kings), palaces or fortresses, especially that tower which is elevated 170 steps, supported by massive pillars and adorned with gates and windows very observable. It was built by Khán Jehan, who there lies buried. The confusedness of these details shows that Herbert obtained them second-hand, probably from Corryat's Master Herbert or Sir T. Roe's staff.<sup>6</sup> The new city of fresher

## Appendix II.

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.

HISTORY.

The Mughals,  
A.D. 1570-1720.

<sup>1</sup> Terry's Voyage, 11.

<sup>2</sup> Wákiat-i-Jehangir in Elliot, VI, 383.

<sup>3</sup> Wákiat-i-Jehangir in Elliot, VI, 7.

<sup>4</sup> Elphinstone's History, 197. Compare Dela Valle (Hakluyt Edition, I, 177) writing in A.D. 1622, Sultan Khurram after his defeat by Jehangir retired to Mandu.

<sup>5</sup> Dela Valle's Travels, Hakluyt Edition, I, 97.

<sup>6</sup> Elphinstone's History, 507.

<sup>7</sup> Herbert's Travels, 81. Corryat's Master Herbert was as already noticed named like the traveller Thomas. The two Thomasases were distant relations, both being fourth in descent from Sir Richard Herbert of Colebrooke, who lived about the middle of the fifteenth century. A further connection between the two families is the copy of complimentary verses "To my cousin Sir Thomas Herbert," signed Ch. Herbert, in the 1631 and 1665 editions of Herbert's Travels, which are naturally, though somewhat doubtfully, ascribed to Charles Herbert, a brother of our Master Thomas. It is therefore probable that after his return to England Sir Thomas Herbert obtained the Mandu details from Master Thomas who was himself a writer, the author of several poems and pamphlets. Corryat's tale how, during the water-famine at Mandu, Master Herbert annexed a spring or cistern, and then bound a servant of the Great King who attempted to share in its use, shows admirable courage and resolution on the part of Master Thomas, then a youth of twenty years. The details of Thomas in his brother Lord Herbert's autobiography give additional interest to the hero of Corryat's tale of a Tank. Master Thomas was born in A.D. 1597. In 1610, when a page to Sir Edward Cecil and a boy of thirteen, in the German War especially in the siege of Juliers fifteen miles north-east of Ayr-la-Chapelle, Master Thomas showed such forwardness as no man in that great army surpassed. On his voyage to India in 1617, in a fight with a great Portuguese carrack,

**Appendix II.**  
**THE HILL FORT**  
**OF MANDU.**  
*HISTORY.*

The  
 Maráthás,  
 A.D. 1720-1820.

beauty is probably a reference to the buildings raised and repaired by Abdul Karim against Jehangir's coming, among which the chief seems to have been the palace now known by the name of Báz Bahádúr. The tower of 170 steps is Mehmdíl Khilji's Tower of Victory, erected in A.D. 1443, the Khán Johán being Mehmdíl's father, the great minister Khán Jehán Aázam Humáyún.

In A.D. 1658 a Rájá Shívráj was commandant of Mándú.<sup>1</sup> No reference has been traced to any imperial visit to Mándú during Aurangzib's reign. But that great monarch has left an example of his watchful care in the rebuilding of the Álanágír or Aurangzib Gate, which guards the approach to the stone-crossing of the great northern ravine and bears an inscription of A.D. 1668, the eleventh year of Áurangír's reign. In spite of this additional safeguard thirty years later (A.D. 1696) Mándú was taken and the standard of Uđáji Pavár was planted on the battlement.<sup>2</sup> The Maráthás soon withdrew and Málwa again passed under an imperial governor. In A.D. 1708 the Shun-loving emperor Bahádúr Sháh I. (A.D. 1707-1712) visited Mándú, and there received from Ahmedábád a copy of the *Kuráán* written by Imám Áli Taki, son of Imám Músa Raza (A.D. 810-820), seventh in descent from Ali, the famous son-in-law of the Prophet, the first of Musalman mystics. In A.D. 1717 Asaph Jah Nízám-ul-Mulk was appointed governor of Málwa and continued to manage the province by deputy till A.D. 1721. In A.D. 1722 Raja Gúndhar Bahádúr, a Nagar Bráhmán, was made governor and remained in charge till in A.D. 1724 he was attacked and defeated by Chinnaji Pandit and Uđáji Pavár.<sup>3</sup> Rájá Gúndhar was succeeded by his relation Dia Bahádúr, whose successful government ended in A.D. 1732, when through the secret help of the local chiefs Malháráo/Holkar led an army up the Bharav pass, a few miles east of Mándú, and at Trelah, between Amhera and Dhár, defeated and slew Dia Bahádúr. As neither the next governor Muhammad Khán Bangash nor his successor Rájá Jai Singh of Jajpúr were able to oust the Maráthás, their success was admitted in A.D. 1734 by the appointment of Peshwa Bájiráo (A.D. 1720-1740) to be governor of Málwa. On his appointment (A.D. 1734) the Peshwa chose Anand Ráo Pavár as his deputy. Anand Ráo shortly after settled at Dhár, and since A.D. 1734 Mándú has continued part of the territory of the Pavárs of Dhár.<sup>4</sup> In A.D. 1805 Mándú sheltered the heroic Mína Bai during the birth-time of her son Rámchandra Ráo Pavár, whose state was saved from the clutches of

Captain Joseph, in command of Herbert's ship *Globe*, was killed, Thomas took Joseph's place, forced the carrack aground, and so maddled her with shot that she never floated again. To his brother's visit to India Lord Herbert refers as a year spent with the merchants who went from Surat to the Great Moghal. After his return to England Master Thomas distinguished himself at Algiers, capturing a vessel worth £1800. In 1622, when Master Thomas was in command of one of the ships sent to fetch Prince Charles (afterwards King Charles I.) from Spain, during the return voyage certain Low Countrymen and Dunkirkers, that is Dutch and Spanish vessels, offended the Prince's dignity by fighting in his presence without his leave. The Prince ordered the fighting ships to be separated; whereupon Master Thomas, with some other ships got betwixt the fighters on either side, and shot so long that both Low Countrymen and Dunkirkers were glad to desist. Afterwards at divers times Thomas fought with great courage and success with divers men in single fight, sometimes hurting and disarming his adversary, sometimes driving him away. The end of Master Thomas was sad. Finding his proofs of himself undervalued he retired into a private and melancholy life, and after living in this sullen humour for many years, he died about 1642 and was buried in London in St Martin's near Charing Cross.

<sup>1</sup> Khafi Khan in Elliot, VII, 218.

<sup>2</sup> Malcolm's Central India, I, 74.

<sup>3</sup> Malcolm's Central India, I, 61.

<sup>4</sup> Malcolm's Central India, I, 100.

Holkar and Sindhiā by the establishment of British overlordship in A.D. 1817.<sup>1</sup>

In A.D. 1820 Sir John Malcolm<sup>2</sup> describes the hill-top as a place of religious resort occupied by some mendicants. The holy places on the hill are the shrine of Hoshang Ghori whose guardian spirit still scares barrenness and other disease fiends<sup>3</sup> and the Rewa or Narbada Pool, whose holy water, according to common belief, prevents the dreaded return of the spirit of the Hindu whose ashes are strewn on its surface, or, in the refined phrase of the Brāhman, enables the dead to lose self in the ocean of being.<sup>4</sup> In A.D. 1820 the Jama Mosque, Hoshang's tomb, and the palaces of Baz Bahadur were still fine remains, though surrounded with jungle and fast crumbling to pieces.<sup>5</sup> In A.D. 1827 Colonel Briggs says<sup>6</sup> "Perhaps no part of India so abounds with tigers as the neighbourhood of the once famous city of Mandu. The capital now deserted by man is overgrown by forest and from being the seat of luxury, elegance, and wealth, it has become the abode of wild beasts and is resorted to by the few Europeans in that quarter for the pleasure of destroying them. Instances have been known of tigers being so bold as to carry off troopers riding in the ranks of their regiments. Twelve years later (A.D. 1839) Mr. Fergusson<sup>7</sup> found the hill a vast uninhabited jungle the rank vegetation tearing the buildings of the city to pieces and obscuring them so that they could hardly be seen." Between A.D. 1842 and 1852 tigers are described as prowling among the regal rooms, the half-savage marauding Bhil as eating his meal and feeding his cattle in the cloisters of its sanctuaries, and the insidious *pīpal* as levelling to the earth the magnificent remains.<sup>8</sup> So favourite a tiger retreat was the Jahaz Palace that it was dangerous to venture into it unarmed. Close to the very huts of the poor central village, near the Jama Mosque cattle were frequently seized by tigers. In the south tigers came nightly to drink at the Sagar lake. Huge bonfires had to be burnt to prevent them attacking the houses.<sup>9</sup> In A.D. 1883 Captain Eastwick wrote "At Mandu the traveller will require some armed men, as tigers are very numerous and dangerous. He will do well not to have any dogs with him as the panthers will take them even from under his bed."<sup>10</sup> If this was true of Mandu in A.D. 1883—and is not as seems likely the repetition of an old-world tale—the last ten years have wrought notable changes. Through the interest His Highness Sir Anand Rao Pāvār, K.C.S.I., &c., the present Maharaja of Dhar takes in the old capital of his state, travelling in Mandu is now as safe and easier than in many, perhaps than in most, outlying districts. A phaeton can drive across the northern ravine-moat through the three gateways and along the hill-top, at least as far south as the Sea Lake. Large stretches of the level are cleared and tilled, and herds of cattle graze free from the dread of wild beasts. The leading buildings have been saved from their ruinous tree-growth, the naderwood has been cleared, the marauding Bhil has settled to tillage, the tiger, even the panther, is nearly

## Appendix II.

### THE HILL-FORT OF MANDU. History.

Notices,  
A.D. 1820-1893.

<sup>1</sup> Malcolm's Central India, I. 106.

<sup>2</sup> Central India, II. 503.

<sup>3</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 43; March 1852 page 34.

<sup>4</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 43; March 1852 page 34.

<sup>5</sup> Briggs' Fariashah, IV. 236 note \*.

<sup>6</sup> Malcolm's Central India, II. 503.

<sup>7</sup> Indian Architecture, 541.

<sup>8</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 9.

<sup>9</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 9.

<sup>10</sup> Ruins of Mandu, 13, 25, 35. Some of these extracts seem to belong to a Bombay Subaltern, who was at Mandu about A.D. 1842, and some to Captain Claudius Harris, who visited the hill in April 1852. Compare Ruins of Mandu, 34.

<sup>11</sup> Murray's Handbook of the Panjab, 118.

**Appendix II.**

THE HILL FORT  
OF MANDU.  
*HISTORY.*

Notices,  
A.D. 1820-1895.

as rare as the wild elephant, and finally its old wholesomeness has returned to the air of the hill-top.

This sketch notices only the main events and the main buildings. Even about the main buildings much is still doubtful. Many inscriptions, some in the puzzling interlaced *Tughlak* character, have still to be read. They may bring to light traces of the Mándu kings and of the Mughal emperors, whose connection with Mándu, so far as the buildings are concerned, is still a blank. The ruins are so many and so widespread that weeks are wanted to ensure their complete examination. It may be hoped that at no distant date Major Delassau, the Political Agent of Dhar, whose opportunities are not more special than his knowledge, may be able to prepare a complete description of the hill and of its many ruins and writings.

-----

MARÁTHIA HISTORY  
OF  
GUJARÁT  
A.D. 1760-1819.

BY  
J. A. BAINES ESQUIRE, C.S.I.,  
LATE OF H. M. S. BOMBAY CIVIL SERVICE.

[CONTINUED IN 1879.]



# HISTORY OF GUJARÁT.

## MARÁTHA PERIOD.

A.D. 1760-1819.

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

It will be evident from what has been related in the Musalmán portion of this history that long before 1760, the Maráthás had a firm foothold in Gujarát, and were able to dictate to the local chiefs the policy of the Dakhan Court. Long before 1819 too, Maráthá influence was on the wane before the rising fortunes of the British. Between these two dates however is comprised the whole or nearly the whole of the period during which the Maráthás were virtually paramount in Gujarát. From each of these two dates the political history took a new departure, and on this account they serve respectively to denote the starting point and terminus of Maráthá supremacy. Most of what took place before 1760 is so interwoven with the interests and intrigues of the Muhammadan delegates of the court of Delhi that it has been fully described in the history of the Musalmán Period. It is however necessary, in order to trace the growth of Maráthá power, to briefly set forth in a continuous narrative the events in which this race was principally concerned, adding such as transpired independently of Musalmán politics. This task is rendered easier by the very nature of Maráthá policy, which has left little to be recorded of its action in Gujarát beyond the deeds and fortunes of its initiators and their adherents.

The connection of the Maráthás with Gujarát can be divided by the chronicler into the following periods. First, the time of predatory incursions from 1664 to 1743, before the leaders of these expeditions had permanently established themselves within the province. Secondly, what may be termed the mercenary period, when the Maráthás partly by independent action, but far more by a course of judicious interference in the quarrels of the Muhammadan officials and by loans of troops, had acquired considerable territorial advantages. Towards the end of this period, as has been already seen, their aid was usually sufficient to ensure the success of the side which had managed to secure it, and at last the capital itself was claimed and held by them. Then came the time of domination, from 1760 to 1801, during which period the Gaikwár influence was occasionally greater than that of the Peshwa. From 1802, internal dissensions at the courts of Poona and Baroda weakened the hold the Maráthás had on the province, and the paramount power had to all intents and purposes passed over to the British long before the downfall of Bájiráv Peshwa and the final annexation of his rights and territory in 1819.

THE  
MARÁTHÁS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

SIVAJI'S First  
Inroad,  
1664

Shortly after, when the Chákwar made over to the British the work of collecting the tribute from Káthiáváda, Maráthá supremacy came to an end.

The first Maráthá force that made its appearance in Gujarát was led there early in 1664 by Śiváji. This leader was at the time engaged in a warfare with the Mughals, which, however desultory, required him to keep up a much larger force than could be supported out of the revenues of his dominions. He therefore looked to plunder to supply the deficiency, and Surat, then the richest town of Western India, was marked down by him as an easy prey. His mode of attack was cautious. He first sent one Bahurji Nark to spy out the country and report the chances of a rich booty, whilst he himself moved a force up to Junnar on pretence of visiting some forts in that direction recently acquired by one of his subordinates. On receiving a favourable report from Bahurji, Śiváji gave out that he was going to perform religious ceremonies at Násik, and taking with him 4000 picked horsemen, he marched suddenly down the Gháts and through the Dáng jungles, and appeared before Surat. There he found an insignificant garrison, so he rested outside the city six days whilst his men plundered at their leisure. On hearing of the tardy approach of a relieving force sent by the governor of Ahmedábád, Śiváji beat a retreat with all his booty to the stronghold of Rávgad. By the time the reinforcement reached Surat, the only trace of the invaders was the emptied coffers of the inhabitants. About the same time, or shortly after, the fleet which Śiváji had equipped at Alibág about two years before came up to the mouth of the gulf of Cambay and carried off one or two Mughal ships which were conveying to Makka large numbers of pilgrims with their rich oblations.<sup>1</sup>

SIVAJI'S Second  
Attack,  
1670.

This insult to the Muhammadan religion was enough to incense the bigoted Aurangzeb, apart from the additional offences of the sack of Surat and the assumption in 1665 of royal insignia by Śiváji. He therefore sent an expedition to the Dakhan strong enough to keep the Maráthás for some time away from Gujarát. One of Śiváji's officers, however, seems to have attacked a part of the Surat district in 1666, and to have got off safely with his spoils. In 1670, Śiváji again descended upon that city with about 15,000 men. The only serious resistance he experienced was, as before, from the English factors. He plundered the town for three days, and only left on receiving some information about the Mughals' movements in the Dakhan, which made him fear lest he should be intercepted on his way back to the country about the Gháts.

1671.

Śiváji left a claim for twelve lákhs of rupees to be paid as a guarantee against future expeditions. It is possible, however, that as he does not appear to have taken any immediate steps to recover this sum, the demand was made only in accordance with Maráthá policy;

<sup>1</sup> Surat was known as Báb-ul-makkah or the Gate of Makka on account of its being the starting place of the ships annually conveying the Muhammadan pilgrims of India to the shrine of their Prophet.

which looked upon a country once overrun as tributary, and assumed a right to exercise paramount authority over it by virtue of the completed act of a successful invasion. In 1671 the Maráthā fleet was ordered to sail up the gulf and plunder Broach, and it is probable that Śivāji intended at the same time to levy tribute from Surat, but the whole expedition was countermanded before the ships sailed.

THE  
MARÁTHAS  
A.D. 1700-1819.

The conduct of the military authorities in Gujarāt with regard to this expedition of 1670 was such as to render it highly probable that the Mughal leaders were in complicity with the Maráthās in order to gain the favour and support of their leader. Shortly before Śivāji's arrival there had been a large garrison in Surat, apparently kept there by the governor, who suspected that some attempt on the town would soon be made. This garrison was withdrawn before Śivāji's attack, and almost immediately after his departure 5000 men were sent back again. The commanders of the Mughal army in the Dakhan were Jasvant Singh the Rāhīr chief of Jodhpur and prince Muazzam. Jasvant Singh had been viceroy of Gujarāt from A.D. 1659 to 1662, and in A.D. 1671 shortly after Śivāji's second expedition was re-appointed to that post for three years. He had, moreover, been accused of taking bribes from Śivāji during the operations in the Dakhan. Prince Muazzam, again, had every reason for wishing to secure to himself so powerful an ally as Śivāji in the struggle for the imperial crown that took place, as a rule, at every succession. Aurangzeb, reasoning from his own experiences as a son, refused to allow a possible heir to his throne to become powerful at court; and accordingly sent him against Śivāji with an army quite inadequate for such operations. It is therefore not unreasonable to suppose that if there had not been some previous understanding between Śivāji and the Mughal leaders, the troops that were known to be within easy reach of Surat would have been found strong and numerous enough either to have repulsed him altogether or at least to have prevented the three days' sack of the city.

In A.D. 1672 Śivāji took some of the small forts to the south of Surat, such as Pārnera and Bagvada, now in the Pārdi sub-division of the Surat district, while Moro Trimāl got possession of the large fort of Salet in Baglan, which guarded one of the most frequented passes from the Dakhan into Gujarāt. The Maráthas were thus able to command the routes along which their expeditions could most conveniently be despatched.

Salet Taken,  
1672.

No further incursion was made till 1675, in which year a Maráthā force first crossed the Narbada. On the resumption of hostilities between Śivāji and the Mughals, Hasāji Mohite, who had been made Senāpati, with the title of Hambīrrāv, marched up the North Konkan, and divided his army into two forces near Surat. One portion plundered towards Burhānpur, the other commanded by himself plundered the Broach district. Ten years later a successful expedition was made against Broach itself, either preconcerted or

The Narbada  
Crossed,  
1675.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

actually led by a younger son of Aurangzeb, who had taken refuge with the Maráthas. Broach was plundered, and the booty safely carried off before the local force could get near the invaders. Gujarát was now left free from inroad for some fourteen years, probably because the attention of the Marátha leaders was concentrated on their quarrels in the Dakhan.

Raids  
by Dabhadé,  
1699

In A.D. 1699 Rám Rája appointed one of his most trusted officers, Khanderáv Dábhádé, to collect in Baglán the *chauth*<sup>1</sup> and *sardesh-mukhi* imposts which had by that time become regularly instituted. This chief, whose name was afterwards so intimately connected with Gujarát, not only collected all that was due to his master from the village officers in Baglán, but also made an incursion into the Surat districts on his own account. Between 1700 and 1704, Khanderáv attempted two expeditions, but was foiled by the vigilance of the Mughal authorities. In 1705, however, he made a raid on a large scale and got safely across the Narbada, where he defeated two Muhammadan detachments sent against him, and got back to Sálér with his booty. Khanderáv now kept bodies of troops constantly hovering on the outskirts of Gujarát and along the road to Burhánpur. He himself led several expeditions into the Ahmedábád territory, and is said to have once got as far as Sorath in the peninsula, where however he was repelled by the Musulmán governor. In 1711, again he was severely defeated by the Mughals near Anklesvar in the Broach district, and had to withdraw to the borders of Khándesh.

1700-1704.

1705.

1706-1711.

1713.

In 1713 some treasure was being conveyed from Surat to Aurangábád escorted by a large force under Muhammad Tabrízí. The party was attacked in the jungles east of Surat and the treasure carried off. Just before this, Sarbuland Khán, the deputy viceroy, on his way to take up his office at Ahmedábád, was attacked and robbed in the wilds of Ságbára on the north bank of the Tápti. As Khanderáv had a short while previous to these occurrences taken up his position near Nándod<sup>2</sup> in the Rájpipla territory, it is probably to him or to his subordinates that these raids are to be attributed. He managed by a system of outposts to cut off communication between Surat and Burhánpur, except for those who had paid him a fee for safe conduct. If this charge was evaded or resisted, he appropriated one-fourth of the property that the traveller was conveying up country.

Dabhadé,  
1716.

As the Burhánpur road was one of those most frequented by both pilgrims and merchants, the Dehli authorities were obliged, in 1716, to organize an expedition against Dábhádé. The leader of the force was one Zulfikar Beg, an officer inexperienced in Marátha warfare. Dábhádé found little difficulty in decoying him into a mountainous country, and there completely defeated him with the usual Marátha accompaniment of plunder.

<sup>1</sup> *Sardeshmukhi* or ten per cent on the revenue. The *chauth* was nominally one fourth, but both these claims were fluctuating in their proportions to the total revenue.

<sup>2</sup> Now the capital of the Rája of Rájpipla.

Finding himself once more in the Dakhan, Khanderáv Dábháde took the opportunity of rejoining the court at Sátára, from which he had long been absent. He was lucky enough to arrive just as the Senápati Manáji Morár had failed on an important expedition and was consequently in disgrace. Rája Sháhu, pleased with Khanderáv's recent success against the Delhi troops, divested Manáji of the title of Senápati, and bestowed it upon the more fortunate leader.

Khanderáv remained away from Gujarát for three years, accompanying, meanwhile, Báláji Vishvanáth the Peshwa to Delhi, where the latter was engaged in negotiations for the confirmation of the Marátha rights to *chauth* and other tribute from certain districts in the Dakhan.

THE  
MARÁTHAS.  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

Dábháde  
Senápati.

The Peshwa's  
Negotiations,  
1717.

It is evident that at this time there was no definite claim to tribute from Gujarát on the part of the Marátha government; for in spite of the intrigues of Báláji and the weakness of the court party at Delhi no concessions were obtained with regard to it, although the Marátha dues from other parts of the country were fully ratified. The grounds on which Báláji demanded the tribute from Gujarát were that Sháhu would thereby gain the right to restrain the excesses of Marátha freebooters from the frontier and would guarantee the whole country against irregular pillage. The argument was a curious one, considering that the most troublesome and notorious freebooter of the whole tribe was at the elbow of the envoy, who was so strenuously pleading for the right to suppress him. It is probable that Báláji foresaw that Khanderáv's newly acquired rank would take him for a time from Báglán to the court, so that meanwhile an arrangement could be made to prevent the growth of any powerful chief in the Gujarát direction who might interfere with the plans of the central government. The Marátha statesman was as anxious to ensure the subordination of distant feudatories as the Mughals to secure the freedom of the Ghát roads to the coast.

In the redistribution of authority carried out about this time by Báláji Vishvanáth, the responsibility of collecting the Marátha dues from Gujarát and Báglán was assigned to Khanderáv as Senápati or commander-in-chief; but as these dues were not yet settled, at least as regards the country below the Gháts, Khanderáv seems to have remained with the Peshwa in the field.

At the battle of Bálápur, fought against the Nizám-ul-Mulk, one of the officers of Khanderáv, by name Dámáji Gaikwár, so distinguished himself that the Senápati brought his conduct prominently to the notice of Rája Sháhu. The latter promoted Dámáji to be second in command to Khanderáv with the title of Shamsheer Bahádúr, which had been formerly borne by one of the Atole family in 1692. This is the first mention of the present ruling family of Baroda. Before many months both Khanderáv and Dámáji died. The former was succeeded by his son Trimbakráv, on whom his father's title was conferred. Piláji, nephew of Dámáji, was confirmed in his uncle's

Dámáji Gaikwár,  
1720.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1700-1819.

1723.

\* Mar tha Tal  
1723.

Kantaji Kadam,

Marahy  
Dis on 10th  
1725

honours and retired to Gujarāt. As soon as he could collect a sufficiently strong force, he attacked the Surat district and defeated the Musalmān commander close to the city itself. After extorting from him a handsome sum as ransom, Pilāji returned eastwards. He selected Songad,<sup>1</sup> a fort about fifty miles east of Surat, as his headquarters, and from thence made continual excursions against the neighbouring towns. He once attacked Surat, but although he defeated the Mughal leader, he seems to have contented himself with contributions levied from the adjacent country, and not to have entered the town. Pilāji soon obtained possession of some strongholds in the Rajppla country between Nanded and Sāgbūra, which he fortified, as Khanderāv Dābhāde had formerly done. Here he resided as representative of the Senapati, whose family had removed for a while to the Dakhan. The tribute collected from Baglān and Gujarāt was supposed to be transmitted by Pilāji to the royal treasury through the Peshwa: but there is no record of these dues having been levied with any regularity or even fixed at any special amount. Whilst Trimbakrāv was taking an active part in the affairs of his royal patron in the Dakhan, Pilāji occupied himself in sedulously cultivating the goodwill of the border tribes surrounding his residence in Gujarāt.

The year 1723 is noteworthy as being the date of the first imposition of the regular Marāṭha demand of one-fourth, *chaudh*, and one-tenth, *sardeshmukhi*, of the revenue of Gujarāt. Whilst Pilāji was directing his attacks against Surat and the south of the province another of Raja Shahu's officers, who had been sent up towards Mālwa, entered Gujarat by the north-east, and after ravaging the country round Dohad,<sup>2</sup> settled a fixed tribute on the district.

This officer, Kantāji Kadam Bānde, was soon after engaged by one of the parties struggling for the vicerealty of Ahmedābād to bring his cavalry into the province and take part in the civil war. The leader of the opposite party, Rustam Ali, enlisted the services of Pilāji Gaikwān. The Nizām-ul-Mulk, whose influence in the Dakhan was very great, managed to detach Pilāji from Rustam Ali's side. This was the easier, as Rustam had already defeated Pilāji more than once in attacks by the latter against Surat, of which district Rustam was governor. There are two different accounts of what took place when the rival forces came into action, but both show clearly that the Marāṭha leaders acted on both sides with utter disregard of their agreements and looked only to plundering the Muhammadan camps whilst the soldiers were engaged in battle. After the defeat of Rustam, the two Marāṭha chiefs joined forces and proceeded to levy *chaudh*, of which the Mughal deputy had granted Pilāji a share equal to that of his first ally Kantāji.

This division led to quarrels and at last to an open rupture between the two Marāṭha leaders, which was only patched up by the

<sup>1</sup> On the western skirts of the Dāng forests.

<sup>2</sup> Now in the British districts of the Panch Mahals.

<sup>3</sup> The Muhammadan account is given in the Musalmān portion of this history. Grant Duff's description differs considerably.

grant of the *chauth* north of the Mahi river to Kantáji and of that to the south to Piláji. The chief ground of quarrel seems to have been the relative position of the Gáikwár as agent for the Senápati, who had a right to collect all dues from Gujarát, and of Kantáji, who claimed superior rank as holding his commission direct from Rája Sháhu. On hearing of this dispute and the consequent partition of the Marátha tribute, Trimbakráv Dáblhade himself hastened up to Cambay with an army, but effected nothing, and seems to have retired, leaving Piláji to look after his interests at Ahmedábád. Both the latter, however, and Kantáji soon after withdrew from Gujarát, but were within a short period encouraged to return by the success of a raid made by another leader, Antáji Bháskar, on the north-east district. They both joined Hamid Khán in his resistance to the new viceroy, but received several checks from the Muhammadan army, and after plundering again returned to their strongholds for the rainy season.

Next year they returned for the tribute and plundered as usual. The Peshwa Bajiráv then opened for the first time direct negotiations with the viceroy of Gujarát. The rapid increase of the authority of the Bráhman ministers at the Rája's court in the Dakhan had aroused the jealousy of the Maratha nobles, amongst whom Trimbakráv Dáblhade was one of the most influential. Bajiráv, being fully aware of the fact, and having by this time acquired from the Rája the power of acting with foreign powers independently of the throne, determined to undermine Trimbakráv's authority in Gujarát by aiming at the rights said to have been formally granted to him by Hamid Khán over the country south of the Mahi. He therefore applied to the viceroy for a confirmation of the right to levy *chauth* and *sardesh-mukhi* over the whole country, on condition that he would protect it from the incursions of Kantáji, Piláji, and other irresponsible freebooters. The viceroy had still some resources left at his disposal and was in hopes that his repeated applications to Delhi for assistance would soon meet with a favourable answer. He declined therefore to accede to Bajiráv's proposals at once, on the grounds that the court at Delhi had repudiated the concessions made to Piláji and Kantáji by his predecessor's deputy. As however the depredations on the frontier caused serious injury both to the revenues and the people, he allowed the Peshwa to send a ferryman, Udáji Pavár, chief of Dhár, through the Mughal territories to operate against Piláji. The latter, who was fully aware of these negotiations, persuaded Kantáji to join him in expelling the agents of the Peshwa party, as it was clear that if Piláji's forces were scattered the way would be open for Udáji to attack Kantáji himself. The two then proceeded to Baroda and after a while drove back Udáji, and occupied Baroda and Dabhoi. Here Piláji remained, and next year Kantáji succeeded in taking Chámpáner, thus advancing his posts nearer the centre of the province. With such an advantage gained these two chiefs instituted raids still more frequently than before. In these straits, and finding himself utterly neglected by the emperor, the viceroy re-opened negotiations with the Peshwa, who lost no time in sending his

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

c Peshwa,  
1726:

cession  
of Tribute,  
1728.

THE  
MARATHÁS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Cession  
of Tribute,  
1728.

brother Chinnáji Appa with an army through Gujarát. Petlad and Molka were plundered, but Kantáji was left undisturbed, so he took this opportunity of marching to Sorath, where he remained for some time extorting tribute. The viceroy agreed formally to cede the *sardesmukhi* of the whole revenue, land and customs (with the exception of the port of Surat and the districts attached to it) and the *chauth* of the same district, with five per cent on the revenue from the city of Ahmedábád. Special clauses were inserted in the grant of *chauth* to suit the convenience of both the Peshwa and the viceroy. The latter stipulated that as few collectors as possible should be kept by the Maráthás in the districts under tribute, and that no extra demands beyond the one-fourth should be made. He also insisted that the percentage should be calculated on the actual collections and not on the *kamál* or highest sum recorded as having been collected.<sup>1</sup> The Maráthás were also to support the imperial authority and to keep up a body of horse. The Peshwa agreed (probably at his own request) to prevent all Marátha subjects from joining disaffected chiefs, or other turbulent characters, thus receiving the right to suppress Kantáji and Piláji, as well as the Bhils and Kolis with whom the latter was on such friendly terms.

After this agreement was executed, Bájiráv made over part of the *sardesmukhi* to the Dábháde, as well as the *mokáma* or three-fourths of the *swaraj* as settled by Báláji Vishvanáth. The consideration as set forth in the preamble of this agreement was the great improvement effected by the Marátha rulers as regards the wealth and tranquillity of the Dakhan provinces. This was inserted either to give the transaction the appearance of having been executed on the part of the emperor (for otherwise the viceroy had no concern in the state of the Dakhan), or simply as an expression of gratitude on the part of this special viceroy towards the Maráthás who had just brought to terms the Nizám-ul-Mulk, his former rival and enemy. It is even probable that it was merely intended, as usual with such preambles, to veil the forced nature of the treaty.

The hostile movements of the Pratidinhi in the Southern Marátha Country induced the Peshwa to return to the Dakhan. Kantáji returned from Sorath to Chámpáner, plundering part of the viceroy's camp on his way. Trimbakráv Dábháde, jealous of the interference of the Peshwa in the affairs of Gujarát, began to intrigue with other chiefs to overturn the power of the Bráhman ministers.

As soon as Nizám-ul-Mulk became aware of this discontent on the part of Trimbakráv, of whose power he was well informed, he proposed to assist him by an attack on the Peshwa from the east, whilst the Maráthás operated in another direction. Trimbakráv was successful in his overtures with Piláji Gaikwár, the Bándó, the Pavárs, and a few other chiefs resident in Khándesh or the north Dakhan. The troops sent by them to join his standard soon amounted

<sup>1</sup> The Marátha practice was to base their demands on the standard or *tankha* assessment (which was seldom if ever collected), so that by this means they evaded all possibility of claims against them for over-collections.

Coalition against  
the Peshwa,  
1730

to 35,000 men, who were collected in Gujarát. He then gave out that he was bent on rescuing the Marátha Rája from the thraldom in which he was being kept by the Bráhmans. The Peshwa, who had discovered the intercourse between Trimbakráv and the Nizám, proclaimed this treason on the part of the Dábháde as a royal officer, and stated that the malcontents were only planning the partition of the inheritance of Shíváji between the Rája of Kolhápur and themselves. As soon as he found the Nizám's troops were on the march, he collected his picked men and advanced on the Dábháde in Gujarát.

The Peshwa's army was inferior in numbers but consisted of better trained men. He closed at once with the allies near Dabhoi, and easily defeated the undisciplined forces of the Pávárs and Bándes. The Dábháde's army, however, had more experience of regular warfare and made a stand. But a stray shot killed Trimbakráv as he was endeavouring to rally the forces of his allies, and as usual in such engagements, the loss of the leader disheartened the army. Utter confusion ensued, in which many of the nobles fell, others ran away, and the Peshwa, without the necessity of pushing further his advantage, made good his retreat to the Dakhan. The Nizám, who was in pursuit, only managed to capture some of the baggage with the rear guard as it was crossing the Tápti near Surat.<sup>1</sup>

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1818.  
  
Defeat of the  
Allies,  
1731.

Safe again in the Dakhan, the Peshwa at once began negotiations with both the Nizám and the adherents of Trimbakráv Dábháde. He recognized the rights of the former to some possessions in Gujarát independent of the viceroy of Ahmedábád, and agreed to further his designs of severing the Dakhan from the possessions of the emperor. He conciliated the Dábháde family by establishing at Poona an annual distribution of food and presents to Bráhmans such as had formerly been the practice in the native village of Khandakráv.<sup>2</sup> This institution was known as *Dakshiná*.

Bájráv acquiesced also in the general tendency amongst Maráthas of all offices to become hereditary, and conferred the title of *Senápati* on Yeshvantrav the minor son of the deceased Trimbakráv. The widow Umábái became guardian, and Piláji Gaikwár deputy or *mutálik* in Gujarát. This latter appointment seems to have been made by the Peshwa and not by the Dábháde, for Piláji received at the same time a new title, namely that of *Sená Khás Khel* or commander of the special band or perhaps the household brigade. He was also bound on behalf of the *Senápati* to respect the Peshwa's rights in Máhva and Gujarát, and to pay half the collections from the territory he administered to the royal treasury through the minister. A provision was also inserted with regard to future acquisitions. This reciprocal agreement was executed at the special command of the Marátha Rája Sháhu, who had not yet quite abrogated his authority in favour of the Peshwa. Piláji after these negotiations retired to Gujarát.

<sup>1</sup> At Gala about twelve miles above Surat in the territory of the Gaikwár.

<sup>2</sup> Tilgaon in the north-west of Poona, now a station on the railway to Bombay.

THE  
MARÁTHÁS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

Assassination of  
Piláji Gaikwár,  
1732.

His influence amongst the Bhils and other troublesome races dwelling in the wild parts of the eastern frontier made Piláji an object of hatred and fear to the Mughal viceroy, who had him assassinated by one of his adherents whilst the latter was pretending to whisper some important and confidential news in Piláji's ear. This event took place at Dákor in the Kaira district. The followers of the Gaikwár slew the assassin and retired south of the Mahi. They were driven by the Mughals out of Baroda, but continued to hold Dabhoi. Dámáji Gaikwár, son of Piláji, was at this time prowling round Surat watching for an opportunity of interfering in the disturbed affairs of that town. One of the candidates for the governorship had offered him one-fourth the revenue of the city for his assistance, but the expedition was deferred on account of the appointment of a rival by the emperor. Dámáji therefore was preparing to act on his own account independently of his ally. The news of his father's assassination, however, took him northwards. He found that the Desai of Pádra near Baroda had stirred up the Bhils and Kolis to revolt, in order to give the relations of Piláji a chance of striking a blow at the murderers of their deceased leader. Umábái Dabhláde, too, bent on the same errand, moved down the Gháts with an army. The Maráthás were bought off, however, by the viceroy and peace was restored for a while.

1733.

Gaikwars Secure  
Baroda,  
1734.

In this year also Jádoji, a younger son of Trimbakráv, made an expedition to collect tribute through Gujarát as far as Sorath. Next year Mádhavráv Gaikwár, brother of Piláji, obtained possession of Baroda during the absence of Sher Khán Babi the governor. Since that date this town has been the capital of the Gaikwár family. Sindia and Holkar soon afterwards joined the chief of Idar against the Musalmán deputy, and extorted from the latter a considerable sum as ransom.

The Marátha  
Deputy  
Governor,  
1736.

Umábái had recognized Dámáji as her agent in succession to Piláji; but as she required Dámáji in the Dakhan the latter had been obliged to leave in his turn a *locum tenens* in Gujarát. There ensued quarrels between this deputy, named Rangoji, and Kantáji Kadam which brought Dámáji back again, and after obtaining from the Muhammánadan viceroy, who had espoused the cause of Kantáji, a grant of one-fourth the revenues of the country north of the Mahi he went as usual to Sorath. Kantáji Kadam, who as a partisan of the Peshwa was hostile to the Senápati, harassed the country within reach of his frontier. Dámáji, meanwhile, had again proceeded to the Dakhan, where Umábái was intriguing against the Peshwa and required all the help she could obtain to further the ambitious schemes she was devising in the name of her half-witted son. His deputy Rangoji, by demanding a heavy price for his aid at a time when an aspirant to the viceroyalty of Ahmedábád was in distress, managed to secure for the Maráthás half the revenue of Gujarát with certain exceptions.

Ahmedábád  
Riots,  
1738.

Dámáji then moved into Gujarát again, and on his way to join Rangoji extorted Rs. 7000 from the English at Surat as a

guarantee against plundering them. The events of this year have been detailed in full in the history of the Musalmán Period. After getting possession of a great part of the city of Ahmedábád the Maráthás, by their oppressive rule, excited a rising amongst the Musalmán inhabitants. Several quarrels and subsequent reconciliations took place between 1739 and 1741, the Musalmáns distrusting the Maráthás, yet not daring to attempt to oust them. Dámáji, on his way back from one of his Sorath expeditions, laid siege to Broach, which was held by a Muhammadan officer direct from the viceroy of the Dakhan.<sup>1</sup> As the latter personage was still regarded by the Marátha chiefs as a possible ally against the Peshwa, Dámáji at once obeyed the request of the Nizám to raise the siege, but probably obtained a promise of future concessions such as he had acquired at Surat.

THE  
MARÁTHAS  
A.D. 1760-1819.

1739.

1741.

1742.

Rangoji in the absence of Dámáji took up his residence in Borsad. There he fell into several disputes with the Muhammadan officials, in the course of one of which he was taken prisoner, but escaped the next year (1743). Meanwhile Dámáji had joined with Rághoji Bhonslé in attacking the Peshwa. Whilst Rághoji was preparing his army in the east, Dámáji made a feat against Málwa, which had the desired effect of withdrawing a large portion of the ministerial army. The Gaikwár's troops retreated without giving battle, but to prevent any future junction between Dámáji and the Bhonslé party in Berár, Bálaji Peshwa confirmed the Pavár family in their claims to Dhár, which had never been acknowledged as their territory since the defection of the Pavárs to the Dábháde party in 1721. It is worth remarking that though the rank of Senápati had apparently been made hereditary in the Dábháde family (for the owner of the title was quite unfit for the command of an army), the Ghorpadé family applied at this time to have it restored to them on the ground that it once had been held by one of their house. The Peshwa, however, managed to secure their alliance by a grant of land, and their claims to the chief command of the army seem to have been waived.

1743-44

For the next two years the Marátha force in Gujarát under Rangoji and Deváji Tákar was employed by the Musalmáns in their quarrels regarding the viceroyalty. The Marátha practice of appointing deputies gives rise to some confusion as to the negotiations that took place about this time between the Gaikwár's party and the rival candidates for the office of subhedár. For instance, Umábái Dábháde had appointed the Gaikwár family as her agents-in-chief, but the principal members of that house were absent in the Dakhan. Dámáji Gaikwár had appointed Rangoji, who in his turn left one Krishnáji in charge of the Marátha share of the city of Ahmedábád. On the departure, however, of Dámáji from Gujarat, Umábái left Rámáji as her agent. Rámáji, who seems to have

<sup>1</sup> Broach was constituted part of the Nizám's personal estate on his resigning the viceroyalty in 1722.

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

been employed previously by Dámáji, followed the example of his predecessors and placed one Rámchandra in charge at Ahmedábád. There does not appear to have been any direct agent of the Peshwa in Gujarát at this time.

1745.

On Khanderáv Gaikwár's return from the Dakhan he demanded the accounts of the tribute from Rangoji, and not being satisfied with this agent confined him in Borsad and appointed one Trimbakráv in his place. Umábái caused Rangoji to be set at liberty and sent to her in the Dakhan, after which she reappointed him her agent. He expelled Trimbakráv from Ahmedábád, but was attacked by Krishnáji and Gangádhár, two other late deputies. Dámáji and Khanderáv were obliged at last to come to Gujarát and summon all these deputies to their presence. A private arrangement was concluded under which Khanderáv was allowed by Dámáji to keep Nadiád and Borsad as a private estate and to act as the Gaikwár's deputy at Baroda. Rangoji was to live at Umreth when not on active service. Gangádhár and Krishnáji were censured and forbidden to engage in any independent alliances with the Muhammadan leaders.

1746

After this Dámáji sent a general named Kánoji Tákpár to collect the Sorath tribute whilst he himself retired to Songad.

Rangoji returned to Ahmedábád, and not long after began to quarrel with the viceroy about the Marátha share in the revenue of the city ceded in 1728.

The Gaikwár  
in Surat,  
1747.

In A.D. 1747 Kedárji Gaikwár, cousin of Dámáji, was asked by Sved Achchan, an aspirant to the governorship of Surat, to assist him in maintaining possession of that city. Before Kedárji could reach Surat the disputes as to the succession had been settled by negotiations, and the aid of Marátha troops was no longer required. Kedárji, however, finding himself in a position to dictate terms, demanded three lákhs of rupees for the aid that he was prepared to give, and as the Surat treasury could not afford to pay this sum in cash, one-third of the revenues of Surat was promised to the Gaikwár.

1748

Rangoji meanwhile attacked Haribá, an adopted son of Khanderáv Gaikwár, and recovered from him the town and fort of Borsad, which had been seized during the time that Rangoji had been occupied with his disputes in Ahmedábád. Khanderáv and Dámáji both turned against him and captured the fort after a long siege. Rangoji was then again imprisoned, and not released until the next year when the Peshwa sent a body of troops into Gujarát. In 1748 Umábái, widow of Trimbakráv Dábháde, died, leaving one Báburáv guardian of Yeshvántráv her son. Partly through the solicitations of Khanderáv, who had private influence with the Dábhádes, partly from the fact of previous possession, Dámáji was confirmed as deputy of the Maráthás in Gujarát. He there began to collect an army as quickly as possible, in order to co-operate with Raghunáth Bhonslé against the Peshwa, in answer to an appeal by Sakvárbái, widow of Sháhu, to support the throne against the ministers, and to secure the

succession of Sambhaji to the Sátára kingdom. The Peshwa, aware of Dámaji's ill-will towards himself, did his best to foment disturbances in Gujarát and to extend his own influence there so as to keep Dámaji away from the Dakhan.

The Peshwa accordingly entered into some negotiations with Jawán Mard Khán, then in power at Ahmedábád, but was unable to lend substantial aid in Gujarát against Dámaji's agents, as the whole Marátha power was required in the Dakhan to operate against the son of the late Nizám-ul-Mulk.

Next year Dámaji, at the request of Tárábái, guardian of Rám Rája, ascended the Salpi ghát with a strong force, defeated the Peshwa's army, and advanced as far as Sátára. From this position he was forced to retire, and whilst in treaty with the Peshwa was treacherously seized by the latter and put into prison. Bálaji at once demanded arrears of tribute, but Dámaji declined to agree to any payment, on the ground that he was no independent chief but only the agent of the Senúpati. He therefore refused to bind his principal or himself on account of what was due from his principal. Bálaji then imprisoned all the members of the Gaikwár and Dabháde family that were at that time in the Dakhan.

The state of Surat was at this time such as to afford a good opportunity to the Peshwa to obtain a footing there independently of the English or of Dámaji. He had recently had dealings with the former in the expeditions against Angra of Kolába, and as the merchants had found him one of the most stable and powerful rulers of the country, they were willing to treat with him for the future security of their buildings and goods in Surat. Taking advantage of Dámaji's confinement, Bálaji sent Ragunáthráv to Gujarát. This leader, afterwards so well known as Raghoba, took possession of a few *tilukas* in the north-east of the province, but was recalled to the Dakhan before he could approach Surat. Jawán Mard Khán also took advantage of Dámaji's absence to make an expedition into Sorath and Káthiaváda where the Gaikwár family had now established themselves permanently.

The news of these two expeditions made Dámaji very eager to return to his province; and as he had full information as to Bálaji's plans with regard to Gujarát, he bribed freely, and in order to regain his liberty consented to much harsher terms than he would otherwise have done. He agreed to maintain an army for defence and collection purposes in Gujarát, as well as to furnish a contingent to the Peshwa's army in the Dakhan, and to contribute towards the support of the Rája, now in reality a state-prisoner dependent upon the wishes of his minister. The Gaikwár was also to furnish the tribute due on account of the Dabháde family, whom the Peshwa was apparently trying to oust from the administration altogether. After deducting the necessary expenses of collection and defence, half the surplus revenue was to be handed over to the Peshwa. Even after acceding to all these proposals, the Gaikwár was not at once released. The Peshwa protracted the negotiations, as he had

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

1750.

Dámaji Gaikwár  
Arrested,  
1751.

The Peshwa  
and Surat.

Release of  
Dámaji,  
1752.

THE  
MARATHÁS,  
A.D. 1760-1769.

to contend against a factions court party in whose counsels he knew Dámáji would play a leading part when once set at liberty. At last, however, after agreeing to a final request that he would assist Raghunáthráv against Surat, Dámáji was allowed to go. There was at this time one Pándurang Pant levying tribute on behalf of the Peshwa in Cambay and Ahmedábád. The Nawáb of Cambay, not having any reason to like or trust his neighbour the Gáikwár, had persuaded the Peshwa at the time the partition of the Marátha rights over Gujaráť was being settled at Poona, to take Cambay into his share of the province. The Nawáb bought off the agent of his ally with a pre-cent of guns and cash. The ruler of Ahmedábád also came to terms with the Maráthás, so Pándurang was at liberty to go and see if he could find equal good fortune in Sorath.

Capture of  
Ahmedábád,  
1753.

Dámáji now came back with a fresh army, which was soon reinforced by Raghunáthráv. They marched towards Ahmedábád, and Jawán Mard Khán was too late to intercept them before they invested the capital. He managed, however, by a bold movement to enter the town, but after a long siege was obliged to capitulate and march out with the honours of war. The Maráthás conferred on him an estate in the north-west of Gujarat, which, however, was recovered by them some time afterwards.

1754.

After taking possession of Ahmedábád in April 1753, Raghunáthráv went to Sorath, and on his return extorted a large sum as tribute from the Nawáb of Cambay. He left a deputy in Ahmedábád, who marched against the same chief again in 1754, but on this occasion he could levy no tribute. As the Nawáb had firmly established himself and considerably enlarged his dominions, the Peshwa's deputy marched against him in person a second time but was defeated and taken prisoner. The nominee of Raghunáthráv procured his release, and the Peshwa's deputy continued to demand arrears of tribute for his master till he obtained an agreement to pay at a future date. He then retired to the Dakhan, and the Nawáb, taking advantage of the lull to strengthen his army, captured Ahmedábád from the Maratha garrison and established himself in the city. After a while Dámáji and Khandaráv Gáikwár, with an agent sent direct by the Peshwa, arrived before the town and commenced a siege. It was not until April 1757 that the Maráthás again entered the city. The Nawáb surrendered after the Maráthás had fully ratified the conditions he himself had proposed.

1755.

1757.

1758.

Sayájíráv, son of Dámáji, remained in Ahmedábád on behalf of his father, and the Peshwa's agent Sadáshiv put in a deputy in his turn and went himself to Surat. Here he was soon joined by Sayáji, who had to arrange the shares of the tribute in accordance with the partition treaty of 1751. Next year a body of Marátha troops was sent to the aid of the Ráv of Kachh, who was engaged in an expedition against Thatta in Sindh. Sadáshiv lent the Nawáb of Cambay some money on the part of the Peshwa to enable him to liquidate the arrears of pay due to his army, but a year afterwards the Marátha army appeared at the town gates with a demand for

two years' arrears of tribute in full, amounting to Rs. 20,000. The Nawáb managed to raise this sum, and the Maráthás moved south. Dámáji was at this time in Poona.

THE  
MARÁTHÁS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

The Peshwa had supported Syed Achchan of Surat with the view of putting him under an obligation so as to secure some future advantages, and this year lent him some troops as a bodyguard. The Nawáb of Cambay, who was also indebted to the ministerial party, left his dominions to pay a visit to the Peshwa at Poona. Khandaráv meanwhile plundered Lujáváda and Idar, whilst Savájiráv was similarly engaged in Soráth.

1759.

Dámáji Gáikwár accompanied the Peshwa to Delhi, and was one of the few Maráthá leaders that escaped after the defeat at Pániopat. On his return to Gujarát he successfully opposed an expedition by the Nawáb of Cambay against Bálasthor and re-took the estates of Jawán Mard Khan. He also strengthened his position in Soráth and Káthiáváda against the Peshwa's party.

1761.

The Peshwa, being hard pressed by his rival the Nizám, began in this year to make overtures to the East India Company's officers in Bombay, with a view to getting the aid of European artillery and gunners. He at first offered to give up a valuable tract of land in Jámbusar. But the English would accept no territory but the island of Sálsette, the town of Bassen, and the small islands in the harbour of Bombay. These the Maráthá government declined to give up, so negotiations were broken off.

1761.

Next year Raghunáthráv, as guardian of the son of Báláji, named Mádhavráv, who was still a minor, conferred the title of Senápati on one of the Jádhav family who had formerly borne it. The administration of Gujarát, however, which had always accompanied the title when held by the Dabháde family, was left practically in the hands of Dámáji, and no mention of any transfer of it was made at the time Jádhav was appointed commander-in-chief. Discontented with the empty honour thus conferred, Rámchandra, the new Senápati, joined the Nizám's party, and on account of this defection the Peshwa, two years afterwards, cancelled the appointment and restored the office to the Ghorpale family, one of whose members had held it long before. This put an end to the connection of Gujarát with the chief military dignity of the Maráthá state.

1762.

After Mádhavráv Báláji came of age he had constantly to be on this guard against the plots of his uncle Raghunáthráv, who had refused to accept the share in the government offered him by the young Peshwa. Raghunáthráv, perhaps instigated by his wife, had no doubt great hopes of obtaining a share in the whole power of the administration, and suspecting Mádhavráv to be aware of his designs, looked upon all the overtures made by the latter as intended in some way or other to entrap him. He therefore collected an army of some 15,000 men in Báglán and Násik, and hoping to be joined on his way by Jánoji-Bhonslé, advanced towards Poona. In his army was Govindráv, son of Dámáji Gáikwár, with a detachment of his father's troops. The Peshwa, without giving Jánoji time to effect

Intrigues of  
Raghoba,  
1768.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Death of Dāmaji  
Gāikwār,  
1768.

Disputed  
Succession.

a junction with Raghunāthráv, even if he had been prepared to do so, defeated his uncle's army at Dhorāṇ, a fort in the Ajunta range, and carried off Rāghobā and Govindrāv to Poona, where they were placed in confinement.

Not long after this action Dāmaji died. He had brought the fortunes of the Gāikwār house to the highest pitch they ever reached and not long after his death the family influence began to decline. It was his personal authority alone that was able to counteract the usual tendency of quasi-independent Marāṭha states towards disintegration, especially when they are at a distance from the central power. Khanderāv and Sayājirāv had shown frequent signs of insubordination (as for instance in their espousal of the cause of Rangoji) and a desire to establish themselves in an independant position, but the sagacity of Dāmaji foresaw the advantage such a partition would give an enemy like the Peshwa, and his tact enabled him to preserve unity in his family, at least in resistance to what he showed them to be their common foe.

The quarrel for the succession that arose on Dāmaji's death was the first step towards the breaking up of the Gāikwār's power. Dāmaji had three wives. By the first he had Govindrāv, who however was born after Sayājirāv, the son by the second wife. His sons by the third wife were Mānaji and Fatesingh. Govindrāv was in confinement at Poona near the court, and therefore in a position to offer conditions for the confirmation of his rights without loss of time.

In the Hindu law current amongst Marāṭhas, there are to be found precedents in favour of the heirship of either Govindrāv or Sayājirāv. Some authorities support the rights of the son of the first wife whether he be the eldest or not, others again regard simply the age of the claimants, deciding in favour of the first born, of whatever wife he may be the son. Rāmrao Shāstri, the celebrated adviser of Mādhavrāv Peshwa, is said to have expressed an opinion in favour of the rights of Sayājirāv. Govindrāv, however, was on the spot where his influence could be used most extensively. Savaji, moreover, was an idiot and a puppet in the hands of his half brother Fatesingh. Govindrāv applied at once for investiture with the title of Senā-Khas-Khel. A payment of 50½ lakhs of rupees to the Peshwa on account of arrears of tribute and a fine for his conduct in taking part with Rāghobā was a strong argument in his favour, and when he agreed to a tribute previously demanded from his father of Rs. 7,79,000 yearly and to maintain a peace contingent at Poona of 3000 horse, to be increased by a thousand more in time of war, there could be little doubt as to the legitimacy of his claim, and he was duly invested with his father's title and estate.

1771.

For reasons not apparent Sayaji's claims were not brought forward till nearly two years later. Govindrāv had never been allowed to join his charge in Gujarāt, so that he could exercise no interference in that direction, and the court affairs in the Dukhan left perhaps little time for the disposal of Sayājirāv's application, even if it had been made. Sayaji had entrusted his interests to Fatesingh, a man

of considerable ability, who came at once to Poona to get a reversal of the recognition of Govindrāv. The Peshwa was glad to have this opportunity of undoing so much of Dāmāj's work and dividing the Gāikwār family against itself, so using the verdict of Rām Shāstri as his weapon, he cancelled the former grant in favour of Govindrāv, and appointed Sayajīrāv with Fatesingh as his *mutdlik* or deputy. The latter, by agreeing to pay an extra sum of 8½ lakhs of rupees annually, got permission to retain the Poona contingent of Gāikwār horse in Gujarāt, on the pretext that Govindrāv would probably attack his brothers on the earliest opportunity. Thus, whatever happened, all went to the profit of the Peshwa's party and to the injury of the tax-paying Gujarāt ryot.

Fatesingh retired in triumph to Baroda, and opened negotiations with the English in Surat, as he had been endeavouring to do for a year past without success. In January 1773, however, he succeeded in getting an agreement from the Chief for Affairs of the British Nation in Surat, that his share in the revenues of the town of Broach, which had been taken by storm in 1772 by the English, should not be affected by the change of masters. In the same year Nārāyanrāv Peshwa was murdered, and Rāghobā was invested by the titular king at Sātara with the ministerial robe of honour. Govindrāv Gāikwār, still in Poona, reminded the new Peshwa of the good offices of the Gāikwār family at Dhorap and elsewhere, and found means of getting reinstated as Senā-Khās-Khel. In 1774 he set out for Gujarāt, and collecting a fair number of adherents on his way, he attacked Fatesingh. After various engagements of little importance, the latter found himself shut into the city of Baroda, which was invested by Govindrāv in January 1775.

1773.

1774.

Rāghobā  
Peshwa,  
1774.

In the meantime Rāghobā had been driven from power by the intrigues of Brahmans of a different class from that to which he belonged, headed by the afterwards well-known Nāna Phadnis. The ex-Peshwa first betook himself towards Malwa, where he hoped to be joined or at least assisted by Holkar and Sindia. As soon however as he got together some scattered forces he marched down the Tāpti and opened negotiations with the English through Mr. Gambier, the chief at Sur. The Bombay Government at once demanded the cession of Bassein, Sālsette, and the adjacent islands. Rāghobā refused, partly, in all probability, on account of the pride felt by the Marāthā soldiery in their achievements before Bassein at the time of the great siege. He however offered valuable territory in Gujarāt, yielding a revenue of about eleven lakhs, and to pay six lakhs down and 1½ lakhs monthly for the maintenance of a European contingent with artillery. The English at Bombay were debating whether this offer should not be accepted when news reached them that the Portuguese were about to organise an expedition to re-take Bassein. Negotiations with Rāghobā were hastily broken off and a small force sent to forestall the rival Europeans. Before the end of 1774, both Thāna and Versova fort in Sālsette had been taken.

Rāghobā now heard that Sindia and Holkar had been bought over by the ministerial party and would not come to his assistance.

Rāghobā in  
Gujarāt,  
1775.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Quickly moving his force down the river he reached Baroda in January 1775 with 10,000 horse and 100 foot. He joined Govindráv in investing that town, but sent meanwhile an agent to re-open the discussion of his proposals in the Bombay Council. This agent was captured by a party of Fatesingh's horse whilst he was out on an expedition near Párnera on behalf of Govindráv. On his release he repaired to Surat and took steps to get a treaty of alliance signed as soon as possible.

Rághobá  
Defeated.

The ministerial army of 30,000 men under Haripant Phadke entered Gujarat and obliged Govindráv and Rághobá to raise the siege of Baroda and retire towards the Mah. Fatesingh's force then joined Haripant. An attack on all sides was made (Feb. 17th). Rághobá, who was in the centre, was first charged, and before Govindráv and Khanderávkáikwár could come to his assistance his best officers were wounded, some of his Arab mercenaries refused to fight as large arrears of pay were due to them, and he was defeated on both flanks. He fled to Cambay with only 1000 horse; whilst the two Gáikwárs and Manaji Sindhia (Phadke) led the rest of the scattered army to Kapadvanj, where it was again set in order. The Nawáb of Cambay, fearing lest the Maráthá army should come in pursuit, shut the town gates on the fugitive and refused to give him shelter. Mr Malet, chief of the English residents, who had been informed of the negotiations in progress between his Government and Rághobá, contrived to get the ex-Peshwa conveyed privately to Bhavnagar and from thence by boat to Surat. Here he arrived on February 23rd.

Reaches Surat.

Treaty of Surat,  
1775.

The stipulations of the treaty negotiated by Narotandas, agent of Rághobá, and the Bombay Government were: The English to provide a force of 3000 men, of which 800 were to be Europeans and 1700 natives, together with a due proportion of artillery. In return for this Rághobá, still recognized as Peshwa, was to cede in perpetuity Sálsette, Bassen and the islands, Jámbugar, and Olpád. He also made over an assignment of Rs. 75,000 out of the revenues of Anklesvar, the remaining portion of which district, together with Amod, Hansot, and Balsar was placed under British management as security for the monthly contribution of 1½ lakhs for the support of the troops in his service. He also promised to procure the cession of the Gáikwár's share in the revenues of Broach. Sundry other provisions (dealing with different parts of the Maráthá dominions) were inserted, Rághobá being treated throughout as the representative of the Maráthá kingdom. This treaty was signed on March 6th, 1775, at Surat, but on the previous day there had been a debate in the Council at Bombay as to the propriety of continuing to support Rághobá, as the news from Gujarát made the British authorities doubtful whether the contingent they had already sent to Surat was enough to ensure success.

Colonel Keating  
in Gujarát.

Just before the treaty was drawn up, at the end of February Lieut.-Colonel Keating had been despatched in command of 350 European infantry 800 sepoys 80 European artillerymen and 60 gun lascars with others, in all about 1500 men, ready for active service. This force landed at Surat four days after Rághobá had arrived from Bhavnagar.

Before receiving this token of the intention of the British to support Raghobá, the Nawáb had treated the latter simply as a fugitive, but upon finding that the Bombay Government had determined to make the ex-Peshwa their ally, he paid the customary visits and offered presents as to a superior.

When the news reached Surát that Govindráy's troops and the rest had been reorganized at Kapadvanj, it was determined to effect a junction with them by landing Colonel Keating's detachment at Cambay and from thence marching north.

Considerable delay occurred in carrying out the first part of this proposal. First of all Raghobá detained the army at Dumas<sup>1</sup> whilst he paid a visit of ceremony to the frequented temple of Bhimpur in the neighbourhood. Then again, the convoy met with contrary winds the whole way up the gulf, and it was not till March 17th that the contingent landed. The Nawáb, accompanied by the British Resident, paid a visit of ceremony and presented *nazarinis* to Raghobá as a sort of atonement for his previous discourtesy and neglect. The Marathas, however, knowing that this change of tone was entirely due to the presence and alliance of the Europeans, paid much more attention to the latter than to the Muhammadans.

The British contingent encamped at a place called Náráyan-Sarovar, just north of the town. Here they waited until the reinforcement from Bombay arrived, bringing the whole force up to the complement stipulated for in the treaty. Raghobá's army under Govindráy Gaikwár was reported to be moving southwards, and Colonel Keating agreed to let it pass the Sábarmati river before joining it. Meanwhile the enemy, said to number 40,000 infantry and 12,000 cavalry, marched north to intercept Govindrav. The latter, however, by forced marches succeeded in crossing the Sábarmati before the arrival of the ministerial army, and encamped a few miles north-east of Cambay at a place called Darmaj or Dara. Here Colonel Keating joined him about the middle of April.

Govindráy's army consisted of about 8000 fighting men and nearly 18,000 camp followers. These latter were chiefly Pindháris who used to attach themselves to the camp of one of the Marátha chiefs, on condition of surrendering to him half their plunder. Each chief had his separate encampment, where he exercised independent authority over his own troops, although bound to general obedience to the commander-in-chief of the whole army. The confusion of this arrangement is described by an eye-witness as utterly destructive of all military discipline. To add to the cumbrousness of such an expedition, most of the Pindháris brought their wives and children with them, the cooking pots and plunder being carried on bullocks and ponies, of which there were altogether nearly 200,000 attached to the troops. In every camp there was a regular

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1818.

Keating sails  
with Raghobá  
for Cambay.

Raghobá in  
Cambay,  
1775. •

Govindráy  
Gaikwár's  
Army.

<sup>1</sup> At the mouth of the Tápti, now belonging to the late Muhammadan state of Sachin.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Advance of  
the Combined  
Forces.

*bazár* where cash payment or barter passed equally current, so that a premium was thus placed on the pillaging of small articles by the Pindhâris, whose stipulations as to plunder were confined neither to friend nor enemy.

When all needful preparations had been made, the army, accompanied by a battery of ten guns, besides mortars and howitzers, all of which were manned by Europeans, moved out against the enemy. The latter slowly retreated, burning the crops and forage and destroying the water-supply on its way. On the 20th April the first engagement took place at Usâmlî, resulting in the repulse of the ministerial troops. On May 1st a similar skirmish on the banks of the Vâtrâk drove the ministerialists into Kara. From this post they were driven after a series of slight engagements with the army of Râghobâ, which crossed the river at Mâtur. Fatesingh now received a reinforcement of 10,000 horse under Khanderâv Gâikwâr, but to counterbalance this aid, Sindia and Holkar from some unexplained cause, connected probably with intrigues at Poona, withdrew from further co-operation with him. Colonel Keating was unable to follow up the advantages he had gained owing to the large proportion of cavalry in the enemy's army. He therefore continued his march southwards, after persuading Râghobâ to spend the monsoon in Poona, where he would be on the spot to counteract intrigues, instead of at Ahmedâbâd, as had been at first proposed.

On May 8th the army reached Nadiâd, after repulsing on the road two attacks by the enemy's cavalry. This result was obtained chiefly by means of the European light artillery. Nadiâd belonged at this time to Khanderâv Gâikwâr, and to punish his defection to Fatesingh, Râghobâ inflicted a fine of 60,000 rupees on the town. The amount was assessed on the several castes in proportion to their reputed means of payment. The Bhâts, a peculiar people of whom more hereafter, objected to being assessed, and slaughtered each other in public: so that the guilt of their blood might fall on the oppressor. The Brâhmans, who also claimed exemption from all taxation, more astutely brought two old women of their caste into the market place and there murdered them. Having made this protest, both castes paid their contributions. Râghobâ injudiciously wasted seven days over the collection of this fine, and in the end only levied 10,000 rupees.

Defeat of  
Fatesingh,  
1775.

On May 14th the march was resumed, under the usual skirmishing onslaughts of the ministerial party. At Aras, where Râghobâ had been defeated shortly before, he was in imminent danger of a second and still more serious discomfiture. An order mistaken by a British company, and the want of discipline on the part of Râghobâ's cavalry nearly led to a total defeat with great slaughter. The European infantry and artillery, however, turned the fortunes of the day. The troops of Fatesingh were allowed to approach in pursuit to within a few yards of the batteries, all the guns of which then opened on them with grape, the infantry meanwhile plying their small arms along the whole line. Fatesingh was obliged to withdraw his diminished forces and the army of Râghobâ received no further molesta-

tions from him on its way to the Mahi. Colonel Keating then ordered a general move to Broach, where he arrived safely on 27th May, after a troublesome march through the robber-infested country between the Dhādhar river and Amol.

Here they remained until June 8th, when Colonel Keating was about to move south again. Luckily, as it turned out for him, the nearest ford was impassable and he had to march to one higher up at a place variously called Bāba Piāra or Bāva Pir. On his way thither he heard that Haripant, the ministerial commander-in-chief, was halting on the north bank by the ford, he therefore pushed on to make an attack on the rear, but owing partly to timely information received and partly to the confusion caused by the irrepressibility of Rāghobā's cavalry, Haripant had time to withdraw all his force except some baggage and ammunition, which, with a few guns, he was forced in the hurry of his passage across the river to leave behind. Colonel Keating then marched fourteen miles north from the ford and halted before proceeding to Dabhoi, a town belonging to Fatesingh. The general ignorance of tactics and want of discipline in the native army had determined Colonel Keating not to lead his force as far as Poona, but to spend the monsoon near Baroda.

Rāghobā detached one of his generals, Amir Khān, in pursuit of Ganeshpant, whom Hari Pant had left as his deputy in Gujārāt. Ganeshpant with a detachment of the ministerial army had separated from Hari at the Baba Piara ford and found his way through the wild country on the north of the Tāpti towards Ahmedabad. He was finally caught by Amir Khān.

Dabhoi was at this time in charge of a Brāhman governor, who submitted on the approach of Rāghobā's army. Colonel Keating quartered his force in the town, but Rāghobā, after exacting a levy of three lakhs of rupees, encamped at Bhulāpur on the Dhādhar, ten miles from Dabhoi. Here he began to negotiate with Fatesingh in Baroda through the mediation of Colonel Keating. Fatesingh was all the more ready to come to definite terms of agreement, as he knew that Govindray was on the watch to recover Baroda.

It is not certain what the terms proposed and agreed to really were. The only record of them is a copy sent in 1802 to the Resident at Poona by Governor Duncan. According to this document Govindray was to lose his pension and to occupy the same position as before the accession of Rāghobā. Khanderao was to revert to the situation in which he had been placed by Dāmāji. The provision of the treaty of the 6th March regarding the Gāukwār's claims on Broach was ratified, and as a reward for the mediation of the Bombay Government, the Gāukwār ceded to the British in perpetuity the sub-divisions of Ohikhli and Variāv near Surat and Koral on the Nurbada. Before this treaty could be concluded, Colonel Keating received orders to withdraw his contingent into British territory and to leave Rāghobā to manage for himself. This change of policy was due to the disapproval by the Supreme Government of the treaty of 6th March, which they alleged had been

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

The  
Ministerial  
General  
Retreats.

Colonel Keating  
at Dabhoi,  
1775.

Rāghobā and  
the Gāukwār's.

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

Withdrawal  
of the British  
Contingent.

Negotiations  
at Poona.

made inconsistently with the negotiations then being carried on with the ruling powers at Poona as well as with the authority of the Calcutta Government. The treaty was therefore declared to be invalid and the troops in the field were ordered by the Supreme Government to be withdrawn at once into British garrisons. A special envoy, Colonel Upton, was sent from Bengal to negotiate a treaty with the Ministers in accordance with the views current in Calcutta.

As soon as the roads were open Colonel Keating moved towards Surat, but at the solicitation of Rāghobā he disobeyed his orders so far as to encamp at Kadod<sup>1</sup>, about twenty miles east of Surat, but not in British territory. Here he awaited the results of the overtures of Colonel Upton. This envoy remained at Poona from the 28th December 1775 till the 1st March 1776, on which date he signed the treaty of Purandhar, in which the office only and not the name of the Peshwa is mentioned. By this compact the Peshwa ceded all claims on the revenue of Broach together with land in the neighbourhood of that town to the British. He also paid twelve lakhs of rupees in compensation for the expenses of the war. Sūlsette was to be either retained by the English or restored in exchange for territory yielding three lakhs of rupees annually. The cessions made by Fatesingh Gaukwār were to be restored to him if the Peshwa's Government could prove that he had no right to make them without due authorization from Poona. The treaty of the 6th March was declared null and void. Rāghobā was to disband his army and take a pension. If he resisted, the English were to give him no assistance. If he agreed to the terms proposed, he was to live at Kopargau<sup>2</sup> on the Godāvari with an ample pension. When he received information as to the terms of the new treaty, he at once declined to accept the pension, and, as he could not understand the position of the Bombay Government with regard to that at Calcutta, he proceeded to offer still more favourable terms for further assistance.

Rāghobā at  
Surat,  
1776.

Rāghobā was at Māndvi<sup>2</sup> on the Tāpti when he was finally given to understand that the British could no longer aid him. He thereupon took refuge in Surat with two hundred followers. The rest of his army which had been ordered to disperse, gathered round Surat, on pretence of waiting for the payment of the arrears due to them. As their attitude was suspicious, and there were rumours of an expedition having started from Poona under Haripant to subdue them, the Bombay Government garrisoned Surat and Broach with all the forces it could spare.

Colonel Upton meanwhile offered Rāghobā, on behalf of the ministers, a larger pension with liberty of residing at Benāres. This also was declined, and the ex-Peshwa fled to Bombay, where he lived on a monthly pension allotted him by the Government.

<sup>1</sup> Now in the Ahmednagar district.

<sup>2</sup> In the Surat district some thirty miles east of the city.

On 20th August 1776, a despatch of the Court of Directors arrived confirming the treaty of the 6th March 1775. At first the Bombay Government were inclined to take this as authorizing the retention of all the territory ceded, but on further deliberation it was decided that as the treaty of Purandhar had been ratified by the Supreme Government subsequent to the signing of the despatch, which was dated 5th April 1776, it was evident that the Court of Directors did not mean to uphold the previous engagement more than temporarily, or until the final treaty had been concluded.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

At the end of 1776, a Bombay officer was sent in place of Colonel Upton to be a resident envoy at Poona for the carrying out of the provisions of the treaty. Mr Mostyn was the person selected, and he arrived in Poona in March 1777. He soon found that the ministers had little intention of adhering to the treaty, so he at once took up the question that he thought it most important to the Bombay Government to have settled, namely the relations of the Peshwa's Court with Fatesingh Gáikwár as regards the cessions of territory. The ministers asserted that the Gáikwárs merely administered Gujarát on the part of the Peshwa and were entirely dependent upon the Poona government, so that they could conclude no agreement with foreign states except with its approbation. Fatesingh did not deny the dependence, but evaded the question of his right to make direct treaties and claimed the restitution of the cessions on the ground that Raghunáthráv had failed to perform his part of the stipulations. The point was discussed for some time, and at last the question of dependence seems to have been let drop, for in February 1778 Fatesingh paid up the arrears of tribute, made the usual presents to the ministers and their favourites, and was again invested with the title of Sená-Khas Khel.

Negotiations  
at Poona,  
1777.

In October a despatch from the Court of Directors reached the Governments of Bengal and Bombay, disapproving of the treaty of Purandhar, but ratifying it on the principle of *factum est*. It was suggested, however, that in case of evasion on the part of the ministers, a fresh treaty should be concluded with Raghobá on the lines of that of 1775.

In November 1778 it was rumoured that the ministers in Poona were intriguing with the French, so the Bombay Government took this opportunity of entering into a treaty with Raghobá, who was still in Bombay. He confirmed the grants of 1775, and as security for the pay of the British contingent that was to help in placing him on the Peshwa's throne in Poona, he agreed to assign the revenues of Balsár and the remainder of Anklesvar, as he had done before. He stipulated, however, that his own agents should collect the dues from these districts, and that the British should take charge of them only in case of the full sum due not being paid and then merely as a temporary measure.

Fresh Alliance  
with Raghobá,  
1778.

On the 22nd November 1778 the force moved out of Bombay, and by dint of mismanagement and internal dissension the campaign was brought to an end by the convention of the 16th January 1779.

The Convention  
of Bhadgaon,  
1779.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1790 - 1819.

Negotiation  
with the  
Gaikwár.

Under this agreement all possessions in Gujarát acquired since the time of Mádhavráv Peshwa were to be restored by the British, together with Sálsette, Uran, and other islands. Rághobá was to be made over to Sindia's charge, and a separate treaty assigned to Sindia the sovereignty of Broach.

The Council at Bombay disavowed the convention and were inclined to adhere only to the clause allotting Broach to Sindia. Mr. Hornby proposed to the Supreme Government an alliance with Fatesingh, engaging to free him from dependence on the Poona Government and to reconcile the disputants within the Gaikwár family itself. After the arrival of General Goddard with reinforcements from Bengal the Governor General approved of the alliance proposed with Fatesingh as head of the Baroda state, but specially declined to admit any participation or support in the family disputes. The British were to conquer for themselves the Peshwa's share of Gujarát, if they were able to do so.

Rághobá Escapes  
from Sindia,  
1779.

Rághobá, meanwhile, who had been given over to Sindia to be conveyed to Bundelkhand, escaped with the connivance of his custodian and fled to Broach. This was evidently a move calculated by Sindia to bring on hostilities between Nána Phadnis, the head of the ministerial party, and the English. General Goddard, who was conducting the negotiations with Poona on the part both of the Supreme Government and of the Government of Bombay, received Rághobá on June 12th, but evaded any proposals for a direct alliance. At the end of the rains of the same year, information was received by the English that a coalition against them had been formed by the Maráthás, the Nizám, and Hyder Ali of Mysor. The rumour was partially confirmed by the demand by Nana Phadnis for the cession of Sálsette and the person of Rághobá as preliminaries to any treaty. No answer was given, but reinforcements were called for and the overtures with Fatesingh pushed forward. This chief prevaricated about the terms of the treaty and evidently did not like to enter into any special engagement that might perhaps bring down upon him the Poona army. General Goddard therefore advanced on 1st January 1780 against Dabhoi, which was garrisoned by the Peshwa's troops from the Dakhan, whilst the English in Broach expelled the Marátha officers from their posts and re-took possession of Ankleswar, Hámsof, and Amol. On January 20th Dabhoi was evacuated by the Maráthás and occupied by General Goddard. Fatesingh now showed himself willing to enter into the proposed treaty, and on the 26th January 1780 signed an offensive and defensive alliance.

League against  
the English,  
1780.

Treaty with  
Fatesingh  
Gaikwár.

In the re-opening of hostilities there was no mention of Rághobá, but the ground given was simply the non-fulfilment on the part of the Peshwa of his treaty engagement. Rághobá remained under English supervision in the enjoyment of a large allowance. Dabhoi was occupied by an English civil officer with a detachment of irregulars, and General Goddard moved towards Ahmedábád.

By the treaty of 1780 the Peshwa was to be excluded from Gujarát. To avoid confusion in collection, the district north of the Mahi was to belong entirely to the share of the Gaikwár. The English were to enjoy the whole district south of the Tápti, together with the Gaikwár share in the revenue of Surat. In return for the support the English were to give him in withholding tribute from the Peshwa, Fatesingh ceded Sinor on the Nerbada and the Gaikwár's villages round Broach. These cessions, however, were not to have effect until Fatesingh was in possession of Ahmedábád. The contingent of 3000 horse was to be still furnished by the Gaikwár government.

As soon as these conditions were agreed upon, General Goddard went with his own army and the contingent furnished by Fatesingh to Ahmedábád. After encamping before it for five days, he took the city by storm on 15th February 1780.

General Goddard  
takes Ahmedábád,  
1780. ●

Sindia and Holkar had combined their forces against the English and were marching up Gujarát, plundering on their way. They were opposed by General Goddard, who marched across the Mahi early in March. The allies turned off towards Chámpáner without risking a pitched battle on the plain. Sindia at once opened negotiations with the view of wasting time during the fair season. His first proposal was that Rághobá should be sent to Jhánsi, where Sindia had allotted him an estate, and that Bájráv, Raghoba's son, should be appointed *diwán* or manager of the Peshwa Madhávráv, who was a minor. Bájráv himself was under age, so Sindia was, of course, to assume temporarily the reins of government.

Operations  
against Sindia  
and Holkar

Goddard at once refused to force Rághobá to take any course other than the one he should select of his own free will, for Sindia did not appear to be aware that the English were now at war with the ministers on their own account and not as allies of an ex-Peshwa. Negotiations were broken off and Sindia and Holkar dislodged from place after place without any decisive engagement being fought. General Goddard was preparing monsoon quarters for his army, when he heard that a division of a Marátha force which had been plundering the Konkan in order to cut off supplies from Bombay had attacked parts of the Surat Athávisi. He detached some troops under Lieut. Welsh and sent them to the relief, whilst he remained himself on the Nerbada. Lieut. Welsh drove back the marauders and took possession of the forts of Parnera, Indargad, and Bagváda.

After the monsoon of 1780, General Goddard went to besiege Bassein, leaving Major Forbes in charge of the Gujarát army. This officer posted one body of troops at Ahmedábád for the protection of Fatesingh, another at Surat, and a third at Broach. Two battalions of Bengal infantry were sent to Sinor and some few men to Dabhoi.

1781.

An attack was made by Sindia on the newly acquired district of Sinor, but Major Forbes successfully resisted it and Sindia's position with regard to his own dominions was now such as to prevent him from sending more expeditions against Gujarát.

The military necessities of other parts of India were such as to induce General Goddard to apply to Fatesingh for an increase to

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Treaty of Sálbai,  
1782.

his contingent, in accordance with the treaty of 1780. After some personal communications with this Chief in Gujarát, General Goddard was able to arrange with the Gaikwár for the defence of part of that province and thus set free some European troops for service elsewhere.

No further attack was made in this direction during the continuance of the war which came to an end on 17th May 1782. The treaty of Sálbai between an envoy of the Governor General on one side and Mahádáji Sindia as plenipotentiary for the Peshwa and minister of Poona on the other, replaced the Marátha territory in Gujarát exactly where it was on the outbreak of hostilities against Raghobá in 1775. It was, however, specially stipulated that no demand for arrears of tribute during the late hostilities should be made against the Gaikwár, a clause that led to misunderstandings many years later. The town of Broach was given over to Sindia in accordance with the secret negotiation of 1779 and the votes of the Bengal and Bombay Councils. The territory round Broach yielding a revenue of three lakhs of rupees, ceded by the Peshwa, was likewise returned. Raghobá was granted a pension of 25,000 rupees a month and allowed to select his own place of residence. He went to Kopargau and there died a few months after the conclusion of the treaty of Sálbai. Thus came to an end one of the chief sources of disturbance to the Poona government. For the next six years no event of any political importance took place in Gujarát, which province was left almost entirely to the administration of the Gaikwar family.

Death of  
Fatesingh,  
1789.

In 1789, however, Fatesingh died, leaving Sayájiráv without a guardian. Mánáji, a younger brother, at once seized the reins of government and began the usual sort of negotiations to secure his recognition by the Poona government. He paid a nazarána of 3,13,000 rupees and agreed to pay up thirty-six lakhs of rupees as arrears, though it is not clear on what account, unless that sum had accrued since the treaty of Sálbai, or was part of the long standing account left open by Dámáji in 1753. Mánáji, however, was not allowed to succeed to the post of guardian without opposition. Govindráv Gaikwár was living at Poona, and, though he had himself little influence with the Peshwa's immediate adherents, he had managed to secure the then powerful Sindia on his side. This chief, since his recognition as plenipotentiary at the treaty of Sálbai, had been gradually making good his position with the Peshwa and his favourites as well as with the leading Marátha nobles, so as to be able to successfully oppose Nána Phadnis when the time came for a coalition of the outlying chiefs against the ministerial party. Govindráv offered his son Anandráv as husband for the daughter of Sindia, a proposal which it is not probable that he ever intended to carry out. A grant of three lakhs of rupees was also promised, in return for which Sindia allowed his garrison in Broach to assist Govindráv's illegitimate son Kánhoji to reach Baroda. Mánáji applied to the Bombay Government on the grounds that the steps taken by Govindráv were contrary to the provisions of the treaty of 1780. As however this treaty had been abrogated by the later agreement at Sálbai, the Bombay Government declined to interfere. Mánáji's agents at Poona

contrived to get Nāna Phadnis to propose a compromise, to which however Govindrāv, at the instigation probably of Sindia, declined to accede. Before any decision was reached Mānāji died.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1810.

Nāna detained Govindrāv in Poona till he had agreed to hold by former stipulations and to cede to the Peshwa the Gaikwār's share in the districts south of the Típti together with his share of the Surat customs. To this the Government of Bombay demurred as an infraction of the provision of the Sálbai treaty whereby the integrity of the Gaikwār's possessions was assured. Nāna Phadnis at once withdrew his proposals. Govindrāv at last joined his brother at Baroda on 19th December, and took up the office of regent.

• 1793.

For two years Gujarāt remained quiet. In 1796 Bājirāv, son of Rāghobā, succeeded to the Peshwa's dignity and at once appointed his younger brother, ten years of age, governor of Gujarāt. In accordance with Marāthā custom a deputy was sent to take charge of the province, one Aba Shelukar, and he too seems to have administered vicariously, for next year (1797) we find him amongst those taken prisoners with Nāna Phadnis when that minister was treacherously seized by Daulatrāv Sindia in the Dakhan. Aba was released on promising to pay ten lakhs of rupees as ransom. He then joined his appointment as subhedar in order to take measures to get together the money he required.

Aba Shelukar,  
Deputy Governor  
of Gujarāt,  
1796.

797

Bājirāv Peshwa was anxious to embroil Aba with Govindrāv, whom he knew to be favourable to Nāna Phadnis and too powerful to be allowed to acquire influence beyond the reach of head-quarter supervision. A cause of quarrel soon arose. Daulatrāv pressed Aba for part payment of the above ten lakhs, and the latter being unable to squeeze enough out of his own territory, forced contributions from some of the villages administered by the Gaikwār. Govindrāv at once took up arms against him and applied for aid to the English Agent at Surat. In this city Governor Jonathan Duncan had just assumed chief authority in accordance with an agreement between the English and the Nawāb. Duncan was anxious to secure for his government the land round Surat and the Gaikwār's share in the *chauth* of the town and district. Govindrāv, when this demand was made, referred the Governor to Poona, knowing that under the treaty of Sálbai the British Government had no more right to acquire a share of the Gaikwār territory than the Poona authorities had when they made a somewhat similar demand in 1793, which was withdrawn as stated above. Before the reference could be made, Aba was penned up by Govindrāv's own army in Ahmedābād and forced to surrender that city. He was kept in confinement for more than seven years.

Disputes  
between Aba  
and Govindrāv  
Gaikwat.

1798.

In the same year (1799) the Peshwa, apparently without formally revoking the appointment of his brother Chinnāji as Subhedar, gave Govindrāv a farm for five years of his whole rights in Gujarāt, at the rate of five lakhs of rupees a year. These rights included shares in the Kāthiāvāda and Sorath tribute, the revenue of Petlād, Nāpād, Rānpur, Dhandhuka, and Gogha, together with rights to certain customs dues in Cambay and a share in the revenue of the city of Ahmedābād.

Gujarāt farmed  
to the Gaikwār,  
1799.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Anandráv  
Gaikwár,  
1800.

Govindráv unfortunately died a month before this farm was formally made over by the Peshwa.

As had happened at the death of Dánáji, so again now, the heir Anandráv was all but an idiot and quite incapable of managing his affairs. The disputes as to the guardianship again set the whole state in confusion. Kánhoji, a son of Govindráv by a Rájputni princess of Dharampor, who had been the first agent of his father in Baroda in 1793, had been put in prison for refusing to give place to Govindráv when the latter at length joined him at Baroda. At the death of Govindráv, Kánhoji managed to obtain his liberty and to secure the ascendancy in the counsels of his weak-minded elder brother. He assumed, in fact, the whole government. His arrogant conduct in this new position excited the Arab guard against him and he was again thrown into confinement. His mother Gajrábái, who was a refugee in Surat, endeavoured to get assistance from the English there, and at the same time made overtures to Malhár, son of Khanderav Gaikwár, who had formerly been one of Govindráv's bitterest opponents.

1800

The British and  
Govindráv's  
Party.

Meanwhile the administration of the Gaikwár's affairs passed into the hands of Rávji and Babáji Appa, two brothers who had been brought to Baroda in 1793 by Govindráv himself. Rávji took charge of the civil work, whilst Babáji undertook the military duties, which at that time consisted in great measure in collecting the revenue by show of force. These two ministers, on hearing of the proceedings of Gajrábái, outbid her for the aid of the Bombay Government. In addition to the cessions formerly offered by Govindráv, they were willing to give up Chikhli also. Matters were precipitated by the successes of Malháráv in the field. Rávji offered to subsidize five European battalions, and Governor Duncan took upon himself the responsibility of sending an auxiliary force of 1600 men under Major Walker to act with the troops of Rávji and Babáji north of Ahmedábad. Reinforcements were afterwards sent up, but the campaign was not closed till April 1802, when the fort of Kadi had been taken by storm. Malháráv surrendered and a residence in Nadiad was assigned him with a liberal pension out of the revenues of that subdivision. The fort of Sankheda, which had been held by Ganpatráv Gaikwár for his cousin Malháráv, was soon after this reduced and the country for a time pacified.

The British and  
the Gaikwár.  
1800.

In March Rávji had an interview at Cambay with Governor Duncan, which was followed on June 6th by a definite treaty, of which the groundwork had been previously sketched in anticipation of the reduction of the revolted Gaikwárs. Two thousand men, besides artillery, were to be subsidized and a *jáidád* or assignment for their payment was made on the revenue of Dholka and the part of Nadiad not assigned to Malháráv. Chikhli was given to the British in reward for their aid in storming Kadi, and Residents were to be appointed reciprocally. A large sum of money was borrowed by Rávji, partly from Bombay partly from Baroda bankers, to pay off the arrears due to about 7000 Arab mercenaries, who had usurped a great deal of objectionable influence in civil affairs at the Gaikwár's

capital. Major Walker was appointed Resident and proceeded to Baroda on 8th June.

On the same day was signed a secret compact assuring Rávjí of the support of the British Government and awarding him a village out of the territory ceded by the treaty of June 6th. It was deemed advisable by the British Government to have at the Baroda court some leading personage who might, in the present state of the relations between Bombay and Poona, further the designs of the former government in preventing a recurrence of the coalition of Maratha powers. Rávjí was sure of his reward if he served British interests, whilst in case of the reorganization of a Marátha confederacy the state he was administering would probably play but a very subordinate part in subsequent events.

The treaty of June 6th was disapproved by the Court of Directors as being in direct contravention of the treaty of Sálbai. Before, however, any orders had been issued by the Home authorities to restore to the Gaikwár the territory he had ceded, the Peshwa, out of regard for whom the treaty had been disavowed, was a fugitive before the army of Holkar, and by December had ratified these very concessions at the treaty of Bassem. By this treaty the Peshwa virtually placed his independence in the hands of the British. He ceded his share of Surat, thus giving them sole control over that district. In payment of the subsidiary force required he handed over territory in Gujará, the revenue of which amounted to 12,28,000 rupees, and finally he constituted the British Government arbiter in the disputes between his government and that of Baroda. The grants made by the Gaikwar for the support of the subsidiary force amounted in 1802 to 7,80,000 rupees.

Major Walker attempted to negotiate with the Arab guard, but the greater part of them flew to arms and released Kánhoji Gaikwár. The latter then tried to collect an army near Baroda, and succeeded in obtaining possession of the person of Anandráv the titular ruler. The British force then took Baroda by storm, after which most of the Arabs submitted, except a few who joined Kánhoji. The rest took the arrears due to them and left the country. Kánhoji was not subdued till February 1803. Malháráv meanwhile had broken out in rebellion in Káthiávada and was plundering the Marátha possessions there. Bábaji Áppáji and a young officer named Vithal Deváji (or Divánji) led the operations against him; and to the latter belongs the honour of having captured this troublesome member of the ruling family. The estate of Naqíád, which had been assigned to Madhavráo by Govindráv, was resumed by Rávjí Áppáji and made over in its entirety to the British Government. A treaty, supplementary to that of 1802, was drawn up guaranteeing this cession as well as the *inám* or free gift of the fort and district of Kara, "out of gratitude for the support given in the recent troubles to the Gaikwár's honour and for assistance in securing the good of the State."

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1810.

The Gaikwár's  
Minister Rávjí.

Treaty of Bassem,  
31st Dec. 1802.

Arabs  
Disbanded.

Malháráv  
in Revolt,  
1803.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Contingent  
Strengthened,  
1803:

Death of Rāvji,  
1803.

War with Sindia.

The Revenue  
Collecting  
Force.

Very-soon after this agreement Rāvji applied for an addition to the subsidiary force, in payment of which he assigned Mātar Mahudha and the customs of Kim-Kathodra, a station about seventeen miles north of Surat. His reason for strengthening the subsidiary force appears to have been that owing to the reduction of the Arabs, his own force was not enough to guard even the frontier, and that a great part of that duty fell on the European contingent, which was numerically insufficient for service on so extended a scale. This was the last public act of note on the part of Rāvji Appa, who died in July 1803, after adopting one Sitārām to succeed to his estate.

Whilst these arrangements were being carried out at Baroda, Bājirāv Peshwa, chafing at the dependence to which his straits of the previous winter had reduced him with regard to the English, was actively propagating dissension between Sindia and the Calcutta Government. Not long after, the war that had been some time imminent broke out, and a contingent of 7352 men from Gujārāt was ordered to the field. In August or September Broach and Pāvāgar<sup>1</sup> both fell to the British.

Under the treaty of Sirjē Anjangaon in December 1803, both Pāvāgar and Dohad were restored to Sindia, but Broach remained British. By this means one of the rising Marāthā powers was extruded from the centre to the outlying portion of the province. The employment of all the British contingent against Sindia's possessions in Gujārāt precluded Major Walker from furnishing any portion of the army that was annually sent to collect the tribute in Kāthiāvādā. Rāvji Appaji had expressly stipulated that some part of the contingent might be so used when it could be spared from its main duties. The Supreme Government agreed to the proposal when made by Governor Duncan, on the grounds of the advantage both to the Gāikwār and the tributaries of employing on this disagreeable duty a strong and well-disciplined force. Already some of the tributaries had made overtures to Major Walker with a view to obtaining British protection against powerful neighbours. Governor Duncan was in favour of accepting the duty of protection and also of helping the Gāikwār's commander in his expeditions through the peninsula on these grounds. Firstly, the officer in command could exercise a certain supervision over the collections in which the British as part assignees had a direct interest. Secondly, a way could thus be opened for the acquisition of a port on the coast from which the intrigues, supposed to be carried on by agents from the Isle of Franco, could be watched and counteracted. From such a point, too, the views of the Bombay Government as regards Kachh could be promoted. Thirdly, the commandant could take steps to improve the system of forcible collections, and towards abolishing the barbarous features of this rude method of levying tribute. He could also, perhaps, suggest some system by which the advantages of all three parties concerned would be better secured than by reliance on the uncertainty of temporary expeditions. The fourth and last

<sup>1</sup> A celebrated hill fort south of Chāmpāner in the Panch Mahāls district.

reason given savours strongly of the Marátha policy of the time, of which the leading maxim was *Divide et impera*. It was represented that Bábaji, who had successfully collected the tribute during 1802-03 and whose subordinate and companion Vithal Deváji was a person of similar energy and capability, might possibly acquire too great influence if left in a quasi-independent command at such a distance from the Court. It was politic, then, to join with the force under his command a strong foreign body, thus dividing both the power and the responsibility. The way with Sindia caused these proposals to fall into abeyance for some time.

Meanwhile the Resident at Poona was doing his best to secure for the Gaikwár a further lease for ten years of the farm of the Peshwa's dominions in Gujarát, so that the inconveniences of dual government might be avoided. In October 1804 a ten years' farm was granted in the name of Bhagvantráy Gaikwár at an annual rate of 4½ lakhs of rupees.

This grant led to the consolidation of all previous engagements into a single treaty, which was signed in April 1805. Previous agreements were confirmed and the whole brought into consonance with the treaty of Bassein. Districts yielding 11,70,000 rupees per annum were made over for the support of the subsidiary force, and arrangements were also made for the repayment of the cash loan advanced by the British Government in 1802, when the liquidation of the arrears due to the Arabs was a matter of urgent political necessity. The British contingent was to be available in part for service in Káthiaváda, whenever the British Government thought such an employment of it advisable.

Finally, the British Government was constituted arbiter in all disputes of the Gaikwár, not alone with foreign powers, but also in the adjustment of his financial transactions with the Peshwa his paramount power. These transactions, which ranged back from the capture of Dámáji in 1751, had never been the subject of a formal investigation, and were by this time complicated by the numerous engagements with third parties into which both governments had been obliged to enter at their various moments of distress. Bájráv, who was apparently intriguing for a Marátha coalition against his new protectors, was careful not to bring before the notice of the chiefs, whose esteem he wished to gain, a provision which exhibited him as in any way dependent upon the arbitration of a foreign power. He therefore granted the farm for ten years to the Gaikwár, as much by way of remanding for a time the proposed inquiries and settlement of their respective claims as for the purpose of diverting the attention of the British to the administration of this new appanage, whilst leaving him free scope for his intrigues in the Dakhan. He used, moreover, every pretext to defer the consideration of the Gaikwár question until he could make use of his claims to further his own designs. His success in preventing a discussion of these transactions is apparent by the fact that in the financial statement of the Gaikwár's affairs made by Colonel Walker in 1804, no mention of the Poona demand is to be found.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Renewal of  
Farm,  
1804.

The British and  
the Gaikwár,  
1805.

THE  
MARATHS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

No important event took place during the next year or two. Bābājī relinquished the command of the force in Kāthiāvāda in favour of Vithalnāb Devājī, whilst he himself took part in the civil administration at Baroda. The Resident, too, seems to have been likewise engaged in internal matters and in securing the country against an invasion by Kānhoji, now a fugitive at the court of Holkar.

1807.

In 1807 the Resident made over Aba Shelukar, late Sar Subhedār of the Peshwa, to the British Government, by whom he could be prevented from engaging in fresh conspiracies. After this Colonel Walker was at last enabled to leave Baroda in order to assist in the settlement of the Kāthiāvāda tribute question, an object he had long had in view, but which the necessity for his continuous presence at the Gāikwār's capital had hitherto prevented him from undertaking.

Kāthiāvāda  
Tribute.

The changes with regard to the collection of the tribute from the chiefs of Kāthiāvāda that were carried out in 1807 deserve a special description. Firstly, they placed the relations of the tributary to the paramount power on quite a new basis. Secondly, by them the British influence over both parties concerned was much increased and the connection between the governments of Bombay and Baroda drawn closer. Thirdly, they were subsequently, as will be seen hereafter, the subject of much discussion and delay in the settlement of the questions at issue between the Peshwa and the Gāikwār. And lastly, their effect was most beneficial to both the chiefs and their subjects in removing the uncertainty that had hitherto pervaded the whole revenue administration of Kāthiāvāda.

Before entering on the details of the settlement itself, some description is necessary of the social and political state of the peninsula at the time the changes were introduced.

State of  
Kāthiāvāda,  
1807.

The greater part of the population of Kāthiāvāda consisted of two classes, chiefs and cultivators, called Bhūmīs and ryots. The power of the chief ranged from the headship of a single village up to absolute jurisdiction over several score. The ryots were usually tenants long resident in the province. The chiefs were in almost every case foreigners, invaders from the north and north-east, Muhammadan adventurers from the court of Ahmedābād. Kāthīs animated by the love of plunder and cattle-lifting; and Mīnās and Vāghelās who had settled on the coast on account of the facilities it afforded for their favourite pursuits of wrecking and piracy. More numerous than any others were the Rajputs, driven south by the disturbed state of their native kingdoms or by the restless spirit of military adventure to be found in a class where one profession alone is honourable. There is a certain uniformity in the building up of all these chieftainships. A powerful leader, with a sufficient band of followers, oppressed his weaker neighbours till they were glad to come to terms and place themselves under his protection, so as both to escape themselves and to take their chance of sharing in the plunder of others. It frequently happened in the growth of one of these states that the *bhāyūd* or relations of the chief (who are sure to be numerous in a polygamous society) were influential enough to assume, in their turn, a partial independence and to claim recogni-

tion as a separate state. As a rule, however, they continued to unite with the head of the family against external foes, and only disagreed as to domestic administration. It is also noticeable that though so addicted to the profession of arms, the Rajputs cannot be called a military race; they possess few of the true military virtues; hence the slowness of their advance, and their failure in competition with perhaps less courageous though more compact and pliable races. In Kāthiāvāda fortified strongholds, formidable enough to an army moving rapidly without siege trains, arose in all directions, and even villages were surrounded by a high mud wall as a protection against cattle-lifters.

The groundwork of these states being itself so unstable, their relations with each other were conducted on no principle but the law of the stronger. General distrust reigned throughout. Each chief well knew that his neighbours had won their position as he had won his own by the gradual absorption of the weaker, and that they were ready enough whenever opportunity offered to subject his dominions to the same process. The administration of his territory consisted merely in levying, within certain limits sanctioned by long usage, as much revenue as would suffice to maintain himself and his forces in their position with regard to the surrounding states. When a foreign enemy appeared there was no co-operation amongst the local chiefs in resistance. It was a point of honour not to yield except to a superior force. Each chief, therefore, resisted the demands made upon him until he considered that he had done enough to satisfy the family conscience and then, agreeing to the terms proposed, he allowed the wave of extortion to pass on and deluge the domains of his neighbour. It should be remembered that the peninsula had never been subjugated, though overrun times innumerable. The evil of invasion was thus transitory. To a chief the mere payment of tribute tended in no wise to derogate from his independence. In his capacity of military freebooter he acknowledged the principle as just. His country had been won by the sword and was retained by the sword and not by acquiescence in the payment of tribute, so that if he could avoid this extortion he was justified in doing so. If he weakened his state in resisting foreigners he knew that his neighbours would certainly take advantage of the favourable juncture and annex his territory. It was his policy therefore, after resistance up to a certain point, to succumb.

Owing to this local peculiarity and to the general want of union in the province, both the Mughals and Marathas found it advantageous to follow a system of successive expeditions rather than to incur the expense of permanently occupying the peninsula with an army which would necessarily have to be a large one. There is every reason to believe that in adopting the raid system the Musalmāns were only pursuing the practice of their predecessors, who used to take tribute from Jodhpur to Dwārka.

Some of the subhedārs of Ahmedābād divided their tributary district into three circuits of collection and personally undertook the

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1890.

State of  
Kāthiāvāda,  
1807.

The Revenue  
Raid System.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819,  
The Revenue  
Raid System.

charge of one each year. This was the *mulakgiri* Land-raiding system. Besides this chief expedition, there was the smaller one of the Babi of Junagadh and the still more minute operations of the Rával of Bhávnagar against some of his weaker neighbours. The great Ahmedabád expedition had long been an annual grievance and was conducted with some show of system and under special rules called the *raj-ul-Mulak*. Three of these rules are of importance, and seem to have been generally acquiesced in before the great incursions of Babaji and Vitthalráy at the beginning of the nineteenth century. The first was that the paramount power (by which was meant the foreign government which was strong enough to enforce tribute from all the chiefs) had authority to interfere in cases of dismemberment, or in proceedings tending to the depreciation of the revenue, or to the dismemberment of any tributary state. It was again an acknowledged rule that whilst the mulakgiri expedition of the paramount power was in motion no other army should be in the field throughout the whole province. The third provision was not so well established, but it appears to have been understood that the tribute from each state should be regulated by some standard of former date. In practice, however, the measure of the Maráthas demand was simply the power to enforce payment.

It is worthy of remark that about the beginning of this century the resistance to the collection of tribute was stronger towards the west than in the east and south of the province. In the Mahi Kántha the lawlessness of the Koh chiefs, who had established themselves in the ravines and on the hills, necessitated the employment of a military force for collections. In the neighbourhood of Bijápúr and Káthi, the chiefs would not pay tribute except under the compulsion of a siege or raid, but the mulakgiri system only reached its full development west of Dholka.

From these explanatory remarks the system and practice of the Maráthas can be clearly understood.

The Maráthas  
in Sorath.

The Maráthas found their way to Sorath very early in their Gujarát career. The first raid probably took place about 1711, when the Muhammadans were occupied near Ahmedabad. After this incursions were frequent, and under Damáji Gáukwár became, as has been seen above, annual. This leader did more. He took to wife a daughter of the Gohil chief of the small state of Láthi in east central Káthiáwáda, whose dowry in land gave him the standpoint he sought in the heart of the peninsula. He managed also to secure his position in what are known as the Anand Maháls, probably under the force of circumstances similar to those which caused the weaker Rajputs to gravitate towards the stronger of their own tribe. His expedition through the peninsula, generally as near the time of harvest as possible, was made regularly every year as soon as he had amassed a sufficient number of troops on the mainland to admit of a force being detached for mulakgiri. The object of these inroads was plunder, not conquest; the leaders would readily have entered into negotiations for the payment of the tribute had the chieftains been disposed to treat otherwise than after defeat. The expenses

THE  
MARATHAS,  
D 1760-1819.

The Maráthás  
in Sorath

of such an army were heavy, and the more so as the time during which it would be in the field was quite indefinite, and dependent entirely upon the amount of resistance offered. In more than one instance the Marátha leaders, who usually had no artillery for a siege, were obliged to regularly beleaguer a town. Early in this century the town of Mália successfully defended itself against a remarkably well equipped force under Bábáji, and the Junágadh state was usually avoided by the Maráthás as much as possible on account of the time it would take to reduce its army to terms.

It is not on record that the mulakgiri force habitually devastated the country over which it passed, or caused much greater hardships to the ryots than are inseparable from the passage of an army in the field. There are, however, well authenticated stories of the depredations and damage committed during these expeditions. A village is said to have been deserted by order of the *blumia* in order that the timber of its houses might furnish fuel for the Marátha army on its march. Tortures were doubtless inflicted on men supposed to be well off, who were suspected to have hidden their property. A Maratha army was usually, if not always, ill disciplined, as is proved by the testimony of Mr. Forbes, an eye witness of the campaigns of 1775.<sup>1</sup> From the same writer it is learned what an immense proportion the camp followers bore to the actual combatants. If this were the case in a real campaign against a formidable and active enemy, it is likely that the irresponsible element was still larger in an expedition like this of mulakgiri, where the enemy was insignificant and the country at the mercy of the invaders. It is probable therefore that the troops have been credited with misconduct that should in point of fact be attributed to these Pindharis. In after years, when the expeditions were conducted systematically, villages on the line of march were always allowed the alternative of entertaining a pioneer or two as a sort of guarantee. If no *bandhari* of this sort were accepted, the army occupied the place. In many cases the demands for supplies made by these pioneers were so exorbitant that the villagers preferred to compound in turn with them also for their absence. Another method by which a chieftain might avoid the necessity of the army's passing through his territories was by sending to the commander of the expedition an envoy empowered to treat for the amount of tribute and to execute a provisional guarantee for its future liquidation. This deed was destroyed on the subsequent confirmation by the chief himself of the agreement for the sum fixed.

Securities.

This habit of taking securities in all engagements was so prevalent in all parts of the province, and played so prominent a part in the financial administration of the Gáikwár's home and tributary domains, that its main features are worth describing.

It is a well known characteristic of Hindu dealings that no transaction is carried on by two parties alone if a third can possibly be dragged in. This practice no doubt originated in the former insecure

<sup>1</sup> Oriental Memoirs.

THE  
MARVĪHĪ,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Securities.

state of society when no man considered himself safe in person or property from government on the one hand and his neighbour on the other. With classes like Kolis and predatory Rajputs, the feeling is intelligible enough, and from these it spread into other branches of the society. To such a pitch was distrust carried in the early part of the nineteenth century, that the Gaikwār himself could find no one to enter into a contract with him without the guarantee of one of his own subjects. The consequences of this practice and the power it threw into the hands of the Arab mercenaries, who were the principal securities for the public debts, are matters that touch the history of the Baroda State rather than that of the province. The chiefs in their dealings employed a special sort of security which owed its validity not to political consideration like that of the Arab Jamādārs but entirely to its religious and traditional character.

Bhāts and  
Chārāns,  
1807.

A society of the military type like the Rajput has a tendency towards caste and privilege. Without a leader the warlike instincts of the tribe would not carry them beyond petty robberies; whilst with a leader they can achieve greater exploits of valour and destruction. The successful chief then is idolized, and after a certain stage the privileges of the chieftainship become hereditary. Once this system is established, the celebration of ancestors follows, and when circumstances are favourable to the perpetuation of the hereditary position, the genealogy of the chief is a matter of the highest importance, and the person entrusted with the record of this is vested with peculiar sanctity. It is the genealogist's duty to enter in the record, not only the direct line but the names of the more distant relations of the chief by whom he is retained, and also to be the continual chanter of the glorious deeds of their common ancestors. He is therefore a referee of the highest authority in questions of pedigree or of the partition of inheritance. An injury to his person might entail the loss of the pedigree of the ruling family (especially as many of the bards kept no written record) and thus produce a misfortune which would be felt by the whole tribe. The chief, being a warrior, must take his chance in the field with the rest, but the person of the genealogist was sacred and inviolable. Amongst the Rajputs the greatest reverence was paid to purity of pedigree, and each principal family had its Bhāt to record births and deaths amongst its members and to stimulate pride in their lineage by the recital of the wars and exploits of their ancestors.

These Bhāts necessarily multiplied beyond the number of the families that could entertain them, so that many took to banking and some to cultivation. Surrounded as they were by the social system of the Hindus, it was not long before they became differentiated into a distinct caste, and the inviolability of their persons, formerly due only to respect for the pedigree, was now extended to the whole tribe, even though a large proportion of it performed none of the duties of genealogists. Similar to the Bhāts in many respects, notably in that of sacredness of person, were the Chārāns, numerous in Kāthiāvāḍa, where they had founded villages and lived as ordinary

cultivators. This tribe also claimed divine origin like the race whose annals they had the privilege of recording. It is said that Rāja Todar Mal, the celebrated minister of the Delhi empire, was the first to introduce the practice of taking these Bhāts as securities for the Rajputs. The assertion is possibly true, but rests merely on tradition, and after ages usually find some great man as a sponsor for all such innovations. It is clear however that for many years before 1807 no dealings of Kolis or Rajputs with the state or with each other took place without the security of a Bhāt being taken. This practice seems to have been as prevalent on the mainland as in the peninsula, the Kolis having doubtless borrowed it from their Rajput neighbours after the Bhāts had become a separate caste.

Under this system the Bhāts acquired considerable wealth, as they usually demanded a percentage on the amount for which they became security. There are instances in which they presumed upon the strength of their engagements and sacred character to bully or dictate to their employer. Such was the case of the Rāval of Bhāvnagar in 1808, which is also interesting in another way, as showing how the spirit of industry and commerce tends to sap the old observances which have their roots in superstition. This chief engaged in trade, fostered merchants, and increased his revenue. When his security, a Bhāt, got troublesome and interfering, he applied to the power to whom he paid tribute to have the old security bond cancelled and a fresh one taken on his own personal responsibility. In doing this, he seems to have been prompted by nothing but his appreciation of the modern code of commercial honour.

To return to the *mulakgiri*. The tribute for which preliminary security had been taken seems to have fluctuated from year to year, but always with reference to a fixed standard. It was one of the Marāthā rules never to recede from a former demand lest they should be thereby setting up a precedent for future years. They preferred to secure a year or two's arrears at the full rate to the payment of all the arrears due at a reduced rate.

In spite of this fiction of a settled *jama* or tribute, the Marāthās, when they had a sufficient force at their back, invariably demanded a larger sum, the excess being called *kharrā-jāt* or extra distinct from the actual tribute. This ingenious plan of increasing the collections originated, it is said, with Shivrām Gārdi, and was carried out scrupulously by both Babāji and Vithalrāv in their tours. In fact during the last few years of the old system Vithalrāv had so good a force with him that the extra demand formed a large proportion of the whole tribute collected and had been paid only under strong protest. The British had not long been established in Rānpur, Gogha, and Dhandhuka before a few petty chiefs of Gohilvād and Sorath applied to the Resident at Baroda for protection against the *mulakgiri* of the Nawāb of Jūnāghar and the Rāval of Bhāvnagar, offering to cede the sovereignty of their states to the British on condition that certain rights and privileges were preserved to the chiefs and their families. The conditions they named were not such as were likely to meet with the approval of the British Government, and do

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Bhāts and  
Chārans,  
I: 07.

British  
Intervention.

THE  
MARÁTHÁ,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.

British  
Intervention.

not seem to have received much consideration. The proposals had, however, the effect of drawing the attention of the Bombay Government towards the state of Káthiaváda, and permission to and the mulakgiri of the Gáukwár by detaching a few companies of British troops was accorded by the Supreme Government. The outbreak of hostilities with Sindia led to the whole question as to the best means of collecting the tribute being for a time deferred. The internal disputes of some of the more turbulent states, a few years afterwards, gave the Resident an opportunity of sending an envoy to one or two courts to see how matters stood, and to open a way for a settlement in conjunction with the Gáukwár. Affairs at Baroda, as mentioned above (page 116), detained the Resident there till 1807, in which year he joined Vithalráv's army with a British contingent, at a place in the Morvi state.

Settlement  
of 1807.

Before treating directly with the chiefs a circular was sent round to all of them both by the Gáukwár's agent and by Colonel Walker the Resident, containing the basis of the proposals with regard to the tribute about to be submitted to them. The position of the British Government throughout this negotiation is not clearly defined. Vithalráv in his circular mentions indeed that a British force was with his own, but urges the chiefs to come to a settlement entirely with the government he represented. Colonel Walker's note was longer, more explicit, and conciliatory, but at the same time assumes a tone of protection and superiority. The replies of the chiefs were various, and, as a rule, seem to show that they regarded the British Government as the chief mover in these negotiations. They were probably aware of the position in which the engagements of the Gáukwár had placed him with reference to the British, and for some years had had the latter as their neighbours in the east of the peninsula. They were therefore not able at once to take in the whole scope of the action of the British Government in the tribute question.

Many seemed to take the note as a preliminary to a mulakgiri on the part of the East India Company. The Rájá of Mália, who had just been causing disturbances in the dominions of all his neighbours, had repulsed Báráñ and permitted the self-immolation of a Bhát rather than fulfil an engagement, openly proposed a joint expedition across the Ran to plunder Kachh and Sindh. From the inquiries made by the Resident and from information gathered from the Gáukwár's accounts, it was anticipated that separate engagements need only be entered into with the twenty-nine chiefs to whom the circular invitation had been issued, provided that the rights and interests of subordinate members of the Bháyád were clearly defined in the agreement. When, however, these rights came to be investigated in the light of the peculiar rules of Rajput inheritance, it was found that no less than one hundred and fifty-three persons had a claim to settle independently of each other for their tribute. This greatly prolonged the settlement, but at last the agreements were all framed on one principle. The amount settled was determined by a close scrutiny of the collections of past years, and Colonel Walker found it advisable to make great

reductions in the item of extras or *kharújât*, for which the later Gáikwár collectors had such predilection. The engagements were of the following nature.

First, the chief bound himself his heirs and successors to pay at Baroda each year the tribute fixed in perpetuity in 1807. He also procured a counter security for this payment who engaged himself in this capacity for ten years. The Honourable Company's government had then to become security on the part of the Gáikwár for the fixity of the tribute demanded. This participation of the British in the engagement was insisted upon by the chiefs, and in all probability Colonel Walker was not averse from admitting it. Having thus arranged for the payment of the tribute and guaranteed the amount to be demanded, it was proposed to take measures to prevent internal quarrels between the chiefs themselves. The object of a fixed settlement was simply to remove the necessity for overrunning the country from time to time with an irregular army and to protect the chiefs against extortion. It was found that if the army of the paramount power were removed, all means of keeping order in the province would be lost, and the internecine feuds of the chiefs would soon destroy the good effects of the permanent settlement by materially altering the then existing position of the weaker feudatories and rendering them unable to pay the tribute. It was also the wish of the British Government to bring about such a state of things in Káthiávada that the presence of an army to control the chiefs would be wholly uncalled-for and that the chiefs themselves would co-operate to keep order and maintain the permanent settlement.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Settlement  
of 1807.  
Financial.

Political.

A second agreement therefore was called for from each signatory state of the nature of a security for good and peaceful conduct. The counter security to this was usually that of another chief. This bond was perpetual. On the execution of both these engagements the chief received a *pitrána* or guarantee that the Gáikwár government would not take from him more than the tribute agreed upon, and to this deed the countersignature of the Resident on behalf of the British Government was affixed. This guarantee, like the promise of the chief himself, was apparently given in perpetuity. It will be noted that the amount of tribute was fixed permanently, but that it was considered advisable to renew the security every ten years. It is also remarkable that, except in the *fulzúman* or bond for good behaviour, the name of the Peshwa's government, the rights of which over the tribute had only been temporarily alienated, does not appear. The total amount of the tribute thus settled was Rs. 9,70,882.

By means of these engagements the relations of the tributaries to their paramount power were made a matter of contract, instead of as heretofore a series of uncertain and arbitrary exactions dependent upon the respective means of coercion and resistance.

Seven years of the lease granted to the Gáikwár in 1804 by the Peshwa still remained unexpired and during at least six of these

Peshwa's Share  
in Káthiávada.

THE  
MARÁTHÁS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Peshwa's Share  
in Káthiáváda.

the arrangements that had been made about the Káthiáváda tribute do not seem to have been officially communicated to the Peshwa's government. It was not until 1815, when the Resident at Poona was trying to procure the renewal of the lease for the Gaikwár, that an account of the settlement was drawn up in a draft agreement which the Resident submitted to Bájiráv. In this draft the curious mistake was made of mentioning the settlement instead of only the security bond as decennial. The Peshwa, whose policy was to protract negotiations, submitted in his turn a second draft which he said he was willing to sign. In this he seized at once on the supposition that the tribute was fixed only for ten years and stipulated for an increase at the expiration of that period. He also demanded that certain extra collections should be refunded by the Gaikwár, and assumed the British Government to have become security for the tribute owed by the chiefs to his own government.

It was evident that no accord would be reached on the lines of either of these draft agreements as they stood. Before others were prepared, Gangádhār Shástri had been murdered and the treaty of June 1817 was a completed act, leaving further negotiations unnecessary.

Later  
Arrangements.

Meanwhile the tribute since the expiry of the farm of 1804 had been collected by a joint British and Gaikwár expedition, for it was found that partly from their own disputes and partly owing to the instigation of the agents of Bájiráv, the chiefs were little disposed to act up to the engagements of 1807, either with respect to tribute or good conduct. The Peshwa, whose interference in the affairs of the peninsula had been constantly discouraged, declined to trouble himself to collect the tribute, the responsibility of which he asserted rested entirely upon the British and Gaikwár governments. He subsequently ceded the tribute to the British Government on account of military expenses. After his fall in 1819 his territories, including the rights in Gujarát, fell to the British Government, and in 1820 the Gaikwár arranged that the whole of the Káthiáváda tribute, except that due from the districts directly subordinate to Baroda, should be collected by the agency of the British.

The  
Mahi Kántha

Turning to the events on the mainland, we find that soon after Colonel Walker's return from the Káthiáváda expedition, he introduced the Káthiáváda tribute system into the Mahi Kántha, in spite of the opposition of Sitáram Rávji and the anti-English party in the Darbár.

Supplementary  
Treaty,  
1808.

The territory ceded for the payment of the British contingent in 1805 was found to yield less revenue than had been anticipated, so in 1808 a treaty supplementary to the consolidating one of 1805 was drawn up, allotting additional assignments amounting to about 1,76,168 rupces to the British. This revenue was derived partly from alienated villages in Nadiád, Mahudha, Dholka, Mátar, and near the Ranjar Ghát. The *ghásulána* or tribute of Bhávnagar was also made over by this agreement. With regard to this latter

acquisition, it is to be noticed that the agreement is drawn up in the name of the Honourable Company alone and not in that of the British Government on account of Anandráv Gaikwár. It also differs from other engagements of a similar nature in containing a provision against the contingency of future irregular demands being made by the Peshwa's army. The reason for this distinction is evidently that the Bhávnagar contribution was not part of the Káthiávada revenue farmed to the Gaikwár by Bápráy, and was thus not divisible on the expiration of the lease. The right to this tribute rested with the British by virtue of the previous cession of Gogha, of which sub-division the fifty nine villages of the Bhávnagar Bhayád formed part.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Next year the Okhámandal chiefs, who had not come under the settlement of 1807, were driven to engage not to continue their piratical depredations along the coast, and to admit one Sundarji Shrivji as Resident on behalf of the British Government. The Gaikwár government then, too, seems to have become their counter security, an arrangement which led to misunderstandings a short while afterwards.

Okhámandal,  
1809.

In 1811, some disturbances in Navánagar and Junágadh and symptoms of discontent in Okhámandal took the Resident from Baroda into the peninsula with part of the British contingent.

Disturbances in  
Káthiávada,  
1811.

The Jám of Navánagar had got involved in pecuniary transactions with the Ray of Kachh, and the British Government had mediated with a view of arranging for the repayment by gradual instalments. The Jám, however, repudiated all the engagements of 1807 both as regards the debt and the tribute, ejected the Gaikwár's agent from his dominions, and prepared for war. He also began to incite the neighbouring chiefs to join in sweeping out the paramount power from the whole of Káthiávada. It was not till after a considerable show of force that he laid down his arms and came to terms. Captain Carnac, the Resident, got him to submit the Kachh claims to the arbitration of the English Government, and after fixing them at Rs. 4,33,830, Captain Carnac made an arrangement similar to that originally intended.

There remained the question of a disputed succession in Junágadh. Bahádur Khán, son of a slave girl, was put forward in opposition to a younger aspirant, Salábat Khán, reputed to be the son of a lady of the Rádhampur house. The Baroda government with the concurrence of the Resident had admitted the claims of the latter. On a report, however, by the Assistant Resident in Káthiávada, Captain Carnac was induced to alter his opinion and to support Bahádur Khán, on the grounds that Salábat Khán was a spurious child, and that Bahádur was ready to make concessions of value to the Gaikwár government. The Bombay Council, however, disavowed all countenance of the claims of Bahádur Khán, and the matter was let drop.

In the year 1812 the Gaikwár had paid off the pecuniary loan borrowed in 1803 from the British Government, but there still

1812.

THE  
MARÁTHÁS,  
A.D. 1760-1819

remained the debts for which that government had become *bhandári* or security in place of the ejected *jamáldárs* of the Arab force. These claims could not be paid off for at least two years longer, so that for that period the Resident was ordered to maintain the same close supervision of Baroda affairs as heretofore.

1813-14.

The next two years were spent chiefly in discussions with the Poona government about the old claims by the Peshwa on the Gáikwár's estate. There is no doubt that at the time of his death, Dámájí had not paid up nearly all that he had bound himself in 1753 to pay. On the other hand there had been at least six intermediate compacts between the Peshwa and various members of the Gáikwár family. Amongst others was that of 1768 fixing the arrears of the previous three years, that of 1778 and of 1781, by the tenth clause of which Fatchsingh was excused payment of arrears for the time during which he was engaged in hostilities against Rághobá. Then came the agreement with Govindráv in 1797, to which a sort of debit and credit account is appended.

Peshwa Intrigue  
in Baroda,  
1814.

The Peshwa had been content, for reasons that have been shown above, to let these claims lie dormant during the currency of the ten years' farm. But, as the question of the renewal of this agreement became imminent, he gradually opened more frequent communications with the Baroda council, using these claims as a pretext for sounding the disposition of the chief officials and ascertaining their feelings especially towards the British Government. When the negotiations for the settlement of these claims were fairly set on foot, he used every possible means to protract them till he had finally decided what he should do in 1814, when the Ahmedábad farm expired.

It was easy for Bájráv to discover who were the malecontents at the Baroda Court. Sitárám, the adopted son of Rávjí Appáji, having been found both incompetent and untrustworthy in the management of affairs, had been practically removed from any post of influence in the council, and was moreover chafing at the refusal of the British Government to recognize him in the same way as they had done his father. He had also been superseded as Suba of Káthnáváda by Vitthalráv Deváji. Under these circumstances, and finding that he had the support of a large number of the older court party against the authority of the Resident and of his native agent, he either himself opened communications with Bájráv or readily listened to the counsels sent to him direct from Poona. Before long, agents were sent to the Peshwa's Court by Takhtbái, wife of Anandráv, with instructions, it is supposed, to thwart all the proposals and designs of Gangádhár Shástri, who had been recently sent as envoy by the Gáikwár council of administration. The chief obstacle to the settlement of the Peshwa's claims was the counter-demand made by the Baroda government on account of Broach, which had been disposed of without the Gáikwár's consent, and also on account of the damage caused by the inroads of Ába Shelukar, when accredited agent of Bájráv in Gujarat.

There is no need to detail here the events that took place in Poona during these negotiations. On the expiration of the farm in 1814,

Bájrav appointed Trimbakji Dengle Sarsuba of Ahmedábád. The latter, however, did not leave Poona, where his presence was indispensable to his master, but sent agents with instructions rather of a political than of a fiscal nature. He himself undertook the task of disposing of Gangádhār Shástri, whom he caused to be assassinated at Pandharpur in July 1815.

THE  
MARATHÁS,  
A.D. 1760 - 1819.  
Peshwa Intrigue  
in Baroda,  
1814.

Meanwhile the Jám of Navanagar had died leaving a disputed succession. The chief's Khavás or family slaves, instigated probably by agents from Ahmedábád, began to usurp the government, and the whole question was submitted by the Darbár to the Peshwa as being lord paramount. The Ahmedábád commander sent a body of two hundred cavalry to Navanagar, but before they could arrive, the Khavás' revolt had been quelled by a British force detached from the contingent. They therefore dispersed through the province inciting discontent and revolt amongst the Játs and Káthis. In Kaira they instigated a tribe of Kohs to attack the British lines by night. Sitáráo Rávjí's adherents also collected a force at Dhár, a state well-known for lending itself for such purposes, and kept the frontier in confusion. Severe measures at Poona and Baroda soon put an end to this state of things, and at last Trimbakji Dengle was surrendered to the British Government to answer for his share in the murder of Gangádhār Shástri. The discussion of the Gáikwár's debts, however, was carried on all through the year at Poona, whilst Bájrav was maturing his then vacillating plans for extirpating the British from the west of India.

Okhámándal  
ceded to the  
Gáikwár.

In 1816 the chiefs of Okhámándal again betook themselves to piracy. Their territory was occupied by a British force. It will be remembered that in 1809 the Gáikwár's government had become counter-security for these chiefs, but owing to the distance of the district from a military post, the Baroda authorities found themselves unable to spare troops enough to put a check on the misconduct of their tributaries. In A.D. 1816, at the time of occupation, the Bombay Government informed the Baroda administration that they had no wish to permanently establish themselves at so distant a spot, which contained, moreover, a much frequented shrine of Hindu worship, and that they were willing to put the Gáikwár in possession if he would engage to keep up a sufficient force in the district to protect the neighbouring ports and shores from the pirates and wreckers that infested the island of Dwárká and the adjoining mainland. The Bombay Government made a point of asserting on this occasion, in opposition apparently to some proposal by the Baroda Darbár, that they could not admit that the mere fact of having become security or counter-security gave any preferential right to the possession of the country. Finally, the Gáikwár government agreed to the condition proposed, and the district was made over to them.

British Aid at  
Junágadh.

In the same year (A.D. 1816) British aid was invoked by the Nawáb of Junágadh who was oppressed by a too powerful minister, backed by the Arab mercenaries. After a settlement of this dispute had been satisfactorily brought about, the Nawáb, in gratitude, waived his rights to tribute over the territories recently ceded to

THE  
MARÁTHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

Treaty of  
Poona,  
1817.

the British in the peninsula, where his family had formerly great influence and considerable property. The escape of Trimbakji Dengle from Thána, and the subsequent attempts of the Peshwa to prevent the re-capture of his favourite and to re-mite the Marátha confederacy, led to the execution of a fresh treaty on June 13th, 1817, in accordance with the orders of the Supreme Government.

It was intended to bind the Peshwa in such a way that he could never again enjoy the ascendancy amongst the Marátha chiefs to which he aspired. The Resident at Poona took this opportunity of also putting an end to the discussions about the mutual claims on each other by the Poona and Baroda governments. The Peshwa agreed to abandon all claims on any territory in possession of the Gáikwár and to accept an annual payment of four lákhs of rupees in satisfaction of all previous debts. The farm of Gujarát was made perpetual to the Gáikwar on the payment of four and a half lakhs annually, but the Kathnávada tribute was made over to the British Government in liquidation of military expenses. The latter Government, by this treaty, also entered into possession of the Peshwa's revenue in Gujarát, except that of Ulpád, which had been assigned to a favourite officer. All the Peshwa's rights north of the Nerbada were also ceded.

Treaty with  
the Gáikwar,  
1817-18.

These conditions necessitated a readjustment of the agreements with the Gáikwár. On November 1817, a definitive treaty, afterwards supplemented by one of November 1818, was executed between the Baroda and British Governments. The force furnished by the former state was found inefficient and the employment of a larger body of British troops was therefore necessary. To pay for these the Gáikwár ceded his share in the fort of Ahmedábád and the districts immediately surrounding that city.<sup>1</sup> He also made over some districts near Surat, and the town of Umreth in Kaira with the whole of the rights acquired by the perpetual farm of Ahmedábád. The British remitted the *mughlá* or *daes* taken by the Nawábs of Surat on the Gáikwar's possessions near that city. Okhámandal having now been pacified, was also given up to the Gáikwar, but revolted four months afterwards and was not again subdued for a considerable time.

1819.

At the final settlement of the dominions of the late Peshwa in 1819, the whole of his rights in Gujarat passed in sovereignty to the British, who remitted the four lakhs due from the Gáikwár in composition of arrears claimed by Bájráv. The next year a special inquiry was made into the respective shares of the Peshwa and Baroda governments in the Kathnávada tribute and in the extra allowance levied by the Gáikwár called *ghás-dána* allowance. In the course of this inquiry so many abuses of power and instances of extortion on the part of the Gáikwár's officers were brought to light, that the Bombay Government on these grounds, and on account also of the general deterioration in the province since the

1820.

<sup>1</sup> Known as Daskroi,

Gaikwār's troops were stationed there, prevailed upon Sayājirāv, who had now succeeded to the throne, to let the duty of collection be undertaken and superintended by a British officer stationed in Kāthiāvāda, who should, however, employ the Gaikwār's troops on occasions of necessity. A similar arrangement was made with regard to the Mahr Kānthā, where the effects of the settlement of 1811 had been much weakened by the disorderly conduct of the Gaikwār's troops stationed there. The administration of nearly the whole of the province passed into the hands of the British and the period of Marāṭha ascendancy came to an end.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.  
Close of Marāṭha  
Supremacy,  
1819.

General  
Review.

It remains to review generally the nature and characteristics of the Marāṭha connection with Gujarāt, the chief events in which have been chronicled above. The most prominent feature has already been indicated at the beginning of this section and is apparent throughout the whole narrative. It is, in fact, the small space in history occupied during this period by the people, compared with the share appropriated to the actions of the government and its delegates. The reasons for this are as easily seen as the fact itself. From first to last the Marāṭha interests in Gujarāt were, except at one or two special junctures, simply pecuniary ones. In comparison with other countries within reach of Marāṭha arms, Gujarāt has always had a very large proportion of inhabitants engaged in commerce and manufacturing industries. It was the object of Śivājī to get as much booty as he could and carry it away then and there, hence the commercial classes and manufacturers presented the most favourable opportunities for pillage, and the agriculturists were at first only molested in forage and provisions. Rapidity of action was another of Śivājī's aims, so not only were his visits short and their effects transitory, but all his booty consisted of property that could be carried away by his horsemen. No women or followers accompanied his expeditions, no prisoners were made excepting the few who could afford to pay a heavy ransom. Torture was resorted to only when the captive was suspected of having concealed his treasure. Cows women and cultivators were, according to Śivājī's system, exempted from capture. Assignments on revenue were seldom made by him for fear of weakening his own authority. Subsequently the Marāṭha demands became more regular and assumed the form of a certain proportion of the revenue. The *sar-deshmukhi* and *chauth* were supposed to be calculated on the standard assessment so as to avoid subsequent claims as tribute or over-collection. In reality, however, they consisted of a fixed share in actual collections together with whatever extras the officer in charge could manage to extort, and which were, of course, kept undefined in any agreement. The expeditions, too, moved more leisurely and in greater force. The passes and roads in their rear were protected by their own comrades, so that the booty could be brought to the Dakhan in carts, and more bulky property therefore was removed than in former times. The times, too, when the demands were likely to be made were known to the headmen of the district and village, so that the cultivators could be pressed beforehand to furnish their share of the

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

General  
Review.

contributions. The extortion by this means passed from the commercial classes down to the agriculturists, the latter having also the burden of supporting a larger and more cumbrous army for a longer period.

When the power of the Dābhāde and his deputy the Gāikwār was fairly established, a regular system of administration was introduced. It will be remembered that by the treaty of 1729 as few Marāthā officers were to be employed as possible beyond those necessary to collect the Dābhāde's share of the revenue. In consequence, however, of the internal struggles of the Muhammadan chiefs, this minimum quota grew to be a large establishment, with the usual accompaniment of alienations and assignments for the support of the officers and their religious institutions which the weakness of the central power had allowed to become customary. The Dābhāde himself was non-resident and his deputy usually being too valuable an assistant to be spared from the arena of Dakhan politics, the collection was left to sub-deputies and their subordinates, who in turn delegated a great part of their duties to village officers and even to strangers. The Dābhādes, who were throughout more interested in the Dakhan than in Gujarāt, had, no doubt, an idea of raising up a power in the latter province in opposition to the administration of the Peshwa, which was conducted purely by Brahman agency. It was soon evident, however, that all that could be done politically with Gujarāt was to make it a treasury for the support of schemes that had to be carried out in the Dakhan.

The fertility of the soil and the facilities the country afforded for commerce and manufactures both tended to make it unlikely to become a field for recruiting. The inhabitants of the towns had fixed and lucrative occupations; the cultivators were mostly of a class which on account of the fertility of their land neither Muhammadan nor Marāthā had been able to impoverish. The Marāthās had still to seek for soldiers in the rugged and barren country on the Ghāts and in the Konkan, where the people could only look for a hand-to-mouth existence if they remained at home. The warlike tribes of Gujarāt were, as has been already seen, too proud by birth and position to engage themselves to fight for any but their own race and interest. The aboriginal races were not likely to prove effective allies even if they had been willing to move from their own woods and fortresses. None of the Marāthā governors of Gujarāt seem to have consistently attempted to weld the various interests subordinate to them into a cohesion and unity that they might have made politically useful against the Poona influence. All that they endeavoured to do was to draw from their charge as much revenue as possible and to keep out interlopers. To the taxpayer the result was the same, whether his district was invaded by Kantāji or Pilāji. If one anticipated the other in carrying off the harvest, the ryot still had to pay the latter for ejecting the intruder. The only resistance to be feared by the Marāthās was that, not of the cultivators, but of their own race or of the Rajput Chāsiās. These latter were treated in all districts as mere robbers, probably because the class which bears that name near Rājpipla

where the Maráthás first came in contact with it subsists usually on blackmail. In the north, however, the Girásiás were land-owners of great influence and fixed residence, not likely to be conciliated by the knowledge that the invaders of their country classed them along with Bhils and Kohis as *mehrásis* or outlaws.

In order to relieve the chief officials of direct responsibility for the revenue, the Gáákwar towards the last quarter of the eighteenth century if not before, introduced the system of letting out each revenue sub-division in farm for from one to five years at a fixed annual rate. The farmer was as often as not an absentee, but the supervision and administration were never entrusted to any one but a Marátha Bráhmaṇ. The revenue for the year was settled by an inspection of the accounts of previous years and the crops of each village. The amount was taken in kind, but the actual distribution of the whole on individual cultivators was left to the headman, who was in most cases made responsible for the assessment imposed on his village.

The frequent passages of hostile armies and other causes had left much cultivable land a desert. In order to restore the population and induce colonists to settle and cultivate in such spots, leases on favourable terms were granted to *desais*, who administered the land as they pleased, and were directly responsible to the head revenue authority of the sub-division for the annual rent. The patels and other village officials also made use of their position with reference to the foreign supervisors in appropriating large tracts of waste land to their own uses. The *kamavísadár* or farmer for the time being was interested only in recouping himself for the amount he had agreed to pay the Marátha government, together with a margin for bribes paid to underlings at head-quarters for good offices with regard to the farm. He was ready, therefore, to make use of any agency in collecting his revenue that he found effective, and which saved the cost of a personal establishment. In many parts of the country there were hereditary village headmen accustomed to the duty of extorting money from unwilling ryots. In other places, such for instance as Dholka, it had been customary for certain Muhammadans called *Kasbátis*, to become responsible for the revenue of certain villages in return for a discount on the *jama* or amount collected (*manoti*). These *manotidárs* were found so useful by the Marátha officials that they gradually acquired an hereditary position and claimed proprietary rights in the villages for which they had been formerly mere agents for collection. They also acted as *desais* or colonists, and succeeded in getting their leases of certain tracts renewed long after they had ceased to actively improve the land, which had in fact been all brought under regular cultivation.

Such was the agency employed in administering the revenue. The *kamavísadár* was also the dispenser of justice both civil and criminal. As his object was to make money and not to improve the condition of his charge, his punishments consisted chiefly in fines, and most offences could be paid for. No record of trials was

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1760-1819.

General  
Review.

THE  
MARATHAS,  
A.D. 1761-1819.

General  
Review.

kept except a memorandum of the amount passed at each decision to the credit of the farmer. In civil suits sometimes one-fourth of the amount in dispute was assigned as costs and appropriated by the court. The Girásís in their own territory exercised somewhat similar jurisdiction, but grave crimes with violence were apparently left to the party injured or his relations to decide after the manner of the offence. Arbitration, too, was a frequent mode of deciding differences of both civil and criminal nature, but the *kamárásdár* or *quásá* usually managed that the State should not be a loser by such a method of settlement.

The whole system indicates clearly enough the slight hold the Maráthás had on the province and their desire to make the most out of it for the furtherance of court intrigues or political ends above the Ghats. There is nothing to show that they contemplated a permanent colonization of the country until the British Government undertook the task of dividing the Maráthra nation by the establishment of a powerful and independent court at Baroda.

The home of the Maráthás was always the Dakhan, and for many years after they had effected a lodgment in Gujarat, their army regularly returned for the rainy season to the country from whence they originally came. Their leaders were encouraged to be as much as possible near the court by the Dabhláde, or the regent on the one side and by the Peshwa on the other: the former on account of their weight with the army and the Maráthra chiefs, the latter in order that their influence in a distant dependency might not grow beyond what prudence recommended or might be counteracted if its tendency to increase became manifest. For similar reasons no force was allowed to be maintained in Gujarat sufficient to consolidate the Maráthra acquisitions there into a manageable whole. Dámáji Gúkwár, had he lived, would undoubtedly have done much towards this end by means of his personal influence; but, as it happened, the thin crust of Maráthra domination rapidly disappeared before it either was assimilated into the system of the province or hardened over it. A military occupation of a large and civilised district at a distance from the mother-country, and prevented by the jealousy of the central authority and the short-sightedness of those in charge of its exploitation, from either conforming itself to the elements it found already established, or absorbing the vital forces of the government it dispossessed, a system without the breath of life, without elasticity, without the capacity of self-direction, imposed bodily upon a foreign people, without even the care of preparing a foundation, such seems to have been the Maráthra government, containing within itself all that was necessary to ensure a precarious, but while it lasted, an oppressive existence.

**GUJARÁT DISTURBANCES.**  
**1857-1859.**

**BY**

**L. R. ASHBURNER Esq., O.S.I.,**  
**LATE OF H. M.'S BOMBAY CIVIL SERVICE.**

**['CONTRIBUTED MAY 1860.']**



# GUJARÁT DISTURBANCES.

1857-1859.

VERY soon after the outbreak of the mutinies in the North-West of India in May 1857, an uneasy feeling began to prevail in the Bombay Presidency, especially in Gujarát. The story of the greased cartridges had been industriously repeated and found credulous listeners in every village. A similar incident occurred in Gujarát. A consignment of salt from the Ran of Kachh having been carried in bags which had previously held red ochre (*sindur*) had become discoloured. This was observed at Sádra in the Maki Kíntha as the salt was in transit to Rápputána, and a report was at once spread that the salt had been defiled with cow's blood. It was believed in Ahmedabád and throughout Gujarát that this was a device of the British Government to destroy the caste of the people as a preliminary to their forcible conversion to Christianity.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

The Bad Salt  
Scare,  
1857.

About the time that the cakes or *chapátis* were being circulated throughout the North-West of India, a common pariah dog was passed from village to village in the Panch Maháls and eastern Gujarát. It was never ascertained who first set the dog in motion, but it came from the Central India frontier with a basket of food which was given to the village dogs, and a similar supply with the dog was forwarded to the next village. When pestilence or other calamity threatens an Indian village, it is the custom to take a goat or a buffalo to the boundary and drive it into the lands of the adjoining village, in the hope that it will avert evil from the community. A similar belief prevailed among the Jews. There is no reason to suppose that this movement of the dog in Gujarát was a signal of revolt or had any deeper political significance than a vague feeling that troublous times were approaching. Still it was by many regarded as an evil omen and created considerable alarm.<sup>1</sup>

The Passing of  
the Pariah Dog.

<sup>1</sup> The rite of passing cakes from village to village or of passing a dog from village to village is in such complete accord with magical and religious rites practised all over India that it seems hardly possible to accept either as meaningless or as accidental. The passing of a cake and of a dog from one part of the country to another on the brink of the Mutinies. Knowing how suitable such a rite is to the state of feeling as well as to the phase of belief prevalent among the plotters of rebellion in Northern India it seems difficult to suppose that the passing of the cakes and the passing of the dog were not both sacramental, that is designed to spread over the country a spirit which had by religious or magical rites been housed in the dog and in the cakes. The cake-spirit, like the sugar-spirit of the Thugs, was doubtless Káli, the fierce longing for unbridled cruelty, which worked on the partaker of the Thug sugar with such power that he entered with zest and without remorse on any scheme however cowardly and cruel. Like the Thugs those who ate the Mutiny cakes would by partaking become of one spirit, the spirit of the indwelling Káli, and, in that spirit would be ready to support and to take part in any scheme of blood which the leaders of Mutiny might devise and start. Similarly by religious rites the Central India dog, possibly the dog of Báiza Báí of Gwalior (See Text page 437), had been made the home of some fierce war spirit, apparently of the dog-formed Khandoba, the Maráthá Sword God and Dog of War. The inspired dog and the inspired dogs-meat were passed through the land in the confidence that through them the spirit of unrest would pervade every village of Gujarát. Since the Mutinies, by the

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES  
1857-1859  
Gold Hoarding

Although Gujarāt was apparently tranquil in the hot season of 1857, those who were most familiar with native opinion were aware of the existence of very serious discontent, and indications of the storm which lowered on the horizon were not wanting. When disturbances are impending natives invariably convert their savings into gold, because gold is more portable and more easily concealed than silver. A sudden and unusual demand for gold in the markets, especially by the native troops, had been observed. This fall of the political barometer should never be disregarded. It indicates the approach of a storm with great certainty.

Seditious  
Native Press

The native press, which had been merely disloyal, now assumed an attitude of decided hostility. Every paper contained the most exaggerated accounts of the massacre of Europeans in the North-West Provinces, and absurd rumours were circulated of the approach of a combined Russian and Persian army, which, it was said, had reached Attock and would shortly invade Hindustan. It is much to be regretted that the measures which were found necessary in 1880 for the suppression of seditious publications were not enforced in 1857. Had this been done much evil would have been averted. The native mind would not have become familiar with the spectacle of the British Government held up to the execration and contempt of its subjects and the vilest motives attributed to every public measure.

Maulvi  
Saraj-ud-din.

The native press was not the only source of sedition. The fall of the British Government was openly predicted in every masjid, and in Ahmedabad a Maulvi named Saraj-ud-din became especially prominent by preaching a *jehād* in the Jāma Masjid to audiences of native officers and *sardars* of the Gujarāt Horse and troops from the

magic of letters, Kāli has passed from the water into the leaflet, and the paid potential propagandist has taken the place of Ishambhā's pious dog.

The correctness of the view suggested above is supported if not established by certain passages in Kaye's *Sepoy War* I. 632-642. Chalmers says, 'The circulating of cakes was supposed to foretell disturbance and to imply an invitation to the people to unite for some secret purpose.' According to the king of Delhi's physician (page 636) some charm attached to the cakes. 'The people thought they were made by some adept in the secret art to corrupt the religion of the country.' Another authority (page 637) says; 'The first circulation of the cakes was on the authority of a pandit who said the people would rise in rebellion if the cakes were sent round and that the person in whose name the cakes were sent would rule India.' The secret comes out in Sitarām Bawa's evidence (pages 646-648), 'The cakes in question were a charm or *pāṭ* which originated with Dāsa Bawā the *guru* or teacher of Nāma Saheb. Dāsa told Nāma Saheb he would make a charm and as far as the magic cakes should be carried so far should the people be on his side. He then took lotus-seed-dough called *mukāna* and made an idol of it. He reduced the idol to very small pills and having made an immense number of cakes he put a pill in each and said that as far as the cakes were carried so far would the people determine to throw off the Company's yoke.' With this making of a cake as a sacramental homo of Durga or Kālī compare the Buddhist of Tibet offering in a human skull to the Maharāni or Queen, that is to Durga or Kālī, a sacramental cake made of black-goat's fat, wine, dough, and butter. (Waddell's *Buddhism in Tibet*, 365.) As to the effect of sharing in Durga's mutiny cakes compare the statement of the Thag Faringga (Sleeman's *Ramaseena*, page 216), 'The sugar sacrament, *gur-tapayana*, changes our nature. Let a man once taste the sacramental sugar and he will remain a Thag however skilful a craftsman, however well-to-do. The Urdu proverb says *Tapauni-ki-dhannika gur pise khaya wah wari hai* Who eats the sugar of the sacramental Vase as he is so he remains. The Thags are tools in the hand of the god they have eaten (Compare *Ramaseena*, 76).—J. M. C.

Ahmedābād cantonment. The Maulvi was expelled from Ahmedābād and found his way to Baroda, where he was afterwards arrested; but the impunity he so long enjoyed brought great discredit upon Government, for it was very naturally supposed that a government which tamely submitted to be publicly reviled was too weak to resent the indignity. Oriental races are so accustomed to violent measures that they seldom appreciate moderation or forbearance. The generation that had known and suffered from the anarchy of the Peshwa had passed away. The seditious language of the native press and the masjid was addressed to a population too ignorant to understand the latent power of the British Government.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

In 1857 the immense continent of Hindustān was governed by what appeared to the people to be a few Englishmen unsupported by troops; for they knew that the native army was not to be depended on, and the European troops were so few that they were only seen in the larger military cantonments. It must have seemed an easy task to dispose of such a handful of men, and it probably never occurred to those who took part in the insurrection that the overthrow of the British Government would involve more serious operations than the capture or murder of the Europeans who governed the country so easily. They could not perceive that England would never submit to a defeat, and that the handful of men who ruled India were supported by the whole power of the nation. The plotters had no very definite ideas for the future. The Muslims regarded the subversion of a government of Kāfirs as a triumph of Islam, and both Muslims and Hindus looked forward to a period of anarchy during which they might indulge that appetite for plunder which had been restrained for so many years. The descendants of the feudal aristocracy of the Peshwa are an ignorant and improvident race deeply involved in debt. They could not fail to see that under the operation of our laws their estates were rapidly passing into the possession of the more intelligent mercantile classes, and they hoped to recover their position in the revolution that was about to ensue.

Apparent  
Weakness of  
British Rule.

A great change had taken place in the character of the administration. The civilians of the school of Duncan, Malcolm and Mountstuart Elphinstone, though not deeply learned in the law, were accomplished earnest men, sufficiently acquainted with the unalterable principles of right and wrong to administer substantial justice to a simple people who had not yet learnt the art of lying. The people asked for justice rather than law. They were satisfied with the justice they obtained from the able and upright men who ruled this country during the first half of this century. The writings and official reports of the officers of that period indicate a knowledge of native customs and feelings and a sympathy with the people that is unknown in the present day, for knowledge and sympathy cannot be acquired except by a long and familiar residence amongst the people which is now becoming every year more impossible. When the overland route rendered communication with England more easy and frequent, a reaction set in against patriarchal administration. Concubinage with native women, which had been common, was now declared vulgar, if not immoral; and the

Administrative  
Effects.



GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES  
1857-1859.

The Courts  
Disliked.

relations between Europeans and Natives soon became less cordial than they had been during the early period of British rule. About this time a considerable immigration of lawyers appeared in India. These briefless gentlemen, envious of the official monopoly of the Civil Service, raised an outcry that justice was being administered by men who had not acquired that knowledge of law which the formality of eating a certain number of dinners at the Temple was supposed to guarantee. They worked the press so industriously to this cry, that in the course of a few years they had succeeded in impressing their views on the Court of Directors in London and on the less intelligent members of the Civil Service in India.

Unfortunately the Sadar Court was then presided over by a succession of feeble old gentlemen who had not sufficient force of character to resist this selfish agitation, and by way of refuting the charge of ignorance of law devoted themselves to the study of those petty technicalities which have so often brought the administration of justice into contempt, and which the progress of law reform has not even now removed from the law of England. In 1827, Mountstuart Elphinstone had enacted a Civil and Criminal Code which was still the substantive law of the land. It was simple and admirably suited to the people, but justice was administered according to the spirit rather than the letter of the law. A district officer would have incurred severe censure if his decisions were found to be inequitable, however they might have been supported by the letter of the law. The national character for even-handed justice had made the English name respected throughout India and far across the steppes of Central Asia. But the demoralizing example of the Sadar Adalat soon extended to the lower grades of the service. The Civil Service was afflicted with the foolishness which, we are told, precedes ruin. Its members diligently searched their law-books for precedents and cases, and rejoiced exceedingly if they could show their knowledge of law by reversing the decision of a lower Court on some long-forgotten ruling of the Courts of Westminster. The first effect of this evil was to fill the courts with corrupt and unprincipled *vakil*s who perverted the course of justice by perjury, forgery, and fraud of every description. Litigation increased enormously, no cause was too rotten, no claim too fraudulent to deprive it of the chance of success. The grossest injustice was committed in the name of the law, and though the Civil Service was above all suspicion of corruption, the evil could hardly have been greater if the Judges had been corrupt. This state of affairs gave rise to great discontent, for the administration of justice fell almost entirely into the hands of the *vakil*s. When men quarrelled they no longer said, "I'll beat or I'll kill you," but "I'll pay a *vakil* Rs. 50 to ruin you," and too often this was no mere idle threat.

The Irin  
Commission

The operations of the Irin Commission and of the Survey Department were also a fruitful cause of alarm and discontent. Many of the estates of the more influential Jāghīrdārs had been acquired by fraud or violence during the period of anarchy which preceded the fall of the Peshwa. The Patels and Deshmukhs had also appropriated large areas of lands and had made grants of villages to temples and assignments of revenue to Brāhmins, religious mendicants, and dancing

irls. The Peshwa had never recognized these alienations as any limitation of his rights, for he farmed his revenues, and so long as a large sum was paid into his treasury by the farmers it was immaterial to him how much land was alienated. But when the Survey Department revealed the fact that nearly a fourth part of the fertile province of Gujarát was unauthorizedly enjoyed by these parasites; and that in other districts the proportion of alienations was nearly equally large, a due regard for the public interests demanded that there should be an investigation into the title on which the lands were held rent-free. It became the duty of the Inám Commission to make this inquiry, and though a very small portion of land was resumed or rather assessed to the land revenue and the rules for the continuation of cash allowances were extremely liberal, they could hardly be expected to give satisfaction to those who had so long enjoyed immunity from any share of the public burdens. The Brahmans and the priesthood of every sect deeply resented the scrutiny of the Inám Commission and excited an intensely fanatical spirit by representing the inquiry as a sacrilegious attack on their religious endowments and a departure from the principle of neutrality and toleration which had been the policy of Government from a very early period.

Notwithstanding all these elements of danger there would probably have been no revolt if the army had remained loyal. Fortunately the Bombay army was composed of a great variety of races, Musalmáns of the Shia and Sunni sects, Maráthas of the Dakhan and Konkan, Parvatis, Paideshis, and a few Jews and Christians. Little community of sentiment could exist in so heterogeneous a force, and to this circumstance we may trace the failure of each mutinous outbreak in the regiments of the Bombay army. Many of its regiments had, however, recruited extensively in the North-West Provinces which were then the centre of the political cyclone, and it was soon discovered that seditious overtures were being made to them not only by their brethren in the regiments which had already mutinied, but by discontented persons of higher rank. The most important of these was a clever woman known as the Baija Bai. She was the daughter of a Dakhan Sardár named Sirji Ráo Ghátke, and had been married in early life to His Highness Dowlat Ráo Sindia the Mahárája of Gwálior. On his death she had been allowed to adopt Jankeji Ráo as heir to the *gádi*, and during his minority she had been appointed by the British Government Regent of the Gwálior state. In this position the Bai had accumulated great wealth. She had deposited £370,000 (37 lakhs of rupees) for safe custody in the treasury at Benares, and it was known that she had other resources at Gwálior. Her avarice and ambition were insatiable. She sent emissaries to all the Marátha chiefs and Thákors in Western India calling on them to take up arms and restore the empire of Shiváji. She appealed to the troops, urging them to emulate the deeds of their comrades in the Bengal army who had already nearly exterminated the Europeans in the North-West, and warned them that if they did not now strike in defence of their religion they would shortly be converted to Christianity and made to drink the blood of the sacred cow.

In May and June 1857 our troops were fighting before Delhi, only just holding their own, and making little impression on the walls

GUJARÁT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

The Inám  
Commission.

The Army.  
Loyal.

Báija Báí of  
Gwálior,

Pársi Riot in  
Broach,  
June 1857,

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES  
1857-1859.

Parsi Riot in  
Broach,  
June 1857.

of the city which were strongly held by the mutinous regiments. Gujarāt was still tranquil. It is true there had been a riot in Broach originating in a long-standing feud between the Pārsis and Musalmāns of that town, but it had no political significance and had been promptly suppressed. The ringleaders were arrested, tried, and sentenced to be hanged for the murder of a Pārsi, but there is no reason to suppose that this disturbance had any immediate connection with the outbreak in the North-West. It was probably only a coincidence, but the violence of the rioters was no doubt encouraged by the weakness of our position in Gujarāt, and the exaggerated rumours which reached them of the massacre of our countrymen.

Mutiny at  
Mhow,  
July 1857.

On July 1st, 1857, the 23rd Bengal Native Infantry and the 1st Bājāl Cavalry stationed at Mhow mutinied and murdered Colonel Platt, Captain Fagan, Captain Harris, and a number of European subordinates of the Telegraph Department. The troops of His Highness Holkar fraternized with the mutineers, attacked the Residency, and after a desultory fight drove out Colonel Durand the Resident, who took refuge in Bhopāl with the surviving Europeans of Indor. Information of the mutiny at Mhow soon reached Ahmedābād, and treasonable negotiations were at once opened for a simultaneous rising of the Gujarāt Horse and of the troops in the cantonment; but they could not agree to combined operations. The Marāthās hoped for the restoration of the dynasty of the Peshwa, while the Pardeshis looked towards Dehli where their brethren were already in arms, without any very definite comprehension of what they were fighting for, but with some vague idea that they would establish a Musalman *Raj* on the throne of the Great Mughal.

Mutiny at  
Ahmedābād,  
July 1857.

On July 9th, 1857, seven *savārs* of the Gujarāt Horse raised a green flag in their regimental lines in Ahmedābād and attempted to seize the quarter guard in which the ammunition was stored, but the guard made some slight show of resistance, and finding the regiment did not join them the mutineers left the lines in the direction of Sarkhej. They were followed by the Adjutant, Lieutenant Pym, with twelve *savārs*, and Captain Taylor, the commandant, joined them soon after with three men of the Kohi Corps, whom he had met on the Dholka road. The *savārs* were overtaken near the village of Tajpor, and having taken up a strong position between three survey boundary-marks opened fire on their officers and the Kohis, the *savārs* standing aloof. After many shots had been exchanged without result, Captain Taylor advanced to parley, and while endeavouring to reason with his men was shot through the body. The Kohis now re-opened fire and having shot two of the *savārs* the rest laid down their arms. They were tried under Act XIV. of 1857 and hanged. The *savārs* who followed Lieutenant Pym passively declined to act against their comrades, and if the Kohis had not been present the mutineers would have escaped. Captain Taylor's wound was severe, the bullet passed through his body, but he eventually recovered. The execution of the *savārs* had a good effect on the troops, but it became evident that a serious struggle was impending, and Lord Elphinstone, who was then at the head of the Bombay Government, took all the precautions that were possible under the circumstances.

Mr. Ashburner, Assistant Magistrate of Kaira, was ordered to raise a force of 200 Foot and 30 Horse for the protection of his districts, and Husam Khān Battangi, a Musalmān gentleman of Ahmedabad, was authorized to enlist 2000 of the dangerous classes. It was not expected that this Ahmedabad force would add to our fighting strength, but the employment of the rabble of Ahmedabad on good pay kept them out of mischief till the crisis was passed. Mr Ashburner's small force was composed of Rajputs, Makrams, and Kohs. They were a very useful body of men and were afterwards drafted into the Kaira Police of which they formed the nucleus. It was this force that suppressed the rising of the Thakors on the Mahi, which will be described below.

General Roberts, a very able soldier, commanded the Northern Division at this time. He fully realized the critical position of affairs in Gujrat. He was aware that the troops were on the verge of mutiny, that the Thakors were sharpening their swords and enlisting men, and that no relief could be expected till after the rains. But he was not the man to despond or to shirk the responsibility now thrown upon him. He proved equal to the occasion and met each emergency as it arose with the calm determination of a brave man.

When the troops at Mhow mutined, the Rāja of Amjera took up arms and attacked Captain Hutchinson the Political Agent of Bhopāwar. He fled and was sheltered by the Rāja of Jābwa. At the same time (July 1857) the Musalmān Kanungus or accountants and Zamindārs of the Panch Mahals revolted, laid siege to the fort of Dohad and threatened the Kaira district. Captain Buckle, the Political Agent, Rewa Kantha, marched from Baroda with two guns under Captain Sheppee, R. A., and two companies of the 8th Regiment Native Infantry, to relieve Dohad, while Major Andrews, with a wing of the 7th Regiment, two guns under Captain Saulez, R. A., and 100 Sahas of the Gajarat Horse, marched on Thasra to support Mr. Ashburner and act generally under his orders. On the approach of Captain Buckle's force the insurgents abandoned the siege, and Captain Hutchinson soon after re-established his authority in Bhopāwar by the aid of the Mālwa Bhil Corps which remained loyal. He arrested the Rāja of Amjēra and hanged him.

On the 5th August 1857 the Jodhpur Legion stationed at Abu mutinied. They made a feeble attack on the barracks of H. M. 33rd Regiment and Captain Hall's bungalow, into which they fired a volley of musketry, but were repulsed, leaving one of their men on the ground badly wounded. The fog was so dense that it was impossible to use firearms effectively. Mr. Lawrence of the Civil Service was the only person wounded. A party of the 17th Bombay Native Infantry who were on duty at Abu, were suspected of complicity with the Jodhpur Legion and were disarmed. The head-quarters of the Legion mutinied at Erinpur on the same day as the attack at Abu, they made the Adjutant, Lieutenant Conolly, prisoner and plundered the treasury.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

Mr Ashburner's  
Force.

Genl. Roberts.

Rising at Amjera.

And in the  
Panch Mahals,  
July 1857.

Mutines at  
Abu and  
Erinpur,  
1857.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

Disturbance at  
Ahmedabad,  
14th Sept. 1857.

An incident occurred early in September, which had an important influence on events. The two Native regiments quartered at Ahmedabad were the 2nd Regiment of Grenadiers and the 7th Native Infantry. The Grenadiers were chiefly Pardeshis from Oudh, while the majority of the 7th Regiment were Maráthás. As is often the case, an enmity sprang up between the two regiments. One night Captain Muter of the 2nd Grenadiers was visiting the guards as officer of the day. On approaching the quarter guard of the 7th Regiment, the sentry demanded the password which Captain Muter could not give. The sentry very properly refused to let him pass. Captain Muter returned to his lines, called out a party of Grenadiers, and made the sentry a prisoner. Next morning General Roberts put Captain Muter under arrest and released the sentry. This incident intensified the ill-feeling between the two regiments, and prevented their combination when the Grenadiers mutined a few days later. It had been arranged that the two Native Regiments and the Golandaz artillery should mutiny at the same time, but there was mutual distrust between them, and the Native officers of the artillery had stipulated that they should make a show of resistance in order to let it appear that they had been overpowered by a superior force. About midnight on the 14th September 1857 the Grenadiers turned out and fell in on their parade ground armed and loaded. The guns were also brought out and loaded on their own parade ground. A Native officer of the Grenadiers was sent with a party to take possession of the guns in accordance with the preconcerted agreement, but the Subhedar of the Artillery threatened to fire on them, and the Native officer expecting that the guns would be given up without resistance, thought he had been betrayed, and retreated with his party, who threw away their arms as they ran across the parade ground. The Grenadiers were under arms on the parade waiting for the guns, when seeing the disorder in which the party was retreating from the Artillery lines, they also were seized with a panic and broke up in confusion. Then for the first time the Native officers reported to Colonel Gimes that there had been a slight disturbance in the lines. The mere accident that the Native officer detached to take the guns had not been informed of the show of resistance he was to expect from the Artillery, probably averted the massacre of every European in Gujarat. Twenty-one loaded muskets were found on the parade ground, and though the whole regiment was guilty it was decided to try the owners of those muskets by court martial. They were sentenced to death. As it was doubtful if the Native troops would permit the execution it was considered prudent to await the arrival of the 89th Regiment under Colonel Ferryman and Captain Hatch's battery of Artillery. They had been landed at Gogha during the monsoon with great difficulty, and were compelled to make a wide detour to the north owing to the flooded state of the country. On their arrival the executions were carried out; five of the mutineers were blown from guns, three were shot with musketry, and the rest were hanged in the presence of the whole of the troops. They

met their death with a gentlemanly calmness which won the respect of all who were present.

The example thus made, together with the presence of the European troops in Gujarát, restored our prestige and gave us time to attend to affairs on our frontier. The whole country was in a very disturbed state. On the fall of Delhi on September 28th, 1857, a treasonable correspondence was found between the Nawáb of Radhanpur in Gujarát and the Emperor of Delhi, which deeply implicated the Nawab. He and his ministers had forwarded *ma'rúfás* of gold *mohars* to Delhi and asked for orders from the Emperor, offering to attack the British cantonments at Disa and Ahmés'abád. The Nawab had been on the most friendly terms with Captain Black the Political Agent, and had been considered perfectly loyal. Preparations were made to depose him for this treacherous conduct. We were then so strong in Gujarát that his estate could have been seized without the least difficulty, but he was considered too contemptible an enemy and his treason was pardoned.

Lieutenant Alban, with a party of Gujarát Horse, was now sent to settle affairs in Sunth, a petty state in the Rewa Kantha. Mustapha Khán, at the head of a turbulent body of Arabs, had made the Raja a prisoner in his own palace with a view to extort arrears of pay and other claims. Lieutenant Alban's orders were to disarm the Arabs. After some negotiations Mustapha Khán waited on Lieutenant Alban. He was attended by the whole of his armed followers with the matches of their matchlocks alight, thinking no doubt to intimidate Lieutenant Alban. On entering the tent Lieutenant Alban disarmed him, but imprudently placed his sword on the table. While they were conversing Mustapha Khán seized his sword and Lieutenant Alban immediately shot him with a revolver. The Arabs who crowded round the tent now opened fire on Alban and his men, but they were soon overpowered. Mustapha Khan, four Arabs, and one *sarúr* of the Gujarát Horse were killed.

Lieutenant Alban, with a party of the 7th Native Infantry under Lieutenant Cunningham then proceeded to Páhi. A few months before one Sar'pma', a claimant of the *Lánáváda gadi*, had attacked the Rája of Lánáváda, but was repulsed with severe loss and had since been harboured in the village of Páhi. On the approach of Alban's force, it was attacked by Surajmal's Rájputs and the village was accordingly burnt. Order was then restored in the Panch Maháls, and it was not again disturbed till Tátra Topi entered the Maháls.

In October 1857 a conspiracy was discovered between the Thákori of Samda near Disa and some Native officers of the 2nd Cavalry and 12th Regiment Native Infantry to attack and plunder the camp at Disa and to murder the officers; but the evidence was not very clear, and before the trial could take place the amnesty had been published under which the suspected men were released. The peace of Northern Gujarát was much disturbed at this time by the Thákori of Rova, who plundered the Pálanpur and Sirohi

GUJARÁT  
DISURBANCES,  
1857 - 1859.

Radhanpur  
Disloyal.

Arab Outbreak  
at Sunth.

Disturbance  
in Lánáváda.

Conspiracy  
at Disa.

GUJARÁT  
DISTURBANCES  
1857-1859.

Conspiracy  
at Baroda.

Want of  
Combination.

villages at the head of 500 men, and the Thákôr of Mandeta was also in arms but was held in check by a detachment of the 89th Regiment and a squadron of cavalry at Ahmednagar near Idar.<sup>1</sup> The two Thákôrs were acting in concert with some influential conspirators at Baroda of whom Malhâr Rao Gâikwâr *alias* Dada Sâheb was the chief. It was this man who afterwards became Gâikwâr of Baroda and was deposed for the attempt to murder Colonel Phayre by poison.

It is very remarkable that the sepoy war did not produce one man who showed any capacity for command. Every native regiment was in a state of mutiny and a large proportion of the civil population was ripe for revolt. If only one honest man had been found who could have secured the confidence and support of his fellow-countrymen, the fertile province of Gujarât would have been at his mercy, but amongst natives conflicting interests and mutual distrust make combination most difficult. In India a conspirator's first impulse is to betray his associates lest they should anticipate him. The failure of every mutinous outbreak in Gujarât was due to this moral defect. This trait may be traced throughout the history of the war and should be studied by those who advocate the independence of India, and the capacity of the native for self-government. It is an apt illustration of native inability to organize combined operations that the most formidable conspiracy for the subversion of our power should have been delayed till October 1857. By this time the arrival of Her Majesty's 89th Regiment and a battery of European artillery at Ahmedâbad had rendered a successful revolt impossible. The mutinies of the Gujarât Horse and Grenadiers had been promptly suppressed and severely punished. The termination of the monsoon had opened the ports and reinforcements were daily expected. Had the outbreak occurred simultaneously with the mutiny of the Gujarât Horse, the Artillery, and the Second Grenadiers, Gujarât must have been lost for a time and every European would have been murdered.

Marâtha  
Conspiracy.

• For many years Govindráo *alias* Bâpu Gâikwâr, a half brother of His Highness the Gâikwâr, had resided near the Shâhibâg at Ahmedâbad. He had been deported from Baroda for intriguing against his brother and had been treated as a political refugee. This man with Mâharrâo, another brother of His Highness the Gâikwâr, Bhâu Sâheb Pawâr, and a Sardâr who called himself the Bhonsla Raja, also related to His Highness by marriage, conceived the design to murder the Europeans in Baroda Ahmedâbad and Kaira and establish a government in the name of the Râja of Sâtâra. To Bâpu Gâikwâr was entrusted the task of tampering with the troops in Ahmedâbad, and frequent meetings of the Native officers were held at his house every night. The Bhonsla Râja, with a man named Jhaveri Nâlehand, was deputed to the Kaira district to secure the aid of the Thákôrs of Umêta, Bhâdarva, Kera, and Dâima, and of the Patels of Anand and Partâbpur.

<sup>1</sup> Rova in the south-east corner of Brohi. Mandeta in Idar in the Mahi Kantha. P. FitzGerald Esq. Political Agent Mahi Kantha.

These landholders assured Bápu of their support and the Thakor of Umeta mounted some iron guns and put his fort in a state of defence. An agent named Maganlál was sent into the Gáikwár's Kadi Pargana, where he enlisted a body of 2000 foot and 150 horse, which he encamped near the village of Lodra. The followers of the Kaira Thákors assembled in the strong country on the banks of the Mahi near the village of Partábpur with a detachment and advanced to the Chauk Taláv within five miles of Baroda. The massacre at Baroda was fixed for the night of October 16th. The native troops in Baroda had been tampered with and had promised in the event of their being called out that they would fire blank ammunition only.

The Thákors had been encamped at Partábpur for several days, but owing partly to the sympathy of the people and partly to the terror which they inspired, no report was made to any British officers till the 15th October, when Mr. Ashburner, who was encamped at Thasra, marched to attack them with his new levies and a party of the Kaira police. There was, as usual, disunion in the ranks of the insurgents; they had no leaders they could depend upon, and they dispersed on hearing of the approach of Ashburner's force without firing a shot. Ninety-nine men who had taken refuge in the ravines of the Mahi were captured and a commission under Act XIV. of 1857 was issued to Mr. Ashburner and Captain Buckle, the Political Agent in the Rewa Kantha, to try them. Ten of the ringleaders were found guilty of treason and blown from guns at Kanyári, nine were transported for life, and the remainder were pardoned. The turbulent villages of Partábpur and Angar in Kaira were destroyed and the inhabitants removed to more accessible ground in the open country. Their strong position in the ravines of the Mahi river had on several occasions enabled the people of Partábpur and Angar to set Government at defiance, and this was considered a favourable opportunity of making an example of them and breaking up their stronghold.

In the meantime information of the gathering at Lodra had reached Major Agar, the Superintendent of Police, Ahmedábád. He marched to attack them with the Koli Corps and a squadron of the Gujrat Horse. Mr. Maganlál fled to the north after a slight skirmish in which two men were killed and four wounded, and was captured a few days afterwards by the *Thakdar* of Samnu with eleven followers. They were tried by General Roberts and Mr. Hadow, the Collector of Ahmedábád, under Act XIV. of 1857. Three of them were blown from guns at Waizápur, three were hanged, and the rest were transported for life.

It is much to be regretted that Malhárráo Gáikwár and the Bhonsla Rája were allowed to escape punishment. There was very clear evidence of the guilt of the Bhonsla Rája, but His Highness the Gáikwár interceded for him, and Sir Richmond Shakespeare, the Resident, weakly consented that his life should be spared on condition that he should be imprisoned for life at Baroda, a sentence which, it is hardly necessary to say, was never carried out.

GUJARÁT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857 - 1859.

Marátha  
Conspiracy.

Gathering at  
Partábpur,

And at Lodra.

GUJARÁT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

Partial  
Disarming.

On the suppression of this abortive insurrection it was determined to disarm Gujarat, and in January 1858 strong detachments of the 72nd Highlanders and of Her Majesty's 86th Regiment with the 8th Regiment Native Infantry, two guns under Captain Conybere, and a squadron of Gujarát Horse were placed at the disposal of Mr. Ashburner to carry out this measure. His Highness the Gaikwár had consented to a simultaneous disarmament of his country, but he evaded the performance of his promise. In the Kaira district and in the Jagubisar taluka of Broach the disarmament was very strictly enforced; every male adult of the fighting classes was required to produce an arm of some kind. The town of Ahmedábád was reliced of 20,000 arms in the first two days, but the Highlanders, and 86th Regiment were required for operations in Rapputána, and after their departure from Gujarát it was deemed prudent to postpone this very unpopular measure.

Náikda  
Revolt,  
Oct. 1858.

After these events Gujarát remained tranquil for nearly a year till, in October 1858, the Náikda Bhils of Narakot revolted under Rupa and Keval Náiks, and a few months later Tátia Topi's scattered force being hard-pressed by Colonel Park's column, plundered several villages of the Panch Mahals during its rapid march through that district.

Tátia Topi,  
1858.

In 1858, after his defeat at Gwalior, at the close of the mutinies in Northern India, Tátia Topi moved rapidly towards the Dakhan. The chiefs of Jamkhandi and Nargund had been in treasonable correspondence with the rebel chiefs in the North-West and had invoked their aid. It is more than probable that if Tátia Topi had entered the Dakhan in force, there would have been a general insurrection of the Maráthá population. Tátia's march to the Dakhan soon assumed the character of a flight. He was closely pressed by two columns under Generals Somerset and Mitchell, and a very compact and enterprising little field force commanded by Colonel Park. Colonel Park's own regiment, the 72nd Highlanders, many of the men mounted on camels, formed the main fighting power of this force. His indefatigable energy in the pursuit of the enemy allowed them no rest, and eventually brought them to bay at Chhota Udepur. Fearing to face the open country of Berar with such an uncompromising enemy in pursuit, Tátia recrossed the Narbada, at Chhalkda and marched towards Baroda. He had, by means of an agent named Ganpatráo, for some time been in communication with the Bháu Sáheb Pavár, a brother-in-law of His Highness the Gaikwár, and had been led to expect aid from the Baroda Sardárs and the Thákors of the Kaira and Rewa Kántha districts. Immediately it became known that Tátia had crossed the Narbada, troops were put in motion from Kaira, Ahmedábád, and Dasa for the protection of the eastern frontier of Gujarat. Captain Thatcher, who had succeeded to the command of the irregular levies raised by Mr. Ashburner in Kaira, was ordered to hold Sankheda with the irregulars and two of the Gaikwár's guns. He was afterwards reinforced by Captain Collier's detachment of the 7th Regiment N. I., which fell back from Chhota Udepur on the approach of the enemy.

Tátia Topi at this time commanded a formidable force composed of fragments of many mutinous Bengal regiments. He had also been joined by a mixed rabble of Villayatis, Rohillás, and Rajputs, who followed his fortune in hopes of plunder. Ferozsha Nawáb of Kamora and a Majáthá, Sardar who was known as the Ráo Sahab, held subordinate commands. Each fighting man was followed by one or more ponies laden with plunder which greatly impeded their movements. It was chiefly owing to this that Colonel Park was enabled to overtake the rebels and to force them into action. On reaching Chhota Udepur the troops of the Raja fraternised with the enemy, and Captain Collier having evacuated the town, Tátia Topi was allowed to occupy it without opposition. He had intended to halt at Chhota Udepur to recruit his men and to develop his intrigues with the Baroda Sardárs, but Park gave him no respite. On the 1st December 1858, he fell upon Tátia's rebel force and defeated it with great slaughter, his own loss being trifling. After this defeat there was great confusion in the ranks of the insurgents. Tátia Topi abandoned his army and did not rejoin it till it had reached the forest lands of Parona. Discipline which had always been lax, was now entirely thrown aside. The muster roll of one of Tátia's cavalry regiments was picked up and showed that out of a strength of 300 sabres only sixteen were present for duty. The rebel force separated into two bodies, one doubled back and plundered Park's baggage which had fallen far to the rear, the other under Ferozsha entered the Panch Mahals and looted Bariya, Jhalod, Lúndi, and other villages; Godhra being covered by Muter's force was not attacked. Park's force was so disabled by the plunder of its baggage and by long continued forced marches, that it was compelled to halt at Chhota Udepur, but General Somerset took up the pursuit and rapidly drove Tátia from the Panch Mahals. He fled in the direction of Salumba. The Thakor of that place was in arms, and Tátia no doubt expected support from him, but the Thakor was too cautious to join what was then evidently a hopeless cause. On reaching Nargad on the 20th February 1859, Ferozsha made overtures of surrender, and a week later 300 cavalry and a mixed force of 1500 men under Zahir Ali and the Maulvi Vezir laid down their arms to General Mutch. They were accounted to the benefit of the amnesty. The remnant of Tátia's force fled to the north-east.

In October 1858, instigated by the intrigues of the Bháin Sáheb Payár, the Sankheda Naikdas, a very wild forest tribe, took up arms under Rupa and Keval Naiks, and after having plundered the outpost, *thana*, at Nárukot, attacked a detachment of the 8th Regiment N. I. under Captain Bates at Jambughoda. They were repulsed with considerable loss after a desultory fight during the greater part of two days. On the arrest of Gampatráo, the Bháin Sáheb's agent, this troublesome insurrection would probably have collapsed, but the Naikdas were joined by a number of Villayatis, matchlock-men, the fragments of Tátia's broken force, who encouraged them to hold out. They occupied the very strong country between Chámpáner and Nárukot, and kept up a harassing warfare, plundering the villages as far north as Godhra.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

Tátia Topi's  
Defeat at  
Chhota Udepur,  
Dec. 1858.

Naikda  
Disturbances,  
1858.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

Naikda  
Disturbance,  
1858.

A field force commanded by the Political Agent of the Rewa Kántha, Colonel Wallace, was employed against the Naikdás during the cold weather of 1858, and in one of the frequent skirmishes with the insurgents Captain Hayward of the 17th Regiment N. I. was severely wounded by a matchlock bullet on the 28th January 1859. The only success obtained by the Naikdas was the surprise of Hassan Ali's company of Hussem Khán's levy. The Subhedár had been ordered to protect the labourers who were employed in opening the pass near the village of Sivrájpur, but the duty was very distasteful to him, and his son deserted with twenty-four men on the march to Sivrájpur. They were suddenly attacked by a mixed force of Makranis and Naikdás. Seven men including the Subhedár were killed and eleven wounded without any loss to the enemy. The Subhedar neglected to protect his camp by the most ordinary precautions and his men appear to have behaved badly. They fled without firing a shot directly they were attacked. But little progress had been made in pacifying the Naikdás till Captain Richard Bonner was employed to raise and organize a corps composed chiefly of Bhils with their head-quarters at Dohad in the Panch Mahals. Captain Bonner's untiring energy and moral influence soon reduced the Naikdas to submission. Rupa Naik had down his arms and accepted the amnesty of the 10th March 1859, and Keval Naik followed his example soon after.

Wagher  
Outbreak,  
1859.

In July 1859 the Waghers of Okhamandal, a mahál in Káthiáváda belonging to His Highness the Gaikwár, suddenly seized and plundered Dwarka, Bavala, and Bet. They were led by a Wágher chief named Todá Manik, who alleged that he had been compelled to take up arms by the oppression of the Gaikwár's *kam lérs*, but it is probable that he was encouraged to throw off allegiance by the weakness of the Baroda administration and the belief that he would have to deal with the troops of the Darbár only. He soon found he was in error. Major Christie with 200 sabres of the Gujarát Horse and a wing of the 17th Regiment Native Infantry from Rajkot marched to Mandána on the Ran to cut off the communication between Okhámandal and the Káthiáváda peninsula. The cantonment of Rajkot was reinforced from Ahmedábád by six guns of Aytoun's battery, a wing of the 33rd Regiment and a detachment of the 14th Regiment Native Infantry under Captain Hall, and a naval and military force was at the same time prepared in Bombay for the recovery of Bet and Dwárka as soon as the close of the monsoon should render naval operations on the western coast possible.

Expedition  
against Bet,  
1859.

On the 29th September 1859, the following force embarked in the transports *South Ramilies* and *Empress of India*, towed by Her Majesty's steam-ships *Zenobia* and *Victoria*, and followed by the frigate *Firoz*, the gunboat *Clyde*, and the schooner *Constance* :

Her Majesty's 28th Regiment ...	...	500 Men.
Her Majesty's 6th Regiment Native Infantry ...	...	600 "
Marine Battalion ...	...	200 "
Royal Artillery ...	...	60 "
Sappers and Miners ...	...	90 "

The expedition was under the command of Colonel Donovan

of Her Majesty's 28th Regiment, but it was intended that on arrival at Bet, Colonel Seobie should command the combined naval and military force. Colonel Seobie marched from Rájkot early in October with the wings of Her Majesty's 33rd Regiment and 17th Native Infantry, the 12th Light Field Battery and detachments of the 14th Native Infantry and Gūjarát Horse. Had Colonel Donovan waited for this force he might have effectually invested the fort of Bet, which is situated on an island, and exterminated the rebels; but he was too anxious to distinguish himself before he could be relieved of command. He arrived off Bet on the 4th October 1859, and at sunrise that morning the steam-ships *Firoz*, *Zenobia*, *Clyde*, and *Constance* took up their positions off the fort of Bet and opened fire with shot and shell at 950 yards. The fort replied feebly with a few small guns. Shells effectually scorched the fort and temples occupied by the enemy, but the shot made little impression on the wall which was here thirty feet thick. The bombardment continued throughout the day and at intervals during the night. Next morning Dewa Chabasm, the Wágher chief in command of the fort, opened negotiations for surrender, but he would not consent to the unconditional surrender which was demanded, and after an interval of half an hour the artillery fire was resumed and preparations were made to disembark the troops. They landed under a heavy musketry fire from the fort and adjacent buildings, and an attempt was made to escalate. The ladders were placed against the wall but the storming party of Her Majesty's 28th Regiment and 6th Regiment Native Infantry were repulsed with heavy loss. Captain McCormack of Her Majesty's 28th Regiment, Ensign Willaume of the 6th Regiment, and ten European soldiers were killed, and Captain Glasspoole, Lieutenant Grant of the 6th Native Infantry, and thirty-seven men of the 28th Regiment were wounded, many of them severely. One sepoy of the Marine Battalion was killed and five wounded.

During the night which succeeded this disastrous attack the Wághers evacuated the fort. They reached the mainland, taking with them their women, children and the plunder of the temple, but Dewa Chabasm, the Wágher chief, had been killed the previous day. Considering the large and well-equipped force at Colonel Donovan's disposal and the facilities which the insular position of Bet afforded to a blockading force, the escape of the Wághers almost with impunity, encumbered with women and plunder, did not enhance Colonel Donovan's military reputation. Captain D. Nasmyth, R. E., Field Engineer of the Okhāmandal Force, was directed to destroy the fort of Bet and carried out his instructions most effectually. Some of the Hindu temples nearest the walls were severely shaken by the explosion of the mines, and a great outcry was raised of the desecration of the temples; but if Hindus will convert their temples into fortified enclosures, they must take the consequence when they are occupied by the enemies of the British Government.

Lieutenant Charles Goodfellow, R. E., greatly distinguished himself on this occasion. He earned the Victoria Cross by carrying

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

Expedition  
against Bet,  
1859.

Bet Fort  
Taken.

GUJARAT  
DISTURBANCES,  
1857-1859.

off a wounded man of Her Majesty's 28th Regiment under a very heavy fire. Treasure valued at 3½ lakhs of rupees was taken on board the *Fluor* for safe custody. It was eventually restored to the Pujaris of the temples, but most of the temples had been carefully plundered by the Waghers before the entry of the British force.

Dwarka Fort  
Taken.

Many of the fugitives from Bet took refuge in Dwarka, and Colonel Donovan's force having re-embarked proceeded to Dwarka to await the arrival of Colonel Scobie's small brigade. Scobie's force did not reach Dwarka till October 20th. The Naval Brigade under Lieutenant Sedley with sixteen officers and 110 men had already landed under very heavy matchlock fire, and thrown up a slight breastwork of loose stone within 150 yards of the walls. A field piece from the *Zenobia* and afterwards a thirty-two pounder were placed in position in this work. The successful result of the siege was mainly due to the determined bravery of this small naval force. They repulsed repeated sorties from the fort and inflicted severe losses on the enemy. As soon as the stores and ammunition could be landed, Colonel Donovan took up a position to the north-east of the fort, Colonel Scobie to the south-east, and Captain Hall occupied an intermediate position with detachments of Her Majesty's 33rd Regiment, the 11th Native Infantry, and Gujarât Horse under Lieutenant Pym. The garrison made several determined attempts to break through Captain Hall's position, but they were on each occasion driven back with loss.

The first battery opened fire on the northern face of the fort on October 28th, while the *Zenobia* and the *Fluor* poured a well-directed fire of shells on the houses and temples which sheltered the enemy towards the sea. The shells did immense execution and relieved the attack on the Naval Brigade which continued to hold its position with the greatest gallantry though several times surrounded by the enemy. On the night of the 31st October the garrison evacuated the fort and cut its way through a picket of Her Majesty's 28th Regiment, wounding Ensign Hunter and four men. A detachment under Colonel Christie followed the fugitives next morning and overtook them near Vasatri. A skirmish ensued, but they escaped without much loss and took refuge in the Barda hill. They continued to disturb the peace of Kathuvada for several years. In one of the desultory skirmishes which followed, Lieutenants LaTouche and Hebbert were killed.

Rising in  
Nagar Parkar

While these events were in progress, Karranji Hatti the Râna of Nagar Parkar on the Sindh frontier of Gujarat, took up arms at the head of a band of Sodhâs, plundered the treasury and telegraph office at Nagar Parkar, and released the prisoners in the jail. Colonel Evans commanded the field force which was employed against him for many months without any very definite results. The country is a desert and the Sodhâs avoided a collision with the troops. The Râna eventually submitted and peace was restored.

## APPENDIX III

### BHINMAL,

BHINMAL,<sup>1</sup> North Latitude 24° 42' East Longitude 72° 4', the historical Srimāl, the capital of the Gurjars from about the sixth to the ninth century, lies about fifty miles west of Abu hill. The site of the city is in a wide plain about fifteen miles west of the last outlier of the Abu range. To the east, between the hills and Bhinmāl, except a few widely-separated village sites, the plain is chiefly a grazing ground with bricket of thorn and cassia bushes overtopped by standards of the camel-loved *pilu* *Salvadora persica*. To the south, the west, and the north the plain is smooth and bare passing westwards into sand. From the level of the plain stand out a few isolated blocks of hill, 500 to 800 feet high, of which one peak, about a mile west of the city, is crowned by the shrine of Chāmunda the Śrī or Luck of Bhinmāl. From a distance the present Bhinmāl shows few traces of being the site of an ancient capital. Its 1500 houses cover the gentle slope of an artificial mound, the level of their roofs broken by the spires of four Jain temples and by the ruined state office at the south end of the mound. Closer at hand the number and size of the old stone-stripped tank and fortification mounds and the large areas honeycombed by diggers' for bricks show that the site of the present Bhinmāl was once the centre of a great and widespread city. Of its fortifications, which as late as A.D. 1611, the English merchant Nicholas Uffet, in a journey from Jhalor to Ahmedābād, describes as enclosing a circuit of thirty-six miles (24 *kos*) containing many fine tanks going to ruin, almost no trace remains.<sup>2</sup> The names of some of the old gates are remembered, Surya in the north-east, Śrī Lakshmi in the south-east, Sanchor in the west, and Jhalor in the north. Sites are pointed out

Appendix III.

BHINMAL:  
Description.

<sup>1</sup> The translations of the inscriptions and the bulk of the history are the work of Mr. A. M. T. Jackson of the Indian Civil Service.

<sup>2</sup> Finch in Kerr's Voyages, VIII, 301. Thirty years later the traveller Favernier (Bibliothèque, II, 87) has 'Barga'. 'Wandering in Jodhpur' to Bimal 15 *kos*. But to Mr. Jackson, Of Jhalor Uffet has left the following description. Jhalor is a site on the top of a steep mountain three *kos* in ascent by a fine stone causeway broad enough for two men. At the end of the first *kos* is a gate and a place of guard where the causeway is enclosed on both sides with walls. At the end of the second *kos* is a double gate strongly fortified, and at the third *kos* is the castle which is entered by three successive gates. The first is very strongly plated with iron, the second not so strong with plates above for throwing down melted lead or boiling oil, and the third is thickly beset with iron spikes. Between each of these gates are spacious places of arms and at the inner gate is a strong portcullis. A bowshot within the castle is a splendid pagoda, built by the founders of the castle and ancestors of Ghazni (Gjdney), Khan who were Gentiles. He turned Muhammadan and deprived his elder brother of this castle by the following stratagem. Having invited him and his women to a banquet which his brother requited by a similar entertainment he substituted chosen soldiers well armed instead of women, sending them two and two in a *dhuk* or litter who getting in by this device gained possession of the gates and held the place for the Great Moghal to whom it now (A.D. 1611) appertains being one of the strongest situated forts in the world. About half a *kos* within the gate is a goodly square tank cut out of the solid rock said to be fifty fathoms deep and full of excellent water. Quoted by Finch in Kerr's Voyages, VIII, 300-301.

## Appendix III.

BHIMMAL.  
Description.

as old gateways five to six miles to the east and south-east of the present town and though their distance and isolation make it hard to believe that these ruined rounds were more than outworks, Ulliet's testimony seems to establish the correctness of the local memory.<sup>1</sup> Besides these outlying gateways traces remain round the foot of the present Bhimmal mound of a smaller and later wall. To the east and south the line of fortification has been so cleared of masonry and is so confused with the lines of tank banks which perhaps were worked into the scheme of defence, that all accurate local knowledge of their position has passed. The Gujarāt gate in the south of the town though ruined is well marked. From the Gujarāt gateway a line of mounds may be traced south and then west to the ruins of Pipalduarā perhaps the western gateway. The wall seems then to have turned east crossing the watercourse and passing inside that is along the east bank of the watercourse north to the south-west corner of the Jaikop or Yaksha lake. From this corner it ran east along the south bank of Jaikop to the Jhalor or north gate which still remains in fair preservation its pointed arch showing it to be of Musalmān or late (17th-18th century) Rāhtor construction. From the Jhalor gate the foundations of the wall may be traced east to the Kanaksen or Karāda tank. The area to the east of the town from the Karāda tank to the Gujarāt gate has been so quarried for brick to build the present Bhimmal that no sign remains of a line of fortifications running from the Karāda tank in the east to the Gujarāt gate in the south.

The site of the present town the probable centre of the old city, is a mound stretching for about three-quarters of a mile north and south and swelling twenty to thirty feet out of the plain. On almost all sides its outskirts are protected by well made thorn fences enclosing either garden land or the pens and folds of Rabāris and Bhils. The streets are narrow and winding. The dwellings are of three classes, the flat mud-roofed houses of the Mahājans or traders and of the better-to-do Brāhmins and craftsmen with canopied doors and fronts plastered with white clay. Second the tiled sloping-roofed sheds of the bulk of the craftsmen and gardeners and of the better-off Rabāris and Bhils, and third the thatched bee-hive huts of the bulk of the Rabāris and Bhils and of some of the poorer craftsmen and husbandmen. Especially to the north-west and west the houses are skirted by a broad belt of garden land. In other parts patches of watered crops are separated by the bare banks of old tanks or by stretches of plain covered with thorn and cassia bushes or roughened by the heaps of old buildings honey-combed by shafts sunk by searchers for bricks. Besides the four spired temples to Parasnāth the only outstanding building is the old *kacheri* or state office a mass of ruins which tops the steep south end of the city mound.

Of the 1400 inhabited houses of Bhimmal the details are, Mahājans 175, chiefly Oswāl Vānis of many subdivisions; Shrivāth Brāhmins, 200, Shrivāth, 35, Maga Brāhmins worshippers of the sun and priests to Oswāls, Sonārs, 30; Bāndhāras or Calico-printers, 35; Kāsāras or Brass-smiths 1, Ghānchis or Oilpressers, 30, Mālis or Gardeners, 25, Kāthins or Woodworkers, 12, Bhāts 120 including 80 Gunas or Grain-carriers.

<sup>1</sup> The names of these gateways are Surajpur about six miles (4 kos) east of Bhimmal near Khimpur at the site of a temple of Mahādev; Savidar about six miles (4 kos) to the south near a temple of Hanumān; Dharamdhar near Vandar about six miles (1 kos) west of Bhimmal at the site of a large well; Kishubhivao about six miles (1 kos) to the north near Nutan at the site of a large well and stones. Rattan Lal Pahlit.

and 40 Rājbhats or Brāhma Bhāts, Genealogists<sup>1</sup>, Kumbhārs or Potters, 12; Musalmān Potters, 4, Rehbaris or Herdsmen, 70<sup>2</sup>; Shādhis Beggars, 10, Shāmān, Ahiks Beggars, 10; Kotwāl and Panjāra Musalmāns, 15, Lohars or Blacksmiths, 3, Darjis or Tailors, 12; Nais or Barbers, 7; Bhūmias that is Solanki Jagudās, 15<sup>3</sup>; Kavās Bhūmīs servants, 12, Jāts Cultivators, 2; Deshastris or Saturday Oilbeggars, 1; Achāryas or Funeral Brahmins, 1, Dhols Drumbeaters, 12, Patras or Professionals that is Dancing Girls, 30<sup>4</sup>, Tuṅki Vohoras that is Alemons, 2, Vishayati Musalmān Pallock-makers, 1; Rangrez or Dyers, 2; Mochis or Shoemakers, 30; Karnas or Solivats that is Masons, 6; Churigars Musalmān Ivory bangle-makers, 2, Jatiyas or Tanners, 17, Khatiks or Butchers working as tanners, 1, Sargaras, Bhil messengers, 1; Bhils, 120, Targars or Arrow-makers, 5, Goradas priests to Bombas leather-workers, 2, Bombas literally Weavers now Leather-workers, 10, Wāghra Castrator, 1, Māsis Musalmān Drummers, 8, Mehtars or Sweepers, 1. •

Inside of the town the objects of interest are few. The four temples of Pārasnāth are either modern or altered by modern repairs. A rest-house to the south of a temple of Barāgi or Varāha the Boar in the east of the town has white marble pillars with inscriptions of the eleventh and thirteenth centuries which show that the pillars have been brought from the ruined temple of the sun or Jag Svāmī Lord of the World on the mound about eighty yards east of the south or modern Guparāt gate. In the west of the town, close to the wall of the enclosure of the old Mahalakshmi temple, is a portion of a white marble pillar with an

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
People.

Objects.  
In the Town.

<sup>1</sup> The Shramāh Brahman-Bhats are of the following subdivisions. Dhondaleshyar, Har, Hera, Loh, Peshsha, Pitāhi, and Varmā. They say Shramāh is their original home.

<sup>2</sup> The local explanation of Rehbari is liver out of the way. Their subdivisions are: Ak, Buod, Gungaro, Dagāhi, Gūson, Gungāhi, Kulotia, Karamtha, Naurā, Pama, Prandāra, Roj. All are strong dark full-bearded men.

<sup>3</sup> The importance of Bhinmal as a centre of population is shown not only by the Shramāh Brahmins and Vāms who are spread all over Guparāt, but by the Porwars—class of Vāms now unrepresented in their native town who are said to take their name from a suburb of Bhinmal. Oswāls, almost all of whom are Shrivaks or followers of the Jain religion, have practically spread from Bhinmal. The origin of the name Oswāl is (Trans. Roy. As. Soc. III, 337) from Osi the Mother or Luck of Osi-nagar an ancient town and still a place of pilgrimage about eighteen miles north of Jodhpur. The Oswāls were originally Rājputs of several classes including Pawār but mainly Solankis and so apparently (Tod's Western India, 209) of Gurjara origin. Equally of Gurjara origin are the Shramāh Vāms who hold a specially high place among Western Indian Jains. The care taken by the Jains to secure foreign conquerors within their fold is notable. The Tirthankar is a Raja who by pity and other virtues attained *moksha*. His son The fifty-four worshippers *attama-purush*, the forty-four *tirthankars*, the twelve *chakravartis*, the nine *baladars* and the nine *casadars* are Rājputs, most of them great conquerors (Trans. Royal Asiatic Society, III 338-341). The local story is that the Solankis were called to help the people of Shramāh to resist the Songara Rājputs of Jhalor who took Bhinmal about A.D. 1290. Before that the Shramāhs and Solankis were enemies. This tradition of hostility is interesting as it may go back to A.D. 740 when Mūlārāja Solanki transferred the seat of power from Bhinmal to Anahilavīda Patan. (See below page 469.) A class who trace to Bhinmal are the Pitāls or Kālīs of Marwar (Marwar Castes, 41). They claim descent from Rājput men and Brāhman women. In support of the tradition the women still keep separate neither eating with nor using the same vessels as their husbands.

<sup>4</sup> These dancing girls hold land. They are said to have been brought by the Songara Rājputs, who according to the local account retreating from Ala-ud-din Khilji (A.D. 1290) took Bhinmal from the Shramāh Brāhmins.

<sup>5</sup> The Jatiyas all Hindus of the three subdivisions Balta, Sunkaria, and Talvāra came from Mandu near Dhar in Central India. The name is locally derived from *jatukarta* a skin.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Objects

## Surroundings.

inscription, dated S. 1342 (A.D. 1286) which apparently has been brought from the same ruined sun temple. In the *kacheri* ruins at the south end of the mound the only object of interest is a small shrine to Mata with two snakes supporting her seat and above in modern characters the words *Nágane* the *kuldari* or tribe guardian of the Raltors.

The chief object of interest at Bhinmal is the ruined temple of the Sun on a mound close to the south of the town. Of this temple and its inscriptions details are given below. About fifty yards west of the Sun temple are the remains of a gateway known as the Gujarát gateway. This modern name and the presence near it of blocks of the white quartz-marble of the Sun temple make it probable that the gateway is not older than Muslim or eighteenth century Ráhtor times. Close to the west of the gate is Kham Báva the Salt Well an old step and water bag well with many old stones mixed with brick work. About a hundred yards south of the Gujarát gate, in a brick-walled enclosure about sixteen yards by eight and nine feet high topped by a shield parapet, is the shrine of Mahádeva Naulakheshwar. An inscription dated S. 1800 (A.D. 1744) states that the enclosure marks the site of an old temple to Naulakheshwar. About fifty yards east of the Naulakheshwar shrine is a large brick enclosure about seventy-five yards square with walls about twelve feet high and a pointed-arched gateway in the Muslim wave-edged style. On entering, to the left, is a plinth with a large Hanuman and further to the left in domed shrines are a Ganpati and a Mátá. A few paces south is Brahma's Pool or Brahmakhund with steep steps on the west and north, a rough stone and brick wall to the east, and a circular well to the south. The pool walls and steps have been repaired by stones taken from Hindu temples or from former decorations of the pool on some of which are old figures of Matas in good repair. The story is that Som, according to one account the builder of the Sun temple according to another account a restorer of Shrinál, wandering in search of a cure for leprosy, came to the south gate of Shrinál. Som's dog which was suffering from mange disappeared and soon after appeared sound and clean. The king traced the dog's footmarks to the Brahmakhund, bathed in it, and was cured. As a thank-offering he surrounded the pool with masonry walls. To the south of the pool, to the right, are an underground *ling* sacred to Pataleshwar the lord of the Under World and south of the *ling* a small domed shrine of Chandi Devi. To the left, at the east side of a small brick enclosure, is a snake-canopied *ling* known as Chandeshwar hung about with strings of *radriksh* *Elaeagnus gamitrus* beads.<sup>1</sup> In front of Chandeshwar's shrine is a small inscribed stone with at its top a cow and calf recording a land grant to Shrináli Bráhmans. About forty yards north-east of the Brahmakhund a large straggling heap of brick and earth now known as Lakshmithala or Lakshmi's settlement, is said to be the site of a temple to Lakshmi built, according to the local

<sup>1</sup> According to a local story there was a hermitage of Jangams near the temple of Jagandeva the Sun-God and a hermitage of Bharatis near Chandeshwar's shrine. In a fight between the rival ascetics many were slain and the knowledge where their treasure was stored passed away. When repairs were made in A.D. 1814 (S. 1870) the Bharati hermitage was cleared. Two large earthen pots were found one of which still stands at the door of Chandeshwar's temple. These pots contained the treasure of the Bharatis. In A.D. 1814 nothing but white dust was found. Most of the dust was thrown away till a Jain ascetic came and examined the white dust. The ascetic called for an iron rod, heated the rod, sprinkled it with the white dust, and the iron became gold.

legend, by a Brāhman to whom in return for his devotedness Lakshmi had given great wealth. The hollow to the south-east is known as the Khandālia pool. About fifty yards south-east at the end of a small enclosure is a shrine and cistern of Jagatishwar, said to be called after a certain Jag who in return for the gift of a son built the temple. Several old carved and dressed stones are built into the walls of this temple. About seventy-five yards further south-east a large area rough with heaps of brick is said to be the site of an old Vaidya-Sāla or Sanskrit College. This college is mentioned in the local Mahātmya as a famous place of learning the resort of scholars from distant lands.<sup>1</sup> The local account states that as the Bhils grew too powerful the Brāhmins were unable to live in the college and retired to Dholka in north Gujarat.

The slope and skirts of the town beyond the thorn-fenced enclosures of Bhils and Rākshas lie in heaps honeycombed with holes hollowed by searchers for bricks. Beyond this tangle of fenced enclosures from a half to a whole mile from the city are the bare white banks of pools and tanks some for size worthy to be called lakes. Of these, working from the south northwards, the three chief are the Nimbali or Narmukhsarovar, the Goni or Gayakund, and the Talbi or Trimbaksarovar. The Nimbali tank, about 300 yards south-east of the college site, is a large area opening eastwards whence it draws its supply of water and enclosed with high bare banks scattered with bricks along the south west and north. The lake is said to be named Nimbali after a Vāni to whom Mahādeva granted a son and for whom Mahādeva formed the hollow of the lake by plunging it with his thunderbolt. About half a mile north-east of Nimbali a horseshoe bank fifteen to thirty feet high, except to the open east, is the remains of the Goni lake. Lanes of stone along the foot of the north-west and north-east banks shew that portions at least of these sides were once lined with masonry. A trace of steps remains at a place known as the Gan Ghat or Cowgate. The lake is said to have been named Goni after a Brahman whose parents being eaten by a Rākshas went to hell. For their benefit Goni devoted his life to the worship of Vishnu and built a temple and lake. In reward Vishnu gave to the water of the lake the merit or cleansing virtue of the water of Gāya. In the foreground a row of small *chattras* or pavilions marks the burying ground of the Mahajan or high Hindu community of Bhinmal. Behind the pavilions are the bare banks of the Talbi lake. At the west end is the Bombāro well and near the south-west is the shrine of Trimbakeshvar Mahadev. This lake is said to have been made in connection with a great sacrifice or *yag*, that is *yajna*, held by Brahmins to induce or to compel the god Trimbakeshvar to slay the demon *Trishasur*. Beginning close to the south of Talbi lake and stretching north-west towards the city is the Karadā Sarovar or Karadā lake said to have been built by Kanaksen or Kanishka the great founder of the Skythian era (A.D. 78). On the western bank of the lake stands an open air *ling* of Karatishwar.<sup>2</sup> At the south end of the Karadā

### Appendix III.

#### BHINMAL.

#### Objects. Surroundings.

<sup>1</sup> According to Alberuni (A.D. 1030) the Brahmasiddhānta was composed by Brahmagupta the son of Jishnu from the town of Bhinmal between Multan and Anhilwara. Sachau's Translation, I. 153. Another light of the college was the Sanskrit poet Magha, the son of Simālī parents, who is said to have lived in the time of Bhoj Rāja of Ujjain (A.D. 1010-1040). Mārwar Castes, 68.

<sup>2</sup> The local account explains the origin of the name Kanak which also means gold by the story of a Bhil who was drowned on the waxing fifth of Bhādarva. The Bhil's wife who was with him failing to drown herself prepared a funeral pyre. Mahādeva pleased with the woman's devotion restored her husband to life and made his body shine like gold. As a thankoffering the Bhil enlarged the tank and built a shrine to Kirat Mahādeva.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.

Object.

Surroundings.

lake, which stretches close to the fenced enclosures round the city, are the remains of a modern bastion and of a wall which ruins north-west to the Jhalor gate. Beyond the site of the bastion is an enclosure and shrine of Maheshwar Mahadev. To the north and north-west of the Karat sea lie four large tanks. Of these the most eastern, about 300 yards north-west of Karat, is Brahmasarovar a large area fed from the north and with high broken banks. Next about 500 yards north-west lies the far-stretching Vankund or Forest Pool open to the north-east. About 800 yards west is Gautam's tank which holds water throughout the year. The banks of brick and *kankar* form nearly a complete circle except at the feeding channels in the east and south. In the centre of the lake is an islet on which are the white-stone foundations (19' x 12') of Gautam's hermitage. On the bank above the east feeding-channel is an image of Hanuman and on the east side of the southern channel at the foot of the bank is a white inscribed stone with letters so worn that nothing but the date S. 1106 (A.D. 1039) has been made out. Of the balls of *kankar* or nodular limestone which are piled into the bank of the tank those which are pierced with holes are lucky and are kept to guard wooden partitions against the attacks of insects. The last and westmost of the north row of tanks is the Jakop properly Jakshkop that is the Yaksha's Pool about 600 yards south-west of the Gautam tank and close to the north-west of the town.<sup>1</sup> This tank holds water throughout the year and supplies most of the town's demand. Along the south bank of the Jakop, where are tombs a shrine to Bhairav and a ruined mosque the line of the later city walls used to run. At the south-east corner of the tank are three square masonry plinths each with a headstone carved with the figure of a man or woman. One of the plinths which is adorned with a pillared canopy has a stone carved with a man on horseback and a standing woman in memory of a Tehsildar of Bhinmal of recent date (S. 1200; A.D. 1812) whose wife became *Sati*. About 200 yards south-east is a row of white *pilli* or memorial slabs of which the third from the south end of the row is dated S. 1245 (A.D. 1786). On the south-east bank is the shrine of Nimghorra Bhairav at which Shrivaks as well as other Hindus worship. In the centre of the shrine is a leaning pillar about five feet high with four fronts, Hanuman on the east, a standing Snake on the south, a Sakti on the west, and Bhairav on the north. To the south of the pillar, about a foot out of the ground rises a five-faced *ling* or pillar-home of the god one facing each quarter of the heaven and one uncarved facing the sky. Close to a well within the circuit of the lake near the south-east corner is a stone inscribed with letters which are too worn to be read. At the east end of the north bank under a *jila* *Salvadora persica* tree is a massive seated figure still worshipped and still dignified though the features have been broken off, and the left lower arm and leg and both feet have disappeared. This is believed to be the image of the Yaksha king who made the tanks. Details are given below pages 156-158. To the west of the seated statue are the marks of the foundations of a temple, shrine hall and outer hall, which is believed to have originally been the shrine of Yaksh. About a hundred yards west, under a pillared canopy of white quartz, are two Musalmán

<sup>1</sup> The local explanation of the name Yaksha's Pool is that Ravana went to Abaka the city of the great Yaksha Kuvera god of wealth and stole Pushpak Kuvera's *gund* or carrier. Kuvera in sorrow asked his father what he should do to recover his carrier. The father said Worship in Shrinál. Kuvera came to Shrinál and worshipped Brahma who appeared to him and said. When Rámchandra destroys Ravana he will bring back Pushpak.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.

Objects.

Surroundings.

graves in honour of Ghazni Khán and Hamál Khán who were killed about 400 years ago at Jhalor fighting for Shrinál. In obedience to their dying request their Bháts brought the champions' bodies to Yakshi's tank. The white quartz, the shape of the pillars, and an inscription on one of them dated S. 1333 (A.D. 1276), go to show that the stones have been brought from the Sun temple to the south of the town. To the north of the canopy is a large step-well the Dadelí Well separated into an outer and an inner section by a row of Hindu pillars supporting flat architraves. Some of the stones have figures of goddesses and in a niche is an old goddess' image. The upper part of the well and the parapet are of recent brick work. On a low mound about 150 yards to the north is the shrine of Nilkanth Mahadev, with, about a hundred paces to the south-east a fine old step-well. The lake was fed from the south-west corner where is a silt trap built of stones in many cases taken from old temples and carved with the *chaitya* or horse-shoe ornament. Some of the stones have apparently been brought from the great white quartz Sun temple. Several of them have a few letters of the fourteenth century character apparently the names of masons or carvers. Some of the blocks are of a rich red sandstone which is said to be found only in the Rupe quarries eight miles south of Bhinmal.

On the right about half a mile south of the south-west corner of the Jaikop lake, is a ruined heap hid among trees called the Pipal Duara or Gateway perhaps the remains of the western Gateway which may have formed part of the later line of fortifications which can be traced running south along the inner bank of the Jaikop feeding channel. About a mile south of the Pipal Duara are the bare banks of the large lake Bansaván the Desert Sea. To the north-west north and north-east its great earthen banks remain stripped of their masonry gradually sloping to the west and south the direction of its supply of water. The island in the centre is Lakhana. This lake was made by Gauri or Parvati when she came from Sunda hill to slay the female demon Utamnyar. When Parvati killed the demon she piled over her body Shri's hill which she had brought with her to form a burial mound. At the same time Parvati scooped the tank, and crowned Shri's hill with a tower-like temple. This hill where lives the Sri or Luck of Shrinál, rises 500 feet out of the plain about a mile west of the town. It is approached from the south by a flight of unhewn stones roughly laid as steps. The hill-top is smoothed into a level pavement of brick and cement. The pavement is supported on the east side by a lofty bastion-like wall. It is surrounded by a parapet about two feet high. On the platform two shrines face each other. To the left or south is the main temple of Lakshmi and to the right or north the smaller shrine of Sunda Mátá. The main shrine has a porch with pillars and shield face of white quartz limestone apparently spoils of the great Sun Temple. Three or four bells hang from the roof of the porch and some loose white stones apparently also from the Sun temple are scattered about. In the west wall of the main shrine facing east is the image of the Guardian of Bhinmal covered with red paint and gold leaf. The only trace of ornament on the outside of Lakshmi's shrine is in the north-face portion of a belt of the horse-shoe or *chaitya* pattern and a disc perhaps the disc of the Sun. The smaller shrine of Sunda Mátá to the right or north is square and flat-roofed. The ceiling is partly made of carved stones apparently prepared for, perhaps formerly the centre slabs of domes. The door posts and lintels are of white quartz marble. On the right door post are two short inscriptions of A.D. 1612 and 1664 (S. 1669 and 1691). A second pillar bears the date A.D. 1513

## Appendix III.

## BHINMAL.

## Objects.

## Surroundings.

(S. 1600). The roof is supported by four square central pillars which with eight wall pilasters form four shallow domes with lotus carved roof-stones from some other or some older temple. In a recess in the west wall, surmounted with a stone carved in the *chutqa* or horse-shoe pattern, is the Trident or *Trishula* of Sunda, Mita the only object of worship.

From the hill-top the mound of Bhinmal hardly seems to stand out of the general level. The mound seems hidden in trees. Only in the south gleam the white pillars of the Sun Temple and to the north rise the high mound of the old offices, and still farther north the spires of the four temples of Parasnath. Beyond the town to the south and west spread green gardens fenced with dry thorn hedges. Outside of the garden enclosures to the south-east south and south-west run the lofty bare banks of dry lakes confused in places with the lines of old fortifications. To the north-west and north shine the waters of the Jaikop and Gautam tanks. Westwards the plain, dark with thorn brake and green with acacias, stretches to the horizon. On other sides the sea-like level of the plain is broken by groups of hills the Borta range along the north and north-east and to the east the handsomer Ratnagar, Thar, and Ram Sen rising southwards to the lofty clean-cut ranges of Dodala and Sankla.

Only two objects of interest in Bhinmal require special description, the massive broken statue of the Jakska or Yaksha on the north bank of the Jaikop lake, and the temple to Jagdsann the Sun at the south-east entrance to the city.

## Jaikop.

On the north bank of the Jaikop or Yaksha Lake,<sup>1</sup> leaning against the stem of a *pilu* or *jil* *Salvadora persica* tree is a massive stone about 4' high by 2' 6" broad and 1' thick. The block is carved with considerable skill into the seated figure of a king. The figure is greatly damaged by the blows of a mace. The nose and mouth are broken off, half of the right hand and the whole of the left hand and leg are gone and the feet and almost the whole of the seat or throne have disappeared. The figure is seated on a narrow lion-supported throne or *sukhasan* the right hand resting on the right knee and holding a round ball of stone about six inches in diameter. The left foot was drawn back like the right foot and the left hand apparently lay on the left knee, but as no trace remains except the fracture on the side of the stone the position of the left hand and of the left leg is uncertain. The head is massive. The hair falls about

<sup>1</sup> No local tradition throws light on the reason why this figure is called a Yaksha. The holding a bead in his hand suggests that he may have been a guardian Bhairav in some Buddhist temple and so remembered as a guardian or Yaksha. Or he may have been supposed to be a statue of the builder of the temple and so have been called a Yaksha since that word was used for a race of skilful architects and craftsmen. Troyer's *Rajatarangini*, I. 369. In the Vriji temples in Tirhut which Buddhist accounts make older than Buddhism the objects of worship were ancestral spirits who were called Yakshas. If the Buddhist legends of Saka settlements in Tirhut during Gautama's lifetime (A.D. 540) have any historical value these Vrijis were Sakas. As (J. As. Ser. VI. Tom. II. page 310) Yaka is a Mongol form of Saka the ancestral guardians would be Sakas. Compare in Eastern Siberia the Turki tribe called Yakuts by the Russians and Sakhas by themselves, *Esay. Brit.* XXIV. 725. This would explain why the mythic Yaksha was a guardian, a builder, and a white horseman. It would explain why the name Yaksha was given to the Baktrian Greeks who built stupas and conquered India for Asoka (J. As. Ser. VII. Vol. VI. page 170; Haeley in *Indian Antiquary*, IV. 101). It further explains how the name came to be applied to the Yuechi or Kushans who like the Yavanas were guardians white horsemen and builders. In Sindh and Kachh the word Yaksha seems to belong to the white Syrian horsemen who formed the strength of Muhammad Kusun's army, A.D. 712. (Tod's *Western India*, 197; Reinaud's *Fragments*, 191; Briggs' *Ferishtah*, IV. 404-409).

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.

Objects.

Jaiskop.

two feet from the crown of the head in four long lines of curls on to the shoulders, and, over the curls, or what seems more likely the curled wig, is a diadem or *mukut* with a central spike and two upright side ornaments connected by two round bands. The face is broken flat. It seems to have been clean shaved or at least beardless. A heavy ring hangs from each ear. A stiff collar-like band encircles the neck and strings of beads or plates hang on the chest too worn to be distinguished. On both arms are upper armlets, a centre lion-face still showing clear on the left armlet. On the right hand is a bracelet composed of two outer bands and a central row of beads. A light belt encircles the waist. Lower down are the *kandora* or hip girdle and the *kapul* or *dhoti* knot.<sup>1</sup> In spite of its featureless face and its broken hands and feet the figure has considerable dignity. The head is well-set and the curls and diadem are an effective ornament. The chest and the full rounded belly are carved with skill. The main fault in proportion, the overshortened lower arm and leg and the narrowness of the throne are due to the want of depth in the stone. The chief details of interest are the figure's head-dress and the ball of stone in its right hand. The head-dress seems to be a wig with a row of crisp round curls across the brow and four lines of long curls hanging down to the shoulders and crisp curls on the top of the head. The *mukut* or diadem has three upright faces, a front face over the nose and side faces over the ears joined together by two rounded bands. At first sight the stone ball in the right hand seems a coconut which the king might hold in dedicating the lake. Examination shows on the left side of the ball an outstanding semicircle very like a human ear. Also that above the ear are three rolls as if turban folds. And that the right ear may be hid either by the end of the turban drawn under the chin or by the fingers of the half-closed hand. That the front of the ball has been wilfully smashed further supports the view that it was its human features that drew upon it the Muslim mace. The local Brahmans contend that the ball is either a round sweetmeat or a handful of mud held in the right hand of the king during the dedication service. But Tappa a Brahm-Bhat, a man of curiously correct information, was urgent that the stone ball is a human head. Tappa gives the following tale to explain why the king should hold a human head in his hand. An evil spirit called Satka had been wasting the Brahmans by carrying off the head of each bridegroom so soon as a wedding ceremony was completed. The king vowed that by the help of his goddess Chamunda he would put a stop to this evil. The marriage of a hundred Brahman couples was arranged for one night. The king sat by. So long as the king remained awake the demon did not appear. When the hundredth marriage was being performed the king gave way to sleep. Satka dashed in and carried off the last bridegroom's head. The girl-bride awoke the king and said I will curse you. You watched for the others, for me you did not watch. The king said to his Luck Chamunda, What shall I do? Chamunda said Ride after Satka. The king rode after Satka. He overtook her fourteen miles out of Shrinmal and killed her. But before her

<sup>1</sup> The measurements are: Height 1'; head round the brow to behind the ear the back of the head not being cut free, 2' 6"; height of head-dress, 8"; length of face, 10"; length of ringlets or wig curls from the crown of the head, 2'; breadth of face, 9"; across the shoulders, 2' 3"; throat to waistband, 1'; waistband to loose hip-belt or *kandora*, 1' 3"; right shoulder to elbow, 1'; elbow to wrist, 9"; head in the right hand 5" high 7" across top; hip to broken knee, 1'; knee to ankle, 1' 5"; foot broken off. Left shoulder to broken upper arm, 8"; left leg broken off leaving a fracture which shows it was drawn back like the right leg.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.

Objects.

Jaikop

death Satku had eaten the bridegroom's head. What is to be done the king asked Chamaunda. Trust me said his guardian. The king rode back to Shrināl. As he was entering the city the goddess pointed out to him a gardener or Māli and said Off with his head: The king obeyed. The goddess caught the falling head, stuck it to the bridegroom's neck, and the bridegroom came to life. Thus, ends the Jāle, the local Brāhman are known as Shrinālis that is men with gardeners' heads. This meaning-making pun and the likeness of the stone-bull to a human head may be the origin of this story. On the other hand the story may be older than the image and may be the reason why the king is shown holding a human head in his hand. On the whole it seems likely that the story was made to explain the image and that the image is a Bhairav holding the head of a human sacrifice and acting as gatekeeper or guardian of some Buddhist or Śiva-worshipping temple.<sup>1</sup> The appearance of the figure, its massive well-proportioned and dignified pose, and the long wiglike curls, like the big wig on the figure of Chānd on the south-west or marriage compartment of the great Elephanta Cave, make it probable that this statue is the oldest relic of Shrināl, belonging like the Elephanta wigged figures to the sixth or early seventh century the probable date of the founding or refounding of the city by the Gurjjaras.<sup>2</sup> According to the local story the image stands about twenty paces east of the temple where it was originally enshrined and worshipped. The lie of the ground and traces of foundations seem to show about fifty paces west of the present image the sites of an entrance porch, a central hall or *mandap*, and a western shrine. The surface of what seemed the site of the shrine was dug about two feet deep on the chance that the base of the throne might still be in situ. Nothing was found but loose brickwork. Mutilated as he is the Yaksha is still worshipped. His high day is the *A'shad* (July-August) fullmoon when as rain-mediator between them and Indra the villagers lay in front of him *yagri*, that is wheat boiled in water and milk, butter, flour, molasses, and sugar.

<sup>1</sup> The Jains call the guardian figures at Sanchi Bhairavas. Massey's Sanchi, pages 7 and 25. Bhairava is revered as a guardian by the Buddhists of Nepal and Tibet. Compare Burgess' Buddha Rock Temples page 96. A connection between Bhairav and the Sun is shown by the practice among Ajmer Gujar women of wearing round the neck a medal of Bhairava before marriage and of the Sun after marriage.

<sup>2</sup> The Egyptians, Romans and Parthians are the three chief wig-wearers. Some of the Parthian kings (B.C. 250 - A.D. 240) had elaborate hair like perukes and frizzled beards. In Trajan's time (A.D. 133), fashions changed so quickly that Roman statues were hairless and provided with wigs. Gohman Histoire Des Perses, II, 530. Compare Wagner's Manners, 69. The number of wigs in the Elephanta sculptures, probably of the sixth or early seventh century, is notable. In the panel of Śiva and Parvati in Kailāś are several figures with curly wigs. Burgess Elephanta, page 33; of the marriage panel one figure has his hair curled like a barrister's wig, Ditto 31; in the Ardhanarishwara compartment Garuda and two other figures have wigs, Ditto 22; the dwarf demon on which one of the guardians of the Trimurti kṛāṇa has a wig, Ditto 14-15, finally in the west wing wigged figures uphold the throne, Ditto 47. Gandharvas in the Brāhmanic Rāvan cave at Elura probably of the seventh century have curly wigs. Fergusson and Burgess, 435. Wigged images also occur in some of the Elura Buddhist caves of the sixth or seventh centuries. Ditto, 370-371. In Ajanta caves I, II, and XXXIV, of the sixth and seventh centuries are cherubs and grotesques with large wigs. Among the Bāgh carvings and paintings of the sixth or seventh century are a king with baggy hair if not a wig and small human heads with full wigs: MN. Notes. Finally at the Chāndi Sēwa temple in Java of about the seventh century the janitor and other figures have large full-bottomed wigs curled all over. Indian Ant. for Aug. 1876, 240-241. On the other hand except the curly haired or Astrakan-capped music boys in Sanchi no trace of wigs seems to occur in the Bhilsa Sanchi or Bharut sculptures between the third century after and the third century before the Christian era. Compare Cunningham's Bhairut and Bhilsa; Massey's Sanchi, Fergusson's Tree and Serpent Worship.

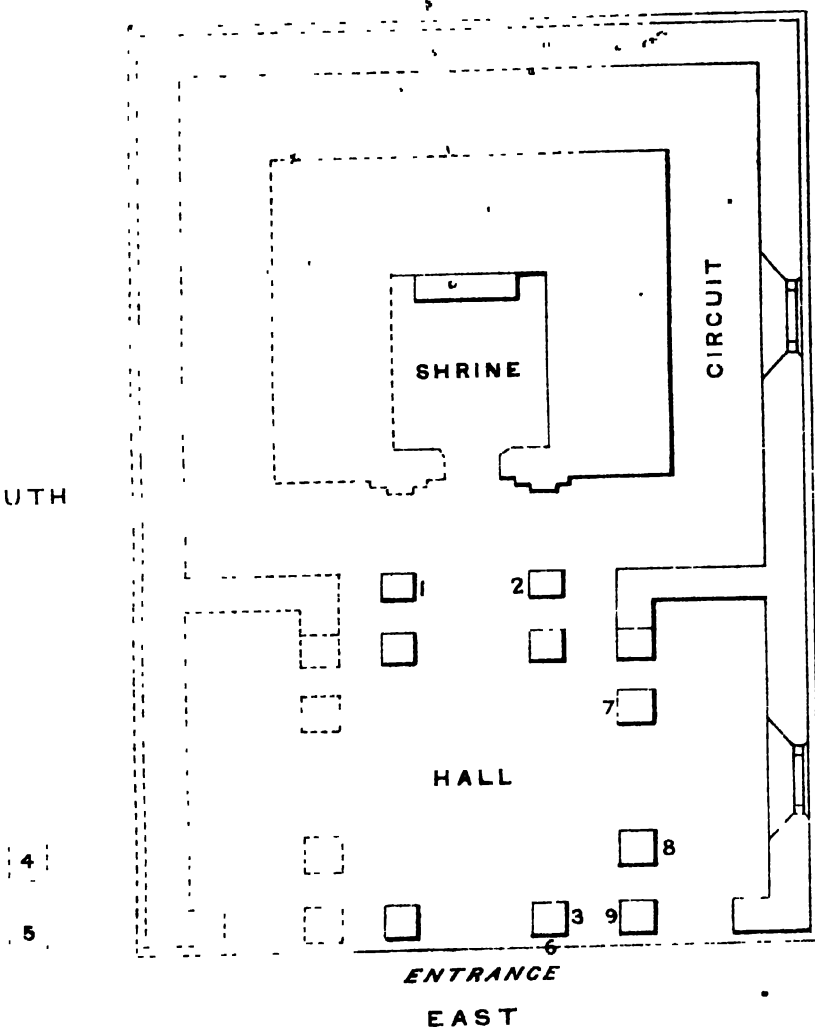


# BHINMÁL (SRIMÁL)

WEST

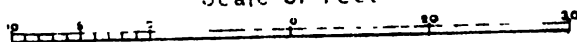
SOUTH

NORT



## TEMPLE OF JAG SVÁMI THE SUN (Rumed)

Scale of Feet



## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Sun Temple.

The second and main object of interest is the ruined Sun temple in the south of the town on a brick mound about eighty yards east of the remains of the Gujarát gateway. The brick mound which is crowned by the white marble pillars and the massive laterite ruins of the temple of Jagsvámi Lord of the World has been so dug into that its true form and size cannot be determined. The size of many of the bricks  $1' 16'' \times 1' \times 3''$  suggests that the mound is older even than the massive laterite masonry of the shrine. And that here as at Multán about the sixth century during the supremacy of the sun-worshipping White Húnas a temple of the Sun was raised on the ruins of a Buddhist temple or relic mound. Still except the doubtful evidence of the size of the bricks nothing has been found to support the theory that the Sun temple stands on an earlier Buddhist ruin. The apparent present dimensions of the mound are 12' broad 60' long and 20' high. Of the temple the north side and north-west corner are fairly complete. The east entrance to the hall, the south pillars of the hall, and with them the hall dome and the outer wall of the temple round the south and west of the shrine have disappeared. A confused heap of bricks on the top of the shrine and of the entrance from the hall to the shrine is all that is left of the spire and upper buildings. The materials used are of three kinds. The pillars of the hall are of a white quartzlike marble; the masonry of the shrine walls and of the passage round the north of the shrine is of a red-dish yellow laterite, and the interior of the spire and apparently some other roof buildings are of brick. Beginning from the original east entrance the ground has been cut away so close to the temple and so many of the pillars have fallen that almost no trace of the entrance is left. The first masonry, entering from the east, are the two eastern pillars of the hall dome and to the north of this central pair the pillar that supported the north-eastern corner of the dome. Except the lowest rim, on the east side, all trace of the dome and of the roof over the dome are gone. The centre of the hall is open to the sky. The south side is even more ruined than the east side. The whole outer wall has fallen and been removed. The south-east corner the two south pillars of the dome and the south-west corner pillars are gone. The north side is better preserved. The masonry that rounds off the corners from which the dome sprung remains and along the rim of the north face runs a belt of finely carved female figures. The north-east corner pillar, the two north pillars of the dome, and the north-west corner pillar all remain. Outside of the pillars runs a passage about four feet broad and eleven feet high, and, beyond the passage, stands the north wall of the temple with an outstanding deep arched window above, with white marble seats and backs and massive pillars whose six feet shafts are in three sections square eightsided and round and on whose double-disc capitals rest brackets which support a shallow cross-cornered dome. At its west end the north passage is ornamented with a rich *gokla* or recess  $3\frac{1}{2}$  broad with side pillars  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet high. On the west side of the dome the central pair of dome pillars and as has been noticed the north corner pillar remain. About three feet west of the west pair of dome pillars a second pair support the domed entrance to the shrine. The richly carved side pillars, a goddess with fly-flap bearers, and the lintel of the shrine door remain but the bare square chamber of the shrine is open to the sky. To the south of the shrine the entire basis of the south side of the spire, the outer circling or *pradakshana* passage and the outer wall of the temple have disappeared. The north side is much less ruinous. There remain

## Appendix III.

## BHINMÁL.

## Sun Temple.

The massive blocks of yellow and red trap which formed the basis of the apse, built in horizontal bands of deep cut cushions and in the centre of the north wall a niche with outstanding pillared frame, the circling passage with walls of plain trap and roof of single slabs laid across and the outer wall of the temple with bracket capitaled pillars and a central deep-caved and pillared hanging window of white marble. The circling passage and the outer wall of the temple end at the north-west corner. Of the western outer wall all traces are gone. The pillars of the temple are massive and handsome with pleasantly broken outline, a pedestal, a square, an eightsided band, a sixteensided band, a round belt, a narrow band of horned faces, the capital a pair of discs, and above the discs outstanding brackets each ending in a crouching four-armed male or female human figure upholding the roof. The six central dome pillars resemble the rest except that instead of the sixteensided band the inner face is carved into an urn from whose mouth overhang rich leafy festoons and which stand on a roll of cloth or a ring of cane such as women set between the head and the waterpot.<sup>1</sup> On the roof piles of bricks show that besides the spire some building rose over the central dome and eastern entrance but of its structure nothing can now be traced.

## History.

According to a local legend this temple of the Sun was built by Yayati the son of king Nahush<sup>2</sup> of the Chaudrayana or Moon stock. Yayati came to Shrinál accompanied by his two queens Sharmistha and Devyani, and began to perform severe austerities at one of the places sacred to Surya the Sun. Surya was so pleased by the fervour of Yayati's devotion that he appeared before him and asked Yayati to name a boon. Yayati said May I with god-like vision see thee in thy true form. The Sun granted this wish and told Yayati to name a second boon. Yayati said I am weary of ruling and of the pleasures of life. My one wish is that for the good of Shrinálpur you may be present here in your true form. The Sun agreed. An image was set up in the Sun's true form (apparently meaning in a human form) and a Hariya Bráhma was set over it.<sup>3</sup> The God said Call me Jagat-Svami the Lord of the World for I am its only protector. According to a local Bráhma account the original image of the Sun was of wood and is still preserved in Lakshmi's temple at Pátan in North Gujarat.<sup>4</sup> Another account makes the builder of the temple Shripunj or Jagsom. According to one legend Jagsom's true name was Kanak who came from Kashmir. According to the Bráhma Bhít Tappa Jagsom was a king of Kashmir of the Jamáwal tribe who established himself in Bhinmál about 500 years before Kumarápála. As Kumarápála's date is A.D. 1186, Jagsom's date would be A.D. 680.

<sup>1</sup> The ten feet of the pillars are thus divided: pedestal 2', square block 2', eightsided belt 18', sixteensided belt 18', round band 2', horned face belt 6', double disc capital 6'.

<sup>2</sup> This according to another account is Násik town.

<sup>3</sup> Hariya Bráhma is said to mean a descendant of Hariyaji, a well known Bráhma of Shrinál, so rich that he gave every member of his caste a present of brass vessels.

<sup>4</sup> This tradition seems correct. In the temple of Lakshmi near the Tripolia or Triple gateway in Pátan are two standing images of *chámpa* Michela champaca wood one a man the other a woman black and dressed. The male image which is about three feet high and thirteen inches across the shoulders is of the Sun Jagat Shám that is Jagat-Svami the World Lord: the female image, about 2' 6" high and 9" across the shoulders is Ranadevi or Randal the Sun's wife. Neither image has any writing. They are believed to be about 1000 years old and to have been secretly brought from Bhinmál by Shrinál Bráhmans about A.D. 1400. Ráo Bahádúr Himatlál Dharajál. Compare (Rajputána Gazetteer, II 282) in the temple of Bálárikh at Bálmér about a hundred miles south-west of Jodhpur a wooden image of the sun.

According to the common local story Jagsom was tormented by presence of a live snake in his belly. When Jagsom halted at the gate of Bhinmál in the course of a pilgrimage from Kashmir to Dwarka, he fell asleep and the snake came out at his mouth. At the same time a snake issued from a hole close to the city gate and said to the king's belly snake 'You should depart and cease to afflict the king.' 'There is a fine treasure in your hole,' said the belly snake. 'How would you like to leave it? Why then ask me to leave my home?' The gate snake said 'If any servant of the king is near let him hearken. If sound leaves of the *kir* Capparis aphylla tree are plucked and mixed with the flowers of a creeper that grows under it and boiled and given to the king the snake inside him will be killed.' 'If any servant of the king is near' retorted the king's snake 'let him hearken.' If boiling oil is poured down the hole of the gate-snake the snake will perish and great treasure will be found. A clever Kayasth of the king's retinue was near and took notes. He found the *kir* tree and the creeper growing under it, he prepared the medicine and gave it to the king. The withering of the snake caused the king so much agony that he ordered the Kayasth to be killed. Presently the king became sick and the dead snake was thrown up through the king's mouth. The king mourned for the dead Kayasth. So clever a man, he said must have made other good notes. They examined the Kayasth's note book, poured the boiling oil down the hole, killed the gate-snake, and found the treasure. To appease the Kayasths and the two snakes lakhs were spent in feeding Brahmins. With the rest a magnificent temple was built to the Sun and an image duly enshrined. Numerous stories were afterwards added by Vishvakarma.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Sun Temple.

## Legends.

The legends of Bhinmál are collected in the Shrimál Mahátmya of the Skanda Purána a work supposed to be about 400 years old. According to the Mahátmya the city has been known by a different name in each of the chief cycles or Yugs. In the Satyayug it was Shrimál in the Tretayug Retumál, in the Dwaparyug Pushpanál, and in the Káhyng Bhinmál. In the Satvayug Shrimál or Shrinagar had 84 Chaudis, 336 Kshetrpáls; 27 Varábas; 101 Suryás, 51 Matás; 21 Brehispatis; 300 to 11,000 Lingas, 8000 Rushtas, 999 Wells and Tanks, and 3½ kros of *tirthas* or holy places. At first the plain of Bhinmál was sea and Bharghurishi called on Surya and the sun dried the water and made it land. Then Braghu started a hermitage and the saints Kashyáp, Atri, Baradwaj, Gautam, Jándagni, Vishvamitra, and Vashista came from A'bu to interview Braghu. Gautam was pleased with the land to the north of Braghu's hermitage and placed Trimukeshwar that the place might combine the holiness of all holy places and that he and his wife Ahilya might live there in happiness. The God granted the sage's prayer. A lake was formed and in the centre an island was raised on which Gautam built his hermitage the foundations of which may still be seen. The channel which feeds Gautam's lake from the north-east was cut by an ascetic Bráhma named Yajanasila and in the channel a stone is set with writing none of which but the date S 1117 (A.D. 1060) is legible. Some years after Gautam had settled at Shrimál a daughter named Lakshmi was born in the house of the sage Braghu. When the girl came of age Braghu consulted Naradji about a husband. When Naradji saw Lakshmi, he said; This girl can be the wife of no one but of Vishnu. Naradji went to Vishnu and said that in consequence of the curse of Durvasarashi Lakshmi could not be born anywhere except in Braghu's house and that Vishnu ought to marry her. Vishnu agreed. After the

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Legends.

At marriage the bride and bridegroom bathed together in the holy Trimbak pond about half a mile east of Gautam's island. The holy water cleared the veil of forgetfulness and Lakshmi remembered her former life. The *devatas* or guardians came to worship her. They asked her what she would wish. Lakshmi replied, May the country be decked with the houses of Brāhmins as the sky is decked with their carriers the stars. Bhagwān that is Vishnu, pleased with this wish, sent messengers to fetch Brāhmins and called Vishvakarma the divine architect to build a town. Vishvakarma built the town. He received golden bangles and a garland of gold lotus flowers and the promise that his work would meet with the praise of men and that his descendants would rule the art of building. This town and the Gods has been decked as it were with the garlands or *malā* of Sri or Lakshmi. So it shall be called Shrimāl. When the houses were ready Brahmins began to gather from all parts.<sup>1</sup> When the Brahmins were gathered Lakshmi asked Vishnu to which among the Brahmins worship was first due. The Brāhmins agreed that Gautam's claim was the highest. The Brāhmins from Sindh objected and withdrew in anger. Then Vishnu and Lakshmi made presents of clothes money and jewels to the Brahmins and they, because they had settled in the town of Shrimāl, came to be known as Shrimālī Brāhmins.

The angry Sindh Brāhmins in their own country worshipped the Sea. And at their request Samudra sent the demon Sarika to ruin Shrimāl. Sarika carried off the marriageable Brahman girls. And the Brahmins finding no one to protect them withdrew to Abu. Shrimāl became waste and the dwellings ruins.<sup>2</sup> When Shrimāl had long lain waste a king named Shripunj, according to one account suffering from worms according to another account stricken with leprosy, came to the Brāhmakund to the south of the city and was cleansed.<sup>3</sup> Thankful at heart Shripunj collected Brāhmins and restored Shrimāl and at the Brāhmakund built a temple of Chandish Mahādev. When they heard that the Shrimāl Brahmins had returned to their old city and were prospering the

<sup>1</sup> The detail — From Kausika 500, from the Ganges 10 000 from Gaya 500, from Kalinjar 700 from Mahendri 300, from Kundal 1000 from Veni 500, from Surparak 808, from Gokan 1000, from Godavari 108, from Prabhis 122, from the hill Ujjayan or Gumar 115, from the Narbadā 110, from Gomati 79, and from Nandivardhan 1000.

<sup>2</sup> According to one account (Mewar Castes 61) these Sindh Brahmins are represented by the present Pushkar Brahmins. In proof the Pushkars are said to worship Sarika as Untadavi riding on a camel. This must be a mistake. The Pushkars are almost certainly Gujars.

<sup>3</sup> Details are given above under Objects. The local legends confuse Shripunj and Jagson. It seems probable that Jagson was not the name of a king but is a contraction of Jagatsvami the title of the Sun. This Shripunj or at least the restorer or founder of Shrimāl, is also called Kanak, who according to some accounts came from the east and according to others came from Kashmir. Kanak is said also to have founded a town Kanakvati near the site of the present village of Chlakla about eleven miles (7 kos) east of Bhinmāl. This recollection of Kanak or Kanaksen is perhaps a trace of the possession of Mārwār and north Gujarat by the generals or successors of the great Kushān or Śaka emperor Kanak or Kanishka the founder of the Śaka era of A.D. 78. According to the local Bhat this Kanak was of the Janghrabal caste and the Pradiya branch. This caste is said still to hold 30% villages in Kashmir. According to local accounts the Shrimālī Brāhmins, and the Dewala and Devra Rajputs all came from Kashmir with Kanak. Tod (Western India, 213) notices that the Annals of Mewar all trace to Kanakāsen of the Sun race whose invasion is put at A.D. 100. As the Shrimālīs and most of the present Rajput chiefs are of the Gujar stock which entered India about A.D. 450 this tracing to Kanishka is a case of the Hindu law that the conqueror assimilates the traditions of the conquered that with the tradition he may bind to his own family the Sri or Luck of his predecessors.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL,  
Legends.

Brāhman of Sindh once more sent Sarika to carry away their marriage-able daughters. One girl as she was being haled away called on her home-goddess and Sarika was spell-bound to the spot. King Shripunj came up and was about to slay Sarika with an arrow when Sarika said Do not kill me. Make some provision for my food and I will henceforth guard your Brāhman. The king asked her what she required. Sarika said Let your Brāhman at their weddings give a dinner in my honour and let them also marry their daughters in unwashed clothes. If they follow these two rules I will protect them. The king agreed and gave Sarika leave to go. Sarika could not move. While the king wondered the home-goddess of the maiden appeared and told the king she had stopped the fiend. Truly said the king you are the rightful guardian. But Sarika is not ill disposed let her go. On this Sarika fled to Sindh. And in her honour the people both of Shrimāl and of Jodhpur still marry their daughters in unwashed clothes.<sup>1</sup> The Brāhman girls whom Sarika had carried off had been placed in charge of the snake Kankal lord of the under world. The Brāhman found this out and Kankal agreed to restore the girls if the Brāhman would worship snakes or *nāgs* at the beginning of their *shrādh* or after-death ceremonies. Since that time the Shrimāl set up the image of a Nāg when they perform death rites. Other legends relating to the building of the Jagsvām or Sun temple, to the temple of Chandish Mahadev near the Brāhmakund<sup>2</sup> and to the making of the Jatkop lake are given above. The dates preserved by local tradition are S. 222 (A.D. 166) the building of the first temple of the Sun; S. 265 (A.D. 209) a destructive attack on the city; S. 491 (A.D. 138) a second sack by a Rākshasa, S. 700 (A.D. 644) a re-building, S. 900 (A.D. 844) a third destruction, S. 955 (A.D. 899) a new restoration followed by a period of prosperity which lasted till the beginning of the fourteenth century.

Caste  
Legends.

That Shrimāl was once the capital of the Gurjjaras seems to explain the local saying that Jagatsen the son of the builder of the Sun temple gave Shrimāl to Gujarāt Brāhman where Gujarāt is a natural alteration of the forgotten Gurjjaras or Gurjara Brāhman. That Shrimāl was once a centre of population is shown by the Shrimāl subdivisions of the Brāhman and Vām castes who are widely scattered over north Gujarāt and Kathiawād. Most Shrimāl Vāms are Shrāvaks. It seems probable that their history closely resembles the history of the Osval Shrāvaks or Jains who take their name from the ancient city of Osia about fifteen miles south of Jodhpur to which they still go to pay vows. The bulk of these Osval Vāms, who are Jains by religion, were Solanki Rajputs before their change of faith which according to Jain records took place about A.D. 745 (S. 800).<sup>3</sup> The present Bhinmal

<sup>1</sup> According to a local tradition the people in despair at the ravages of Sarika turned for help to Devi. The goddess said: Kill buffaloes, eat their flesh, and wear their hides and Sarika will not touch you. The people obeyed and were saved. Since then a dough buffalo has taken the place of the flesh buffalo and unwashed cloth of the bleeding hide. Another version sounds like a reminiscence of the Tartar origin of Krishna. The goddess Khamangiri persuaded the Lord Krishna to celebrate his marriage clad in the raw hide of a cow. In the present era unwashed cloth has taken the place of leather. MS. Note from Mr. Ratan Lal Pandit.

<sup>2</sup> The tradition recorded by Tod (Western India, 209) that the Gurjjaras are descended from the Solankis of Anahilavāda, taken with the evidence noted in the section on History that the Chāvādās or Chāpas and the Parihāras are also Gurjjaras makes it probable that the Chohāns are of the same origin and therefore that the whole of the Agnikulas were northern conquerors who adopting Hinduism were given a place among Rajputs or Kshatriyas.

<sup>3</sup> Epigraphia Indica, II. 40-41.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Caste  
Legends.

bards claim the Oswáls as originally people of Shrinál. Lakshmi they say when she was being married to Vishnu at Shrinál looked into her bosom and the Jariya goldsmiths came forth: she looked north and the Oswáls appeared east and from her look were born the Porwáls.<sup>1</sup> From her lucky necklace of flowers sprang the Shrináli Bráhmans. According to other accounts the Shrináli Bráhmans and Vánis were of Kashmír origin of the Jamawála caste and were brought to south Mārwar by Jag Som by which name apparently Kanaksen that is the Kusha or Kshatrpa (A.D. 78-250) dynasty is meant. They say that in S. 59 (A.D. 703) Bugra an Arab laid the country waste and that from fear of him the Shrináli Bráhmans and Vánis fled south. Another account giving the date A.D. 741 (S. 800) says the assaults were Songara Rajputs. The Shrináls were brought back to Bhinmál by Abha Singh Ráhtor when viceroy of Gujarát in A.D. 1694 (S. 1750).

The memory of the Gurjjaras; who they say are descended from Garab Rishi, lingers among the Bhats or bards of Shrinál. They say the Gurjjaras moved from Shrinál to Pushkar about ten miles north-west of Ajmír and there dug the great lake. They are aware that Gurjjaras have a very sacred burning ground at Pushkar or Pokarn and also that the Savitri or wife of Brahma at Pokarn was a Gurjara maiden.

But as the leading Gurjjaras have dropped their tribe name in becoming Kshatriyas or Rajputs the bards naturally do not know of the Gurjjaras as a ruling race. The ordinary Gurjara they say is the same as the Rehbári: the Bad or High Gujars to whom Krishna belonged are Rajputs. The bards further say that the Sompuras who live near Pushkar (Pokarn north of Ajmír) and are the best builders who alone know the names of all ornamental patterns are of Gurjara descent and of Shrinál origin. They do not admit that the Chavádas were Gurjjaras. In their opinion Chavádas are the same as Bharods and came north into Mārwar from Dánta in Jhálaváda in north-east Káthiaváda. The Choháns they say came from Sámblhar to Ajmír, from Ajmír to Delhi, from Delhi to Nágur north of Jodhpur, from Nágur to Jodhpur, from Jodhpur to Bhadgaon thirty miles south of Bhinmál and from Bhadgaon to Sirohi. According to a local Jaghirdár of the Devra caste the Choháns' original seat was at Jhálor forty miles north of Shrinál. They say that in the eighteenth century the Solankis came north from Pátan in north Gujarát to Hiya in Palanpur where they have still a settlement, and that from Hiya they went to Bhinmál.

In connection with the Sun temple and the traces of sun worship among the Jains, whose *gurus* or religious guides have a sun face which they say was given them by the Rána of Chitor, the existence in Bhinmál of so many (thirty-five) houses of Shevaks is interesting. These Shevaks are the religious dependents of the Oswál Shrāvaks. They are strange high-nosed hatchet-faced men with long lank hair and long beards and whiskers. They were originally Magha Bráhmans and still are Vaishnavas worshipping the sun. They know that their story is told in the Námagranth of the Surya Purána. The Bhinmál Shevaks know of sixteen

<sup>1</sup> According to Katta, a Bráhma-Bhát of remarkable intelligence, the Oswáls include Rajputs of a large number of tribes, Amlas, Bhatis, Boráns, Buruds, Chováns, Gehlots, Gohils, Jádavs, Makvanas, Mohils, Parmárs, Ráhtors, Shálas, Tilars. They are said to have been converted to the Jain religion in Osanagara in Satvat. Bha Varsh 23 that is in A.D. 165.

branches or *sakas* but remember the names of ten only: Aboti, Bhinmāla, Devira, Hirgota, Kawara, Lalār, Mahtariya, Mundiara, Saparwāla, and Shānda. The story of these Maghās in the Surya and Bhayishya Purāṇas, how they were brought by Garuḍa from the land of the Sakas and were fire and sun worshippers, gives these Shovaks a special interest. The Devalās are believed to have come from Kaṣmīr with Jog Svāmi who is said to have been a Yaksh of the Rākshas division of Parihār Rajputs. The other division of Parihārs were *girdās* or Abu who in virtue of the fire baptism of the Agnikūṭ became Kshatriyas. The Devalās are supposed to get their name because they built Jag Som's temple at Bhinmāl. The Devra Rajputs whose head is the Sirohi chief and who according to the bard are of Chohān descent, came at the same time and marry with the Devalās. With this origin from Kanaksen it is natural to associate the Devras and Devalās with the Devaputras of the Samudragupta (A.D. 370-395) inscription. Of Hūna or of Jāvla, the tribe name of the great Hūna conquerors Toramana and Mihnakula (A.D. 450-530), few signs have been traced. The Jaghurdār of Devala knows the name Hūna. They are a Rākshasa people he says. He mentions Honots or Sonots who may be a trace of Hunas, and Hūnals in Kāthiāvāda and a Huni subdivision among the Kunbis of Marwār. Jāvla he does not know as a caste name.

The historical interest of Shrinmāl centres in the fact that it was long the capital of the main branch of the great northern race of Gurjjaras. It is well known that many mentions of the Gurjjaras and their country in inscriptions and historical works refer to the Chālukya or Solanki kingdom of Anahilavāda (A.D. 961-1212) or to its successor the Vāghelī principality (A.D. 1219-1304). But the name Gurjara occurs also in many documents older than the tenth century and has been most variously and inconsistently explained. Some take the name to denote the Chāvālās of Anahilavāda (A.D. 746-912), some the Gurjjaras of Broach (A.D. 580-808) and some, among them Dr. Bhagvanlāl Indrajī, even the Valabhis (A.D. 509-766), but not one of these identifications can be made to apply to all cases. As regards the Valabhis even if they were of Gurjara origin they are not known to have at any time called themselves Gurjjaras or to have been known by that name to their neighbours. The identification with the Gurjjaras of Broach is at first sight more plausible, as they admitted their Gurjara origin as late as the middle of the seventh century, but there are strong reasons against the identification of the Broach branch as the leading family of Gurjjaras. Pulakesi II. in his Aihola inscription of A.D. 634 (S. 556)<sup>1</sup> claims to have subdued by his prowess the Lātas Mālavās and Gurjjaras, which shows that the land of the Gurjjaras was distinct from Lāta, the province in which Broach stood. Similarly Hsien Tsang (c. 640 A.D.) speaks of the kingdom of Broach by the name of the city and not as Gurjara or the Gurjara country. In the following century the historians of the Arab raids<sup>2</sup> notice Baras (Broach) separately from Jurz or Gurjara and the Chālukya grant of 490 that is of A.D. 738-739 mentions the Gurjjaras after the Chāvotakas (Chāvālās) and the Mauryas (of Chitor) as the last of the kingdoms attacked by the Arab army. Later instances occur of a distinction between Lāta and Gurjara, but it seems unnecessary to quote them as the Gurjara kingdom of Broach probably did not survive the Rāshtrakūṭa conquest of south Gujaraṭ (A.D. 750-760).

The evidence that the name Gurjara was not confined to the Chāvālās

### Appendix III.

BHINMAL.

Caste  
Legends.

History.

<sup>1</sup> Indian Antiquary, VIII, 237.

<sup>2</sup> Elliot, I, 432.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
History.

is not less abundant. It will not be disputed that references of earlier date than the foundation of Anahilavāda (A.D. 746) cannot apply to the Chāvala kingdom, and further we find the Chālukya grant of A.D. 738-739 expressly distinguishing between the Chāvalās and the Gurjjaras and calling the former by their tribal name Chāvotaka. It might be supposed that as the power of the Chāvalās increased, they became known as the rulers of the Gurjara country; and it must be admitted that some of the references to Gurjjaras in the Rāshtrakūta grants are vague enough to apply to the Chāvalās. Still if it can be shown that others of these references cannot possibly apply to the Chāvalās, and if we assume, as we must, that the name of Gurjara was used with the slightest consistency, it will follow that the ninth and tenth century references to the Gurjjaras do not apply to the Chāvalā kingdom of Anahilavāda.

The Van-Dandōri and Rādhanpuri plates of the great Rāshtrakūta Govinda III.<sup>1</sup> state that Govinda's father Dhruva (c. 780-800 A.D.) "quickly caused Vatsarāja, intoxicated with the goddess of the sovereignty of Gauda that he had acquired with ease, to enter upon the path of misfortune in the centre of Maru' and took away from him the two umbrellas of Gauda. A comparison of this statement with that in the Baroda grant of Karka II.<sup>2</sup> which is dated A.D. 812-813, to the effect that Karka made his arm "the door-bar of the country of the lord of the Gurjjaras, who had become wildly inflamed by conquering the lord of Gauda and the lord of Vanga" makes it highly probable that Vatsarāja was king of the Gurjjaras at the end of the eighth century. As no such name occurs in the Chāvala lists, it follows that the Gurjjaras referred to in the inscriptions of about A.D. 800 were not Chāvalās.

It is also possible to show that more than a century later the Chāvalās were distinct from the Gurjjaras. The Kānarese poet Pampa, writing in A.D. 941,<sup>3</sup> states that the father of his patron Ankesari vanquished Mahupāla king of the Gurjjaras, who may be identified with the Mahupāla who is named as overlord in the grant of Dharamiyarāha of Wadhvān,<sup>4</sup> dated A.D. 914. As no Mahupāla occurs in the Chāvalā lists, the Gurjara kingdom must be sought elsewhere than at Anahilavāda. Since the Gurjjaras of the eighth and ninth century inscriptions cannot be identified either with the Valabhis, the Branch Gurjjaras, or the Anahilavāda Chāvalās, they must represent some other family of rulers. A suitable dynasty seems to be supplied by Hsuen Tsang's kingdom of Kiū-che-lo or Gurjara, the capital of which he calls Pi-lo-mo-lo.<sup>5</sup> The French translators took Pi-lo-mo-lo to be Bālnar in Rajputāna. But Dr. Bühler following the late Colonel Watson, identifies it, no doubt rightly, with Bhinmal or Bhilmal.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Indian Antiquary, XI, 156 and VI, 59.<sup>2</sup> Indian Antiquary, XII, 166.<sup>3</sup> Jour. R. A. S. XIV, 19ff.<sup>4</sup> Indian Antiquary, XII, 190 and XVIII, 91.<sup>5</sup> Beal's Buddhist Records, II, 270.

<sup>6</sup> Indian Antiquary, VI, 63. That the name Bhilmal should have come into use while the Gurjjaras were still in the height of their power is strange. The explanation may perhaps be that Bhilmal may mean the Gurjara's town the name Bhil or bowman being given to the Gurjjaras on account of their skill as archers. So Chāpa the original name of the Chāvalās is Sanskritised into Chāpotkatas the strong bowmen. So also, perhaps, the Chapa or Chaura who gave its name to Chapanir or Chapaner was according to the local story a Bhil. Several tribes of Mewār Bhils are well enough made to suggest that in their case Bhil may mean Gurjara. This is specially the case with the Lauriyah Bhils of Nerwer, the finest of the race, whose name further suggests an origin in the Gurjara division of Lor. Compare Malcolm's Trans. Bombay As. Soc. I, 71.

A short sketch of the history of the Gurjjaras, so far as it can be pieced together from contemporary sources, may help to show the probability of these identifications. The Gurjjaras apparently entered India in the fifth century A.D. The earliest notice of them occurs in the *Sri Harshacharita*, a work of the early seventh century, in which during the early years of the seventh century *Prabhākara-vardhana*, the father of *Sri Harsha* of *Magadha* (A.D. 606-641) is said to have conquered the king of *Gandhāra*, the *Hūnas*, the king of *Sindh*, the *Gurjjaras*, the *Lātas*, and the king of *Mālava*.<sup>1</sup> The date of their settlement at *Bhinmal* is unknown, but as their king was recognised as a *Kshatriya* in *Hsuen Tsiang's* time (c. 640 A.D.) it probably was not later than A.D. 550. Towards the end of the sixth century (c. 585) they seem to have conquered northern *Gujarāt* and *Broach* and to have forced the *Valabhis* (A.D. 509-766) to acknowledge their supremacy. (See above page 465.) They took very kindly to Indian culture, for in A.D. 628 the astronomer *Brahmagupta* wrote his *Siddhānta* at *Bhinmal* under king *Vyāghramukha*, who, he states, belonged to the *Sri Chāpa* dynasty.<sup>2</sup> This valuable statement not only gives the name of the Gurjjar royal house but at the same time proves the Gurjjar origin of the *Chāpotakās* or *Chāvotakās*, that is the *Chāvalās* of later times. This *Vyāghramukha* is probably the same as the Gurjjar king whom in his inscription of S. 556 (A.D. 634) *Pulakeśi II.* claims to have subdued.<sup>3</sup> A few years later (c. 640 A.D.) *Hsuen Tsiang* describes the king (probably *Vyāghramukha's* successor) as a devout Buddhist and just twenty years of age. The country was populous and wealthy, but Buddhists were few and unbelievers many. The Gurjjaras did not long retain their southern conquests. In *Hsuen Tsiang's* time both *Kamā* (*Kie-cha*) and *Vadnagar* (*Amudapura*) belonged to *Mālava* while the *Broach* chiefs probably submitted to the *Chalukyas*. No further reference to the *Bhinmal* kingdom has been traced until after the Arab conquest of *Sindh* when (A.D. 724-750) the Khalifa's governor *Juna'id* sent his plundering bands into all the neighbouring countries and attacked among other places *Marwād* (*Mārwar*), *Mahīra* (*Malwa*), *Barus* (*Broach*), *Uzam* (*Ujjain*), *Al-Balamān* (*Bhinmal*?), and *Jurz* (*Gurjara*).<sup>4</sup> As noticed above the contemporary *Chalukya* plate of A.D. 738-9 also mentions Gurjjaras as one of the kingdoms attacked. After these events the Arabs seem to have confined themselves to raiding the coast towns of *Kāthiāwāḍa* without attacking inland states such as *Bhinmal*. Immediately after the Arab raids ceased the Gurjjaras had to meet a new enemy the *Rāshtrakūtas* who after supplanting the *Chalukyas* in the *Dākṣiṇ* turned their attention northwards. *Dantidurga* in his *Samangal* grant of A.D. 753-4<sup>5</sup> speaks of ploughing the banks of the *Mahī* and the *Revā* (*Narada*), and in his *Elura* inscription<sup>6</sup> of conquering among other countries *Mālava*, *Lāṭa* and *Tanka*.<sup>7</sup> A few years later (A.D. 757-58) a branch of the main *Rāshtrakūta* line established its independence in *Lāṭa* in the person of *Kakka*.

<sup>1</sup> The *Madhuban Grant* : *Epigraphia Indica*, I. 67.

<sup>2</sup> *Reinaud, Mémoire Sur L'Inde*, 337, in quoting this reference through *Alberuni* (A.D. 1031) writes *Pohmal* between *Multān* and *Anhalwara*.

<sup>3</sup> *Indian Antiquary*, VIII, 237.

<sup>4</sup> *Elliot*, I. 440-41.

<sup>5</sup> *Indian Antiquary*, XI, 109.

<sup>6</sup> *Arch. Surv. West. India*, X. 91.

<sup>7</sup> *Tanka* may be the northern half of the *Broach* District. Traces of the name seem to remain in the two *Tankāriās*, one *Sitpore Tankāria* in north *Broach* and the other in *Amōd*. The name seems also to survive in the better known *Tankāri* the port of *Jambusar* on the *Dhādhar*. This *Tankāri* is the second port in the district of *Broach* and was formerly the emporium for the trade with *Mālava*. *Bombay Gazetteer*, II. 413-569.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
History.

The next notice of the Gurjjaras occurs in the Rādhanpur and Van-Deoli grants of Govinda III.<sup>1</sup> who states that his father Dhruva (c 780-800 A.D.) caused "Vatsarāja, intoxicated with the goddess of the sovereignty of Gauda that he had acquired with ease, to enter upon the path of misfortune in the centre of Maru" and took from him the two white umbrellas of Gauda. As already stated, a comparison with the Baroda grant of Karka I.<sup>2</sup> shows that this Vatsarāja was a Gurjjara king and that he had made extensive conquests in Upper India as far east as Bengal. Now it is notable that the genealogies of two of the most important Agnikula races, the Paramāras and the Chauhāns, go back to this very time (c 800 A.D.).<sup>3</sup> Taking this fact in connection with the prevalence of the surnames Pavār and Chavān among Gujars in such remote provinces as the Panjāb and Khāndesh, it seems obvious that these two tribes and therefore also the two other Agnikula races, the Parihārs and Solankis are, if not of Gurjjara origin, at all events members of the great horde of northern invaders whom the Gurjjaras led. The agreement between this theory and the Agnikula legends of Ālā need only be pointed out to be admitted. The origin of the modern Rajput races has always been one of the puzzles of Indian history. This suggestion seems to offer at least a partial solution.

The Rādhanpur grant (A.D. 807-8) further states that when the Gurjjara saw Govinda III. approaching, he fled in fear to some unknown hiding-place. This probably means no more than that Vatsarāja did not oppose Govinda in his march to the Vindhya. The next reference is in the Baroda grant of Karka II. of Gujarāt who boasts that his father Indra (c 810 A.D.) alone caused the leader of the Gurjjara lords to flee. Karka adds that he himself, for the purpose of protecting Mālava, "who had been struck down," made his arm the door-bar of the country of Gurjjarośvara, who "had become evilly inflamed" by the conquest of Gauda and Vanga.<sup>4</sup> It is difficult to avoid supposing that we have here a reference to the Paramāra conquest of Malwa and that Karka checked the southward march of the victorious army. For some years no further mention has been traced of the Gurjjaras. But in A.D. 851 the Arab merchant Sulaiman states<sup>5</sup> that the king of Juzr was one of the kings "around" the Balbarā, that is the Rāshtrakūṭa, and that he was very hostile to the Musalmāns, which is not surprising, considering how his kingdom was exposed to the Arab raids from Sindh. Dhruva III. of Broach, in his Bagumrā grant of A.D. 867<sup>6</sup> speaks of "the host of the powerful Gurjjaras" as one of the dangerous enemies he had to fear. About A.D. 890 a Gurjjara chief named Alakhāna ceded Takkadesa in the Panjāb to Sankaravarman of Kashmir.<sup>7</sup> But as Alakhāna was a vassal of Lalīya, the Śahi of Ohind near Swāt, this event did not affect the Bhinmal empire. To about A.D. 900 belongs the notice of the Rāshtrakūṭa Kṛṣṇa II in the Deoli and Navsārī grants<sup>8</sup> where he is stated to have frightened the Gurjjaras, destroyed the pride of Lāṭa, and deprived the coast people of sleep. His fights with the Gurjjaras are compared to the storms of the rainy season, implying that while the relations of the two empires continued hostile, neither was able to gain any decisive advantage over the other. To this same period belongs Ibn Khurdādbeh's (A.D. 912) statement<sup>9</sup> that the king of Juzr was the fourth

<sup>1</sup> Indian Antiquary, VI, 59 and XI, 156.<sup>2</sup> Indian Antiquary, XII, 156.<sup>3</sup> See the Udaipur *prastāvi* in Ep. Ind. I. and the Harsha Inscription in ditto.<sup>4</sup> See the Baroda grant of A.D. 812-13. Indian Antiquary, XII, 156.<sup>5</sup> Elliot, I, 4.<sup>6</sup> Indian Antiquary, XII, 179.<sup>7</sup> Rajatarāṅgīnī, 149.<sup>8</sup> B. B. R. A. Soc, Journ. XVIII, 239.<sup>9</sup> Elliot, I, 13.

in rank of the kings of India and that the *Tātariya dirhams* were used in his country. In connection with the latter point it is worth noting that the *patāvali* of the Upakeśagaccha<sup>1</sup> gives a story which distinctly connects the origin of the Gadhia coinage with Bhinmāl.<sup>2</sup> The grant of Dharanivariha, the Chāpa chief of Vadhvān, dated A.D. 914<sup>3</sup> gives us the name of his overlord Mahipāla, who, as already pointed out, must be identified with the Mahipāla who was defeated by the Karnatak king Narasimha.<sup>4</sup> The fact that Vadhvān was a Chāpa dependency implies that Anahilavāda was one also. We may in fact conclude that throughout the Chāvadā period Anahilavāda was a mere feudatory of Bhinmāl, a fact which would account for the obscurities and contradictions of Chāvadā history.

The Deoli grant of the Rāshtrakūta Krishna III. which is dated A.D. 910<sup>5</sup> describes the king's victories in the south as causing the hope of Kālānjara and Chitrakūta to drop away from the heart of the Gurjara. At this time Kalanjara belonged to the Kalachuris of Central India and Chitrakūta or Chitod to the Gehlots of Mewār and the phrase used by Krishna implies that the Gurjara chief had his eye on these two famous fortresses and had perhaps already besieged them unsuccessfully. In either case this notice is evidence of the great and far-reaching power of the Gurjaras. Masudi (A.D. 915) notices that the king of Juzr was frequently at war with the Balhara (Rāshtrakūta) and that he had a large army and many horses and camels.

A Chandel stone inscription from Khajurāho describes Yaśovarmman and Lakshyavarmman as successful in war against Gandas, Khasas, Kosulas, Kāsmīras, Maūhilas, Mālavas, Chedras, Karnas, and Gurjaras.<sup>6</sup> And soon after about A.D. 953 during the reign of Bhīmasena a migration of 18,000 Gurjaras from Bhinmāl is recorded.<sup>7</sup> The memory of this movement remains in the traditions of the Gurjars of Khāndesh into which they passed with their carts in large numbers by way of Mālwa.<sup>8</sup> An important result of this abandonment of Bhinmāl was the transfer of overlordship from Bhinmāl to Anahilavāda whose first Chālukya or Solanki king Mūlarāja (A.D. 961-990) is, about A.D. 990, described as being accompanied by the chief of Bhinmāl as a subordinate ally in his war with Graharipu (see Above page 451). The Gurjara or Bhinmāl empire seems to have broken into several sections of which the three leading portions were the Chauhāns of Sāmbhar, the Paramāras of Malwa, and the Solankis of Anahilavāda.

The inscriptions which follow throw a certain amount of light on the history of Bhinmāl during and after the Solanki period. The two earliest

<sup>1</sup> Indian Antiquary, XIX. 233.

<sup>2</sup> According to Cunningham (Ancient Geography, 313) the coins called *Tātariya dirhams* stretch from the fifth and sixth to the eleventh century. They are frequently found in Kābul probably of the ninth century. In the tenth century Ibn Haukal (A.D. 977) found them current in Gandhara and the Panjāb where the Boar coin has since ousted them. They are rare in Central India east of the Aravali range. They are not uncommon in Rajputānā or Gujarāt and were once so plentiful in Sindh, that in A.D. 725 the Sindh treasury had eighteen million *Tātariya dirhams*. (See Dawson in Elliot's History, I. 3.) They are the rude silver pieces generally known as Indo-Sassanian because they combine Indian letters with Sassanian types. A worn fire temple is the supposed Ass-head which has given rise to the name Gadhia Paisa or Ass money.

<sup>3</sup> Indian Antiquary, XII. 190 and XVIII. 91.

<sup>4</sup> Jour. R. A. S. XIV. 19.

<sup>5</sup> Kishore in Epig. Indica, I. 122.

<sup>6</sup> B. B. R. A. S. Jour. XVIII. 239.

<sup>7</sup> Hornle in Ind. Antiq. XIX. 233.

<sup>8</sup> Details given in Khāndesh Gazetteer, XII. 30.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
History.

in date (Nos. 1 and 2) which are probably of the tenth century, give no historical details. Nos. 3 and 4 show that between A.D. 1057 and 1067 Bhinmāl was ruled by the Mahārājādhirāja Krishnarāja of the Paramāra race. This is a valuable confirmation of Rājput tradition, according to which the Paramāra Rāja of Xbu was followed by the prince of Śrīmāla, when he aided Mularāja against Grakaripa (c. 990 A.D.) and the Paramāras remained paramount in this region until the beginning of the thirteenth century.<sup>2</sup> The title of Mahārājādhirāja meant much less at this period than it meant before the Valabhi kings had cheapened it. Still it shows that Krishnarāja's rank was considerably higher than that of a mere feudatory chieftain. Inscription No. 3 gives the names of Krishnarāja's father Dhanudhuka and of his grandfather Devarāja. The first of these two names occurs in the main line of Xbu as the successor of Dhūmarāja the first Paramāra sovereign.<sup>3</sup> According to Rājput tradition the Paramāras were at one time supreme in Marasthān and held all the nine castles of the Waste. But in the historical period their chief possessions in Mārwad lay about Xbu and Chandrayati, though we have a glimpse of another branch maintaining itself at Kēraṇa near Bādner.<sup>4</sup> The Paramāra chiefs of Xbu are constantly referred to in the Solanki annals, and during the golden age of the Solanki monarchy (A.D. 1094-1174) they were the vassals of that power, and their Bhinmāl branch if it was ever a distinct chiefship, probably followed the fortunes of the main line, though the Bhinmāl inscriptions give us no facts for this long period. The next item of information is given by Inscription 5, which is dated in the Samvat year 1239 (A.D. 1183) in the reign of the Mahārāul Śrī Jayasinha-deva. This name is of special interest, as it can hardly be doubted that we have here to do with that "Jaitsi Parmar" of Xbu whose daughter's beauty caused the fatal feud between "Bhina Solanki" of Anahilavāḍa and Prithviraj Chohan of Delhi.<sup>5</sup> The title of Mahārāul is to be noted as indicating the decline of the family from the great days of Krishnarāja.

Towards the end of the thirteenth century the old world was falling to pieces, and the Paramāras lost one after another nearly all their ancient possessions to the Chohāns of Nāḍol. Bhinmāl must have fallen about A.D. 1200 or a few years before, for Inscription No. 6 is dated Samvat 1262 (A.D. 1206) in the reign of the Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Udayasinhadeva, who as we learn from Inscription 12, was the son of the Mahārāul Śrī Samarasinhadeva, of the Chohān race. The sudden rise of the son to greatness is implied in the difference of title and it may be inferred that Udayasinha himself was the conqueror of Bhinmāl, though the capture of Xbu is ascribed by Forbes to a chief named Lūnga.<sup>6</sup>

Inscriptions Nos. 6 to 8 being dated in the reign of Udayasinha, show that he lived to at least the year A.D. 1219 and therefore reigned at least forty-three years. He is also referred to in the Inscription No. 10, dated A.D. 1274, but in a way that does not necessarily imply that he was still alive, as the record only speaks of an endowment for his spiritual benefit, made by a person who was perhaps an old retainer. His name also occurs in the genealogy in No. 12. His reign was apparently a prosperous one but no historical facts beyond those already noted are known about him.

<sup>1</sup> Rās Mālā, 44.<sup>2</sup> Rās Mālā, 210ff.<sup>3</sup> Rās Mālā, 211.<sup>4</sup> Śrī Bhāṅgaṅgar Prā. I, No. 30 of the list of Sanskrit Inscriptions dated Sam. 1218.<sup>5</sup> Śrī Rās Mālā, 161ff.<sup>6</sup> Rās Mālā, 211.

Inscription No. 12 shows that Udayasinha had a son named Váhadhasinha, who, as he is given no royal title, probably died before his father. Udayasinha's successor, or at all, events the next king in whose reign grants are dated, was Cáçiga, who is given the title of Maháraul in Inscriptions 11 (A.D. 1277) and 12 (A.D. 1278).<sup>1</sup> His relationship to Udayasinha does not clearly appear, but he was probably either an elder brother or an uncle of the Cāmunda for whose benefit the gift recorded in Inscription 12 was made and who seems to be a grandson of Udayasinha. Cáçiga appears to be the Mañāmandaleśvara Cáçiga of Inscription 15 in the Bhánnagar State Collection (Bháu. Prá I. list page 5) which is stated to bear the date Samvat 1332 (A.D. 1276) and to be engraved on a pillar in the temple of Pársvanátha at Ratanpur near Jódhpur. It is clear that he was tributary to some greater power though it is not easy to say who his suzerain was. At this period Márwár was in a state of chaos under the increasing pressure of the Ráthods. Only five years after Cáçiga's last date (A.D. 1278) we meet with the name of a new ruler, the Maháraul, or Samvatasinha. He is mentioned in Inscriptions 13 (A.D. 1283) 14 (A.D. 1286) and 15 (A.D. 1289) and also in 14 of the Bhánnagar Collection (A.D. 1276 Bháu. Prá I. list page 13) from a Jain temple at Juná. He is not stated to have belonged to the same family as the previous rulers, but he bears the family title of Maháraul, and it may be inferred with probability that he was a son of Cáçiga. He reigned for at least thirteen years (A.D. 1283-1296). It must have been about A.D. 1300 or a little later, that the Chóhans were deprived of Bhinnmal by the Ráthods and the line of Udayasinha died out.<sup>2</sup>

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
History.

## Inscriptions.

The Jagsvámi temple has the honour of supplying fifteen of eighteen unmodern inscriptions found at Bhinnmal. Of the fifteen inscriptions belonging to Jagsvámi's temple nine are in place and six have been removed to other buildings. Of the six which have been moved five are in Baríj's rest-house in the east and one is in the enclosure of Mahá-lakshāmi's temple in the south of the town. Of the three remaining inscriptions of one (No. 3) the date S. 1106 (A.D. 1043) is alone legible. Of the letters on the two others, one in the bed and the other on the north bank of the Jaukop lake, no portion can be read. Arranged according to date the sixteen inscriptions of which any portion has been read come in the following order :

I.—(S. 950-1050; A.D. 900-1000. No. 1. of Plan.) On the left hand side of the eastern face of the broken architrave of the porch of the shrine of Jagsvámi. The letters show the inscription to be of about the tenth century.

Śrī Jagasvāmidēvasya vāsare  
on the day of Śrī Jagasvāmi.\*

\* Read Śrī Jagasvāmi

II.—(S. 950-1050; A.D. 900-1000. No. 2 of Plan.) On the south face of the eightsided section of the northern pillar of the shrine porch in the temple of Jagsvámi. Wrongly described in Bhāvanagara prācīna-śodhasaṅgraha I. under No. 46 of the State Collection, as referring to a man called Vasundhara and dated Vi. S. 1330. As the letters show, the inscription is of about the tenth century. It consists of a single

<sup>1</sup> Inscriptions 9 and 10 are not dated in any king's reign.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Tod's Rajasthan, I.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

complete verse :

1. Vasuñdhari-kāri-
2. tāu dvau stambhāvā-
3. -tau manōharau
4. svapitau Santaka-
5. sārthē satatau
6. -punyaviddhāvā ||

These two lovely pillars Vasuñdhari had made for her father  
Santaka's sake for increase of merit for ever.

III.—(S. 1106; A.D. 1049. Not on Plan.) On the east side of the southern water channel into Gautama's lake three-quarters of a mile north of the town. Except the date nothing can be deciphered.

IV.—(S. 1117, A.D. 1060. Not on Plan.) On the lower part of a pillar in the dharmasāla east of the temple of Baraji on the east of the town. Prose :

1. Om Namah śāryaya | ya-yōdayāśasamayāsuramakuta-  
m-spi-
2. śāṭi-caraya-kamalō s pi | kurutōs jalin Trinetrah sa jayati  
dhamma midhi
3. Śāryah | Samvat 1117 (A.D. 1067) Magha Sudī 6 Ravān  
Śrī Śrīmālē Parāmatavams
4. dhhavo Mahārajadhīra Śrī Krishnarajah Śrī Dhamidhu-  
kasutah Śrīmāl Deva-
5. -japuttrah tasmā kshittō vijayin | vartamāna-varsha-  
varaka-Dharkuti-
6. jati-Kuntahitō Jela-sutō Jeda Harir Madhava-sutō Dhami-  
dhu-nakō Dha-
7. ranacanda sutas tathā Thakhaṭa jati Dhamadityah Sar-  
vādēva-sutah | amē
8. bhūcaturbhis tathā Vanyēna Dharkuti-jatyā Dhamidhakēna  
Jelasutena nija-ku-
9. -la-majjanēna deva-guru-vrahmaṇa suśrīhā parapa Ravi-  
carana-yuga dhyana-
10. -vishṭeṇa samsaravamtyatām(n)irīkshya rājāno rājapu-  
trausca vrahmanin (ma-)
11. -hājana pauruṣēca tathā lokān Saura dharmē pravarttāyya  
dravyān me . . . (m)
12. -tya-tejo-nidhi | Śrī Jagat-vām-dēvasya deva-bhavana-  
jīrnodha . . .
13. (kā)hāpitam bhavann-yopari svarūpa-kalasaṁ vrahmaṇa  
-para-(ma-dhā-)
14. -rimukheṇ Jējākēna nija-dravyena karitam iti || Sam 1
15. Jyeshtha Su di 8 somē rātrān ghaṭika 3 pala 25 asmin la-
16. (z)nē sarvakarma nishpādya kala-sam dhvajam ca dayapi-  
tam iti ||
17. (Ta)thā purāṇavṛttēna pari deva-yāsyā Rājūā Śrī Krishna-  
rājēna Śrī-
18. . . (pu-)rīya-mandalē grāmañ prativa° drā. 20 Sucaliyā-  
grāmē kshētram ēkañ
19. . . . . traya rājabhōgāt tu drōna . . . . . sati kā . .
20. . . . . || Rāmast Pōmarapī kā . . . . . prativa° drā. 1 . . . . .
21. . . . . vijñāpya caṁdanena kāṛāpitam iti || Tathā ālav. . .
22. . . . . ya pra da . . . likhitam kada . . . . .
23. . . . . : . . . . . kāya . . . . .

## Translation.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL  
Inscriptions.

- 1 - 3. Om ' Reverence to the Sun ' Victorious is that sun, the storehouse of brightness, at whose rising and setting the three-eyed (Śiva), even though (his own) lotus feet are touched by the diadems of the gods, folds his hands (in adoration).
- 3 - 5. On Sunday the 6th of the light half of Māgha, the year 1113, at holy Śrīmalā the Maharājadhirāja Śrī Kṛṣṇa-rāja son of Śrī Dharmadhuka and grandson of the glorious Devarāja, of the Paramāra race—in his victorious reign.
- 6 - 7. Kirāḍitya, Jēla's son, of the Dharkuta family, (being office-holder) in his turn for the current year, Dada Hari son of Mādhava, Dharmadhaka son of Dharmācapāda and Dharmādhitya son of Sarvaditya of the Thākhāṭa race.
- 8 - 12. By these four and by the Vān (?) Dharmadhaka son of Jēla of the Dharkuta race, the ornament of his family, strict in obedience to the gods, to his teachers and to Brahmanas, and full of devotion to the feet of Ravi (the Sun), observing the perishableness of this world, and urging kings Kshatriyas Brahmanas merchants and townfolk to worship the sun, repairs were done to the temple of the god Śrī Jagatsvāmī, the everlasting store of light.
13. The kalāśa of gold above the temple the very pious Brāhmaṇa Jēka had made at his own charges. In the year 1 . . . .
15. on Monday the 7th of the light half of Jyēṣṭha, in the 25th pala of the 3rd ghāṭika of night—at this moment
16. all the work being finished the kalāśa and banner were set up (?)
17. and after the ancient manner by the king Śrī Kṛṣṇarāja . . . of this complaint . . . .
18. a village in the Śrī . . . purīya district, yearly 20 dramma. In Sacchīyā village a field
19. . . . . But from the king's share (of the crop) a drōpa . . . .
20. . . . . yearly 1 dramma . . . .
21. . . . by order was caused to be made by Candana || and . . .
22. . . . . written . . . .
23. . . . . kaja. . . .

V - (S. 1123, A.D. 1015, No. 3 of Plan.) On the north face of the upper square section of the more northerly of the two pillars that support the eastern side of the dome of the temple of Jagsvāmī. Entirely in prose:

1. Om. Samvat 1123, Jyēṣṭha Vadi 12 Śanāu sadyēha Śrī Śrī-malē Maharājadhirāja-Śrī Kṛṣṇarāja-
2. jarājyē Dēvasītanuśīsa-Mahādēva-dharmādhikāra-cēṭakaparama l'āsupatācārya-Śrī Jāvaśasyē . . . | Sauva-
3. -rupika Jashāṭā | Śrēṣṭhi Candana Kirāḍitīyā Stharā varittamāna-varaha-vārika-Joga-candra . . . .
4. Guḡa navāi . . . lōkō ca ēka . . . matibhūtvā . . . . . Śrīmālīya Vra-
5. huṇa Vāhaṭēna . . . . . Śrī Candana . . . . . dramma . . . .
- 6 - 13. Badly damaged; only a few letters legible here and there.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

## Translation.

- 1-2. Ōm ! On Saturday the 12th of the dark half of Jyēṣṭha Sāvat 1223 on this day at holy Śrīmāla, in the reign of the Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Kṛṣṇarāja—of Śrī Jāvala, the servant of the offices of religion to the god Śrī Candīśa Mahādēva, the supreme teacher of the Pāśupatas . . . .
3. The goldsmith Jaganāśa, the son Candanā, Kiraṇāditya, Siharā, Jogacandra the office-holder in turn for the current year
- 4-5. Gūḍa . . . . and in the world . . being of one mind . . . .  
. . . . . by Vāhaṭa the Śrīmālī Brāhmaṇa . . . . . Śrī Candīśa . . . . . *dramma* . . . . .

VI.—(S. 1239, A.D. 1183 No. 4 of Plan.) On the upper face of the eightsided section of the fallen pillar on the south side of the dome of the temple of Jagsvāmi. Entirely in prose :

1. Sān, 1239 Āsvina Vadi 19 Vadhē
2. Adyēha Śrī Śrīmālī Maharāja-
3. -putra Śrī Jayastha-deva-rājyē |
4. Gubilo Pramañdasuta-tra-arava-
5. saka Vubiyana Vālāka-dēva
6. drava dra. 1 rathā bharyā Māhapaḍē-
7. ḍi kṛta dra. 1 yē kiṣṇi pa atī bhava
8. nīsteshān prathā° vi 1 labhīḥ pāhko(s)
9. pratra-pālō bhavati tena var-hān(u-)
10. -varsha(m) dīnē de vaya dātavyam ||

## Translation.

1. In the year 1239 (1183 A.D.) on Wednesday the tenth of the dark half of Āsvina
- 2-3. On this day here in holy Śrīmālā in the reign of his majesty Śrī Jayastha the Mahārāj.
- 4-6. Aravaśaka Vahnyana the Gubila, the Tra,\* son of Pramañda (gave) to Vālaka-dēva one *dramma* in cash.
- 6-7. And (his) wife Māhapaḍē (dēvi) (gave) one *dramma*.  
Whosoever are . . . by them for each *dramma* one  
is to be received. Whosoever
9. is the ruler by him every
10. year on the . . . day it is to be given to the god.

\* Evidently the name of his office, but the abbreviation is not intelligible.

VII.—(S. 1262; A.D. 1206 No. 5 of Plan.) On the upper face of the lower square section of the fallen pillar which is one of the pair of three dome pillars. Prose :

1. \* || Ōm Namah Suryāya || Yasyodayāstasamayō sura-makuṭa-ni-pri-
2. śita-carana-kamalagṇi kurutē śhijali(m) trinētra(h) sajayati dhimnām niddhi(h) surya ||
3. Sāvat 1262 varshē adyēha Śrī Śrīmālī Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Uda-
4. -yastha dēva kalyāṇa-vijaya-rājyē maha° Āsvapast-prabh-riti-pañca-kula-
5. pratipattāu || Kāyastha-jātya-Vālamyānvayō maha° Yaśō-pālākrēyō śrthamvō (cē?)
6. -ṭaka-Vilhākēna Śrī Jagsvāmi-dēvīya-bhāmīlāgarē kshēpita dra. 40 catvari(m).

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

7. Śat Āśvina māśe yātr(śt-awē P) Āśvina sudi 13 . . . . .  
1 Āgni rāyē.
8. Malayā pushpamū dra 4 aguru dra. . . . .
9. -dra. 1 pramadā kula-sya dra. 10 vasi dra. 12 dvādaśa-draṃma  
Acandārkaṃ prativarṣam dēvāna kirāpa
10. ntyā || tathā śrēyārtham Madrakēna(?) dēva bhānūdgurē  
kshipita dra. 15 pañcādśa draṃmā Magha-
11. -vadi 6 diñe halinibānūdhē(?) gōdhūmā sē 2 pakā ghṛta pall  
9 naivēdya 32 aniga-
12. -bhōgē prativarṣam acandārkaṃ yāvat dēvāna karuṇyāḥ . .  
diñe Āhadasya-
13. -m-suhānī/ Bhadrasyamu-sulānī/ Acandārkaṃ yāvat āpant-  
ya(m) bhikṣitāni pa Bānūdhavada s(ṭi)-
14. -na (Candapana-śakēna hīn iksharam adbhikāksuram pramul-  
nām ||

## Translation.

- 1 - 2. On, Reverence to the Sun 'Victorious is that sun, the store-  
house of brightness, at whose rising and setting the three-  
eyed (Śiva) folds his hands (in adoration), even though  
his lotus feet are touched by the daimons of the gods.
- 3 - 5. In the Śamvat year 1262 (1206 A.D.), on this day here  
in holy Śrīmūla, in the prosperous and victorious reign of  
his majesty the Maharajadhiraja Śrī Udayasinha in the  
term of office of the *panch* (consisting of) Ā vapasi &c.
- 5 - 7. For the (spiritual) benefit of Yaśōpala in the Valamya  
family of the Kayastha caste, dra. 10, forty *draṃmas* were  
deposited by Vilhaka the Vēṭika (or Cēṭaka) in the  
treasury of the god Śrī Jayasvami.
7. At the vatrā festival in the month of Āśvina, on the 13th of  
the light half of Ā śvina . . . . . | , at the building of the  
fire-(altar).
8. . . . . for flowers for the garland dra. 4, albewood dra. . . .
9. 4 *draṃmas*, for the band of singing women one *draṃma* :  
thus dra. 12, twelve *draṃmas* (in all) are to be applied  
yearly by the god so long as sun and moon endure.
10. So also the dra. 15, fifteen *draṃmas* deposited in the treasury  
of the god by Madraka(?) for (spiritual) benefit.
- 11 - 12. On the sixth of the dark half of Magha in the fixed  
ritual of the *hālī*, wheat one *ser*, . . . . *ghī* nine *pallis*, the  
*navādyat* . . . . 3', the *navābhōga* is to be performed yearly  
by the god so long as sun and moon endure.
- 12 - 13. On the . . . . . day the *sūdhā* of Āhadasvami and the  
*sūdhā* of Bhadrasyami is to be given so long as sun and  
moon endure.
- 13 - 14. Written by the *pad* Candapanaśaka son of Bānūdhavada.  
\* The letter less or the letter more . . . . . of authority.

"Errors excepted."

VIII.—(S: 1274; A.D. 1218. Not in Plan.) In Bārāji's rest-house on  
the west face of the third right hand pillar. Prose:

1. Śamvat 1274 varṣe Bhādrapada sudi 9 Śukrē dyōba Śrī-  
Śrīmā-
2. 10 Maharajadhiraja Śrī Udayasinha-dēva-kalyāṇa-vijaya-  
rājyē Sa°.
3. Dēvalaprahṛiti-panīcākula pratipattā . . . . .

## BHINMAL. Inscriptions.

4. . . . . Śrī Udayastha . . . . . Śrīdēva Jagasvāmi-  
naivēdyē . . . . .  
5. . . . . dina . . . . . nityādēya lō 2 dvān. . . . .  
6. }  
7. } Illegible. . . . .  
8. }

1. In the Sainvat year 1274 (1218 A.D.) on Friday the 9th of the bright half of Bhādrapada—on this day here in holy Śrīmatā,
2. in the prosperous and victorious reign of his majesty the Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Udayasinha, in
3. the term of office of the pañch (consisting of) Sa" Dōpala and others . . . .
4. . . . Śrī Udayasinha . . . in the *nāradīyā* of Śrīdēva Jagat-svāmī . . . .
5. . . . day . . . to be given regularly 2 two lōḍ (°). •

IX — (S. 1305; A.D. 1249. Not in Plan.) On the south face of the fifth right pillar on the right hand of Barapi's rest-house. Prose.

1. Ōm Namah Śūryayah vas-vodāyastisa-
2. -māyē Śura-makuta-nispūṣhta-carana-
3. -kaṇalo 3 pi kurute 3 mjalim Timbra sa
4. jayati dhāman(n) mūl(h) Śūryah Ś Sam 1305 va
5. -rshē adyēha Śrī Śrīmule Maharajadhirajasī (Uda ,
6. -ya-siha-deva-kalyāna-vijaya rajyē maha° Gaja(-sī)
7. ha-prabhriti pañca(kula-pratipattān) . . . . . padevī . . . .
8. vaha . . . Śrī Jagasvāmidēvyabhaṭṭagare kshepita dia° 50
9. pañcā (saddramanā a)
10. -Śvina-yatrayam Śśvina sūhi (4) dino divasa-bah .
11. . . . . (26-)
12. -dhūma se 2 . . ghṛita ka 8 . . . . . muga pā 2 ghṛita
13. ka 2.
14. }
15. }

- 1-4. *Om.* Reverence to the Sun Victorious is that sun, the storehouse of brightness, at whose rising and setting the three-eyed (Śiva) folds his hands (in adoration), even though his feet are touched by the dandems of the gods.
- 4-7. In the year Śain. 1305 (1219 A.D.), on this day here in holy Śrīmālā in the prosperous and victorious reign of his majesty the Mahārājādhirāja Śrī Udaya īha, in the term of office of the *panch* (consisting of) Maha<sup>a</sup> Gajasiha and others . . . . . nadēvi.
8. *Vāha* . . . . . dra. 50 fifty *drammas* deposited in the treasury of the god Śrī Jagasvāmi.
9. At the Āśvina festival on the 4th day of the light half of Āśvina the day's *bab*.
10. . . . .

11. Wheat sars 2:.. ghl *karṣus* (8) . . . . mung pā 2, ghl  
*karṣus* 2. .

12-15. Illegible.

X.—(S. 1320, A.D. 1264 No. 6 of Man) On the east face of the lower square section of the more northerly of the east pair of dome pillars of Jagsvāmī's temple First thirteen lines in verse, the rest in prose. No 49 of the Bhānnagar State Collection (Bhān Prā I.)

1. Ōm namo Viṅṇarājaya namo devāya bhāsvate | namo 2  
nanta-ava
2. rāṇaya Haraye Cakrapānyē || nāmah Śivayaṣṇmaya namah  
para-
3. ma-Vrahmanē | Iti pūṇicāpamaśārah sarvapapapratim-  
śakah || sarva-mah-
4. gāla māṅgalyāni sarva-sukhya pradāyakah | sarv-ortha-  
siddhi-kampannah sahi-
5. -tu me hṛdī sarvādā || Iti jantū japan nityaṇi nityaṇ  
āsvate sukham | ta-
6. -smad asmiṇ jape punye ratu astu sadaya me || Iti dhya-  
nākamī-hitātmī-
7. Kāyastho naigamīmayē | Bishur istī pūya Sadhūnamdano  
namdanah satan ||
8. Śrīkṛishṇa-Kṛishṇa Govinda-pramādhāna parīyanah | Pūti-  
ras tasyaṇi Śrīma-
9. -n Sadhūhulo Val māṅgajāh || Sadaya datta-mishtinna-  
toṣṭānaka-vādhavah |
10. Ahara prasādo yasya pūṇh padmālayalayah | paropakāra  
vratin am vishṇu-
11. vadharmasvīnī || vēna jannātmanaśeakro | sādhuvada-  
vibhūśitāni || tatuh parama-
12. -dharmaātmi | sadā viśadamaṇasah || devīdattāvarah  
Śrīman Subhato 2 bhūt tadangabhūh |
13. Cāgneyas tasya Kedara pūkah Kanhadō 2 bhavat | Mahi-  
devasanto yasya bhīran Ra-
14. -ma Āśāh || Tēna Śrīkēdāraputraka Kanhadēna svafreyase  
Sam 1320 va-
15. -shē Māgha Su di 9 nayamindū prativāshaṇi bahi-  
mittāni Śrī Jayasvāmī de-
16. vīya-bhāṇḍagārī kshepita dra.50 pañcāśan drammah || bali-  
nibandhē godhūma sē 1½
17. ghṛīka ka 6 naivēhē ē mā ½ māga mā ½ ghṛīka ka ½  
Āhōtī dra ½
18. Vyāsa lō 2 pushpakūṇkumāgnī-mūlyē dra.2 patra-pūga-  
mū dra | pramadakula
19. dra 1 Bvāni prativāshaṇi devaktyabhāṇḍagārī shat  
dramma vyayē devēna kārā
20. pyap || Iyāni prasāstir Mahā Subhātēna bhāpitā | Dhruva-  
Nagvala-suta-Dedā-
21. -kēna likhitā || sūtra° (Gōgā Suṇa Bhīmasāhēnōthītrū || ॐ ||  
ॐ ||

*Translation.*

1. " Ōm, Reverence to the lord of obstacles (Gagesa), reverence to the brilliant god (the Sun), reverence to him of everlasting nature,
2. To Hari, wielder of the discus. Reverence to Śiva (and) to Sōma, reverence

**Appendix III.**

. BHINMĀL.  
Inscriptions.

## Appendix III

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

- 3-5 to the highest Brahma. May these five reverences which destroy all sin, the most auspicious of all auspicious (sayings), which grant all happiness, attended with the accomplishment of all objects, be ever in my heart."
- 5-6. The creature that constantly murmurs (these words) resorts to everlasting happiness. Therefore may I for ever take pleasure in this holy murmur.
- 6-7. There was formerly in the Nangama family a Kiyastha, Rishi son of Saḥlu, the delight of the good, whose mind was solely intent upon (the above) meditation.
- 7-9. (He was) devoted to meditation on (the names) Śrī Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa, and Govinda. To him was born a grandson, the glorious Śaḍbhāṭa son of Valāna, who constantly satisfied numerous Brahmanas with gifts of sweet food,
- 10 whose hand was not stretched out to steal, who was the home of Lakṣmī for the followers of the Vāiṣṇava religion, who art vowed to do good to others,
- 11-12. who adorned his life with the discussions of saints. From him there was the glorious Subhāṭa, the very righteous, whose mind was ever clear and to whom Dēvi granted a boon. Born of his body
- 13-14. was Cagneya. His (grand-son) was Kuṇḍala son of Kēḍāra or Maḥādīva and his (Kuṇḍala's) two brothers were Rāma and Āśala.
- 14-16. By this Kuṇḍala son of Kēḍāra for his own benefit, fifty *drammas*, dra 50, were deposited in the treasury of Śrī Jayasāhadeva for a yearly *hālī*, on the month (9) of the light half of Mīgha, in the Samvat year 1320 (1261 A.D.)
- 16-18. In the *Bālī* endowment wheat  $1\frac{1}{2}$  seers, ghl 6 *karṣas*, in the *navāḍya* 1 measure, many 2 measure, ghl  $\frac{1}{2}$  *karṣa*, Āḥotī (?)  $\frac{1}{2}$  *dramma* +  $\frac{2}{3}$  Bhaṭṭī lō (?) for the price of flowers turmeric and aloë wood one *dramma*, for the price of leaves and betelnut one *dramma*, for the band of singing women one *dramma*.
19. So let six *drammas* be expended every year by the god from his treasury.
- 20-21. This *prasaḍī* was spoken (composed) by the Mahā-(tara?) Subhāṭa. It was written by Dēḍāka, son of Nāḡvala the Dhruva. It is engraved by the carpenter Ehtmasēna son of Gīgā.

XI—(S. 1330 ; A.D. 1264 No. 7 of Plan). On the south face of the lower square section of the western side of the north pair of dome pillars. First  $11\frac{1}{2}$  lines and lines 21 22 and half of 23 in verse, the rest in prose. No. 47 of the Bhāunagar State Collection. (Bhāu. Prār. I. list page 14):

1. Namaḥ Śrī Viḡṇarājāya namo dēvaya viḡāsvatē namo
2. Paramāna(m) dadāyīnē cakrapāṇayē | Kāyastha-vāmśa pra-savaḥ purāt.
3. Śrī Sāḡha-nāmā puruṣaḥ pu.ānaḥ | Rishi . . .
4. }
5. } Damaged and illegible
6. }
7. . . . . dharmārtha . . . . . viḡāha-
8. -mānō ānamākarāḥ . . . . . 3 janishṭa sū
9. nuḥ Subhāṭa . . . . . saubhāgya-sampal-lahṭa-

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

10. -bhidiñā | triyairga-sārañ tanaya svarūpañ . . . . .  
sajjanāgriyañ Rājādhi.
11. Rājōdaya-siha-deva-mihśreyasē Śrī Subhateña tēna | dēvasya  
kośe . . . . .
12. . . . . mīkshipitāñ . . . . || Tēnaiva Mahā° Subhateña-  
sva śrē-
13. -yasē Sānivat 1330 varshā Āśvina Śudi 4 caturthidīnē divasa  
bali-
14. -pūja-prōkshayakartā(m) deva° Śrī Jayasvāmi-bhāpā-  
gāre dra 50 pañi-
15. -cā an° drañma mīkshipitāñ || Tathā Śītkaranē Mahā°  
Gajasthaprabhīti-
16. -pañcākulañ uparadhayita(°)yati | Balidūnē varshanibhāñ-  
dhē karapita dra. 4 catu-
17. -ro drañmāñ prativarshāñ svīya pastalā bhavyā . . . pañi-  
cakulēna jatātyāñ
18. Vah-myamdhē gōdīdīmā sē 2 ghṛita ka 8 muga mī | cōśhāñ  
ma 1 ghṛita ka 1 vyā-
19. -sa-mrvapa I Abōt mrvapa I Kuñkunāguru dra. 2 pushpa  
dra. 2 patrapūga dra. 2.
20. Pramadākula dra 2 evam etat prativarsham ācāñdrārkkañ  
devēna karapyañ ||
21. Śrī-sāya-ratna-pura-lāṭa hradañmāñ, Śrīnāladeśavahikā-  
dhikṛi |
22. -to dhurñah | vyasena cañdahrinā vīdu-bāñ varōpa yo 3  
dhyapitah sa vi-
23. -dadhi Subhatañ praśastūñ || Dhru° Dedakēna bhikṣitā sūtra°  
Goshasthē-
24. -na utkupa || ॐ ||

## Translation:

- 1-2. Reverence to the Lord of Obstacles (Ganeśa). Reverence  
to the shining god. Reverence . . . to (Vishnu) the holder  
of the discus who bestows supreme happiness.
- 2-3. There was formerly an ancient man named Śrī Sādha  
born of the Kayastha race. 'Rishi' . . . . .
- 4-6. Illegible.
- 7-9. . . . for righteousness . . . entering . . . . giving  
pleasure . . . there was born a son Subhata—
- 9-10. . . (a wife) Lahta by name, rich in excellence . . .  
the summum opus of the three objects of human effort  
(religious merit, wealth, and pleasure) in the form of a son  
. . . . the chief of the virtuous—
11. By that Śrī Subhata for the spiritual benefit of the king  
of kings his majesty Udayasinha in the treasury of the  
god . . . deposited . . . .
- 12-15. By that same Mahā° Subhata for his own (spiritual)  
benefit in the Sānivat year 1330 (1274 A.D.) on the fourth  
day of the bright half of Āśvina, for the day's *bali*, worship  
and *darśana* dra 50, fifty *drammas* were deposited in the  
treasury of the god Śrī Jayasvāmi.
- 16-17. And he serves (propitiates?) the *pañca* consisting  
of Mahā° Gajastha and the rest at Śrī Karaga. On the  
*bali* day the four (4) *drammas* given for the *bali* endowment  
are to be paid every year by the *pañca* from their own . . . .

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

18-20 In the *hali* endowment wheat *śā* 2, *ghī ka(rsha)* 8, *mung* one measure, *ciśha*  $\frac{1}{2}$  measure, *ghī ka(rsha)*  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the Bhat's dōle 1; the Abbott's dōle 1, turmeric and aloe-wood *dra.* 2, flowers *dra.* 2, leaves and betelnut *dra.* 2, the band of singing women *dra.* 2 : so is this to be given yearly by the god so long as sun and moon endure.

21 - 23. *Bhūhata* the officer of Śrī Satyapura Ratnapura and Lata-brada, the chief set over the *vahikas* of the Śīmāla country, who was taught by Candā Hīri the purāṇik, best of the learned, composed the *prasasti*.

• 24. Written by Dadika the Dhruva and engraved by Gōshasṭha the carver.

XII.—(S 1333; A.D. 1277 Not in Plan.) On the north bank of Jankop lake on a fallen pillar to the west of Ghazni Khān's tomb. Lines 1 - 4 and half of line 5 and lines 18-22 (and perhaps 23 and 24) in verse, the rest in prose. No. 52 of the Bhānnagar State Collection (Bhan. Prā. I. list pages 15-16).

1. Yā puratra mahā-dhīnē Śīmālē sasamagatah | sa deva(h)  
Śrī
2. Mahāvīra . . . . . bhayātātā (?) prajñā
3. Yān Saranam gatah | tasya Vīrajnōmdrasya praparthan  
kṣanam navam 12 Pa-
4. -rāpadha-mahagacchē puṇya-puṇya-svabhavina (?) Śrī  
pūrnacandhā-dri-
5. nē prasada bhikṣyate yathā svasti Samvat 1333 varshē Āsvi-
6. -na Śu di 14 Sōmē | adyā Śrī Śīmālē Mahārajakula Sī  
(?)
7. -eṇa-dēva-kulvāna-vijayī-rājyē tanmyukta-maha  
Gaja-stha-
8. prabhriti-pancakula-pratipattau Śrī Śīmāla-dēva-vahikā-  
dhikritēna
9. Naigamānvaya-kayastha-mahattama-Subhātēna tatha(ve ?)  
etāka Karma-dhī-
10. -na svāśreyasē Ā vinamā-stya-yatrā-mahōtsavē Āsvina Śu di  
14 ca-
11. -turdast-dhīnē Śrī Mahāvīradēvaya prativarshan panicō-  
pacara-pūjanim-
12. -ttam Śrīkarantya-panicakulam selahatha - dast - narapāla-  
vīrakti-pūrnānubh-
13. -dhya-talapa-dehala-sahast-pada-ma . . . hala-sahast
14. da 6 saptaviśōpakōpē panicadramina samā selahathā-  
bhāvyē ātha
15. drā<sup>o</sup> ma dra, 8 a-hṭāu dramina . || ubhayaṁ saptaviśōpa-  
kōpēna trayōlaka dra-
16. -umā Acāndrīrkkam dēvadāyē kārapitāh || vartumāna-  
panica-kulēna va-
17. -rttamina-selahathēna dēvadāyē kṛitam idam svaśrīyasē  
pālantyaṁ ||
18. Yasmān panicakulō sarvō maṇṭavyam iti sarvadā | tasya  
tasya tadā śrēyo
19. Yasya yasya yadā padam || || Śrīsatya-ratna-pura-  
Lāṭa-hradādhikārī Śrī-
20. -māla-dēva-vahikādhikṛito dhurṇaḥ | vyāsēna Caṇḍaharīṇa  
vidushīm va-
21. -rēna yodhyāpitāh sa vidadhē Subhātāh prasastim || 3 ||  
Iyam Gōganujātē-

22. (-na)sūtradhārya dhīmatā | utkirṇi Bhīmassthēna Āśanāk-  
shara-mālīkā |  
23. . . sanam idam mathapātimahendīgoshṭhika Ācāndra-  
pratīpattān || ५ ||  
24. . . vasasamaya . . . (b) khitam tēna dhīmatā | yo vācayati  
punyā-  
25. . . sata . . . . . || ३ || ma(m)gala-salīkṛth || śivamastu  
sāmp.

## Translation.

1. The god Śī Mahāvīra who formerly came in(to) this great town Śrīmāla . . . in whom the wise protected from fear take refuge—a new ordinance is written as follows for the people's sake through the favour of that Vīra, chief of the Jinas by Śrī Pāṇḍacandra kṛmī, whose nature is most holy.
- 5-9. Good luck! In the Sāṃvat year 1333 (1277 A.D.), on Monday the 14th of the light half of Āśvina—on this day here in holy Śrīmāla in the prosperous and victorious reign of his majesty Śrī Caciṇa the Mahārāj in the term of office of the *punch* (consisting of) Maha' Gajastha and others, appointed by him.
- 9-11. By Subhāṣa the leading Kāyastha, of the Nāgama family, the officer in authority over the Vahukas of the Śrīmāla country, and by Karmastha the Cētaka (servant) (or vātaka), for their own (spiritual) benefit, at the great festival of the jayā of the month of Āśvina on the fourteenth day 14 of the light half of Āśvina, for the worship (consisting of) the five services yearly to the god Śrī Mahāvīra.
- 12-15. [These four lines seem to be made up chiefly of Prakṛit words which I am unable to translate. They specify two sums, one of 5 and the other of 8 drammae.]
- 15-17. Both, with the twenty-seventh *upakopa* (?), the 13 *drammae* have been given in religious endowment. This which has been made as a religious endowment is to be maintained by the *punch* and by the *śālakaṭha* (?) officiating (from time to time) for their own (spiritual) benefit.
- 18-19. Because every *punch* is always to be honoured, the benefit (of maintaining the endowment) belongs to whomsoever at any time (holds) the office.
- 19-22. Subhāṣa, the officer of Śrīsatyapura Ratnapura and Lāṭṣhrada, the chief set over the *vahukas* of the Śrīmāla country, who was taught by Candahari the purāṇik, the best of the learned, composed the *prastāva*. The series of letters of this grant was engraved by the wise carpenter Bhīmassthā the son of Cīḍga.
- 23-25. This grant was written by that wise one . . . at the time . . . . in the term of office of the Abbot Mahēndra and the committeeman Ācāndra (?) . . who causes to speak . . . . Good luck! Bliss for ever! May it be auspicious . . . . Finis.

XIII.—(S. 1334; A.D. 1278. No. 8 in Plan.) On the north face of the lower square section of the eastern of the north pair of dome pillars. All in prose:

1. Oṃ namaḥ Sūryāya || yasyōdayastāsamayē suramukuṭa-  
nisprīṭṣṭa-carāṇa-

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

- 2 kaimalo 3 pi kurutē 3 nūjaliū. trinētra sajayati dhāmnā(nū)  
mūlhi(h) sūryah || | Samvat 1334.
3. Varshē Āśvina va di 8 adyēha S'ri Śrīmalē Mahārājakula-  
Śrī-Caeiga-kalyāna-viju-
4. -ya-rājyē tanmyukta-maha° . . . (s)ka-prabhīpiti-paṇcakula-  
pratipadāu | ēvān kal' pravarttamānē
5. Cāhumānavavē Mahārāja(kula) Śrī Samarasihātmaja-  
Mahārājadhīraja-Śrī Udaya|
6. Sihadēvānāja-S'ri Vāhadhasiha . . . . . Śrī Camurpa-  
rāja-deva-Śrēyase maha°
7. Dēdākēna . . . . Śrī Jagasvamidēvya° bhāp'agān . .  
bali . . . . .
8. . . . dra. 100 śatañ dramma nikhōpitā Āśvina-yātrayā(nī)  
Āśvina vadī 8 aṣṭamī dinē div isa-bali ta-
9. -thā ānigabhāga . . . prakashanika . . . . . Śrīdevya-  
bhānūlāgarat kārāpanya | bali-nibandhe
10. gōdhūma sē 3 ghrita ka 1 (maivēdyē) . . . . . (cō-hā(nī)  
mā 2, muga sē 7, ghrita ka 2 vyāsanuvapa 1 Ābōtī.
11. -nirvāpa 1 kumkumāguru-mūly(c) dra 2 tathā pushpā-  
mūly(c) dra. 2 (?) tathā patrapūga-mūly(c) dra. 2 pramadā-  
kulē mūly(c) dra. 2 c-
12. -vañ śtat Vyasa-Abōtika-Śrīślī-goshitika . . . kula pramadā-  
kula prabhūtmāñ varsham varsham | ratī a-
13. cañdrārka-yāvat tatha . . . . . fīl kārāpanya śrī-dīvona  
kārāpanya | puu . . . . . kōnāpi na karat-
14. -yā | likhitam dhru° Nacula suta-Dēdākēna . . . . . līnā-  
ksharam adbhakaksharam va sarvañ pramāy-
15. -mū || māṅgalam sadā śrīth || (śūtradharā na ?) Nāna-suta  
Dēpala Sam 33 varshē Caeiga va di 15 . . . . . sala.
16. Manashēna (?) . . . . . || .

## Translation.

- 1-2. Ōm. Reverence to the Sun° Victorious is that sun, the  
storehouse of brightness, at whose rising and setting the  
three-eyed (Śiva), even though (his own) lotus feet are  
touched by the diadems of the gods, folds his hands (in  
adoration).
- 2-4. In the *Samvat* year 1334 (1278 A.D.) on the 8th of the  
dark half of Āśvina—on this day here in holy Śrīnāla in  
the prosperous and victorious reign of his majesty the  
Mahārāñ Śrī Caeiga, in the term of office of the  
*pamea* (consisting of) the Maha° . . . Śtha and the rest,  
appointed by him—at this time
- 5-6. for the (spiritual) benefit of his majesty Śrī Cāmunpa-  
rāja . . . (son of) Śrī-Vāhadhasiha the son of his  
majesty Śrī Udayasiha the Mahārājadhīrāja, (who was)  
the son of his majesty the Mahārāñ Śrī Samarasiha in  
the Cāhumāna race
7. By the Maha° Dēdāka . . . in the treasury of the god  
Śrī Jagasvāmi . . . . bali . . .
8. *dra.* 100, one hundred *drammas*, were deposited. At the  
Āśvina yātrā the day's *bali* on the eighth 8 of the dark  
half of Āśvina

9. and the *gṛigabhaya* . . *darśana* . . to be expended from the treasury of the god. In the endowment of the *bali*
- 10-11. Wheat *śr.* 3; *ghṛi ka(rsha)* 1; in the *auritṭya* . . Cōsha measures 2, *mungasē.* 1, *ghṛi ka(rsha)* 1, the Bhat's dole 1, the Abbot's dole 1, for buying turmeric and aloe wood *dra.* 2, and for buying flowers *dra.* 2 (?), and for buying leaves and betel *dra.* 2, for the band of singing women *dra.* 2.
- 12-13. Thus this for the Bhat's, Abbots, Committemen, . . . band of singing women &c. every year so long as sun and moon (endure) is so . . . to be expended, is to be expended by the god. Interruption (?) is to be made by no one
14. Written by Dadaka son of Nagula the *dharma* . . . the letter less or the letter more—all is of (no ?) authority.
15. Good luck ! Bless for ever. By the carpenter Depala son of Nana, on the 15th of the dark half of Cūtra in the year 73 . .
16. By Marasba (?) . . .

XIV.—(S 1309, A.D. 1283 Not on Plan) In Bārājī's rest-house on the south face of the first right pillar. Prose. No 51 of the Bhāunagar State Collection (Bhān. Prā. I. list page 5) :

1. Ōm namah śāryayaḥ || yasyōdayasasamayē sura-mukuta-  
usprihita-caraga
2. -kamalo pi | kurute | nijaṇu trinetra sa jayati dharmam  
nidhāy śāryayaḥ samva
3. t. 1-39 varṣe Aśvina Śu di | sanāv adyaḥa Śrī Śrīmālē  
Maharaja kula-Śrī samva
4. -aśha-deva-kāṣṭha-vijaya-raja-jyē samyukta-mahē  
śha prabhūti-paṇi akula-
5. pratipattan Śrī Jvalanāt atrayāta-Guhilo  
-Ru-
6. -dāpala-snta śha<sup>o</sup> Sahajapāl naatmaśō yasē putrinātprāc-  
yasē bali-puja-
7. aṇḍa bhōga pratyam(gaṇ) Śrī Jayasvāmi-dēvāya Śārya-  
vaya bhānūdgārē (k)śhēpita dra. 20 vim
8. śati drammā || Śv<sup>o</sup>.a.ś. kāsaraṇ Rudrāmārga-  
sampe Kat va-paṇi
9. bhānūdgāra śhētra | ēka pradattah | divāva  
dinē pūjā mun(t)am Saba Saba-
10. -ja-pāla-bhāryā Atma-śēyāsē mātā pitrōrēyāsē  
bhānūdgārē (k)śhēpita-
11. dra. 10 da-sa-drammā . . . . .  
drammā Asvi-
12. -na-yātrāyām Aśvina-śu di | dinē divāsa-bali-pujā  
bhānūdgārāt Śrīdēv<sup>o</sup>
13. -na kāṇḍapantya | vala-nivānūdhē gōdhuma sē 2  
ghṛita ka 8 naivēdyē cōśhā(m) pā 2 mu-
14. -ga ghṛita<sup>o</sup> ka 1 aṇḍabhōgē  
patra-puja
15. pratyam(gaṇ) dra. | Vyāsanirvāpa . . . . . potī-nirvāpa |  
pramadā-kula dra. 2 etat saṁvra Śrīdēvya . . . . .

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL  
Inscriptions.

16. *kosa dra*, ..... : *pramadākylēna* .....  
*ācamdrā-kālam yāva*  
 17. *-t*, ..... *nīrvāpantyañ* || *karapantyañ*, .....  
*nāgula-sutēna maha°* *Dē-*  
 18. *-dakēna* ..... | *Guhiḷō Sāha°* *Rudrapāla-suta-*  
*sōḍha°* *Harisithē na (Sridē-)*  
 19. *-viya-sūhataḥ* ..... *dia. 4°* ..... *Sahajapāla-suta-sā*  
*sūhita-*  
 20. *-ka dra 4*, .....  
 21-23. Illegible.

## Translation.

- 1-2. Ōm. Reverence to the Sun ! Victorious is that sun, the store-house of Brightness, at whose rising and setting the three-eyed (Śiva), even though (his own) lotus feet are touched by the diadems of the gods, folds his hands (in adoration)  
 3-5. On Saturday the first of the light half of Āśvina in the year 1339 (1253 A.D.) on this day here in holy Śifmala, in the prosperous and victorious reign of his majesty the Mahārāul Śiṭ Sāmivataśtha, in the term of office of the *pamea* (consisting of) the *maha°* ..... *sūha* and the rest, appointed by him.  
 6-8. *Dra. 20*, twenty *drammas*, were deposited in the treasury for the sun-god Śiṭ Jagasyami by *Sāha°* *Sahajapāla* son of *Rudrapāla* the *Guhiḷa*, who came here from Śiṭ *Javāhpura*, for every part of the *bali*, the worship, and the *amjabhoga*, for his own (spiritual) benefit and for the benefit of his father and mother.  
 8-9. .... near the *Rudra* road 1 one field was given called *Kathara-paṇā*  
 9-11. To the god on ..... day for worship, the wife of  
 • *Sāha* *Sahajapāla* for her own benefit and for the benefit of her father and mother, ..... deposited *dra. 10*, ten *drammas*, .....  
 11-12. \* *Drammas* in the *Ā vīna Yātrā* on the first day of the light half of *Āsvina* are to be expended by the god from the treasury (on) the day's *bali*, worship, .....  
 13-17. In the *bali* endowment wheat *sī 2*, ..... *ghu ka (s)ha* 8 in the *nānēḷya cōsha* *pā 2* mung ..... *ghu ka (s)ha* ½ ; in the *amjabhoga* for every part of the leaves and betel *dra. 1*, the *Bhat's* dole ..... , (the *Abjoti's* dole *1*, the band of singing women *dra. 2* ; all this the god's treasury *dra.* ..... by the band of singing women ..... so long as sun and moon endure ..... is to be doled out, is to be expended.  
 17-20. By the *Maha°* *Dēdāka* son of *Nāgula* .....  
 By *Sōḍha°* *Harisitha* son of *Sāha* *Rudrapāla* the *Guhiḷa*, four *sūhataḥ drammas* of the god ..... By *Sā* ..... son of *Sahajapāla* .....  
*sūhataḥ drammas 4*, .....  
 21-23. Illegible.

XV.—(S 1342 ; A.D. 1286. Not in Plan.) In the ground close to the wall on the right in entering the enclosure of old Mahālakṣmī's temple. Prose. No. 50 of the Bhāunagar State Collection (Bhāu. Prā. I. page 15.)

**Appendix III.**  
**BHINMAL.**  
**Inscriptions.**

1. Ōm. Namah Sūryāya || Yasyōdayāstasamayē sura-ma- . . .
2. -kuta-niṣprishṭa-caraya kamalō pi kurntē ś nijalin trinētra  
saja-
3. -yati dhāmnān nidlhiḥ sūryāya || Samvat 1312 (1286 A.D.)  
Āsina vadi 10 Ba-
4. -vāvadīcha śrī Śrīmālē Mahārājakula śrī Śāmvatasīha dē-
5. -va-kalyāṇa-vijaya-rājyē tanniyukta-maha° Pāndyā-prabhṛti-  
pañca-
6. -kula pratipattāu | Śāsanāk-harāpi praya(c)chati yathā | Rāthō.  
da-
7. -jattya-Ūtisvatīha-pāutra Vagasa-suta Śīla° Alhavaśīhē-
8. -na ātmīya mātā-putrō śrīyaso° svaśrīyaso° śrī Jagasvāmī-dē-
9. -vaya Āsīnē yātrāyaṁ dāsamīdīnē divasa-bali-pūja pū-
10. -k-harādhādī āmga-bhōga-nimi(t)tanī sēlahathābhāvyā-
11. -t sri karāpita ācamidrarkayant pradatta dra. 4½.
12. Śrīdēvyakōṭyū.
13. Ācamidrarkam yah kōpi Sēlahathō bhavati tēna varsham  
varsham prati pā-
14. -lauṭyaṁ ca | vahubhū vasudhā bhukta rājābhū Sagarādibhi  
yasya
15. jasya yada bhūnt tasya tasya tadā phalaṁ || 1 Āsina vadi  
10 va-
16. -li-nibazindhe gōdhūma sō ghṛita ka 12 naivīdyē  
coshmā pā 4.
17. mugam ma 1 ghṛita ka ½ Vyasanirvāpa 1 Abōttinirvāpa  
1 kunhuma
18. kastūti-pratyam(gam) dra. 1 pushpa-pratyam(gam) dra 4  
pramadakula-pratyam(gam) dra. 1 patra-pā-
19. ga-pratyam(gam) dra. 1 cāt sarvam varsham 2 prati śrī-  
dēvyā bhāmāgarat
20. Varttāpakar kārūpantyaṁ || māṅgalam sadāśrīḥ || likhutaṁ  
Dhruva
21. Nāgula-suta-dhru° Dedakēna Utkrāpa sūtra° Bhitmassthēna||.

*Translation.*

- 1 - 3. Ōm. Reverence to the Sun ' Victorious is that sun, the store-  
house of brightness, at whose rising and setting the three-  
eyed (SIVA), even though (his own) lotus feet are touched  
by the diadems of the gods, folds his hands (in adoration).
- 5 - 6. Samvat 1312 on Sunday the 10th of the dark half of  
Āsina, on this day here in holy Śrīmāla, in the prosperous  
and victorious reign of his majesty the Maharājā śrī Śāma-  
vatasīha-dēva, in the term of office of the *panca* (consisting  
cf) Maha° Pāndyā and the rest, appointed by him, he sets  
forth the writing of the grant as follows.
- 6 - 11. By Śīla° Alhavaśīha son of Vagasa and grandson of Ūti-  
svātīha of the Rāthōda race, for the benefit of his own  
mother and father and for his own benefit, 4½ *drammas*  
(were) given to the god śrī Jagasvāmī, for the day's *bali*,  
the worship, the *darśana* &c., and the *amgabhōga* on the  
10th day at the Āsina yātrā . . . so long as sun and  
moon (endure) . . .
- 12 - 14. The god's treasure house . . . . . whosoever is Sēlahatha,  
by him every year it is to be maintained also.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL  
Inscriptions.

- 11-15. The earth has been enjoyed by many kings, beginning with Sāgara. Whosoever the earth is at any time, his is also the fruit thereof.
- 15-16. In the endowment of the *bali* for the 10th of the dark half of Āśvina wheat *śi* . . . *ghu* *keti* (*shas*) 12: in the *nairadya* *cishu* *pā* 4.
- 17-19. Mung *mā* ½, *ghu* *ka* ½ the Bhat's dole 1, the Ābōtt's dole 1, for turmeric and musk each dra. 4 for flowers each dra. 4, for the baid of singing women each dra. 1, for leaves and betel each dra. 4.
- 19-21. All this is to be expended yearly from the god's treasury . . . Gooa kek! Bhas for ever. Written by Dhru<sup>o</sup> Dēdāka son of Dhruva Nāgula. Engraved by Bhūmaśtha the carpenter.

XVI.—(S. 1345, A.D. 1289, No. 9 of Plan) On the south face of the lower square section of the north-east corner pillar of the dome. The first thirteen lines are in verse, the rest in prose. No. 48 of the Bhāu-nagar State Collection (Bhau Pra. I. list page 14) :

1. Svargapavargasukhadān paramatmaṛpān dīpīsayānti yam  
sukptino hṛdi sa-
2. -rvadāya tasmā nam y-jamātaya sūrā-māndha saṁstāya-  
mana-caritaya
3. namah Śivāya || 1 Ślaghyah satām sukpt sakpt manushyōs  
mānyō maha-
4. -ttama-guṇa Subhatah sa ēva | yaśa jagatrayaguruṁ girjā-  
dhanathān devān
5. nama-yati natō 3 nūdanā mahōsa || 2 Sōmō 3 si natha natī-  
mattara-kairavō-
6. -shu puṇya Prabhāsa-sarasi sthūm a'ritōshu | tasmā . . . . .  
mahaballu-
7. -ttu s'ri Sōmanātha itī sadbhagatān smaran || 3 Puṇyah Pra-  
bhāsa-si-bhūsha-
8. -na-Karṇamāla-pāpa pramōcana ruṇātti-vimōcanādyaḥ | ēt-  
āh Ka-
9. -pardi-kṛta-sat-tithibhiḥ pradhānais tīrthān alān kṛitam  
idān hṛdayān mamāstu ||
10. 4 Ētasya puṇya-payaśō jaladhōs tathasya Sārasvata-niva-  
hasyata.
11. Da<sup>o</sup> || Ōm namah Sāryāyah Jaj(j)yōti prasarati tarām lōka  
kṛtyāya nī-
12. -tyam | yannāmōktān sakalakalushān yāti pārān payodhō  
| sarvasyātmā sugati-
13. -surathō -dhvānta-mātaniga-siṁgha | dīshīa-ādyō  
nava(bha) si bhagavān sarvasyāntyanika-
14. -rōti || Sānivat 1315 varshē MāghaVadi 2 Fōmē 3 dyē ha Śrī 3  
mālē mahārāja-
15. -kula-Śrī Śāmavata-siṁgha-dēva-kalyāṇa-vijaya-rājyō tan-  
niyukta-maha<sup>o</sup> chānha-
16. -prabhṛti-parīcakula-pratipatāu ēvaṁkāle pravarttamāno  
Śrī-Jāvālipuravāstavya-
17. Pukarapiśthāntya-yajur-vēda pāthakāya | Padamalasyagō-  
trāya | Vrahma<sup>o</sup> na-
18. -vaghaṇa-varṁśotpannādhyava<sup>o</sup> VāhApāutra | Jyōti<sup>o</sup> Mā-  
dhava-pratidānitrā Jyō<sup>o</sup>

## Appendix III.

• BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

19. Tilaka-dāhita-Saṅgha-pūtra-mātu-Pānala-suta | Vrahma°  
Vāgaṇa saṁśārasyaḥ
20. A-śratām jñtvā | Śrī Jagasvāmīn | Śrī-śrīya-ya-mūrtiḥ  
prāsāda-sauvarūpaka-
21. -laśarōpita | Jatasraṭha dēvaṁ saṁpūjya sama-ta-dēva-lōka-  
Vrahma-lōka-pra-
22. -tyakṣatām | Vasiṣṭvayōṭharapī-samakṣatām | Ātmanaśca  
Ācāndrārka-avat śrīya-prāsāda-pra-
23. -pta-tyartham | prativarṣam | pūjñam Śrī Jagasvami-dēva-  
bhāṁdagarō mukṣipita | rakma-vi
24. -ana-puṭ-dra. 100 dvītu Śatam Anuśham dhammanām vyā-  
japadāt Aśvina-yatrayām Aśvi-
25. -na vadī || dhīr divasa vahī kayōvahi mvaṁdhe gōdhūma se  
4 pakvō ghṛita ||
26. ka 16 āruvedya cōśhām māt 1 muṣa māt 1½ ghṛita ka | 1 dakṣe  
• pati 8 pūga 2 aṁga-
27. -bhōga-pratya drg. 1 pushpha pratya den. 6 patrapūga-pra-  
tya° dra. 4 vyāsa-nirvāpa-Ābōtt-nirvā-
28. -pa-mvaṁdhe cōsham se ¼ muṣa pa 3 ghṛita ka 1 dakṣiṇā 16  
2 puṁadākula dra. 4 cta-
29. -t suvaṁ prativarṣam ācāndrārka-yavat Śrīlevasya bhāṁ-  
dagatī vīcāntyaṁ karāpa-
30. -nīvaṁ ca | subhām bhavatu sarvada | Jyoti Śūguda-sutēna  
• Cāndrārṇityaṁ samakṣam hi-
31. -khītaṁ Kava Nagula-sutēna Dēvakena utkīrṇa Sūtra°  
Nana-suta-Dēpale-
32. -nī || māṁgalam suta Śūṭh.

## Translation.

- 1-3. Reverence to that Siva° the benefactor of those who bow to him, whose actions are praised by the leaders of gods and demons who gives the happiness of heaven and of salvation, whose form is the supreme soul, whom the wise ever lay hold upon in (their) heart.
- 3-5. Oh Mahisa, whosoever bowing daily does reverence to the god who is *guru* of the three worlds, the lord of the mountain's daughter (Parvati), that man is worthy of praise from the righteous, fortunate, wise, to be honoured for most excellent virtues, a true hero,
- 5-7. Oh Lord thou art the moon among the bending lotuses that have found their place in the holy pool of Prabhasa, therefore I make mention (of thee) famous by the name of Sōm matha on the seashore . . . .
- 7-9. May this heart of mine be adorned by these holy chief (Arthas, Prabhasa, the moon's ornament, the Lotus (pool), the Release from Sin, the Release from Debt and Suffering &c., whose lucky days have been fixed by Kapardi (Siva).
10. Of this pool of pure water and . . . of Saravati.  
• • • • •
11. Da° Om! Reverence to the Sun, whose light ever reaches far for the work of mankind, at the mention of whose name all sin goes beyond the ocean: the soul of all, whose path and whose ear are good, a lion to the trumpeting elephants (of darkness): When the Lord Sun is seen in the sky, he makes the last (?) . . of all.

## Appendix III.

BHINMAL.  
Inscriptions.

- 11-16. On Monday the second of the dark half of Māgha in the Sainvat year 1345 (1289 A.D.), on this day were in holy Śrīmāla, in the prosperous and victorious reign of his majesty the Maharanī Śrī Samvata Singhī, in the term of office of the *pamca* (consisting of) the Mahā' Chauhā and the rest, appointed by him.
- 16-21. At this time to (read by) Vagada the Brāhmaṇa son of Sodhala and grandson of Adhyaya Vālha, of the Navaghana family, of the Padmalā gōtra, student of the Yajurveda, of the town of Puskarini and living in Śrī Javalpura, son of his mother Pānala, and daughter's son of Tilaka the Jōshī, and granddaughters son of Mādhava the Jōshī—recognizing the impermanence of this world, a golden *kāṭa* was set up on the palace . . . of the Sun Jagasvami.
- 21-24. (By him) worshipping the god in faith, before the world of the gods and the world of Brahma, for the purpose (?) of saving his ancestors in both lines, and himself, to gain the favour of the Sun so long as sun and moon (endure), (for) worship every year, 200 *Viśalupī* *drammas* in gold were deposited in the treasury of the god Śrī Jagasvami.
- 24-28. Out of the interest of these *drammas*, in the endowment of the day's *hata* and the *kāyāvali* on the 11th of the dark half of Āśvina at the Āśvina festival, wheat *ś* 1, *ghī kaṭṭha* 16 in the Navēdya cōṣha measure 1, mung *pā*. 1½, *ghī kaṭṭha* 1, for *pāṇasapāri* leaves 8, betel 2: for the Aṅgabhōgā severally *dra* 1, for flowers severally *dra* 6, for leaves and betel severally *dra*. 1 in the endowment of the Bhat's dole and the Abōt's dole, cōṣha *ś*. 1, mung *pā*. 3, *ghī kaṭṭha* 1, dakṣiṇa *lō* 2, the band of singing women *dra*. 4.
- 29-32. All this is to be separated and expended from the treasury of the god every year so long as sun and moon (endure). May it always be auspicious. Written by Dēdaka son of Kava' Nāgula for Candraditya son of Jyoti' Vagada. Engraved by Depāla son of Nāna the carpenter. Good luck! Bliss for ever!

## APPENDIX IV.

## JAVA AND CAMBODIA.

AN incident redeems the early history of Gujarát from provincial narrowness and raises its ruling tribes to a place among the greater conquerors and colonisers. This incident is the tradition that during the sixth and seventh centuries fleets from the coasts of Sindh and Gujarát formed settlements in Java and in Cambodia. The Java legend is that about A.D. 603 Hindus led by Bhruvijaya Sayelachála the son of Kasamachitra or Bálya Achá king of Kúpat or Gujarát settled on the west coast of the island.<sup>1</sup> The details of the settlement recorded by Sir Stamford Raffles<sup>2</sup> are that Kasamachitra, ruler of Gujarát, the tenth in descent from Arjun, was warned of the coming destruction of his kingdom. He accordingly started his son Bhruvijaya Sayelachála with 5000 followers, among whom were cultivators artisans warriors physicians and writers, in six large and a hundred small vessels for Java. After a voyage of four months the fleet touched at an island they took to be Java. Finding their mistake the pilots put to sea and finally reached Mataram in the island of Java. The prince built the town of Mendang Kumulan. He sent to his father for more men. A reinforcement of 2000 arrived among them carriers in stone and in brass. An extensive commerce sprang up with Gujarát and other countries. The bay of Mataram was filled with stranger vessels and temples were built both at the capital, afterwards known as Brambanum, and, during the reign of Bhruvijaya's grandson Ardivijaya that is about A.D. 660, at Boro Buddoi in Kedah.<sup>3</sup> The remark that an ancestor of the immigrant prince had changed the name of his kingdom to Gujarát is held by Lassen to prove that the tradition is modern. Instead of telling against the truth of the tradition this note is strong argument in its favour. One of the earliest mentions of the name Gujarát for south Marwár is Huen Tsiang's (A.D. 630) Ku-che-lo or Gurjjara. As when Huen Tsiang wrote the Gurjjara chief of Bhinnál, fifty miles west of Abu, already ranked as a Kshatriya his family had probably been for some time established, perhaps as far back as A.D. 190 a date by which the Mihira or Gurjjara conquest of Valabhi and north Gujarát was completed.<sup>4</sup> The

## Appendix IV.

## JAVA.

<sup>1</sup> Sir Stamford Raffles' Java, II. 83. From Java Hindus passed to near Banjar Massin in Borneo probably the most eastern of Hindu settlements (Jour. R. A. Soc. IV. 185). Temples of superior workmanship with Hindu figures also occur at Waahoo 400 miles from the coast. Dalton's Diaks of Borneo Jour. Asiatique (N. S.) VII. 153. An instance may be quoted from the extreme west of Hindu influence. In 1873 an Indian architect was found building a palace at Gondar in Abyssinia. Kitch Johnson's Africa, 269.

<sup>2</sup> Raffles' Java, II. 65-85. Compare Lassen's Indische Alterthumskunde, II. 10, 40; IV. 460.

<sup>3</sup> Raffles' Java, II. 87.

<sup>4</sup> Compare Tod's Annals of Rájasthán (Third Reprint), I. 87. The thirty-nine Chohan successions, working back from about A.D. 1200 with an average reign of eighteen years, lead to A.D. 498.

#### Appendix IV. JAVA.

details of the help received from Gujjarāt after the prince's arrival show that the parent state had weathered the storm which threatened to destroy it. This agrees with the position of the Bhīmal Gujjaras at the opening of the seventh century, when, in spite of their defeat by Prabhakara-vardhana (A.D. 600-606) the father of Śiṅha (A.D. 606-641) of Magadha, they maintained their power at Broach and at Valabhi as well as at Bhīmal.<sup>1</sup> The close relations between the Gujjaras and the great seafaring Mīhras or Meds make it likely that the captains and pilots who guided the fleets to Java belonged to the Med tribe. Perhaps it was in their honour that the new Java capital received the name Mendan, as at a later period it was called Brambanum or the town of Brāhmans. The fact that the Gujjaras of Broach were sun-worshippers not Buddhists causes no difficulty since the Bhīmal Gujjaras whom Hsien Tsiang visited in A.D. 630 were Buddhists and since at Valabhi Buddhism Shāivism and sun-worship seem to have secured the equal patronage of the state.

Besides of Gujjarāt and its king the traditions of both Java and Cambodia contain references to Hastinagata or Hastinapura, to Taxila, and to Rumadesa.<sup>2</sup> With regard to these names and also with regard to Gandhara

<sup>1</sup> Compare Note on Bhīmal page 467.

<sup>2</sup> According to Cunningham (Ancient Geography, 47 and Beal's Buddhist Records, I, 109 note 92) the site of Hastinagara or the eight cities is on the Swat river eighteen miles north of Peshawar. In Yüda and early Mahābhārata times Hastinapura was the capital of Guadhāra (Hewitt Journ. Roy. As. Soc. XXI, 217). In the seventh century it was called Pushkalavati (Beal's Buddhist Records, I, 109). Taxila, the capital of the country east of the Indus, was situated about forty miles east of Attock at Shahdri near Kāthā a sarai (Cunningham's Ancient Geography, 165). According to Cunningham (Ibid. 109), Taxila continued a great city from the time of Alexander till the fifth century after Christ. It was then laid waste apparently by the great White Huna conqueror Mihirā-lukha (A.D. 500-550). A hundred years later when Hsien Tsiang visited it the country was under Kashmir, the royal family were extinct, and the nobles were struggling for power (Beal's Buddhist Records, I, 136). Rumadesa. References to Rumadesa occur in the traditions of Siam and Cambodia as well as in those of Java. Fleets of Rum are also noted in the traditions of Bengal and Orissa as attacking the coast (Fergusson's Architecture, III, 640). Coupling the mention of Rūm with the tradition that the Cambodian temples were the work of Alexander the Great Colonel Yule (Ency. Brit. Article Cambodia) takes Rūm in its Muslim sense of Greece or Asia Minor. The variety of references suggested to Fergusson (Architecture, III, 610) that these exploits are a vague memory of Roman commerce in the Bay of Bengal. But the Roman rule was that no fleet should pass east of Ceylon (Reinard Journ. As. Ser. VI, Tom. I, page 322). This rule may occasionally have been departed from as in A.D. 166 when the emperor Marcus Aurelius sent an ambassador by sea to China. Still it seems unlikely that Roman commerce in the Bay of Bengal was ever active enough to gain a place as settler and coloniser in the traditions of Java and Cambodia. It was with the west not with the east of India that the relations of Rome were close and important. From the time of Mark Antony to the time of Justinian, that is from about B.C. 30 to A.D. 550, their political importance as allies against the Parthians and Sassanians and their commercial importance as controllers of one of the main trade routes between the east and the west made the friendship of the Kushans or Sakas who held the Indus valley and Baktria a matter of the highest importance to Rome. How close was the friendship is shown in A.D. 60 by the Roman General Corbulo escorting the Hyrcanian ambassadors up the Indus and through the territories of the Kushans or Indo-Skythians on their return from their embassy to Rome. (Compare Rawlinson's Parthia, 271.) The close connection is shown by the accurate details of the Indus valley and Baktria recorded by Ptolemy (A.D. 166) and about a hundred years later (A.D. 247) by the author of the Periplus and by the special value of the gifts which the Periplus notices were set apart for the rulers of Sindh. One result of this long continued alliance was the gaining by the Kushans and other rulers of Peshawar and the Panjāb of a knowledge of Roman coinage, astronomy and architecture. Certain Afghan or Baktrian coins bear the word Roma apparently the name of some Afghan city. In spite of this there seems no

and to Cambodia, all of which places are in the north west of India, the question arises whether the occurrence of these names implies an historical connection with Kābul Peshāwar and the west Panjāb or whether they are mere local applications and assumptions by foreign settlers and converts of names known in the Brāhman and Buddhist writings of India.<sup>1</sup> That elaborate applications of names mentioned in the Mahābhārata to places in Java have been made in the Java version of the Mahābhārata is shown by Raffles.<sup>2</sup> Still it is to be noticed that the places mentioned above, Kamboja or Kābul, Gandhara or Peshāwar, Taxila or the west Panjāb, and Rumadesa apparently the south Panjāb are not, like Ayodhya, the capital of Siān or like *Lalita-patal-puri*, that is Indraprastha or Delhi the later capital of Cambodia,<sup>3</sup> the names of places which either by their special fame or by their geographical position would naturally be chosen as their original home by settlers or converts in Java and Cambodia. Fair ground can then be claimed for the presumption that the leading position given to Kamboja, Gandhara, Taxila and Rumadesa in Javan and Cambodian legends and place-names is a trace of an actual and direct historical connection between the north-west of India and the Malay Archipelago. This presumption gains probability by the argument from the architectural remains of the three countries which in certain peculiar features show so marked a resemblance both in design and in detail as in the judgment of Mr. Fergusson to establish a strong and direct connection.<sup>4</sup> A third argument in favour of a Gujarāt strain in Java are the traditions of settlements and expeditions by the rulers of Malwa which are still current in south Mārwar.<sup>5</sup> Further a proverb

## Appendix IV.

## JAVA.

reason to suppose that Rome attempted to overlord the north-west of India still less that any local ruler was permitted to make use of the great name of Rome. It seems possible that cotton notices of the fleets of Rūm in the Bay of Bengal refer to the fleets of the Arab Al-Rūm that is Lūmā or north-west Sumatra apparently the Roman of the Chaldean inventory of the Malabar Coast. (Yule's Cathay, I, LXXXIX. note and Marco Polo, II, 213.)

<sup>1</sup> Compare Fergusson's Architecture, III, 610, Yule in Encyc. Brit., Cambodia.

<sup>2</sup> Java, I, 411. Compare Fergusson's Architecture, III, 641.

<sup>3</sup> See Yule in Jour. Roy. As. Soc. (N. S.), I, 356, Fergusson's Architecture, III, 631.

<sup>4</sup> Of the Java remains Mr. Fergusson writes (Architecture, III, 644-648). The style and character of the sculptures of the great temple of Boro Buddor are nearly identical with those of the later caves of Ajūṭṭa, on the Western Ghats, and in Salsette. The resemblance in style is almost equally close with the buildings of Takht-i-Bulu in Gandhāra (Ditto, 647). Agam (page 657) he says: The Hindu immigrants into Java came from the west coast of India. They came from the valley of the Indus not from the valley of the Ganges. Once more, in describing No. XXVI. of the Ajūṭṭa caves Mestres, Fergusson and Burgess (Roel-cut Temples, 345 note 1) write: The execution of these figures is so nearly the same as in the Boro Buddor temple in Java that both must have been the work of the same artists during the latter half of the seventh century or somewhat later. The Buddhists were not in Java in the fifth century. They must have begun to go soon after since there is a considerable local element in the Boro Buddor.

<sup>5</sup> Traditions of expeditions by sea to Java remain in Mārwar. In April 1895 a bard at Bhūmal related how Bhograj of Ujjain in anger with his son Chandrahan drove him away. The son went to a Gujarāt or Kāthiāwāḍ port obtained ships and sailed to Java. He took with him as his Brāhman the son of a Magh, Pandit. A second tale tells how Vikram the redeemer of evils in a dream saw a Javanese woman weeping, because by an enemy's curse her son had been turned into stone. Vikram sailed to Java found the woman and removed the curse. According to a third legend Chandrahan the grandson of Vir Prāmīr saw a beautiful woman in a dream. He travelled everywhere in search of her. At last a Rishi told him the girl lived in Java. He started by sea and after many dangers and wonders found the dream-girl in Java. The people of Bhūmal are familiar with the Gujarāt proverb referred to below Who goes to Java comes not back. MS, Notes, March 1895.

## Appendix IV. still well known both in Mārwar and in Gujarāt runs :

## JAVA.

● *Je jar Java te kadi nahi dō*  
*A'to lo sith pulhi baithke khavē.*

Who to Java nōsa ne'er come home.  
 If they return, through seven lives  
 Seated at ease their wealth survives.<sup>1</sup>

Once more the connection with Gujarāt is supported by the detail in the Java account which makes Lant Mira the starting point for the colonising fleet. This Sir S Raffles supposed to be the Red Sea but the Mūhira's or Meds' sea may be suggested as it seems to correspond to the somewhat doubtful Arab name Baharimad (sea of the Meds<sup>2</sup>) for a town in western India sacked by Jinnaid. Against this evidence two considerations have been urged : (a) The great length of the voyage from Gujarāt to Java compared with the passage to Java from the east coast of India. (b) That no people in India have known enough of navigation to send a fleet fit to make a conquest. As regards the length of the voyage it is to be remembered that though Sumatra is more favourably placed for being colonised from Bengal Orissa and the mouths of the Godāvari and Krishna, in the case either of Java or of Cambodia the distance from the Sindh and Kathiāvāda ports is not much greater and the navigation is in some respects both safer and simpler than from the coasts of Orissa and Bengal. In reply to the second objection that no class of Hindus have shown sufficient skill and enterprise at sea to justify the belief that they could transport armies of settlers from Gujarāt to Java the answer is that the assumption is erroneous. Though the bulk of Hindus have at all times been averse from a seafaring life yet there are notable exceptions. During the last two thousand years the record of the Gujarāt coast shows a genius for seafaring fit to ensure the successful planting of north-west India in the Malāy Archipelago.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Another version is .

*J. pu. lo. to phari nāre*  
*J. phari nāre to pāga pāma khavē*  
*I tulu dhan lāre.*

Who go to Java they brave,  
 If they return they feast and play  
 Such stores of wealth their risks repay.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Crawford (A.D. 1820) in A.S. Res. XIII 157 and Lassen Ind. Alt. II. 1043.

<sup>3</sup> The following details summarise the available evidence of Gujarāt Hindu enterprise by sea. According to the Greek writers, though it is difficult to accept their statements as free from exaggeration, when in B.C. 325 Alexander passed down the Indus the river showed no trace of any trade by sea. If at that time sea trade at the mouth of the Indus was so scanty as to escape notice it seems fair to suppose that Alexander's ship-building and fleet gave a start to deep sea sailing which the constant succession of strong and vigorous northern tribes which entered and ruled Western India during the centuries before and after the Christian era continued to develop.\* According to Vincent (Periplus, I. 25, 36, 264) in the time of Agathareides (B.C. 200) the ports of Arabia and Ceylon were entirely in the hands of the people of Gujarāt. During the second century after Christ, when, under the great Indradaman (A.D. 143-158), the Sindh or Kshatrapa dynasty of Kathiāvāda was at the height of its power, Indians of Tienton, that is Sindh, brought presents by sea to China (Journal Royal Asiatic Society for January 1896 page 9). In A.D. 166 (perhaps the same as the preceding) the Roman emperor Marcus Aurelius sent by sea to China ambassadors with ivory rhinoceros' horn and other articles apparently the produce of Western India (D. Guignes' Huns, I. [Part I.] 32). In the third century A.D. 217 the Periplus (McCrindle, 17, 52, 61, 96, 109)

\* Alexander built his own boats on the Indus. (McCrindle's Alexander, 77) He carried (pages 93 and 131) these boats to the Hydaspes on the Jhelum (134 note 1) where he found some country boats he built a flotilla of gallees with thirty oars. He made dockyards (pages 140-157), his crews were Phoenicians, Cyprians, Karians, and Egyptians.

That the Hindu settlement of Sumatra was almost entirely from the

## Appendix IV.

## JAVA.

notices large Hindu ships in the east African Arab and Persian ports and Hindu settlements on the north coast of Sokotra. About a century later occurs the doubtful reference (Wilford in Asiatic Researches, IX. 224) to the Divani or pirates of Diu who had to send hostages to Constantine the Great (A.D. 320-340) one of whom was Theophilus afterwards a Christian bishop. Though it seems probable that the Khatrapas (A.D. 70-400) ruled by sea as well as by land fresh seafaring energy seems to have marked the arrival on the Sindh and Kathiawar coasts of the Juan Juan or Avars (A.D. 390-450) and of the White Huns (A.D. 430-550). During the fifth and sixth centuries the ports of Sindh and Gujarat appear among the chief centres of naval enterprise in the east. How the sea ruled the religion of the newcomers is shown by the fane which gathered round the new or rescued gods Siva the Poseidon of Somnāth and Krishna the Apollo or St. Nicholas of Dwarka. (Compare Tod's Annals of Rajasthan, I. 525.) In the fifth century (Yule's Cathay, I. lxxviii) according to Hamza of Isfahan, at Hira near Kuta on the Euphrates the ships of India and China were constantly moored. In the early sixth century (A.D. 518-519) a Persian ambassador went by sea to China (Dittó, I. lxxvi). About the same time (A.D. 526) Cosmas (Dittó, I. cxxxiii) describes Sindhu or Dabul and Orhota that is Soratha or Veraval as leading places of trade with Ceylon. In the sixth century, apparently driven out by the White Huns and the Mihiras, the Jats from the Indus and Kachh occupied the islands in the Bahrein gulf, and perhaps manned the fleet with which about A.D. 570 Naushirvan the great Sassanian (A.D. 531-571) is said to have invaded the lower Indus and perhaps Ceylon.\* About the same time (Fergusson Architecture, III. 612) Amāvati at the Krishna mouth was superseded as the port for the Golden Chersonese by the direct voyage from Gujarat and the west coast of India. In A.D. 630 Hsien Tsiang (Hsien's Buddhist Records, II. 269) describes the people of Sumāshira as deriving their livelihood from the sea, engaging in commerce, and exchanging commodities. He further notices that in the chief cities of Persia Hindus were settled enjoying the full practice of their religion (Renaud's Abulfeda, cccxxxv.) That the Jat not the Arab was the moving spirit in the early (A.D. 637-770) Muhammadan sea raids against the Gujarat and Konkan coasts is made probable by the fact that these seafaring ventures began not in Arabia but in the Jat-settled shores of the Persian Gulf, that for more than fifty years the Arab heads of the state fought them, and that in the Mediterranean where they had no Jat element the Arab was powerless at sea. (Compare Elliot, I. 116, 117.) That during the seventh and eighth centuries when the chief migrations by sea from Gujarat to Java and Cambodia seem to have taken place, Chinese fleets visited Diu (Yule's Cathay, lxxix.), and that in A.D. 759 Arabs and Persians besieged Canton and pillaged the storerooms going and returning by sea (DeGuignes' Huns, I. [Pt. II.] 503) suggest that the Jats were pilots as well as pirates.† On the Sindh Kachh and Gujarat coasts besides the Jats several of the new-come northern tribes showed notable energy at sea. It is to be remembered that as detailed in the Statistical Account of Thana (Bombay Gazetteer, XIII. Part II. 433) this remarkable outburst of sea enterprise may have been due not only to the vigour of the new-come north-ers but to the fact that some of them, perhaps the famous iron-working Turks (A.D. 580-680), brought with them the knowledge of the magnet, and that the local Brahman, with religious skill and secrecy, shaped the bar into a divine fish-magnet or *maṇḍiyantra*, which, floating in a basin of oil, he consulted as a private quartet of the ship and when the stars were hid guided the pilot in what direction to steer. Among new seafaring classes were, on the Makran and Sindh

\* Renaud's Memoire Sur l'Inde, 125. The statement that Naushirvan received Karthi from the king of Serendip (Lalor's History, I. 407. Tabari, II. 221) throws doubt on this expedition to Ceylon. At the close of the sixth century Karthi or Diu Sindh cannot have been in the gift of the king of Ceylon. It was in the possession of the Salmayr kings of Aror in Upper Sindh perhaps of Shahi Tegin Devaja shortened to Shahudai. (Compare Cunningham's Oriental Congress, I. 213.) According to Gauthier (J. As. Sci., VI. T. III. 182 note 3) this Serendip is Suradud that is Syria and Antioch places which Naushirvan is known to have taken. Several other references that seem to imply a close connection between Gujarat and Ceylon are equally doubtful. In the Mahabharata (A.D. 100-300) the Samalas bring *carayams* (rubies?) elephants' housings and heaps of pearls. The meaning of *Sindhudaka* in Samudragupta's inscription (A.D. 350) Early Gujarat History page 64 and note 5 is uncertain. Neither Mihirakula's (A.D. 530) nor Jaladitya's (A.D. 700) conquest of Ceylon can be historical. In A.D. 1045 when Abul Fathā the Carmanian ruler of Multan was attacked by Mahmud of Ghazni he retired to Ceylon. (Renaud's Memoire, 225.) When Somnāth was taken (A.D. 1025) the people embarked for Ceylon (Dittó, 270).

† Compare at a later period (A.D. 1312) Ibn Batuta's great ship sailing from Kandahar (Gandhar north of Branch) to China with its guard of Abyssinians as a defence against pirates. Renaud's Abulfeda, c. lxxv.

## Appendix IV. east coast of India and that Bengal Orissa and Masulipatam had a large

## JAVA.

coasts the Bodhas Kerks and Meds and along the shores of Kachh and Kāthiavada the closely connected Meds and Gurjjaras. In the seventh and eighth centuries the Gurjjaras, chiefly of the Chāpa or Chavada clan, both in Dwarka and Somnath and also inland, rose to power, a change which, as already noticed, may explain the efforts of the Jats to settle along the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. About A.D. 710 the Chapas or Chavadas, who had for a century and a half been in command in Dwarka and Somnath, established themselves at Anahilavada Pattan. According to their tradition king Vanaraja (A.D. 720-780) and his successor Yogaraja (A.D. 806-841) made great efforts to put down piracy. Yogaraja's sons plundered some Bengal or Bot ships which stress of weather forced into Venāval. The king said 'My sons with labour we were raising ourselves to be Chavadas of princely rank; your greed throws us back on our old nickname of Choras or thieves.' Yogaraja refused to be comforted and mounted the funeral pyre. Dr. Bhagvanlal's History, 154. This tale seems to be a probable. Yogaraja's efforts to put down piracy seem to have driven large bodies of Jats from the Gujarat coast. In A.D. 831-35, according to Ibn Alathiri (A.D. 834), a fleet manned by Djathis or Jats made a descent on the Tigris. The whole strength of the Khalifat had to be set in motion to stop them. Those who fell into the hands of the Moslems were sent to Anarabte on the borders of the Greek empire (Reinoud's Fragments, 201-2). As in the legend, the Chavada king's sons, that is the Chauras Mers and Gurjjaras, proved not less dangerous pirates than the Jats whom they had driven out. About fifty years later, in A.D. 892, Al-Biladuri describes as pirates who scourd the seas the Meds and the people of Saurashtra that is Devpatan or Somnath who were Choras or Gurjjaras. Al-Biladuri (Reinoud Sur L'Inde, 169) further notices that the Jats and other Indians had formed the same type of settlement in Persia which the Persians and Arabs had formed in India. During the ninth and tenth centuries the Gujarat kingdom which had been established in Java was at the height of its power. (Ibid., Abulfeda, cccxxxviii.) Early in the tenth century (A.D. 915-930) Mas'udi (Yule's Marco Polo, II, 344, Elliot, I, 65) describes Sokotra as a noted haunt of the Indian corsairs called Bwarij which chase Arab ships bound for India and China. The merchant fleets of the early tenth century were not Arab alone. The Chauras of Anahilavada sent fleets to Bhot and Chin (Ibid. Mas, I 11). Nor were Mers and Chauras the only pirates. Towards the end of the tenth century (A.D. 980) Grahari the Chindaman, known in story as Graharipu the Ahir of Sorath and Girnar, so passed and repassed the ocean that no one was safe (Ibid., I 11). In the eleventh century (A.D. 1021) Alberuni (Sachau, II, 104) notes that the Bawarij, who take their name from their boats called *bahar* or *bura*, were Meds a seafaring people of Kachh and of Somnath a great place of call for merchants trading between Sofala in east Africa and China. About the same time (A.D. 1025) when they despaired of withstanding Māhūd of Ghazni the defenders of Somnath prepared to escape by sea, and after his victory Māhūd is said to have planned an expedition by sea to conquer Ceylon (Tod's Rajasthan, I 109). In the twelfth century Idrisi (A.D. 1135) notices that Tatirva dirhams, that is the Gupta (A.D. 319-500) and White Hūna (A.D. 500-580) coinage of Sindh and Gujarat, was in use both in Madagascar and in the Malaya Islands (Reinoud's Megares, 236), and that the merchants of Java could understand the people of Madagascar (Ibid., Abulfeda, cclxxii). With the decline of the power of Anahilavada (A.D. 1250-1300) its fleet ceased to keep order at sea. In A.D. 1290 Marco Polo (Yule's Ed. II, 325, 328, 341) found the people of Gujarat the most desperate

\* As an example of the readiness with which an inland race of northerners conquer seafarship compare the Franks of the Pontus who about A.D. 279 passed in a few years from the Pontus to the Mediterranean ports and leaving behind them Malta the haunt of Greek voyages sailed through Gibraltar to the Baltic. Gibbon, I 404-405.

† Reinoud's Mém. Sur L'Inde, 200. The traders of Chorwar, that is of the old Chaura or Chapa country near Venāval and Mangrui, are now known in Bombay as Chapadhas. The received explanation of Chapadha is the roofed men it is said in derisive allusion to their large and heavy head-dresses. But as the Porbandar head-dress is neither especially large nor ungainful the common explanation can be hardly more than a pun. This suggests that the name Chapadha is a trace of the early Chapa tribe of Gurjjaras who also gave their name to Chāpanir. Tod's (Western India, 250, 258) description of the Chauras race with tradition of having come from the Red Sea and as a nautical Arabiā is the result of taking for Sokotra Sankudwara that is Bel to the north of Dwarka.

‡ According to Abulfeda A.D. 1334 (Reinoud's Abulfeda, cccxl) some of the besieged fled to Ceylon. Parisistah (Briggs' Muhammadan Powers, I, 72) records that after the fall of Somnath Māhūd intended to fit out a fleet to conquer Ceylon and Persia. According to Ibrī (Mirat-i-Ahmedi, 140) Ceylon or Srirandip remained a dependency of Sindh till A.D. 1290 when the king Vijayabahu became independent.

§ The common element in the two languages may have been the result of Gujarati settlements in Madagascar as well as in Java and Cambodia. This is however doubtful as the common element may be either Arabic or Polyesian.

share in colonising both Java and Cambodia cannot be doubted<sup>1</sup>

## Appendix IV.

## JAVA.

pirates in existence. More than a hundred corsair vessels went forth every year, taking their wives and children with them and staying out the whole summer. They joined in fleets of twenty to thirty and made a sea-cordon five or six miles apart. \* Sokotra was infested by multitudes of Hindu pirates who encamped there and put up their plunder to sale. Ibn Batuta (in Elliot, I. 341-345) fifty years later makes the same complaint. Muslim ascendancy had driven Rajput chiefs to the coast and turned them into pirates. The most notable addition was the Gohils who under Mokheraj Gohil, from his castle on Piram island, ruled the sea till his power was broken by Muhammad Tughlik in A.D. 1315 (Ris Mala, I. 318). Before their overthrow by the Muhammadans what large vessels the Rajput sailors of Gujarat managaged is shown by Frier Odric, who about A.D. 1321 (Stevenson in Kerr's Voyages, XVIII. 324) crossed the Indian ocean in a ship that carried 700 people. How far the Rajputs went is shown by the mention in A.D. 1270 (Yule's Cathay, 57 in Howarth's Mongols, I. 217) of ships sailing between Sumatra or Siam and China. Till the arrival of the Portuguese (A.D. 1500-1508) the Ahmadabad sultans maintained their position as lords of the sea.\* In the fifteenth century Java appears in the state list of foreign landars which paid tribute (Bird's Gujarat, 141), the tribute probably being a cess or ship tax paid by Gujarat traders with Java in return for the protection of the royal navy †. In east Africa in A.D. 1498 (J. As. Soc. of Fenzal, V. 781) Vasco da Gama found sailors from Cambay and other parts of India who guided themselves by the help of the stars in the north and south and had nautical instruments of their own. In A.D. 1610 Albuquerque found a strong Hindu element in Java and Malacca. Sumatra was ruled by Parameswara a Hindu whose son by a Chinese mother was called Rajput (Commentaries, II. 63, III. 73-79). After the rule of the sea had passed to the European, Gujarat Hindus continued to show marked courage and skill as merchants, seamen and pirates. In the seventeenth century the French traveller Mandelslo (A.D. 1678, Travels 701, 108) found Achin in north Sumatra a great centre of trade with Gujarat. During the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries the Sangamans or Sittigar Rajputs of Mandvian Kachh and of Bhavnagar in north Kathiawar were much dreaded. In A.D. 1750 Grose describes the small corsairs of the Sangamans troubling boats going to the Persian Gulf, though they seldom attacked large ships. Between A.D. 1801 and 1808 (Low's Indian Navy, I. 274) pirates from Bat established themselves in the ruined temple at Somnath. In 1820, when the English took Bat and Dwarka from the Waghels, among the pirates besides Waghels were Badhels a branch of Rahtors, Bhattis, Kharwas, Lohanas, Makwanas, Rahtors and Waghurs. A trace of the Chauras remained in the neighbouring chief of Aramia ‡. Nor had the old love of seafaring deserted the Kathiawar chiefs. In the beginning of the present century (A.D. 1825), Tod (Western India, 152, compare Ris Mala, I. 215) tells how with Bip Singh of Bhavnagar his port was his grand hobby and shipbuilding his chief interest and pleasure; also how Rao Ghor of Kachh (A.D. 1760-1778) built equipped and manned a ship at Mandvi which without European or other out-side assistance safely made the voyage to England and back to the Malabar Coast where arriving during the south-west monsoon the vessel seems to have been wrecked §.

<sup>1</sup> Crawford (A.D. 1820) held that Hindu influence in Java came from Kalinga or the coast of Madras. Fergusson (Ind Arch 103, Ed. 1876) says: 'The splendid remains at Amravati show that from the mouths of the Krishna and Godavari the Buddhist of north and north-west India colonised Pegu, Cambodia, and eventually the Island of Java. (Compare Tavernier (A.D. 1666; Ball's Translation, I. 171) Masulpatam is the

\* When in A.D. 1515 he secured Bahadur's splendid jewelled belt Humayun said: 'These are the trappings of the lord of the sea.' Bayley's Gujarat, 380.

† Compare in Bombay Public Diary 10, pages 197-207 of 17-18-19, the revenue headings Surat and Cambay with entries of two per cent on all goods imported and exported from either of these places by traders under the Honorable Company's protection.

‡ These Badhels seem to be Hamilton's (A.D. 1720) Waghels of Chance (New Account, I. 141). This Chance is Chach near Dau, apparently the place from which the Bhettias get their Bombay name of Chichnas. Towards the close of the eighteenth century Bhettias from Chach seem to have formed a pirate settlement near Dahanu on the Thana coast. Major Price's Memoirs of a Field Officer, 322 notes (A.D. 1792) June, the cautionary speed with which in travelling from Surat to Bombay by land they passed Dahanu through the Chansah jungle the district of a piratical community of that name.

§ According to Sir A. Burnes (Jl. Bombay Geog. Soc. VI (1845) 27, 28) the special skill of the people of Kachh in navigation and ship-building was due to a young Rajput of Kachh, Ramnangh Malani, who about a century earlier had gone to Holland and learned those arts. See Bombay Gazetteer, V. 116 note 2.

## Appendix IV.

## JAVA.

Reasons have been given in support of the settlement in Java of large bodies of men from the north-west coasts of India and evidence has been offered to show that the objections taken to such a migration have little practical force. It remains to consider the time and the conditions of the Ginjarát conquest and settlement of Java and Cambodia. The Javan date S. 525 that is A.D. 603 may be accepted as marking some central event in a process which continued for at least half a century before and after the beginning of the seventh century. Reasons have been given for holding that neither the commercial nor the political ascendancy of Rome makes it probable that to Rome the Rûm of the legends refers. The notable Roman element in the architecture of Java and Cambodia may suggest that the memory of great Roman builders kept for Rome a place for the local legends. But the Roman element seems not to have come direct into the buildings of Java or Cambodia; as at Amráyati áť the Krishna month, the classic characteristics came by way of the Panjáb (Táhia) only, in the case of Java, not by the personal taste and study of a prince, but as an incident of conquest and settlement.<sup>1</sup> Who then was the ruler of Rûm near Taxila, who led a great settlement of Hindus from the Panjáb to Java. Names in appearance like Rome, occur in north-west India. None are of enough importance to explain the prince's title.<sup>2</sup> There remains the word *rum* or *rum* applied to salt land in the south Panjáb, in Márwár, and in north Sindh.<sup>3</sup> The great battle of Karur, about sixty miles south-east of Multán, in which apparently about A.D. 530 Yaśodharman of Malwa defeated the famous White Hûna conqueror Mihirakula (A.D. 500-550) is described as fought in the land of Rûm.<sup>4</sup> This great White Hûna defeat is apparently the origin of the legend of the prince of Rûm who retired by sea to Java. At the time of the battle of Káru the south Panjáb, together with the north of Sindh, was under the Sákas of Aror in north Sindh, whose coins show them to have been not only White Hûnas, but of the same Jávla family which the great conquerors Toramāna

only place in the Bay of Bengal from which vessels sail eastwards for Bengal, Arrakan, Pegu, Siam, Sumatra, Cochin China, and the Mamilas and west to Hormuz, Makha and Madagascar. Inscriptions (Indian Antiquary, V. 314, VI. 356) bear out the correctness of the connection between the Kalinga coast and Java which Java legends have preserved. As explained in Dr. Bhandarkar's interesting article on the eastern passage of the Śakas (Journ. B. B. R. A. S. XVII.) certain inscriptions also show a Magadhi element which may have reached Java from Sumatra and Sumatra from the coast either of Bengal or of Orissa. Later information tends to increase the east and south Indian share. Compare Notices et Extraits des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Nationale Vol. XXVII. (Partie II) 2 Fascicule page 350.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Hiuen Tsiang in Beal's Buddhist Records, II. 222 note 102. *Tahia* may be Tochara that is Baktria, but the Panjab seems more likely. Compare Beal's Life of Hiuen Tsiang, 136 note 2.

<sup>2</sup> Idriśi A.D. 1135 (Elliot, I. 92) has a Romala a middling town on the borders of the desert between Multán and Seistan. Cunningham (Ancient Geog. 252) has a Romaka Bazaar near where the Nára the old Indus enters the Ran of Kachh.

<sup>3</sup> Cunningham's Num. Chron. 3rd Ser. VIII. 241. The Mahábháratá Romakas (Wilson's Works, VII. 176; Cunningham's Anc. Geog. 187) may have taken their name from one of these salt stretches. Ibn Khurdádhlah (A.D. 912) mentions Rumala (Elliot, I. 14, 87, 92, 93) as one of the countries of Hindh. In connection with the town Romala Al Idriśi A.D. 1153 (Elliot, I. 74, 93) has a district three days' journey from Kalbata.

<sup>4</sup> Cunningham's Numismatic Chronicle 3rd Ser. VIII. 236. The date of Káru is uncertain. Fergusson (Arch. III. 746) puts it at A.D. 544. It was apparently earlier as in an inscription of A.D. 532 Yaśodharman king of Malwa claims to hold lands which were never held by either Guptas or Hûnas. Cunningham Num. Chron. 3rd Ser. VIII. 236. Compare History Text, 76, 77.

and Mihirakula adorned. So close a connection with Mihirakula makes it probable that the chief in charge of the north of the Aror dominions shared in the defeat and disgrace of Kārur. Seeing that the power of the Sāharās of Aror spread as far south as the Kāghnāvāda ports of Somnāth and Diu, and probably also of Diul at the Indus mouth, if the defeated chief of the south Panjāb was unable or unwilling to remain as a vassal to his conqueror, no serious difficulty would stand in the way of his passage to the seaboard of Aror or of his finding in Diu and other Sindh and Gujurāt ports sufficient transport to convey him and his followers by sea to Java.<sup>1</sup> This then may be the chief whom the Cambodian story names Phra Tong or Thom apparently Great Lord that is Mahārāja.<sup>2</sup>

The success of the Javan enterprise would tempt others to follow especially as during the latter half of the sixth and almost the whole of the seventh centuries the state of North India favoured migration. Their defeats by Sassanians and Turks between A.D. 550 and 600 would close to the White Hūnas the way of retreat northwards by either the Indus or the Kābul valleys. If hard pressed the alternative was a retreat to Kashmir or an advance south or east to the sea. When in the early years of the seventh century (A.D. 600-606) Prabhakaravardhana the father of Śrī Harsha of Magadhā (A.D. 610-612) defeated the king of Gandhāra, the Hūnas, the king of Sindh, the Gurjaras, the Lātas, and the king of Malava, and when, about twenty years later, further defeats were inflicted by Śrī Harsha himself numbers of refugees would gather to the Gujurāt ports eager to escape further attack and to share the prosperity of Java. It is worthy of note that the details of Prabhakaravardhana's conquests explain how Gandhāra and Lāta are both mentioned in the Java legends, how north-erners from the Panjāb were able to pass to the coast, how the Mārwar stories give the king of Mālwa a share in the migrations: how the fleets may have started from any Sindh or Gujurāt port, and how with emigrants may have sailed artists and sculptors acquainted both with the monasteries and stupas of the Kābul valley and Peshawar and with the carvings of the Ajanta caves. During the second half of the seventh century the advance of the Turks from the north and of the Arabs both by sea (A.D. 637) and through Persia (A.D. 650-660),<sup>3</sup> the conquering progress of a Chinese army from Magadhā to Bannan in A.D. 645-650,<sup>4</sup> the overthrow (A.D. 642) of

## Appendix IV.

## JAVA.

<sup>1</sup> Jour. As. Soc. B. VII, (Plate I) 298; Barnes' Bokhara, III, 76; Elliot's History, I 405. Diu which is specially mentioned as a Sāharā port was during the seventh and eighth centuries a place of Indian ships. Yule's Cathay, I, lxxv.

<sup>2</sup> The chief of the Panjāb Porus of the embassy to Augustus in B.C. 30 (though this Porus may be so called merely because he ruled the lands of Alexander's Poros) may seem to be the favourite Parthian name Phraates. But no instance of the name Phraates is noted among White Hunn chiefs and the use of Phra as in Phra Bot or Lord Buddha seems ground for holding that the Phra Thong of the Cambodia legend means Great Lord.

<sup>3</sup> Epi-graphia India, I, 67.

<sup>4</sup> In A.D. 637 raiders attacked Thina from Oman and Broach and Sindh from Bahrein. Renaud's Mémoires Sur L'Inde, 170, 176.

<sup>5</sup> The passage of a Chinese army from Magadhā to the Gandhāra river about A.D. 650 seems beyond question. The emperor sent an ambassador Ouang-h-wuentsé to Śrī Harsha. Before Ouang-h-wuentsé arrived Śrī Harsha was dead (died A.D. 642), and his place taken by an usurping minister (Se)na-fu-ti Alana-chun. The usurper drove off the envoy, who retired to Tibet then under the great Fonghtsān. With help from Tibet and from the Rāja of Nepāl Ouang returned, defeated Alana, and pursued him to the Gandhāra river (Khien-to-wei). The passage was forced, the army captured, the king queen and king's sons were led prisoners to China, and 580 cities surrendered, the magistrates proclaimed the victory in the temple of the ancients and the emperor raised Ouang to the rank of Tch'ao-san-ta-fore. Journal Asiatique Ser.

#### Appendix IV. JAVA.

the Buddhist Śāhātīs by their usurping Brāhmanist minister Chach and his persecution of the Jats must have resulted in a fairly constant movement of northern Indians southwards from the ports of Sindh and Gujarrāt.<sup>1</sup> In the leading migrations though fear may have moved the followers, enterprise and tidings of Java's prosperity would stir the leaders. The same longing that tempted Alexander to put to sea from the Indus mouth; Trajan (A.D. 116) from the mouth of the Tigris; and Muḥmūd of Ghazni from Nornāth must have drawn Śaka Hūna and Gurjjara chiefs to lead their men south to the land of rubies and of gold.<sup>2</sup>

Of the appearance and condition of the Hindus who settled in Java during the seventh and eighth centuries the Arab travellers Sulaimān A.D. 850 and Maḥmūdī A.D. 915 have left the following details. The people near the volcanoes have white skins pierced ears and shaved heads; their religion is both Brāhmanic and Buddhist; their trade is in the costliest articles—camphor, aloes, cloves and sandalwood.<sup>3</sup>

#### CAMBODIA.

#### CAMBODIA.

The close connection between Java and Cambodia, the alternate supremacy of Cambodia in Java and of Java in Cambodia, the likelihood of settlers passing from Java to Cambodia explain, to a considerable extent, why the traditions and the buildings of Java and Cambodia should point to a common origin in north-west India. The question remains: Do the people and buildings of Cambodia contain a distinct north Hindu element which worked its way south and east not by sea but by land across the Himalayas and Tibet and down the valley of the Yang-tse-kiang to Yunnan and Angkor. Whether the name Cambodia<sup>4</sup> proves an actual race or historical connection with Kamboja or the Kābul valley is a point

IV, Tom, X, pages 81-121. The translator thinks the whole war was in the east of India and that the mention of the Gandhāra river is a mistake. The correctness of this view is doubtful. It is to be remembered that this was a time of the widest spread of Chinese power. They held Balk and probably Baman. Yule's Cathay, I, lxxviii. Compare Julien in Jour. As. Soc. Ser. IV, Tom, X, 289-291.

<sup>1</sup> Regarding these disturbances see Beal's Life of Hiuen Tsang, 155, Max Muller's India, 186. The Arab writers (A.D. 713) notice to what a degraded state Chach had reduced the Jats. In comparing the relative importance of the western and eastern Indian strains in Java it is to be remembered that the western element has been overlaid by a late Bengal and Kalinga layer of fugitives from the Tibetan conquest of Bengal in the eighth century, the Babu with the Gurkha at his heels, and during the ninth and later centuries by bands of Buddhists withdrawing from a land where their religion was no longer honoured.

<sup>2</sup> In A.D. 116 after the capture of Babylon and Otesiphon Hadrian sailed down the Tigris and the Persian Gulf, embarked on the waters of the South Sea, made inquiries about India and regretted he was too old to get there. Rawlinson's Ancient Monarchies, VI, 313.

<sup>3</sup> Reinaud's Abulfeda, cccxc.

<sup>4</sup> The origin of the name Kamboja seems to be Kāmbojāpura an old name of Kābul preserved almost in its present form in Ptolemy's (A.D. 160) Kaboura. The word is doubtfully connected with the Achaemenian Kambyses (B.C. 529-521) the Kambujiya of the Behistun inscription. In the fifth of the Aśoka edicts (B.C. 240) Kamboja holds the middle distance between Gandhāra or Peshāwar and Yona or Baktria. According to Yāska, whose uncertain date varies from B.C. 500 to B.C. 200, the Kāmbojas spoke Sanskrit (Muir's Sanskrit Texts, II 355 note 145). In the last battle of the Mahābhārata, A.D. 100 to 300 (Jl Roy, As. Soc. [1842] VII, 139-140), apparently from near Banian the Kambojas ranked as Mlechchhas with Śakas Darudas and Hūnas. One account (Ferguson, III, 665) places the original site of the Kambojas in the country round Taxila east of the Indus. This is probably incorrect. A trace of the Kambojas in their original seat seems to remain in the Kaambojas of the Hindu Kush.

on which authorities disagree. Sir H. Yule held that the connection was purely literary and that as in the case of *Inthapatha-puri* or *Indraprastha* (Delhi) the later capital of Cambodia and of *Ayodhya* or *Uddh* the capital of *Assam* no connection existed beyond the application to a new settlement of ancient worshipful Indian place-names. The objection to applying this rule to Cambodia is that except to immigrants from the *Kábul* valley the name is of too distant and also of too scanty a reputation to be chosen in preference to places in the nearer and holier lands of *Tihht* and *Magadha*. For this reason, and because the view is supported by the notable connection between the two styles of architecture, it seems advisable to accept Mr. Fergusson's decision that the name Cambodia was given to a portion of *Cochin-China* by immigrants from *Kamboja* that is from the *Kábul* valley. Traces remain of more than one migration from India to Indo-China. The earliest is the mythic account of the conversion of Indo-China to Buddhism before the time of *Asoka* (B.C. 240). A migration in the first century A.D. of *Yavanas* or *Sakas*, from *Tamluk* or *Ratnávate* on the *Hugli*, is in agreement with the large number of Indian place-names recorded by *Ptolemy* (A.D. 160).<sup>1</sup> Of this migration *Hsien Tsiang's* name *Yavuna* (*Yen-mo-na*) for Cambodia may be a trace.<sup>2</sup> A *Saka* invasion further explains *Pausanias'* (A.D. 170) name *Sakav* for *Cochin-China* and his description of the people as *Skythians* mixed with *Indians*.<sup>3</sup> During the fifth and sixth centuries a fresh migration seems to have set in. Cambodia was divided into shore and inland and the name *Cambhose* applied to both.<sup>4</sup> Chinese records notice an embassy from the king of Cambodia in A.D. 617.<sup>5</sup> Among the deciphered Cambodian inscriptions a considerable share belong to a *Bráhmánic* dynasty whose local initial date is in the early years of the seventh century,<sup>6</sup> and one of whose kings *Somaśarmman* (A.D. 610) is recorded to have held daily *Mahábháratá* readings in the temples.<sup>7</sup> Of a fresh wave of *Buddhists*, who seem to have belonged to the northern branch, the earliest deciphered inscription is A.D. 953 (S. 875) that is about 350 years later.<sup>8</sup> Meanwhile, though, so far as information goes, the new capital of *Angkor* on the north bank of lake *Tale Sap* about 200 miles up the *Mekong* river was not founded till A.D. 1078 (S. 1000),<sup>9</sup> the neighbourhood of the holy lake was already sacred and the series of temples of which the *Nakhonwat* or *Nága's Shrine*<sup>10</sup> is one of the latest and finest examples, was begun at least as early as A.D. 625 (S. 750), and

#### Appendix IV. CAMBODIA.

<sup>1</sup> See *Ht* *met* *s* *Orissa*, I. 310.

<sup>2</sup> *Yavana* to the south-west of *Siam*. *Beal's Life of Hsien Tsiang*, xxxii.

<sup>3</sup> Quoted in *Bunbury's Ancient Geography*, II. 659. *Bunbury* suggests that *Pausanias* may have gained his information from *Marcus Aurelius'* (A.D. 166) ambassador to China.

<sup>4</sup> *Jour. Bengal Soc.* VII. (I.) 317.

<sup>5</sup> *Revue et Nouveaux Melanges Asiatiques*, I. 77 in *Jour. Asiatique Series*, VI. Tom. XIX, page 199 note 1; *Fergusson's Architecture*, III. 678.

<sup>6</sup> *Barth in Journal Asiatique Ser. VI. Tom. XIX. page 150.*

<sup>7</sup> *Barth in Journal Asiatique*, X. 57.

<sup>8</sup> *Barth in Jour. As. Ser. VI. Tom. XIX. page 190; Journal Royal Asiatic Society, XIV. (1882) cii.*

<sup>9</sup> *Barth in Journal Asiatique Ser. VI. Tom. XIX. pages 181, 186.*

<sup>10</sup> Mr. *Fergusson* (*Architecture* page 666) and *Colonel Yule* (*Ency. Brit. Cambodia*) accept the local Buddhist rendering of *Nakhonwat* as the City Settlement. Against this it is to be noted (*Ditto ditto*) that *nagara* city corrupts locally into *Angkor*. *Nagara* therefore can hardly also be the origin of the local *Nakhon*. Further as the local *Buddhists* claim the temple for *Buddha* they were bound to find in *Nakhon* some source other than its original meaning of *Snake*. The change finds a close parallel in the *Nága* that is *snake* or *skythian* now *Nága* or city *Bráhmán* of *Gujarat*.

# Appendix IV. CAMBODIA.

Nakhonwat itself seems to have been completed and was being embellished in A.D. 950 (S. 875).<sup>1</sup> During the ninth and tenth centuries by conquest and otherwise considerable interchange took place between Java and Cambodia.<sup>2</sup> As many of the inscriptions are written in two Indian characters a northern and a southern two migrations by sea seem to have taken place one from the Orissa and Masulipatam coasts and the other, with the same legend of the prince of Rām land, from the ports of South and Gujarat.<sup>3</sup> The question remains how far there is trace of such a distinct migration as would explain the close resemblance noted by Fergusson between the architecture of Kashmir and Cambodia as well as the northern element which Fergusson recognises in the religion and art of Cambodia.<sup>4</sup> The people by whom this Panjab and Kashmir influence may have been introduced from the north are the people who still call themselves Khmers to whose skill as builders the magnificence of Cambodian temples lakes and bridges is apparently due.<sup>5</sup> Of these people, who, by the beginning of the eleventh century had already given their name to the whole of Cambodia, Alberuni (A.D. 1031) says: 'The Kumairs are whitish of short stature and Turk-like build. They follow the religion of the Hindus and have the practice of piercing their ears.' It will be noticed that so far as information is available the apparent holiness of the neighbourhood of Angkor had lasted for at least 250 years before A.D. 1078 when it was chosen as a capital. This point is in agreement with Mr. Fergusson's view that the details of Nakhonwat and other temples of that series show that the builders came neither by sea nor down the Ganges valley but by way of Kashmir and the back of the Himalayas.<sup>6</sup> Though the evidence is incomplete and to some extent speculative the following considerations suggest a route and a medium through which the Roman and Greek elements in the early (A.D. 100-500) architecture of the Kabul valley and Peshāwar may have been carried inland to Cambodia. It may perhaps be accepted that the Ephthalites or White Hūnas and a share of the Kedarites, that is of the later Little Yuechi from Gandhāra the Peshāwar country, retreated to Kashmir before the father of Śrī Harsha (A.D. 590-606) and afterwards (A.D. 606-612) before Śrī Harsha himself.<sup>7</sup> Further it seems fair to assume that from

<sup>1</sup> Barth in *Journal Asiatique* Ser. VI, Tom. XIX, 190.

<sup>2</sup> Yule's *Marco Polo*, II, 108, Reinaud's *Abulfeda*, cdxvi.

<sup>3</sup> Barth in *Journal Asiatique* Ser. VI, Tom. XIX, 171.

<sup>4</sup> Mr. Fergusson at first suggested the fourth century as the period of migration to Cambodia. He afterwards came to the conclusion that the settlers must have been much the same as the Gujarāt conquerors of Java. *Architecture*, III, 665-678.

<sup>5</sup> Fergusson *Architecture*, 665. Compare Tree and Serpent Worship, 49, 50. The people of Cambodia seem Indian serpent worshippers: they seem to have come from Fāyāh.

<sup>6</sup> The name Khmer has been adopted as the technical term for the early literature and art of the peninsula. Compare Barth *J. As. Ser.* VI, Tom. XIX, 195; Renan in ditto page 75 note 3 and Ser. VII, Tom. VIII, page 68; Yule in *Encyclopedia Britannica* Art. Cambodia. The resemblance of Cambodian and Kabul valley work recalls the praise by Chinese writers of the Han (B.C. 206 - A.D. 24) and Wei (A.D. 386-556) dynasties of the craftsmen of Kipin, that is Kophene or Kamboja the Kabul valley, whose skill was not less remarkable in sculpturing and chiselling stone than in working gold silver copper and tin into vases and other articles. Specht in *Journal Asiatique*, II, (1883), 333 and note 3. A ninth century inscription mentions the architect Achyuta son of Rāma of Kāmboja. *Epigraphia Indica*, I, 243.

<sup>7</sup> Reinaud's *Abulfeda*, cdxvi.; Sachau's *Alberuni*, I, 210.

<sup>8</sup> Fergusson's *Architecture*, III, 666.

<sup>9</sup> For the joint Kedarite-Ephthalite rule in Kashmir see Cunningham's *Ninth Oriental Congress*, I, 231-2. The sameness of names, if not an identity of rulers, shows how close was the union between the Ephthalites and the Kedarites. The coins preserve one difference depicting the Yuechi or Kedarite ruler with bushy and the White Hūna or Ephthalite ruler with cropped hair.

Kashmir they moved into Tibet and were the western Turks by whose aid in the second half of the seventh century Srongtsan or Srongdzan-gambo (A.D. 640-698), the founder of Tibetan power and civilization, overran the Tarim valley and western China.<sup>1</sup> During the first years of the eighth century (A.D. 703) a revolt in Nepal and the country of the Bráhmans was crushed by Srongtsan's successor Donsrong,<sup>2</sup> and the supremacy of Tibet was so firmly established in Bengal that, for over 200 years, the Bay of Bengal was known as the sea of Tibet.<sup>3</sup> In A.D. 709 a Chinese advance across the Pamirs as said to have been checked by the great Arab soldier Koticha the comrade of Muhammad Kasim of Sindh.<sup>4</sup> But according to Chinese records this reverse was wiped out in A.D. 713 by the defeat of the joint Arab and Tibet armies.<sup>5</sup> In the following years, aided by disorders in China, Tibet conquered east to Hsio on the upper Hongho and in A.D. 723 ceased to acknowledge the overlordship of China. Though about A.D. 750 he was for a time crippled by China's allies the Shavo Turks the chief of Tibet spread his power so far down the Yangtsekiang valley that in A.D. 787 the emperor of China, the king of Yunnan to the east of Burma, certain Indian chiefs, and the Arabs joined in a treaty against Tibet. As under the great Thsrong (A.D. 803-845) and his successor Thi-tsong-ti (A.D. 878-901) the power of Tibet increased it seems probable that during the ninth century they overran and settled in Yunnan.<sup>6</sup> That among the Tibetans who passed south-east into Yunnan were Kedarites and White Húnas is supported by the fact that about A.D. 1290, according both to Marco Polo and to Rashid-ud-din, the common name of Yunnan was Kárájung whose capital was Yachi and whose people spoke a special language.<sup>7</sup> The name Karajung was Mongol meaning Black People and was used to distinguish the mass of the inhabitants from certain fair tribes who were known as Chaganjung or Whites. That the ruler of Kárájung was of Hindu origin is shown by his title Mahara or Maharaja. That the Hindu element came from the Kabul valley is shown by its Hindu name of Kandhar that is Gandhara or Pesháwar, a name still in use as Gandharit (Gandharu-rashtra) the Burmese for Yunnan.<sup>8</sup> The strange confusion which Rashid-ud-din makes between the surroundings of Yunnan and of Peshawar is perhaps due to the fact that in his time the connection between the two places was still known and admitted.<sup>9</sup> A further trace

#### Appendix IV. CAMBODIA.

<sup>1</sup> About A.D. 700 Urumtsa Kashgar Khiden and Kuche in the Tarim valley became Tibetan for a few years. Pauth's *Thousand Years of the Tartars*, 243. In A.D. 691 the western Turks who for some years had been declining and divided were broken by the great eastern Turk conqueror Morcho. The following passage from Masudi (Frances D'Or, I. 289) supports the establishment of White Huna or Mihra power in Tibet. The sons of Amur (a general phrase for Turks) mixed with the people of India. They founded a kingdom in Tibet the capital of which they called Med.

<sup>2</sup> *Encyclopædia Britannica* Articles Tibet and Turkestan.

<sup>3</sup> Both Ibn Haukal and Al Istakhrî (A.D. 950) call the Bay of Bengal the sea of Tibet. Compare Renaud's *Abulfeda*, cclviii., *Encyclopædia Britannica* Article Tibet page 345.

<sup>4</sup> Yule's *Cathay*, I. lxxvi.

<sup>5</sup> *Grey, Brit. China*, 646.

<sup>6</sup> Thsrong besides spreading the power of Tibet (he was important enough to join with Mamún the son of the great Harun-ar-Rashid (A.D. 788-809) in a league against the Hindus) brought many learned Hindus into Tibet, had Sanskrit books translated, settled Lamaism, and built many temples. It is remarkable that (so far as inscriptions are read) the series of Nakhonwat temples was begun during Thsrong's reign (A.D. 803-845).

<sup>7</sup> Yule's *Marco Polo*, II. 39-42; *J. R. A. Soc.* I. 355.

<sup>8</sup> *Yule Jour. R. A. Soc.* (N. S.) I. 356.

<sup>9</sup> Compare Yule in *Jour. R. A. Soc.* (N. S.) I. 355. Kandahar in south-west Afghanistan is another example of the Kedarite or Little Yucchi fondness for giving to their colonies the name of their parent country.

#### Appendix IV. — CAMBODIA.

of stranger whites like the Chaganjang of Yunnan occurs south-east in the Ann or Honh whose name suggests the Húnas and whose fondness for silver ornaments at once distinguishes them from their neighbours and connects them with India.<sup>1</sup> Even though these traces may be accepted as confirming a possible migration of Húnas and Kodaras to Yunnan and Ann a considerable gap remains between Ann and Angkor. Three local Cambodian considerations go some way to fill this gap. The first is that unlike the Siamese and Cochin Chinese the Khmers are a strong well made race with very little trace of the Mongoloid, with a language devoid of the intonations of other Indo Chinese dialects, and with the hair worn cropped except the top-knot. The second point is that the Khmers claim a northern origin; and the third that important architectural remains similar to Nakhonwat are found within Siam limits about sixty miles north of Angkor.<sup>2</sup> One further point has to be considered: How far is an origin from White Húnas and Kodaras in agreement with the Nāga phase of Cambodian worship. Hsien Tsiang's details of the Tarim Oxus and Swát valleys contain nothing so remarkable as the apparent increase of Dragon worship. In those countries dragons are rarely mentioned by Fa Hian in A.D. 400: dragons seem to have had somewhat more importance in the eyes of Sung-Yun in A.D. 520; and to Hsien Tsang, the champion of the Mahāyāna or Broadway, dragons are everywhere explaining all misfortunes earthquakes storms and diseases. Buddhism may be the state religion but the secret of luck lies in pleasing the Dragon.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare Yule's Marco Polo, II. 82-84.

<sup>2</sup> Yule in Ency. Brit. Art. Cambodia, 724, 725, 726.

<sup>3</sup> Fa Hian (A.D. 400) about fifty miles north west of Kananj found a dragon chapel (Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 40) of which a white eared dragon was the patron. The dragon, he notes, gives seasonable showers and keeps off all plagues and calamities. At the end of the rains the dragon turns into a little white-eared serpent and the priests feed him. At the deserted Kapilavastu in Tihut Fa Hian was shown a tank and in it a dragon who, he says, constantly guards and protects a tower to Buddha and worships there night and morning (Ditto, I. 50).

Sung-Yun (A.D. 519) notices (Beal's Buddhist Records, I. 69) in Swát (Udyāna) a tank and a temple with fifty priests called the temple of the Nāga Rāja because the Nāga supplies it with funds. In another passage (Ditto, 9") he notices that in a narrow land on the border of Fosse (Fars) a dragon had taken his residence and was stopping the rain and piling the snow. Hsien Tsang (Ditto, I. 20) notes that in Kucha, north of the Tarim river east of the Bolor mountains, the Shen horses are half dragon horses and the Shen men half dragon men. In Aksu, 150 miles west of Kucha, herce dragons molest travellers with storms of flying sand and gravel (Ditto, 25); the hot lake or Johai, 100 miles north-east of Aksu, is jointly inhabited by dragons and fish, seals monsters rise to the surface and travellers pray to them (Ditto 26). An Arhat (page 63) prays that he may become a Nāgarāja. He becomes a Nāgarāja, kills the real Nāgarāja, takes his palace, attaches the Nāgas to him, and raises winds and tempests; Kaniška comes against him and the Arhat takes the form of a Brāhman and knocks down Kanishka's towers. A great merit-stone bursts from Kanishka's shoulders and the Brāhman Nāgarāja apologises. His evil and passionate spirit, the fruit of evil deeds in a former birth, had made the Arhat pray to be a Nāgarāja. If clouds gathered the monks knew that the Nāgarāja meant mischief. The convent gong was beaten and the Nāgarāja pacified (or scared) Ditto, 64-66. Nāgas were powerful brutes, cloud-riding wind-driving water-walking brutes, still only brutes. The account of the Nāga or dragon of Jelalābūd (in Kamboja) is excellent. In Buddha's time the dragon had been Buddha's milkman. He lost his temper, laid flowers at the Dragon's cave, prayed he might become a dragon, and leaped over the cliff. He laid the country waste and did so much harm that Tathāgata (or Buddha) converted him. The Nāga asked Buddha to take his cave. Buddha said No, I will leave my shadow. If you get angry look at my shadow and it will quiet you (Ditto,

## JAVA AND CAMBODIA.

*no sufficient importance*

This apparent increased importance of dragon or Nāga worship in north-west India during the fifth and sixth centuries may have been due partly to the decline of the earlier Buddhism partly to the genial wondering temper of Hiuen Tsiang. Still so marked an increase makes it probable that with some of the great fifth and sixth century conquerors of Bactria Kábul and the Páinjúb, of whom a trace may remain in the snake-

## Appendix IV.

## CAMBODIA.

94). Another typical dragon is Apalála of the Swát river (Ditto, 68). In the time of Káśyapa Buddha Apalála was a weaver of spells named Gangi. Gangi's spells kept the dragons quiet and saved the crops. But the people were thankless and paid no tithes. May I be born a dragon, cursed Gangi, poisonous and ruinous. He was born the dragon of the Swát valley, Apalála, who belched forth a salt stream and burned the crops. The ruin of the fair and pious valley of Swát reached Śákya's (Buddha's) ears. He passed to Mangala and beat the mountain side with Indra's mace. Apalála came forth was lectured and converted. He agreed to do no more mischief on condition that once in twelve years he might ruin the crops. (Ditto, 122.) In a lake about seven miles west of Takshasilá, a spot dear to the exiled Kambojan, lived Elápatra the Nāgaraja, a Bhikṣu or ascetic who in a former life had destroyed a tree. When the crops wanted rain or fair weather, the Shamans or medicine-men led the people to pray at Elápatra's tank (page 137). In Kashmir, perhaps the place of halt of the Kambojan in his conquests eastwards, in old times the country was a dragon lake.\* Madhyantika drove out the waters but left one small part as a house for the Nāga king (I. 150). What sense have these tales? In a hilly land where the people live in valleys the river is at once the most whimsical and the most dangerous force. Few seasons pass in which the river does not either damage with its floods or with its failure and at times glaciers and landslips stop the entire flow and the valley is ruined. So great and so strange an evil as the complete drying of a river must be the result of some one's will, of some one's temper. The Dragon is angry he wants a sacrifice. Again the river ponds into a lake, the lake tops the earth bank and rushes in a flood wasting as only a dragon can waste. For generations after so awful a proof of power all doubts regarding dragons are dead. (Compare Drw's Cashmere and Jummoo, 414-421.) In India the Chinese dragon turns into a cobra. In China the cobra is unknown; in India than the cobra no power is more dreaded. How can the mighty unworldly dragon be the little silent cobra. How not? Can the dragon be worshipful if he is unable to change his shape. To the spirit not to the form is worship due. Again the worshipped dragon becomes the guardian. The great earth Bodhisattva transforms himself into a Nāgaraja and dwells in lake Anavatapta whose flow of cool water enriches the world (Buddhist Records, II. 11). In a fane in Swát Buddha takes the form of a dragon and the people live on him (125). A pestilence wasted Swát. Buddha becomes the serpent Suma, all who taste his flesh are healed of the plague (126). A Naga maiden, who for her sins has been born in serpent shape and lives in a pool, loves Buddha who was then a Śákya chief. Buddha's merit regains for the girl her lost human form. He goes into the pool slays the girl's snake-kin and marries her. Not even by marriage with the Śákya is his serpent spirit driven out of the maiden. At night from her head issues a nine-crooked Nāga. Śákya strikes off the nine crooks and ever since it blows the royal family has suffered from headaches (132). This last tale shows how Buddhism works on the coarser and fiercer tribes who accept its teaching. The converts rise to be men though a snake-head may creep out to show that not all of the old heaven is dead. In other stories Buddha as the sacramental snake shows the moral advance in Buddhism from fiend to guardian worship. The rest of the tales illustrate the corresponding intellectual progress from force worship to man, that is mind, worship. The water force sometimes kindly and cunching sometimes fierce and wasting becomes a Bodhisattva always kindly though his goodwill may have to give way to the rage of evil powers. So Bráhmanism turns Narayana the sea into Śiva or Ponnath the sea ruler. In this as in other phases religion passes from the worship of the forces of Nature to which in his beginnings man has to bow to the worship of Man or conscious Mind whose growth in skill and in knowledge has made him the Lord of the forces. These higher ideals are to a great extent a venger. The Buddhist evangelist may dry the lake; he is careful to leave a pool for the Nāgaraja. In times of trouble among the fierce struggles of pioneers and settlers the spirit of Buddha withdraws and leaves the empty shrine to the earlier and the more immortal spirit of Force, the Nāgaraja who has lived on in the pool which for the sake of peace Buddha refrained from drying.

\* Kashmir has still a trace of Gandhára. Compare (Ency Brit. Art, Kashmir page 13. The races of Kashmir are Gandhárns, Khasás, and Daradás.

#### Appendix IV. CAMBODIA.

worshipping Nāgas and Takkas of the Kamaon and Garhwal hills, the Dragon was the chief object of worship. Temple remains show that the seventh and eighth century rulers of Kashmir, with a knowledge of classic architecture probably brought from beyond the Indus, were Naga worshippers.<sup>1</sup> The fact that the ninth century revision of religion in Tibet came mainly from Kashmir and that among the eighteen chief gods of the reformed faith the great Serpent had a place favours the view that through Tibet passed the scheme and the classic details of the Kashmir Naga temples, which in greater wealth and splendour are repeated in the Nakhonwat of Angkor in Cambodia.<sup>2</sup> It is true that the dedication of the great temple to Naga worship before the Siamese priests filled it with statues of Buddha is questioned both by Lieut Garner and by Sir H. Yule.<sup>3</sup> In spite of this objection and though some of the series have been Buddhist from the first, it is difficult to refuse acceptance to Mr. Fergusson's conclusions that in the great Nakhon, all traces of Buddhism are additions. The local conditions and the worshipful Tale Sap lake favour this conclusion. What holier dragon site can be imagined than the great lake Tale Sap, 100 miles by 30, joined to the river Mekong by a huge natural channel which of itself empties the lake in the dry season and refills it during the rains giving a water harvest of fish as well as a land harvest of grain. What more typical work of the dragon as guardian water lord. Again not far off between Angkor and Yunnan was the head-quarters of the dragon as the unsquared head. In Carrapin ten days west of the city of Yachi Marco Polo (A.D. 1290) found a land of snakes and great serpents ten paces in length with very great heads, eyes bigger than a loaf of bread, mouths garnished with pointed teeth able to swallow a man whole, two fore-legs with claws for feet and bodies equal in bulk to a great cask. He adds, 'These serpents devour the cubs of lions and bears without the sue and dam being able to prevent it. Indeed if they catch the big ones they devour them too and no one can make any resistance. Every man and beast stands in fear and trembling of them.' Even in these head dragons was the sacramental guardian element. The gall from their inside healed the bite of a mad dog, delivered a woman in hard labour, and cured itch or it might be worse. Moreover, he concludes, the flesh of these serpents is excellent eating and toothsome.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Fergusson (*Architecture*, 219) places the Kashmir temples between A.D. 600 and 1200 and allots Martand the greatest to about A.D. 750. The classical element, he says, cannot be mistaken. The shafts are fluted Grecian Doric probably taken from the Gandhāra monasteries of the fourth and fifth centuries. Fergusson was satisfied (*Id.*, 289) that the religion of the builders of the Kashmir temples was Naga worship. In Cambodia the Brahman remains were like those of Java (*Id.*, 667). But the connection between the Nakhonwat series and the Kashmir temples was unmistakable (*Id.*, 297, 665). Naga worship was the object of both (*Id.*, 677-679). Imperfect information forced Fergusson to date the Nakhonwat not earlier than the thirteenth century (*Id.*, 660, 679). The evidence of the inscriptions which (*J. As. Ser.* VI Tom. XIX page 190) brings back the date of this the latest of a long series of temples to the ninth and tenth centuries adds greatly to the probability of some direct connection between the builders of the Martand shrine in Kashmir and of the great Nakhonwat temple at Angkor.

<sup>2</sup> *Ency. Brit. Art. Tibet*, 314.

<sup>3</sup> *Ency. Brit. Art. Cambodia*.

<sup>4</sup> Yule's *Marco Polo*, II. 46, 47.

## APPENDIX V.

### ARAB REFERENCES.<sup>1</sup>

THE earliest Arab reference to Gujarāt is by the merchant Sulaimān<sup>2</sup> A.D. 851 (A.H. 237). Other Arab accounts follow up to A.D. 1263, a period of over four centuries. Sulaimān describes Jurz or Gujarāt as bordering on the kingdom of the Bahāra (A.D. 743-974) and as forming a tongue of land, rich in horses and camels and said to have "mines of gold and silver, exchanges being carried on by means of these metals in dust."

Al Bilāduri<sup>3</sup> (A.D. 892) states that the first Islāmic expedition to India was the one despatched against *Tāni*<sup>4</sup> (Thāna) by Usmān, son of Al-Āsi the Thakali, who in the fifteenth year of the Hijrah (A.D. 636) was appointed governor of Bahrein and Umān (the Persian Gulf) by the second Khalīfah Umar, the son of Khattāb. On the return of the expedition, in reply to his governor's despatch, the Khalīfah Umar is said to have written:<sup>5</sup> "Oh brother of Thakīf, thou hast placed the worm in the wood, but by Allāh, had any of my men been slain, I would have taken an equal number from thy tribe." In spite of this threat Usmān's brother Hakam, who was deputed by the governor to the charge of Bahrein, despatched a force to Bārūz<sup>6</sup> (Broach). Al Bilāduri does not record the result of this expedition, but

### Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.

<sup>1</sup> Contributed by Khān Sāhib Fazlullāh Lutfullāh Farūh of Surat.

<sup>2</sup> This account which is in two parts is named *Silsilat-ut-Tawārīkh*, that is the Chain of History. The first part was written in A.D. 851-52 by Sulaimān and has the advantage of being the work of a traveller who himself knew the countries he describes. The second part was written by Abu Zeid-al-Hasan of Sirāf on the Persian Gulf about sixty years after Sulaimān's account. Though Abu Zeid never visited India, he made it his business to read and question travellers who had been in India. Abul Hasan-el-Masudi (A.D. 915-943) who met him at Basrah is said to have imparted to and derived much information from Abu Zeid. Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Ahmed bin Yahyā, surnamed Abu Jāfār and called Bilāduri or Bilazuri from his addiction to the electuary of the bilāra bean (*bilāzur* بلادر) or anacardium, lived about the end of the ninth century of the Christian era at the court of Al-Mutawakkil the Abbāsi, as an instructor to one of the royal princes. He died A.H. 279 (A.D. 892-93). His work is styled the *Futuh-ul-Buldān* The Conquest of Countries. He did not visit Sindh, but was in personal communication with men who had travelled far and wide.

<sup>4</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 116-116.

<sup>5</sup> The reason of Umar's dislike for India is described by Al Masudi (Murūj Arabic Text, Cairo Edition, III. 166-171), to have originated from the description of the country by a philosopher to whom Umar had referred on the first spread of Islām in his reign. The philosopher said: India is a distant and remote land peopled by rebellious infidels. Immediately after the battle of Kadesiah (A.D. 636) when sending out Utbah, his first governor to the newly-founded camp-town of Basrah Umar is reported to have said: I am sending thee to the land of Al-Hind (India) as governor. Remember it is a field of the fields of the enemy. The third Khalīfah Usmān (A.D. 643-656) ordered his governor of Irāk to depute a special officer to visit India and wait upon the Khalīfah to report his opinion of that country. His report of India was not encouraging. He said: Its water is scarce, its fruits are poor, and its robbers bold. If the troops sent there are few they will be slain; if many they will starve. (Al-Bilāduri in Elliot, I. 116.)

<sup>6</sup> Sir H. Elliot's History of India, I, 116.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.

mentions a more successful one to Debal at the mouth of the Indus sent by Ilakam under the command of his brother Mughaira. On the death of his uncle Al-Hajjaj (A.D. 714; II 95) Muhammad the son of Kásim the Arab conqueror of Sindh, is said to have made peace with the inhabitants of Surast or Káthiáwád with whom he states the people of Bática<sup>1</sup> that is Bet to the north of Dwárka were then at war. Al Biláduri describes the Bática men as Meds seafarers and pirates. In the reign of Hishám (A.D. 721) Jannaid, son of Abdur Rahmán Al Murri, who was appointed to the frontier of Sindh is stated to have conquered Juzr (Gujarát) and Bárús (Broach).<sup>2</sup> A more permanent result followed a great expedition from Mansúrah in Sindh. This result was the overthrow, from which it never recovered, of the great seaport and capital of Vala or Valabhi.<sup>3</sup> Al Biláduri's next mention<sup>4</sup> of Gujarát is in connection with the conquest of Sindán in Kachh and the founding there of a Jámá mosque by Fazl, son of Mahán in the reign of the Abbási Khalifah Al Mámún (A.D. 813-833) the son of the famous Harún-ur-Rashid. After Fazl's death his son Muhammad sailed with sixty vessels against the Meds of Hind, captured Máh<sup>5</sup> apparently Mália in north Káthiáwád after a great slaughter of the Meds and returned to Sindán.

The dissension between Muhammad and his brother Mahán, who in Muhammad's absence had usurped his authority at Sindán, re-established the power of the Hindus. The Hindus however, adds Al Biláduri, spared the assembly mosque in which for long the Musalmáns used to offer their Friday prayers.<sup>6</sup> Ibn Khurdadbeh (A.D. 912; II 300) erroneously enumerates Bárúh and Sindán (Broach and Sindán) as cities of Sindh.<sup>7</sup> The king of Juzr he describes as the fourth Indian sovereign. According to Al Masúdi (A.D. 915) the country of the Baháras or Ráshtrakútas (A.D. 743-974), which is also called the country of Kunkar (Konkan), is open on one side to the attacks of the king of Juzr (Gujarát) a prince owning many horses and camels and troops who does not think any king on earth equal to him except the king of Bábal (Babylon). He prides himself and holds himself high above all other kings and owns many elephants, but hates Musalmáns. His country is on a tongue of land, and there are gold and silver mines in it, in which trade is carried on. Al Istakhri (II 340; A.D. 951) gives an itinerary in which he shows the distance between

<sup>1</sup> Sir H. Elliot (Hist. of India) transliterates this as *Bdsat*. But neither *Bdsat* nor his other supposition (Note 4 Ditto) *Budha* seem to have any sense. The original is probably *Batuh*, a form in which other Arab historians and geographers also allude to *Bat*, the residence of the notorious *Baudry* who are referred to a little farther on as seafarers and pirates. Ditto, I, 123.

<sup>2</sup> This important expedition extended to Ujjain. \*Details Above page 109 and also under Bhímal. Ruds by sea from Sindh were repeated in A.D. 758, 760, 756, and perhaps A.D. 830. Reinaud's Fragments, 212. See Above Bhagvánál's Early History page 96 note 3.

<sup>3</sup> Details Above pages 94-96.

<sup>4</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 129.

<sup>5</sup> Sir Henry Elliot (History of India, I, 129) calls it Kallari though (Ditto note 3) he says the text has Mali.

<sup>6</sup> Sir H. Elliot's History of India, I, 129.

<sup>7</sup> Ibn Khurdadbeh a Musalmán of Magian descent as his name signifies, died H. 300 (A.D. 912). He held high office under the Abbási Khalifahs at Baghdád (Elliot's History of India, I, 13).

<sup>8</sup> Abul Hasan Al Masúdi, a native of Baghdád, who visited India about A.D. 915 and wrote his "Meadows of Gold" (Murúj-uz-zahab) about A.D. 950-51 and died A.D. 956 in Egypt. (Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 23-25.)

<sup>9</sup> Abu Is-hák Al Istakhri, a native (as his cognomen signifies) of Persepolis who flourished about the middle of the tenth century and wrote his Book of Climes (Kitábul Akálim) about A.H. 340 (A.D. 951). Elliot's History of India, I, 26.

Mansurah and Kāmbhal<sup>1</sup> (Anhilwāra) to be eight days' journey; from Kāmbhal to Kambāya (Cambay) four days; from Kambāya to the sea about two *farsangs* that is between seven and eight miles<sup>2</sup>; from Kambāya to Surabāya<sup>3</sup> perhaps Surabārāh the Surat river mouth which is half a *farsang* (between 1½ and two miles) from the sea, about four days. No places five days between Surabāya (Surat) and Sindān (St. John near Daman) and a like distance between Sindān and Saimur (Chewal or Chaul) thirty miles south of Bombay. Ibnī Haukal<sup>4</sup> (H. 366; A.D. 976) enumerates<sup>5</sup> (Fānhal)<sup>6</sup> (Anhilwāra), Kambāya (Cambay), Surbārāh (Surat), Sindān (Daman), and Saimur (Chaul) as cities of Al Hind (India), as opposed to As Sindh or the Indus valley. From Kambāya to Saimur, he writes is the land of the Bahūra which is in the possession of several kings<sup>7</sup>. Ibnī Haukal describes the land between Kāmbhal (Anhilwāra) and Kambāya (Cambay), and Banin three days' journey from Mansurah as desert,<sup>8</sup> and between Kambāya and Saimur as thickly covered with villages. Al Birūnī,<sup>9</sup> in his famous India about A.D. 1030-31 writes: From Kanauj, travelling south-west you come to Asi, a distance of eighteen *farsakhs*<sup>10</sup> that is of seventy-two miles; to Sahica 17 *farsakhs* or sixty-eight miles; to Chandra 18 *farsakhs* or seventy-two miles; to Rajauri fifteen *farsakhs* or sixty miles, and to Nārana (near Jaipur) the former capital of Gujarāt, 18 *farsakhs* or seventy-two miles. Nārana he adds was destroyed and the capital transferred to another town on the frontier. From Nārana at a distance of 60 *farsakhs* or 240 miles south-west lies Anhilwāra, and thence to Somnath on the sea is fifty *farsakhs* or 200 miles. From Anhilwāra, passing south is Lārdes with its capitals Bihunch (Bouch) and Rahānjur<sup>11</sup> (Rāndr) forty-two *farsakhs* (168

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix A, Volume I, Sir Henry Elliot's History of India.

<sup>2</sup> Elliot's History of India, 394, where Sir Henry Elliot calculates a *parasang* or *farsang* (Arabic *farsakh*) to be 3½ miles. Al Birūnī, however, counts four *kroh* or miles to a *farsakh*. Sachau's Al Birūnī Arabic Text, chapter 18 page 97.

<sup>3</sup> Sir Henry Elliot (History of India, I, 403) locates Surabāya somewhere near Surat. The mouth of the Tapi is still known in Surat as the Bāra.

<sup>4</sup> Ibnī Haukal (Muhammad Abul Kasim) a native of Baghdad, left that city in H. 331 (A.D. 943), returned to it H. 358 (A.D. 968) and finished his work about H. 366 (A.D. 976). Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 31.

<sup>5</sup> Sir Henry Elliot (History of India, I, 363) correctly takes Fānhal to be a misreading for Anhal that is Anhilwāra. Al Birūnī (A.D. 970-1039) uses the name Anhilwāra without any Arab peculiarity of transliteration or pronunciation. Sachau's Arabic Text, 100. Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) styles Anhilwāra "Nahrwāra" (Elliot, I, 84) an equally well known name.

<sup>7</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 31.

<sup>8</sup> M. Gildemeister's Latin translation of Ibnī Haukal's Ashkāl ul-Bilād (Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 39).

<sup>9</sup> Abu Rihan Al Birūnī was a native of Balkh in Central Asia. He accompanied Mahmūd of Ghazni to India in his expeditions and acquired an accurate knowledge of Sanskrit. His acquaintance with this language and Greek and his love of enquiry and research together with his fairness and impartiality, make his India a most valuable contribution to our information on India in the end of the tenth and beginning of the eleventh centuries. He finished his work after the death of his patron in A.D. 1030-31. See Sachau's Preface to the Arabic Text of the India, ix.

<sup>10</sup> Al Birūnī makes his *farsakh* of four miles. Sachau's Arabic Text, 97.

<sup>11</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's translation and transliteration of Rahānjur (History of India, I, 61) are, be it said with all respect to the memory of that great scholar, inaccurate. He cannot make anything of the word (note 3) while in the Arabic Text of Sachau (page 100) the first letter is a plain *j* = *r* and not *j* = *d*. From the context also the ancient town of Rāndr seems to be meant. It is plainly written (رمجور) Rahānjur and is very likely the copyist's mistake for the very similar form رمدور or Rābandur.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

miles). These he states are on the shore of the sea to the east of Tāna (the modern Thāna).<sup>1</sup> After describing the coast of Makrān till it reaches Debal<sup>2</sup> (Karāchi or Thatta). Abu Rihān comes to the coast of Kachh<sup>3</sup> and Somnāth, the population of which he calls the Bawārij because, he says, they commit their piratical depredations in boats called Baira.<sup>4</sup> He gives the distance<sup>5</sup> between Debal (Karāchi or Thatta) and Kachh the country that yields *mull* (gum or myrrh)<sup>6</sup> and *bādrūd* (balm) as six *farsakhs* (24 miles); to Somnāth (from Debal) fourteen (56 miles); to Kambāya thirty (120 miles); to Asāwal the site of Ahmedābād (from Cambay) two days' journey; to Balurāj (Broach) (from Debal)<sup>7</sup> thirty, to Sindān or St John (from Debal) fifty; to Subāra (Sopāra) from Sindān six<sup>8</sup>; to Tāna (from Sopāra) five. Rashid-ud-dīn in his translation (A.D. 1310) of Al Bīrūnī (A.D. 970-1031) states<sup>9</sup> that beyond Gujarāt are Konkans and Tāna. He calls Tānah the chief town of the Konkans and mentions the forest of the Dāngs as the habitat of the *sharra* an animal resembling the buffalo, but larger than a rhinoceros, with a small trunk and two big horns with which it attacks and destroys the elephant. Al Idrisi,<sup>10</sup> writing about the end of the eleventh century but with tenth century materials, places<sup>11</sup> in the seventh section of the second climate, the Gujarāt towns of Māmbal (Anhlwāra), Kambāya (Cambay), Subāra (apparently Surubāra or Surat), Sindān<sup>12</sup> (Sanjān in Thāna), and Sumūr (Chewal or Chenl). He adds, probably quoting from Al Jauhari (A.D. 950), that Nahrwāra is governed by a great prince who bears the title of Balhāra who owns the whole country from Nahrwāra to Sumūr. He ranks the king of Juzr fourth among Indian potentates. The country from Debal to Kambāya (Karāchi to Cambay) he describes<sup>13</sup> as "nothing but a marine strand without habitations and almost without water, and impassable for travellers."<sup>14</sup> The situation of Māmbal (Anhlwāra) he gives as between Sindh and Hind. He notices the Meds as Mānds<sup>15</sup> grazing their flocks to within a short distance of

<sup>1</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text of Al Bīrūnī, 98 and Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 61.

<sup>2</sup> Elphinstone's History of India, Book V. Chapter I. 263 Note 25 (John Murray's 1819 Edition) on the authority of Captain MacMurdo and Captain Alexander Burnes inclines to the opinion that Debal was somewhere near the site of the modern Karāchi.

<sup>3</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 65. Sachau's Text of Al Bīrūnī, chapter 18 page 102.

<sup>4</sup> Al Bilāduri uses the word Barija for a strong built war vessel. Sir Henry Elliot derives the word from the Arabic and gives an interesting note on the subject in his Appendix I. 539. The word is still used in Hindustani as *bah* (بح) to signify a boat or bark.

<sup>5</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text, 102.

<sup>6</sup> According to Richardson (Arabic Dictionary voce مفر myrrh) though rendered gum by all translators. According to the *Makhzan* the word *mull* (Urdu *quqhal*) is Balsamodendron and Bādrūd the corruption of *Bharuz* (Urdu *buzze*) is balsam or bezoar.

<sup>7</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text page 99 chapter 18.

<sup>8</sup> After giving the distances in days or journeys the Text (page 102 Sachau's Text of Al Bīrūnī) does not particularise the distances of the places that follow in journeys or *farsakhs*.

<sup>9</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 67.

<sup>10</sup> Abu Abdallah Muhammad Al Idrisi, a native of Ceuta in Morocco and descended from the royal family of the Idrisids of that country, settled at the court of Roger II. of Sicily, where and at whose desire he wrote his book *The Nuzhat-ul-Mushtak* or *The Seeker's Delight*. Elliot's History of India, I. 74. Almost all Al Idrisi's special information regarding Sindh and Western India is from Al Jauhari governor of Khurāsān (A.D. 892-909), whose knowledge of Sindh and the Indus valley is unusually complete and accurate. Compare Reinaud's *Abulfeda*, lxxi.

<sup>11</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 77.

<sup>12</sup> Bombay Gazetteer, II. 60.

<sup>13</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 79.

<sup>14</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 76.

<sup>15</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 79.

Mámhal (Anhilwára). He speaks of Mámhal, Kambáya, Subára (probably Surabára or Surat), Sindán, and Saimúr as countries of Hind (India) touching upon Sindh.<sup>1</sup> He describes Mámhal as a frontier town, numbered by some among the cities of Sindh, and he classifies Auhkin, Mánd, Kulámmali (Quilon),<sup>2</sup> and Sindán (Sandhán in Kachh) as maritime islands. Among the numerous towns of India are Mámhal (Anhilwára), Kambáya (Cambay), Subára, Asáwal (Ahmedábád), Janáwal (Chauvál), Sindán, Saimúr, Jandur<sup>3</sup> (Rándir), Sandur (apparently a repetition of Rándir), and Rámála (perhaps the south Panjáb).<sup>4</sup> He speaks of Kalbata, Angusht, Nahrwára (Anhilwára), and Lahawar (Lahori Bandar) as in the desert<sup>5</sup> of Kambáya. Of the three Subára (Surabára or Surat), Sindán (the Thána Sanján), and Saimúr (Choul), he says Saimúr alone belongs to the Bulhára, whose kingdom, he adds, is large, well-peopled, commercial, and fertile. Near Subára (apparently Surabára) he locates small islands which he styles Bára where, he adds, coconuts and the costus grow.<sup>7</sup> East of Sindán, due to a confusion between Sandhán in Kachh and Sanján in Thána, he places another island bearing the same name as the port and under the same government as the mainland, highly cultivated and producing the cocoa palm the bamboo and the cane. Five miles by sea from Kulámmali lies another island called Máh, an elevated plateau, but not hilly, and covered with vegetation. The mention of the pepper vine suggests that Al Idrisi has wandered to the Malabar Coast. In the eighth section of the second clime Al Idrisi places Bárúh (Broach), Sandapúr (apparently Goa), Tána (Thána), Kandarína (Gandhár, north of Broach), Jirbátin a town mentioned by Al Idrisi as the nearest in a voyage from Ceylon to the continent of India on that continent. It is described as a populous town on a river supplying rice and grain to Ceylon.<sup>8</sup> Kalkáyan, Lulawa, Kanja, and Samandirín, and in the interior Dulaka (Dholka), Janwal (Chauvál or Viramgám), and Nahrwár (Anhilwára).<sup>9</sup> Opposite the sea-port of Bárúh (Broach), Al Idrisi places an island called Múllán, producing large quantities of pepper. Al Idrisi describes the port of Baruh (Broach) as accessible to ships from China and Sindh. The distance from Bárúh to Saimúr he puts at two days journey, and that between Bárúh and Nahrwára (Anhilwára) at eight days through a flat country travelled over in wheeled carriages drawn by oxen, which he adds furnished the only mode for the conveyance also of merchandise. He locates the towns of Dulaka and Hanawal

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.

<sup>1</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 84.

<sup>2</sup> The letters Kulámmali given by Al Kazwini (A.D. 1263 - 1275) seem to show it is Quilon on the Malabar Coast. When a ruler died his successor was always chosen from China.

<sup>3</sup> Elliot (I. 363-364) on the authority of Al Istakhri thinks that all the names Amhal, Fámhal, Kámhal, and Mámhal are faulty readings of Anhal (Anhilwára) owing to irregularity in the position or absence of disjunctive points.

<sup>4</sup> This is probably Rander, a very natural Arab corruption. Instance Al Birúni's Ránjhar. See page 507 note 11 and page 520.

<sup>5</sup> Rámála is mentioned at pages 14, 87, 92 and 93 volume I. of Elliot. It is first mentioned (page 14) by Ibn Khuradbeh (A.D. 912) as one of the countries of Sindh. It is next mentioned by Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century according to Elliot, I. 74) as one of the places of the eighth section describing the coast of India, but is mentioned along with Nahrwára, Kandhár, and Kalbata (?). At page 92 (Ditto) the same writer (Idrisi) says that Kalbata and Rámála are on the borders of the desert which separates Múltán from Sijistán. Again at page 93 (Ditto) Idrisi gives the distance between Kalbata and Rámála as a distance of three days.

<sup>6</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 84.

<sup>7</sup> Elliot, I. 90 - 93.

<sup>8</sup> Sir H. Elliot's History of India, I. 85.

<sup>9</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 89.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

or Janáwal (Chanwál or Jháláwar) with Asáwal (Ahmedábád) between Búrúh and Nahrwárah. He represents all three of these towns to be centres of a considerable trade, and among their products mentions the bamboo and the coconut. From Barúh to Sandábúr (that is Goa), a commercial town with fine houses and rich bazáas situated on a great gulf where ships cast anchor, the distance along the coast given by Al Idrisi is four days. Al Kazwini<sup>1</sup> writing about the middle of the thirteenth century A.D. 1263-1275, but mainly from information of the tenth century notes Samúr (Chenl) "a city of Hind near the confines of Sindh" with its handsome people of Turkish extraction worshippers of fire having their own fire-temples. Al Kazwini (A.D. 1230) dwells at length on the wonders of Somnath and its temple. He calls it a celebrated city of India situated on the shore of the sea and washed by its waves. Among its wonders is Somnath, an idol hung in space resting on nothing. In Somnath he says Hindus assemble by the ten thousand at lunar eclipses, believing that the souls of men meet there after separation from the body and that at the will of the idol they are re-born into other animals. The two centuries since its destruction by the idol-breaker of Ghaznah had restored Somnath to its ancient prosperity. He concludes his account of Somnath by telling how Mahmúd ascertained that the chief idol was of iron and its canopy a lion stone and how by removing one of the walls the idol fell to the ground.

## Rivers.

Regarding the rivers and streams of Gujarát the Arab writers are almost completely silent. The first reference to rivers is in Al Masúdi (A.D. 914) who in an oddly puzzled passage says "On the Iárwí Sea (Cambay and Chenl) great rivers run from the south whilst all the rivers of the world except the Nile of the Egypt, the Mehrán (Indus) of Sindh, and a few others flow from the north." Al Bírúni (A.D. 970-1030) states that between the drainage areas of the Sarsut and the Ganges is the valley of the river Narmazá<sup>2</sup> which comes from the eastern mountains and flows south-west till it falls into the sea near Bahrúch about 180 miles (60 *yajanas*) east of Somnath. Another river the Sarsut (Sarasvatí) he rightly describes as falling into the sea an arrowshot to the east of Somnath.<sup>3</sup> He further mentions the Tábi (Tapti) from the Vindra or Vindhya hills and the Támbrá Bauani or copper-coloured, apparently also the Tápti, as coming from Málwa. In addition he refers to the Máhindri or Máhi and the Sarusa apparently

<sup>1</sup> Zakariyah Ibn Muhammad Al Kazwini, a native of Kazwin (Kashin) in Persia, wrote his *Asar-ul-Bilad* or "Signs or Monuments of Countries" about A.D. 661 (A.D. 1263) compiling it chiefly from the writings of Al Istakhrí (A.D. 951) and Ibn Haukal (A.D. 976). He also frequently quotes Misár bin Muhallab, a traveller who (A.D. 942) visited India and China. Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 94.

<sup>2</sup> Barbier De Meynard's Text of Al Masúdi's *Les Prairies D'Or*, I. 382.

<sup>3</sup> Sir Henry Elliot mistook *Tamraz* for Al Bírúni's Arabic form of *Narmaza*. He says: "It comes from the city of Tamraz and the eastern hills; it has a south-easterly course till it falls into the sea near Bahruch about 60 *yajanas* to the east of Somnath. The literal translation of the text of Al Bírúni (see Sachau's *Al Bírúni's India*, 130) is that given above. It is hard to believe that the accurate Al Bírúni while in one place (see Sachau's Text, 99) giving the name of the Narmada faultlessly, should in another place fall into the error of tracing it from *Tamraz* a city of Central Asia. A comparison of Elliot's version with the text sets the difficulty at rest. Compare Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 49 and note 3 ditto and Sachau's Arabic Text of Al Bírúni, 130 chapter 25.

<sup>4</sup> Compare Sachau's *Al Bírúni* with Sir Henry Elliot, I. 49, who is silent as to the distance.

Sarasvati perhaps meant for the *Sābarmati*. Al Idrisi (A.D. 1100) is the only other Arab writer who names any of the Gujarāt rivers. As usual he is confused, describing *Dulka* (*Dhulka*) as standing on the bank of a river flowing into the sea which forms an estuary or gulf on the east of which stands the town of *Bārūh* (*Broach*).<sup>1</sup>

The Arab writers record the following details of twenty-two leading towns :

**Anahavāda** (ʾANHAṬ, FĀMHAL, KĀMHAL, KĀMUHUL, MĀMHUL, NAHL-WĀRA, NAHRWĀLA) Al Istakhri (H. 340; A.D. 951) mentions *Amhal* *Fāmhāl* and *Kāmhāl*, *Ibnī Haukal* (A.D. 976) *Fāmhāl* *Kāmhāl* and *Kāmuḥāl*, and Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) *Māmhul*. That these are perversions of one name and that this town stood on the border of 'Hind' or Gujarāt (in contradistinction to Sindh) the position given to each by the Arab geographers<sup>2</sup> places beyond question. Al Istakhri (A.D. 951) alone calls the place by the name of *Amhal* which he mentions<sup>3</sup> as one of the chief cities of 'Hind.' Later<sup>4</sup> he gives the name of *Fāmhāl* to a place forming the northern border of "Hind", as all beyond it as far as Makrān belongs to Sindh. Again a little later<sup>5</sup> he describes *Kāmhāl* as a town eight days from *Mansūrah* and four days from *Kambāya*, thus making *Kāmhāl* the first Gujarāt town on the road from *Mansūrah* about seventy miles north of *Harḍarābād* in Sindh to Gujarāt. *Ibnī Haukal* (A.D. 968-976) in his *Ashkāḥ-ul-Bilād* gives *Fāmhāl* in his text and *Kāmhāl* in his map<sup>6</sup> and again while referring<sup>7</sup> to the desert between Makrān and *Fāmhāl* as the home of the Meds, he styles it *Kāmhāl*. Once more he refers to *Fāmhāl* as a strong and great city, containing a *Jamā* or Assembly Mosque; a little later<sup>8</sup> he calls it *Kāmuḥāl* and places it eight days from *Mansūrah* and four from *Kambāya*. He afterwards contradicts himself by making *Mansūrah* two days' journey from 'Kāmuḥāl,' but this is an obvious error.<sup>9</sup> Al Bīrūnī (A.D. 970-1039) notices *Anahilwāra* and does not recognize any other form.<sup>10</sup> Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) adopts no form but *Māmhāl* referring to it as one of the towns of the second climate<sup>11</sup> on the confines of a desert between Sindh and "Hind" (India or Gujarāt) the home of the sheep-grazing and horse and camel-breeding Meds,<sup>12</sup> as a place numbered by some among the cities of Hind (Gujarāt) by others as one of the cities of Sindh situated at the extremity of the desert which stretches between *Kambāya*, *Debal*, and *Bāniā*.<sup>13</sup> Again he describes *Māmhāl* as a town of moderate importance on the route "from Sindh to India," a place of little trade, producing small quantities of fruit but numerous flocks, nine days from *Mansūrah* through *Bāniā* and five from *Kambāya*.<sup>14</sup> Al Idrisi (quoting from tenth century

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

Towns.  
*Anahavāda*.

<sup>1</sup> See Ahmedabad Gazetteer, IV, 338; also Elliot's History of India, I, 356-357.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix Elliot's History of India, I, 363.

<sup>3</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I, 27.

<sup>4</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I, 30.

<sup>5</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 32-31.

<sup>6</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 31-38.

<sup>7</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 39.

<sup>8</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 10.

<sup>9</sup> Al Bīrūnī in Elliot (History of India), I, 61.

<sup>10</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I, 77.

<sup>11</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I, 79.

<sup>12</sup> *Bāniā* seems to be a copyist's error for *Bazāna* or *Nārāyana*. The distances agree and the fact that to this day the neighbourhood of *laṭī* is noted for its flocks of sheep bears additional testimony to the correctness of the supposition.

<sup>13</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot's History of India, I, 84.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.

TOWNS.

*Anahilavāda.*

materials) also notices Nahrwār as eight days' journey from Bārūh (Broach) across a flat country a place governed by a prince having the title of the Balhāra, a prince with numerous troops and elephants, a place frequented by large numbers of Musalmāns who go there on business.<sup>1</sup> It is remarkable that though Vanarāja (A.D. 720 - 780 ?) founded Anhilwāra as early as about A.D. 750 no Arab geographer refers to the capital under any of the many forms into which its name was twisted before Al Istakhri in A.D. 951. At first Anhilwāra may have been a small place but before the tenth century it ought to have been large enough to attract the notice of Ibn Khurdādhbih (A.D. 912) and Al Masūdī (A.D. 915). In the eleventh century the Musalmān historians of Mahmūd's reign are profuse in their references to Anhilwāra. According to Farishtah<sup>2</sup> after the capture of Anhilwāra and the destruction of Somnāth (H. 411; A.D. 1025) Mahmūd was anxious to make Anhilwāra his capital especially as it had mines of gold and as Singaldip (Ceylon) rich in rubies was one of its dependencies. Mahmūd was dissuaded from the project by his ministers.<sup>3</sup> But two mosques in the town of Pattan remain to show Mahmūd's fondness for the city. The next Muhammadan reference to Anhilwāra is by Nūr-ud dīn Muhammad U'fi, who lived in the reign of Shams-ud dīn Altamsh (A.D. 1211).<sup>4</sup> In his Romance of History U'fi refers to Anhilwāra as the capital of that Jai Rāj, who on receiving the complaint of a poor Musalmān preacher of Cambay, whose mosque the Hindus instigated the fire-worshippers of the place to destroy, left the capital alone on a fleet dromedary and returning after personal enquiry at Cambay summoned the complainant and ordered the chief men of the infidels to be punished and the Musalmān mosque to be rebuilt at their expense.<sup>5</sup>

The Jāmi-ul-Bikāyāt of Muhammad U'fi alludes<sup>6</sup> to the defeat of Sultān Shahāb-ud-dīn or Muhammad bin Sām, usually styled Muhammad Ghori, at the hands of Mūlārāja II. of Anahilavāda in A.D. 1178. And the Tājul Ma'āsir<sup>7</sup> describes how in A.D. 1297 the Musalmāns under Kutb-ud-dīn Aibak retrieved the honour of their arms by the defeat of Karun and his flight from Anhilwāra. This account refers to Gujarāt as "a country full of rivers and a separate region of the world." It also notices that Sultān Nāsr-ud-dīn Kabāchah (A.D. 1246-1266) deputed his general Khāshkhān from Debal to attack Nahrwāla and that Khāshkhān brought back many captives and much spoil. After the conquest of Gujarāt, in A.D. 1300 Sultān Alā-ud-dīn Khilji despatched Ulughkhān (that is the Great Khān commonly styled Alfkān) to destroy the idol-temple of Somnāth. This was done and the largest idol was sent to Alā-ud-dīn.<sup>8</sup>

Chief Towns.

*Asāwal.*

Asāwal. Abū Rihān Al Bīrūni is the first (A.D. 970 - 1039) of Arab geographers to mention Asāwal the site of Ahmedābād which he correctly

<sup>1</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot's History of India, I. 9. The Balhāras or Rāshtrakūṭas lost their power in A.D. 974. The only explanation of Idrisi's (A.D. 1100) Balhāras at Anhilwāra is that Idrisi is quoting from Al Bīrūni A.D. 950.

<sup>2</sup> Farishtah Persian Text Lithographed Bombay Edition, I. 57.

<sup>3</sup> Farishtah Persian Text Lithographed Bombay Edition, IV. 48. The Rauzat-us-Safa states that it was at Somnāth the Ghaznavide wanted to fix his capital (IV. 42 Persian Text, Lakhnau Edition). Anahilavāda seems more likely.

<sup>4</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, II. 155.

<sup>5</sup> The Jāmi-ul-Bikāyāt in Elliot (History of India), II. 162.

<sup>6</sup> Elliot's History of India, II. 200.

<sup>7</sup> Elliot's History of India, II. 229-30.

<sup>8</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, III. 74.

places two days journey from Ganday.<sup>1</sup> The next notice is along with Khābirūn (probably Kāvi on the left mouth of the Māhi) and near Hamāwal or Janāwal, apparently Chunvāl or Viratgām, by Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) as a town, populous, commercial, rich, industrious, and productive of useful articles.<sup>2</sup> He likens Asāwal "both in size and condition" to Dhūlaka both being places of good trade.<sup>3</sup> In the early fourteenth century (A.D. 1325) Zafar-dīn Bāmi refers to Asāwal as the place where Sultān Muḥammad Taghlak (A.D. 1325-1351) had to pass a month in the height of the rains owing to the evil condition to which his horses were reduced in marching and countermarching in pursuit of the rebel Tāghī. In the beginning of the fifteenth century (A.D. 1403-4) the Farikh-i-Mubārak Shāh notices Asāwal as the place where Tātarkhān the son of Zafarkhān had basely seized and confined his own father.<sup>4</sup> The Mirāt-i-Sikandari also speaks of Asāwal (A.D. 1403) but with the more courtly remark that it was the place where Zafarkhān the grandfather of Sultān Ahmad the founder of Ahmedābād, retired into private life after placing his son Tātarkhān on the throne.<sup>5</sup> The Mirāt-i-Sikandari states that the city of Ahmedābād was built<sup>6</sup> in the immediate vicinity of Asāwal. The present village of Asarwa is, under a slightly changed name, probably what remains of the old town.

**Barda.** See VALABHI.

**Broach** (Bāru'j, Bāru'it, Bāru's) is one of the places first attacked by the Muslim Arabs. In the fifteenth year of the Hijrah (A.D. 636) the Khālifah Umar appointed Usman son of Abdul Asī to Bahrein. Usman sent Hakam to Bahrein and Hakam despatched a fleet to Bārāfz (or Broach).<sup>7</sup> Al Bilāduri (A.D. 892-93) speaks of Junnaid the son of Abdur Rahman Al Marri on his appointment to the frontier of Sindh in the Khilāfat of Hishām bin Abdul Malik (A.D. 724-743) sending an expedition by land against Bārus (Broach) . . . and overrunning Jurz (Gujarāt). Ibn Khurdādhbih (A.D. 912) enumerates Bārūh among the countries of Sindh.<sup>8</sup> Broach is next noticed<sup>9</sup> by Al Birūni (A.D. 970-1039) as standing near the estuary of the river Narbada, as 120 miles (30 *parasang*s) from Debel, and as being with Rahangur (Rander) the capital of Lārdes. In describing the coasts of the Persian Gulf and the Indian Ocean Al Masūdī (A.D. 915-914) speaks of Broach as بَرُوس *Bārūs* adding from which come the famous lance shafts called *Bārūsi*.<sup>10</sup> Al Idrisi (A.D. 1100) mentions<sup>11</sup> Bārūh as a large town well-built of brick and plaster, the inhabitants rich, engaged in trade and ready to enter upon speculations and distant expeditions, a port for vessels coming from China and India, being two days' journey from Samūir (Chaul) and eight days from Nahrawān Anbulwān Pattan. In the fourteenth century (A.D. 1325) Broach is described as in the flames of the insurrection

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.  
Chief Towns,  
*Asāwal.*

*Ahmedābād.*

*Barda.*

Capital and  
Port Towns.  
*Broach.*

<sup>1</sup> Sachau's Text, 102.

<sup>2</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 87.

<sup>3</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 88.

<sup>4</sup> Elliot's History of India, III. 260.

<sup>5</sup> Bayley's Gujarat, 81.

<sup>6</sup> Elliot's History of India, IV. 39, History of Gujarat, 81.

<sup>7</sup> Bayley's Gujarat, 90.

<sup>8</sup> Al Bilāduri (A.D. 892) in Elliot's History of India, I. 116.

<sup>9</sup> Al Bilāduri (A.D. 892) in Elliot's History of India, I. 126. Details of this far-reaching affliction of Sindh, Kachh, the Chāvalās, Chitor, Bhinnal, and Ujjain are given above, History 109.

<sup>10</sup> Ibn Khurdādhbih in Elliot (History of India), I. 14.

<sup>11</sup> Al Birūni in Elliot (History of India, I. 49-50), and Sachau's Arabic Text, 100.

<sup>12</sup> Barbier DeMeynard's Arabic Text of Les Prairies D'Or, I. 239.

<sup>13</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 87.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350

Port or Coast  
Towns  
*Cambay.*

caused by the foreign *amirs* or nobles of the hot-tempered and impolitic Muḥammad bin Tughlak (A.D. 1325-1351) who visited it in person to quell their revolt. Ziauddin Barīn the famous annalist of his reign and the author of the *Tarikh-i-Firūz Shāh* speaks of his deputation to Broach by Mālik Kabīr the future Sultān Firūz Shāh with a letter to the Sultan.<sup>1</sup>

**Cambay** (KAMBAYA 'KAMBĀYAT, 'KAMBĀYAT' KHAMBĀIT) According to Al Istakhri (A.D. 951) Kambāya formed the north boundary of the land of the Bahārās.<sup>2</sup> Al Istakhri describes it as four days' from Kāmbhal (Anhilwara) sixteen miles (4 *farasangs*) from the sea and four days' from Surabāya probably Surabāra or the mouth of the Tāpti a term which is still in use.<sup>3</sup> Al Mas'udi (A.D. 915) in speaking of the ebb and flow of the ocean mentions Kambāya. He notices that Kambāya was famous in Baghdad as it still is famous in Gujārāt, for its shoes. These shoes, he says, were made in Kambāya and the towns about it like Sindān (Sanjān in Thana) and Sulārah (Sūpara). He notices that when he visited Kambāya in H. 303 (A.D. 913-14) the city was ruled by a Brāhman of the name of Bara on behalf of the Bahārā lord of Mankir (Malkhet). He states that this Bara was kind to and held friendly discussions with stranger Musalmans and people of other faiths. He gives a pleasing picture of Cambay, on a gulf far broader than the estuaries of the Nile, the Euphrates, or the Tigris whose shores were covered with villages, estates, and gardens wooded and stocked with palm and date groves full of peacocks, parrots and other Indian birds. Between Kambāya and the sea from which this gulf branches was two days' journey. When, says Al Mas'udi, the waters ebb from the gulf stretches of sands come to view. One day I saw a dog on one of these desert-like stretches of sand. The tide began to pour up the gulf and the dog hearing it ran for his life to the shore but the rush was too rapid. The waters overtook and drowned him. Al Mas'udi speaks of an emerald known as the Makkān emerald being carried from Kambāya by Aden to Makkah where it found a market.<sup>4</sup> Ibn Haukal (A.D. 968-996) names Kambāya among the cities of Hind.<sup>5</sup> In his time there were Jāma or assembly mosques in Kambāya, where the precepts of Islām were openly taught. Among the productions of Kambāya he gives mangoes, coconuts, lemons and rice in great plenty and some honey but no date trees.<sup>6</sup> He makes Kambāya four miles (one *farasang*) from the sea and four (that is four days' journey) from Subara apparently Surabāra that is Surat. The distance to Kāmbhal or Anhilwāra by some mistake is shown as four *farasangs* instead of four days' journey.<sup>7</sup> Al Biruni (A.D. 970-1031) places Kambāya within the large country of Gujārāt (120 miles)<sup>8</sup> (30 *farasakhs*) from Dabul (Karachi). He says the men of Kambāya receive tribute from the chiefs of the island of Kis or Kish (probably Kish-Makrūr)<sup>9</sup>. Al Idrisi (A.D. 1100) places Kambāya with other Gujārāt cities, in the second

<sup>1</sup> Elliot's History of India, III. 256-260.

<sup>2</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I. 27.

<sup>3</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I. 30.

<sup>4</sup> Prairies D'Or (Barber DeMeynard's Arabic Text), I. 253-54.

<sup>5</sup> Prairies D'Or (Arabic Text), III. 47.

<sup>6</sup> Ibn Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I. 34.

<sup>7</sup> Ibn Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I. 38.

<sup>8</sup> Ibn Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I. 39.

<sup>9</sup> Rashid-ud-din from Al Biruni in Elliot's History of India, I. 66 and Sachau's Arabic Text, chapter 18 pages 90-102.

<sup>10</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 67.

climate.<sup>1</sup> He says it is a pretty and well known naval station second among the towns of Guprat.<sup>2</sup> It stands at the end of a bay three miles from the sea where vessels can enter and cast anchor. It is well supplied with water and has a fine fortress built by the Government to prevent the inroads of the pirates of Kish (Makran). From Kambāya to the island of Aubkin (Pirum) is two and a half days' sail and from Aubkin to Debal (or Karācht) two days more. The country is fertile in wheat and rice and its mountains yield the bamboo. Its inhabitants are idolaters. In his *Tazjvat-ul-Amsar*, Abdullāh Wassaf in A.D. 1300 (H. 699) writes: "Guprat which is commonly called Kambāyat contains 70,000 villages and towns all populous and the people abounding in wealth and luxuries. In the course of the four seasons seventy different species of beautiful flowers bloom. The purity of the air is so great that the picture of an animal drawn with the pen is hatched. Many plants and herbs grow wild. Even in winter the ground is full of tulips (poppies). The air is healthy, the climate a perpetual spring. The moisture of the dew of itself suffices for the cold season crops. Then comes the summer harvest which is dependent on the rain. The vineyards bring forth blue grapes twice a year."

The trade in horses from the Persian isles and coast and from Katif, Lahsa, Bahrein, and Hormuz was so great that during the reign of Atābak Abu Bakr<sup>3</sup> (A.D. 1151-1189) 10,000 horses worth 2,20,000 *dinārs* (Rs. 1,10,00,000) were imported into Cambay and the ports of Malabār. These enormous sums were not paid out of the government treasuries but from the endowments of Hindu temples and from taxes on the courtiers attached to them. The same author mentions the conquest<sup>4</sup> of Guprat and the plunder of Kambāyat by Malik Mu'izz-ud-dīn (called by Faushlah Ali and by Barni U'luḡh meaning the great Khan.) The *Tārkh-i-Firuz Shah* states that Nasrat Khan and not U'luḡh Khan took and plundered Cambay and notices that in Cambay Nasrat Khan purchased Katur Hazar Dinar (the thousand Dinar Kalūr), the future favourite minister and famous general of Ala-ud-dīn. About fifty years later the hot-headed Muhammad bin Tughlak (A.D. 1325-1351) was in Cambay quelling an insurrection and collecting the arrears of Cambay revenue.<sup>5</sup>

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

Port or Coast  
Towns.  
Cambay

<sup>1</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I., 12.

<sup>2</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I., 81. <sup>3</sup> *Tazjvat-ul-Amsar* in Elliot, III, 32.

<sup>4</sup> Siddh's poem mentioned by him in his Garden of Roses.

<sup>5</sup> The word *dinar* is from the Latin *dennarius* (a silver coin worth 10 oz. of brass) through the Greek *δραχμῶν*. It is a Kuraame word, the ancient Arabic equivalent being *جَلَدٌ مِثْقالٌ*. The *dinar* sequin or ducat varied in value in different times.

In 'Abu Haniffah's (the greatest of the four Sunni Jurisconsults) time (A.D. 749) its value ranged from 10 to 12 dirhams. Then from 20 to 25 dirhams or drachmas. As a weight it represented a drachma and a half. Though generally fluctuating, its value may be assessed at 9s. or 10 francs to half a sovereign. For an elaborate article on the *Dinar* see Yule's Cathay, II, 439, Burton's Ali Lillah, I, 32. The word *Dirham* is used in Arabic in the sense of "silver" (vulg. siller) the Greek *δραχμή* and the drachma of Plautus. This silver piece was 9jd. and as a weight 66½ grains. Sir Henry Elliot does not speak more at length of the *dinar* and the *dirham* than to say (History of India, I, 161) that they were introduced in Sindh in the reign of Abdul Malik (A.D. 685) and Elliot, VIII, 31) that the *dinar* was a Rūm and the *dirham* a Persian coin. The value of the *dinar* in modern Indian currency may be said to be Rs. 4 and that of the *dirham* nearly annas 4.

<sup>6</sup> Wassaf gives the date of this event as A.C. 1298, but the *Tārkh-i-Alāi* of 'Amir Khosrow places it at A.C. 1301. See Elliot's History of India, III, 43 and 74.

<sup>7</sup> Elliot's History of India, III, 256-57.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350  
Port on Coast  
Towns,  
*Cheul.*

**Cheul (Saimūr).** Al Masūdī (A.D. 913) is the first Arab geographer to mention *Saimūr*.<sup>1</sup> He says, "On the coast as in Samūr Subāra and Tāna the *Lōṭīyyah* language is spoken. In describing Saimūr Al Masūdī states<sup>2</sup> that at the time of his visit (A. 304, A.D. 911) the ruler on behalf of the Balhāra was Jhānjha (this is the fifth Shihāra A.D. 916). Nearly ten thousand Musalmāns were settled in Saimūr including some (called Bayāsīrah) born in the land of Arab parents and others from *Sīrāf* and Persian Gulf, Basrah, Baghdad, and other towns. A certain Mūsā bīn Is-hāk was appointed Rāis or ruler by the Balhāra or Valabhi, that is the reigning Rāshtrakūta Indra Nityamvarsha to adjudicate Muhammadan disputes according to Musalmān law and customs. He describes at length the ceremony of self-destruction by a *lesan* youth (a Hindu by religion) to gain a better state in his future life, his scalping himself and putting fire on his head, his cutting out a piece of his heart and sending it to a friend as a souvenir.

Al Istākhrī (A.D. 951) mentions Saimūr as one of the cities of Hind, makes it the southern end of the Balhāra kingdom with Kambhaya as the northern,<sup>3</sup> and places it at a distance of five days from Sindān (the Thāna Sanjan) and fifteen days from Sarandīb or Ceylon.<sup>4</sup> Ibnī Haukal (A.D. 968) notices Saimūr as one of the cities of Hind known to him and mentions the sea of Fars (or the Indian Ocean) as stretching from Saimūr on the east to Tiz or Makran.<sup>5</sup> He states<sup>6</sup> that the country between Saimūr and Tāmhil (Anbulawara) belongs to Hind. He makes<sup>7</sup> the distance between Subāra (probably Surabāra or Swat), Sindān, and Saimūr five days each and between Saimūr and Sarandīb (Ceylon) fifteen days. Al Bīrūnī (A.D. 1020) says:<sup>8</sup> "Then you enter the land of Laran in which is Saimūr also called *Jaimūr* or *Chaimūr*." Al Idriṣī (end of the eleventh century) mentions Saimūr as one of the towns of the second climate.<sup>9</sup> He describes it as large and well-built, five days from Sindān and among its products notes coconut trees in abundance, henna (*Lawsonia inermis*), and on its mountains many aromatic plants.<sup>10</sup> His remark that Saimūr formed a part of the vast, fertile, well-peopled and commercial kingdom of the Balhāras must be taken from the work of Al-Jauharī (A.D. 950).

Al Kazwīnī (A.D. 1236) quoting Misār bin Muḥallil (A.D. 942) describes Saimūr as one of the cities of Hind near the confines of Sind,<sup>11</sup> whose people born of Turkish and Indian parents are very beautiful. It was a flourishing trade centre with a mixed population of Jews, Firewor-

<sup>1</sup> Al Masūdī in Elliot (History of India), I, 24.

<sup>2</sup> Pairsies D'Or, II, 85.

<sup>3</sup> He was called a Hāiram or Hauramah in the language of the country. Al Masūdī's Murūj Arabic Text Cairo Edition, II, 66.

<sup>4</sup> Al Masūdī's Murūj Arabic Text Cairo Edition, II, 66-67.

<sup>5</sup> One born in India of an Arab father and an Indian mother probably from the Gujarati word *ladh-besra* meaning mixed blood. This seems the origin of the Bais Rajpūt. The performer in the case in the text was a Hindu. Al Masūdī (Murūj Arabic Text II, 57 Cairo Edition) says that the singular of Bayāsīrah is Besar.

<sup>6</sup> Al Istākhrī in Elliot (History of India), I, 27.

<sup>7</sup> Al Istākhrī in Elliot (History of India), I, 30.

<sup>8</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 33-34.

<sup>9</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 38.

<sup>10</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I, 38.

<sup>11</sup> Al Bīrūnī Sachau's Arabic Text, 102; Elliot's History of India, I, 39, 66.

<sup>12</sup> Al Idriṣī in Elliot (History of India), I, 77.

<sup>13</sup> Al Idriṣī in Elliot (History of India), I, 77, 8.

<sup>14</sup> Al Kazwīnī in Elliot (History of India), I, 97.

shippers, Christians, and Musalmāns.<sup>1</sup> The merchandise of the Turks (probably of the Indo-Afghan frontier) was conveyed thither and the best of aloes were exported and called *Somāsi* after its name. The temple of Samūr was on an eminence with idols of turquoise and *batiljak* or ruby. In the city were many mosques churches synagogues and fire-temples.

**Dholka** (DULAKA). Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) places Dūlaka and another town he calls Hanāwal that is Chunwal or Junawal perhaps Jhalāwār between Barūh (Broach) and Nahrwāra. He describes Dūlaka as on the banks of a river (the Sābarnatī) which flows into the sea, which forms an estuary or gulf on the west (east) of which stands the town of Barūh. Both these towns, he adds stand at the foot of a chain of mountains which he to the north and which are called *ʿAṭān* apparently Vindhya. The *kana* (bamboo) grows here as well as a few coconut trees.<sup>2</sup>

**Goa** See SINDHUR.

**Gondal** (KONDAL) Zia-ud-din Barni in his *Tārīkh-i-Firuz Shāhi* states<sup>3</sup> that Sultan Muhammad Tughlak spent (A.D. 1349) his third rainy season in Gujarat in Kōṇḍal (Gondal). Here the Sultan assembled his forces before starting on his fatal march to Sindh.

**Kachh**. Al Birūnī (A.D. 970-1031) is the only Arab writer who refers to Kachh. He calls Kachh<sup>4</sup> with Somnath the head-quarters of the country of the Bawārij or Medh prafes. Speaking of the Indus he notices<sup>5</sup> that one of its branches which reaches the borders of Kachh is known as Sind Sāgar. In a third passage he refers<sup>6</sup> to Kachh as the land of the *mukl* or balsamodendron and of *bādrūd* or bezoar. It was twenty-four miles (6 *farsangs*) from Debal (Karāchi). According to the *Tārīkh-i-Maāsūmī*<sup>7</sup> when (A.D. 1069) the sovereignty of Sindh passed from the descendants of Mahmūd of Ghazni to the Sumras, Singhar, the grandson of Sumra (A.D. 1069)<sup>8</sup> extended his sway from Kachh to Nasarpūr<sup>9</sup> near Sindh. Handarābād and Khafif the son of Singhar consolidated his power and made Kachh a Sumra dependency.<sup>10</sup> Dūda the grandson of Khafif quelled a threatened Sumra rising by proceeding to Kachh and chastising the Sammas.<sup>11</sup> On the fall of the Sumras the Chāuras became masters of Kachh from whose hands the country passed to those of the Sammas. Ground down under the iron sway of the Sumras a number of Sammas fled from Sindh and entered Kachh where they were kindly received by the Chāuras who gave them land to cultivate. After acquainting themselves with the country and the resources of its rulers the Samma immigrants who seem to have increased in numbers and strengthened themselves by union, obtained possession by stratagem but not without heroism of the chief fortress of Kachh.<sup>12</sup> This fort now in ruins

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

Chief Towns,  
*Dholka.*

*Gion,*  
*Gondal.*

Capitals,  
*Kachh.*

<sup>1</sup> Though Al Kazwini wrote in the thirteenth century, he derives his information of India from Misar bin Muhalhil, who visited India about A.D. 912. Elliot (History of India), I. 94.

<sup>2</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 87.

<sup>3</sup> *Tārīkh-i-Firuz Shāhi* by Zia Barni (Elliot's History of India), III. 264-65.

<sup>4</sup> Rashid-ud-din (A.D. 1310) from Al Biruni in Elliot's History of India, I. 65.

<sup>5</sup> Rashid-ud-din (A.D. 1310) from Al Biruni in Elliot's History of India, I. 49.

<sup>6</sup> Rashid-ud-din (A.D. 1310) from Al Biruni in Elliot's History of India, I. 66.

<sup>7</sup> Written A.D. 1600 (Elliot, I. 213).

<sup>8</sup> *Tārīkh-i-Maāsūmī* in Elliot, I. 16.

<sup>9</sup> *Tuhfatul Kirām* in Elliot, I. 344.

<sup>10</sup> *Tārīkh-i-Maāsūmī* in Elliot, I. 217.

<sup>11</sup> *Tārīkh-i-Maāsūmī* in Elliot, I. 218.

<sup>12</sup> *Tārīkh-i-Tahiri* (Elliot's History of India), I. 267-68.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.

Capitals.

*Kasra.*

Other Towns.

*Kabirūn.*

*Kambay.*

*Kanauj.*

was the fort of Gūnti.<sup>1</sup> The *Tārīkh-i-Tahiri* states that up to the time the history was written (A.D. 1621)<sup>2</sup> the country was in the possession of the Sammas, both the Rais of Bhāra and Jām Sīhta of great and little Ka'bh in his time being of Samma descent.

**Kaira (KARRA).** One mention of Kaira apparently Kaira or Kheda occurs in Ziauddin Barni's account of Muhammad Tughlak's (A.D. 1325) pursuit of his rebellious Chajarat noble Taghi. He speaks of Muhammad's detention for a month at Asawal during the rains and his overtaking and dispersing Taghi's forces at Karra. From Karra the rebels fled in disorder to Nahwāra (Auhilwāra). Several of Taghi's supporters sought and were refused shelter by the Rāna of Mandal that is Patna near Varanigan.

**Ka'birūn** Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) mentions Kābirūn and Asawal as towns of the same 'section' both of them populous, commercial, rich, and producing useful articles. He adds that at the time he wrote the Musalmāns had made their way into the greater portion of these countries and conquered them. Kābirūn like the Akabaron of the *Periplus* (A.D. 210) is perhaps a town on the Kāveri river in south Gujarāt.

**Kambay** See CAMBAY.

**Kanauj** Al Masūdi<sup>3</sup> (A.D. 956) is the first Arab traveller who gives an account of Kanauj. He says<sup>4</sup> "The kingdom of the Banura king of Kanauj extends about a hundred and twenty square *parasangs* of Sindh, each *parasang* being equal to eight miles of this country." This king has four armies according to the four quarters of the world. Each of them numbers 700,000 or 900,000. The army of the north wars against the prince of Multan and with his Musalmān subjects on the frontier. The army of the south fights against the Bahāra king of Mankur. The other two armies march to meet enemies in every direction. Ibnī Haukal (A.D. 968-976) says<sup>5</sup> that from the sea of Fars to the country of Kanauj is three months' journey. Rashid-ad-dīn from Al Bīrūn (c. 970-1039) places<sup>6</sup> Kanauj south of the Himālayās and states<sup>7</sup> that the Jamna falls into the Ganga below Kanauj which is situated on the west of the river (Ganga). The chief portion of Hind included in the "second climate" is called the central land or Madhya Desh. He adds that the Persians call it Kanauj. It was the capital of the great, haughty, and proud despots of India. He praises the former magnificence of Kanauj, which he says being now deserted by its ruler has fallen into neglect and ruin, and the city of Bāra, three days' journey from Kanauj on the eastern

<sup>1</sup> Journal Asiatic Society of Bengal for February 1838, 102.

<sup>2</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 268.

<sup>3</sup> *Tārīkh-i-Firūz Shāh* in Elliot, II, 260.

<sup>4</sup> In his Arabic Text of the *Murūj* (Præfates D'Or, Cairo Edition) Al Masūdi writes the name of the Kanauj king as Farwarah. (If the *P* stands for *P* and the *n* for *m*, as is quite possible in Arab writing, then this can be *Farwārah* the Arab plural for *Farwar*.) At volume I, page 240 the word *Farwarah* is twice used. Once, "And the king of Kanauj, of the kings of Sindh (India) is *Farwarah*." Again at the same page (210): "And *Farwarah* he who is king of Kanauj is opposed to Bahāra." Then at page 241: "*Farwarah* is again used in the beginning of the account quoted by Elliot in I. 23.

<sup>5</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 23. In the Cairo Edition of the Arabic Text of Al Masūdi's *Murūj* (Præfates D'Or) vol. I, page 241 is the original of this account.

<sup>6</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 33.

<sup>7</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 49.

<sup>7</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 45.

side of the Ganges being now the capital. Kananj was celebrated for its descendants of the Pándiyas as Mahura (Mathura) is on account of Bās Dev (Kṛṣṇa). Al Idrīsī, end of the eleventh century, speaks<sup>1</sup> of Kananj in connection with a river port town of the name of Samandar "a large town, commercial and rich, where there are large profits to be made and which is dependent" on the rule of the Kananj king Samandar, he says, stands on a river coming from Kashmir. To the north of Samandar at seven days is, he says, the city of Inner Kashmir under the rule of Kananj. The Chāch Nāmā (an Arabic history of great antiquity written before A.D. 753, translated into Persian in the time of Sultan Nāsiruddīn Kabāchah) (A.D. 1216) says<sup>2</sup> that when Chāch (A.D. 631-670) advanced against Akhūn Lohāna of Brahmanabad that the Lohāna wrote to ask the help of "the king of Hindustan," that is Kananj, at that time Sūkān son of Kāsāl, but that Akhūn died before his answer came.

Kol. Ibn Khurḍādhah (A.D. 912) has Kol seventy-two miles (18 *farsakhs*) from Sanjān in Kāghh.<sup>3</sup> And the Taj-ul-Maasir<sup>4</sup> relates how in A.D. 1194 Kutubuddīn advanced to Kol and took the fort.

Mālkhēt (Mānkīr). Al Masūdī (A.D. 943) is the first Arab writer to mention Mānkīr that is Mānyakheta now Mālkhēt about sixty miles south-east of Sholāpūr. In relating the extinction of the great Brāhma-ḥara dynasty of India Al Masūdī states<sup>5</sup> that at the time the city of Mānkīr, the great centre of India, submitted to the kings called the *Balhāras* who in his time were still ruling at Mānkīr.<sup>6</sup>

Al Masūdī correctly describes the position of Mālkhēt as eighty Sindh or eight-mile *farsakhs* that is six hundred and forty miles from the sea in a mountainous country. Again he notices that the language spoken in Mānkīr was Kūṣya,<sup>7</sup> called from Kārah or Kanara the district where it was spoken. The current coin was the *Tārtariyyah dirham* (each weighing a diḥam and a half) on which was impressed the date of the ruler's reign. He describes the country of the Balhāras as stretching from the Kanḥar (or Koukan) in the south or south-west north to the frontiers of the king of Juzr (Gujarat), "a monarch rich in man horses and camels." Al Istakhri (A.D. 951) describes Mānkīr as the dwelling of the wide-ruling Balhāra. Ibn Haukal (A.D. 968-976) repeats almost to the letter the information given by Al Istakhri. The destruction of Mālkhēt (Mānya Kheta) by the western Chālukya king Tarlappa in A.D. 972 explains why none of the writers after Ibn Haukal mentions Mānkīr.

<sup>1</sup> *Idrisi*, I. 30.

<sup>2</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 147.

<sup>3</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 15.

<sup>4</sup> Taj-ul-Maasir in Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, II. 222. "After staying some time at Dighi Jū (Kutub-din) marched in A.D. 1194 (in 590) towards Kol and Banaras passing the Jūma which from its exceeding purity resembled a mirror." It would seem to place Kol near Banaras.

<sup>5</sup> Al Masūdī's Prairies D'Or (Arabic Text), I. 162.

<sup>6</sup> Al Masūdī in Elliot (History of India), I. 19, 20, 21 and Prairies D'Or, I. 178.

<sup>7</sup> Al Masūdī Arabic Text Prairies D'Or, (I. 381); Al Masūdī in Elliot (History of India), I. 21.

<sup>8</sup> That is an Arab dirhem and a half. Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I. 27. These *Tārtariyya* dirhems are mentioned by almost all Arab writers. Al Idrīsī says they were current in Mansurah in Sindh and in the Malay archipelago. See Elliot, I. 3 note 4. According to *Sulaimān* (A.C. 851) the *Tartariya* dirham weighed "a dirhem and a half of the coinage of the king." Elliot, I. 3. Al Masūdī (Prairies D'Or, I. 382) calls these "*Tārtariyyah*" dirhams, giving them the same weight as that given by *Sulaimān* to the *Tartariyyah* dirhams. *Ibn Haukal* calls it the *Titari* dirhem and makes its weight equal to "a dirham and a third" (Elliot, I. 85).

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.  
Chief Towns,  
Kananj.

Kol.

Mālkhēt.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 561 - 1350,  
Chief Towns.

*Nārāna.*

**Ma'ndal.** Ibnī Khurādābah (A.D. 912) enumerates Māndal (in Viramgūn) with Rūmlah,<sup>1</sup> Kulk, and Bārūh as countries of Sindh. During the Khilafat of Hishām the son of Abdul Malik (A.D. 724-743) Junnaid son of Abdul Rahman-al-Murri was appointed to the frontier of Sindh. According to Al Bilāduri (A.D. 892) Junnaid sent his officers to Māndal,<sup>2</sup> Dahmaj perhaps Karleji, and Bāhrūs (Brouch).

**Na'ra'na.** In his *Indica* Al Biruni (A.D. 970-1031) notices Nārāna near Jampur as the ancient capital of Gujarāt. He says that its correct name is Bazānah but that "it is known to our people (the Arabs) as Nārāin." He places it eighty miles (20 *farsakhs*) south-west of Kanauj, and adds that when it was destroyed the inhabitants removed to and founded another city.<sup>3</sup> Abū Rihān makes Nārāna the starting point of three itineraries to the south the south-west and the west. Al Biruni's details suffice to place this centre in the neighbourhood of the modern Jampur and to identify it with Nārāyan the capital of Bairat of Matsya which according to Farishtah<sup>4</sup> Mahmūd of Ghazni took in A.D. 1022 (H. 412).

*Rānder.*

**Rānder** (RĀHANJĀR OR RAHANJĀR). Al Biruni (A.D. 1031) gives<sup>5</sup> Rāhanjūr and Bāhrūj (Brouch) as the capitals of Lar Dosh or south Gujjarāt. Elliot (Note 3, I. 61) writes the word Damañhūr or Dahanhūr but the reading given by Sachau in his Arabic text of Al Biruni (page 100 chapter 18) is plainly Rahanjūr (رحانجور) and the place intended is without doubt Rānder on the right bank of the Tāpti opposite Surat. In his list of Indian towns Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) seems to refer<sup>6</sup> to it under the forms Jandūr and Sandūr.

*Sanjān.*

**Sanjān** (SINDĀN). The two Sanjāns, one in Kachh the other in Thāna, complicate the references to Sindān. Sindān in Kachh was one of the earliest gains of Islām in India. Al Bilāduri<sup>7</sup> (A.D. 892) speaks of Fazl, the son of Māhan, in the reign of the greatest of the Abbāsi Khalifās Al-Māmūn (A.D. 813-833), taking Sindān and sending Al Māmūn the rare present of "an elephant and the longest and largest *sa'j* or turban or teak spar ever seen." Fazl built an assembly mosque that was spared by the Hindus on their recapture of the town. Ibn Khurādābah (A.D. 912) includes thus Kachh Sindān with Brouch and other places in Gujarāt among the cities of Sindh. In his itinerary starting from Bakkar, he places Sindān seventy-two miles<sup>8</sup> (18 *farsakhs*) from Kol. Al Masūdī (A.D. 915-911) states that Indian emeralds from (the Kachh) Sindān and the neighbourhood of Kambāyat (Cambay) approached those of the first water in the intensity of their green and in brilliance. As they found a market in Makkah they were called Makkah emeralds.<sup>9</sup> Al Istakhri (A.D. 951) under cities of Hind places the Konkani Sindān five days from *Surabāya* (Surabāra or Surat) and as many from *Saramīr*<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Kumlah is *sauma* salt land. There is a Rum near Karūr about sixty miles south-east of Multān. Al Idrisi (A.D. 1135) has a Rūmlah three days from Kullata the salt range. Elliot, I. 92.

<sup>2</sup> Probably Okhāmāndal. See Appendix vol. I. page 390 Elliot's History of India.

<sup>3</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text of Al Biruni's *Indica*, 99.

<sup>4</sup> Persian Text Bombay Edition of 1832, I. 53.

<sup>5</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text of Al Biruni, 100.

<sup>6</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 84.

<sup>7</sup> Al Bilāduri in Elliot (History of India), I. 120. The word *sa'j* in the Arabic text means besides a teak-spar (which seems to be an improbable present to be sent to a Khalifāh), a large black or green turban or sa'h.

<sup>8</sup> Ibn Khurādābah in Elliot (History of India), I. 14 and 15.

<sup>9</sup> De Meynard's Arabic Text of Les Pharies D'Or, III. 47-48.

<sup>10</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I. 27 and 30.

(Chewal). Ibnī Haukal (A.D. 968) mentions (the Kachh) Sindān among the cities of Hind, which have a large Musalmān population and a Jāma Masjid<sup>1</sup> or assembly mosque. Al Birūni (A.D. 970-1031)<sup>2</sup> in his itinerary from Debal in Sindh places the Kokan 200 miles (50 *farsakhs*) from that port and between Broach and Supara. At the end of the eleventh century probably the Kachh Sindān was a large commercial town rich both in exports and imports with an intelligent and warlike, industrious, and rich population. Al Idṛisi gives the situation of the Konkān Sindān as a mile and a half from the sea and five days from Sumūr (Cheval)<sup>3</sup>. Apparently Abul Fida<sup>4</sup> (A.D. 1324) confused Sindān with Sindābūr or Goa which Ibnī Batūta (A.D. 1310) rightly describes as an island<sup>5</sup>.

**Sinda'bu'r or Sinda'pu'r.** Al Masūdi (A.D. 943) places *Sindāpūr* he writes it Sindābūra or Goa in the country of the Baghara (Bāhāra) in India.<sup>6</sup> Al Birūni (A.D. 1021) places Sindāpūr or Sindābūr that is Goa as the first of coast towns in Malabār the next being Bāknūr.<sup>7</sup> Al Idṛisi (end of the eleventh century) describes Sindābūr as a commercial town with fine buildings and rich bazars in a great gulf where ships cast anchor, four days along the coast from Thāna.

**Somnāth.** Al Birūni (A.D. 970-1031) is the first of the Arab writers to notice Somnāth. He calls Somnāth and Kachh the capital of the Bawārij pirates who commit their depredations in boats called *būra*.<sup>8</sup> He places Somnāth (14 *farsakhs*) fifty-six miles from Debal or Kurāchi 200 miles (50 *farsakhs*) from Anhilwara and 180 miles (60 *yajnas*) from Broach. He notes that the river Sarsūt falls into the sea an arrow-shot from the town. He speaks of Somnāth as an important place of Hindu worship and as a centre of pilgrimage from all parts of India. He tells of votaries and pilgrims performing the last stage of their journey crawling on their sides or on their ankles, never touching the sacred ground with the soles of their feet even progressing on their heads.<sup>9</sup> Al Birūni gives<sup>10</sup> the legendary origin of the Somnāth idol how the moon loved the daughters of Prajāpati, how his surpassing love for one of them the fair Rohini kindled the jealousy of her slighted sisters, how their angry sire punished the partiality of the moon by pronouncing a curse which caused the pallor of leprosy to overspread his face, how the penitent moon sued for forgiveness to the saint and how the saint unable to recall his curse showed him the way of salvation by the worship of the *Lingam*, how he set up and called the Moon-Lord a stone which<sup>11</sup> for ages had lain on the sea shore less than three miles to the west of the mouth of the Sarasvati, and to the east of the site of the golden castle of *Bārici* (Verāval) the residence of the sage and near the scene of his death and of the destruction of his people the Yādavas. The waxing and the waning of the moon caused the flood that hid the *Lingam* and the ebb that showed it and proved that the Moon was its servant who bathed it regularly. Al Birūni notices<sup>12</sup> that in his time the castellated walls and other fortifications round the temple were not more than a hundred

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1360.

Port or  
Coast Towns.  
*Sindabur* or  
*Sindapur*.

*Somnāth*.

<sup>1</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I. 34 and 38.

<sup>2</sup> Al Birūni in Elliot, I. 66.

<sup>3</sup> Al Idṛisi in Elliot, I. 77-85.

<sup>4</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 403 Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> Lee's Ibnī Batūta, 160.

<sup>6</sup> Al Masūdi in Elliot (History of India), I. 21.

<sup>7</sup> Rashid-ud-dīn from Al Birūni in Elliot, I. 68.

<sup>8</sup> Al Idṛisi in Elliot, I. 89.

<sup>9</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 65; Sachau's Arabic Text of Al Birūni, 102.

<sup>10</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 67.

<sup>11</sup> Sachau's Text of Al Birūni, 253.

<sup>12</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text, 253.

<sup>13</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text, 253 chapter 58.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES  
A.D. 851 - 1350.  
Port of  
East Towns,  
Somnath.

years old. Al Birûni represents the upper part of the *Lingam* as hung with massive and jewelled gold chains. These chains together with the upper half of the idol were, he observes, carried away by the Emir Mahmûd to Ghazna, where a part of the idol was used to form one of the steps of the Assembly Mosque and the other part was left to lie with *Chakra Sudam*, the Thâncsar idol, in the *maïda'n* or hippodrome of Mahmûd's capital. Somnath, says Al Birûni,<sup>2</sup> was the greatest of the *Lingams* worshipped in India where in the countries to the south-west of Sindh the worship of these emblems abounds. A jar of Ganges water and a basket of Kashmir flowers were brought daily to Somnath. Its worshippers believed the stone to possess the power of curing all diseases, and the mariners and the wanderers over the deep between Sofâlâ and China addressed their prayers to it as their patron deity.<sup>3</sup> Ibnî Asîr (A.D. 1121) gives a detailed account of the temple of Somnath and its ancient grandeur. He says Somnath was the greatest of all the idols of Hind. Pilgrims by the hundred thousand met at the temple especially at the times of eclipses and believed that the ebb and flow of the tide was the homage paid by the sea to the god. Everything of the most precious was brought to Somnath and the temple was endowed with more than 10,000 villages. Jewels of incalculable value were stored in the temple and to wash the idol water from the sacred stream of the Ganga was brought every day over a distance of two hundred *farsangs* (1200 miles). A thousand Brâhmans were on duty every day in the temple, three hundred and fifty singers and dancers performed before the image, and three hundred barbers shaved the pilgrims who intended to pay their devotions at the shrine. Every one of these servants had a settled allowance. The temple of Somnath was built upon fifty pillars of teakwood covered with lead. The idol, which did not appear to be sculptured,<sup>4</sup> stood three cubits out of the ground and had a girth of three cubits. The idol was by itself in a dark chamber lighted by most exquisitely jewelled chandeliers. Near the idol was a chain of gold to which bells were hung weighing 200 *mans*. The chain was shaken at certain intervals during the night that the bells might rouse fresh parties of worshipping Brâhmans. The treasury containing many gold and silver idols, with doors hung with curtains set with valuable jewels, was near the chamber of the idol. The worth of what was found in the temple exceeded two millions of *dinârs* (Rs. 1,00,00,000). According to Ibnî Asîr Mahmûd reached Somnath on a Thursday in the middle of *Zilhâdda* H. 414 (A.D. December 1023). On the approach of Mahmûd Bhîm the ruler of Anhilvâd fled abandoning his capital and took refuge in a fort to prepare for war. From Anhilvâd Mahmûd started for Somnath taking several forts with images which, Ibnî Asîr says, were the heralds

<sup>1</sup> It appears that at the time of his expedition to Somnath Mahmûd had not adopted the title of Sultân.

<sup>2</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text, 253 chapter 58.

<sup>3</sup> Sachau's Text, 253 chapter 58.

<sup>4</sup> The *Târikh-i-Kamil*, Ibnî Asîr (A.D. 1160 - 1232) is a voluminous and reliable historian. Ibnî Khalikân, the author of the famous biographical dictionary, knew and respected Asîr always alluding to him as "our Sheikh." See Elliot, II, 245.

<sup>5</sup> From the term 'sculptured' it would seem the idol was of stone. It is curious how Ibnî Asîr states a little further that a part of the idol was "burned by Mehmûd." See Elliot, II, 471. The *Târikh-i-Alf* says (Elliot, II, 471) that the idol was cut of solid stone. It however represents it as hollow and containing jewels, in repeating the somewhat hackneyed words of Mahmûd when breaking the idol regardless of the handsome offer of the Brâhmans, and finding it full of jewels.

or chamberlains of Somnāth. Resuming his march he crossed a desert with little water. Here he was encountered by an army of 20,000 fighting men under chiefs who had determined not to submit to the invader. These forces were defeated and put to flight by a detachment sent against them by Mahmūd. Mahmūd himself marched to Dabālvārah a place said by Ibni Asir to be two days journey from Somnāth. When he reached Somnāth Mahmūd beheld a strong fortress whose base was washed by the waves of the sea. The assault began on the next day Friday. During nearly two days of hard fighting the invaders seemed doomed to defeat. On the third the Musalmāns drove the Hindus from the town to the temple. A terrible carnage took place at the temple-gate. Those of the defenders that survived took themselves to the sea in boats but were overtaken and some slain and the rest drowned.<sup>1</sup>

**Supāra** (SUBĀRĪ, SUFĀRA, OR SUBĪRĀH.)—The references to Subārā are doubtful as some seem to belong to Surubāra the Tāpti mouth and others to Sopāra six miles north of Basscin. The first Arab reference to Subārā belongs to Sopāra. Al Masūdi's (A.D. 915)<sup>2</sup> reference is that in *Saimār* (Cheval), *Subāra* (Sopāra), and *Tāna* (Thāna) the people speak the Iārīyāh language, so called from the sea which washes the coast. On this coast Al Istakhri (A.D. 951)<sup>3</sup> refers to *Subāra* that is apparently to Surubāra or Surat a city of Hind, four days from Kambāyah (Cambay).<sup>4</sup>

Ibni Haukal (A.D. 968-976) mentions *Surubārah* apparently the Tāpti mouth or Surat as one of the cities of Hind four *farsakhs*, correctly days, from *Kambāyah*, and two miles (half *farsakh*) from the sea. From *Surubāra* to *Sinlīn* perhaps the Kachh Sanjān, he makes ten days. Al Birūni (A.D. 970-1031) makes *Subāra* perhaps the Thāna Sopāra six days' journey from *Debal*<sup>5</sup> (perhaps Diu). Al Idrisi (A.D. 1100) mentions Subārā apparently Sopāra as a town in the second climate, a mile and a half from the sea and five days (an excessive allowance) from Sindan. It was a populous busy town, one of the entrepôts of India and a pearl fishery. Near *Subāra* he places Bāra, a small island with a growth of cactas and coconut trees.<sup>6</sup>

**Sura'bara** See SUPĀRA

**Thāna** (TĀNA).—That Thāna was known to the Arabs in pre-Islām times is shown by one of the first Musalmān expeditions to the coast of India being directed against it. As early as the reign of the second Khalifah Umar Ibnul Khattāb (A.D. 634-643; II.13-23) mention is made<sup>7</sup> of Usman, Umar's governor of Um'ān (the Persian Gulf) and Bahrein,

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.  
Port or  
Coast Towns.  
*Somnāth*.

*Supāra*

*Surubāra*,  
Capitals.  
*Thāna*.

<sup>1</sup> The *Rauzat-us-Safa* (Lithogl. Edition, IV. 48) speaks of Mahmūd's project of making Somnāth his capital and not Anhilwāra as stated by Farishtah (I. 57, Original Persian Text). The *Rauzat-us-Safa* says that when Mahmūd had conquered Somnāth he wished to fix his residence there for some years as the country was very large and had a great many advantages including mines of pure gold and rubies brought from Sarandīb or Ceylon which he represents as a dependency of Gujārāt. At last he yielded to his minister's advice and agreed to return to Khurāsān.

<sup>2</sup> *Prairies D'Or* (DeMeynard's Arabic Text, I. 381; also Al Masūdi in Elliot (History of India, I. 24). <sup>3</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I. 27.

<sup>4</sup> Al Istakhri in Elliot (History of India), I. 30.

<sup>5</sup> Ibni Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I. 31, 39.

<sup>6</sup> Thus in Sachau's Arabic Text page 102, but Elliot (I. 66) spells the word Sufara in his translation. It might have assumed that form in coming from the Arabic through Rashid-ud-dīn's Persian version from which Sir Henry Elliot derives his account.

<sup>7</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 77 and 85.

<sup>8</sup> Al Bilazuri in Elliot, I. 116.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

Capitals,  
Thana.

Valla or  
Valabhi.

sending a successful expedition against Thana. Al Masûdi (A.D. 943) refers to Thana on the shore of the Larwi sea or Indian Ocean, as one of the coast towns in which the Larwi language is spoken.<sup>1</sup> Al Birûni (A.D. 970-1031) gives<sup>2</sup> the distance from *Mahrat Desh* (the Maratha country) to the Konkan "with its capital Thana on the sea-shore" as 100 miles (25 *farsakhs*) and locates the *Lar Derh* (south Gujarati) capitals of *Bihûj* and *Rahanjur* (Branch and Rander) to the east of Thana. He places Thana with Somnâth Konkan and Kambâya in Gujarât and notices that from Thana the Lar country begins. Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) describes<sup>3</sup> Thana as a pretty town upon a great gulf where vessels anchor and from where they set sail. He gives the distance from Sindapur (or Goa) to Thana as four days' sail. From the neighbourhood of Thana he says the *kand* or bamboo and the *tabashir* or bamboo pith are transported to the east and west.<sup>4</sup>

**Barâda (PORBANDAR).**—Of the Arab attacks on the great sea-port Valla or Valabhi, twenty miles west of Bhavnagar, during the eighth and ninth centuries details are given Above pages 94-96. The manner of writing the name of the city attacked leaves it doubtful whether Balaba that is Valabhi or Barada near Porbandar is meant. But the importance of the town destroyed and the agreement in dates with other accounts leaves little doubt that the reference is to Valabhi.<sup>5</sup>

In the fourth year of his reign about A.D. 758 the Khalifah Ja'far-al-Mansûr (A.D. 754-775) the second ruler of the house of Abbas appointed Hishâm governor of Sindh. Hishâm despatched a fleet to the coast of Baradah, which may generally be read Balabha, under the command of Amru bin Jamal Taghlabi Tabari (A.D. 838-932) and Ibn Asir (A.D. 1160-1232)<sup>6</sup> state that another expedition was sent to this coast in A.H. 160 (A.D. 776) in which though the Arabs succeeded in taking the town, disease thinned the ranks of the party stationed to garrison the port, a thousand of them died, and the remaining troops while returning to their country were shipwrecked on the coast of Persia. Thus he adds deterred

<sup>1</sup> Babier DeMeynard's Text of Masûdi's *Præfatus D'Or*, I. 330 and 381.

<sup>2</sup> Sachau's Arabic Text of Al Birûni, chapters 14, 99, 102 and Elliot's History of India, I. 60-61, 66-67.

<sup>3</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot, I. 49.

<sup>4</sup> Al Idrisi says the real *tabashir* is extracted from the root of the reed called *sharkî*. *Sharkî* is Gujarati for reed. It is generally applied to the reed-growing on river banks used by the poor for thatching their cottages. *Tabashir* is a drug obtained from the pith of the bamboo and prescribed by Indian physicians as a cooling drink good for fever.

<sup>5</sup> The name *Barâdah* بارده in Arabic orthography bears a close resemblance to باربه *Barâbah*, بارله *Bârlabab*, بارله *Barlabah*, all three being the forms or nearly the

forms in which the word ولله *Walabah* or وللى *Walabi* would be written by an Arab, supposing the diacritical points to be, as they often are, omitted. Besides as *Barâdah* the word has been read and miswritten بارند *Narand* or *Barand* and بارند *Bêrand* or *Barid*. In the *shikastah* or broken hand *Nêrand* or *Bêrand* بارند would closely resemble بارله *Bârlabab* or *Baradah* بارده. Al Bilazuri in Elliot's History of India I. 127, writes the word *Nêrand* or *Bêrand*. Sir Henry Elliot (History, I. 444) reads the word *Barada* and would identify the place with the Barda hills inland from Porbandar in south-west Kâthiâval. The objection to this is that the word used by the Arab writers was the name of a town as well as of a coast tract, while the name of Barda is applied solely to a range of hills. On the other hand Balaba the coast and town meets all requirements.<sup>6</sup> Reigned A.D. 754-775.

<sup>7</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, II. 246 and Frag. Arabes 3, 120, 212; Welî's Geschichte der Chalifen, II. 115.

Al Mahdī<sup>1</sup> (A.D. 775-785) the succeeding Khalīfah from extending the eastern limits of his empire. Besides against Balāba the Sindhī Arabs sent a fleet against Kandhar apparently, though somewhat doubtfully,<sup>2</sup> the town of that name to the north of Kōach where they destroyed a temple or *budd* and built a mosque. Al Bīrūnī<sup>3</sup> (A.D. 1030) writing of the Valabhi era describes the city of Balābah دبلر as nearly thirty *jauzhan* (*yojanas*) that is ninety miles to the south of Anhilvāra. In another passage<sup>4</sup> he describes how the Banīa Rānka sued for and obtained the aid of an Arab fleet from the Arab lord of Mansūrah (built A.D. 750) for the destruction of Balāba. A land grant by a Valabhi chief remains as late as A.D. 766. For this reason and as the invaders of that expedition fled panic-struck by sickness Valabhi seems to have continued as a place of consequence if the expedition of A.D. 830 against Balā king of the east refers to the final attack on Valabhi an identification which is supported by a Jain authority which places the final overthrow of Valabhi at 888 Samvat that is A.D. 830.\*

Of the rulers of Gujarāt between A.D. 850 and A.D. 1250 the only dynasty which impeded the Arabs was the Ballhāras of Mānkīr or Manyakheta (A.D. 630-972) sixty miles south-east of Sholāpūr. From about A.D. 736 to about A.D. 978, at first through a more or less independent local branch and afterwards (A.D. 911) direct the Rāshtrakūtas continued overlords of most of Gujarāt. The Arabs knew the Rāshtrakūtas by their title *Vallabha* or Beloved in the case of Govind III. (A.D. 803-811), Prithvivallabha Beloved by the Earth, and of his successor the long beloved Amoghavarsha Vallabhaskanda, the Beloved of Siva. Al Masūdī (A.D. 915-941) said: Balārā is a name which he who follows takes. So entirely did the Arabs believe in the overlordship of the Rāshtrakūtas in Gujarāt that Al Idrīsī (A.D. 1100, but probably quoting Al Jahhaz A.D. 950) describes Nehrwalla as the capital of the Ballhāras. Until Dr. Bhāndārkar discovered its origin in Vallabha, the case with which meanings could be tortured out of the word and in Gujarāt its apparent connection with the Valabhi kings (A.D. 509-770) made the word Balārā a cause of matchless confusion.

The merchant Sulamān (A.D. 851) ranks the Ballhāra, the lord of Mānkīr, as the fourth of the great rulers of the world. Every prince in India even in his own land paid him homage. He was the owner of many elephants and of great wealth. He refrained from wine and paid his troops and servants regularly. Their favour to Arabs was famous. Abu Zaid<sup>6</sup> (A.D. 913) says that though the Indian kings acknowledge the supremacy of no one, yet the Ballhāras or Rāshtrakūtas by virtue of the title Ballhāra are kings of kings. Ibn Khurdādhah (A.D. 912) describes the Ballhāras as the greatest of Indian kings being as the name imports the king of kings. Al Masūdī (A.D. 915) described Ballhāra as a dynastic name which he who followed took. Though he introduces two other potentates the king of Jurz and the Baūra or Parmār king of Kanauj fighting with each other and with the Ballhāra he makes the Ballhāra, the lord of the Mānkīr or the great centre, the greatest king

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1360.  
Capitals.  
Villā or  
Valabhi.

Kings.

<sup>1</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 444.

<sup>2</sup> Sir Henry Elliot (History of India, I. 145) identifies Kandhar with Kandadār in north-west Kāthiawad.

<sup>3</sup> Sachau's Original Text, 205.

<sup>4</sup> Sachau's Original Text, 17-91.

<sup>5</sup> Details Above in Dr. Bhagvanlal's History, 96 note 3.

<sup>6</sup> Elliot's History of India, I. 7.

## Appendix V:

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851 - 1350.  
Kings.

of India<sup>1</sup> to whom the kings of India bow in their prayers and whose emissaries they honour. He notices that the Balhára favours and honours Musalmáns and allows them to have mosques and assembly mosques. When Al Masúdi was in Cambay the town was ruled by Báma, the deputy of the Balhára. Al Istakhri (A.D. 951) describes the land from Kanbayah to Samúr (Cheul) as the land of the Balhára of Mánkir. In the Konkan were many Musalmáns over whom the Balhára appointed no one but a Musalmán to rule. Ihni Haukal (A.D. 970) describes the Balhára as holding sway over a land in which are several Indian kings.<sup>2</sup> Al Idrisi (A.D. 1100) but quoting Al Jauharí A.D. 950) agrees with Ihni Khurdáqbah that Balhára is a title meaning King of Kings. He says the title is hereditary in this country, where when a king ascends the throne he takes the name of his predecessor and transmits it to his heirs.<sup>3</sup>

## Condition.

That the Arabs found the Ráshtrakútas kind and liberal rulers there is ample evidence. In their territories property was secure,<sup>4</sup> theft or robbery was unknown, commerce was encouraged, foreigners were treated with consideration and respect. The Arabs especially were honoured not only with a marked and delicate regard, but magistrates from among themselves were appointed to adjudicate their disputes according to the Musalmán law.

The  
Gurjara.

The ruler next in importance to the Balhára was the Jurz that is the Gurjara king. It is remarkable, though natural, that the Arabs should preserve the true name of the rulers of Auhilvaḍa which the three tribe or dynastic names Chápa or Chaura (A.D. 720-956), Solanki or Canlukya (A.D. 961-1242), and Vághela (A.D. 1240-1290) should so long have concealed. Sulaimán (A.D. 851) notices that the Jurz king hated Musalmáns while the Balhára king loved Musalmáns. He may not have known what excellent reasons the Gurjaras had for hating the Arab raiders from sea and from Sindh. Nor would it strike him that the main reason why the Balhára fostered the Moslem was the hope of Arab help in his struggles with the Gurjaras.

## Jurz.

According to the merchant Sulaimán<sup>5</sup> (A.D. 851) the kingdom next after the Balhára's was that of Jurz the Gurjara king whose territories "consisted of a tongue of land." The king of Jurz maintained a large force his cavalry was the best in India. He was unfriendly to the Arabs. His territories were very rich and abounded in horses and camels. In his realms exchanges were carried on in silver and gold dust of which metals mines were said to be worked.

The king of Jurz was at war with the Balháras as well as with the neighbouring kingdom of Tápak or the Panjab. The details given under Bhínmal page 168 show that Sulaimán's tongue of land, by which he apparently meant either Káthiavád or Gujarát was an imperfect idea of the extent of Gurjara rule. At the beginning of the tenth century A.D. 916 Sulaimán's editor Abu Zaid describes Kanauj as a large country

<sup>1</sup> Elliot's History of India, I, 22, 24, 25.      <sup>2</sup> Elliot's History of India, I, 34.

<sup>3</sup> Elliot's History of India, I, 46.

<sup>4</sup> Al Masudi Les Prairies D'Or, II, chapter 18 page 85.

<sup>5</sup> Giving an account of the diviners and jugglers of India Abu Zaid says: These observations are especially applicable to Kanauj, a large country forming the empire of Jurz. Abu Zaid in Elliot's History of India, I, 10. References given in the History of Bhínmal show that the Gurjara power spread not only to Kanauj but to Bengal.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

Kings.  
Juzr.

forming the empire of Juzr,<sup>1</sup> a description which the Gurjjara Vatsarāja's success in Bengal about a century before shows not to be impossible. Ibn Khurdādhbih (A.D. 912) ranks the king of Juzr as fourth in importance among Indian kings. According to him "the Tātariya dirhams were in use in the Juzr kingdom." Al Masūdi (A.D. 943) speaks of the Konkani country of the Balhāra as on one side exposed to the attacks of the king of Juzr a monarch rich in men horses and camels. He speaks of the Juzr kingdom bordering on Tāfān apparently the Panjāb and Tāfān as bounded by Rahma<sup>2</sup> apparently Burma and Sumātra. Ibn Haukal (A.D. 968-976) notices that several kingdoms existed, including the domain of the Silāhāras of the north Konkani within the land of the Balhāra between Kambayyah and Saimūr<sup>3</sup>. Al Bīrūnī (A.D. 970-1031) uses not Juzr, but Gujarāt<sup>4</sup>. Beyond that is to the south of (inquirat he places Konkani and Tāna. In Al Bīrūnī's time Nārāyan near Jaipur, the former capital of Gujarāt, had been taken and the inhabitants removed to a town on the frontier.<sup>5</sup> Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century really from tenth century materials) ranks the king of Juzr as the fourth and the king of Sāfān or Tāfān as the second in greatness to the Balhāra<sup>6</sup>. In another passage in a list of titular sovereigns Al Idrisi enters the names of Sāfir (Tāfān) Juzr (Juzr-Juzr) and Dumi (Rahma)<sup>7</sup>. By the side of Juzr was Tāfak (doubtfully the Panjāb) a small state producing the whitest and most beautiful women in India; the king having few soldiers; living at peace with his neighbours and like the Balhāras highly esteeming the Arabs.<sup>8</sup> Ibn Khurdādhbih (A.D. 912) calls Tāfān the king next in eminence to the Balhāra.<sup>9</sup> Al Masūdi (A.D. 943) calls Tāfak the ruler of a mountainous country like Kashmir<sup>10</sup> with small forces living on friendly terms with neighbouring sovereigns and well disposed to the Moslems.<sup>11</sup> Al Idrisi (end of eleventh century but materials of the tenth century) notices Sāfān (Tāfān) as the principality that ranks next to the Konkani that is to the Rāshtrakūtas.

**Rahma or Rūhmi.** according to the merchant Sulaimān (A.D. 851) borders the land of the Balhāras, the Juzr, and Tāfān. The king who was not much respected was at war with both the Juzr and the Balhāra. He had the most numerous army in India and a following of 50,000 elephants when he took the field. Sulaimān notices a cotton fabric made in Rahma so delicate that a dress of it could pass through a signet-ring. The medium of exchange was *copper* Cyprian moneta shell money. The country produced gold silver and aloes and the whisk of the *sūmāra* or *yāk* *Bos porcephagus* the banyan tree &c. Ibn Khurdādhbih<sup>12</sup> (A.D. 912) places Rahmi as the sixth kingdom. He apparently identified it with Al Rahmi or north Sūmāra as he notes that between it and the other kingdoms communication is kept up by ships. He notices that the ruler had five thousand elephants and that cotton cloth and aloes probably the well-known Kumari

Rahma or  
Rūhmi.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khurdādhbih in Elliot's History of India, I. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Al Masūdi in Elliot (History of India), I. 25.

<sup>3</sup> Ibn Haukal in Elliot (History of India), I. 84.

<sup>4</sup> Al Bīrūnī in Elliot (History of India), I. 67.

<sup>5</sup> Al Bīrūnī in Elliot (History of India), I. 59.

<sup>6</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 76.

<sup>7</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 86.

<sup>8</sup> The merchant Sulaimān (851 A.D.) in Elliot's History of India, I. 5.

<sup>9</sup> Ibn Khurdādhbih in Elliot (History of India), I. 13.

<sup>10</sup> Al Masūdi in Elliot (History of India), I. 23.

<sup>11</sup> Al Masūdi in Elliot (History of India), I. 25.

<sup>12</sup> Ibn Khurdādhbih in Elliot's History of India, I. 14.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.

King.

*Rahma or  
Ruhm.*

or Cambodian aloes, were the staple produce. Al Masûdî (A.D. 913) after stating that former accounts of Rûhm's<sup>1</sup> elephants' troops and horses were probably exaggerated, adds that the kingdom of Rahma extends both along the sea and the continent and that it is bounded by an inland state called Kâman (probably Kâmarup that is Assam). He describes the inhabitants as fair and handsome and notices that both men and women had their ears pierced. This description of the people still more the extension of the country both along the sea and along the continent suggests that Masûdî's Al Rahm is a combination of Burma which by dropping the B he has mixed with Al Rahma. Lane identifies Rahm<sup>2</sup> with Sumâtra on the authority of an Account of India and China by two Mahamudan Travellers of the Ninth Century. This identification is supported by Al Masûdî's mention of Râm as one of the islands of the Java group, the kingdom of the Indian Mihraj. The absence of reference to Bengal in these accounts agrees with the view that during the ninth century Bengal was under Tibet.

?

Products

In the middle of the ninth century mines of gold and silver are said to be worked in Gujârât.<sup>3</sup> Abu Zaid (A.D. 916) represents pearls as in great demand. The Tartaryah, or according to Al Masûdî the Tâhiryah *dinars* of Sindh, fluctuating in price from one and a half to three and a fraction of the Baghdad *dinars*, were the current coin in the Gujârât ports. Emeralds also were imported from Egypt mounted as seals.<sup>4</sup>

Ibn Khurdadbeh<sup>5</sup> (A.D. 912) mentions teakwood and the bamboo as products of Sindan that is the Konkan Sanjan.<sup>6</sup> Al Masûdî (A.D. 913) notes that at the great fair of Multan the people of Sindh and Hind offered Kûmar that is Cambodian aloes-wood of the purest quality worth twenty *dinars* a *man*.<sup>7</sup> Among other articles of trade he mentions an inferior emerald exported from Cambay and Sumûr to Makkah,<sup>8</sup> the lance shafts of Brouch,<sup>9</sup> the shoes of Cambay,<sup>10</sup> and the white and handsome maidens of Tâfan<sup>11</sup> who were in great demand in Arab countries. Ibn Haukal (A.D. 968-976) states that the country comprising Fâmhâl, Sindan, Sumûr, and Kambâyah produced mangoes, coconuts, lemons, and rice in abundance. That honey could be had in great quantities, but no date palms were to be found.<sup>12</sup>

Al Bîrûnî (A.D. 1031) notices that its import of horses from Mekran and the islands of the Persian Gulf was a leading portion of Cambay trade.<sup>13</sup> According to Al Idrîsî (A.D. 1100) the people of Mâphâl<sup>14</sup> (Ambilwâra) had many horses and camels.<sup>15</sup> One of the peculiarities of

<sup>1</sup> Al Masûdî in History of India by Sir Henry Elliot, I, 25.

<sup>2</sup> Lane's Notes on his Translation of the Alt Leilah, III, 80.

<sup>3</sup> Al Masûdî's Murûj (Arabic Text Cairo Edition, I, 221).

<sup>4</sup> The merchant Sulaimân (Elliot's History of India), I, 4 and 5.

<sup>5</sup> See page 519 note 8.

<sup>6</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 11.

<sup>7</sup> Ibn Khurdadbeh in Elliot's History of India, I, 14.

<sup>8</sup> Ibn Khurdadbeh in Elliot's History of India, I, 15.

<sup>9</sup> Al Masûdî (Elliot's History of India), I, 23.

<sup>10</sup> Barbier De Meynard's Arabic Text of Les Prairies D'Or, III, 47-48.

<sup>11</sup> Barbier De Meynard's Arabic Text of Les Prairies D'Or, I, 39.

<sup>12</sup> Barbier De Meynard's Arabic Text of Les Prairies D'Or, I, 23.

<sup>13</sup> Barbier De Meynard's Arabic Text of Les Prairies D'Or, I, 381.

<sup>14</sup> Ibn Haukal (Ashkal-ul-Bilâd) and Elliot's History of India, I, 39.

<sup>15</sup> Elliot's History of India, III, 33.

<sup>16</sup> Mâphâl is by some numbered among the cities of India. Al Idrîsî in Elliot, I, 84.

<sup>17</sup> Al Idrîsî in Elliot, I, 79.

the Nahrwāla country was that all journeys were made and all merchandise was carried in bullock waggons. Kambāyah was rich in wheat and rice and its mountains yielded the Indian *kanā* or bamboo. At Sabāra<sup>1</sup> (Sopara) they fished for pearls and Bāra a small island close to Sūhāra produced the coconut and the castus. Sindān according to Al Idrisi produced the cocoa palm, the rāṭin, and the bamboo. Saimūr had many cocoa palms, much henna (*Lawsonia inermis*), and a number of aromatic plants.<sup>2</sup> The hills of Thāna yielded the bamboo and *tabāshir*<sup>3</sup> or bamboo pith. From Saimūr according to Al Kazzīnī (A.D. 1236, but from tenth century materials) came aloes. Rashid-ud-dīn (A.D. 1310) states that in Kambāyah, Sonmath, Kankan, and Tāna the vines yield twice a year and such is the strength of the soil that cotton-plants grow like willow or plane trees and yield produce for ten years. He refers to the betel leaf, to which he and other Arab writers and physicians ascribe strange virtues as the produce of the whole country of Malabar. The exports from the Gujarāt coasts are said to be sugar (the staple product of Mālwa), *bāḥūd* that is bezour, and *kalāḥ* that is turmeric.<sup>4</sup>

According to Ibnī Haukal (A.D. 170) from Kambāya to Saimur the villages lay close to one another and much land was under cultivation. At the end of the eleventh century trade was brisk merchandise from every country finding its way to the ports of Gujarāt whose local products were in turn exported all over the east. The Rāshtrakūta dominion was vast, well-peopled, commercial, and fertile. The people lived mostly on a vegetable diet, rice peas beans haricots and lentils being their daily food.<sup>5</sup> Al Idrisi speaks of certain Hindus eating animals whose deaths had been caused by falls or by being gored,<sup>6</sup> but Al Masūdī states that the higher classes who wore the 'baldrick like yellow thread' (the Janol) abstained from flesh. According to Ibnī Haukal (A.D. 968-970) the ordinary dress of the kings of Hind was trousers and a tunic.<sup>7</sup> He also notices that between Kambāyah and Saimūr the Muslims and infidels wear the same cool fine muslin dress and let their beards grow in the same fashion.<sup>8</sup> During the tenth century on high days the Balhāra wore a crown of gold and a dress of rich stuff. The attendant women were richly clad, wearing rings of gold and silver upon their feet and hands and having their hair in curls.<sup>9</sup> At the close of the Hindu period (A.D. 1300) Rashid-ud-dīn describes Gujarāt as a flourishing country with no less than 80,000 villages and hamlets the people happy the soil rich growing in the four seasons seventy varieties of flowers. Two harvests repaid the husband and the earlier crop refreshed by the dew of the evening season the late crop enriched by a certain rainfall.<sup>10</sup>

\* In their intercourse with Western India nothing struck the Arabs more than the toleration shown to their religion both by chief and peoples.

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350.  
Products.

## Review.

<sup>1</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot, I. 85.<sup>2</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot's History of India, I. 85.<sup>3</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot's History of India, I. 85.<sup>4</sup> Rashid-ud-dīn in Elliot's History of India, I. 67-68.<sup>5</sup> Ibnī Haukal (A.D. 968) in Elliot, I. 39.<sup>6</sup> Al Idrisi (A.D. 968) in Elliot, I. 84 and 87.<sup>7</sup> Al Idrisi speaking of Cambay in Elliot's History of India, I. 84.<sup>8</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot, I. 85.<sup>9</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot, I. 84.<sup>10</sup> Al Masūdī in Elliot's History of India, I. 9.<sup>11</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot, I. 35.<sup>12</sup> Ibnī Haukal in Elliot, I. 39.<sup>13</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot's History of India, I. 84.<sup>14</sup> Rashid-ud-dīn (A.D. 1370) in Elliot's History of India, I. 67. The passage seems to be a quotation from Al Biruni (A.D. 1031).

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 851-1350  
Review.

This was specially marked in the Rāshtrakūta towns where besides five use of mosques and Jāma' mosques Musalmān magistrates or *kāzis* were appointed to settle disputes among Musalmāns according to their own laws.<sup>1</sup> Toleration was not peculiar to the Bahārās. Al Birūni records<sup>2</sup> that 'in the ninth century (A.D. 581), when the Hindus recovered Sindan (Sanjān in Kachh) they spared the assembly mosque where long after the Faithful congregated on Fridays praying for their Khalīfah without hindrance. In the Bahāra country so strongly did the people believe in the power of Islām (or which is perhaps more likely so courteous were they that they said that our king enjoys a long life and long reign is solely due to the favour shown by him to the Musalmāns. So far as the moral int Sulamān saw in the ninth century the chief religion in Gujarāt was Buddhism. He notices that the principles of the religion of China were brought from India and that the Chinese ascribe to the Indians the introduction of Buddhas into their country. Of religious beliefs metempsychoses or re-birth and of religious practices widow-burning or *sati* and self-torture seem to have struck him most. As a rule the dead were burned.<sup>3</sup> Sulamān represents the people of Gujarāt as steady abstemious and sober abstaining from wine as well as from vinegar, 'not' he adds 'from religious motives but from their disdain of it.' Among their sovereigns the desire of conquest was seldom the cause of war.<sup>4</sup> Abu Zaid (A.D. 916) describes the Brahmins as Hindus devoted to religion and science. Among Brahmins were poets who lived at kings' courts, astronomers, philosophers, diviners, and drawers of omens from the flight of crows.<sup>5</sup> He adds: 'So sure are the people that after death they shall return to life upon the earth, that when a person grows old he begs some one of his family to throw him into the fire or to drown him.'<sup>6</sup> In Abu Zaid's time (A.D. 916) the Hindus did not seclude their women. Even the wives of the kings used to mix freely with men and attend courts and places of public resort unveiled.<sup>7</sup> According to Ibn Khurdādbah (A.D. 912) India has forty-two religious sects "part of whom believe in God and his Prophet (on whom be peace) and part who deny his mission."<sup>8</sup> Ibn Khurdādbah (A.D. 912) describes the Hindus as divided into seven classes. Of these the first are Thākarias<sup>9</sup> or Thākurs men of high caste from whom kings are chosen and to whom men of the other classes render homage; the second are the Barāhmas<sup>10</sup> who abstain from wine and fermented liquors; the third are the Katariya or Kshatriyas who drink not more than three cups of wine; the fourth are the Sudaiia or Shudras husbandmen by profession; the fifth are the Baisara or Vaish artificers and domestics; the sixth Sandaiias or Chandalia menials; and the seventh the 'Lahūd,' whose women adorn themselves and whose men are fond of amusements and games of skill. Both among the people and the kings of Gujarāt<sup>11</sup> wine

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Haukal in Elliot's History of India, I, 31-38, also Al Kazwini, I, 97.

<sup>2</sup> Sir Henry Elliot's History of India, I, 29.

<sup>3</sup> The merchant Sulamān in Elliot's History of India, I, 7.

<sup>4</sup> The merchant Sulamān in Elliot's History of India, I, 6.

<sup>5</sup> The merchant Sulamān in Elliot's History of India, I, 7.

<sup>6</sup> Abu Zaid in Elliot's History of India, I, 10.

<sup>7</sup> Abu Zaid in Elliot's History of India, I, 9-10.

<sup>8</sup> Abu Zaid in Elliot's History of India, I, 11.

<sup>9</sup> Ibn Khurdādbah in Elliot, I, 17.

<sup>10</sup> See Elliot, I, 76, where Al Idrisi calls the first class 'Sthakura' the word being a transmutation of the Arabic Thākariyah or Thākurs.

<sup>11</sup> The Arabic plural of the word Barāhman

<sup>12</sup> Ibn Khurdādbah in Elliot's History of India, I, 13-17.

was "unlawful and lawful" that is it was not used though no religious rule forbade its use. According to Al Masûdî (A.D. 913) a general opinion prevailed that India was the earliest home of order and wisdom. The Indians chose as their king the great Brâhman who ruled them for 366 years. His descendants retain the name of Brahman and are honoured as the most illustrious caste. They abstain from the flesh of animals.<sup>1</sup> Hindu kings cannot succeed before the age of forty nor do they appear in public except on certain occasions for the conduct of state affairs. Royalty and all the high offices of state<sup>2</sup> are limited to the descendants of one family. The Hindus strongly disapprove of the use of wine both in themselves, and in others not from any religious objection but on account of its intoxicating and reason-clouding quality. Al Biruni (A.D. 970-1031) quoted by Rashîd-ud-dîn (A.D. 1310) states that the people of Gujarât are idolaters and notices the great penance-pilgrimages to Somnath details of which have already been given.<sup>3</sup> Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) closely follows Ibn Khurdadkâh's (A.D. 912) division of the people of India. The chief exception is that he represents the second class, the Brâhmans, as wearing the skins of tigers and going about staff in hand collecting crowds and from morn till eve proclaiming to their hearers the glory and power of God. He makes out that the Kastûras or Kshatriyas are able to drink three *ratl* (a *ratl* being one pound troy) of wine and are allowed to marry Brahman women. The Sabdahiya or Chandâl women, he says, are noted for beauty. Of the forty-two sects he enumerates worshippers of trees and adorners of serpents, which they keep in stables and feed as well as they can, deeming it to be a meritorious work. He says that the inhabitants of Kamâtîya are Buddhists (idolaters)<sup>4</sup> and that the Balhara also worship the idol Buddha.<sup>5</sup> The Indians says Al Idrisi (end of the eleventh century) are naturally inclined to justice and in their actions never depart from it. Their reputation for good faith, honesty, and fidelity to their engagements brings strangers flocking to their country and aids its prosperity. In illustration of the peaceable disposition of the Hindus, he quotes the ancient practice of *dakûn* or confuring in the name of the king, a rite which is still in vogue in some native states. When a man has a rightful claim he draws a circle on the ground and asks his debtor to step into the circle in the name of the king. The debtor never fails to step in nor does he ever leave the circle without paying his debts. Al Idrisi describes the people of Nahrwân as having so high a respect for oxen that when an ox dies they bury it. "When a man is disabled by age or if unable to work they provide for him an ox with food without exacting any return."<sup>6</sup>

## Appendix V.

ARAB  
REFERENCES,  
A.D. 651-1350  
Review.

<sup>1</sup> Text Les Prairies D'Or, I. 149-151 and Elliot's History of India, I. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Arabic Text Les Prairies D'Or, I. 149-151, and Elliot's History of India, I. 20.

<sup>3</sup> Al Masûdî's Prairies D'Or, I. 169 and Elliot's History of India, I. 29.

<sup>4</sup> Rashîd-ud-dîn from Al Biruni in Elliot's History of India, I. 67-68.

<sup>5</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 76.

<sup>6</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 85.

<sup>7</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 87.

<sup>8</sup> See Henry Elliot's History of India, I. 88.

<sup>9</sup> Al Idrisi in Elliot (History of India), I. 88.

## APPENDIX VI.

### WESTERN INDIA AS KNOWN TO THE GREEKS AND ROMANS.

#### Appendix VI. EARLY GREEKS AND ROMANS.

##### *Ktesias.*

**Herodotos** and **Hekataios**, the earliest Greek writers who make mention of India, give no information in regard to Western India in particular.

**Ktesias** (c. 400 B.C.) learnt in Persia that a race of Pygmies lived in India in the neighbourhood of the silver mines, which Lassen places near Udaipur (Mewar). From the description of these Pygmies (Photios, Bibl. LXXII 11-12) it is evident that they represent the Bhils. Ktesias also mentions (Photios Bibl. LXXII 8) that there is a place in an uninhabited region fifteen days from Mount Sardous, where they venerate the sun and moon and where for thirty-five days in each year the sun roasts his heat for the comfort of his worshippers. This place must apparently have been somewhere in Marwar, and perhaps Mount Abu is the place referred to.

##### *Alora*

**Alexander** (B.C. 326-25) did not reach Gujarât, and his companions have nothing to tell of this part of the country. It is otherwise with

##### *Megasthenes.*

**Megasthenes** (c. 300 B.C.) who resided with Candragupta as the ambassador of Seleukos Nikator and wrote an account of India in four books, of which considerable fragments are preserved, chiefly by Strabo, Pliny, and Arrian. His general account of the manners of the Indians relates chiefly to those of northern India, of whom he had personal knowledge. But he also gave a geographical description of India, for Arrian informs us (*ibid.* VII) that he gave the total number of Indian tribes as 118, and Pliny (VI. 17ff) does in fact enumerate about 90, to whom may be added some seven or eight more mentioned by Arrian. It is true that Pliny does not distinctly state that he takes his geographical details from Megasthenes, and that he quotes Seneca as having written a book on India. But Seneca also (Pliny, VI. 17) gave the number of the tribes as 118 in which he must have followed Megasthenes. Further, Pliny says (*ibid.*) that accounts of the military forces of each nation were given by writers such as Megasthenes and Dionysius who stayed with Indian kings; and as he does not mention Dionysius in his list of authorities for his Book VI, it follows that it was from Megasthenes that he drew his accounts of the forces of the Gangaridæ, Modogalingæ, Andaræ, Prasî, Megallæ, Asmagi, Orastæ, Suarataratæ, Antomulæ, Charma, and Pandæ (VI. 19), names which, as will be shown below, betray a knowledge of all parts of India. It is a fair inference that the remaining names mentioned by Pliny were taken by him from Megasthenes, perhaps through the medium of Seneca's work. The corruption of Pliny's text

and the fact that Megasthenes learnt the tribal names in their Prakrit forms, make it extremely difficult to identify many of the races referred to.

That part of Pliny's account of India which may with some certainty be traced back to Megasthenes begins with a statement of the stages of the royal road from the Hypasis (Bias) to Palibothra (Patna) (Nat. Hist. VI 17). The next chapter gives an account of the Ganges and its tributaries and mentions the Gangaridæ of Kalinga with their capital Patalis as the most distant nation on its banks. In the 19th chapter, after an account of the Joces of the Gangaridæ, Pliny gives a list of thirteen tribes of which the only ones that can be said to be satisfactorily identified are Modogalingi (the three Calingæ, Caldwell & Dray, Gr.), Mohindæ (compare Mount Mahindya of Varaha Mihira Br. S. XIV) and Thalutæ (McCrindle reads Taluctæ and identifies with the Tamraliptakæ of Tamluk on the lower Ganges). He next mentions the Andaræ (Andhras of Telingana) with thirty cities 100,000 foot 2,000 horse and 1,000 elephants. He then digresses to speak of the Daridæ (Dards of the Upper Indus) as rich in gold and the Sævæ (of Mewar, Lassen) in silver, and next introduces the Præstæ (Prævas) of Palibothra (Pataliputra) as the most famous and powerful of all the tribes, having 600,000 foot 30,000 horse and 8,000 elephants. Inland from these he names the Monades (Munda of Singhbhum) and Sauri (Śauras of Central India) a nation whom is Mount Malens (Mahendra Malez). Then after some account of the Iomanes (Yamuna) running between Methora (Mathura) and Chrysobora (McCrindle reads Chrysobora, Arrian Ind. VIII Kleisobora = Krishnapura) he turns to the Indus, of some of whose nineteen tributaries he gives some account in chapter 20. He then digresses to give an account of the coast of India, starting from the mouth of the Ganges, whence to Point Calingon (Point Godavari) and the city of Dardaguda (Cunningham's Raja Mahendri, but more probably the Dhanakataka or Dhenkakata of the Western cave inscriptions) he reckons 625 miles. The distance thence to Tropina (Turpanatara near Kochin according to Burgess) is 1225 miles. Next at a distance of 750 miles is the cape of Perimula, where is the most famous mart of India. Further on in the same chapter is mentioned a city named Antomula on the sea shore among the Arabastæ (or Salabastæ and Orastæ, McCrindle) a noble mart where five rivers together flow into the sea. There can hardly be a doubt that the two places are the same, the two names being taken from different authorities, and that the place meant is Chennula or Chend (Ptolemy's Simulla) the five rivers being those that flow to Bombay Harbour northward of Chend. The distance from Perimula to the Island of Patala in the Indus is 320 miles. Pliny next enumerates as hill tribes between the Indus and Jambou shut in a ring of mountains and deserts for a space of 625 miles, the Cæsi (the Kekri of Arr. Ind. IV. and Kekayas of the Puranas, about the head waters of the Sutlej), the Cetrabontæ of the woods (..... Vana), the Megallæ (Mekalas) with 500 elephants and unknown numbers of horse and foot, the Chrysei (Karūsha) Parāṣangæ (Parāṣava, corrupted by the likeness of its first three syllables to the word *parāṣaraya*), the Asmagi (Asmaka of Varaha Mihira) with 30,000 foot 300 elephants and 800 horse. These are shut in by the Indus and surrounded by a circle of mountains and deserts for 625 miles. Next come the Dæi and Sauræ and then deserts again for 187 miles. Whether these are or are not correctly identified with the Dhars and Sauras of Sindh, they must be placed somewhere to the north of the Ran. Below them come five kingless tribes living in the hills along the sea-

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.  
*Megasthenes.*

## Appendix VI

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.*Megasthenes.*

coast—the Maldecora, Singhas, Marohæ, Rarungæ, and Moruni—none of whom are satisfactorily identified, but who may be placed in Kachh. Next follow the Nareæ enclosed by Mount Capitala (Ābu) the highest mountain in India on the other side of which are mines of gold and silver. The identification of Capitala with Ābu is probable enough, but the name given to the mountain must be connected with the Kapishtala of the *Puranas*, who have given their name to one of the recensions of the Yajur Veda, though Kaithal, their modern representative lies far away from Ābu in the Karnal district of the Panjab, and African places his *καρσιπτοδοί* (Inl. IV) about the head waters of the Hydratēs (Rāvi). After Capitala and the Nareæ come the Oratæ with but ten elephants but numerous infantry. This must be the Aparantakas of the inscriptions and *pramāns*, Megasthenes having learnt the name in a Prakrit form (Avarata Oratæ). The name of the next tribe who have no elephants but horse and foot only is commonly read Suiataratæ (Nobbe) but the preferable reading is Varetatæ (McCrindle) which when corrected to Varetatæ represents Varalatta, the sixth of the seven Konkans in the purāṇic lists (Wilson As. Res. XV. 17), which occupied the centre of the Thān district and the country of the wild tribe of the Varhs. Next are the Odobæres, whose name is connected with the *odumbara* trees glomerata trees and who are not the Audumbari Salvæ of Panini (IV. i. 173) but must be placed in Southern Thān. Next come the Arabastæ Oratæ (so read for Arabastæ Thorce of Nobbe, and Salabastæ Horatæ of McCrindle) or Arabastæ division of the Oratæ or Konkans. Arabastæ may be connected with the Ārya of Varāha-Mihira's South-Western Division (Br. S. XIV. 17) where they are mentioned along with Barbari (the seventh or northernmost Konkā). This tribe had a fine city in a marsh infested by crocodiles and also the great mart of Antonula (Chenā) at the confluence of five rivers, and the king had 1600 elephants 150,000 foot and 5000 horse, and must therefore have held a large part of the Dakhan as well as of the sea coast. Next to this kingdom is that of the Charanæ, whose forces are small, and next to them the Pandæ (Pandya of Travancor) with 30 cities 150,000 foot and 500 elephants. Next follows a list of thirteen tribes some of which St. Martin has identified with modern Rappit tribes about the Indus, because the last name of the thirteen is Orostræ, who reach to the island of Patala and may be confidently identified with the Sāmrashtæ of Kārhāyada. We must however assume that Megasthenes after naming the tribes of the west coast enumerates the inland tribes of the Dakhan until he arrives at the point from which he started. But the only identification that seems plausible is that of the Derangæ with the Telīngas or Telūgus. Next to the Orostræ follows a list of tribes on the east of the Indus from south to north—the Mathoræ (compare Māthavya, a Bahika town Pān. IV. ii. 117), Bolingæ (Bhālungi, a Sālva tribe Pān. IV. i. 173), Gallitalutæ (perhaps a corruption of Talakhalu, another Sālva tribe, *ib.*), Dimnæ, Megari, Ardabæ, Mera (Matsya of Jaipur?), Abi, Suri, (v. l. Abhis Uri), Silar and then deserts for 250 miles. Next come three more tribes and then again deserts, then four or five (according to the reading) more tribes and the Asiñi whose capital is Bucephala (Jalāpur) (Cunningham Anc. Geog. 177). Megasthenes then gives two mountain tribes and ten beyond the Indus including the Orsi (Uraśā) Taxilæ (Takshāśilā) and Peneolitæ (people of Pushkalavati). Of the work of Dēmachos, who went on an embassy to Allitrochadēs (Bindusāra) son of Candragupta, nothing is known except that it was in two books and was reckoned the most untrustworthy of all accounts of India (Strabo. II. i. 9).

**Ptolemy II. Philadelphos** (died 247 B.C.) interested himself in the trade with India and opened a caravan road from Koptos on the Nile to Berenikè on the Red Sea (Strabo, XI. i. 15) and for centuries the Indian trade resorted either to this port or to the neighbouring Myos Hormos. Heals sent to India (apparently to Asoka) an envoy named Dionysius, who is said by Pliny (VI. 17) to have written an account of things Indian of which no certain fragments appear to remain. But we know from the fragments of

**Agatharkhides** (born c. 250 A.D.) who wrote in old age an account of the Red Sea of which we have considerable extracts in Diodoros (III. 12-18) and Photios (Müller's Geogr. Gr. Min. I. 1116), states that in his time the Indian trade with Potapa (Patala) was in the hands of the Sabaius of Yemen. (Müller I. 191.) In fact it was not until the voyages of Eudoxos (see below) that any direct trade sprang up between India and Egypt. The mention of Patala as the port resorted to by the Arabs shows that we are still in Pliny's first period (see below).

**The Baktrian Greeks** extended their power into India after the fall of the Maurya empire (c. 180 B.C.) their leader being Demetrios son of Euthydemos, whose conquests are related to by Justin (XII. 6) and Strabo (XI. ii. 19). But the most extensive conquests to the east and south were made by Menandros (c. 110 B.C.) who advanced to the Jumna and conquered the whole coast from Pattalène (lower Sindh) to the kingdoms of Saragosa (Sarashtra) and Sigoris (Phrygia Sigoris?) (Strabo, XI. ii. 1). These statements of Strabo are confirmed by the author of the Perplus (c. 250 A.D.) who says that in his time *drakmai* with Greek inscriptions of Menandros and Apollodotos were still current at Barygaza (Per 47). Apollodotos is now generally thought to have been the successor of Menandros (c. 100 B.C.) (Brit. Museum Cat. of Bactrian Coins page xxxiii.) Plutarch (Rep. Gr. Trine.) tells us that Menandros' rule was so mild, that on his death his towns disputed the possession of his ashes and finally divided them.

**Eudoxos of Cyzicus** (c. 117 B.C.) made in company with others two very successful voyages to India, in the first of which the company were guided by an Indian who had been shipwrecked on the Egyptian coast. Strabo (II. iii. 1), in quoting the story of his doings from Pseudo-mos, lays more stress upon his attempt to circumnavigate Africa than upon these two Indian voyages, but they are of very great importance as the beginnings of the direct trade with India.

**The Geographers** down to Ptolemy drew their knowledge of India almost entirely from the works of Megasthenes and of the companions of Alexander. Among them Eratosthenes (c. 275-194 B.C.), the founder of scientific geography, deserves mention as having first given wide currency to the notion that the width of India from west to east was greater than its length from north to south, an error which lies at the root of Ptolemy's distortion of the map. Eratosthenes' critic Hipparchos (c. 130 B.C.) on this point followed the more correct account of Megasthenes, and is otherwise notable as the first to make use of astronomy for the determination of the geographical position of places.

**Strabo** (c. 63 B.C.-23 A.D.) drew his knowledge of India, like his predecessors, chiefly from Megasthenes and from Alexander's followers, but adds (XV. i. 72) on the authority of Nikolaos of Damascus (tutor to the children of Antony and Cleopatra, and envoy of Herod) an account of three Indian envoys from a certain king Póros to Augustus (ob. A.D. 14),

## Appendix VI.

### EARLY GREEKS AND ROMANS.

#### Ptolemy II.

#### Agatharkhides.

#### The Baktrian Greeks.

#### Eudoxos of Cyzicus.

#### Eratosthenes.

#### Strabo.

## EARLY GREEKS AND ROMANS.

### Appendix VI.

#### EARLY GREEKS AND ROMANS.

*Strabo*

who brought presents consisting of an armless man, snakes, a huge turtle and a large partridge, with a letter in Greek written on parchment offering free passage and traffic through his dominions to the emperor's subjects. With these envoys came a certain Zarmakothêgas (*Śramanâ-cârya Lassen*) from Barygæ (Broach, the earliest mention of the name) who afterwards burnt himself at Athens: "according to the ancestral custom of the Indians." The fact that the embassy came from Broach and passed through Antioch shows that they took the route by the Persian Gulf, which long remained one of the chief lines of trade (Per. chap. 36). If the embassy was not a purely commercial specification on the part of merchants of Broach, it is hard to see how king Poros who had 600 under-kings, can be other than the Indo-Skythian Kozolakadaphes, who held Poros' old kingdom as well as much other territory in North-West India. This if correct would show that as early as the beginning of our era the Indo-Skythian power reached as far south as Broach. The fact that the embassy took the Persian Gulf route and that their object was to open commercial relations with the Roman empire seems to show that at this period there was no direct trade between Broach and the Egyptian ports of the Red Sea. Strabo however mentions that in his time Arabian and Indian wares were carried on camels from Myos Hormos (near Râs Abu Somer) on the Red Sea to Koptos on the Nile (XVII. i. 15 and XVI. iv. 24) and dilates upon the increase of the Indian trade since the days of the Ptolemies when not so many as twenty ships dared pass through the Red Sea "to peer out of the Straits," whereas in his time whole fleets of as many as 120 vessels voyaged to India and the headlands of Ethiopia from Myos Hormos (II. v. 12 and XV. i. 13). It would seem that we have here to do with Pliny's second period of Indian trade, when Sigeris (probably Janjira) was the goal of the Egyptian shipmasters (see below). Strabo learnt these particulars during his stay in Egypt with Aelius Gallus, but they were unknown to his contemporary Diodoros who drew his account of India entirely from Megasthenes (Diod. II. 31-42) and had no knowledge of the East beyond the stories told by Jamboulas a person of uncertain date of an island in the Indian Archipelago (Bali, according to Lassen) (Diod. II. 57-60). Pomponius Mela (A.D. 43) also had no recent information as regards India.

*Pliny.*

**Pliny** (A.D. 23-79) who published his Natural History in A.D. 77 gives a fairly full account of India, chiefly drawn from Megasthenes (see above). He also gives two valuable pieces of contemporary information:

(i) An account of Ceylon (Taprobane) to which a freedman of Annius Ploramus, farmer of the Red Sea tribute, was carried by stress of weather in the reign of Claudius (A.D. 41-54). On his return the king sent to the emperor four envoys, headed by one Rachuas (VI. 22).

(ii) An account of the voyage from Alexandria to India by a course which had only lately been made known (VI. 23). Pliny divides the history of navigation from the time of Nearchus to his own age into three periods:

(a) the period of sailing from Syagrus (Râs Fartak) in Arabia to Patalê (Indus delta) by the south-west wind called Hippalus, 1332 miles;

(b) the period of sailing from Syagrus (Râs Fartak) to Sigeris (*Ptol. Milizêgyris, Peripl. Mohizegura*, probably Janjira, and perhaps the same as Strabo's Sigertis);

(c) the modern period, when traffic went on from Alexandria to Koptos up the Nile, and thence by camels across the desert to Borenice (in Foul Bay) 257 miles. Thence the merchants start in the middle of

summer before the rising of the dogstar and in thirty days reach Okelis (Giballa) or Cano (Hian (Ghorab), the former port being most frequented by the Indian trade. From Okelis it is a forty days' voyage to Muziris (Muziri, Kranganur) which is dangerous on account of the neighbouring pirates of Nitrias (Mangalore) and inconvenient by reason of the distance of the roads from the shore. Another better port is Becare (Kallada, Yule) belonging to the tribe Nēneyndon (*Prod.* Melkynda, *Peripl.* Nelkynda) of the kingdom of Pandion (Pāndya) whose capital is Modura (Madura). Here pepper is brought in canoes from Cottomara (Kadatanāṭu). The ships return to the Red Sea in December or January.

It is clear that the modern improvement in navigation on which Pliny lays so much stress consisted, not in making use of the monsoon wind, but in striking straight across the Indian ocean to the Malabar coast. The fact that the ships which took this course carried a guard of archers in Pliny's time, but not in that of the *Periplus*, is another indication that the direct route to Malabar was new and unfamiliar in the first century A.D. The name Hippalus given to the monsoon wind will be discussed below in dealing with the *Periplus*.

Dionysios Periegetes who has lately been proved to have written under Hadrian (A.D. 117-138) (*Christ's Greek Literature* (Giesch) page 597) gives a very superficial description of India but has a valuable notice of the Southern Skythians who live along the river Indus to the east of the Gedrosi (l. 1087-88).

*Dionysios  
Periegetes.*

*Klaudios  
Ptolemaios.*

Klaudios Ptolemaios of Alexandria lived according to Suidas under Marcus Aurelius Antoninus (A.D. 161-180). He compiled his account of India as part of a geographical description of the then known world. He drew much of his materials from Marinus of Tyre, whose work is lost, but who must have written about A.D. 130. Ptolemy (or Marinus before him) had a very wide knowledge of India, drawn partly from the relations of shipmasters and traders and partly from Indian lists similar to those of the *Panduas* but drawn up in Prakrit. He seems to have made little if any use of Megasthenes and the companions of Alexander. But his map of India is distorted by the erroneous idea, which he took from Eratosthenes, that the width of India from west to east greatly exceeded its length from north to south. Ptolemy begins his description of India with the first chapter of his seventh book, which deals with India within the Ganges. He gives first the names of rivers, countries, cities, and capes along the whole coast of India from the westernmost mouth of the Indus to the easternmost mouth of the Ganges. He next mentions in detail the mountains and the rivers with their tributaries, and then proceeds to enumerate the various nations of India and the cities belonging to each, beginning with the north-west and working southwards, and he finally gives a list of the islands lying off the coast. In dealing with his account of western India it will be convenient to notice together the cities of each nation which he mentions separately under the heads of coast and inland towns.

He gives the name of Indo-Skythia to the whole country on both sides of the lower course of the Indus from its junction with the Koa (Kābul river), and gives its three divisions as Patalēnē (lower Sindh) Abiria (read Sābīria, that is, Sauvira or upper Sindh and Mulhan) and Surastrēnē (Surāshtra or Kāthiāwāda). We have seen that Dionysios knew the southern Skythians of the Indus, and we shall meet with them again in the *Periplus* (chapter 39ff).

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.Klaudios  
Ptolemaios.

He enumerates seven mouths of the Indus, but the river is so constantly changing its course that it is hopeless to expect to identify all the many given by him (Sagapa, Sinthôn, Khariphron, Sipara, Sibalacssa and Lombare) with the existing channels. Only it may be noted that Sinthôn preserves the Indian name of the river (Sindhu) and that the easternmost mouth (Lombare) probably represents both the present Kori or Launi and the Lûni river of Marwar a fact which goes some way to explain why Ptolemy had no idea of the existence of Kachh, though he knows the Ran as the gulf of Kanthi. Hence he misplaces Surastrênê (Surâshtra or Kathiâvâda) in the Indus delta instead of south of the Ran. Ptolemy enumerates a group of five towns in the north-western part of Indo-Skythia (Kohat, Bannu, and Dera Ismail Khan) of which Cunningham (Anc. Geog. pages 84ff) has identified Banagara with Bannu, and Andrapana with Daraban, while the sites of Artomita, Sabana and Kodrana are unknown. Ptolemy next gives a list of twelve towns along the western bank of the Indus to the sea. Of these Embomma has been identified by Cunningham (Anc. Geog. page 52) with Amb sixty miles above Attock, and Pasipêda is identified by St Martin with the Besmaid of the Arab geographers and placed near Mithankot at the junction of the Chenab with the Indus. Sousikama which comes next in the list to Pasipêda, is generally thought to be a corruption of Mousikamos, and is placed by the latest authority (General Haug, *The Indus Delta Country* page 134) in Bahawalpur, though Cunningham (Anc. Geog. page 257) puts it at Alor, which is somewhat more in accordance with Ptolemy's distances. Kôlaka the most southerly town of the list, cannot well be the Krokala of Arrian (Karachi) as McCrindle supposes, for Ptolemy puts it nearly a degree north of the western mouth of the Indus.

The two great towns of the delta which Ptolemy next mentions are placed by General Haug, Patala at a point thirty-five miles south-east of Haidarâbâd (*op cit* page 19) and Barbarai near Shah Bandar (*op cit* page 31). Barbarai is mentioned again in the Periplus (chapter 38) under the name of Barbarikon. Ptolemy gives the names of nine towns on the left bank of the Indus from the confluence to the sea, but very few of them can be satisfactorily identified. Panasa can only be Osanpur (St Martin) on Fluellen's principles. Boudana must represent the Budhiya of the Arabs, though it is on the wrong side of the river (see Haug, *op cit* page 57ff). Nuagramma may with Yule be placed at Naushahro. Kathigara cannot be Aror (McCrindle), if that place represents Sousikama. Binagâra is commonly thought to be a corrupt reading of Minnagara (compare Periplus chapter 38). Haug (*op cit* page 32 note 47) refers to the Tuhfatul Kirân as mentioning a Minnagar in pargana Shâhdâdpur (north-east of Haidarâbâd). Parabali, Sydros, and Epitausa have not been identified, but must be looked for either in Haidarâbâd or in Thar and Parkar. Xosna may with Yule be identified with Siwana in the bend of the Lûni and gives another indication that Ptolemy confounded the Lûni with the eastern mouth of the Indus.

On the coast of Surastrênê (Kathiâvâda) Ptolemy mentions, first, the island of Barukê (Dvârûkâ Bêt): then the city Bardaxêma which must be Porbandar (Yule), in front of the Barada hills: then the village of Surashtra, which perhaps represents Verâval, though it is placed too far north. Surashtra cannot well be Junâgad (Lassen) which is not on the coast and in Ptolemy's time was not a village, but a city, though it is certainly strange that Ptolemy does not anywhere mention it. Further south Ptolemy places the mart of Monoglôsson (Mañgrol). The eastern

boundary of the coast of Indo-Skythia seems to have been the mouth of the Mōphis (Mahu). Ptolemy's account of Indo-Skythia may be completed by mentioning the list of places which he puts to the east of the Indus (i.e. the Lūni) and at some distance from it.

These are: Xodrakê, which has not been identified, but which must be placed somewhere in Mewâr, perhaps at the old city of Pûr, seventy-two miles north-east of Udaipur, or possibly at the old city of Ahar, two miles from Udaipur itself (Tod's Rajasthan, I 677-78).

Sarbanâ, which is marked in Ptolemy's map at the head-waters of the Mahû in the Apokopa mountains (Aravallis), must be identified with Sarwan about ten miles north-west of Ratlâm. There is also a place called Sarwanio close to Nimach, which Ptolemy may have confused with Sarwan.

Auxômis, which St. Martin identifies with Sûmt and Yule with Ajmur, but neither place suits the distance and direction from Sarwan. If Ptolemy, as above suggested, confused Sarwan and Sarwanio, Auxômis may be Ahar near Udaipur, Pûr being then Xodrakê, otherwise Auxômis may be Idar. The question can only be settled by more exact knowledge of the age of Ahar and of Idar. Orbadagou may provisionally with Yule be placed at Abu.

Asinda must be looked for near Sidhpur, though it cannot with St. Martin be identified with that place. Perhaps Vadnagar (formerly Anandapura and a very old town) may be its modern representative.

Theophili may be Devahiya (Yule) or Than (Burgess) in north-east Kathavâda.

Astakapra is admitted to be Hastakavapra or Hâthab near Bhavnagar (Bühler).

*Larikê* is described by Ptolemy next after Indo-Skythia on his way down the West Coast. The northern limit of its coast was the mouth of the river Mōphis (Mahu). Its name is the Latin of *paricæ* and inscriptions. Ptolemy mentions as on its coast the village of Pakidare, which may be a misreading for Kapidare and represent Kapi (Kapika of inscriptions) a holy place just south of the Mahû. Next comes Cape Malô, which Ptolemy both in his text and in his map includes in Larikê though there is no prominent headland in a suitable position on the east side of the Gulf of Cambay. As he puts it 2½ degrees west of Bouch, it may probably be identified with Gôpnâjî Point in Kathavâda on the other side of the gulf (the Pâpikê of the Periplus), his name for it surviving in the neighbouring shoals known as the Mala banks. It is in agreement with this that Ptolemy puts the mouth of the river Namados (Narmada) to the north of Cape Malô. South of the river is Kamanê which may be identified with the Kamaniya or Karmaneya of inscriptions, that is with Kamlej on the Tapti above Surat. It has been supposed to be the Kammonî of the Periplus (chapter 43), which was the village opposite to the reef called Hêronê on the right (east) of the gulf of Barygaza. But it is perhaps best to separate the two and to identify Kammonî with Kim, north of Olpâd. The next town mentioned is Nousaripa, which should probably be read Nousurika, being the Narasârikâ of inscriptions and the modern Nausâri. The most southerly town of Larikê is Poulioula, which has been identified with Phulpâdâ or old Surat, but is too far south. Bilimora is perhaps the most likely position for it, though the names do not correspond (unless Pouli is the Dravidian *Puli* or *poli* = a tiger, afterwards replaced by *Bili* = a cat). Ptolemy begins his list of the inland cities of Larikê with Agrinagara, which may with Yule be identified with

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.

Klaudios  
Ptolemaios.

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.*Klaudios  
Ptolemios.*

Āgar, thirty-five miles north-east of Ujjain, and the Ākara of inscriptions. The next town is Siripalla, which has not been identified, but should be looked for about thirty miles to the south-east of Āgar, not far from Shahjahanpur. The modern name would probably be Shmol. Bammogoura must be identified, not with Pāwangad (Yule), but with Huen Tsiang's "city of the Brāhmins" (Beal, Si-yu-ki, II 262f, 206 l) (about 33 miles) to the north-west of the capital of Mālava in his time. The distance and direction bring us nearly to Jāvara. Sazantion and Zerogerçi have not been satisfactorily identified but may provisionally be placed at Ratlām and Badnawar respectively, or Zêrogerçi may be Dhār as Yule suggested. Ozênê the capital of Tiastand's is Ujjain the capital of the Kshatriapa Uashtana who reigned c. 130 A.D. His kingdom included Western Mālwā, West Khandesh, and the whole of Gujārat south of the Mahi. His grandson Rudradāman (A.D. 150) tells us in his Gujrat inscription (I A VII. 239) that his own kingdom included also Mārwar Sindh and the lower Panjāb. Next to Ujjain Ptolemy mentions Minnigara, which must have been somewhere near Manpur. Then we come to Tiatouza or Chandor (Yule) on the ridge which separates Khandesh from the valley of the Godāvāri, and finally on that river itself Nāsika the modern Nasik. It is very doubtful whether Nāsik at any time formed part of the dominions of Uashtana, since we know from the inscriptions in the Nāsik caves that the Kshatriapas were driven out of that part of the country by Gautamīputra Satakarni, the father of Ptolemy's contemporary Pulunāyi. Ptolemy probably found Nāsik mentioned in one of his lists as on a road leading from Ujjain southwards and he concluded that they belonged to the same kingdom.

*Ariakê* of the Sadinoi included the coast of the Konkan as far south as Baitipatna (near Mahād) and the Deccan between the Godavari and the Krishna. The name occurs in Varaha Mihira's *Brihat Samhita* XIV in the form Āiyaka. The tribal name Sadmoi is less easy to explain. The suggested connection with the word *Sādhanā* as meaning an agent (Lassén) and its application to the Kshatriapas of Gujrat, are not tenable. The only authority for this meaning of *Sādhanā* is Wilson's Sanskrit Dictionary, and at this time it is certain that Ariakê belonged, not to the Kshatriapas of Gujrat, but to the Satakarnis of Paithan on the Godāvāri. Bhāndarkar's identification of the Sadmoi with Varaha Mihira's *Sāntikas* seems also somewhat unsatisfactory. Ptolemy's name may possibly be a corruption of Satakarni or Sātavāhana. The coast towns of this region were Soupara (Suparā near Bassem), south of which Ptolemy places the river Goaris (Vaitarānī), Dongga (perhaps Dugād ten miles north of Bhivndi) south of which is the Bēnda river (Bhivndi Creek), Symylla, a mart and a cape, the Automala and Perumala of Pliny and the modern Chenl (Chemula); Milizôgyris an island, the same as the Melizôgara of the Periplus and (probably) as the Sigerus of Pliny and the modern Janjira; Hippokoura, either Ghodegāon or Kudā (Yule) in Kolābā district; Baitipatna, probably the Palaipatnai of the Periplus and the same as Pāl near Mahād.

The inland dominions of the Sadmoi were much more extensive than their coast line. Ptolemy gives two lists of cities, one of those lying to the west (*i. e.* north) of the Bēnda, whose course in the Deccan represents the Bhimā river, and the other of those between the Bēnda and the Pseudostômos (here the Mālprabhā and Krishna or possibly the Tungabhadra with its tributaries). The most easterly towns in the first list, Malippala and Sarisabis, are not satisfactorily identified, but must be looked for in the Nizām's country to the south-east of Haidarābād. Next comes Tagara mentioned in the Periplus (chapter 51) as ten days east from Paithau, and

therefore about the latitude of Kullbarga, with which it is identified by Yule. The distance and direction make its identification with Deogir (Wilford and others), Junnar (Bhagwanlal), or Kolhapur (Fleet) impossible. The best suggestion hitherto made is that it is Dārur or Dhārur (Bhāpīdārkar), but Dārur in the Bhār district is too far north, so Dhārur fifty miles west of Haidarābād must be taken as the most likely site. Next to Tagara Ptolemy mentions Baithana, which is the Paithana of the Periplus and the modern Paithan on the Godāvari. It is called by our author the capital of Siroptolemaios, who is the Śrī-Pulamāyi of the Nāsik cave inscriptions. Next to Baithana comes Deopali, which may safely be identified with the modern Peoli in the suburbs of Ahmednagar. Chaimaliba, the next stage, must be placed somewhere on the line between Ahmednagar and Junnar, which latter ancient town as to be identified with Ptolemy's Oménogāra, although this name is not easy to explain.

The second list of towns in Ariakê begins with Nagaronis (Nagarpur) which probably represents Poona which even then must have been a place of importance being at the head of the great road down the Bharghat. Tabasô (compare Varaha Mihira's Tapasasramāh and Ptolemy's own Tabasoi) may be the holy city of Pandharpur. Indê has retained its ancient name (Indi in the north of the Bijapur district). Next follows Tripangulida (Tikota in the Kurundwād State ?) and then Hippokoura, the capital of Balaokuros. Dr Bhandarkar has identified this king with the Vihvayakura of coins found in the Kolhapur states. His capital may possibly be Hippargi in the Sindgi taluka of the Bijapur district. Souboutton the next town on Ptolemy's list is not identifiable, but the name which follows, Siemalaga, must be Simal in the Bijapur taluka of the same district.

Kalhgeris may be identified not with Kanhagiri (McCordle) but with Galgal at the crossing of the Krishna, and Modogoulla is not Mûdgul (McCordle) but Madhol on the Ghatprabhā. Peturgala should probably read Penengala, and would then represent the old town of Panangala or Hongal in the Dhavād district. The last name on the list is Banaonasei, which is Vanavasi, about ten miles from Sursi in Kanara, a very old town where a separate branch of the Satavahans once ruled.

*The Pirate Coast* is the next division of Western India described by Ptolemy, who mentions five sea-ports but only two inland cities. It is clear that the pirates were hemmed in on the land side by the dominions of the Satavahans, and that they held but little territory above the ghāts, though their capital Mousepalle was in that region. The places on the coast from north to south were Mandugara, the Mandugara of the Periplus (chapter 53) which has been satisfactorily identified with Mandangul to the south of the Bānkot creek.

Byzantion, which, as Dr. Bhāndarkar first pointed out, is the Vaijayanti of inscriptions may be placed either at Chiplun or at Dahhol at the mouth of the Vāsishthī river. Chiplun is the only town of great antiquity in this part of the Konkan, and if it is not Vaijayanti Ptolemy has passed over it altogether. The similarity of the names has suggested the identification of Byzantion with Jaygal (Bhāndarkar) or Vijayadrug (Vincent), but both these places are comparatively modern. There are indeed no very ancient towns in the Konkan between Saṅgamēshvar and the Sāvantvādī border.

Khorsonēsos is generally admitted to be the peninsula of Goa.

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.

Klaudios  
Ptolemaios.

**Appendix VI.**EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.*Klaudios  
Ptolemaios.*

Armagara is placed a little to the north of the river Nanagounna and may be represented by Capo Ramas in Portuguese territory.

The river Nanagounna here is generally supposed to be the Kálináññi, though in its upper course it seems to represent the Tapti, and a confusion with the Nānā pass led Ptolemy to bring it into connection with the rivers Goaris and Bēnda (Campbell).

Nitra, the southernmost mart on the pirate coast, is the Nitrias of Pliny, and has been satisfactorily identified by Yule with Mangalor on the Netravati.

The inland cities of the Pirates are Olokhoua and Mousopallē the capital, both of which must be sought for in the rugged country about the sources of the Krishna and may provisionally be identified with the ancient towns of Karād and Karvir (Kolhāpur) respectively. To complete Ptolemy's account of this coast it is only necessary to mention the islands of Heptanēsia (Burnt Islands -) Trikadiba and Peperine. We are not here concerned with his account of the rest of India.

*Bardesanes.*

Bardesanes met at Babylon certain envoys sent from India to the emperor Antoninus Pius (A.D. 151-181) and received from Damadamis and Sandanēs, who were of their number, accounts of the customs of the Brahmins and of a rock temple containing a statue of Śiva in the Arthanāri form. Lassen (III. 62 and 318) connects Sandanes with the Sadma and places the temple in Western India but neither of these conclusions is necessary. The object of the embassy is unknown.

*Periplus*

The **Periplus of the Erythrean Sea** formerly though wrongly attributed to Arrian (150 A.D.), is an account of the Egyptian trade with East Africa and India, written by a merchant of Alexandria for the use of his fellows. It is preserved in a single manuscript which in some places is very corrupt. The age of this work has been much disputed. The chief views as to this matter are,

(i) that the Periplus was written before Pliny and made use of by him (Vincent, Schwanbeck, and Glaser). The arguments of Vincent and Schwanbeck are refuted by Muller (Geogr. Gr. Min. I. xcvi). Glaser's case is (Ausland 1891 page 45) that the Mahkhas of the Periplus is Malchos III of Nabathæa (A.D. 49-71), that the Periplus knows Meroë as capital of Ethiopia, while at the time of Nero's expedition to East Africa (A.D. 68), it had almost vanished, and lastly that the author of the Periplus is Basilis or Basilēs, whom Pliny names as an authority for his Book VI. It may be replied that Mahkhas is the title Mahk and may have been applied to any Arab Sherkh (Reinaud); that the Periplus does not with certainty mention Meroë at all; and that Basilis whether or not a contemporary of Ptolemy Philadelphos was at any rate earlier than Agatharkhidēs (c. 200 B.C.); who quotes him (Geogr. Gr. Min. I. 156);

(ii) that the Periplus was written at the same time as Pliny's work, but neither used the other (Salmasius). This view is refuted by Muller (*op. cit.* page 155);

(iii) that the Periplus was written after 161 A.D. (Dodwell); Müller has shown (*ibid.*) that Dodwell's arguments are inconclusive;

(iv) the received view that the Periplus was written between A.D. 80 and A.D. 89 (Muller);

(v) that the Periplus was written about the middle of the third century (Reinaud Mém. de l'Ac. des Inscr. XXIV. Pl. ii. translated in I. A. VIII. pages 330ff).

The only choice lies between the view of Muller and that of Reinand. Muller argues for a date between A.D. 80 and A.D. 89, because the *Periplus* knows no more than Pliny of India beyond the Ganges, whereas Ptolemy's knowledge is much greater; because the *Periplus* calls Ceylon Palaisimoundou, which is to Ptolemy (VII. iv. 1) an old name; because the Nabathæan kingdom, which was destroyed A.D. 105, was still in existence at the time of the *Periplus*; because the *Periplus* account of Hippalos shows it to be later than Pliny; and because the *Periplus* mentions king Zōskalēs, who must be the Za Hakalē of the Abyssinian lists who reigned A.D. 77-89.\* It may be replied that the *Periplus* is not a geography of Eastern Asia, but a guide book for traders with certain ports only: that Ptolemy must have found in his lists three names for Ceylon, Taprobanē, Palaisimoundou, and Sahkē, and that he has wrongly separated Palai from Simoundou 'taking it to mean "formerly" and therefore entered Simoundou as the old and Sahkē as the modern name,\* whereas all three names were in use together: that the Nabathæan king Malikhās was simply the Sheikh of the tribe (Reinand), and points to no definite date: that the *Periplus*' account of Hippalos is certainly later than Pliny; and that the Zoskales of the *Periplus* is the Za Sagal or Za Asgal of the Abyssinian lists, who reigned A.D. 246-47 (Reinand).

It follows that Reinand's date for the *Periplus* (A.D. 250) is the only one consistent with the facts and especially with the Indian facts. As will appear below the growth of the Hippalos legend since Pliny's time, the rival Parthians in Sindh, the mention of Mambares and the supplanting of Ozēne by Mmugara as his capital since Ptolemy's time, the independence of Baktria, and the notices of Saraganes and Sandanēs, are all points strongly in favour of Reinand's date.

In the time of the *Periplus* the ships carrying on the Indian trade started from Myos Hormos (near Ras Abu Somer) or Berenike (in Foul Bay) and sailed down the Red Sea to Mouza (Musa twenty-five miles north of Mokhā) and thence to the watering place Okelis (Ghalla) at the Straits. They then followed the Arabian coast as far as Kane (Hisa Ghmab in Hadramaut) passing on the way Eudamyon Arabia (Aden) once a great mart for Indian traders, but lately destroyed by king Elhas (Muller's conjecture for KAIΣAP of the MS.) From Kane the routes to India diverge, some ships sailing to the Indus and on to Barygaza, and others direct to the ports of Lamyrike (Malabār Coast). There was also another route to Lamyrikē, starting from Arōmata (Cape Guardafui). In all three voyages the ships made use of the monsoon starting from Egypt in July. The monsoon was called Hippalos, according to the *Periplus* (chapter 57), after the navigator who first discovered the direct course across the sea, and it has been inferred from Pliny's words (VI. 23) that this pilot lived in the middle of the first century A.D. But Pliny's own account shows that, as we should expect, the progress from a coasting to a direct voyage was a gradual one, with several intermediate stages, in all of which the monsoon was more or less made use of. There was therefore no reason for naming the wind from the pilot who merely made the last step. Further though Pliny knows Hippalos as the local name of the monsoon wind in the eastern seas, he says nothing of its having been the name of the inventor of the direct course. The inference seems to be that Hippalos the pilot is the child of a seaman's yarn arising out of the local name of

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.*Periplus.*

\* We learn from Pliny (VI. 22) that Palaisimoundou was the name of a town and a river in Ceylon, whence the name was extended to the whole island.

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.*Periplus.*

the monsoon wind, and that his presents in the *Periplus* and not in Pliny shows that the former writer is much later than the latter.

The merchant bound for Skythia (Sindh) before he reaches land, which lies low to the northward, meets the white water from the river Sinthos (Indus) and water snakes, (chapter 38). The river has seven mouths, small and marshy all but the middle one, on which is the port of Barbarikon (Shāhbandar, Haig, page 31) whence the merchants' wares are carried up by river to the capital Minnagar (near Shāhādāpur, Haig, page 32), which is ruled by Parthians who constantly expel one another (chapter 39). These contending Parthians must have been the remnant of the Kārēn Pahlavs who joined with the Kushāns to attack Ardeshir Papakān (Journ. As. [1866] VII 131). The imports are clothing, flowered cottons, topazes, coral, storax, frankincense, glass vessels, silver plate, specie and wine, and the exports costus (spice), bdellium (gum), yellow dye, spikenard, emeralds, sapphires, furs from Tibet, cottons, silk thread, and indigo. The list of imports shows that the people of Skythia were a civilised race and by no means wild nomads.

The *Periplus* next (chapter 40) gives an accurate account of the Ran (Rimón) which in those days was probably below sea level (Haig, page 22, Barnes' Travels into Bokhara, III. 309ff.), and was already divided into the Great and the Little. Both were marshy shallows even out of sight of land and therefore dangerous to navigators. The Ran was then as now bounded to south and west by seven islands, and the headland Barakē (Dvārakā) a place of special danger of whose neighbourhood ships were warned by meeting with great black water-snakes.

The next chapter (41) describes the gulf of Barygaza (gulf of Cambay) and the adjoining land, but the passage has been much mangled by the copyist of our only MS. and more still by the guesses of editors. According to the simplest correction (*ἡ ἀποστῆς Ἀράκην ὁρᾷ*) our author says that next after Barakē (Dvārakā) follows the gulf of Barygaza and the country towards Ariake being the beginning of the kingdom of Mambaros and of all India. Mambaros may possibly be a corruption of Makhatrapos or some similar Greek form of Mahakshatrapa, the title of the so-called "Sāh Kings" who ruled here at this period (A.D. 250). According to the reading of the MS. the author goes on to say that "the inland part of this country bordering on the Ibēria (read Sabiria = Sanvira) district of Skythia is called . . . (the name, perhaps Maru, has dropped out of the text), and the sea-coast Syñstrionē (Surāshtra)." The country abounded then as now in cattle, corn, rice, cotton and coarse cotton cloth and the people were tall and dark. The capital of the country was Minnagara whence much cotton was brought down to Barygaza. This Minnagara is perhaps the city of that name placed by Ptolemy near Mānpur in the Vindhya, but it has with more probability been identified with Janāgad (Bhagānlāl) which was once called Manipura (Kath. Gaz. 487). Our author states that in this part of the country were to be found old temples, ruined camps and large wells, relics (he says) of Alexander's march, but more probably the work of Menandros and Apollodotos. This statement certainly points to Kāthiāváda rather than to Mānpur. The voyage along this coast from Barbarikon to the headland of Pāpikē (Gopnāth) near Astakapra (Hāthab) and opposite to Barygaza (Broach) was one of 3000 stadia=300 miles, which is roughly correct. The next chapter (42) describes the northern part of the gulf of Cambay as 300 stadia wide and running northward to the river Mais (Mahi). Ships bound for Barygaza steer first northward past the island

Baidones (Peram) and then eastward towards the mouth of the Namnadios (Narmadâ) the river of Broach. The navigation (chapter 43) is difficult by reason of rocks and shoals such as *Hêrônê* (perhaps named from some wreck) opposite the village of *Kamôni* (Kinj) on the eastern shore and by reason of the current on the western near *Pâpikê* (perhaps a sailor's name meaning Unlucky). Hence the government sends out fishermen in long boats called *Trappaga* or *Kotumba* (Kotia) to meet the ships (chapter 44) and pilot them into *Barygaza*, 300 stadia up the river, by towing, and taking advantage of the tides. In this connection our author gives a graphic description of the Bore in the *Narbada* (chapter 45) and of the dangers to which strange ships are exposed thereby (chapter 46).

## Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.*Periplus.*

Inland from *Barygaza* (that is, from the whole kingdom, which, as we have seen, bordered on *Savîra* or *Multan*) lay (chapter 47) the *Aratrioi* (*Aratras* of the *Mahâbhârata* and *Prânas*, who lived in the Panjâb), the *Arakhôsioi* (people of eastern Afghanistan), *Gandariaoi* (*Gandhâra* of N.-W. Panjâb), *Proklais* (near *Peshâwar*), and beyond them the *Baktriani* (of *Balkh*) a most warlike race governed by their own independent sovereigns. These last are probably the *Kushans* who, when the *Parthian* empire fell to pieces in the second quarter of the third century, joined the *Karen Pahlavs* in attacking *Ardeshr*. It was from these parts, says our author, that *Alexander* marched into India as far as the *Ganges*—an interesting glimpse of the growth of the *Alexander* legend since the days of *Arrian* (i. p. 360). Our author found old *drakhmæ* of *Menandros* and *Apollodotos* still current in *Barygaza*.

Eastward in the same kingdom (chapter 48) is the city of *Ozênê*, which was formerly the capital, whence onyxes, porcelain, muslins, and cottons are brought to *Barygaza*. From the country beyond *Proklais* came costus, bdellium, and spikenard of three kinds, the *Kattybourino*, the *Patropapigie*, and the *Kabaliæ* (this last from *Kabul*).

We learn incidentally that besides the regular Egyptian trade *Barygaza* had commercial relations with *Monza* in *Arabia* (chapter 21) with the *East African* coast (chapter 14) and with *Apologos* (*Obollah*) at the head of the *Persian Gulf* and with *Omana* on its eastern shore (chapter 36). The imports of *Barygaza* were wine, bronze, tin and lead, coral and gold stone (topaz?), cloth of all sorts, variegated sashes (like the horrible *Berlin wool* comforters of modern days), storax, sweet clover, white glass, gum sandarac, stibium for the eyes, and gold and silver coin, and unguents. Besides, there were imported for the king costly silver plate, musical instruments (music boxes are still favoured by *Indian* royalty), handsome girds for the harem (these are the famous *Yamani* handmaids of the *Indian* drama), high-class wine, apparel and choice unguents, a list which shows that these monarchs lived in considerable luxury. The exports of *Barygaza* were spikenard, costus, bdellium, ivory, onyxes, porcelain, box-thorn, cottons, silk, silk thread, long pepper (*chillies*), and other wares from the coast ports.

From *Barygaza* our author rightly says (chapter 50) that the coast trends southward and the country is called *Dakshinabadês* (*Dakshinâpatha*): much of the inland country is waste and infested by wild beasts, while populous tribes inhabit other regions as far as the *Ganges*. The chief towns in *Dakshinabadês* (chapter 51) are *Paithana* (*Paithon*) twenty days journey south of *Barygaza* and *Tagara* (*Dhârur*): very large city ten days east of *Paithana*. From *Paithana* come onyxes, and from *Tagara* cottons, muslins and other local wares from the (east) coast.

Appendix VI.

EARLY GREEKS  
AND ROMANS.

*Periplus.*

The smaller ports south of Barygaza are Akabaron (perhaps the Khahirun of Mahomedan writers and the modern Kāvēri the river of Nāṁṣāri) Souppara (Supārā near Bassén) and Kallhena, which was made a mart by the elder Saraganēs, but much injured when Sandanēs became its master, for from his time Greek vessels visiting the port are sent under guard to Barygaza. This interesting statement is one of the clearest indications of the date of the Periplus. As Bhāndārkar has shown the elder Saraganēs implies also a younger, who can be no other than Yajñasri Satākarni (A.D. 116), and the Periplus must be later than his time. The Sandanēs of the text must have been a ruler of Gujarāt and may be identified with the Kshatrapa Sanghadāman (A.D. 224).

South of Kallhena (chapter 53) were Sēmulla (Chaul) Mandagora (Mandargul) Palapatmai (Pal near Mahād) Melizegura (probably Janjira) and Byzantion (Chiplun). The words which follow probably give another name of Byzantion which was formerly also called "Turanoshoas," the name Toparon being a misunderstanding (Müller, Geogr. Gr. Min. I. 296). South of this are the islands of Sēsekreenai (Burnt Islands), Angadioi (Angedivya), Kainotai (Island of St. George) near the Khersonēsos (Gom), and Louke (Laccadives?) all pirate haunts. Next comes Lamyrike (the Tamil country) the first marts of which are Naoura (Cannanor or Tellichery rather than Honavar, which is too far north) and Tyndis (Kadalundi near Beptur) and south of these Muziris (Kraanganur) and Nelkynda (Kallada). Tyndis and Muziris were subject to Keprobrotas (Kecalapatia that is the Cera king) and Nelkynda to Pandion (the Pandya king of Madura). Muziris was a very prosperous mart trading with Arike (North Konkan) as well as Egypt. Nelkynda was up a river 120 stadia from the sea ships taking in cargo at the village of Bekarē at the mouth of the river. Our author gives an interesting account of the trade at these ports and further south as well as on the east coast, but we are not concerned with this part of his work.

*Markianos.*

**Markianos** of Hirakleia about the year 400 A.D. is the leading geographer of the period following Ptolemy, but his work consisted chiefly in corrections of Ptolemy's distances taken from an obscure geographer named Prôtágoras. He adds no new facts to Ptolemy's account of western India.

*Stephanos.*

**Stephanos** of Byzantium wrote about 450 A.D. (or at any rate later than Markianos whom he quotes) a huge geographical dictionary of which we have an epitome by one Hefmidos. The Indian names he gives are chiefly taken from Hekatanos, Arrianos, and especially from a poem called Bassarika on the exploits of Dionysos, by a certain Dionysos. But his geography is far from accurate he calls Barakē (Dvāraka) an island, and Barygaza (Broach) a city of Gedrōsia. Among the cities he names are Argantē (quoted from Hekatanos), Barygaza (Broach) Boukephala (Jalalpur), Byzantion (Chiplun), Gēreia, Gorgippia, Darsanna famous for woven cloths, Dionysopolis (Nysa?), Katha, (Multan?), Kaspiyros and Kaspeiros (Kashmir), Margana, Mūsaka (in Swāt), Nysa, Palimbothra (Pātaliputra), Panaioura near the Indus, Patala (thirty-five miles south-east of Haidarābād, Sindh), Rhodōē, Rhōganōē, Rhon in Gaudarikē, Saneia, Sesimhon, Sindu in the great gulf (perhaps Ptolemy's Asinda, Vadnagar), Sōlimna, and Taxila. He also names a number of tribes, of whom none but the Ōrbītai (Makrān) the Pandai (Pāndya) Bōlingu (Bhāulingi Sālvas) and possibly the Silingoi (Sālānkāyana) belong to the western coast.

**Kosmas Indikopleustes**, shipman and monk, who wrote his *Topographia Christiana* between A.D. 530 and 550, is the last of the ancient writers who shows independent knowledge of India. He says that Sindu (Sindh), is where India begins, the Indus being the boundary between it and Persia. The chief ports of India are Sindu (Debal), which exports musk and nard; Orrhotha (Sarashtu that is Yeraval) which had a king of its own; Kalliana (Kalyan) a great port exporting brass, and sisam (blackwood) logs and cloth having a king of its own and a community of Christians under a Persian bishop; Sibor which also had a king of its own and therefore cannot be Supara, which is too close to Kalliana but must be Goa the Sindabur of the Arabs; Paria, Mangaruth (Mangalore), Salopatana, Nalopatana, and Pugopatana which are the five marts of Malé the pepper country (Malabar) where also there are many Christians. Five days' sail south of Malé lay Selethiba or Taprobane (Ceylon), divided into two kingdoms in one of which is found the hyacinth-stone. The island has many temples and a church of Persian Christians, and is much resorted to by ships from India, Persia, and Ethiopia dealing in silk, aloewood, cloves, sandalwood, &c. On the east coast of India is Marallo (Morava opposite Ceylon) whence conch-shells are exported. Then Kabir (Kaveripatam or Pegu). Yule's Cathay (Indo-China) which exports Alabandinnin, further on is the clove country and furthest of all Tzusta (China) which produces the silk. In India further up the country, that is further north, are the White Onnoi or Humas who have a king named Gollas (Mihirakula of inscriptions) who goes forth to war with 1000 elephants and many horsemen and tyrannises over India, exacting tribute from the people. His army is said to be so vast as once to have drunk dry the ditch surrounding a besieged city and marched in dryshod.

In his book XI. Kosmas gives some account of the wild beasts of India but this part of his work does not require notice here.

This is the last glimpse we get of India before the Arabs cut off the old line of communication with the Empire by the conquest of Egypt A.D. 644-2).

## Appendix VI.

### EARLY GREEKS AND ROMANS.

*Kosmas.*



# INDEX.

**ABBA SHIPLUKAR**: Peshwa's Subhedar of Gujarât, levies contributions on the Garkwâr villages, 111, is made over to the British Government (1807), 116.

**ABDUL AZIZ KHÂN**: of Junnar, becomes viceroy by a forged order and appoints Jawan Mard Khân his deputy in Gujarât, 326, his defeat and death at Kun Kathodra 328.

**ABDUL KADIR**: son and prime minister of Ghiâtsuddin Khilji, 362, 364. See Nasiruddin.

**ABDUL KARIM**: engineer of the emperor Jehangir, repairs buildings at Mandu (1617), 373.

**ABDULI (H) KHÂN UZBÂK**: Akbar's general, reconquers Malwa (1563), 369.

**ABDULLAH WASSAF**: author of *Taziyat ul-Amir*, 515 and note 6.

**ABHAYSINGH RÂJPOOT**: 461. See Abhaysingh.

**ABHAYATILAKAGANI**: Jain monk (1255), revised the *Dvaya naya* 156.

**ABHAYSINGH**: Maharaja fifty-third viceroy of Gujarât (1730-1733) 310, his defeat by Mubârak ul-Mulk, 311, procures assassination of Pilaji Garkwâr and takes Baroda (1732), 313, is re-appointed fifty-fifth viceroy of Gujarât, 319.

**ABHUBHANA CHINTAMANI**, work, written by Hemachandra, 192.

**ABHIMANYU**: early Rîshtrakûta prince, his copperplate grant, 120.

**ABHIRA**, name of a tribe, and province, 52, 64, note 3. See *Abir* and *Chudasama*.

**ABHIRAS**: tribe, 134.

**ABRI**, tribe, 531.

**ABRPA**: name of a province, 55, note 1, 137; Upper Sindh and Multan, 537. See *Abhira*.

**ABU**: king of, present with Mularaja in the battle with Grahâsipa, 160, magnificent temple of Nagnâth built by Vastupâla and Tejapâla on, 199, 202, inscription on the temple of Vastupâla at, 204; Mutiny at, 139; Paramâra possession, 170, Mount, 532, 534.

**ABULÂNA**: perhaps Obollah, 35.

**ABUL FAZL**: Akbar's historian (1590), his account of Sultan Bahâdur's death, 349, 371.

**ABU RÎHÂN**: 508, 510. See *Al Biruni*.

**ABU ZAID**: Arab writer (913), 525, 526 note 5, 528, 530.

**ABU ZEFAR HASAN**: author of the second part of *Sil-silât ut-Tawârikh*, 505 note 2.

**ACCAL**: early race, 174 and note 1.

**ACHARYAS**: funeral Brahmans, 451.

**ADILÂJ**: battle of (1730), 311.

**ADIN**: 511, 513.

**ADHYATMOPARISHAD**: religious work compiled by Hemachandra, 193.

**ADINATHA**: temple on Satrunjaya of, 70 note 3. See *Adinatha*.

**ADIVÂRA**: Jam god on Satrunjaya hill, 177, 186.

**ADMINISTRATION**: of the Valabhis (500 to 700) 81.

**ADINATH**: temple of, completed, 186. See *Adinatha*.

**ADIRAS GATIS**: 536.

**AFGHANISTAN**: 545.

**AFIRA**: 535.

**AGATHAKRIDIS**: (born 250 A.D.) 535, 542.

**AGNIKULAS**: Râputas, 163, 468.

**AGHA MUHAMMAD HUSAIN**: commander of the fort of Pottâl, his surrender, 327.

**AGRA**: fort, 365.

**AGREEMENT**: between the Peshwa and the Dabhade 303.

**AGRIKADARA**: identified with Nagar, 520.

**AGHADA**: son of Udaya Vania, high officer in the reign of Kumârapala, 170, not acknowledging Kumârapala goes to Amoraja, 184.

**AGAR**: city, 538.

**AGIR**: 175. See *Chudasama* and *Abhira*.

**AGIRS**: settlement of, 137, 138.

**AHMAD**: 513. See *Ahmed*.

**AHMAD (BÂD)**: built (1413), 236, 513; sacked (1583), 224, 225; manuscript found at, 205; riot at (681), death of the leader Abu Bakr by poison, 286, 287; riots at (1730), 310; Umbal, widow of Khanderav Dabhâdo marches upon, 314; siege of and capture by the Marâthas and Momu Khân (1737-1738), 320, prosperity of, 320; disputes about the government of, between Rangoji and Momu Khân (1735), 3-2; disturbances at, between the Musalmâns and the Marâthas, 325; mutiny of troops at, confinement of Fida-ud-din and Muftakhr Khân at, capture of the city of, by Jawan Mard Khân, 327; Marâthas in (1743-44), 327, siege of by Fakhr-ud-daulah and Râisingsh of Idar and defeat and capture of the Viceroy at, by Jawan Mard Khân, 329; expulsion of Khanderav Garkwâr's deputy Trîmbak from, by

- Rangoji, 329; siege and capture of, by the Maráthas under Raghubhadró, 337, mintage of coins in the emperor's name stopped at, (1753), 338; assassination of Rangoji the Marátha deputy at and expulsion of the Maráthas from, by Momin Khán; Kóh's attempt to plunder the Dutch factory at, 339-340; siege of, by the Maráthas, Shah Nur intercedes with the Peshwa to settle the affairs of, and fails, surrender of (1758), 341, 312, Sadashiv Rautchandrá is appointed viceroy at (1760), 341, state of the parties at, 390; riots at (1738), 391, captured by General Goldard (1760), 109, surrendered to Govindráy Garkvár by Ábha Shalukar, 111, cession of the Fort of, to the English by Garkvár in 1817, 118, mutiny at (1857), 438; disturbances at (14th Septem. 1857), 410, suppression of the mutiny at, 412. See Ahmedabad.
- AHMAD ALI**, governor of Gujarat, 230.
- AHMED I.**, Ahmedabad king (1411-1441), builds Ahmedabad (1413); defeats the Idar chief (1414), suppresses a revolt, spreads Islam, sends expedition against Málwa (1417), attacks Champner (1418), his war with Málwa (1422), defeats the Idar chief (1425), recovers Malim (1429) and Baglan (1431) 207 note 1, 215, 279, 235-241.
- AHMEDABAD**, 513. See Ahmedabad.
- AHMEDABAD KINGS**, rule of (1403-1573), 207, 209, 210, 231, 264.
- AHMED KHÁN**, see Ahmed I.
- AHMED KHÁN HABSHI**, commandant of the Surat fort, expelled by the English (1759), 343.
- AHMEDNAGAR**, fort built (1427), 238.
- AHMED SHAH**, son and successor of Emperor Muhammad Sháh, 332, deposed (1754), 339.
- AHMED SHAH**, grandson and successor of Muzaáffar I of Gujarat (1399-1411), besieges Mándu twice between A.D. 1418 and 1422, 359.
- AGRIDIOI**, Angedivá, 546.
- AGRIOT**, inscription at, 107.
- AIN-UL-MULK MILEFANI**, Gujarat governor (1318), 229, 230.
- AJAYAPALA**, Chohan king (840), 167.
- AJAYAPALA**, Chaulukya king (1174-1177), successor of Kumárapála persecuted Jain officers and scholars, is murdered by the door-keeper, 194-195.
- AJIPAL**, monarch of Kapauj, killed by Nainpal, 120.
- AJITSINGH**, son of Maharaja Juvantsingh of Marwár, causes disturbance (1689-1692), 288, 289, his plans of rebellion checked (1705), 291; recovers Jodhpur (1709), 295, 296; is reconciled with the emperor (1711), gives his daughter to him in marriage, 297; is appointed forty-seventh viceroy of Gujarát, disagrees with Haidar Káfi Khán, 299-300; is appointed forty-ninth viceroy of Gujarát (1719-1721), 301.
- AJMIR**, Mher settlement at, 136; capital of Chohan kings, 157, 158.
- AKABAROV**, perhaps Khahiran, 518, 516.
- AKALAVARSHA**, Ráj (rakṣa king of the Gujarát branch, re-establishes himself in the territory of his father Dhruva, 126.
- AKALAVARSHA**, another name of Krishna, the Dakhan Rashtrakúta king, recovers the disputed area to the south of the Tápti, his grants, 127-128. See Krishna.
- AKAR** (Akari), ancient name of Málwa, 36 and note 1.
- AKBAR**, Delhi emperor (1573-1604), struggles with the Besodiyas, 110, 207, 211, 220, marriage Miran Mahanák Khán's daughter at Mándu (1564), 369.
- AKBAR**, Aurangzib's son, rebels (1697), 290.
- AKBARPÚR**, the palace at, built by Nasir-ud-din of Málwa (1500-1512), 365.
- AKHAM LOHANA**, of Brahmanábad, asks help of the king of Hindu-cin, 519.
- AKKURA**, brother of Prachunda, 129.
- AKOTA**, 125.
- AKOTRE VARA**, Ankoṭvara, 115.
- ALAI KHAN**, 190, brother of Ala-ud-din Khilji leads an expedition against Gujarat and conquers it (1297), invades Somnath, constructs a Jama mosque at Anahadaváda with white marble pillars taken from Jain temples, 205.
- ALAKHANA**, Gujjara king (890), 3, cedes Takkakasa, 468.
- ALAUDDIN II.**, Azizuddin, son of Jahándar Sháh, succeeds to the throne of Delhi (1751-1759), 339.
- AL-A'ISI**, father of Usmán, 505.
- ALANKARA**, CHIDAMANI, work on rhetoric compiled by Hémachandra, 193.
- ALAM ALI KHAN**, deputy viceroy of the Dakhan, pursues the Nizam, is defeated and slain at Bálápur (1720), 301.
- ALAUDDIN KHILJI**, Delhi emperor (1296-1315), desecrates the Somnath temple, 190, 207, 229, 512, 515.
- AL BAITIMAN**, identified with Blinnál, expedition against, 109, 167.
- ALBAN**, Lieutenant, disarms and shoots Musaphakán the Arab leader in revolt at Sunth, 111.
- ALBURUNI**, 78 and note, 81, 167 note 1. See Al Biruni.
- AL BILADRI**, Ahmed bin Yáhya, surnamed Abu Jaffer, writer of Futuh-ul-Buláin (892), 505 and note 3, 506, 518 and notes 8 and 9, 520.
- AL BIRUNI**, Abu Rihán, Arab traveller (970-1039), 153, 500, 507 and note 9, 508 and note 8, 510 and note 3, 511 and note 9, 512 and note 1, 513 and note 11, 514, 516 and note 11, 517, 518, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 527, 528, 730, 531. See Al Biruni and Abu Rihán.
- ALEXANDER**, the Great, Macedonian emperor (B.C. 326-323), 164 note 5, 497, 532, 536, 537, 544, 545.
- ALEXANDRIA**, town, 536.
- AL HAJWÁJ**, (714), 506.
- AL HIND**, India, 505 note 5, 507.

- ALI AKBAR** : of Ispahān, governor of Surat and Cambay, 280; his assassination (1616), 280.
- AL IDRISI** : Abu Abdallah Muhammad, author of *Nuzhat-ul-Mushāṭik* (1100), 508 and note 10, 509 note 5, 510, 511, 512 and note 1, 516, 517 and note 2, 519, 521, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 531.
- ALIBU** : 386.
- ALINGA** : appointed second counsellor, 181. See *Sajjūn*.
- AL ISTAKHRI** : Abu Is-hāk, author of *Kitāb-ul-Akālīm* (951), 509 note 3, 510 note 1, 511 and notes 3 and 4, 512, 514 and notes 2 and 3, 516 notes 6 and 7, 520 and note 10, 523.
- AL JAHNABI** : Arab writer (982-999), 503 note 10, 525, 526.
- AL KĀZWINI** : Zakariyah Ibn Muhammad author of *Asar-ul-Bilad* (1263-1275), 509 note 2, 510 and note 1, 516 and note 14, 517 note 1, 529.
- ALIAHABAD** : inscription of Samudragupta at, 63, 65.
- ALITIKOCHADIS** : Bindu-sāra, son of Chandragupta, 534.
- AL MAHDI** : Khalifah (775-785), 525.
- AL MAMUN** : Abū al-Khalifah (813-833), 506, 520.
- AL MAS'UDI** : Abul Hasan, Arab traveller (915-944), 505 note 5, 506 note 8, 510, 512, 513, 514, 516, 518 and note 4, 520, 521, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 531.
- AL MUKHTI** : Abul Rahman, 513.
- AL MURĀWAKKIL** : 505 note 3.
- ALOR** : town, 538.
- ALP KHĀN**, governor of Gujaraṭ (1310), 229 note 6.
- AMANAT KHAN**, military governor of Surat (1690), 288. See *Ismā'īl Khan*.
- AMARABHATA** : Sanskrit form of Ambada, 185 note 3.
- AMARDAKA** : branch of Saurashtra, 138.
- AMARJIT** : Dvān of Junāgadh (1759-1784), 70.
- AMBI PHAVANI** : rugged land beyond, owned by a branch of the Vaghelas, 206.
- AMBADA** : son of Udayana, rises to prominence in the reign of Kumārapāla, 170, fights with Mallikārjuna and in a second fight kills him for which he is honoured with the title of Rājapitāmaha, 185-186, 186 note 1, 191. Rises to prominence in Ajayapāla in religious matters and is killed in a fight, 195.
- AMBAKA** : Sanskrit form of Ambada, 185 note 3.
- AMBĀPATAKA** : village, grant of, to a Jain temple at Navasari, 125.
- AMBIKĀ** : goddess, temple of, at Kodinār, 182 and note.
- ANHAL** : 511. See *Anahilavāḍa*.
- AMRĪ** : sub-divisional officer, 210, 212.
- AMIN** : chief treasurer, 212, 214.
- AMIRANI SADAH** : insurrection of (1346), 230.
- AMIRKILĀN** : Rāghoba's general, 405.
- AMIR KHUSRAO** : author of *Tarikh-i-Alai*, 515.
- AMJERA** : rising at, 439.
- AMOGHVARSHA I.** : Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭa king, 123, 124; invades Gujaraṭ, 125, 126, 128, 525.
- AMRABHATA** : see *Ambada*.
- AMRĀKĀRDAVA** : Gupta chief, 66.
- AMRELI** : battle at (1730), 312; Mahāls, 418.
- AMRU BIN JAN (L. TAGHILABI)** : 521.
- AM-SUVARMAN** : inscription of, 81.
- ANAHILA** : Bhārvaḍ, shows Vanarāja the site of Anahilavāḍa, 151.
- ANAHILAPURA** : city, 151; Vanarāja's installation at, 152; Ambada returns victorious to, after his fight with Mallikārjuna, 186. See *Anahilavāḍa*.
- ANAHILAVADA** : Chāvasas of, 124; foundation of (716), 466; removal of the capital of Mularāja Solanki to, 139; named after a Bhārvaḍ who shows its site; founding of Jain temple at, 151-152; chroniclers, 156; Mularāja's father and uncles stop at, 156; cavalry parade at, 157; Jain and Mahādev temples at, 160, 161; lake built by Durlabha at, 163; invasion by Kulachandra of, 163-164; Bhima I, king of, at Mahmud's advance abandons it and flies away, 166; proposed capital of Mahmud of Ghazni, 168 note 1; Karmameru temple at, 170; Vikramasinha imprisoned at, 185; house-temple at, 193; sack of (1191), 229, its different names, 511. See *Anahilapura*.
- ANAHILAVATA** : Sanskrit form of Anahilavāḍa, 151.
- ANAHILAPATAKA** : 204. See *Anahilavada*.
- ANAKA** : see *Arnorāja*.
- ANALOK** : name of Arnorāja, father of Jāvanāprastha, as given in an inscription, 200.
- ANANTADEVA** : name of Anantaja as given in the *Harimuramahākāvya*, 182. See *Arnorāja*.
- ANANTAPURA** : ancient name of Valanagara, 6 and note 2.
- ANANDRAY GĀKWAḌ** : heir of Govindrāo, 412.
- ANANDRAYPATAR** : settles at Dhar (A.D. 1734), 382. His Highness Sir, K.C.S.I., C.I.E., the present Maharaja of Dhar 383.
- ANANTAPURA** : fort of, 180 note 2.
- ANARAJA** : king of Sakambhari, 181 and note 3, 182. See *Arnorāja*.
- ANALITA** : ancient division of Gujaraṭ, 6, 35, 36; legendary Gujaraṭ king, 8.
- ANANTAPURA** : see *Anantapura*.
- ANDARĪ** : Andhras 532, 543.
- ANDHRAS** : the (A.D. 138), 32, 52. king of, at the bridegroom-choosing of Durlabhadevi, 163, 533.
- ANDRAPANA** : identified with Darban, 538.
- ANDHRAHRIKVAS** : see *Andhras* and *Sāta-karni*.
- ANĀKARṢHĀNAMĀLI** : Collection of words of more than one meaning, compiled by Hemachandra, 192.
- ANGA** : king of, at the bridegroom-choosing of Durlabhadevi, 163.
- ANGAR** : village, destruction of, by Mr. Ashburner, 143.
- ANGEDIYA** : island, 546.
- ANHLAWĀRA** : 516. See *Anahilavāḍa*.
- ANHLAWĀRA** : 512, 514. See *Anahilavāḍa*.
- ANKEVARA** : Akalavarsha Kishna's Bagumia grant from, 128; Marāthās defeated at (A.D. 1711), 297.
- ANGKOR** : capital of Cambodia, 499, 500, 502.

- ANNIUS FLOCIANUS 536.  
 ANKOTĀKA : modern Akota, 125.  
 ANO : Prakrit local name of Anaraja, 181 note 3.  
     See Anoraja.  
 ANOPINGH BHANDARI : deputy of the viceroy Ajitsingh, 301.  
 ANRĀJA : statue of, 153.  
 ANTĀJĪ BHĀSKER : Maratha leader in Gujarāt, 391.  
 ANTIOCH : 536.  
 ANTONIO DE SILVEIRA : Portuguese command-  
     er in India, 349.  
 ANTONIUS PIVS : Roman emperor, (154 - 181),  
     512.  
     NĀROLI : plate at, 122.  
     NĀROLI-CHĀROLI : Kākka, the Rāshtrakūṭa  
     prince's grant at, 121.  
 ANUPA : name of country, 36 note 2.  
 ANUPAMA : wife of Tejapala, 202.  
 ANPA GANESH : Peshwa's viceroy of Gujarāt,  
     345.  
 APALĀDITYA : successor of Mallikārjuna, 186.  
 APARĀNTA : the western seaboard, 36 and  
     note 2.  
 APARINAKAS 531.  
 APOKOPA : the Aravallis 539.  
 APOLIOPORUS : Baktrian-Greek king, 17, 18 ;  
     his inscriptions, 535, 514, 515  
 APOLOGOS : modern Obollah, 545.  
 APARASTRA : 534.  
 APARASTRA : 533, 531.  
 ARABIA : 513.  
 ARAB GUARD : at Baroda, disbanded (1803),  
     413.  
 ARABHATIA : see Ahada.  
 ARAB : invasion by, 117, raids of, 465, advance  
     of, by sea and land (637) and through Persia,  
     (650 - 660), 197, 526, 527, 529.  
 ARAKHOSIOI : people of eastern Afghanistan,  
  
 ARATRIOI : Arattas of the Mahābhārata, 545.  
 ARATTAS : 515.  
 ARĀS : battle of (1723), 305.  
 ARBUDA : see Abu.  
 ARCHIPELAGO : Malay, 492.  
 ARDABE : tribe, 531.  
 ARDESHIR PAPAKĀN : 541, 545.  
 ARDHASHTAMA : district, 191.  
 ARDIVIJAYA : grandson of Bhuvijaya (660), 489  
 ARGANGE : city, 516  
 ARHĀJ DINKĀ JHOPOL : mosque in Ajmir,  
     originally Sanskrit school, 180.  
 ARHAT ARĀJĀ : great monastery built by, 79.  
 ARĪAKE : north Konkan, 540, 514, 546.  
 ARIKESARI : 466  
 ARICHTANEMI : Jain temple of, 181, modern  
     Ahmadabad.  
 ARJUNA : visit of, to Kāthiavada, 9.  
 ARJUNADEVA : Vāghela chief (1262-1274), 176,  
     succeeds Visaladeva ; extension of his kingdom  
     and his inscriptions, 203-204, 206.  
 ARJUNĀYANA : Kahatriya tribe, 64 note 3.  
 ARMAĞABA : probably Cape Rama, 512  
 ARNORĀJA : king of Sambhar, 179, 182, 184 ;  
     fights with Kumārāpala and is defeated, 181,  
     188. See Anaraja.  
 ARNORĀJA : son of Dhavala, king of Bhuma-  
     palli, helps Bhuma II. in resisting the power  
     of his nobles (1176 - 1206), 196, 197, 198, 206.  
     See Anāka.  
 ARORĀJĀ : Cape Guadafui, 543  
 AROR DOMINIONS : spread of, 195.  
 ARRYAN : (150 A.D.), 532, 533, 531, 542, 545.  
 ARRĀNOS : 516  
 ARTOGATA : town, 538.  
 ARYAKA : county, 510  
 ASĀ BHIL, defeat of (1413-14), 233.  
 ASAPALA : prince, 172 and note 1.  
 ASAPALLI : modern Ahmedābād, 205.  
 ASAPH JAH NIZĀM-UL-MULK : governor of  
     Malwa (1717 - 1721), 382.  
 ASAR-UL-BILĀD : work by Al Kazwini, 510 and  
     note 1.  
 ASĀRVA : village, 329, 513.  
 ASĀVAL : village, temples at, 170.  
 ASĀVAL : Ahmadabad, 231, 234, 235, 508, 509,  
     510, 512, 513, 518.  
 ASHA : Bhil chief, slain by Karna, 170.  
 ASHĀBALI : modern Asaval, seat of Bhil chief,  
     Asha, 170.  
 ASHTURNER : Mr., Assistant Magistrate, Kaira,  
     raises a fort for the protection of the district,  
     439, suppresses a rising of Thākors at Par-  
     lāhpur 443, 444.  
 ASHĀL-UL-BILĀD : work by Ibnī Haukal, 511.  
 ASHRAFIS : coins, 312.  
 ASINDA : identification of, 539.  
 ASINI : tribe, 531  
 ASMAĞI : the Asmakas, 532, 533.  
 ASMAKAS : 533  
 ASOKA : Mauryan emperor (n.c. 260), 13, 11 ;  
     raises monuments in Buddha's places of rest,  
     79  
 ASRAMAS : Brahman stages of life, 116.  
 ASSAM : 528 See Kamai  
 ASSIGNED LANDS : during Musalmān period,  
     209, 210, 211, 213, 214.  
 AS SINDH : Indus valley, 507  
 ASĀKAPRA : town, identified with Hastaka-  
     vāpi or Hattah, 539, 511  
 ASHĀDA : son of Udaya, rises to a high posi-  
     tion under Kumārāpala, 170.  
 ASHĀVA : darbhā hall, built by Siddharaja,  
     179.  
 ATABAK ABU BAKR : king (1154-1159), Saādī's  
     patron, 515 note 4.  
 ARHVA : village, on the Tāpti, 309 ; fort,  
     built at (1730), 310, 331.  
 ATIFA : 84.  
 ATRI : sage, 161.  
 ATTOK : town, 538.  
 AUDKIN : Prām, 509, 515.  
 AUDICHYAS : subdivision of Brāhmins, origin-  
     ally northerners, 161 ; grants to, 172.  
 ADUMBARI ŚALAS : tribe, 531.  
 AUGUSTUS : (A.D. 14) 535.  
 AURANGZIB : Mughal emperor ; 226 ; Prince  
     Muhammad, twenty-fifth viceroy of Gujarāt  
     (1644-1646), 280 ; his rule marked by re-  
     ligious disputes, is recalled, 280 ; joins with  
     Murād, defeats Jaswantingh and Dārīh  
     Shikoh, confines Murād and ascends the

- throne (1658), 282; appoints Shih Yákut of Janjira Mughal admiral (1670), 285; his campaigns against Udepur and Márvár; imposes jazīyah tax in Gujarát (1670), 286; his death (1707), 295.
- AUTOMULA**: tribe, 532; modern Chaul, 533, 534, 540.
- AUXOMIS**: town, identification of, 539.
- AVALOKITA**: father of Yogesvara, 128.
- AVANTI**: king of, at the bridegroom-choosing of Durlabharávi, 163.
- AVAR**: 141.
- AVARS**, tribe, 75.
- AVASARINI**: age, 193.
- AYODHYA**: capital of Assam, 191.
- AZAM KHÁN**: viceroy of Gujarát (1635-1642), 278, subdues Kolis and Kátás, robbers in Jhalaváda, Káthaváda, Navinagar and Káthi (1639) 278, and marches against Navanagar (1640); is recalled (1642), 279.
- AZAM SHÁH**: prince, defeated and slain (1707), 296.
- BABAL**: Babylon, 506.
- BABAR**: military minister of Gáikvár leaves the command of the forces in Káthaváda and takes part in the civil administration at Baroda 416.
- BABA PIRAH**: ford, defeat of the Mughals at (1705), 291; advance of the Marathas to (1711), 297.
- BABARJA V**: ca. 175-187.
- BABARJA**: demon, helps Siddharája in his magical feats, 174.
- BABRI FAMILIY**: power of the, 286; disagreement with Haidar Kuli Khán, 300, 301.
- BABRANAGAR**: fort, invested by Chahula 187.
- BABURÁV**: guardian of Yashwantrávi, infant son of Utmáshai Dabhdá, 396.
- BADÁMI**: town in Bijápur district, 125.
- BADARANIDHI**: apparently Borad, 126.
- BAD GUJJARS**: high Gujjars, 464.
- BÁDMER**: town, 470.
- BÁDNER**: Mher settlement at, 136.
- BAGHÁD**: 514, 516.
- BAGGÁN**: hills, hiding place of Karádeva, 205.
- BAGURÁ**: village, copper plate grant from, 117 plate of Akálavarsha at, 125; grant of Dhruva II. at, 126; Akálavarsha Krishna's grant at, 127; Krishna, the Gujarát Ráshtrakúta king's grant at, 129; Dhruva II.'s plate at, 130, 468.
- BAGVÁDA**: fort, capture of, by Shivaji (1672), 387; by Lieutenant Welsh in 1780, 409.
- BÁHADA**: son of Udaya, rises to high position under Kumárapáda, 170; is made chief councillor, 184; establishes Bahádapura, 186.
- BÁHADAPURA**: town established by Bahada, 186 note 4.
- BAHÁDUR**: Sultán of Gujarát (1526-1536); captures Mándu and sends Mehmud II. of Málwá prisoner to Gujarát; incorporates Málwá with Gujarát (1526), 367; takes refuge at Mándu after his defeat at Mandasor, flees from Mandu to Chámpánir, 367, 368; cedes the town of Bassein to the Portuguese, 347; his death (1536), 348-351.
- BAHÁDUR KHÁN**: son of a slave girl, claims the chiefship of Janagádh (1811), 425.
- BAHÁDUR KHÁN**: Khán Jehán, thirty-fourth viceroy of Gujarát (1668-1671); sent as viceroy of the Dakhan (1671-1674), 285.
- BAHÁDUR SHÁH I.**: (1707-1712) emperor of Delhi, 296; his death, 297.
- BAHATIM**: Indian viceroy of the Ghazni king, 174 note 1.
- BAHARIMAD**: (Mevad?), 109, 492.
- BAHÁWALPUR**: 538.
- BÁKIRJI NÁIK**: Shivaji's spy in Gujarát in 1661, 369.
- BAHRAM SHÁH**: Ghazni king (1116-1157), 174 note 1.
- BAHREIN**: 505, 513, 515, 523.
- BAHRUCH**: 510. See Brouch.
- BAHRUT**: 508, 513. See Brouch.
- BAHRUT**: 520. See Brouch.
- BÁHULODA**: apparently the modern village of Bhólád, remission of pilgrim tax at, 172.
- BAHUSHAYÁ**: see Daulá III.
- BADJADAK**: Arabic for ruby, 517.
- BALONES**: Pirani, 545.
- BAIRA**: pirate boats, 508 note 4, 521.
- BALSURA**: Vaishyas 530.
- BALUANA**: Pathan, 37, 541.
- BÁIZA BAI**: daughter of Shihji Ráo Ghátke and widow of Dowlatráv Sindha of Gwalior, 437.
- BÁJRÁV BALLÁL**: Peshwa (1720-1740), sends Uday Pavar to Gujarát to drive away PIRÁJI Gáikvár; carried on negotiations with the Gujarát viceroy and promises to exclude PIRÁJI, Kántaji, and other freebooters from Gujarát, 308; discovers the intrigues of Trimbakráv Dabhdá; advances to Baroda and besieges it; raises the siege and on his way to the Dakhan defeats the forces of Trimbakráv and PIRÁJI and kills Trimbakráv (1731), 303; his negotiations with the Nizam (1731), 312, 313; is appointed governor of Málwá with Anandráv Pavar as his deputy, 382.
- BÁJRÁO II.**: Peshwa, son of Raghnáthráo (1796-1818), appoints his younger brother governor of Gujarát, 411, appoints Trimbakji Dhangar Sar Subha of Ahmedábad, 427.
- BAKKAR**: place, 520.
- BAKSHI**: military paymaster, 214.
- BAKTRIA**: independence of, 443.
- BAKTRIAN GREEKS**: 456 note 1, 535.
- BAKTRIAN**: warlike race, 545.
- BAKULÁDEVÍ**: queen of Bhím I. (1169), 169; concubine, 181.
- BALABHA**: town, 524, 525.
- BALADEVAN**: Jain saints, 451 note 3.
- BALÁDITYA**: of Magadh, 75 notes 2 and 5.
- BALAH**: Alberuni's era of, 78 note 1; starting of era, 81.
- BALAI**: Ptolemy's name for Gopnáth, 78 note 1.
- BALÁJI BAJIRAO**: Peshwa (1740-1761), sends an army to Gujarát and frees Rángóji, 338;

- his negotiations with Jawán Mard Khán (1750); imprisons Damáji and compels him to surrender half his rights and conquests (1751); includes Cambay in his share at the request of Momin Khán; imprisons all the members of the Gaikwár and Dabháde families and sends Raghunáthráo to Surat, 331.
- BÁBÁJI VISHWANÁTH** Peshwa (1714-1720) advances to Ahmadábád and levies tribute, 295, 296; his negotiations at Dehli respecting the Gujarát tribute (1717), 389.
- BALEKURO**, king, identified with Vilváyakurn, 511.
- BALHARA**: 505.
- BALHÁRAS**: Ráshtrakútas, 468, 469, 506, 509, 512, 514, 516, 518; rulers of Máliket, 519, 525, 526, 528, 527, 529, 530, 531.
- BÁL MÚTARÁJA**: see Mularaja II.
- BÁL (PER)**: battle of (1720), 301, 389.
- BÁL, INOR**: residence of the Bala family, 314, captured by Bhagvántirav from Sardar Muhammad Khán Babi, 344, recaptured by Sardar Muhammad Khán (1761), 345.
- BÁLPHI**: see Vajel.
- BÁLISAR**: village, 127.
- BÁLISA**, village, identified with Wanea, gift of, 111.
- BAIKH**: 141, 545.
- BÁLÍLA**: king of Máliwa, defeated by Kumárapája, 85.
- BÁLMEK**: 188, 196, 166.
- BÁL-SAR**: grant of Vinayaditya Mangalárája, 108, 123; sacked by the Portuguese in A.D. 1531, 317.
- BÁLTIPTNA**, modern Pal, 510.
- BÁIYA ACHA**, Kasamachitra, ruler of Gujarát, 189.
- BÁMIAN**: 197.
- BÁMUGOURA**: town, 510.
- BÁNA** poet, 14.
- BÁNAGARA**: identified with Bannu, 538.
- BANAUAS**: Vinayasi, 511.
- BÁNDHÁRAS**: calico-printers, 150.
- BÁNDHUVARMAN**: 76.
- BANIA**: Bazana or Náráyan, 511 and note 12.
- BANIA**, Brahman, lord of Mankir, 514.
- BÁNIA RÁNKA**: 525.
- BANNY**: town, 538.
- BANSAROVAR**: desert sea, 155.
- BAPPA**: Shaivite or Vaishnava pontiff, 84, 85, 85 note 1.
- BÁPL GAIKWÁR**: half-brother of the Gaikwár, a political refugee at Ahmedábád (1857), 412.
- BÁLA** island, 529.
- BÁRADA**: Porbandar, 524.
- BÁRADWÁJ** sage, 161.
- BÁRÁGI**: Varaha the Boar, temple of, 151.
- BÁRÁHMANS**, Brahmins, 530 and note 11.
- BÁRÁJI**, rest-house of, 471.
- BÁRÁKE**: Dvarka, 538, 514, 516.
- BÁRARPA**: Tailapa's general and king of Látá or south Gujarát, killed by Mularaja, 157, 158.
- BÁRÁDE**: Broach, 513.
- BARBARA**: 174, 534. See Barbaraka.
- BARBARAKA**: demon, 173 and note 3; non-Aryan tribe, 174 and note 1, 175.
- BARHAR**: town, 174 note 1, 538.
- BARHARPHON** Shahbandar, 174 note 1, 538, 544.
- BARBARIÁS**, ancient Barbaraka, 175.
- BARNOSA**, traveller (1611-1614), 219.
- BARNÁ**: hills, 87, 185, 136; town, 513.
- BARDAI**: main division of Mher chiefships, 136.
- BÁRDOLI**: 130.
- BÁRDAXEMA**, Porbandar, 538.
- BARDESANE**: 542.
- BARGOSE** Broach, 536.
- BARI** city, 518.
- BAROD**: Karka's grant at, 122, 124, 125; Dhruva's grant at, 126, 127; Kumárapája's visit to, 183, granted by Kumarapala to Katuka, 184, 235; one-fourth revenue of, assigned to Piláji Gaikwár by Hamid Khán, 306, capture of, by the Maráthas under Mahadaji Gaikwár (1734), 314-315, invested by Govindráv Gaikwár (1775), 404; affairs at managed by Ravi and Babaji Appa, 412; affairs of (1803), 413, Marátha conspiracy at (1857), 442-443.
- BAKUZAZA**, ancient name of Broach, 18.
- BAKUH** Broach, 506, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 517, 520.
- BARTS**, identified with Bharuch, expedition against, 109, 165, 167, 506, 513.
- BARTI**, Arabic for lance shafts, 513.
- BAKUZ** Broach, 505.
- BARWI** Vajval, 521.
- BARAGAZA**, Broach, 535, gulf of, 539, 511; exports and imports of, 515, 516.
- BASDIY** Krishna, 519.
- BASDI**, reputed author of the Pemptus, 512.
- BASRU**, 505 notes 2 and 5, 516.
- BASSARIKA**, poem, 516.
- BASSEIN**, Mallikarjuna's inscription at, 186; destroyed by the Portuguese (1532), 317; ceded to the Portuguese by Sultan Bahádur of Gujarát (1531), 347; captured by the Maráthas (1739), 324; besieged by General Goddard (1780), 109, treaty of (1802), 413, 523, 516.
- BASUDEO**: 521. See Basdev.
- BATHA**: Bet, 506 and note 1.
- BÁVA**: 85 note 1. See Bappa.
- BÁWARIJ**: people of Kachh and Somnáth, 508; Mdh pirates, 517, 521.
- BÁZANA**: Bana or Náráyan, 511 note 12, 520.
- BÁZ BAKTUR**: the last of the independent chiefs of Mándú, 355; Mahk Báváqád kills his brother Dahlat Khán; the defeat of, by the Gondas; his poetic love of Rupmati or Rupmani; expulsion of, by Pir Muhammad, Akbar's general (1560); his restoration and the death of Pir Muhammad in 1561; recapture of Mándú by the Mughals under Abdulláh (1602), the retirement of, to Gondwal (1562); accepts service under the Mughals (1570), 369-371.
- BECAZE**: village 537, 516.
- BENDA**: Bhiwandi creek, 510, 542.
- BENGÁL**: 124; original place of Srigaudas, 161,

- 469, 491; Gurjara Vatsarāja's success in 527; under Tibet, 628.
- BYRENICE** 536, 543.
- BYRENICE** town on the Red Sea, 535.
- BYRUNI**: 81. See Al Biruni.
- BYZAR**. 516 and note 5
- BET**: island and fort, seized by Vikings, captured and destroyed by the English (1830), 446-447.
- BIABHU YA**: minister of Bhinga II., 200.
- BIADHAB**: river, 160.
- BIADHAKALI**: inscription in the temple of, 79 note 3, 81, shrine of, at Pitar, 190.
- BIADRESAB**: inscription in a temple near, 72, in Kachh, expedition against the chief of, 201, inscription slab at, 204.
- BIADRESVARA** see Bhadresar.
- BIADILA** 180 note 2.
- BIAGVANSAT**: Di., 111, 117 note, 124, 127, 129 note 3, 137, 338, 141, 141, 145, 167 note 1, 165, 541, 544.
- BIAGVANTRAY**: Peshwa's deputy, marches on Cambay; is surrounded and taken prisoner by Momin Khan; his release, 338. his engagements with Momin Khan (1754), 339, conquers Bālsamor and levies Peshwa's share of the revenue, 344.
- BIAGVAT**: share system of levying land revenue in kind, 279.
- BIALRAY**: shrine of, 154, Buddhist guardian, 458 and note 1
- BIJANDARKAR**: Professor, 110, 127, 541, 546.
- BIJANUPA**: Gupta ruler (511), 72.
- BIARODS** 161.
- BIARTIRIDAMAN**: nineteenth Kshatrapa (275-294), coins of, 48.
- BIARUCH** see Barus.
- BIATA**: military officer, 125.
- BIATARKA** 80, founder of the Valabhi dynasty of Gurjara descent, coins ascribed to him (509-520), 85, 86, 87, 136.
- BIATIA**: reduced by Mahmūd of Ghazni, 168.
- BIATIRKA**: settlement of, 135. See Bhatirka
- BIATIR**: genealogists, 45 and note 1.
- BIATIRAKA**: attribute of priests of Digāmbhā Jain sect, 85.
- BIATIRIS** 137.
- BIATIRIT**: Salva tribe, 534, 16.
- BIATIA**: BHIMASPATI: state officer at Somnātha, 193.
- BIATIRSHYA**: early Rāshtrakūṭa prince, 120, Purāṇ, 465.
- BIATIR SĀIB PĀYAR**: Baroda officer, his intrigues (1857), 442, 445.
- BIATIRAGAR**: town and creek, 78, state collection, 471, 524.
- BIATIRINGH**: of Viramgām, invites the Marāṭhās to Viramgām and expels the Kachhīs from the town (1736), 317; attacks the fort and expels the Marāṭhās, 323.
- BIATIRAL**: 466. See Bhimāl.
- BIATIS**: 451, 532.
- BIATIA I.**: Chaulukya king (1022-1064) succeeds Durlabha, leads victorious expeditions against the kings of Sindh and Chōḍi; Kulachandra attacks his capital Anahilavāḍa; he escapes at the advance of Mahmūd of Ghazni (1021), his plates, 79 note 2, 163-170, 181; builds the Somnātha temple, 190, 522.
- BIATIA II.**: Chaulukya king (1179-1212) succeeds Mularāja II.; his grants, 195 and note 3; his nickname Bhola (simpleton) 196, 470.
- BIATIA I.**: 79 note 2, 181, 190. See Bhima I.
- BIATIA II.**: Chaulukya ruler, 229. See Bhima II.
- BIATIAVALI**: town, 190.
- BIATIAVALI** (553), 169.
- BIATIA SIMHA**: husbandman, concealed Kumarapala, 182; is appointed head of the royal bodyguard, 184.
- BIATIA**: temple of, near Bhimas, 403.
- BIATIA**: Shrināl town, 3 and note 3; expedition against, 109 and note 2, Gurjars of, 115, 169, Chāyadās connected with Chāpas of, 139-155 its king sides with Mularāja, 160, description of, 419, people of, 150, objects in the town, 151-52, surroundings, 152-156; of Jakkop, 156-158, sun temple at, 459-461, legends, 461-463; caste legends of, 463-465, history, 465-471; origin of the name of, 466 note 6; 469, inscriptions at, 471-488, Gujar chief of 489; affliction of, 513 note 9, 526
- BIATIA** king of Mitha 163, 164, 180, 453 note 1.
- BIATIA RĀJA**: Śaṅkar and kinsman of the Gakwar (1857), his intrigues, 112; obtains pardon at the intercession of the Gakwar, 113.
- BIATIA**: town, 138.
- BIATIAVALI**: installed as Pātārāni or queen-regnant of Kumarapala, 181. See Bhupāladevi.
- BIATIRISHI**: Sage, 461.
- BIATIRKACHA**: modern Broach, 127; Kumārāpāla meets a soothsayer at, 183.
- BIATIRVANA SAVITACHAIA**: son of Kasanchitra, king of Gujarāt, 489.
- BIATIRVADA** 156. See Bhuvada.
- BIATIR**: 215 note 2, 451 note 3.
- BIATIRKA** 137.
- BIATIR**: fort, capital of Mhers, 136, 137, 138.
- BIATIRADEVI**: wife of Kumarapala, 182. See Bhopaladevi.
- BIATIRVADA**: Chaulukya king, kills Jayasekhara, 150-157.
- BIATIRVADITYA**: Mularāja's ancestor, 157.
- BIATIRVADA**: another name of Chamunda, 154, 155.
- BIATIA**: uncle of Mularāja, 156, 160.
- BIATIR**: 107. See Vijayapura.
- BIATIANA**: poet (c. 1030 A.D.), 156.
- BIATIRUCH**: Branch, 507.
- BIATIRARA**: town, 538.
- BIATIR**: Gupta inscription at, 67.
- BIATIA**: Captain, political agent, Radhanpur, 441.

- BOLINGE**: 534, 546. See Bhanlingi.
- BOMBABO**: name of a well, 453.
- BOMBAY**: island, burned by the Portuguese (1532), 347; harbour, 533.
- BOMBIA**: leatherworkers, 451.
- BORE**: 545.
- BORO BUDDOR**: Javan town, 189.
- BOHSAD**: 126, fort, built by Jagjivan Patár, Marátha leader (1712), 325; given up by Rangoji to the Muslims, 326; siege and fall of, 332, besieged by Momin Khan, 339; recovered by Rangoji from Hanba, adopted son of Khanderao Gaikwár, retaken by Khanderao and Damáji Gaikwár (1748), 396.
- BOSARI**: Kumárapála's companion in exile, 182; appointed viceroy of Lúja or south Gujarát, 184.
- BORSA**: hill range, 166.
- BOUDAIA**: town, 534.
- BOCKEPHALA**: Jalálpur, 546.
- BOCHIER**: Mr., Governor of Bombay (1759), 343.
- BRAHMA**: inscription in the temple of, on the Chitoda fort, 188, king of the Indians, 531.
- BRAMAGUPTA**: astronomer (628), his work on astronomy called *Brahmagupta Siddhánta*, 138, 453 note 1, 467.
- BRAHMAKUND**: Brahma's pool, 452, 462, 463.
- BRÁHMAN**: 530, 531.
- BRAHMANABÁD**: town, 519.
- BRAHMANASAROVAR**: lake, 454.
- BRAHMSIDDHÁNTA**: work on astronomy by Brahmagupta, 453 note 1.
- BRAHMAVAKA**: family name of Prachanda, 129.
- BRAMBANYM**: capital of Bhruvijaya, king of Jiva, 489.
- BRIGGS**: Colonel (1827), 383.
- BRIHASPATI**: Ganda Bháya, repairs the Sonanátha temple, 189, 190. (God, 161.
- BRIHATSAMHITA**: work by Varáha Mihira, 540.
- BRITISH**: the intervention for protection of the chiefs of Kathaváda against the Mulakgiri system, 421-422, secret treaty of the, with Rávjji; reward Rávjji with a village, 413, make a fresh treaty with the Gaikwár, consolidating all previous engagements into a single treaty and constitute themselves arbiters in all disputes of the Gaikwár with foreign powers and the Peshwa (1805), 115. See English.
- BROACH**: Valabhi grants in, 86, district, Gujjar dynasty of, 107, 113; Valabhi king's camp of victory at, 114; described by Huen Tsang; port, submitted to Pulakesi II., grant at, 116, 117, 126; Dhruva II.'s Bágumra and Barwa grants made at, 127; a soothsayer at, promises Kumárapála the throne, 185; Lavanasprasháda's fight with Singhana at, 199, insurrection at (1325), 513-514, siege and relief of (1347), 230, (1412), 235; plundered by the Maráthás (1675), 387; plundered second time by the Maráthás (1685), 387-388; capture of, by the Mátás and Momnás (1691), 288; siege of, by Damáji and the Maráthás (1741), 324, 396, defended by the Nizám's lieutenant Nek Alqm Khan; raising of the siege by Damáji; concessions of a share in the customs revenues of, to Damáji by the Nizám, 324; governor of, becomes independent (1752), 334; capture of, by the English (1772), 401; given over to India in 1802, 110, captured by the English from Sindia (1803), ceded to the English by the treaty of Sirje Anjangan (1803), 414, its different names, 513, 521, 525, 536, 545, 546.
- BUCCALA**: weaving of, at Ahmedábád, encouraged by emperor Aurangzib (1708), 292.
- BUCKHALA**: Jalálpur, capital of the Ashi, 534.
- BUCKLE**: Captain, political agent of Rewa Kanth (1857), 139, 443.
- BUDHIA**: idol of, 531, introduction of, in China, 530.
- BUDDHABARMAN**: ruler of Kaira, 108, 110, 111; Kalachuri prince, 114.
- BUDDHAGUPTA**: Gupta king (A.D. 494-500), 71, 72, 135; overthrown by Toramána, 136.
- BUDHISM**: state religion in Cambodia, 502; religion in Gujrat, 530.
- BUDHISTS**: 531.
- BUDHIA**: town, 538.
- BUNLER**: Dr, 79, 111, 113, 117 note, 155, 156, 157, 161, 174 note 1, 195 note 1, 466.
- BULHAKS**: constructed in Siddharaja's time, 179-180.
- BUNDILKHAND**: Krishna's son Jagattunga, lived at, 130.
- BURGESS**: 533.
- BURNANPUR**: plundered by the Maráthás in 1675, 387.
- BURMA**: 527.
- BURNS' TRAVELS INTO BOKHARA**: 544.
- BYZANTION**: Vajrayanti, 546; Chiplün, 540.
- BYZANTIUM**: 546.
- CACHIA**: 471.
- CABSI**: Kekaya, 533.
- CALINGON**: Point Gokávari, 533.
- CAMBAY**: Stambhatirtha, 123; Kumárapála, repairs to, 182, Jain temple at, repaired by Kumárapála, 190; plundered by Alafkhan's army, 165, sack of (1673), 220 and note 2, 221 and note 2, 225 and note 2, sack of (1317), 230, 232, 235; siege of, by Trimbakrao Dabhade, 306; Momin Khán appointed governor of, 311, 317; customs house at, 323; included in the Peshwa's share of tribute (1752), 334; failure of a Marátha attempt on (1753), 338, 394; interview of Rávjji of Baroda with Governor Duncan at (1800), 112, Muslimán preacher of, 512, 513, its different names, 514; importation of horses into, 515.
- CAMBODIA**: 498-504; origin of the name Kamboja, 498 note 4; Brahmanic dynasty of; inscriptions, king of, an embassy from to China (6-7), 499; aloca, 528.
- CAMUNDA**: 471.
- CANDRAGUPTA**: 532. See Chandragupta.
- CANE**: port, Hian Ghorah, 537.

**CAPITALIA** : identified with Mount Abu, 534.  
**CARNELIANS** : 78 note 1.  
**CASHTAN** : 530. See Chastana.  
**CASTANEDAS** : history of the Portuguese in India up to A.D. 1538, 349.  
**CASTES** : Gujar underlayer in Gujarāt, 4; legends of, 163-465.  
**CAULUKYA** : 526. See Chaulukya.  
**CEYLON** : 509, 516, 536.  
**CHACH** : (631-670), 519.  
**CHACH NAMA** : Arabic history of Chach, 519.  
**CHACHIGA** : Modh Vama of Dhandhuka, father of Hemachandra, 191.  
**CHAGANJANG** : white people, 501.  
**CHAHADA** : son of Udaya and younger brother of Bhadra rises to a high position under Kuntapala, 170; leads an expedition against Simlhar; title of Rajagharatta conferred on him, grants half a village, 187.  
**CHAKRAVARTIS** : Jain saints, 151 note 3.  
**CHALUKA** : grant of, 166, 467.  
**CHALUKYA or CHALUKYA** : see Chaulukya.  
**CHALUKYA** : Dakhan dynasty (A.D. 552-973); 156; early trace in Gujarat of its rule, come from the Dakhan and establish themselves in Gujarāt, their grants genealogy, 107-112.  
**CHAMPANIR** : attacked by Ahmed I. (1118), 237, taken by Mahmud Bezada and made his capital under the name of Muhammadabad (184) 247; captured by the Marathas (1728), 308, 367, 368, 391-392.  
**CHAMUNDA** : Chavada king (A.D. 880-908), 154, 155, son of Mulanaja Chaulukya, slays in fight Dvatakappa and Barappa, 159; his reign (A.D. 997-1010), installs his son Vallabha goes on pilgrimage to Bināras, is insulted by the Māla king, 162. The family stock of Hemachandra, 191. Ruler of Vantthali, killed by his brother-in-law Viradhaval Vaghela, 200.  
**CHAND** : shrine of, 449, 457, 458.  
**CHANDALA** : memals, 531.  
**CHANDELA** : dynasty in Bundelkhand, 178.  
**CHANDERSHWAR** : shrine of, 162 and note 1.  
**CHANDIS** : 461.  
**CHANDIDEV** : shrine of, 452.  
**CHANDISH MAHDEV** : 462, 463.  
**CHANDUADANDA** : officer of P. K. takes Pesh, 107.  
**CHANDU LAKHAN** : illegitimate brother of Sultan Bahādur of Gujarāt, is supported by the Portuguese (1532), 347, 367.  
**CHANDRĀDITYA** : Mulanaja's ancestor, 157.  
**CHANDRĀGUPTA** : founder of Maurya dynasty (B.C. 319), 13-14.  
**CHĀNDRAGUPTA I.** : third Gupta king (A.D. 349-369), 61, 67.  
**CHĀNDRAGUPTA II.** : fifth Gupta king (A.D. 396-416), inscriptions, coins, founded Gupta era (291), 65-67, 86, 129.  
**CHANDRAPURA** : identified with Chandāvar near Gokarna, 171 and note 1.  
**CHANDĀVATI** : visited by Kunīrapala, 185, 188; capital of Visaladeva, 204; Parmāra possession, 170.  
**CHANGIZI** : coin, 222 note 2.

**CHANGODEVA** : original name of Hemachandra 191.  
**CHĀPA** : dynasty, 133 and note 1, family of Bhinnāl, 139, 463 note 2, 526.  
**CHĀPOTKATA** : (Gurjara origin of, 467; Sanskrit form of Chivada, 150).  
**CHARACTER** : of Valabhi copperplates, 80.  
**CHASHANA** : second Kshatriya (A.D. 130), coins of, 29-31, 32.  
**CHARMA** : tribe, 532, 534.  
**CHĀRIS** : pavilion works, 153.  
**CHĪTURAPANA** : Andhra king, 38.  
**CHĀTHANS** : Rajputs of Samblhar, 468, 469. See Chohans.  
**CHAUL** : 516. See Chaul.  
**CHALUKYA** : Sanskrit form of Chalkya, 156, ruling dynasty of Anahilavāda (A.D. 961-1212); invasion of Somavātha by Mahmūd of Ghazni, remission of pilgrim-tax, architectural buildings, ascendancy of Jainism and division of the kingdom among the nobles under the, 156-197, kingdom of, 465.  
**CHĀCHAS** : masters of Kachh after the fall of the Samras, 517, dynasty, 526. See Chāvadas.  
**CHATH** : contribution, 388.  
**CHĀVADAS** : of Anahilavāda (720-956), 124; of Gurjara race establish a small chiefship at Panhāsar which falls in A.D. 696; establish a kingdom at Anahilavāda, their genealogy, 149-155, 163 note 2, their settlements, 164, 165, 166, feudatories of Bhinnāl, 469; their affliction, 513 note 9. See Chāpas, Chauris, Chapotkas, Chavotikas, and Chāvatas.  
**CHAVAN** : Gurjara surname, 468.  
**CHAVAPARA** : kingdom of the Chavads, afflicted by Arab army, 109. See Chāvadas.  
**CHAVOTIKAS** : identified with Chavadas of Panchasar, 150, 151, 465, 466, 467. See Chāvadas.  
**CHĀVARAS** : identified with Chāpas of Bhinnāl, 139. See Chāvadas.  
**CHEDI** : era, 37, 58 and note 1, 114; dynasty, 114, modern Bundelkhand, 130, 163; its king, present at the bridegroom-choosing of Durlabhadevi, 163; its king strangled, 186-187, 169. See Trankutika and Kalachuri.  
**CHIMULA** : modern Chaul, 533.  
**CHENAB** : river 538.  
**CHIRA** : kingdom of, conquered by Pulikēsi II, 111.  
**CHILUL** : fort, 351, 513, 516. See Chaul.  
**CHĪHAGATAGA** : 61 note 3, 66.  
**CHĪHĀNDASĀNA** : work on Prosody, compiled by Hemachandra, 193.  
**CHIKHI** : given to the English, 412.  
**CHIMANĀTHĀV** : brother of Bajirao Peshwa, captures Chāmpāpur, 309, 322, 391, 392, is appointed Peshwa's Subhedar of Gujarāt, 411.  
**CHIMA** : army of, marching from Magadha to Bamian 197; vessels coming from, 513, 522, 528 - religion of, 530.  
**CHITRAN** : Mallikārjuna's inscription at, 186; 510, 516.  
**CHIRIKYA** : see Chaulukyas.

- CHITODA**: fort, 181; inscription of Kumārapāla at, 188.
- CHITOR**: Mauryas of, afflicted by Arab army, 109 note 1, 513 note 9, visited by Kumārapāla in his exile, 183.
- CHITRAKANTHA**: breed of horses, 111.
- CHITRAKUTA**: peak of Abu, 169. modern Chitor, 183, 169.
- CHOLAS**: tribe, Ajmir kings, 157, 463 note 2, 465, 470; lost Blammāl, 471.
- CHOLA**: kingdom, conquered by Pulakēśi II.; 111.
- CHORVĀDA**: Vclari betel vine cultivators' settlement at, 113 and note 3, zibah in Kathiavāda, 208 and note 3.
- CHORA UDIPUR**: defeat of Tatva Topi at, 445.
- CHRISTIANS**: in Samudra, 517.
- CHRONICLES**: Jam 156, Anahilavāda, 156, Jam, 179, 201, 202.
- CHRYSEI**: Kanusha, 533.
- CHYSHOLRA**: 533.
- CHIBHARI**: fort, 180 note 2.
- CHUDACHANDRA**: first ruler of Vanthali, 138, 139.
- CHUDASAMAS**: invading tribe, originally of the Abhira tribe 137; foregoers (900-910), 138-139, 178. See Abu.
- CHUNAB**: 513, 527.
- CINTRA**: in Portugal, inscription from Somnātha found at 205.
- CITADUS**: reign of (41-51), 536.
- CODE**: a civil and criminal enacted by Mr Mountstuart Elphinstone (1827) 136.
- COINS**: of Euclatides (B.C. 1554, 16-17, of Apollodotus, 18 19, of Menander, 18 19, of Nahapāna, 21-25, Gupta, 29; of Chashtina (A.D. 130), 29-30, Sopara *Sopara* mound, 38, hoards of, 48-49, 57, 60; of Samudragupta, five varieties of 62-63 66, 67-68, Gupta, 70, 71, of king Mahupāda 138, Hindu sun, 142.
- COMBODIA**: Cambodia, 199.
- CONDITION**: of Gujarāt (1297-1760) 217-228.
- CONFIRMATION**: visited by Kumārapāla in his exile, 183.
- COPPERPLATES**: Valabhi, description of 79-80, of Gujarāt Chalukyas, 108, of the Gurjjaras, 113-114, three forged, 117 note 118, 121, of Bhūma I, 163.
- COPPER COINAGE**: (1668) introduced into Gujarāt by the viceroy Mahabat Khan (1662-1668), 281.
- CORRIGIA**: Portuguese historian (1512-1550), died at Goa (1550), 349.
- CORVAT**: English traveller (1670), 377.
- COSMAS**: Indikopleustes, 86 143, 146.
- COLIOMARA**: Kadatianādū, 537.
- COWRIES**: shell money, 527.
- CROWN LANDS**: under Mughal administration, 211.
- CUNHA**: Nono da, Portuguese viceroy in India (1629) sends an expedition against the island of Diu; his defeat; supports Chānd Khān; sends an embassy to the Court of Humayun, makes peace with Sultān Bahādūr (1531), comes to Diu in 1536; murder of Sultān Bahādūr at a meeting with (1536), 347, 348.
- CUNNINGHAM**: General, 86, 144, 178, 533, 534, 538.
- CURRENCY**: under Malsalmāns, 222 note 2.
- CURUH**: Gupta conquest of, 70. See Kachh.
- DABAI**: see Chedi.
- DABALWARAH**: plundered by Mahmūd of Ghazni, apparently Delvada, 166 and note 2, 521.
- DABHOL**: fort, its building ascribed to Siddharāja, 179; in south Gujarāt, its fortifications repaired by Visaladeva, 203, Gāikwār's station of Gujarāt (1732), 391, surrendered to Kāghohi and Colonel Keating, 405, occupied by General Goldard (1789), 108.
- DABSHITNIS**: ancient royal family, 168.
- DADKA**: minister of Siddharāja, 172.
- DADDA I.**: Gurjjar king of Nāndod (580), 103, 111, first Gurjjar feudatory of Bhūmal Gurjjar kingdom, 115.
- DADDA II.**: Gurjjar king (600-650), 56; Gurjjar chief of Nāndod, helps the Valabhis, 83, his grant, 111, 114, 115, 116.
- DADDA III.**: Gurjjar king (650), 111, founder of the Javānma the Chūlkya; first Sūya of his family adopts the Puranic pedigree traced to Kuna 116-117.
- DADHIVELI**: 155.
- DADHIVAPUR**: fort, 180 note 2.
- DADHIVATI**: village granted to Devaprasāda, son of Kshamarāja, for maintenance, 170, residence of Kumārapāla's ancestors, 181.
- DAHNAJ**: perhaps Kamlej 520.
- DAHRESEN**: Traikut dāk king (157), 55, 58.
- DAKHAN**: 534.
- DAKHINAPATHA**: Dakhinapatha, 545.
- DĀKON**: Pilaji Gāikwār assassinated at (1732), 313.
- DAKSHINA**: founded by Khanderāv Dābbāde, renewed by Rājray I (1731), 393.
- DAKSHINAPATHA**: Dakhlan, 545.
- DAMAR**: 109.
- DAMADAMIS**: envoy, 542.
- DĀMAVADASHRI**: twelfth Kshatrapa (236), comes of, 15. Sixteenth Kshatrapa (250-255), comes of, 17.
- DAMAJI**: founder of the Gāikwār family; distinguishes himself at the battle of Balapur (1720), 389.
- DAMARJI**: Gāikwār, son of Pilāji, starts Bhils and Kohs to revolt (1733), 391; Jevies tribute from the chiefs of Sorath (1788), 321; attacks Chūnyal Kohs and burns the Chhangan village, 321-322, appoints Rangoji as his deputy in place of Mahārāo Khumi (1741), 323; besieges Broach and receives a share in its customs revenues (1741), 324, 395, goes to Cambay from Sātara, 326, defeats Peshwa's army but is treacherously seized by the Peshwa and imprisoned (1751), 397, is released; his negotiations with the Peshwa (1752), 397, 398; returns to Gujarāt and is reconciled to his brother Khanderāv, 330, 396; captures Kapadvanj and appoints his deputy

- Shevakrái to collect his share of revenue, 338; joins the Peshwa's deputy to invest Ahmedabad (1756), 340; helps the Ráo of Kachh in his expedition against Sindh, 342; defeats Momin Khan at Cambay and recovers Visalnagar, Kheralu, Vadnagar, Bijiapur, and Patan, 345; captures Bálasingor (1761), 399, accompanies the Peshwa to Dandi and escapes from Pámpat (1761), 399, marries a daughter of the Gohil chief of Látlu whose dowry in land gives him the standpoint in the heart of Kathiaváda, 418, his death (1768), 400, quarrels for succession in his family, 400.
- DAMAN: coins found at, 58; burned by the Portuguese (1532), 217.
- DÁMARA: Bhima I.'s general, takes Kaina captive, 163.
- DAMARJENA: eleventh Kshatrapa (A.D. 226-236) coins of, 45.
- DAMASTRI: twenty-third Kshatrapa (A.D. 820), coins of, 50.
- DANAVADA: fifth Kshatrapa (A.D. 153-165), coins of, 39-40.
- DAN: coin, 222 note 2.
- DANDAGUDA: civ., 533.
- DANDAH: village, 169.
- DANDAI: local name of Kadi district, 203 note 3.
- DANG: forests, 508.
- DANDAKA: Mulraj's uncle, 156, 160.
- DANDA/RAJAPRI: 207 note.
- DARIA: 464.
- DANIDRUGA: his inscriptions at Ellura, 120, mention, 122, 467.
- DANIVJEMMAN: 120, son of the Rashtrakut prince Kaika, his plures, 125-127.
- DARÍ SHIKOH: Prince Muhammad, twenty-seventh viceroy of Gujarat (618-165); sent to Kathiaváda, 280 obtains the transfer of Mural from Gujarat to Bengal, is defeated at Dholpur by Mural and Aurangzib, flies to Delhi and thence to Lahore (1685) 282; his rebellion; is defeated at Ahmedabad, flies to Sindh; is taken prisoner (1659), 282.
- DARBHAYATI: modern Dabhoi, 203.
- DARDE: Dards of the Upper Indus, 533.
- DARI: tribe 53.
- DARJIS: taluq, 451.
- DARYA KHAN: Gujarát governor (1373), 231.
- DAROGHAT: official, 214.
- DARUR: 541. See Dhárur.
- DASAK (MIS): See Akis.
- DAŚARATHA: Asoka's grandson (B.C. 210), 14-15.
- DAṬADEVI: Gupta queen, 65.
- DAUD KHÁN PANNA: forty-sixth viceroy of Gujarát (1714-1715); religious riots at Ahmedabad; his introduction of Dakhan Pandits into official posts, 298, 299.
- DANDU DÁTATRI: commander of Ahmedabad garrison (1763), 338.
- DAULATRAY SINDIA: treacherously seizes Nana Phadnavis and A'ba Shelukar (1797), 411.
- DAYAKA: kingdom of, 64 and note 2.
- DEBAL: expedition to, 506, 511, 512, 513; identified with Karáchi or Thatta, 508 note 2, 514, 517, 521; perhaps Dn, 523, 547.
- DEBARKOS: Portuguese historian (1570), 349.
- DECADAS (1497-1539), a work by De Barros, a Portuguese historian, his death in 1570, 349.
- DEGADRA: reservoir, 180 note 2.
- DEGADI: Prachandi's ancestor, 129.
- DEMACHOS: ambassador, 534.
- DEHLI: fall of (28th September 1857); emperor of, in a treasonable correspondence with the Nawab of Radhampur, 411.
- DEHESFAR: Major, Political Agent, of Dhár (1845), 384.
- DEHIDA: town, 233 and note 3.
- DEMETRIOS: king of the Indians (B.C. 150-165), 16.
- DETA VAILE: traveller (1628), 224 note 2.
- DIOLI: grant from 168, 469, 511.
- DIOPATI: town, identified with Deoli, 541.
- DEKA ISMAIL KHAN: 538.
- DEKANG: identified with the Telungas, 534.
- DEKAS: position and duties of, 210, 212, 223, and note 2.
- DE-HANPRIS: Saturday oil-beggars, 451.
- DE INANAMATA: Prakrit work on local and provincial words compiled by Hemachandra, 193.
- DESOLZA Emanuel, captain of the fort of Dn (1536), 317.
- DEVACHANDRA: Jain priest, visits Dhandhuka, carries Chhangodeva to Kumrávi, changes his name to Hemachandra to Hemachandra, 191.
- DEVAT TAKAR: lieutenant of Dámaji Gaikwar, defeats Abdul Aziz (1741), 378.
- DEVADIVI: sister of Kumarapála, married to Anaraja king of Sakambhara, 181, 182. Daughter of Karnaadeva, the last Vaghela chief, married Khizar Khan, 205.
- DEVAYAS: 465.
- DEVAYAGARI: character 80.
- DEVAPRASADA: son of Kshemurája, 170; recommended by Karna to Adhararaja, burns himself on the funeral pile, 171.
- DEVAPIIRA: Kushan name, 64 and note 5.
- DEVARAJA: early Rashtrakut prince, 120; grantor in Dhruva's Baroda grant, 126, 470.
- DIVASRI: lady of Dumbira village, feeds Kumarapála in exile, 182, 184.
- DIVASTRI: S'vatanbara Jain Acharya, holds a religious discussion with Kumdachandra, Digámbara Jain Acharya, 181 and note 3; Hemacharya's teacher advises Kumarapála to rebuild the Somanátha temple, 189.
- DIVAYANI: wife of Yayati, 460.
- DEVAYO: village, 184.
- DIVYADH: Daulatábád, 229 and note 4.
- DEVOTION: exhibition of, to Viradhavala, 208.
- DEWACHASNI: Wagher chief in command of the fort of Bot, 447.
- DEWLA RAJPUTS: 462, 463.
- DEWLA RAJPUTS: 165. See Dewla Rajputs.
- DHAMMARAKHITO: Yavan evangelist (B.C. 230), 13.

- DHAN** : Mehr of Dhandhuka, 87 note.  
**DHANAJI JADHAV** : enters Gujarat and defeats the Muslims at Ratipur and Baba Pirāh forl (1706) 294.  
**DHANAKATAKA** : 533.  
**DHANUJHAR** : local name of Pāsanpur zillah, 204 note 2.  
**DHANDHUKA** : Parmāra chief of Abn, subdued by Vimala, general of Bhuma I., 169.  
**DHANDHUKA** : Hemachārya's birthplace, tuluka town, 191 and note 1; district under the Vaghelas, 198, 470.  
**DHIRE** plateau, 352; capital of the old Hindu kings of Malwa, 357; Anandray Pavār settles at (1751), 382; defeat of Sultan Hoshang by his uncle Muzaffar I. of Gujarat (1408), 358.  
**DHIRE** : capital of Malwa, attacked by Siddharaja, 178; carving on pillars of a mosque at 180. See Dhār.  
**DHARNIDHAR** gateway, 450 note 1.  
**DHARANIVARMA** : Chapa king of Wadhwan (914), 134, 166, 169.  
**DHARAPATA** : Valabhi king, devotee of the sun, 83.  
**DHAR** (PURI) : sacked by Karna, 163.  
**DHARASENA I.** : Valabhi king, 114, 115.  
**DHARASENA II** : Valabhi king, copperplate of, 79 note 1.  
**DHARASENA IV.** : Valabhi king, 116.  
**DHARASARAYA JAYASIMHA** : see Jayasimhavarman.  
**DHARASVARSHA** : another name of Dhruva I., also of Dhruva II., 126.  
**DHARS** : tribe, 533.  
**DHARUR** : town, 511, 545.  
**DHAWALA** : king of Bhimapalli, 196; Vaghela chief (1760), 206.  
**DHAWALAGADHA** : see Dholka.  
**DHAWALPPA** : Prachanda's father and general of Krishna Akalavarsha, 129.  
**DHENUKAKA** : Dhanakataka, 533.  
**DHINIGI** : forged grants at, 87, village, 137.  
**DHODDI** : Brahmana, Tenna granted to 131.  
**DHOLI** : village, battle at (1735) : defeat and death of Solrah Khān at, 316.  
**DHOLKA** : Malavva lake at, built by Siddharaja, 189 note 2; district under the Vaghelas, 198; assigned to Ratan-sing Bhandari (1735), 315; defeat of Rangoji by Ratan-sing Bhandari at (1796), 317; defeat of the Marathas at (1741), 324, 517.  
**DHOLPUR** : battle of (1658), 282.  
**DHODAP** : fort in the Ajanta range; defeat of Raghunathray Peshwa at (1764), 400.  
**DHRUVA** : feudatory Rāshtrakūṭa ruler of Gujarat, 121, 122.  
**DHRUVA I.** : (795) Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭa king spreads his conquest from South India to Allahābād, 123; Gujarat Rāshtrakūṭa king, his war with Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭa king Amoghavarsha, 121, 126, 466.  
**DHRUVA II.** : (867) Gujarat Rāshtrakūṭa king, opposed by Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭa, his relations by the Gurjjaras and by a Mihir king, 121, 126-127, 136.  
**DHRUVA III.** : of Broach, his grant, 468.  
**DHRUVAPATU** : Valabhi king, 79.  
**DHRUVASENA I.** : first Valabhi king (526), follower of Vaisnava sect, 83; his grant, 86, 116.  
**DHULAKA** : town, 513.  
**DHUMRAJA** : first Paramāra sovereign, 470.  
**DI BAHADUR** : governor of Māndu; defeated and slain by Malharāy Holkar (1732), 382.  
**DILAWAR KHAN (GHORI)** : founds an independent kingdom in Malwa, adorns the hills with buildings and strengthens the defences (1387-1405), 352, 357; entertains Mahmud Tughlak (1398), 358.  
**DIMORI** : tribe, 531.  
**DINAKS** : coins, 66; found at Somanātha, 167, 515 and note 5, 522.  
**DIONOROS** : 535, 536.  
**DIONYSIUS PERIEGES** : 537, 516.  
**DIONYSIUS** : Greek writer, 532, 535.  
**DIRHAM** : coins, 469 note 2, 515 note 5.  
**DISA** : conspiracy at (1857), 441.  
**DISCUSSIONS** : literary and poetic, held at Siddharaja's court, 181.  
**DISORDER** : in Gujarat (1536-1573), 220-221, 225.  
**DIV** island, attempts of the Portuguese to obtain a footing on their defeat (1531), fort; Emanuel DeSouza the governor of, meeting of the Portuguese viceroy Nuno de Cunha and Sultan Bahadur and the death of the latter at (1536-1537), 220, 317, 349, 350, 351; place of call for China ships, 197 note 1.  
**DIVAN** : Mughal chief secretary, 211, 214.  
**DIVISIONS** : ancient Gujarat, 6-7.  
**DOCTORIO** : Portuguese writer (1609), 349.  
**DODARA** : hill range, 456.  
**DOHAD** : 124, inscription at, 175, 179; restored by the English to India under the treaty of Sirri Anjanagar (1803), 414.  
**DONOVAN** : Colonel, commander of the expedition against Bet (1859), 446.  
**DORSTOND** : crushes a revolt in Nepal and establishes his supremacy in Bengal (703), 501.  
**DOUNGA** : perhaps Dugad, 540.  
**DRACHM** : Greek coins found in Kāthiāvāda, 16, 17, 18.  
**DRAGON WORSHIP** : 502.  
**DRAKHMAT** : 535, 515.  
**DRAMMA** : distribution of the coin, 130; coin, 151, 201.  
**DROMAMMA** : military officer, 123.  
**DUDA** : quells a Sumra rising, 517.  
**DULAI** : rite, 531.  
**DULAKA** : Dholka, 509, 517.  
**DULKA** : 511. See Dholka.  
**DUMAS** : village, 403.  
**DUNCAN** : Jonathan, Governor of Bombay (1802), 406; assumes chief authority in Surat, 411; his interview with Rājā of Baroda, 412; arranges about the collection of tribute in Gujarat and Kāthiāvāda by the employment of a British contingent, 414.  
**DURAND** : Colonel, Resident at Mhow, driven out by the troops of Holkar; takes refuge in Bhopāl, 438.

**DURGABHATTA**: father of Nemūlitya, 125; father of Nūṛāṇa, 125, 126.  
**DURGADAS RAYHON**: inherits prince Akbar to rebellion, 288; causes disturbances in Marwar (1672), 289; is reconciled with the emperor (1698), 290, obtains for Ajit Singh pardon and lands in the districts of Jhalor and Stehor (1699), 290, is appointed governor of Putan (1703), 291, intrigues against (1703), his escapes, 291-292, joins Ajit Singh in his rebellion; takes shelter with the Kolis, his disappearance, 295.  
**DURGAPATI**: identified with Jūṅgādhi, 160.  
**DURGABHA**: Chaulukya king (A.D. 1010-1022), attends the *vaṇamāra* or choice marriage of Durlabhadra and is selected as groom, builds a lake at Anahilavāḍa and abdicates in favour of his nephew Bhima, 162-163.  
**DURGABHADRA**: sister of Mheodra Rājā of Anandol, selected Durlabha Chaulukya king at a *vaṇamāra*, 162-163.  
**DURLABHASAROVARA**: lake, built at Anahilavāḍa by Durlabha the Chaulukya king, 163.  
**DURVANDHISA**: 168.  
**DURVANDHISA**: 161.  
**DUSSALA**: king of Sāmbhādā, 171.  
**DUTKA**: garrison, 125.  
**DVAKAPPA**: king of Latāleśa, 159 and note 1. See Durappa.  
**DVARASAMUDRA**: capital of Hoysla Ballādas, 203 note 3.  
**DVARKA**: 6, 160, Musahmīn post at, attack on, orders of the emperor to raze to the ground the temple at 295, is captured by Vighnes of Okhamūdā (1859), 116, taken by the English, 118, 161, 516.  
**DYĀŚRAYA**: work compiled by Hemachandra, 137, 156, 159, 162, 163, 170, 171, 173, 182, 185, 193.  
**DYĀŚRAYA KOSHA**: 180-192. See Dyāśraya.  
**DWAPARYA**: third cycle, 161.  
**DWARKA**: 161. See Dvārka.

**EASTWICK**: Captain (1853), 383.  
**ECLIPSE**: held sacred by Hindu, 165 and note 2, 522.  
**EDICHS** of Asoka (B.C. 250) 11.  
**EGYPT**: 536, trade of, 515, 516.  
**EIKON**: the Ram, 514.  
**EKALA VIRA**: shrine, visited by Vastuptha, 200.  
**ELPHANTA**: probably old Puri, 107; cave temple at, 158.  
**ELISAR**: 513.  
**ELPHINSTONE**: Mr. Mountstuart, enacts a civil and criminal code in 1827, 136.  
**ELPHINSTONE**: Lord, Governor of Bombay (1857), 438.  
**ELURA**: inscription of Dantidurga at, 120, 122, 467; Devaladevi captured near, 205.  
**EMBOLIVA**: town identified with Aml, 538.  
**ENGLISH**: the, their factory at Surat besieged and plundered, 333; plundered second time, take the fort of Surat with the help of the

Marāṭhis (1759), 313; become chief of the affairs of Surat, and enter into agreement with Fate-singh Gāikwār (1773), 401; capture Broach (1772), 401, capture Thana and Versova fort, 401; enter into an alliance offensive and defensive with Fate-singh Gāikwār (1780), 408; operations of, against Sindhia and Holkar, 409, aid Govindrāy Gāikwār's party (1802), 412, settle the treaty of Bassem (1802), 413; capture Broach and Pavāḍad, restore Pavāḍad and Dohad to Sindhia (1803), 414, enter into a fresh treaty with the Gāikwār, and obtain the Gāikwār's share in Ahmedabad, Surat, and Kaira (1817), 428, sovereignty of Gujarat passes into the hand of (1819), 428, capture Bet and Dwārka (1859), 416-418. See British.  
**EPHRAÏM**: ruling class of White Hūmas, 86, 115, retreat of to Kāshmir (590-612), 500. See Hūmas.  
**EPHATAVA**: town, 518.  
**ERA**: Of Nābhīpāṇi: 26 the Mālava, 28-29, 67; the Samvat, 29, the Gupta, 29; Valabhi, 81; Traikutaka, 113, Chedi, 114; of Siddharaja, Chaulukya king, 176 and note.  
**ERAN**: Gupta pillar inscription at, 71.  
**EUASTHINUS**: Greek geographer (275-194 B.C.) 535-537.  
**ERINPTER**: mutiny at (1857), 439.  
**ERSKINE** Mr., the chief of the factory at Canday (1759), 443.  
**ETHIOPIA**: headlands of 536.  
**ETRURIA**: Baktian king, 16-17.  
**EUDAIMON ARABIA**: modern Aden, 513.  
**EUPHROS** of Cyzicus (117 B.C.) his voyage to India, 535.  
**EUFRATES**: river, 514.  
**EUHYDROMOS**: 535.  
**EXPORTS**: from Gujarat coasts, 529; from Skythia, 514.

**FALHAN** (100), 502.  
**FALLS**: revenue clerks, 212.  
**FAKHRE-UD-DARAH**: attacks Ahmedābād; is deserted by his supporters Sherkhān Babi and Rūṅghy of Idar, is defeated and captured by Jawān Mard Khān, intrigues with the Marāṭha leader Panaji Vithal 329, besieges Kapadvanj, 330, returns to Delhi (1748), 333.  
**FAKHRE-UD-DIN**: son of Mulla Muhammad Ali, chief of merchants at Surat, is imprisoned by Sayad Aechan, is sent to Bombay in disguise by the chief of the English factory at Surat, 332.  
**FĀVHAL**: Anahilavāḍa, 511.  
**FAMILY TREE**: Chaulukya, 110.  
**FAMINE**: in Visaldeva's time, 203 and note 5; in Gujarat (1681), 286; (1684), 287; (1698), 290, 1719, 300, (1732), 313; (1747), 332.  
**FARHAT-UL-MULK**: Gujarat, governor (1376-1391), 231.  
**FARISHTAH**: Musalmān historian, 348, 361, 372, 512 notes 2 and 3.

- FARRUKHSIYAR** : emperor (1713-1719) 213, son of Azim-us-shāh, second son of Aurangzib, marches on Delhi and puts Jelaundar, Shāh to death (1713); remains under the influence of the Sayad brothers, makes treaty with Aptsing of Mārwar and marries his daughter, (1715), religious riots in Ahmedābad (1714) 297-298; his deposition and death (1719), 300.
- FARJADS** : Mughal governors of crown domains, 211, military police, 211.
- FATHSINGH** : son of Dāmājī Gāikwār by his third wife; comes to Poona and gets a reversal of the recognition of the claims of Govindrāv from the Peshwa in favour of Sayajī, appointed Sayajī's deputy in Gujarat; negotiations of, with the English in Surat, 100, 401, shuts himself up in the city of Buda, 401, negotiates with the English (1780), 108; dies (1789), 110.
- FATMA** : founds a Jama mosque at Smḍ, 506, 520.
- FAZL-UL-ILAH** : Maulāna, physician of Mahmūd, Khilji, 362.
- FEDERATORY STATES** : during Musalmān period, 209.
- FERRISSON** : Mr. ('859), 383, 191, 199, 500, 501.
- FEROZSHAH** : Nawāb of Kunona and follower of Tātā Topi 115.
- FIRIMAN** : Colonel, 110.
- FIDAUDDIN KHAN** : acts as viceroy (1713); schemes of Rangzī for his assassination, returns to Cambay, defeats Rangzī and becomes sole master of Gujarat (1713), 326, confined by his troops for arrears of pay, escapes to Agra, 327.
- FIELD NAMES** : under Valabhis, 83.
- FINANCIAL REFORM** : of Muza Isa Tukhān, 279.
- FIRE-WORSHIPPERS** : in Samu, 516.
- FIRUZ SHĀH** : Sultān, 524. See Malik Kabir.
- FIRUZ TUGHĀK** : Emperor (1351, 1388), 231.
- FISCAL ADMINISTRATION** : of Gujarāt, during Musalmān period, 210.
- FLEET** : Mr., 81 notes 1 and 2, 111, 117 note, 121, 142, 511.
- FLOODS** : Sābarmatī (1683), 287.
- FIREBELL** 538.
- FORBES** : the late Mr., author of the Ras Māla, 163, 159, 160, 188, 170.
- FORBES** : Major, 109.
- FORBES** : Mr., on the Mulakgiri systems of the Marāthās in 1775, 419.
- FOREIGNERS** : settlement of, in Gujarāt, 13.
- **GADAPARACHHATA** : fight of Nakadevi at, 195.
- GADHIA** : coinage, 469.
- GAIKWĀR** : 227. See Dāmājī Gāikwār, Fatsingh Gāikwār, Govindrāv Gāikwār, Pilājī Gāikwār, and Sayājī Gāikwār.
- GAJARĀBĀI** : mother of Kauojī son of Govindrāv, takes refuge at Surat; applies for assistance to the English as well as to Malhar, son of Bhondarāo Gāikwār (1800), 112.
- GALLTATTA** : perhaps Tāilakhali Sālva tribe, 534.
- GAMGIRI** : 541.
- GAYBHUTIA** : ancient name of Cambay, 123.
- GAMBIER** : Mr., chief of the English at Surat, 101.
- GANDARHĀVA** : see Brahāspati.
- GANDHARVĀI** : Gandhara, 515.
- GANDHARVĀ** : Gandharanashita or Yunnan, 501.
- GANDHĀRA** : old town, 75, establishment of the power of Kōdras in 111, 467, 191; retreat of White Hūns from to Kashmir, 500, 515.
- **GANI** : image of, 163.
- GANGA** : the river Ganges 165 and note 5, 518.
- GANGADHAR SHASTRI** : Gāikwār's envoy to Poona for the settlement of the Peshwa's old claims on Gāikwār's estate (1814), 127.
- GANGAMAH** : younger brother of Mulurāja, 160.
- GANGARIDĀI** : tribe, 532-533.
- GANGS** : river, eastern boundary of Kumāra-piles kingdom, 179, 510, water of the, for Somnath, 522, 533, 537, 515.
- GARASTS** : position of 215 and note 2.
- GARGYA** : disciple of Nakulā, founder of a branch of Pātāla school, 1.
- GARIJASAKA** : Sanskrit form of Ghaznavi, 125.
- GARNER** : Lieutenant 501.
- GART** : eagle 204, 165.
- GAUDA** : country, 124, 166, 168, 169.
- GAUGHAT** : 153.
- GAUFAMA** : Buddha (B.C. 569-180), travel through Valabhi country, 79 Sage, tank and hermitage of, 151-161.
- GAUTAMIPUTRA** : Andhra king (A.D. 138), 32, 38; Sakastri 540.
- GAYAKHNA** : see Karna.
- GAYAKHNA** : see Gom, 153.
- GIDRŌSA** : 516.
- GIDRŌSA** : 527.
- GIDRŌSA** : name derived from Valabhi king, 85, 169.
- GIDRŌSA** : of the Gujarāt Kshatrapas, 51; of the Guptas (319-170), 60, of the Chāyadās, 165, 241 the Vaghelas, 206.
- GENERAL EVIDENCE** : of Marāthā supremacy in Gujarāt, 429.
- GHAGADA** : Chayada king (A.D. 908-937), 151, 155.
- GHAILA** : 537.
- GHANCHIS** : oil-presses, 450.
- GHATOTKACHA** : second Gupta chief, 61, 67.
- GHATGODIN** : Khān Bahādur Furuz Janz, forty-third viceroy of Gujarāt (1708-1710); his death; confiscation of his property, 296, 297.
- GHAZNI** : capital of Mahmūd, 165, 510.
- GHAZNI KHAN** : grave of, 455.
- GHULO** : near Vajeh town, probably a river in Valabhi time, 79.
- GHJASUDDIN** : son and successor of Mahmūd Khilji (1469-1499); appoints his son Abdul Kādir prime minister; builds Māndu Shāh.

- Abād or abode of joy; invasion of Málwa by Bahlol Lodi (1462); death of, by poison administered by his son and prime minister Nasir-ud-din, 362-365.
- GHAS VU DIN TCHOUAK: emperor (1820), 230.
- GHERHIA: chief of Godhna, attacked by Tejapada, 201.
- GHU MEI: see Bhumbi.
- GHUDHAK BAHADUR: Raja, Nagar Brahman; governor of Minda (1722-1721); defeat of, by Chhannā Pandya and Udapi Pavar, 3-4.
- GIRNAGARA: Junagadh, 14.
- GIRNAR: built at, 9; Skandagupta's inscription at, 135; Vastupada's temple at, 153; inscription at, 176; temple of Nemungh repaired at, 176, 177, 186; inscription at, 190; visited by Hemachandra, 192, holy, magnificent temple of Nemuntha built on, 199, 202, 231 and note 2, 236.
- GIRNARA: Brahman, 70.
- GIRNAR INSCRIPTION: of Skandagupta, 69-70.
- GLASER: 512.
- GOA: 517.
- GOARIS: river Vartaman 510-512.
- GODARD: General conducts negotiations with Poona on behalf of the Supreme Government and the Government of Bombay advances against Dabhol, 498 takes Ahmedabad by storm; becomes the fort of Bascon (1780), 109.
- GODHRA: chief of deserts Lavanaprasada and joins Malwa chief 199, 201.
- GODRAHA and GODRAHA: see Godhra.
- GODHA: capture of (137), 230; contest for the government of, 311, captured by Moum Khan (1755), 339; delivered to the Marathas by Moum Khan (1755), 312; report, 110.
- GOHIVADIA: main division of Mlec chief-ships, 136.
- GOMIS: name derived from a Valabhi king, 85, 86; Rajput tribe, 217 note 3.
- GONHAYADA: Zillah 208 and note 3.
- GOLLAS: a ruler, 76, Hun king, 86, 113.
- GONDAL: 231, 517.
- GONT: tank, 153.
- GOODFELLOW: Lieutenant Charles, R. E., 447, 418.
- GOPNATH: temple, 79.
- GORADA: priests, 551.
- GOVINDA: feudatory Rāshtrakūta prince ruling in Gujrat, 121, 122; Gujrat Rāshtrakūta king (827), 126.
- GOVINDA I.: Dakhan Rāshtrakūta king (680), 120, 121.
- GOVINDA II.: Dakhan Rāshtrakūta king, 122.
- GOVINDA III.: (827-833) holds the Gujrat province independently of the Dakhan sway, completes the conquest of the north and marches to the south, hands the Gujrat kingdom to his brother Indra, 123, 160, 468, 528.
- GOVINDRAJA: brother of Dhruva II., 127.
- GOVINDRĀY: Gūtkwār, son of Dāmaji by his first wife; sides with Raghunāthrao and is taken prisoner with him at Dhorap (1768); promises increased tribute and heavy fine for his conduct and is invested with his father's title and estates, 399-400; grant made in his favour is cancelled (1771); is reinstated by Raghunāthrao (1773), 401; invests Baroda (1775), 401; leads Rāghoba's army, 403; secures the favour of Mahadji Sindia and applies to him for restoration, 410; takes up the office of regent at Baroda (1793), 111, forces Aba Shelunkar to surrender Ahmedabad and keeps him in confinement (1797), 111, his death (1799), 112.
- GRAHARI: Mularāja's opponent, 139.
- GRAHARIPU: king of the Chudāsāmās, 137; Mleccha ruler of Borath, wars with Mularāja and is made prisoner, 160, 161.
- GRANTS: copperplate, 55.
- GRIMES: Colonel, 110.
- GRIK: vessels, 516.
- GRIHA: see Gihasa.
- GRIHASENA: follower of Buddha, 83; Valabhi king (A.D. 559-567), 85.
- GURJAR: boundaries and extent, 1; the name, 2-5; Rāshtrakūta in, 119-131, invaded by Alif Khān, 205 note 2, under the Mughals (A.D. 1573-1760), 221-225, under the rule of Aurangzib (1611-1617), 280, Shivaji's incursions in (1661-1670), 281, 386, predatory incursions of the Marathās, their growth, their power, and their supremacy in, 3-5, expeditions of Khandarāo Dabhād in (1700-1711), 388; administration of, left entirely in the hands of the Gūtkwār family after the treaty of Salba, 110, 111; under the management of Aba Shelunkar (1796-1797), 111, farmed to Gūtkwār by the Peshwa (1799), 111; renewal of the farm of, to Bhagwantrao Gūtkwār for ten years (1801), 115; appointment of Trimbakji Dangle as Sarsubha of Ahmedabad, 127; Peshwa's rights passed to the British (1819), 385; disturbances (1857-1859), 413-418, disarming (1857), 414; gateway, 452, 459, Brahmans, 163; Hindu enterprise by sea to Java, 192 note 3, conquest and settlement of Java and Cambodia (603), 196, earliest Arab references to, 505, 508, 511, conquest of (1306), 512, 511, 515, 517, 526, 529, religion in, 530; people of, 531, 532. See Jazir.
- GURJAS: a tribe, 2-3, 58.
- GURJA: 113. See Mihargulla.
- GUSAMATI: Bodhisattva, 79.
- GUPTA: Kshatriya inscription at, 42.
- GUNTARI: fort seized by Sammas, 139, 518.
- GURTA: first Gupta king, 60, 61.
- GURTA: era, 29, 58, 67, 81, 87, 110.
- GURIAS: in Magadha, 73, 77.
- GURJARA: kingdoms, 3-4; foreign tribes, Valabhis believed to be Gurjaras, 97; defeated by Arabs, 109; establish themselves at Nandod (580-808), 113; territory, 113; copperplate grants, 113-114; family tree, 114; give up sun-worship and their name for Saivism and Purāṇic pedigree, 116; march against Dhruva II., 127; Chāvalās said to belong to them, 127 note 2,

458, 463; origin of, 464; of Branch, 465, 466; their appearance in India and earliest notice, 467, 468; migration of, 469; are defeated by Prabhākaravādhana (600-606), 490; retain Broach, Valabhi, and Bhinnadi, 490; their relation with Mithras, or Meds, 490, 526. See *Juzr*.

**GURJJARARĀJA**: province of Gujarāt, name derived from Valabhi kings, 85.

**GUVAKA**: first Chohan king, 153 note 1.

**HADĀLAKA**: village, 202.

**HADDALA**: copperplate found at, 138.

**HADOW**. Mr., Collector of Ahmedabad, 143.

**HADRIAN**: Roman emperor (117-139), 537.

**HAIDARĀBĀD**: Sindh town, 511, 517, 538, 516.

**HAJJAR KUTĪ KHĀN**: fiftieth viceroy of Gujarāt; disorder in Ahmedabad (1721); his leniency to Babā of Gujarāt, frees the emperor from the tyranny of the Savads (1721); is honoured with a title and the governorship of Gujarāt (1721-22), 302, subdues Kolis of Churnvāl; shows signs of independence and is recalled (1722), 303.

**HAJO**: General, 538.

**HAJHATAS**: a Kshatriya tribe, 58.

**HAJMAHADDY**: Huma's pit, 193.

**HAJMINAMAMALĀ**: string of names composed by Hemachandra, 192.

**HAIRĀL**: 145.

**HĀKAM**: brother of Usmān, second Khalifah, 505, sends an expedition to Debal and Branch, 505, 506, 513.

**HĀLĀR**: Zillah 208 and note 3.

**HAMĀL KHĀN**: grant of, 155.

**HAMBIRĀV**: the title of Hasājī Molate, Shuvājī's commander, 387.

**HAMID BĒG**: is appointed governor of Branch (1751), 339.

**HAMID KHAN**, uncle of Nizām-ul-Mulk deputy viceroy of Gujarāt (1722), 303, joins his forces with Kāntājī Kādām, and defeats and kills Shujāt Khan near Ahmedabad; takes up his quarters at Shāhī Bāgh and gets possession of all Ahmedabad except the city; attempt of Ibrahim Kuli son of Shujāt Khan to assassinate him, 304-305; defeated by Rustam Ali at Aras (1723), 305, 213; assumes one-fourth share of the territory north of the Mahi to Kāntājī and a corresponding interest in the territory south of Mahi to Pilājī, 305; unites his forces with the Marāṭhis under Kāntājī and Pilājī and marches on Ahmedabad, defeat of, at Sojitra; second defeat, 307.

**HAMMIRAMAHĀKYVA**: 157, 159, 171, 182, 184.

**HAMMUKA**: king of Sindh, invaded by Bhima I., 163.

**HANAWAL**: Janāwal, apparently Chunval or Jhalawar, 510, 513, 517.

**HANUMĀN**: progenitor of Porbandar chief, 135.

**HAKHĀNĀT**: chief of Limbdi (1753), 337.

**HARIPA**: adopted son of Khanderlo (Harkār), attacks Rangoji's deputy and kills him; his expulsion by Rangoji from Borsal, 331.

**HARIPĀLA**: minister of Siddharāja, 173; grandfather of Kumārpala, 181.

**HARIPANT FADKE**: Peshwa's general, enters Gujarāt and compels Govindrāo and Rāghoba to raise the siege of Baroda, 402.

**HARĪYA BRĀHMĀN**: 160 and note 3.

**HARKĀR** (4) messengers, 211.

**HARSHA**: 116.

**HARSHACHRITA**: Sanskrit work by the poet Bana, 111.

**HARSHADĒVA**: Harshwardhana of Kanauj (607-618), 115.

**HARSHAPURA**: identified with Harol, 129.

**HARSHAVARHANA**: Kanauj king (629-645), 56, 74, 108.

**HARSHA**: temple at Verāval of, 203.

**HARSH MĀHĪL**: plunder Branch (1675), 387. See *Hambirāva*.

**HASAN MUHAMMAD KHAN**: author of Mirāt-i-Ahmedī (1730), 310.

**HASTINAGARA**: town, 190.

**HASTINATHUR**: same as Hastinagara.

**HATCH**: Captain (1857), 110.

**HATISHVAR MAHĀDĪV**: Nagari Brāhmans' special guardian at Vālmāra; destruction of the temple of, 289.

**HAYADAR**: Mughal village officer, 212.

**HAZI MUHAMMAD KHAN**: governor of Māndu (1568) 370.

**HĀDĪYĀ**: the legend of (1719), 301.

**HĪKĀYĀT**: Greek writer, 532, 516.

**HĪMACHANDRA**: Jain devotee and chronicler (A.D. 1049-1173), 156, patronised by Siddharāja. 180, his teacher, 181 note 2, tells Kumārpāl his future, 182-183, birth and education, 191, becomes Kumārpāl's religious adviser, 192-193, his works and death, 193.

**HĪMACHARĪYA**: 179, 183, his career 188. See *Hemachandra*.

**HERRICK**: Sir Thomas, English traveller in India (1626), 361. Master Thomas, 381.

**HĪPANIŚIA**: island, 512.

**HĪRŌDŌTOS**: geographer, 516.

**HĪRŌDŌTOS**: Greek historian, 532.

**HĪRŌN**: reef, 539, 515.

**HĪMALAYAS**: the, 518.

**HIND**: 511, cities of, 514, 516, 518; king of 529.

**HINDU**: 512, 529; classes of, 530; king, 531.

**HINDU CHIEFS**: of Māndu, expelled by Sultān Shams-ud-din Altamsh (1231), 367.

**HIPPALUS**: 536, 537, 513.

**HIPPARCHOS**: Eratosthenes' critic (130 B.C.), 535.

**HIPPOKOURA**: either Godegoun or Kuda, 540; possibly Hippargi, 511.

**HERAKLEIA**: 546.

**HĪRANYA KĀSHIPU**: demon, 120.

**HISTORIANS**: Sphāṇki, 155.

**HŪEN TSANG**: Chinese traveller and pilgrim (A.D. 612-640), 3, 7, 77; his description of the Valabhis, 79; 85; 111; 115; notices Broach kingdom, 116; 143, 465, 466, 467, 489, 490, 499, 502, 540.

**HŪSHĀM BIN ABDUL MALIK**: (724-743), 506, 513, 520.

**HA-AMUDDIN PARMAR**, Gujarāt governor, 239 and note 1.  
**HAN GHORAR** 537.  
**HISTORY**, of Bhīmāl, 465-471.  
**HONORS** 465.  
**HORNBY**, chief of the council at Bombay (1779), 408.  
**HOSHANG SHAH GHORI**, Sultan of Malwa (1405-1432), the establisher of Mandu's greatness, goes to Jajpur (Jajpur) in Cuttack of Orissa (1421), returns to Mandu at the news of the siege of Mandu by Ahmed Shah of Gujarat in 1422, prosperity of Malwa and extension of his power by his ministers Malik Muḡhīs Khilji and Mahmūd Khān his son, his death, 358-359.  
**HUTCHINSON**, Dr., 129 note 3.  
**HUMAYUN**, emperor of Delhi (1539-1556), 220; defeats Sultan Bahadur of Gujarāt (1531) at Mandason, captures the fort of Songad, returns to Mandu from Gujarāt (1535), returns to Agra (1535-36), 367, 368.  
**HUN**, community, 219 note 2, 222 note 2.  
**HUSA**, king of it the *comunitate* or choice-matriage of Durlabhadra, 163.  
**HUSAINS** 465.  
**HUSAS**, White (A.D. 150-520), 69, 73, 74, 76, 112-116, 165, 467. See **HUNS**.  
**HUSI**, subdivision of Marwar Kumbas, 165.  
**HUSAS**, White, 69, 73, 86. See **Husas**.  
**HUSMIZ**, horse trade from, 515.  
**HUSOR**, town, capital of Parachanda 129.  
**HU-AN KHAN BAIYANGI** 139.  
**HUTCHINSON**, Captain, Political Agent of Bhopawan, hates the Rajā of Amjota (1857), 139.  
**HVAISHKA**, Kushān king (A.D. 100-123), 37.  
**HYDERABAD**, the River 634.  
**HYALAS**, the Indus, 533.  
**I**  
**IBERIA**, district of Skythia, 514.  
**IBN KHURDADBEH** 168. See **Ibn Khurdādhbih**.  
**IBN ASIR**, Arab historian, author of *Turkh-i-Kamil* (1160-1232), his account of the destruction of Somnātha 166.  
**IBN ASIR**, 522 and note 4, 523, 524. See **Ibn Asir**.  
**IBN HANBAL**, Muhammad Abul Kāsim (995-996), 507, 511 and notes 6, 7, 8, 510 note 1, 511 and notes 6, 7, 8, 516 and notes 8, 9, 10, 518, 519, 521, 523, 526, 527, 528, 529.  
**IBN KHAṬIB KHAN**, author of the biographical dictionary, 522 note 4.  
**IBN KHRADADBEH**, Arab writer (912), 506 and note 7, 509 note 5, 512, 513 and note 10, 519, 520, 527, 528, 530, 531. See **Ibn Khurdādhbih**.  
**IBRAHIM KHAN**, fortieth viceroy of Gujarāt (1705), 293; forty-second viceroy (1706), 296; resigns (1708), 296.  
**IBRĀHIMĪ**, gold coin, 219 note 2; 222 note 2.  
**IDAR**, 218, 226, 232, 233, 236, 237, 238; revolt of, capture of, by Mughals, death of the chief of (1679), 286; unsuccessful attack on, by Jawān Mard Khān, 316.

**ILLO**: copperplate grant found at, 146 note 3, 117.  
**IMPERIAL POWER**, decay of (1720), 301.  
**IMPORTS**, into Skythia, 514.  
**IMPROVEMENTS**, by Akbar, 223.  
**ISLAM COMMISSION**, fanatical spirit excited by the proceedings of, 436.  
**INDI**, Indi, 541.  
**INDARGAD**, fort taken by Lieut. Welch in 1780, 109.  
**INDIA**, religious sects of, 530, home of wisdom, 531.  
**INDIA ARCHIDELAGG**, 536.  
**INDO-CHINA**, conversion of, to Buddhism (B.C. 210), immigration to of Sakas or Yavanas from Tamulak or Ratnavati on the Hughli (A.D. 100), 199.  
**INDO-SKYTHIA** 537, 538, 539.  
**INDRA**, Rashtrakūṭa king (about A.D. 500), 120, Founder of the Gujarāt branch 121, 125-124.  
**INDRA I.**, Rashtrakūṭa king, 120, 121.  
**INDRA III**, Dakhni Rashtrakūṭa king, his grants found at Navsari, 128, (A.D. 914), 130, 516.  
**INDUS**, river, 517, 533, 534, 537, 538.  
**INSCRIPTIONS**, 12, 13, 65-66, 67, 69, 71, of Goa Kadambas, 172 note 3, of Naravarman, 173, of Mahanavarman, 173, 203-204; at Bhīmāl 471-488.  
**INDRAPATHA-PUTI**, Indraprastha, capital of Cambodia, 199.  
**IOXANE**, the Yaguna, 533.  
**IRON PLATE**, legend of the, 10 and note 2.  
**ISLAM**, converts to, 111, spread of (1414), 236-237, precepts of taught in Kambaya, 514, 530.  
**ISAMAGAD**, military post of the Mughals. See **Sula**, 285.  
**ISAMAGAR**, see **Nivanagar**.  
**ISMAIL MUHAMMAD**, the collector of customs at Cambay 1711, 323.  
**ISVARADATTA**, Kshatrapati ruler (230-250), coins of, 51-52, rubi, 57.  
**ISVARASENA**, Abhaya king, 52.  
**J**  
**JAFAR-AL-MANSUR**, Abbāsi Khilīfah (754-775), 521.  
**JABATPUR**, Visalakhya retires to, for help, 203.  
**JABWA**, Raja of, shelters Captain Hutchinson, 439.  
**JACHKADATTA**, king, copperplate of, 136.  
**JADAM**, same as Yadava, 139.  
**JADHA**, corruption of Jadhaja, 137.  
**JADHARAS**, invading tribe, 137.  
**JADOT**, son of Umabai Dabhadra, 314.  
**JAGADOLVA**, chief, general of Siddharāja, 172 and note 3.  
**JAGATSHAMPAKA**, world guardian, another name of Durlabha, Chaulukya king, 163.  
**JAGATSEN**, gives Shrināl to Gujarāt Brāhmins, 463.  
**JAGATSVAMI**, 460, 463. See **Jagatvami**.  
**JAGATIUNGA**, Dakhni Rashtrakūṭa prince, son of Krishna, 128, 130.

- JAG DAY** : see Jagaddewa.
- JAGDHWAR** : shrine and eastern of, 453.
- JAGIRDARS** : Musalman landholders, 215.
- JAGO** : John de St., Portuguese apostate in the service of Sultan Buladur of Cambray (1536), 350, 350.
- JAGSON** : king, 460, 461, 161; temple of, 460.
- JAGSYAMI** : sun temple of, 451, 456, 459, 463, 471.
- JAH** (AGH) : Mughal emperor (1605-1627), visits Mandu in 1611, receives English ambassador Sir T. Roe at Mandu, 361, 372-377.
- JAIKADIVA** : copperplate of, 81, Meor king, his grant, 87; another name of Jachkadava, 137; his grant at Morla, 139.
- JAIR** : properly Jakshir, 454 and note; lake, 455, 456-458, 471.
- JAIPUR** : 511 note 12, 520.
- JAJAKA** : minister of Akadavarsha Krishna, 125.
- JAL** : 456. See Pih.
- JALHAN** : daughter of Anand, marries Kumarapala, 185.
- JALAI PUR** : town, 531, 546.
- JAM** : 215 and note 2.
- JAMA** : fixed sum of land revenue, 212.
- JAMAWAL** : tribe, 460, 461.
- JAMBA** : Rama minister of Vamraya, 152.
- JAMBUNALI** : river, 160.
- JAMUSAR** : Brahman of, mentioned as grantee, 111, attacked and plundered by Momm Khan in 1753, 339.
- JAMBIVADA** : 125.
- JAMBIVIKA** : modern Jambivada, 125.
- JAMPAGNI** : size, 161.
- JAMUL-HIKAYAT** : work of Muhammad Ufi, 512 and note 5.
- JALRGA** : king, 512.
- JAMNA** : the river Yamuna, 518.
- JAMS** : Gujarat chiefs, 139.
- JAM SHUA** : Summa chief of little Kachh, 518.
- JANARAYA** : 56.
- JANAWAL** : Chunval, 509, 513.
- JANDUR** : Rander, 509 note 1, 520.
- JANUBA** : identified with Puri, 107, 1-land, 207, note 1; fort, residence, and stronghold of the Sidi or Abyssinian admiral of Bijapur, 285, 546.
- JANKOJI (O SINDIA)** : adopted son of Buzdai, widow of Dowlatab Smida, 137.
- JANONI BHONSLE** : of Nagpur, partisan of Raghoba, 399.
- JANWAL** : Chunval or Vudmgim, 509. See Janawal and Junwal.
- JARIYA** : goldsmiths, origin of, 461.
- JATIAS** : tanners, 451.
- JASDAN** : Kshatrapa inscription at, 13.
- JASVANTISINGH RATHOR** : Maharaja, viceroy of Malwa (1667), thirty-second viceroy of Gujarat (1659-1662), 282; sent from Gujarat by Aurangzib to join prince Muazzam against Shivaji in the Dakhan (1662), 283, 387, thirty-fifth viceroy of Gujarat (1671-1674; sent to Kabul (1671), 285.
- JATE** : cultivator, 451; persecution of, by Brahmanist Chach (612), 498.
- JATWAR** : village, 298 and note 3.
- JAUHITA** : 157.
- JAW HANS** : Yojanas, 525.
- JAYALA** : identified with the tribe enrolled by Toramsha, 116.
- JAYA** : island, early Hindu settlements in, 189; traditions of expeditions by sea to, 190, 191 note 5, 192; mention of Gundhara and Lata in the legends of, 197, emigration to, of refugees from the defeats of Prabhakaravardhana and Shriharsha of Magadha (600-612), 497, appearance and condition of Hindu settlers in, 198.
- JAYADA** : corruption of Chavala, 150.
- JAWLA** : see Jhawla.
- JAWAN MARD KHAN BAKI** : his unsuccessful attempt on Idar and negotiations with the Marathas, 315; proclaims himself deputy viceroy of Gujarat 326; assumes charge of the city of Ahmedabad and persuades the troops to release Fakhruddin, drives the viceroy to Cambay and invites Abdul Aziz Khan of Junnar, 327, 328, reconciles himself with his brother Safdar Khan Babi of Radhampur and imprisons Fakhr-ud-daulah and his family 329, appoints Jagardaspant in place of Ruzogh, 331; enters into negotiations with Balapratyashwa (1750), 331; joins the Marathas against Momm Khan, 310, 312, 315.
- JAYLA** : tribal name, 165.
- JAYABHATA I.** : Gurjjara king (605-620), 114, 115.
- JAYABHATA II.** : Gurjjara chief of Nandol, helps Valabhi, 85, (650-675), 116.
- JAYABHATA III.** : Gurjjara king of Nandol, his copperplate, 56, 108, (700-731), 114, 116; his grants, 117; deprived of his dominion by Dantidurga, 122.
- JAYADAMAN** : third Kshatrapa (110-113) coins of, 33-34.
- JAYADITYA** : sun temple, 126.
- JAYAKI** : Kadamba king of Chandrapura, marries his daughter to Karna, burns himself on the funeral pile, 170 and note 5.
- JAYAKI II.** : Goa Kadamba king, 172 note 3.
- JAYANTAPALA** : Vastupal's son, 202.
- JAYANTA-SMHA** : Chalukya noble (1221), 196.
- JAYANTIDEVI** : goddess in Agaval, 170.
- JAYANTI-KHARA** : Chivada king of Panchesar (696), killed by Bhuvada, 150, 156.
- JAYASIMHA** : Chalukya prince, 111, 117. See Jayasimhavarmā.
- JAYASIMHA I.** : Chalukya prince, defeats Indra, Rashtrakuta prince (A.D. 500), 120.
- JAYASIMHAVARMAN** : Chalukya king, 56, younger brother of Vikramaditya Satyasraya drives out the Gurjjars and establishes Chalukya power in south Gujarat (A.D. 666-693), 107, 108, 110.
- JAZIAH** : capitation tax, 213; imposition of, by Aurangzib 286.
- JEHANSADARSAN** : Abul Fateh Muiz-ud-din, son and successor of Bahadur Shah I. of Delhi (1712-13), 297.
- JESALMIR** : Mhers settle at, 186; Jain temple at, 161 note 1.

**JEṬHVAŚ** : Porbandar chiefs, 135 ; Rājputs, 132 ; foreign tribe, 130-110, identified with Jats, 115.  
**JĒWS** : in Saimur, 516.  
**JHĀLĀS** : Rājputs, 139 ; foreign tribe, 116, 206 note.  
**JHĀLĀV** (DA) : established in Rājputāna, 110, 208 note 3.  
**JHĀLĀWAR** : local name, 233 and note 5, 517.  
**JHĀṬINDAR** : ancient name of Jhalor, 229.  
**JHĀṬOR** : in Jhalpur, 229 and note 5, 149, 154.  
**JHĀṬOKS** : 301.  
**JHĀNJA** : Śiḍḍhanta king (916), 129, 516.  
**JHĀYTRĪ NĀICHAND** : agent of the Kārola conspirators in the Kārola district, 112.  
**JHĀYVĀN** : division of Pañjāb Gujjars, 116.  
**JHĪSHIVĀ** : fort, 10 note 2.  
**JHOLIKAVIHARA** : temple, built by Kumārāditya at Dhundhuka, 190.  
**JINAPRAHARSA** : Jīn sage and writer, 6, 15, 78, author of the Tithakalpā, 176, 182 note.  
**JIRHĀVAN** : town, 509.  
**JĪHUNĪ** : father of Bṛhmagupta, 153 note 1.  
**JĪPER** : battle of (1591), 23, and note 2, 238.  
**JĪTILĪ ANASUPRIYĀ** : festival, 180 note 2.  
**JIVADĪMAN** : sixth Kshatrapa (175), coins of, 40-11.  
**JODHPUR** : town, 163.  
**JOG VAMĪ** : 165.  
**JUMNA** : 535. See Jamna.  
**JUNĀGADH** : Mauryan capital of Gujarat, 11 ; establishment of Ahir kingdom at, 138, capital of Chudastana ruler, 176, independent ruler of, 206, note, 236, taken by Mahmūd Begada and made his capital under the name of Mustafāghāh (172), 21, 216, disputed succession (1811), 125, British and invoked at (1616), 127-638.  
**JUNĀD** : Śiḍḍhanta governor of Khilāf Hasham, his expeditions, 109, 167 ; sends expeditions against Gujarat, 506, 513, 520.  
**JUNAWAT** : 517. See Janawāt.  
**JUNĀVD** : see Jumāl.  
**JUNĀR** : perhaps ancient Trikūṭī, 57.  
**JURZ** : see Juzr.  
**JUSTICE** : Mughal administration of, 213.  
**JUSTIN** : historian (A.D. 250), 16, 535.  
**JUZR** : Gujrat and Gurjor, expedition against, 109, 165, 167, 168, 169, 505, 506, 513, 520, 521.  
**K (BIRN)** : perhaps a town on the Kāveri, Musabimāras in, 518.  
**K (BUL VALLY)** : stupas or mounds of, 497.  
**KACCH** : migration of Samaras to, 139 ; Bhīmā's copperplate in, 163, stone inscription from, 203, 508 ; affliction of, 513 note 9, 517, 521, 530, 534, 538. See Kacchella.  
**KACCHĒLLA** : identified with Kacchi, 109.  
**KĀCHA** : coins, 62 note 2.  
**KACCHHĪNA** : Kacchi, 36 and note 5.  
**KADALUNDI** : near Bepur, 646.  
**KĀDAMBAH** : Bāna's work, 114.  
**KADESIAN** : battle of (C36), 505 note 5.  
**KĀIT** : town grant from, 203, 231.

**KADI** : fort, captured by the English (1802), 412.  
**KADWA** : Gujarat Kanbi subdivision, 4-5.  
**KĀETR** : Hazār Dūstī, minister and general of Alā-ud-dīn, 515.  
**KAINIṬIPAT** : island of St. George, 516.  
**KAIRA** : grant of, 110, 167, 518 and note 3.  
**KĀITHAL** : 531.  
**KĀKA** : town, 61 note 3.  
**KAKARA** : village, 152.  
**KAKKA** : founder of Rashtrakuṭa kingdom in Gujrat, 467.  
**KAKKA H.** : Rashtrakuṭa king, his grants, 122.  
**KAKKAḌḌI** : Rashtrakuṭa king, 120.  
**KAKKALA** : Rashtrakuṭa king, 120.  
**KAKREZ** : name of subdivision, 208 note 3.  
**KALACHURI** : era, 57, dynasty, 111, 169. See Chāli Chalukya.  
**KĀLĀMĀPĪṬĀNA** : city visited by Kumārāpāla, 183 and note.  
**KĀLĀNĀGA** : city, 57 and note 1, fort, 173.  
**KĀLĀVINI** : river identified with Kaveri, 185 and note 1.  
**KĀLĀYĀVANA** : legendary Dakhn hero, 9.  
**KĀṬIKĀ** : Yog of Ujjain, 174.  
**KALINJAR** : Kalachuri possession, 169.  
**KĀPIṬĀGA** : fourth cycle, 6, 161.  
**KĀṬĀDA** : 507.  
**KĀṬĀNA** : modern Kalyān, great port, 517.  
**KĀṬHNA** : modern Kalyān, 80.  
**KĀṬIGIRIS** : probably Galgah, 511.  
**KĀṬKA** : father of Jaypala, 128.  
**KĀLYĀN** : 80, see Kāṭhna, capital of Chālukya kingdom, 150, great port, 517.  
**KĀLYĀNĀKATĀKA** : capital of Buvada Chālukya king, 170. Capital of king Permada, 173.  
**KĀMĀVĀ** : mother of Lakha, curses Mula-raj's descendants, 160.  
**KĀMAN** : probably Kamanup, that is Assam, inland state, 528.  
**KĀMAN** : identified with Kāmlaj, 539.  
**KĀMĀVĪDĪR** : revenue official, 212 note.  
**KĀMBAY** : 514. See Cambay.  
**KĀMBĀVA** : 507, 508, 509, 511, 514, 531. See Cambay.  
**KĀMBĀYĀH** : 514, 523, 528, 529. See Cambay.  
**KĀMBĀYĀI** : 514, 515, 520. See Cambay.  
**KĀMBORJ** : Kabul, 191, 198 and note 1.  
**KĀMBHAL** : 507, 511, 514. See Anahilavāḍa.  
**KĀMIGARA** : town, 538.  
**KĀMKAR** : Konkan, 519.  
**KĀMĪJ** : district, 108 ; expedition against, 109, 130, 520.  
**KĀMMAṆṬĪA** : modern Kāmlaj, 130.  
**KĀMṆOMI** : identified with Kum, 539 ; village, 515.  
**KĀMṆILA** : Rāja of, 230 and note 2.  
**KĀMSA** : defeated by Krishn, 178.  
**KĀMṆITUL** : 511, 514. See Anahilavāḍa.  
**KĀNAK** : 462 note 3.  
**KĀNAKĪN** : founder of the Skythian era (78), 453, 464.  
**KĀNĀM** : local name for Jambusar, 208 note 3.  
**KĀNĀI** : 507, 518, 519.  
**KĀNBIS** : origin of the name, 4.  
**KĀNCHI** : modern Conjeveram, visited by Kumārāpāla, 183.

- KANDARINA**: Gandhār, north of Broach, 589.  
**KANDHAR**: 525.  
**KANDOLA**: palace, 180 note 2.  
**KANE**: modern Hān Ghulab, 543.  
**KANHADA**: 181. See Kishinukhva.  
**KANJHRI**: cave inscription at, 126, 129.  
**KANHOI**: Garkwār, son of Govindrāy by a Rajputān princess of Dharmpur, kept in confinement during Govindrāy's time, manages to secure the government for his idiot brother Anandāo (1800), again kept in confinement by his Arab guard, 112, collects an army, obtains possession of Vāndino and is subdued by the English (1805), 113.  
**KANISHKA**: Kushan king (A.D. 78, 22-33, 37, 61 note 5, 153, 162 note 3. See Kanak.  
**KANI**: Chumvāha Koli robber, subdued by Azam Khān Meeror (1665-1612), 278, Koli chief of Chhamar, 321.  
**KANSAR**: village, Dāmāj's brother Pradāpāy died at (1757), 318.  
**KANADDEVA RASA**: 229.  
**KANOI**: battle of, 150.  
**KANOHAS**: Brahmins, 161.  
**KANORI LAKPAR**: Garkwār's lieutenant, 340; goes with Fakhr-ud-daulah into Sorath and captures the town of Vānkhali, retires to Dholkī and expels Muhammad Jārbaz, joins Rājgor and marches on Samud, 341, 396.  
**KANSTAN KADAM BANDLE**: officer of the Peshwa, enters Gujārāt and leaves tribute for the first time (1723), 301, 310, 317, 390, takes Chumpaner, 391; enters Gujārāt, 391.  
**KANTELUS**: see Samlāl.  
**KANIHADI**: ascetic, 161.  
**KANIHADUR**: 158. See Kantiokot.  
**KANIRI**: 538.  
**KANTHIKA**: coast tract, from Bilār northward, on between Bimlay and Cambay, 123, 126.  
**KANTIKOT**: fort in Cutch, 154, 204, 235 and note 2.  
**KANUNGOOS**: Mughal accountants, 212.  
**KANVARI**: village, 113.  
**KANVAKUBJA**: 79, 161. See Kanavj.  
**KAPADVANS**: grant at, 123, 129, reservoir built at by Sadharāj, 180 note 1; battle of (1725), 307, capture of by the Marathās (1736), 317; Fakhr-ud-daulah meets Rājgorji of Idar at, 329, siege of raised by Holkar (1746), 330, taken by Dāmāj from Sher Khān (1753), 338.  
**KAPALESVARA**: 127.  
**KAPARDI**: Kumrapāla's chief minister after the death of Udayana, 190; becomes Ajayapāla's minister, is thrown in a cauldron of boiling oil, 194.  
**KAPDI**: 156.  
**KAPIKA**: identified with Kāvi, 126.  
**KAPILAKOT**: Mularāja slew Lakha in a combat at, 160.  
**KAPISH PHALA**: 531.  
**KAPURCAND BHANGLI**: leading merchant of Ahmedābād, murder of, by Anopsing Bhandari, 302.  
**KARAD**: town, coin-board found at, 18-49.  
**KARADA SAROVAR**: lake, 153.  
**KARATHISHVAR**: 453 and note 2.  
**KAR GANG**: Yumnān (1200), 501.  
**KARAMBĀKA VIKRA**: temple, built by Kumārāpāla at Pātan, 190.  
**KARAK**: defeat of by the Musalmāns, 512. See Karān Ghelo.  
**KARAK GHILLO**: Vaghela ruler of Gujārāt (1296-1304), 229.  
**KARAVANA**: modern Karvān chief shrine of Likhūn and temple of Chamundadevi at, 83 and note.  
**KARDA**: plate, 128, 130.  
**KARIN PAVIYAS**: 514, 515.  
**KARIS**: Salavats, 16.  
**KARKA I**: Rāshtrakuta king of Gujārāt branch (812-821) accepts the overlordship of Dakhn dynasty, helps Amoghavāgha in establishing his supremacy and receives in return a portion of country south of the Lapti, his grants, 121-129.  
**KARKA II**: grant of (812-813), 166-168.  
**KARMANĀYA AHARA**: district of Kankj, 108.  
**KARNA**: Pūtiac king, 1, Mithilbhūrat hero, 85, 86, 116, son and successor of Bhūma I (1061-1091) removes his capital to Karnavān, 169-170-171, king of Chedi, pays tribute to Bhūma I, 163, marches against Kumārāpāla and dies on the way, 186 and note 5, 187.  
**KARNADIVA**: last Vaghela king (1296-1304); flees before Musalmāns to Devanā, dies a fugitive, 205-206.  
**KARNADIVYA**: 157.  
**KARNAL**: district of Panpāb, 531.  
**KARNAMET**: temple at Anahilavāda, built by Karna the Chaulukya king, 170.  
**KARNA SAGARA**: lake made by Karna the Chaulukya king, 170.  
**KARNARA**: king of, 203 and note 3.  
**KARNAVATI**: city founded by Karna the Chaulukya king and made his capital; temple of Udaya Varaha at, 170, modern Ahmedābād, 181, Hemachandra's birthplace, 191.  
**KARNEVARA**: god Mahadeva in Asaval, 170.  
**KARPATKA**: 156.  
**KARVA**: Karna, 518.  
**KARRANJ HATI**: Kāna of Nagar Pūkar, rises in revolt, subdued by Colonel Evans, 418.  
**KARLAAR KHAN**: viceroys, suppresses the mutiny at Ahmedābād (1688), 258.  
**KARTTIKA**: 64 and note 2.  
**KARUR**: battle of, 113, 496.  
**KARUSHA**: disciple of Nakulīsa, 81.  
**KARVĀN**: see Karāvana.  
**KASAKULA**: division, 110.  
**KASAMACHITRA**: ruler of Gujārāt, sends an expedition to Jāva (603), 49.  
**KASAM KHAN**: thirtieth viceroys of Gujārāt (1657-1659), 282.  
**KASARAS**: brass-smiths, 450.  
**KASBAH**: town, 213.  
**KASBĀTIS**: of Pātan (1748), 333.

- KĀSHMĪR: state, 460, 461, 464, 465, 468, 519, 522.  
 KASHYAP: sage, 461.  
 KĀSI, king of, present with Malarāja in the battle with Graharipu, 160, present at the *stagnation* of Durgabhadra, 163.  
 KĀMIR: 165, 527, 516.  
 KĀMIRADĪVĪ, wife of Tribhuvanapada, 181.  
 KĀMIRAS: 169.  
 KASPIKOS: Kashmir city, 516.  
 KASHTĪYAS: 531.  
 KĀSHĪYĀ: Kshatrya, 530.  
 KĀSHĪYASĀGĀRYA: 78.  
 KĀSHĪYAS: woodworkers, 150.  
 KĀSHĪYĀDA: the tribe, 208, 209, 211 in South, 208 and note 3, 209; Gupta sway in 135, arrival of Meis in 140 and note 5, disturbance in (1692), 288; settlement of tribute by Colonel Walker, 416, state of (1805), 416, the revenue and system in, 417, British and Chinese in, 420-421, the tribe of taking securities in all engagements in, 420. Peshwa's share of tribute in 122-123, cession of the share to the English for military expenses, 123-124, disturbances in (1811), 125, 526, 534, 538.  
 KĀSHĪS: the tribe, 209, 217 note 3.  
 KĀSHĪKA: Bīma, gives patched grain to Kumbhāpāda on credit, 183, is given Barala, 181.  
 KĀSHĪYĀDĪVĪ, wife of Kumbhāva, taken captive by Alāf Khān and admitted into the Sultan's harem, 205.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Bīma's servants, 151.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: 518, 519.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Govind III, grant of 123-125, 126.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: modern Kosul, 128.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: writer, 461.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: position and date of, 213, 214, 539.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS-KĀSHĪYĀS: Mughal appellation kazi, 213.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Colonel, sent to help Raghubā, 402, joins Raghubā at Daring or Durnai, Cambay (1770) 403, negotiates with Tidesing on behalf of Raghubā, 405, receive orders to leave Raghubā to him off, 405.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: temple in 1 or 2, joined by C. 1 or 2, 190.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: retreat of, to Kashmir, 500, settle with Tibetans in Yunnan in the 19th century, 501.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Gail war, Damiā's cousin, receive one-third of the revenues of Surat for his aid from Sayad Achim, 332.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: probably modern Kohun or Qulon, 183 note.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: chief of Nador, 193.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: Keralaputra, 516.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: inscriptions near the ruined town of, 188.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: Cera king, 516.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: village, inscription at, 196, 470.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Nagara Brāhman, minister of Karmadeva, slain, 205 note 2.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Nāikda Bhūl leader, surrender of (1859), 416.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: probably, Kavi, 513, 546. See Akabagou.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: son of Singhar, 517.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS (no. inscription from, 469.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ (724-713), 169.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: crown domain, 200, 214.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: 511. See Cambay.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: see Cambay.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: town, head-quarters of the Navagarh chiefs between 1671-1707, 285.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: battle of (1491), 232 and note 2.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: obtains a title of Ghālib Jani, 307.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: fort, attacked by Mahmūd of Ghazni, 167.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: Dābād, Rām Rāja's deputy in Baglan, makes incursions into the Surat district (1699), 388, his expeditions in Gujarat (1700-1711); his defeat at Ankleshwar by the Mughals (1711), 388, defeats the army sent against him under Zulfiqar Beg by the Dehli authorities (1716), 388, his outpost between Surat and Burhanpur (1716) 388, is appointed Senāpati by Rājā Shūhn, 389.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: Garkwā, brother of Damiā, demands his share negotiates with Jawāh Murl Khān, appoints Dālu Morar his deputy at Ahmedabad and goes to Sorath, 326, 327, confines Rangoon and Fakhr-ul-daulah, appoints Tumbak Pānī his deputy, 529, is appointed his brother's deputy in Gujarat, 332, 340.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: Bodhi unsuccessfully besieges Mandu, 181.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: prince, 23.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: salt well, 171.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: mouth of the Indus, 533.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: king of Kumbhān, 190.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: 169.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: general of Sultan Nāsir-ud-din Kabīr, 512.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: butcher, 151.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: father of Umar the second Khilafah, 505.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: family slaves, usurp government of Navagarh, dispersed by British contingent (1811), 17.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: imperial treasury, 213.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: grant of, 108, 115, 116, 125, 126, 129, 51.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: king of Sorath, killed by Siddharaj, 176.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS IV: Chudāsama king of Junāgadh (1279-1333), repairs Somnātha after its desecration by Alā-ud-din Khiljī, 190.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: the peninsula of Goa, 547, 546.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: brother and successor of Nōk Alum Khan II. of Broach; his death, 33-339.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: Kheda, 115, 128.  
 KĀSHĪYĀS: 513.  
 KĀSHĪYĀSĀDĪVĪ: prince, son of Alā-ud-din Khiljī and husband of Devaladevi, 205.

- KHMTES** : Panjāb and Kashmir settlers in Java and Cambodia, 500 note 6, 502.
- KHOKHAR** : village, inscription at, 204.
- KHURSAN** 168.
- KHURSHID RANI** : mother of Nasir-ud-din Khilji (1500-1512) 365.
- KHUSHTACHAND SHIR** : chief merchant of, Ahmedabad, 333.
- KHUSHANAWAZ** : White Huna emperor (460-500), 76.
- KIDARAS** : division of Baktrian Yuchtu, 111.
- KIE CH'IA** 116. See Kheda.
- KIM** 515. See Kaunomys.
- KIM KALHODRA** : battle of (1744), 328; customs station its revenue made over to the English by the Baroda minister Ravi (1803), 114.
- KIR** : Cappadocia apylla 161.
- KIRATAKUPA** : see Koradu.
- KIRIYA** : language spoken at Malkhet 519.
- KIRTIKAMUDIT** : compiled by Samayara, 159, 174, 178, 179, 191, 195, 196, 198, 199.
- KIRIVALLMAN** : Chalukya king, 107.
- KIRIRAJA** : grandson of Parappa and king of Laṭa, his grant at Surat 159.
- KIRIPIPPA** : brother of Kumarapala, 11.
- KIRITIRAJA** : Parmār king, 160.
- KIRIPISTAMBHA** : reservoir, 10 note 2.
- KIS** 54. See Kish.
- KISH** : probably Kish-Milān island 514.
- KISHANDEV** : gateway 150 note 1.
- KI (BU) AKATIM** : Book of Chimes, work of Al-Isakhi, 506 note 9.
- KITOHO** : last Kushān king, 75 ruler of Yuchtu, 114.
- KIT-CHU-TO** : northern Gurjara Kingdom (A.D. 620), 3; Chinese form of Gurjara, 160, 189.
- KLAUDIOS PROKLAMIO** : of Alexandria, 537.
- KOL** : Kābul river, 537.
- KOCHHARVA** : goddess in Asaval, 170.
- KOCHIN** 533.
- KODINAR** : town, temple of Ambal, at, 12 and note.
- KODRANA** : town, 538.
- KOHAR** : town, 538.
- KOKALMIR** : Mīr settlement at, 136.
- KOI** : town 519 and note 4, 520.
- KOLAKA** : town, 538.
- KOIMBARPATANA** : probably modern Qulon, 183 note.
- KOLHAPUR** : Kumarapala's visit to, 183.
- KOLIS** : rebellion of 53.
- KONDAL** : Gondal, 517.
- KONKANA** : northern boundary of (A.D. 688), 5 note, 524, 527, 528, 531.
- KONVALLI** : village, 127.
- KOPRAGON** : the residence of Rāghoba after the treaty of Sālbā, 410.
- KOPIOS** : town on the Nile, 535-536.
- KORI** : 538.
- KOSAD** : village, 128.
- KOALAS** : 469.
- KOSMAS INDIKOPLESIBIS** : shipman and monk, author of Topographia Christiana (530-550), 547.
- KOTIHA** : Aral commander, checks Chinese advance (709) 501.
- KOTIPUR** : village 126.
- KOTIMBA** : boats, 515.
- KOTWAL** : city police inspector, 211.
- KOZILAKADAPUR** : Indo-Skythian king, 536.
- KREṢṢANORI** 537, 546.
- KRISHNA** : father of Rashtrakūṭa prince, India, 120. Dakṣiṇ Rashtrakūṭa king (765), 121, 122. Akalavarsha, last Gujarāt Rashtrakūṭa king (888) 128. Alālavarsha, Dakṣiṇ Rashtrakūṭa king (888-911) brings South Gujrat under the sway of the Dakṣiṇ, 128-129.
- KRISHNA** : legendary connection with Dvāntak 8-11, incarnation of Viṣṇu, his image at Veraval 81, claimed by the Chudasamīs as their ancestor, 139, 178; builds the Somnatha temple, 190, claimed by Gujjaras as their ancestor 161.
- KRISHNA III** : Rashtrakūṭa king, 169.
- KRISHNADIVA** : cavalry general of Siddharapa and brother-in-law of Kumarapala, 181, 182; helps Kumarapala to secure the throne, 183; insults Kumarapala, 181.
- KRIṢṢAVI** : foster son of Mānaji, captures the fort of Chāmpener (1728), 398.
- KRISHNARAYA** : Pratihara king, 170.
- KSHATRAS** : dynasty of c. 70, A.D. 398, the name, 9 and note, 21, northern and western, 22, 54, 65, 66, dynasty of 161.
- KSHATRIYA** : 163 note 2, 165, 530, 531.
- KSHIRAKAYA** : Chavala king (841-880) of Anahilavala, 127 note 2, 151, 155.
- KSHIRMAKATA** : son of Bhima I, Chalukya king of Anahilavala, 169, 170, 181.
- KSHIRAPATI** : 161.
- KULAS** : p.c. 100, 537.
- KULVA** : see Kula.
- KULUVA** : name of province, 36 and note 7.
- KULAMMAL** : Qulon, apparently on the Mafin coast-maritime island, 509 and note 2.
- KULACHANDRA** : general of the Malwa king, invades and sacks Anahilavala, 163-164.
- KULI** : country of Sindh, 529.
- KUMAR** : temple in, repaired by Gauda Bhūhaspati 190.
- KUMARADEVI** : Gupta queen (c. 360 A.D.), 61 and note 1.
- KUMARAGUPTA I** : Gupta king (A.D. 339), 29.
- KUMARAGUPTA II** : sixth Gupta king (A.D. 416-455), inscriptions, coins, 66, 67, 68-69, 71, 78 note, 86.
- KUMARAGUPTA III** : Gupta king, 74.
- KUMARAVALA** : local chief 172 and note 1.
- KUMARAVALA** : Chalukya king (1143-1171), 156, 170, 176, his ancestry 179, 181; his death planned by Siddharaja, goes into exile; his wanderings; coins issued in his name by Pratāpasimha, is chosen king, 182-183, rewards his friends in exile; his wars with the kings of Sāmbhā, Mālwa, the Konkan, and Surāshtra, 184-187, traditions regarding his Seoda Rani, 188; extent of his kingdom; construction of the temple of Somnatha; his vow to keep apart from women and eschew flesh and wine, 189, his Jain benevolence; is credited with building 1144 temples; scholars at his court, 190; dies, 194.

**KUMARAPALACHARIYA**: life of Kumārapāla in Sanskrit, 149 note 2, 170, 177 note 1, 178, 182, 185, 186.  
**KUMARAPALACHANDRA**: history of Kumārapāla in Sanskrit, 149 note 1, 173, 183, 194.  
**KUMGRALISVARA**: temple of 172.  
**KUMHARS**: 500. See Khmers.  
**KUMBHA**: Rana of Chitor, defeated by Mahmūd Khilji (1113), 361.  
**KUMHARS**: potters, 151.  
**KUMKAR**: Konkani, 500.  
**KUMDABHATTIA**: granted to the Kavi grant, 126.  
**KUMDACHANDRA**: Digambara Jain from Karnataka his religious disoury with Devasura and defeat 181.  
**KUNAKAS**: urut Naga Brahman, 5 note.  
**KURU**: king of, present at the *svayamvara* on choice marriage of Jambhadradevi 163.  
**KURUKSHETRA**: holy place, 161.  
**KURUS**: 169.  
**KURUNDARA**: investiture festival at, 130 and note 3.  
**KURU**: son of Rana of the solar race, incarnation of Vishnu, 149.  
**KUSASHTHAI**: name of Dwarka, 8.  
**KUSHAN**: 156 note 1, dynasty, 261, warlike.  
**KUSKA**: disciple of Nakulisa, founder of a branch of Paupata school, 81.  
**KUTA**: an attribute meaning prominent, 119.  
**KUTUB-D-DIN**: Mughal general in Gujarat, captures Navdnagar and annexes the territory (1661), 283.  
**KUTUB-D-DIN AIBAK**: defeats Karna Vaghela (1297), 512.  
**KUTUB-D-DIN AIBAK**: Delhi emperor (1191), 229 advances to Kol 519 and note 1.  
**KUTUB-D-DIN SHAH**: king of Gujarat, defeats Mahmūd Khilji of Malwa (1159), 562.  
**KUTUBKHAN**: old name for cultivators, 1.  
**KUVAS**: princes, 215 note 2.

**LALITH**: Toramāna's father, 71-7.  
**LAHAWAR**: Lohari Bindar, 50.  
**LAHURA**: one of Hindus, 530.  
**LAKHA**: son of Phula king of Kachhi, slain by Mularaja, 160.  
**LAKSHANARMMAN**: 169.  
**LAKSHMI**: daughter of king of Chedi married to Jagatunga son of Krishna, 130. Younger sister of Mahendra married to Nāga Raja, 163.  
**LAKSHMI**: temple of, 160.  
**LAKSHMI**: daughter of Braghna, 161-162.  
**LAKSHMIMHALA**: Lakshmi's settlement, 152.  
**LAKULISA**: founder of Pasupata sect, chief shrine at Kāravāna, 82, 84. See Nakulisa.  
**LALITADEVI**: wife of Vastupala, 202.  
**LALLIA**: the Sūth of Ohmā near Surat, 168.  
**LAMB**: Mr., chief of the English factory at Surat; sends Mulla Fakhr-ud-din in disguise to Bombay, 332; his suicide, 333.  
**LAND ASSESSMENT**: under Valabhi, 82 and 83.  
**LAND TAX**: under Mughals, 212.

**LANJA BHARJO**: Bhatty prince, son-in-law of Saddharāja, 171 note 1.  
**LAR**: seat of a Guclhi prince, tribe, 191 note 1.  
**LAR DESH**: South Gujarat, 520, 521.  
**LARKE**: the province Lika, 7-539.  
**LARIYAN**: language, 516, 523.  
**LARWI**: Sea (Indian Ocean), 510, language, 521.  
**LASSIN**: 532-533, 536.  
**LATA**: ancient name of central and southern Gujarat 5 note 1-6-7 and note 5-116, 117; its conquest by Kuntidurga, 12; its chief deserted Lavmaprasad and joined Singhana, 199, 165-167, 168.  
**LAVAS**: 165-167.  
**LAVPA**: same as Ratta, 7.  
**LAVPURA**: original city of the Rattas, 7.  
**LAVNE**: 535.  
**LAVI MIR**: Red Sea, 192.  
**LAVANAPRASADA**: 196-197, Vaghela chieftain (1200-1233) minister of Bhima II, rule 5 at Anandavala in his sovereign's name 199, in war with the Devasi Yadavs and the Marwar chief, his abdication in favour of his son Anandavala, 198-200, 206.  
**LAVANAPRASADA**: see Lavmaprasada.  
**LEGENDARY ORIGIN**: of Gomāth idol 521.  
**LEGENDS**: of Gujarat, 811, of Bhimād, 461-463, of Javal, 197.  
**LENDAS DA ASIA** (A.D. 1497-1539) work of Correa, a Portuguese writer (1512-1550), 349.  
**LEUK** (Leucocytes), pirate haunts, 516.  
**LIWA**: Gujarat Kumbha subdivision, 4 and 5.  
**LI**: certain measure of distance 79.  
**LICHCHAVIS**: dynasty of the, 61 and note 1, 63.  
**LIFE SAVING**: Janiul for, 193.  
**LILADIVI**: sister of Samantasinha married to Rapi 157.  
**LILADIVI**: queen of Bhima II, daughter of Chohan chief Samantasinha, 197.  
**LIMBAS**: of the country under Kumatapala's sway, 189 and note 1.  
**LIMYAKI**: Malabar coast, 513, Tāmil country, 516.  
**LINGAM**: worship of the 521, 522.  
**LINGANPRASANA**: a work on genders compiled by Hemachandra, 193.  
**LINGAS**: 161.  
**LINGHAL**: village place of *logars*, 81 note.  
**LOCAL CHIEFS**: power of, 228.  
**LOBRA**: gathering of Thakurs at (1857), 113.  
**LOHARS**: blacksmiths 151.  
**LOTHARI**: mouth of the Indus, 538.  
**LOTHI TEMPLE**: 193.  
**LOHARA**: village, engagement of the Marāthas with the Kolis at, 33.  
**LOMAPALA**: Vastupāla's chief supporter, shrine, 200 note 2.  
**LOMAPADA**: disturbance at, crushed by Lieutenant Aiban, 111.  
**LOTHI**: 1161, 538.  
**LUNIGA**: chief, 170.

- MADANAPALA** : brother of Karna's mother, his death, 172.
- MADANARAJNI** : wife of Lavanasprāsada, 198.
- MADANAVARMAN** : Chandela king of Mahobala, modern Mahoba, his inscription, his surrender to Siddharaja, his hospitality, 178-179.
- MADHAVA** : Nagar Brahman, minister of Kartadeva, invites Muhammadans into Gujarat, is appointed civil minister of Alai Khan, 205 and note 2.
- MADHAVRAY GAIKWAD** : brother of Pilāji, takes Baroda (1731) from Sāli Khān Bābā the governor, 394.
- MADHAVRAY PISHWA** : son and successor of Bādāji Pishwa ( 762-1772), 399, matches against Raghoba and defeats him at Phorap (176 ) 400.
- MADHAPADA** : country between the Ganges and the Yamunā, 161-18.
- MADINA** : sacred place of the Muhammadans, 201.
- MADIKAS** : tribe 61 and note 3.
- MADIA** : 516.
- MAGA** : Brahmins, sun-worshippers, 450.
- MAGADHA** : Gupta rule in (7th century), 73-77.
- MAGANAI** : agent of Bapu Gaikwad, a political refugee at Ahmednagar, 114.
- MAGAS** : sun-worshippers, 142.
- MAGHA** : Sanskrit poet, 153 note 1.
- MAGHA** : Brahmins, 464, 465. See Magas.
- MAGHAR KHAN** : thirty third victor of Gujarat (1662-1668) suppresses the rebellion of the Chuvāl Kohs headed by a Beluchi personating Datt Shukoh (1664), 283.
- MAHABHARATA** : 515.
- MAHARATH SINDIA** : receives the town of Broach from the English, 110.
- MAHARANS** : 450.
- MAHARASHMI** : temple of, 151, 171.
- MAHĀSATA** : Gujarat princess, married to a Kanvakulja king, 151.
- MAHĀSATA** : attribute of priestly Brahmins, 5.
- MAHARAJAPURAN** : Jain temple at Sidhpur, 172.
- MAHĀRĀSHTRA** : southern boundary of Vaidhaval's kingdom, 201.
- MAHARĀJA** : 193.
- MAHĀNDRA** : Raja of Nadi, holds a *stagmānara* of choice-mutilage of his sister, 162, 163.
- MAHISHWAR MAHĀDEV** : shrine of, 151.
- MAHESVAR CHĀRYA** : grantee in the Haddila copperplate, 138.
- MĀHĪ** : river, 124, 167, 513.
- MAHĪ KĀNHA** : Colonel Walker's tribute system introduced in (1806), 124.
- MĀHIM** : port, 207 note 1.
- MAHIMDI** : the river Mahi, 510.
- MAHĪPĀLA** : Chudāsama ruler of Kāthiavāda (117), his coins, 138. Brother of Kumarpala, 181; father of Ajayapala, Chaulukya king, 194. \* King of Gurjara, 466, 469.
- MAHĪPĀLĀDEVA** : see Mahipāla.
- MAHĪPĀLĀDEV** : Rājā Sahib, 180 note 2.
- MAHMUD** : of Ghazni, sacks Somanatha and attacks Anahilavāda and other places, 164-168, 219, 498, 510, 512, 517, 522 and note 1, 523.
- MAHMUD BIGADA** : Ahmedābād king (1159-1173), 213-250, defeats a conspiracy of his nobles (1159), improves the soldiery (1159-1161), 213-214, helps the king of the Dakhan against the Sultan of Malwa (1161) 211-215; his expedition against the *quāto* Zamindars of the hill fort of Rayur and the wharf of Dm or Dahann; his expedition against Junagadh (1167) and capture of Girnar (1172), 215, captures the fort of Jāhānpur and makes Junagadh his capital under the name of Mustafābād, 215-216, expedition against Sindh and defeat of the Jādās in Kach, takes the fort of Jagat or Dwa-la and destroys the idol temples, 216, founds the city of Mūmūlābād on the Vatriak, second conspiracy of the nobles (1180) headed by Khulawād Khān, his war against Chām-pura (1182-1184), captures Pivagad (1184) and makes Champura his capital under the name of Muhammadabad, 217, invades Sonvtha (1190), 190, places his nephew Minar Muhammadādīkhān Tabaki on the throne of Asu-Burhūman (1508) 218, his religion, 201; his death (1513) 219-250.
- MAHMUDIS** : coin, 222 note 2.
- MAHOLA** : in Bundelkhand, 178.
- MAHOMEDAN** : writers, 516.
- MAHRA DĪSH** : the Maratha country, 521.
- MAHRA** : 519. See Mathura.
- MAIS** : Mahārājā 511.
- MATHIAS** : 169.
- MATHIKAS** : tribal name of Mehars, 75 and note 6, 87-88, identified with Māts, 155, 136, 111, 142 and note 2.
- MATHURIA** : disciple of Nakuśa, founder of a branch of Pāśupata school, 84.
- MATHURĪ** : village, 176.
- MATHURĪS** : district accountants, 2 2, 213 note 2.
- MAKARA** : fish tribal badge of the Melas, 87, 135.
- MAKARADHARA** : chief of Mehars, his fights with Mahmādīyap, 7, ancestor of Mha chief \* Porbandar, 135.
- MAKKA** : 204.
- MAKKAH** : 511, 520. See Makka.
- MAKAN** : 508, 511, 516.
- MAKĀNAS** : same as Jādās, 110.
- MAHĀR** : port of, 515, 529, 537.
- MALADIVA** : chief minister of Arjunadeva and Śārangadeva, 201.
- MALAVA** : tribe, 28; kingdom of, 61; era, 67, 124, 165, 167, 169. See Mālva.
- MĀLĀVYA** : lake at Dholka, built by Siddharāja, 180 note 2.
- MALCOLM** : Sir John, 180 note 3; (1820), 3 3.
- MALLO** : cape of, identification of, 539.
- MALER** : Mr., chief of the English at Surat, 102.
- MALEI** : Mount, 533.
- MALHARĀV** : son of Khanderāv Gaikwār, retires on a pension to Nadiād, 412, breaks out in rebellion in Kāthiavāda, is captured by Bādāji Appāji and Vithal Devāji, 413.

- MAHARAJA GOKWAR**: called *Padā Sahab*, takes part in the Maratha conspiracy at Baroda (1857), escapes punishment, is imprisoned, succeeds Khanderāv, is deposed (1875), 112-113.
- MAHARAJA HOLKAR**: Bājirāv, Peshwa's officer, plunders Datta and Vidnagar and exacts tribute from Palanpur, 387, defeats Dā Bahādur, governor of Māndu and captures Māndu, 382.
- MAHARAJA KURVI**: Dandaji Gokwār's deputy at Ahmedabad, collects tribute in Gujarat (1710), 322, 323.
- MAH**: apparently Mahi in north Kāthiawar, capture of, 506 and note 5, island 509.
- MALIA**: temple at, 153, Rajā of, plunders Kachh and Sindh, 122.
- MALWA**: identified with Malwa, expedition against 109, 107.
- MALIK BAYAZID**: son and successor of Shujāt Khan, Sultan of Malwa, with the title of Bīz Bahādur (1565-1570), 369.
- MALIKHAT**: Nabothan land, 512-513.
- MALIK KAPUR**: Sultan Firuzshah, deposes Zāndam Bān to Broach, 511.
- MALIK KAPUR**: Chumbay slave, rises in Delhi emperor's favour, is sent to subdue the Dāhūr 205, 229.
- MALIK MUHAMMAD KHAN**: minister of Sultan Hoshang (1105-1131), 359.
- MALIK MUZZI DIB**: conquers Gujarat and plunders Kambhāt, 515.
- MALIK MUKBI**: Gujarat governor, 230.
- MALIK TUGHAN**: captain of horseboots (1317), 250-251.
- MALIS**: gardeners, 150.
- MALINDVA**: Mount, 553.
- MALIPALA**: town 510.
- MALKHED**: capital of the last Rashtrakuta, 120. See *Munyakhedi*.
- MALKHUR**: Mahūn, 511 is destroyed by Tailappa, Chalukya king (972), 519.
- MALIKAPURVA**: Silahara king of the Konkan (1160) is killed in battle by Kuntalapa's general, 150, his stone inscriptions, 186.
- MALIK KHAN**: commandant of Malva assumes the title of Kādushāh, 517 and makes Māndu his capital, indifference of to the orders of Sher Shah Sūr, does homage to Sher Shah at Srangpur (1542), flies to Gujarat and attacks Māndu with Gujarat forces, the defeat of, by one of Sher Shah's generals, 368, 369.
- MALHORA**: title, 531.
- MALWA**: 24, 28, Gupta conquest of, 67; conquered by Govinda III, Rashtrakutā king, 123, 124; its king taken prisoner by Siddharaja, 175; annexed to Chalukya kingdom by Siddharaja, 178; its king Ballala defeated by Kuntarapala, 185; its king crushed by Visaladeva, 203, incorporation of, to Gujarat by Sultan Bahādur of Gujarat (1526-1536), invasion of, by the emperor Humayun (1534), 367, under Sher Shah Sūr (1542-1545), 368; under his successor Salim Shah (1545-1553), becomes independent under Shujāt in 1554, 369, 510. See *Maliba*.
- MALWA SULTAN**: (1400-1570), 356-371.
- MANAVAS**: 513, 511.
- MANHAR**: 599, 509 note 3, 511. See *Anahilavāda*.
- MANA**: see *Manma*.
- MANU**: brother of Patch Singh Gaikwār, assumes the government of Baroda, 110; his death, 111.
- MANU MORAR**: Senapati of Rājashāhu, 389.
- MANANKA**: early Rashtrakutā prince, Rashtrakutā family, 120.
- MANAPURA**: city 110, 132.
- MANASAS**: associated with the introduction of sun-worship 112.
- MANI**: maritime island, 509.
- MANDAGARA**: identified with Mandangul, 541.
- MANDAGAR**: Sudra class of sun-worshippers, 112.
- MANDAGORA**: 516. See *Mandangul*.
- MANDAL**: village near Vānagiri, expedition against, 109, 518, 520 and note 2.
- MANDALA**: kingdom 130.
- MANDALI**: modern Manda', Mulanāthadev's temple at, 161 and note 2.
- MANDALKA**: Chudasama ruler of Junāgadh, 70.
- MANDAL-SAGARA**: temple of Mulesvara at, 161 and note 2.
- MANDARAD**: 516.
- MANDARIK**: gold canop, won from Rama the Chesh Ling and presented to Romantha, 163.
- MANDASOR**: town in western Malwa, 77, inscription of Ansu Varman at, 81, defeat of Sultan Bahādur of Gujarat at (1534), 367.
- MANDISTO**: traveller (1623) 224 note 2; at Ahmedabad (1638), 279 note 2.
- MANDS**: identified with Mers, 180 and note 5, 142 and note 2 508.
- MANDU**: expedition against (1391) 232 (1419) 237, help for description of, 352-356, is made capital of Malwa by Sultan Hoshang, 358; besieged by Ahmed Shah of Gujarat (1118-1122) 359 captured by Mahmud II of Malwa and Muzaffar of Gujarat (1519), besieged by Sultan Bahādur of Gujarat (1526), 367; local Musaham chiefs attempt to establish at (1536-1542), Mallu Khan the Subān of, 368, captured by Akbar's general Pir Muhammad (1560), is taken by Sultan Bīz Bahādur (1561), is captured by Akbar's general Abdullah Khan Uzbak (1562), visited by Akbar (1563), 369, Mughal province (1570-1720) 370, 371 is given to Muzaffar III of Gujarat by Akbar, 371; described by Abul Fazl (1590) Kari-shah (1610), emperor Jahāngir (1617), the Reverend Edward Terry (1617) 371-381; besieged by Khan Jahan Lodi, 381; captured by Ibad Paur (1696) and emperor Bahādur Shah (1708), Asaph-ah Nizam-ul-Mulk, governor (1717-1721); Raja Giridhar Bahādur, governor (1722-1724); defeated by Chimanaji Pandit and Udaji Paur; Bājirāv Peshwa, governor of

- (1734); included in the Pavār territory; Mumukh, mother of Rinchandra Pavār, takes shelter in (1805), 382; under the Marathas, (1720-1820), 382.
- MANGALAPURA**, establishment of a cess at, 176.
- MANGALAPURI**, identified with Pari, 108.
- MANGALARAJA**, Gujarāt Chalukya ruler (698-731), 56, his plates 108-109; at Navsari 110.
- MANGALVARASARAJYA**, 56. See *Mangala Raja*.
- MANGALISA**, Chalukya king (600), 111.
- MANGROL**: Vekāri betelvine cultivators' settlement at, 113 note 3; village, *Sambar* era mentioned in an inscription at, 176. See *Mangalapura*.
- MANGROL**, 537.
- MANGROL**, port, burned by the Portuguese (1582), 317.
- MANKIR**: 511, 518, 519. See *Malkhet*.
- MANOEL DE SOUZA**, same as Emmanuel De Souza, captain of the fleet of Diu 349, 350, 351.
- MANSUR**: identification of, 544.
- MANSUR**: taken by Durgap 321.
- MANSURA**, in Central Sind, invaded by Mahmud of Ghazni 167.
- MANSURAB**, 506, 507, 511, 515. See *Mansura*.
- MANSURPURA**, Biluka town, 534.
- MANSURASTRIS**, proficient in charms 161.
- MANTRIS**, agents 209.
- MANSURKHA**, modern Malkhet 120, capital of Dakhin Rāshtrakūṭas, 125, 130-519. See *Malkhet*.
- MARĀŚARVA**, king of east Mālwa, submits to Ghori III, 123.
- MARĀSHALI**, Marwār 170.
- MARĀTHAS**, their ascendancy in Gujarāt (1760-1802), 227, raids on Surat (1661), 284, (1690), 291, threaten Surat (1700), 292, enter Gujarāt under Dhanraj Jadhav (1705), 293, plunder Mahudha, enter Ahmedabad and levy tribute (1707), 295, 296, defeated at Ankleshvar (1711), 297; plunder the treasures escorted by Muhammad Talpur (1713), 388, yearly raids into Gujarāt, 297, besiege Vadnagar (1725), 307; quarrels between their leaders Daman and Kāntaji, under Dhanraj expel the Viramgām Kshātis, under Rangon who defeated at Dholka by Kātansmā, 316, 317, defeat Rustam Ali governor of Surat, 305, defeated by Khānizād at Soptra, and Kapadvanj (1725), 307, compel Mulbāriz ul-mulk to confirm his predecessor's grants in their favour (1726), 307, make terms with the viceroy of Gujarāt, 314; driven out of Baroda (1732), 394, defeat Sher Khān Bābi and capture Baroda (1731), 314-315, capture Kapadvanj (1736), 317; expelled from Viramgām fort; call in the aid of Momu Khān; take Viramgām, 323-324, take Pithād, 327; engagements with Momu Khān, 340, 341, 342; their arrangements in Ahmedabad (1738); strike coins of their own at the Ahmedabad mint, 342; levy tribute in Umeta, Bālsāhor, Lamavāda, Visalnagar, and Pālanpur (1758), 343; their supremacy in Gujarāt (1760-1819), 315, 385; help the Rao of Kachh in an expedition against Thatta in Sind (1758), 395, join in league against the English (1760); driven from their posts in Ankleshvar, Rapot, and Amod by the English (1759), 408; close of their supremacy (1819), 428-429.
- MARCO POLO**: Italian traveller (1290), 501, 504.
- MARCUS ANTONIUS ANTONINUS**: (161-180), 537.
- MARINOS**, of Peri, 537.
- MARKEANOS**, geographer (B.C. 100), 516.
- MARONITE**, tribe, 534.
- MARRIAGLS**, 187 and note 1.
- MARV**, ancient name of Marwar, 36 and note 1, 166, 168.
- MARWAR**: Marwar, expedition against, 109, 167.
- MARWAR**, King of, present with Grahapuri in the battle with Multaji, 160, chiefs of, attack Livanaprasād and are defeated, 199, 200 disturbance in (1692), 289, 461, 532.
- MASAIWADA**, local name, 208 note 3.
- MASDI**, 169, 198. See *Al Masudi*.
- MASUPPAM**, 191.
- MATAR**, taluka of the Kaira district, 122 and note 3.
- MATARIEM**, in the island of Java, 189.
- MATAR MAHODHA**, made over to the English by Raoji, Baroda minister, in payment of the subsidiary force at Baroda (1803), 111.
- MATAS**, goddesses 161.
- MATHOT**, tribe, 534.
- MATHURA**, modern Mathura, 519.
- MATHURA**, king of, present at the *scapamra* or choice-marriage of Durlabhadvi, 163, Prince Murād confined in (1558), 282, 533.
- MATIAS**, with Mommas march against Broach, and murder the governor (1691), then defeat and slaughter, 288.
- MATRI**, 122. See *Mātra*.
- MATSI**, northern Kshatriya king (B.C. 70), 22.
- MAUNA**, Purnani name for the Hunas, 111 note 2, 143.
- MATRYA**, chiefs, later (500), 15; ruling dynasty of the Konkan, 107, kingdom identified with Mativas of Chitor, 109, of Chitor, 165; empire over 100, 535.
- MAVIRA**, peacock, symbol of the Guptas, 135.
- MAYRADHIVA**, 135.
- MAYERKHAN**, see *Morkhand*.
- McGRINDIE**, Mr, 538, 541.
- MEVA**, see *Meva*.
- MEDANI RAI**, commander-in-chief of Mahmud II. of Mālwa (1512-1530), suppresses the revolt of Muhafiz Khān, defeats the combination of Muzaffar II. of Gujarāt and Sikandar Shah of Delhi; attempts of Mahmud II. of Mālwa for the assassination of; expulsion of, with terrible slaughter by joint forces of Mahmud II. and Sultan Muzaffar of Gujarāt; supported by Rana Sanga of Chitor, 366-367.
- MENHS**, 140; Bawārij pirates, 517. See *Mehrs*.
- MERS**, 140; Mānds, 508, 511. See *Mfers*.
- MELIUS HYDASPEES**, Virgil's phrase for the Jhelum, 144.

**MEDALLE**: the Mekalas, 532, 533

**MAGARI**: tribe, 534

**MAGASTHENES**, ambassador of Seleukos Nikator, his account of India, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537.

**MAHMUD II.** (1512 - 1530), son and successor of Nasar-ud-din of Māndu, revolt of his commandant Muzāfir Khan crushed by his Rājput commander-in-chief Medam Rāi, combination by Muzāfir II (1511 - 1526) of Gujarat and Sikandar Shah of Dohh (1488 - 1500) baffled by Medam Rāi, the attempt of, to crush the power of Medam Rāi, siege of Māndu by Sultan Muzāfir of Gujarat (1511 - 1526), massacre of Rājputs, capture of Māndu, defeat and capture of, by Rāia Sangai of Chitor, men's the wrath of Bahadur Shah of Gujarat by giving protection to Chand Khan and Muzul-mulk, invasion and capture of Māndu by Bahadur Shah of Gujarat, surrender and death of, 366-367.

**MAHMUD II.** (1526)

**MAHMUDABAD**: town in Gujarat, 219 note 3

**MAHMUD KHAN**: son and minister of Sultan Hoshang of Malwa (1465 - 1494), 379

**MAHMUD KHAN**: becomes Sultan of Malwa (1496), his victory over Rāia Kumāra of Chitor (1446), builds his tower of victory, is defeated by Kutub-ud-din Shah of Gujarat (1453), makes his son Ghāsi-ud-din minister, his death (1469), 362

• **MIR**: northern tribal name, 57, Hindu name of, 57.

**MIRAN**: the Indus, 510.

**MIRARS**: sweepers, 151

**MIKONO**: river, 504.

**MILIZINGARA**: probably Lampā, 536, 540, 546

**MIXANDER**: Baktiyār king of India, 16, 17

**MIXANDROS** (BC 110) conqueror of, 545-544, 545

**MINDAN**: town in Java, 190

**MINGANG**: town, built by Bhūvijaya Savalāchala, 189

**MIOS**: Musalmān, identified with Mei, 110 and note 8.

**MERL**: 542

**MERS**: sun worshipping forerunner (c. 900), passed through Punjab, 8, 10, 11, north Gujarat into Kathiawāra and ruled there (770), allied to Jethvas and Jhalas, descendants of Huzas, 135-147

**MERTHA**: district, conferred upon Durgadas by the emperor Aurangzib (1697), 200.

**MERTUSIA**: author of Prabandhachintamani, 151, 152, 155, 156, 196.

**MESSE**: tribe, 531.

**MATHORA**: modern Mathura, 533.

**MAYAS**: name of tribe, 33.

**MEWANA**: origin of the name, 33, Kumārāpāla's conquests extend to, 184; chief of, subdued by Visaladeva, 203.

**MEWAR**: 532, 533. See Mewar.

**MEXDS**: 142.

**MIRKAVADA**: Mher settlement at, 136.

**MIOW**: Colonel Pratt, Captain Fagan, and Captain Harris murdered at, (1857); Colonel Durand, Resident, expelled from, 138.

**MIGRATION**: from India to Indo-China, traces of, 199.

**MIHRA**, king of Kāthiawāra Mehrs; his inroads against Dhrūva II, 127, tribe, 135-147, or Gujjāra conquest of Valabhi (190), 189, 190.

**MIHTRAGAS**: 142 and note 5.

**MIHTRAKTA**: king of the White Hūnas (503 - 530), 72, 74, 75, 76, 142 and note 2, son of Toramana (500 - 510), 146, 165, 196, 197.

**MIHTRGITA**: Indian emperor of the White Hūnas 143.

**MIZIGARIS**: modern Janjira, 510. See Mehrogaia.

**MINIS**: of gold and silver in Gujarat, 528.

**MINHARIS-SHAR**: 195 note 1.

**MISSAGARA**: ancient Greek capital, 15 note 3, 538, 540, 543, 544.

**MISS**: identified with Meis, 110.

**MIRAJI-AHMADI**: 205, the author of, suppresses the riots at Ahmedabad and is rewarded with the title of Hassan Muhammad Khān (1730), 310; superintendent of customs, 328, 337.

**MIRAJI-SIKANDARI**: Muhammad history of Gujarat (1536), 548, 513.

**MIR FAKHRUDDIN**: obtains the governorship of Junagadh from the viceroy Abheysingh (1730) 311

**MIRKHAND**: 168.

**MIR MUHAMMAD I QUTB**: minister of Azam Khan viceroy of Gujarat (1635 - 1642), 298.

**MIRZA AZIZ KOKATASH**: Mughal viceroy, 212.

**MIRZA ISA TAPKAN**: governor of Sorath, afterwards twenty-fourth Mughal viceroy of Gujarat (1612 - 1619), 212, 279.

**MISAR MUHAMMAD**: Arab traveller and writer, 510 note 1, 516, 517 note 1.

**MITHANKOT**: town, 548.

• **MISAVATIABATI**: daughter of Jayakoti, king of the Karmatik queen of Karna and mother of Siddhartha Jayasinha, her regency, her pilgrimage to Srīnāthā, remits pilgrim tax, 170 - 172.

**MOCHIS**: shoemaker, 151.

**MODASA**: town, capture of (1446), 236.

**MODH ASAMIKKA**: Jain monastery at Dhan-dhula, 191.

**MODOGATTA**: the Calingās, 532, 533.

**MODOGATTA**: probably Mudhol, 541.

**MONTRA**: modern Madura, 537.

**MOKHERATI**: Golli chief of Pirān (1347), 87 note, 230.

**MOLINDI**: Indian tribe, 533.

• **MOVIN KHAN I**: is appointed governor of Surat by Nizam-ul-Mulk (1722), 303; is made governor of Cambay by Abheysingh (1730), 311, 312, 315, 316; schemes independence at Cambay (1730), 317; is appointed fifty-fourth viceroy of Gujarat (1737), assumes the title Najam-ud-daulah Movin Khān Bahādūr Firūz Jang; asks Jawān Mard Khān Bābi to help him, his disastrous alliance with the Marāthas which gives a final blow to Mughal power in Gujarat, 318; receives secret instructions to disregard the appointment of Abheysingh fifty-fifth viceroy and to drive

- his Rathods from Gujarāt, 319, captures Ahmedabad (1738), is appointed fifty-sixth viceroy (1738-1743), 320, is honoured with a title and dress by the emperor of Delhi (1742), 325, his death (1743), his wife seeks protection of Rangoji, 326.
- MOHAM KHAN II.**, son of Moamin Khan I., 207, is confirmed as governor of Cambay (1748), 330, 331, at his request Cambay is included in Peshwa's share (1751), 334, is compelled by Raghunathrao to pay an annual tribute of Rs. 10,000 337, 338, takes Gogha, attacks Jambhusar and besieges Barod (1755), 339, captures Ahmedabad (1756), 339, receives compliments and a sword from the emperor of Delhi 340, besieged in Ahmedabad, receives help from the Raja of Idar, Shah Nur's attempt to make peace between Moamin Khan and the Peshwa fails, Ahmedabad and Gogha surrendered to the Peshwa (1757), 341, 342, oppresses and extorts money from his followers, 342, contracts friendship with the English and visits Poona (1759), 343, 344, receives instructions from Delhi to join in driving the Marathas out of Gujarāt, is defeated (1761), 345.
- MOHNAS**, revolt of (1691), 288.
- MONADIS**, Munda of Jamblham, 533.
- MONODROSSON**, modern Mangrol, 638.
- MOHIS**, river Mithi, 539.
- MOHBI**, copperplate of Jankideva of 81, 87, earliest seal of Jethvas, 136, grant of Jankideva of, 139.
- MOGHANDA**, capital of the country ruled by Govinda, son of Dhravya, Rashtrakuta king, 123.
- MORO TRIMAI**, Shivaji's general, captures the fort of Saker in Baglan (1672), 387.
- MORNI**, tribe 534.
- MOSTYN**, Mr., resident envoy in Poona (1777) 407.
- MOIYAKA**, Brahman settlement of, 127.
- MOTSOPIALE**, provisionally identified with Katvir, 512.
- MOUZA**, modern Musa, 543-545.
- MOZADAR**, invades Sonanatha, 190.
- MU'AZZAM**, son of Aurangzeb and commander of the Mughal army sent against Shivaji 387.
- MU'AZZAM SHAH**, Prince Muhammad 296, 297. See Bahadur Shah of Delhi.
- MUBKAK KHAN**, emperor, 229.
- MUBARIZ-UL-MULK**, 301, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311. See Farhad Khan.
- MURKHIE KHAN**, son of Moamin Khan schemes of Rangoji for the assassination of, unites his forces with Fula-ud-din Khan, defeats Rangoji and obtains Borsad and Virangim from him, 326; fifty-seventh viceroy (1743-1744), appoints Jawan Mard Khan his deputy, the house of, besieged by Jawan Mard Khan, his escape, joins Rangoji and retires to Cambay, 327.
- MURJAFIRA**, brother of Hakkam, leads an expedition to Debal, 506.
- MUGHALS**, the administration of, in Gujarāt, (1573-1760), 221-227; emperors in Gujarāt (1573-1760), 207, 345; at Mandu (1570-1720), 370-382.
- MUKHIA KHAN**, commandant of Mahmud II of Malwa (1512-1530), the revolt of, suppressed by Medani Rai, 366.
- MUHAMMAD**, prophet, his era, 291.
- MUHAMMAD**, son of Fazl, sails against the Mols of Hind and captures Mahr, 506.
- MUHAMMAD**, son of Kāsim, 506.
- MUHAMMAD IV.**, (1618-1687) Turkish Sultan, as ambassador from, lands at Surat, 280.
- MUHAMMAD ALI SHAH**, thirty-ninth viceroy of Gujarāt (1703-1705), 291.
- MUHAMMAD AMIN**, poisons Abu Baker, the Isadar and suppresses the riot at Ahmedabad (1681), 286-287.
- MUHAMMAD AMIN KHAN**, Umadut-ul-Mulk, thirty-sixth viceroy of Gujarāt (1674-1683), 285.
- MUHAMMAD BAHLOI KHAN**, Farkhant, Mughal general, captures Idar (1679), 286.
- MUHAMMAD BIDAR BAKHI**, forty-first viceroy of Gujarāt (1705-6), 291-295.
- MUHAMMAD GHOKI**, road of, into Gujarāt 195 note 1, 512, Sultan Ghazni Khan, son and successor of Sultan Hoshang of Malwa (1374-1402) poisoned by Mahmud, son of Malik Muhi, 372-369.
- MUHAMMAD KASIM**, (712), 156 note 1.
- MUHAMMAD SHAH I.**, (1403-1404), 231 and note 1.
- MUHAMMAD SHAH II.**, Raushan Akhtar, emperor of Delhi (1721-1748), 222, 301, sends Mubarez-ul-Mulk against Hamed Khan and the Marathas, 306; his death (1748),
- MUHAMMAD TUGHIAK**, Sultan (1325-1351), 250, 231; at Asawad, 513, quells the insurrection at Barach and Cambay 514, 515, in Gondal (1349-50), pursues Lagna, 518.
- MUHAMMAD TUGHIAK II.**, emperor (1391-1393), 232.
- MUHAMMAD ULI**, 195 note 4.
- MUHAMMID**, secretary, 214.
- MUMASTIR**, city censor, 214.
- MU'IZ-UD-DIN**, Gujarāt governor (1347), 231.
- MU'IZ-UD-DIN BAHAM SHAH**, Sultan of Delhi (1194-1207), defeated by Vradhaval, 201.
- MUKADDAM**, 112. See Patel.
- MUKHIAK KHAN**, thirty-seventh viceroy of Gujarāt (1683-4), 287.
- MUKTIAS**, crown domain officers, 209 and note 1.
- MULAKA**, son of Salajiga makes grants to Sonanatha, is mentioned in the inscription at Mangrol, 176.
- MULAKGIRI**, land-rudding system in Kathiawād under the Mughals and Marathas, 117; special rules 418, 421.
- MUNATHADIVA**, temple of, at Mundafi, 161 and note 2.
- MULARAJA**, Solanki king, 131, 139, 153, 169, 470. See Mularaja, Chauhan king.
- MULARAJA**, Chaulukya king (961-996); his descent and birth; kills his maternal uncle and ascends the Chavand throne; his fight with

- **Rātappa**; his war with Graharipu, ruler of Sorath, installs his son and retires, builds temple at Anahilavāda and Siddhapur, grants villages to Brahmanas, 131, 139, 163, 166-162, 164, 469, 470.
- MULARAJA**, her apparent of Bhinna I. of Anahilavāda, his mysterious death, 169.
- MULARAJA II.** Chaulukya king (1177-1179), succeeds his father Ajayapala, disperses the Turuṣka army, defeats Muhammad Ghori, 195, 512.
- MULAYANI** temple of, at Anahilavāda, 161.
- MULAYASATIKA**: Jain temple at Anahilavāda, 160, 161.
- MULJAVARA** temple at Mandalinagara, 161.
- MULJIKAR**: Kshatrapa inscription at, 13.
- MULLA MUHAMMAD ALI** Undat At-tuppar or chief of merchants, raises a disturbance at Surat (1729), fixes his head-quarters at Derim, and afterwards at Athva on the Tapti, 309, builds the fort of Athva (1730), 310, drives Solah Khan, governor, out of Surat (1732), kept in confinement by Teghlbeg Khan, governor of Surat, 313, in correspondence with the Nizām, letters from the Nizām to Teghlbeg Khan for the release of, the assassination of (1734), 315.
- MULLER** 512, 513.
- MUTAN** capital of Hūma dynasty, 143, 459, 509, 518, 525, 545.
- MUSA** lake at Virungam, 180.
- MUNDALVARA** body place, 170.
- MUNJA**, king of Malwa deprives Chāmunḍa of his marks of royalty, 162.
- MUNJIA** minister of Karna, Chaulukya king, 170, 171, 172.
- MURAD BAKSHI**, Prince Muhammad, twenty-fourth viceroy of Gujaraṭ (1651-1657); surrender of Kānji Chāmunḍa Koh, proclaims himself emperor of Gujaraṭ (1657), his transfer to the viceroyalty of Ikraṭ through Darā Shikoh, collects an army and arranges to meet his brother Aurangzib, fights a battle with Mahārāja Jayasantsing and Kasamkhān, viceroys of Mālwa and Gujaraṭ (1658), Aurangzib and Murad enter Ujjain, meet Darā Shikoh at Dholpur and defeat him, confined by Aurangzib at Mathura (1658) 281.
- MURUT** 222, 223. Meadow of, work of Al 'Hasan, 506 note 8.
- MURUNDA** tribe, 61 and note 5.
- MURABIN ISHAK** 516 and note 3.
- MUSAMMANS** Gujaraṭ (1297-1760), 207-384, 451, 498, 512, 514, 516, 518, 523, 526, 530.
- MUSHAKA VILĀRA**, temple at Pātan, built by Kumārāpāla, 190.
- MUSHRITS**: revenue clerks, 212, 214.
- MUSLIM**: Arabs, first attack Brouch, 513.
- MUSLIMS**: dress of, 529.
- MUSTAFĀ KHĀN**, head of the Arabs at Sunth, makes the Raja prisoner; disarmed and shot by Lieutenant Alban, 441.
- MUTASADDI**: civil officer, 212.
- MUTER**: Captain, arrest of, by Genl. Roberts, 440.
- MUTINY**: at Ahmedābād, suppression of, by the viceroy (1689) 288.
- MUZGIRI**: 537.
- MUZAFFAR I.**: of Gujaraṭ, (1107-1119), 210, 231-235; invades Mālwa and defeats Sultān Hoshang at Dhīr (1107), takes Sultān Hoshang to Gujaraṭ as a prisoner, releases and reinstates him at Munda (1108), 358.
- MUZAFFAR II.**, Gujaraṭ king, attacks Somnātha, 190.
- MUZAFFAR KHĀN GARDI**, Peshwa's captain at Surat (1758-1759), 343.
- MUZAFFARABAD**: port, burned by the Portuguese (1532), 347.
- MUZIRIS** Kṛṣṇanur, 537, 516.
- MYOS HORXOS**, year Ras Abu Sumer, 536, 543.
- NAGARAYMA** town, 533.
- NABATHIA**, destruction of the kingdom of (105), 533.
- NADĀN** battle near (1112), 235, made over to the British by Ravi Apaji (1803), 413.
- NĀDIRSHAH** Persian emperor invades Hindustan, 322.
- NAGOL**: copperplate, 181 note 3.
- NADOR** state in Marwar, its chief Kelhana put a man to death for his wife having offered flesh to a field-god, 193.
- NADOLA** modern Nāndol, 198.
- NAGA KINGS** the, 61.
- NAGA**: see Nimbullika, 115 Wild tribe identified with Naikdas of the Panch Mahals and the Talabāds of Brouch, 115.
- NAGADA** minister of Viśalabha, 203.
- NAGANA** temple of, in Movād, 133.
- NAGANI** tribal guardians of the Rathods, 162.
- NAGAR FARKAR** rising in, 448.
- NAGA RĀJA** son of Chāmunḍa, Chaulukya king, 162-163.
- NAGARIK** modern Navsari, 125.
- NAGAROTHS** probably Poona, 511.
- NAGASARIKA** modern Navsari, 125.
- NAGAVARDDHANA** Chulukya prince, king ruling in west Nasik, grant of, at Nirpan, 108, 110, 111, 112.
- NAGAVARMAAN** 122.
- NAG** worship legends of, 502 note 3.
- NAGOL** fort of, 171 note 1.
- NĀGHER** district, 208 and note 3.
- NAHAPĀNA** first Gujaraṭ Kshatrapa, 21, 29.
- NAHLWAN** Anahilavāda, 508, 509, 510, 511, 517, 518, 519.
- NAHRWĀR** the Ra of (Bhudeva), 196, 511, 512.
- NAHRSH**, father of Yayati, 460.
- NAIKDA BRĀHMS**, in revolt under Rupa and Keval Naiks (1858), 144, joined by Tatla Topi's broken force, 145.
- NAIKDAS**: wild tribe, 115.
- NĀIKDEVĪ** wife of Ajayapala and mother of Mulharaja II, Chaulukya king, her fight at Gādgarāghhatta, 195.
- NĀIN PĀL**, slew Ajipal, Kanauj monarch (470), 120.
- NĀIN** barbers, 451.
- NĀINYAD**: district in Sorath, 208 and note 3.

- NAKHONWAT**: Naga's shrine in Cambodia, begun in A.D. 825 and completed in A.D. 950, 499, 500, 504 and note 1.
- NAKABHAIJA**: village, 127.
- NAKKEVARA**: temple of Siva at Kārvān, 83 note.
- NAKULISA**: 83 note and note 1.
- NAKULISA PĀSUPATA**: sect, 205.
- NALKĀNTHA**: district, 208 and note 3.
- NAMADOS**: the Narmada, 539.
- N (NAGARATHI)**: 161.
- NAMNADIOS**: the Narmada, 515.
- NĀNĀGHĀT**: inscription at, 34.
- NANAGOTNA**: supposed to be the Kālmadi, 542.
- NANA PHADNIS**: at the head of affairs in Poona (1774); drives Raghoba from power 491; schemes of, against the Peshwa, demands the cession of Salsette and the person of Raghoba, 408, his proposals to Govindrao Gaikwar, 411.
- NANDI**: bull, badge of the religion of Valabha dynasty, 80.
- NĀNDIPURI**: modern Nandol, 1, 5; capital of Gurjjara dynasty of Broach district, 107, palace of Gurjjara kings, 111 capital of the Gurjjars, 113. See Nandol, 113.
- NĀNDOL**: capital of the Gurjjara dynasty of Broach district, 107, 108, capital of Rajputra, 113. See Nāndipuri and Nandol.
- NĀNDOL**: in Mārwar, its chief slain by Lavana-prasāda, 195.
- NĀNDOL**: capital of the Gurjjaras, modern Nandol, 1 3 and note 3. See Nāndipuri and Nandol.
- NAOURA**: 546.
- NARADJI**: divine sage, 161.
- NĀRĀYA**: 507, 520. See Nārāyaṇ.
- NARASIMHA** III.: Hoysala Ballala king of Dvāra amudra (A.D. 1251), 203 note 3.
- NARASIMHA**: Kaimātak king, 169.
- NARASIMHAGUPTA**: Gupta chief, 71, 77.
- NARAYAN**: king of Mālwa, at war with Siddharāja, 177, his inscription, 173, 180.
- NĀRĀYANA**: minister of war and peace, writer of Karka's Surat grant, 125, writer of Dhruva's Baroda grant, 126, 511 note 12, 520, ancient capital of Gujarat 527.
- NĀRĀYAN**: Banna or Bazāna, battle of (1192), 195 note 1.
- NĀRAYANĀV PĒSHWA**: murder of (1772), 401.
- NARBĀDA**: river, special holiness of, 81, its lower valley occupied by wild tribes, 114, crossed by the Marāṭhās for the first time (1676), 198, 387; 444, estuary of, 513.
- NARBHERĀV**: Gaikwar's deputy, 315.
- NARBĒ**: tribe, 531.
- NARMADA**: 545. See Narbada.
- NARMAZA**: the Narbada, valley of, 510 and note 3.
- NARMI KHAROVAR**: see Nimbūli.
- NASARPUR**: town, 517.
- NĀRO PANDIT**: deputy of Sadāśiv Rāmchandra in Ahmedābād, 342.
- NAROTAMDĀS**: Raghoba's agent for negotiating the terms of the treaty of Surat, 402.
- NĀRUKOT**: Nāikda Bhils in revolt at (1859), 411, 115.
- NĀSIKA**: modern Nāsik, 540.
- NĀSĪK**: northern Chhukya capital, 112.
- NĀSIR-UD-DIN**: Abdul Kādir, son and successor of Ghāṣ-ud-din (1502 - 1512); poisons his father, becomes Sultan, and subjects his mother Khurshid to indignities and torture, 365. See Abdul Kādir.
- NĀSIR-UD-DIN KALICHAI**: Sultan (1246 - 1266) deposes his governor to attack Nahrwān, 512, 519.
- NASMYTH**, Captain D., 147.
- NASRAT KHĀN**: companion of Alaf Khān in the Gujarāt expedition, 205, plunders Cambay, 515.
- NATĀKUSHWAR**: shrine of, 152.
- NATĀRI**: 546.
- NAT-HABRO**: town, 538.
- NAVAGHANI**: see Noghan.
- NAVĀGAR**: town, 226, revolt of the Jam crushed by Azim Khān viceroy (1610), 279, chief-lap of, usurped by Rasmghī, captured and annexed and the name changed into Islamnagar by Kutb-ud-din (1661), 283, restored to Tamachi son of Rasmghī, the circumstances in the hands of the Mughals till 1707-285; quarters of the Jam of, with the Rao of Kachh rejects Barodi agents (1807); British arbitration 495, Jam's death, 427.
- NAVĀGĀT**: inscription of Śaladitya at, capital of Javanahyammun 107, copperplate of Jayabhadra at 108, capital of Pulakesi, destruction of the Chhukya kingdom of, 110; the great Arab invasion, repulsed by Pulakesi Janasraya at, 117, grant of Karka I at, 124, 125, copperplate grants found at, 128; Indu's copperplates at 128, 130, grant of Chhukya king Pulakesi Janasraya at, 119, 168.
- NAWĀTS**: of Surāt and Broach 211.
- NAZAR ALI KHĀN**: governor of Baroda retakes the fort of Broach from the Mātrās and Momnas (1691), 288, nephew of Momin Khān viceroy of Gujarat (1738 - 1743), 325.
- NEAKYNDA**: Melkynda of Ptolemy and Melkynda of the Periphs, 537.
- NEARHUS**: 536.
- NEK ALAM KHĀN**: Nizām's lieutenant at Broach, 324, governor of Broach dies (1754), 338.
- NEKNĀM KHĀN BAHĀDUR**: the title of Hamidbeg, governor of Broach 339, supports Sayād Achchan at Surat (1759), 343.
- NEIKYNDA**: Kallada, 546.
- NĒMĀDIPYA**: minister of war and peace of Karka I., 125.
- NĒMĀNĀTHA**: stone temples of, on Satruñjaya, Abu, and Gernār hills, 177, 202.
- NĒNAPA**: grantee in Dhruva II's Bagumrā grant, 131.
- NEPAT**: inscription of Amsuvarman in, 81.
- NEPRAVATI**: river, 542.
- NICHOLAS UFFLET**: traveller (1610), 224 note 2.

**NICOLÒ DE CONTI**: traveller (1120 - 44) 220, note 2.  
**NIHANKAMALLA**: King of Anahillapataka, 204.  
**NIKOLAOS**: of Damascus, 535.  
**NIKUMBHALLA SAKTI**: Sendraka chief, his grant, 55-56, 111.  
**NILAKANTHA MAHÁDEVÁ**: Kumārāpala's royal god, 189.  
**NILAKANTHESVARA MAHÁDEVÁ**: image of, Nile river, 570, 514.  
**NILÁ** queen of Graharipu, 160.  
**NILKANTH**: pleasure house at Māndu, visited by Akbar in 1574 and by Jehāngir in 1617, 356; inscriptions, 370-371.  
**NIRKANTH MAHÁDEV** shrine of, 155.  
**NIMACH** 539.  
**NIMBARI**: tank, 153. See Nārmukhsaroyar.  
**NIMGHORIA BHADRA** 151.  
**NIRHULLAKA** grant of, 58 note 1, chieftain of a wild tribe, 114-115. See Nāga.  
**NIRPAN** grant of Nizavarddhana Tribhuvanastava at, 108, 110.  
**NIRUPAMA** another name of Dhruva I. and Dhruva II, 16.  
**NISHADA** country, 36 and note 9.  
**NITRA** identified with Mangalore, 542.  
**NITRAS** 537, 542. See Nitra.  
**NITYAMVARSHA RAJAKANDARPA** 130.  
**NIZAMSHAH KUTIPS** of the Dakhn (1190-1565), 221.  
**NIZAM-UL-MULK** governor of Gujrat (1351), 231. Asafjsh, viceroy of Ujjan (1720), retires to the Dakhn, defeats and kills Sayad Dilawar Khan, retires to Amangabad, battle of Bulipin in the Betars and death of Alam Khan, deputy viceroy of the Dakhn, 301, appointed prime minister of the empire (1721), 302, his disengagement with Haidar Kuli Khan (1722), 303; appointed fifty-first viceroy of Gujrat, 1722, appoints Hamid Khan deputy viceroy and Momun Khan, governor of Surat, 303, defeats Rustum Ali 390, sends savads Mithan and Aghhan to Surat to avenge Mulla Muhammad Ali (1718), 331.  
**NOGHAN**: Abu ruler of Surashtra, attacked and slain by Siddharaja, 176.  
**NOZOLU SULTA**: Portuguese viceroy in India, 349, 35.  
**NORKHIERA INDIA**: conquest of, by Timur (1398-1100), 357.  
**NOTSARJYA** modern Nausari, 539.  
**NU**: Neoh, given as the first ancestor of the Chuddasamma, 139.  
**NU JIHAN**: wife of emperor Jehāngir at Māndu, 375.  
**NU-UD-DIN MUHAMMAD UZI**: author of Jamī-ul-Hikayat (1211), 512.  
**NUZHAR-UL-MUSHIRAK**: work of Al Idrisi, 508 note 10.

**OBOLLAH**: 545.  
**O-CHIE-LO**: Chinese name of the Arhat Achāra, 79.  
**ODONBOFORES**: tribe, 531.  
**OFFICE-BEARERS**: under the Valabhi administration (A.D. 500-700), 81, 82.  
**OHIND**: 168.  
**OKETIS**: modern Ghalla, 537, 543.  
**OKHAYOR** 208; Okhāmandāl.  
**OKHĀMANDAL**: zillah, 208 and note 3; chiefs of, admit Sandarji Shivaji as resident on behalf of British Government, 425, chiefs of, take to piracy (1816) and are crushed by a British force, the district of, made over to the Gāikwār (1816), 427; Waghers of, besiege and plunder Dwārka Barvala and Bet (1859) expedition against Bet, capture of the forts of Bet and Dwārka, 446-448.  
**OLAVIYAKA** grantor mentioned in Akālayasha Krishna's grant at Bāgunra, 128.  
**OLOKHOLA**: provisionally identified with Karād, 542.  
**OLPAD** 539.  
**OMANA** east of the Persian Gulf, 545.  
**OMNODAKA** probably Junnar, 541.  
**ORAI**: the Aparantikas, 532, 533, 534.  
**ORAIURA**: probably Surāshtra, 6.  
**ORHABAROT** identification of, 539.  
**ORBITAI**: Makri tribe, 546.  
**ORIGINS** of the name of Gujrat, 25, of the Valabhis, 85-86; of Bhūmal, 166.  
**ORISA** 194.  
**ORMIZ** shipowner of, 201.  
**ORERTI** tribe, 531.  
**ORRHORIA** south, 547.  
**ORST** Orsa tribe 534.  
**OSANPUR** town, 538.  
**OSIA** town, 463.  
**OSUMBHIA** village 108.  
**OSY**: (1) east 163, 461, origin of, 161 note 1.  
**OSYA**: same as Hopt, 146.  
**OSYS** river, 144.  
**OZENE**: Ujjan, 37 510, 513, 545.

**PADMAVATI**: city in Kāshmir 188.  
**PADMAVATI** wife of Kumārāpala, 188.  
**PAGODA** coin 219 note 2.  
**PAHAR KULAN JIHORI**: governor of Pālanpur (1744) 328.  
**PAHINI**: mother of Hemachandra, 191.  
**PAHIVAS**: tribe, 35.  
**PAITHAN**: town, 37, 132, 540, 541, 545.  
**PAKIDARI**: modern Kāvi, 539.  
**PAL**: 216 See Vol.  
**PAL**: village, 540.  
**PALAT**: 543.  
**PALATPATMAT**: modern Pāl, 540, 546.  
**PALATSMOUNDOU**: Ceylon, 513.  
**PALANPUR**: birth-place of Siddharaja, Chaulukya king, 171, 310.  
**PALOTHEA**: Pātaliputra, modern Patna, 533.

- PALIMBORRA** . Pataliputra, 516.  
**PALLENNA** : 186.  
**PALLAVA** : dynasty of Dakhan kings, 35, 58.  
**PALSANA** . village, 127 and note 3.  
**PALWARA** . local name, 208 note 3.  
**PAMPA** : Kanarese poet (941), 466.  
**PANAS** : town, 538.  
**PANCHAL** : zillah, 208 and note 3.  
**PANCHASAR** . village, Chivara chiefship at its fall (696), 119 150, 155.  
**PANCHASARA PARASNATH** . Jain temple of, 152.  
**PANCH MAHILS** . rising in, siege of Dohad raised by Captain Buckle's forces, 439 ; Tatu Topi in, his expulsion from, 475.  
**PANDE** . Pandyas, 532, 532.  
**PANDAI** . Pandyas, 516.  
**CANDAVAS** . the, 519.  
**PANDION** . kingdom of the Pandyas, 537, 540.  
**PANDITS** . at courts of Gujarat kings 180.  
**PANIRANG PANDIT** . Peshwa's agent in Gujarat, marches on Cambay and Ahmedabad, makes peace with Momin Khan and Jawan Mard Khan and returns to Sonath (1752), 335.  
**PANDURANG PANTI** . 398. See Pandurang Pandit.  
**PANDYA** . kingdom of, conquered by Pulikesi II., 113, 531, 516.  
**PANJAR** . kingdom of, 526, 527, 531, 515.  
**PANINI** . grammarian, 36, 531.  
**PANIPAT** . battle of (1761) 315.  
**PANMUL** . village, assigned to the author of *Mhat-t-Ahmad*, 322.  
**PANOLI** . village, 328.  
**PAPIKL** : cape of, identification of, 539, 541, 545.  
**PARABH** . tribe, 538.  
**PARAHANAKA** . village, granted, its identity with Palsana, 127 and note 3.  
**PARAMADIVA** . Raja, identified with Paramara, king of Abu, 168 note 2.  
**PARAMIKAS** : Rájputs, 168, of Malwa, section of the Gurjura or Bhummál empire, 169, supreme in Marusthal, lose their possession, 170.  
**PARASFI** : assigned to the Marathás (1737), 110, 319.  
**PARASANG** : lineal measure, 165.  
**PARASANG** : Paramara, 733.  
**PARASNATH** : Jain saint, 156.  
**PARASRAMA** : son of Sujana, finishes the temple of Nemnáth, 177 note 1.  
**PARDI** . 110.  
**PARIGANHS** : sub-divisions, 210.  
**PARKHER** . local name of Baroda 208 note 3.  
**PARIAH DOG** . passing of the (1757), in Gujarat, 433.  
**PARIHARS** : Rájputs, 165, 168.  
**PARIŚHITAPARYAS** : work of Hemachandra, 193.  
**PARIYAYA** : village, granted, 110.  
**PARK** : Colonel, 445.  
**PARIPUR** : town, 119.  
**PARADAFTA** : Suráshtra governor of Skandagupta, 69.  
**PARNERA** : fort, captured by Shiváji (1672), 387, fort, 402, taken by Lieutenant Welsh (1780), 109.  
**PARPAS** . local name, 208 note 3.  
**PARGVANATHA** . temple of, 471.  
**PARGSIS** . 191 note 1, riot of, in Brouch (1757), 137, 138.  
**PARTABPUR** : gathering at, destruction of, 113.  
**PARTHIANS** . 513, 514 : empire of, 515.  
**PARTAVI** . Shiv's wife, 455.  
**PASAKAS** . see Vitamas.  
**PASIPIDA** . town identified with Besmál, 538.  
**PASIPATA** . sect 83, 190.  
**PASUPATAS** . take service in army, 84.  
**PAVALA** : island, 533, 534, 535, town, 538, 546.  
**PAVALI** . Indus delta, 536.  
**PATANK** . 537. See Pattalene.  
**PATILSHYWAR** . 452.  
**PATILPUTRA** . city, 516.  
**PATAN** . town, 231, 232, 235, inscription at, 167 note 1, 174, 175, Sahasalinga lake built by Siddharaja kt. 179, Sahá called at, by Siddharaja, 181, stone inscription at, 190, vacated by Jhaloris and Rathels and seized by Jawán Mard Khán (1737), 318, 160 and note 4.  
**PATAS TOWNATH** . zillah, 208 and note 3.  
**PATATAMALZA** . another name of Karka I, 124.  
**PATON** : fort, given to Bhavsingh by the Mará this, 323-324.  
**PATILS** . village headmen, 210.  
**PATIKKA** . northern Kshatriya ruler, 23 and note 1, 33.  
**PATRI** . Mándal, 518.  
**PATRIAS** : dancing girls, 451 and note 4.  
**PATIBANDHI** . investiture festival, 130.  
**PATITERSE** . Lower Sindhi, 535.  
**PATIAS** . town, mosque in, 512.  
**PATTAS SOMNATH** : burned by the Portuguese (1532), 347.  
**PATIVARE** . 469.  
**PATWARI** . Mulhal village officer, 212.  
**PATVANIAS** : (170) 199.  
**PAV(G)AD** . hill fort, goddess Káli on, 206 note, taken from and restored to Sindia by the English (1803), 414.  
**PAVAR** . Gujar surname, 468.  
**PAWANGAD** . 510.  
**PEARL FISHERIES** : in the gulf of Kachh, 285.  
**PENH** . 110.  
**PERPERINT** . island, 542.  
**PERAMI** . 515.  
**PERIMUTIA** : Chaul, 533, 540.  
**PERIPLEUS** : the, 7, 17, 535, 537, 539, 534 ; its author a merchant of Alexandria, the chief views about its age, 542-546.  
**PERMADI** : king, 172 and note 3 ; Kalambha king, 195.  
**PERSIA** . country, 497, 532, 547 ; gulf of, 516, 536, 545.  
**PRIATIS** . capital of the Gangaridae.  
**PESHQVAR** : stupas of, 497, 515.  
**PESHAWAR** : Kidáras established in, 141.  
**PESHKASH** : Maráthm contributions, 216.  
**PESHWA** : opens for the first time direct negotiations with the viceroys of Gujarat (1726) ;

- appoints Udaji Pavār his deputy to levy tribute in Gujarat and to operate against Pilaji, sends Chhinnaji with an army through Gujarat; obtains tribute on the whole of Gujarat (1728), 307, 309, 391; negotiates with the Nizam and the adherents of Timbaktú; recognises the Nizam's rights to several places in Gujarat and agrees to help him in severing the Dakhn from the possessions of the emperor, 391; negotiates with Jawāy Mard Khan (1750), 397; treaty of Bassin (1802), 413; his intrigue in Baroda, 426; treaty of Poona (1817), his fall (1818), 428.
- PICHAPĀNGARAKA** Dakshina Siva shrine at, 432.
- PIHOGALA** probably Panagala or Hongal, 511.
- PIPLAD** fort, captured and demolished by Rangoi (1713), 327.
- PRACHĪTĪ** = people of Pushkalavati, 534.
- PRICHOS** 535.
- PIRA TONG** apparently Great Lord, 197.
- PIRLA** = king of Kachh, 160.
- PIRLPADA** old Surat, 39.
- PIRLPADA** father of Lakha, 160.
- PIRLAN GĀIKWAR** nephew and successor of Dāmaji Gaikwār, marches on Surat (1719), defeats Musalmāns, establishes himself at Songal; is secretly favored by Ajitmal, 301, 390, marches on Surat and defeats Momin Khan, levies contribution, overruns Surat province and builds forts in Rappipla, 303, 304, 390, obtains Baroda and Dabhoi, prevents Udaji Pavār from joining his forces with the viceroi at Baroda (1727), 308, 391; negotiates with Mustaid Khan, governor elect of Surat (1730), 311, assassinated (1732), 313, 391.
- PIRIMAGES** = Vastupāla's, 292 note 1.
- PIRLAR** Akhalak, inscriptions on, of Samudragupta, 63-65.
- PIRLO-MOLO** Bhūmāl or Bhūmāl, 3, 166.
- PIRU** = *Salvadora persica*, 449, 456.
- PIROVĪKA** 171.
- PIRAL DUARA** 155.
- PIRAM** island in the gulf of Cambay, 309.
- PIRAL COAST** 541.
- PIRALIS** 192, note 3.
- PIR MUHAMMAD** Akbar's general in Malwa, drives Sultan Baz Bahadur out of Mandu (1560); his defeat and death (1561), 369.
- PIROZ** Muhammadan shipowner of Ommuz, builds a mosque at Sonmāth Pātān, 291.
- PIRE** = forgery of, 110, 141.
- PIRY** (23-79), 6, 532, 533, 535, 536, 537, 513.
- PLUTARCH** 535.
- POKARN** 461. See Pushkar.
- POLEMAIOS** 37.
- POMPONIIUS MELLO** (A.D. 13), 536.
- POONA** = treaty of, between the English and the Peshwa (1817), 428.
- PORHANDAR** = port, 524.
- POROS** = Indian king, 535, 536.
- PORTS** = Gujarat (1513-1515), 220 and note 2.
- PORTUGUESE** = Affairs of the, in Diu (1529-1536), 317; send an expedition to south Kathiāwāda and sack Tarapur, Balsar, and Surat (1531), burn the ports of Sonmāth Pātān, Mangrol, Talaja, and Muzaffarābād; destroy Bassin and burn Dāmān, Thāna, and Bombay; send an embassy to the court of Humayun to obtain Diu, treaty with Sultan Bahadur of Gujarat, disputes with Sultan Bahadur (1536), 317, 318, in Surat (1700-1703), 292.
- PORTUGUESE ASIA** = historical work by Faria-e-Souza (1679), 342.
- PORWALS** = caste, origin of, 164.
- POSTIDONIOS** 535.
- POSTINA** = boundary of the Vaghela kingdom at, 1297, 206.
- POST** = in Musalmān period, 214.
- POSTAL CHACKIS** 211.
- POTANA** = Pātala, 535.
- POULIPOULI** = identification of 539.
- PRABANDHACHINIAMANI** = historical work dealing with the Chavāda kings, 149 and note 2, 151, 152, 154, 155, 156, 158, 159, 160, 162, 163, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 176, 178, 179, 180, 183, 184, 185, 186, 189, 190, 193, 194, 195.
- PRABANDHĀSĀLA** = work of Ramachandra, Kumarapala's Pandit, 190.
- PRABHAKARAVARDHANA** = king of Māgadh (600-606), 167, 197.
- PRABHASA** = Mulharaji's visit to, 160; holy place, 164, inscription at, 176. See Sonmāth Pātān.
- PRABHĪTAVARSHA** = another name of Govind Rāshtrakūṭa 126.
- PRACHANDA** = noble of Krishna, Dakhan Rāshtrakūṭa king, 129.
- PRAJAPATI** = daughter of, loved by the Moon, 521.
- PRAKRI** = dialect, 533, 534.
- PRAGUNA** = a tribe, 61 and note 3.
- PRASĀSTARĀGA** = title of Pāda II. Gurjjara ruler 115.
- PRASASTI** = poetical eulogium on the Sahasralinga lake written by Śrīpala, 180.
- PRASY** = Pracyas of Palibothra, 532, 533.
- PRATĀPAMĀLIYA** = son of Kumarapala's daughter 194. Second son of Vnadhavala, 203.
- PRATĀPKĪ** = brother of Dāmaji Gaikwar advances with Devay Tākpai and exacts tribute and plunders the country, levies tribute from the chiefs in Sorath, dies of small-pox at Kānkar near Dholka (1737), 317.
- PRATĀPASIVHĀ** = king of Kalambapattana, receives Kumarapala, builds a temple, and issues a coin named after Kumarapala, 183.
- PRATH-NAGRI** = local name of Dholka, 208 note 3.
- PREHISTORIC EVIDENCES** = to Gujarat, 11 note 2.
- PREMALĀDEVĪ** = sister of Kumarapala married to Krishnadeva, Siddharaja's general, 181.
- PRITHVĪRĀJ CHOHĀN** = king of Delhi, 470.

PRITHIVISENA : ninth Kshatrapa (A.D. 223), coin of, 43.

PROKLAIS : 546.

PROTAGORAS : geographer, 546.

PSEUDONIMOS : river, 540.

PTOLEMY : Egyptian geographer (A.D. 150), 6, 7, 78 note 1; 137, 199, 333, 338, 339, 340, 344, 346.

PTOLEMY II. PHILADELPHOS : (died 217 B.C.), 535, 542.

PULAKESHI II. (610-640), 110, 116. See Pulakeshi Vallabha Satyaśraya, 165.

PULAKESHI JANASRAYA : Gujrat Chalukya king at Navsari (738-739), 110, repulses the great Arab invasion at Navsari, 117.

PULAKESHI VALLABHA SATYASRAYA : Dakhan Chalukya king (610-640), 110, 111. See Pulakeshi II.

PULAKESI : grant of, 109.

PULAKESI II : 107. See Pulakeshi II.

PULAKESI JANASRAYA : his grants, 120. See Pulakeshi Janasraya.

PULUMVI : Andhrabhritya king 38 540.

PUNAJI VITHAL : Peshwa's agent in Gujrat, 329.

PUR : town, 539.

PURAGUPTA : Gupta chief (A.D. 470), 71.

PURANA : Bhavishya, 142, 533, 534, 545.

PURANDHAR : treaty of (1776) between the Peshwa and the English, 406.

PURI : Konkani Marutias of, its identity with Jajura or Elephanta, 107, 108, ancient name of Broach, 159.

PUSHPAMATA : 461.

PUSHKAR : holy place, 464.

PUSHYAGUPTA : Gujrat governor of Chandragupta, 14.

PUSHYAVITTA : name of king or tribe, 69, and note 4, 73-74.

PYGMIES : race of, in India, 532.

PYM : Lieutenant, 183.

RACMIAS : envoy 536.

RADDI : 119. See Ratta.

RADHANPUR : grant of Gajend III. at, 123; disloyalty of the Nawab of, 441, plate from, 466, grant of, 468.

RADITAS : Sir Stamford, 489, 491.

RADIA-UD-DARAWA : grandson and successor of the emperor Farrukhsiyar (1719), his murder by the Sayads, 301.

RAGHOBA : Balaji Bajirav Peshwa's brother, called also Raghumathav, levies tribute in Gujrat, takes possession of Rewa and Malu Kantha districts and marches on Surat (1752), 334; takes Ahmedabad (1753), 336-337; compels Momin Khan to pay tribute; appoints Shripatray his deputy at Ahmedabad and collects tribute from Lambli and Wadhwan chiefs, 337; acts as guardian of his nephew Madhavray, is joined in his intrigues by Jajori Bhonsle and Govindray Gaikwar, is defeated by the young Peshwa at Dhorap (1768) and confined at Poona, 399-400, is invested with the robe of Peshwa by the titular king of Satara; reinstates Govindray

Gaikwar in title and estates of Damaji Gaikwar (1774); sets out for Gujrat and attacks the city of Baroda (1775), 401-402; opens negotiations with the English through Mr. Gambler the chief at Surat, 401; joins Govindray Gaikwar (1775), sends an agent to negotiate with the Bombay Council; flies to Cambay and through the help of Mr. Malet goes to Surat via Bhavnagar, 402; reception of by the Nawab of Cambay, 403; abandoned by the English after the treaty of Pandhar (1776); takes refuge at Surat, 406; at Bombay; a fresh alliance of, with the English (1778), 407, handed over to Sindia, flies to Broach (1779), 408; receives a pension and goes to Kopergaon (1782), 410. See Raghumathav.

RAGHOBI : Maratha deputy, assassination of, at Ahmedabad (1756), 339.

RAGHOSHANKAR : Maratha leader, sent to subdue Kolis (1753), 338.

RAGHOBI BHONSLE of Barar, joins with Damaji in attacking the Peshwa, 335.

RAGHI NATHDAS : Raja, Nizam's minister, 333.

RAGHI NATHDAS : 334, 336, 337, 398, 399, 400. See Raghoba.

RAHADA : another name of Ghaghada the Chauda king, 154, 155.

RAHATUR : Raatur, capital of Ludes, 507 and note 11, 513.

RAHMA : Ruhmi, apparently Burma and Sumatra 527, 528.

RAHMI : 527.

RAHMI : spine of Indra, 119; 133.

RATIOD RASHTRASALENA : image of, 133.

RATIS : of Alor, 113.

RATIS BHARA : Samma chief of great Kachh, 518.

RAISINGHJI : usurps the chiefship of Navanagar, is defeated and slain in 1664, 283. Raja of Idar joins Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 329, 331.

RAIVARA : legendary king, 8.

RAIVATAKA : Gunar hill 177.

REGA : chief, 215 and note 2.

RAJAGHARATA : title conferred on Chahaga by Kumarapala 187.

RAJAHAMSA : Prachanda's grandfather, 129.

RAJA MAHESORI : 533.

RAJAPALAMANA : title of Salihara kings, 185.

RAJAPURI : see Puri.

RAJI : father of Mularaja, 156, 157; marries Lakha's sister Rajaji; is slain by Lakha, 160.

RAJPIPIA : 226.

RAJUL-MUTAK : special rules for conducting the *mulakgiri* or land-raiding system, 418.

RAJAVELA : northern Kshatrapa, 23.

RAKHACH : son of Raji and Lakha's sister Rajaji, 160.

RAKSHAS : division of Parihar Rajputs, 465.

RAMA : ancestor of the Chudasaunna clan, 139.

RAMACHANDRA : Pandit in Kumarapala's court, writes the *Prabandhasata*, 190; Jain scholar, ordered by Ajayapala to sit on a red-hot sheet of copper, 194.

- RAMI** : island of the Jāva group, 528.  
**RAM RĀJA** : king of Sūfāya, appoints Khanderāv Dabhlī to collect *chātā* and *sardeshmukhī* in Bāglān, 388.  
**RAMIRĀV BHĀSTRĪ** : adviser of the Peshwā ; decides in favour of Sayajirāv, son of Dāmaji by his second wife, 440.  
**RĀM SEN** : hill range, 156.  
**RAN** : 538.  
**RANA** : of Chitān, 164.  
**RANAGRĀHA** : Gurjara prince (639), brother of Dadda II., his copperplate grant, 115.  
**RĀNĀKA** : chieftain, title of the Vaghelas, 199.  
**RĀNĀKADĒVI** : daughter of a pottar sought in marriage by Siddharāja, 176.  
**RĀNDER** : Rahanjur or Rahanjur, 513, 520.  
**RĀNG GĪKA** : district, 187.  
**RANODĀI** : is appointed agent by Dāmaji Gāikwar in Gujarat, defeats Kāntaji at Xyund-Mogri (1735) 316, 317, agrees to and Momin Khān on condition of receiving half the revenues of Gujarat (1737), 318, 391, again appointed deputy by Dāmaji to collect tribute in Gujarat (1741) 321, 325, defeated by Mufkhih Khān and Fida-ud-din, deserted by Sher Khān Bābi, is taken prisoner his escape (1743) 326, 395, captures and demolishes the fort of Petlad, employed by the Musalmāns in the quarrels regarding the viceroyalty of Gujarat (1743-44), 327, 395, imprisoned by Khanderāv Gāikwar, is released by Candu and appointed her agent (1745), 329, 396, expels Trimbakrāv from Ahmedabad and himself collects the Maratha share of the city revenues, 329, takes shelter with Sher Khān Bābi in Kapadvanj, besieged at Kapadvanj by Fakr-ud-daulah, requests Holkar to come to his help, the siege raised at the approach of Holkar : his interview with Jawān Mard Khān at Ahmedabad (1747), 330, captures Borsad and forces Hariba to leave the country, 331, deserted by his allies and imprisoned (1747), 332.  
**RANGREZ** : dyots, 151.  
**RANMALJI** : Nayagar Jām (1664), 283.  
**RĀNOJI** : **INDIA** at Idar, 315.  
**RAO** : title. See **Rav**.  
**RARTAGĀ** : tribe, 534.  
**RAS FARUK** : in Arabia, 536.  
**RĀSHID-DĪN** : Arab geographer (1310), 501 ; translated Al Biruni, 508, 511 note 9, 518, 529, 531.  
**RĀSHTRAKUTĪYAN** : Gujarāt branch of the, overthrow of Chudkya kingdom, 117. Dakhan Branch of the, 119 ; dynasty (713-971), 119-134, their origin and name 119-120, their early dynasty (150-500), their main dynasty (630-972), 120, their conquest of Gujarāt (750-760), 465, their grants, 466, 467, 506, 512 and note 1 ; in Gujarāt, 525, 526, 527 ; their dominions, 529 ; their towns, 530.  
**RĀS MĀLA** : 116, 163.  
**RANVĪNAGAR** : name given by Aurangzib to Visalnagar, 286.  
**RATANLĀL PĀNDIT** : Mr., 463 note 1.  
**RATANMĀL** : 461.  
**RATANPUR** : town, 471.  
**RATANSINGH BHANDĀRĪ** : deputy viceroy of Gujarat (1733-1737), 311, receives Dholka ; defeats Sohrāb Khān at Dhol near Dhan dhuka, 316-316, enmity of, with Momin Khān 316, 319 ; his attempts to oppose the Gāikwar, 317, defends Ahmedabad, 319 ; leaves Ahmedabad, 320.  
**RATTA** : 119. See **Ratta**.  
**RĀTHOD** : chief, at Idar, 217 note 3 ; dynasty, identified with Rasttrakutis, their origin, 119.  
**RAIL** : pound (trov) 531.  
**RAIN CHITPA** : Chitāda king, 154, 155.  
**RAIN GĀR** : hill range, 456.  
**RĀJANMĀLĀ** : poetic history, 149 note 2, 166, 151, 157.  
**RĀJĀVĀRĪ** : Tamuk port on the Hugli, 199.  
**RĀJYA** : dynasty of kings, 7, 119.  
**RĀJYAT-UL-SĀYA** : 168, 512 note 3, 523 and note 1.  
**RAV** : village, inscription and stone wall at, 204.  
**RAV** : title, 215 and note 2, of Kachh, makes an expedition against Sindh (1758), 342.  
**RAVĀI** : title, 2 5 and note 2.  
**RAVANA** : demon king of Lanka, builder of the silver temple of Somnāth, 190, 154 note 1.  
**RAVĪL** : perhaps Rander, 220 note 2.  
**RAVJI** : brought with his brother Bābaji Āpa to Baroda (1793) by Govindrāv Gāikwar, 112 ; both the brothers receive from the Bombay Government the assistance of an auxiliary force under Major Walker, take the fort of Kadi by storm and compel Mulharrāv to surrender, 112, his interview with Governor Duncan at Cambay, 112, death of Ravji Āpa (1803), 114.  
**RAVĀJĪ** : sister of Lakha, married to Rājī, 160.  
**RAYGAD** : fort, 284, stronghold of Shivaji, 386.  
**REDDI** : Kurnees : caste name, 119.\* See **Raddi**.  
**RED SEA** : 535, 536.  
**REDDIGIS** : in Gujarat, 7.  
**REDDIGIS** : of Amangzib, 285.  
**REDDIGIS** : herdsmen, 451.  
**REDDIGIS** : 512-513.  
**REDDIGIS** : of the Valabhi kings, 83-85.  
**REDDIGIS** : 280.  
**RINA** : Nabadvani, 167.  
**RIYASIMĪRA** : present with Mularāja in the battle with Gaharipu, 160.  
**RIYASĪ** : under Ahmedabad kings, 219 and note 2 ; in 1571, 221, in 1760, 222 note 2.  
**RIYASĪ KUTAN** : minister of Xyām Khān, Gujarāt viceroy (1635-1612), 278.  
**ROMERIS** : General, 439, 443.  
**ROF, SIR THOMAS** : traveller (1615-1618), 217 note 2, 222 note 1.  
**ROHINI** : daughter of Trajapati, loved by the Moon, 521.  
**ROMAN** : element in the architecture of Java and Cambodia, 496 ; empire, 536.  
**ROHĪ** : 143.  
**RUDRĀMAN** : fourth Kshatrāpa (143-158), coins and inscriptions of, 6, 11 note 2, 13, 34-36, 80 note 1 ; his kingdom, 540.

**RUDRAGANA** : Traikūṭika king, 5<sup>3</sup> and note 1.  
**RUDRAMAHALAYA** : great shrine of Rudra at Siddhapura, 161; built by Siddharaja, 179, 180.

**RUDRAMĀ** 172.\*

**RUDRASENA I** : eighth Kshatrapa (203-220), coins and inscription of, 42-43.

**RUDRASENA** : seventeenth Kshatrapa (253-272); coins of, 47.

**RUDRASENA III** : twenty-fifth Kshatrapa (378-388), coins of, 51.

**RUDRASENA IV** : twenty-fourth Kshatrapa (318-376); coins of, 60-51.

**RUDRASIMHA I** : seventh Kshatrapa (181-196), coins and inscription of, 41-42.

**RUDRASIMHA II** : twenty-first Kshatrapa (308-311), coins of, 49.

**RUMI** : 527. See Bahma.

**RUMS** : of Valabhi, 7<sup>5</sup>, 79.

**RUKA-UD-DIN AMIR** 201.

**RUMADISA** : 490, south Panjab, 491.

**RUMĀLA** : perhaps south Panjab 509 and note 5.

**RUMI KHAN** : officer of Sultan Bahadur of Gujarat (1536), 319, 350, 351.

**RUMLA** : country of Sindh, 520 and note 1.

**RUPA NĀIK** : leader of Nāikda Bhils, surrender of (1849), 416.

**RUPA SUNDARI** : wife of Javāṅkharā, gives birth to a son in the forest, 150, 151.

**RUPI** : quarries of, 455.

**RUPMĀI** : same as Rupmān, wife of Baz Bahādur of Malwa (1555-1570), her pavilion at Mandu, 353, 356, 371; captured by Adam Khan Atkhā at Sarangpur, commits suicide (1562), 369, 371.

**RUSHIS** : sages, 461.

**RUSTAM ALI KHAN** : marches on Jodhpur with Shujāt Khan and captures it (1723), 303; governor of Surat, asks Pilap Gaikwān's aid against Hamid Khān and Kantajī; defeats Hamid Khān at Arīs, his severe defeat and death by the Marāṭhas near Ahmedābād (1723), 305, 390.

**RUSTAMRAV** : Marāṭha leader in the army of Abdul Aziz, 324.

**SADI** : Persian poet (1200-1230), 184 note 2.

**SABAIASSA** : mouth of the Indus, 538.

**SABANA** : town, 535.

**SABARMATI** : river, 159, 193, 206; floods, (1693) 257, (1739), 322, 511, 517.

**SABDAIYA** : Chandal, 531.

**SABDĀNTARĀNA** : grammatical work of Homa-chandra, 193.

**SABZANS** : people, 535.

**SABIRIA** : 537. See Abiria.

**SADĀRAT** : Mughal department of justice, 213.

**SADĀSHIV RĀMCHANDRA** : Peshwā's general, besieges and takes the town of Ahmedābād from Momin Khān (1758); helps the Rāv of Kachh, 340, 341, 342; besieges Bālāsīnor (1758) and levies tribute, 343, 398; defeats the chief of Dhraṅgdhira at Halvād and captures him, 344; appointed viceroy of Ahmedābād by the Peshwā (1760), 344.

**SADHARA PRASANGH** : work of Rāo Sāheb Mahipatām Rupām, 180 note 2.

**SADHARO JESINGH** : another name of Siddharaja, 173.

**SADH** : Maghal judge, 213.

**SADINOH** : tribe, 510 542.

**SADKA** (Sādakārah) : military post of the Maghal, in Mahi Kāntā (1674), 255, 433.

**SADLEA** : fort, 180 note 2.

**SALAN** : Tiffān, principality next to Konkān, 527.

**SALBAR MUHAMMAD KHAN** : successor of Teghlugh Khān, governor of Surat, 330, expelled by Sayal Achehan, 331, retires to Sind, 332, brought back to Surat by the Dutch and other merchants, 333.

**SALAYA-VASHTKA** : temple at Cambay, 190.

**SAGAPA** : mouth of the Indus, 538.

**SAGHAPA** : forest tract, 388.

**SAGHIGA** : father of Mulakī, mentioned in the inscription at Mangrol, 176.

**SAHARODHARA** : temple at Prabhāsa, 176.

**SAHARAS** : of Aror in the north of Sindh, rule over south Panjab and north Sindh, 196; Buddhists, overthrow of, by usurping Brahmanist Chach (642), 197-498.

**SAHASKALINGA** : lake, built by Siddharaja, 177, 179.

**SAMHĀVAKA** : tribal name, 64 and note 5.

**SAMIR** : 507, 508, 509, 510, 513, 516, 520, 523, 529, 529. See Chaul.

**SAMISM** : religion of the Valabhi kings, 83.

**SAMANA** : Siddharaja's viceroy, in Surashtra, builds a temple at Gerni, his inscription, 176-177. Potter, hides Kumārapala, 182; is rewarded by Kumārapala with seven hundred villages, 184.

**SAKA** : tribe, 22, 67 note 2, era, 29; Yavans, 199.

**SAKAS** : 156 note 1, branches of Bhūmāṇī shekaks, 164-166, 196 note 1.

**SAKAMBHARI** : the Sambhar lake; goddess, place; 158 and note 1.

**SAKOA** : Pansimur (170) name for Cochinchina, 499.

**SAKASHTI** : land of the Sakas, 112 note 5.

**SAKSHIKA VIKRĀ** : 186.

**SAKSHIBAI** : widow of Shāhū, applies to Dāmup Gukwar and Raghunāth Bhonslā against the minister (1748), 396.

**SABAR KHAN** : claimant to the chiefship of Junagadh, 125.

**SALANGOL** : Salankayana, tribe, 516.

**SALANKAYANA** : tribe, 516.

**SALAT** : treaty of (1782), between the English and the Marāṭhas, 410.

**SALUR** : fort, in Baglan, captured by Moro Timāl (1672), 387.

**SALUGGAN** : zillah, 208 and note 3.

**SALIKK** : Ceylon, 543.

**SALIM SHAH** : (1515-1553) Sher Shāh Sur's successor, 369.

**SĀLVAS** : king of Mritīkāvati, 10 and note 1.

**SĀLVAS** : tribe, 531.

**SAMADHIHARA-PANCHAMAHĀSABADA** : title of the Gurjjars, 113.

**SAMANDAR** : river port town, 519.

- в 1746—75**

- SAT BHA**: name of country, perhaps Svabhra, 10 and note 1.
- SAT RASHTRA**: afflicted by an Arab army, 109, tribe of Kathiawar, 531.
- SATRS**: of Sindh, 533.
- SATSARA**: king of Surashtra, 186 and note 1.
- SATVIRA**: Upper Sindh and Multan, 537, 542.
- SĀVIDAR**: gateway, 150 note 1.
- SĀVIRI**: wife of Brahma, said to be a Gujarati maiden, 161.
- SAW (SHINIGARS)**: news-writer, 211.
- SAYAD**: Musalman trader, arrest of at Cambay, 202.
- SAYAD ACHCHAN**: paymaster at Surat, aspires to the governorship of Surat, seeks Marathas' help (1717), 396, takes the city of Surat and gets the merchants to sign a deed addressed to the emperor and the Nizam thence should be appointed governor (1718), 331-332, makes over one-third of Surat revenue to the Marathas, 332, oppresses influential persons, sends them citadel to the Habshi and withdraws to Bombay and thence to Poona (1740), 333, receives the governorship of Surat from the Peshwa and establishes himself in the government (1758), 343, receives a body-guard from the Peshwa (1759) 399.
- SAYADS**: brothers Hassan Ali and Abdulla Khan, king-makers at Delhi, 297, 301.
- SAYAD ILMUDDIN**: Ismaili missionary in Gujarat during the reign of Mahmud Badaiya (1159-1513), 288.
- SAYAD JIYAL BUKHARI**: chief law officer or Sadr-us-Sudur for the whole of India (1612-1641), 279.
- SAYAD MILIHAN**: marches on Surat and returns unsuccessful, his suicide, 331.
- SAYAD SHAHAT**: preceptor of Matils of Khan-desh and Momnas of Gujarat, his suicide, 288.
- SAYAJI GADKWAR**: son of Damaji Gadkwar, 312, 398, collects tribute in Sorath (1759), 344; appointed successor of Damaji (1771), 400, 403.
- SĀVAN**: village, 130.
- SAYIR**: land customs, 213.
- SĀZANION**: town, 510.
- SCHWANBECK**: 512.
- SCORIE**: Colonel, 147.
- SEAL**: Valabhi, 80.
- SEA OF PARS**: the Indian ocean, 516, 518.
- SELA-VIDA (DHARAS)**: north Konkan Silaharas, 129.
- SELEKOS NIKATOR**: 532.
- SEMYLA**: modern Chaul, 516.
- SINPAHI BHATARA**: see Bhatara.
- SENDRAKA**: chief, 55; grant 111.
- SINCEA**: his book on India, 532.
- SĀSE KRIENAI**: Bunt islands, 546.
- SEFE**: tribe of Mewar, 533.
- SEWĀLIK**: hills, 157; king of, 191.
- SHĀHĀDPIR**: town, 538.
- SHAHAR-UD-DIN GHORI**: defeat of (1178), 229.
- SHADUS**: beggars, 461.
- SHAH MAT KHAN**: forty-fifth viceroy (1713), 297.
- SHĀH (XINSHIHS)**: Kushan dynastic name, 64 and note 5.
- SHĀH-BANDAR**: harbour master, 212 Town, 538.
- SHAH BHUKAN**: Hajar, son of Saunt Shih-i-Alam, the tomb of, on the Sabarmati near Ahmedabad, 337 note 1.
- SHĀH BUDĀH KHAN**: is appointed commandant of Mandu (1568), builds Nalkantha, 370.
- SHĀH JĀHAN**: emperor, stays at Mandu; is defeated, his brother Shah Purwiz retreats to Mandu (1621-1622), 384; his death (1666), 284.
- SHĀH NAWĀZ KĀK (X SAIVI)**: thirty-first viceroy of Gujarat, joins prince Dāra in his rebellion against Aurangzeb (1659), 282.
- SHAH NUP**: Hassan Kuli Khan Bahadur, viceroy of Oudh, sets out for Makkah; his unsuccessful attempt to arrange matters between Momin Khan and the Peshwa, 311.
- SHĀHŪ**: Kushan name, 64 and note 5.
- SHĀHŪ RĀJA OF SĀTARA**: appoints Khanderāv Pahlad Sempati, 389; settles the terms of agreement between the Peshwa and the Pahlads 393.
- SHĀH-SĀH KHAN**: twenty-sixth viceroy of Gujarat (1616-1641), 280; twenty-eighth viceroy of Gujarat (1652-1654), his expedition against the Chauvāha Kohis, 281.
- SHAKESPEARE**: Sir Richmond, resident at Burdā, 113.
- SHAMPHIRAM**: Nôgar Brahman, supporter of Momin Khan at the siege of Ahmedabad, is taken prisoner by Damaji and cut in halves to Baroda, 312.
- SHĀMIA ATRAS**: beggars, 151.
- SHAMSHER BAHADUR**: title conferred on Dāmaji by Shahin after the battle of Balapur (1720), 389.
- SHĀHS-UD-DIN ATTAMSH**: Sultan, 174 note 1, takes the fort of Mandu and drives away its Hindu chief (1234), 357.
- SHANKRAJI**: governor of Viramgam (1753), 338.
- SHARMI-THA**: wife of Yayāti, 160.
- SHARVA**: an animal, 508.
- SHILL-MONEY**: sowing of, 163, 164 and note 1.
- SHER KHAN BĀMI**: governor of Baroda; defeat of; capture of Baroda, 311; deputy governor of Sorath (1738), 321; allows Ran-go to escape to Derasad and joins Khanderāv, Dāmaji's brother, 326, joins Rangoji and marches against Fakhr-ud-daulah, wounded in the battle of Kapadvanj, 330, dispute of, with his Arab mercenaries at Bālsamor, 338; dies (1758) at Junagadh, 313.
- SHER SHAH SĪR**: revolt of, in Bengal, 368; emperor (1542-1545), 368-369.
- SHERFAT**: commander of the Ahmedabad garrison (1753), suffers a defeat, 338.
- SHEVAKS**: 450, 164.
- SHIVRĀJ**: Rāja, commandant of Mānda (1658), 382.
- SHIVSINGH**: Rāja of Idar, sends Sajan Singh to help Momin Khan at the siege of Ahmedabad by the Marāthās (1757) 311.

- SHORĀPUR : 519.
- SHRI HARSHA : king of Magadha (610-642), defeats the Huns, Gūjjaras, Lāṭas and the king of Sindh and Mālava, 197; drives away White Huns, 500.
- SHRIMAL : Brahmins, 150, 162 and note 2, Vāns, 463; Brahmins, their origin, 11. See Bhinnal.
- SHRIMĀTS : meaning-making of the name of, 15; brought back to Bhinnāl (1694), 161.
- SHRIMAL MOUNSALA : legendary account of Shrimal, 161.
- SHRINAGAR : Shrimal, 161.
- SHRIKATRAY : deputy of the Peshwa in Gujarat, negotiates with Momin Khan for the release of Bhagyavrat, is recalled, 638.
- SIFKUNJ : another name of Jagsonā, 160, 162, and note 3.
- SHUDRAS : 530. See Sudra.
- SHUJAAI KHAN : Katalab Khān, thirty-eighth viceroy of Gujarat (1681-1703), 287, his campaign in Jhalakāṇa and Sorath and storming of the fort of Thim, 288, captures Jodhpur (1722), 303, see Katalab Khān. One of Sher Shah's generals in Malwa, defeats Kādir Khān at Mandu, appointed commandant of Mandu, 368-369, recovers Malwa (1551), 369.
- SHUJA UD-DĀULAH : nawāb of Lucknow, 311.
- SHUPTE : sailors of Somnāth, 61.
- SIDDHABHATTI : granted in India's grant, 131.
- SIDDHACHAKRAVARTIN : title of Siddharāja, 173.
- SIDDHABHĀVA : grammar by Hemachandra, 180.
- SIDDHA HEMACHANDRA : 121. See Siddhabhāva.
- SIDDHANVA : 167. See Bahma Siddhanta.
- SIDDHAPUR : town, Vanarāja's image at, 152; holy place, Mulraj's grants at, 161, Jain temple at, 172, Rādhamaḥāyā temple at, 179, Kumārpalā's visit to, 183, Ahmed-shā's march against, 237.
- SIDDHARAJA : Chaulukya king (1091-1113), 156, 161, 162, succeeds Karna, agency of his mother, intrigues regarding his succession, remission of pilgrim tax, his wars with the kings of Saurashtra, Malwa, and Sindh, his era, his religious leanings and architectural buildings, 171-181.
- SIDHUPUR : 151, 161, 172, 237. See Siddhapur.
- SIDHVA : commandant of Junpra, offers to become a vassal of the emperor through the governor of Surat and receives the title of Yāqut Khān from the emperor with an annual subsidy of 1½ lakhs payable from the port of Surat, 285.
- SIGERDIS : perhaps Sagardvīpa or Cutch, 16.
- SIGERTIS : kingdom of, 535.
- SIGERUS : probably Junpra, 535, 536, 540.
- SIMI JAGAPPA : palace, 180 note 2.
- SINOR : village in Kāthiavada, 64 note 5, 161, reservoir at, 180 note 2.
- ŚILĀDITYA : of Malwa, reigning king of Kānya Kubja, 79.
- ŚILĀDITYA IV : Valabhi king (691), 117.
- ŚILĀDITYA V : Valabhi king (722), 117.
- ŚILĀDITYAŚRAYA : Gujarāt Chālukya king, 56, 108.
- SHĀGANSURI : Jain priest, 151.
- ŚILĀGRĀS : of the north Kopkan, 527.
- SHĀPRASHA : perhaps Śilva in Jhalāvāda, king of, present with Mularāja in the battle with Girharipu, 160 and note 2.
- SHIL, tribe, 531.
- SHILĀI-TI-TI W (RIKH) : written (851-852) by the merchant Sulamān, 505 note 2.
- SHIVCHA : James de, Portuguese captain, burns the ports of Pattan - Somnāth, Mangrol, Talāpa, and Muzafarābād; Thāna, Bassen, and Bombay, 312.
- SIM : country, king of, imprisoned by Siddharāja, 179.
- SIMHA : maternal uncle of king Visaladeva, 202; era, 276, 291.
- SIMHAPURA : see Sihar.
- SIMHASANA : twenty-sixth Kshatrapa, coin of, 51.
- SIMHITA : modern Chaul, 533.
- SIMYITA : modern Chaul, 510.
- SINDA : Gōi Kadamba chief, 173 and note 5.
- SINDA : perhaps Vadnagar, 516.
- SINDAITH : Goa, 517-521.
- SINDAS : in Sindh conquest of, and Jama mosque founded at, 506; St. John of Naujan in Thāna near Daman, 507, 508, 509, 511, 516, 521, 523, 528, 529, 530.
- SINDH : conquered by Chudisamas, 139; expedition against by the Rāo of Anchari, 342; Jhānmas, 132 and note 2, king of, 467, 509, 511, 513-517, 533. See Sindh.
- SINDH : identified with Sindh, afflicted by Arabian river, 189.
- SINDHĀYĀ : killed by Siddharāja, 175, 179.
- SINDIA : Maratha leader, his unsuccessful attack on Sinor (1781), 409, at war with the English, his treaty with the English at Engi, Anjanāon (1809), 411.
- SINDSAGAR : branch of the Indus, 517.
- SINDI : Dehal, 517.
- SINGADIP : Ceylon, 512.
- SINGH : tribe, 531.
- SINGHANA II : Devagiri Yādava king (1209-1217), 198, attacks Lavanaprasāda, his death, 199.
- SINGHAR : grandson of Sūmma, extends his sway (1069), 517.
- SINGHANADIVA : see Singhana.
- SINOR : attacked by Sindh (17-1), 409.
- SINPHON : mouth of the Indus, 518.
- SINPHOS : Indus river, 514.
- SIRMAVAG : modern Sirmā, 511.
- SIRPALLA : town, 510.
- SIRI PROILMATOS : Sri Pulumāyi, Andhra king, 37.
- SIRISHAPADRAKA : Sisodra, village, 115.
- SIROHI : chief of, head of Devia Rajputs, 465.
- SIROPROEMAIOS : Sri-Pulumāyi, 511.
- SIRUR : Amoghavarsha's inscription at, 124.
- SI-SANI RAS : queen of Kumārpalā, 188.
- SISOYA : Raja of Movād, struggles with Akbar, 110.

- SISODRA**: village, 115.  
**SILHA**, in Jhalavada, 160 note 2.  
**SIVACHITPA**, Goa Kadamba king (1147-1175), 173 and note 3, 195.  
**SIVAJI**: 145, founder of the Maratha empire, plunders Surat (1661), 281, 386, plunders it for the second time (1670), 281, 386, equips his fleet at Alibag, comes to the mouth of the gulf of Cambay, carries off Mughal pilgrimages, 386, captures Parnera and Bagvada forts to the south of Surat (1672), 387.  
**SIVANANDA KAMARAPALLISVARA**, temple of, 183.  
**SIVA-ANA**: king of, conquered by Hammuka, 163.  
**SIVKAPUR**, success of the Naukdas at, 116.  
**SIWANA** town, 538.  
**SIYAHIRAJ GAIKWAR**, 312. See Sawaji Gaikwar.  
**SKADPA**, twenty-seventh Kshatrapa, 51.  
 • Another name of Amoghavarsha, Dakhan Rashtrakuta king, 126.  
**SKANDAGUPTA** seventh Gupta king (451-470),  
 • inscription at Bhitar and Gernar, 69; at Junagadh, 73, 74, coins, 70-74, 80 note 1, 86.  
**SKANDA PURANA**, 461.  
**SKYTHIA** Sindh, 544.  
**SODHAI VAI** step well at Mangrol, 176.  
**SODHA PARMARS**, 217 note 3.  
**SOPALA**, 522.  
**SOMADA**: ruler of Malwa, 198.  
**SOMABATI**: 313. See Sohrab Khan.  
**SOMRAB KHAN** governor of Surat (1730), 310, confirmed in the appointment, driven out of Surat (1732), settles at Bhavnagar, 313, appointed governor of Viramgam (1735), is defeated at Dholi by Ratan Singh Bhandari, 310-316.  
**SOSTRA** village, battle of (1725), 307.  
**SOTAKI**, see Solanki.  
**SOLANKIS**: 156, 191, Rajputs their settlements, 461, then kingdom 165, then change of faith (743), 163 and note 2, 165; of Anhilavada, section of the Bhimtal empire, 169, dynasty (961-1242), 526. See Chaulukyas.  
**SOLLA** son of Udaya Vama, minister of Karna, 170.  
**SOM**, builder of the Sun temple 452.  
**SOMA** builds the gold temple of Somanatha 190.  
**SOMACHANDRA** Hemachandra's name after his consecration, 191.  
**SOMADITYA**: Mularaja's ancestor, 157.  
**SOMANATHA** temple, 79 note 3, 154, 161, destroyed by Mahmud of Ghazni (1024) 165-168; Miyamaladevi's pilgrimage to, 172; Kumarapala's pilgrimage to, 187-190; Lavanasprasad grants a village to, 200, destroyed by Muhammadans in 1297, 205. See Somanath.  
**SOMANATHA PATAN**: inscription in Bhadrakali's temple at, 81, rebuilding of the shrine at, 189, house-tax imposed for the maintenance of a mosque at, 204.  
**SOMARAJA**: son of Sahajiga, builds a temple at Prabhasa, 176.  
**SOMASVARMA** Brahmanic king of Cambodia (610) 499.  
**SOMESVARA**: poet, author of Kirtikamudi and Vastupalacharita, 171, 199, 202.  
**SOMESVARA**, shrine, re-built by Kumarapala, 189 and note 2.  
**SOMESVARA**, king of the Hoysala Ballalas of Dvarasamudra (1252), 203 note 3.  
**SOMNATH**: 229 and note 1, 232-233, 507, 508, 510; destruction of (1025), 512; pilgrimages to 531, legendary origin and description of the temple of, 521, 522, 523, 529, 531. See Somanatha.  
**SOMPURA**, 164.  
**SONARS**, goldsmiths, 150.  
**SONGAD**, headquarters of Pilaji Gaikwar, 301; 336, 390. Fort, the Citadel of Mandu captured by Humayun in 1554, 356-367-368.  
**SONGARA RAJPUTS**: 151 notes 3 and 4.  
**SONOTS**, 165.  
**SOHRAB KHAN**, see Sohrab Khan.  
**SOPALA** near Bassen, southern Mauryan capital, 113.  
**SORATH** chief of, owes allegiance to Gollas, 113, annexed to the Chaulukya kingdom of Anahilavada 176, name and extent, 208 and notes 1 and 3, 209, land raid system of the Marathas in 118-119.  
**SOUTHERN MEGAS** coins of, 19.  
**SOUTHERN** town, 511.  
**SOUTHERN** modern Supara, 510.  
**SOUTHERA**, 546. See Supara.  
**SOUTHERA** town, 538.  
**SOUTHERN SKYTHIANS**, 537.  
**SOUZA**: Fariae, Portuguese writer (1650), 319.  
**SPICHT** author, 115.  
**SPENCER** Mr., chief of the English factory at and governor of the Castle of Surat, 313.  
**SRI BHAVANA**, identified with Sarbhon, 123.  
**SRI CHAPA** dynasty, 167.  
**SRI DEVI**, 152.  
**SRI GAUDAS** branch of Gujarati Brahmins, then origin 161.  
**SRI GUPTA**, see Gupta.  
**SRI HARSHA**, king of Magadha (606-641), 467.  
**SRI HARSHACHAKRA** life of Sri Harsha, 167.  
**SRI JAYASIMHADITYA**, 170.  
**SRI LAKSHMI** gate name, 119.  
**SRI MALA**, identified with Bhimtal, 160.  
**SRINAGARA** seat of Jethva power, 138.  
**SRIPALA** Siddhanta's poet laureate, 180.  
**SRISHATA-SIDDHAPALA**, troubled by Rakshasas or demons, 171.  
**SRI VALLABHA** see Amoghavarsha.  
**SRONGDZAN-CHAMBO**, (640-698), founder of Tibetan power and civilization, overruns Tarim valley and Western China, 501.  
**SRYASRAYA SRIKANTHA**: (669-691), his plates, 107-108; Yuvaraja (691-692), 110, 111, 112.  
**STAMBHA**: king, threatens Rashtrakuta kingdom in the Dakhan, 123.  
**STAMBHACHAKRA**: modern Cambay, 123; granted to Sriganadas by Mularaja, 161, temple at, repaired by Kumarapala, 190.  
**STRABONOS** of Byzantium, geographer, 516.  
**STHAVIRAS**: 193.

STHIRAMAIL: name of a Bodhisattva, 79 and note 1, 85.  
 ST. MARLIN. 531, 538, 539.  
 STRABO. Roman geographer (B.C. 50 - A.D. 20), 16, 17, 532, 535, 536.  
 STRANGERS: settlements of, in Gujarāt, 1.  
 SUARAIARAT. 531, 541.  
 SUARI. Sāvaras of Central India, 533.  
 SUBAH: province, 211.  
 SUBAHAR: Mughal viceroys, 211.  
 SUBARA. 508, 509, 511, 516, 523 note 1, 529. See Supara, Subahara, and Surat.  
 SUBHAK. Krishna's sister, 9, 10.  
 SUBHAKSI. King of the Karnataka, 170.  
 SUBHATAVARMAN. King of Malwa, 19.  
 SUBHATINGA: another name of Akadavarsha, 126.  
 SUBARIA. Shudra, his-handmen, 530.  
 SUBARASANA. ancient lake near Gunnar, 35, 36, 69.  
 SUBASA. northern Kshatriya king, 23.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI: ancestor of Prachanda, 129.  
 SUBAKH. 511. See Supari.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. inscription at Vada of, 107.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. place on the Nerbada 162.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Sanskrit work on Chavala kings, 149 and note 2, 151, 156, 159 note 3, 171, 191, 195, 196.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. merchant and traveller, author of Subhakti-Tawarikh 198, 505 and note 2, 525, 526, 527, 530.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Supari at 51.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Hindu settlements of, 193, 527 528.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. chief, 139, king of Sindh 160, tribe, sovereignty of Sindh passes to, 517.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. hill range, 456.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. shrine of, 155, 156.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Chinese ambassador (A.D. 50) 71, 75 502.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. 155, description of, 159-160, history, 160-161, dates, 163.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Arab outbreak at, 111.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Multan, 112 and notes 2 and 5.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. near Bassin, its various names, 523, 529, 516, 547.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. apparently Supari at 516. Supari 529.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Subahara, Surat, 507 and note 3, 511.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. tribe, 533.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. claimant to the Lamavada gadi or chiefship, 111.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. gateway, 450 note 1.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. brother-in-law of Javahkha, 150, 151.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. ancient division of Gujarāt, 6, 35, 36, 135, lord of, taken prisoner by Siddharaja, 175, kingdom of, 535; Veraval, 547.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Kāthiyāvada, 506.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. village, 538.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. Surashtra, 15-16, 537, 538.  
 SUBHAKKIMBADI. place of Śrīyāgya Śiladitya at, 107, 108, Karkha's grant at, 121; Kirtiraja's grant

at, 159, 230; 235; sacked by the Portuguese in 1531, 317; plundered by Malik Ambar in 1609, 214 and note 2, by Shivaji in 1664, 284, 386; Shivaji's second attack on, in 1670, 284, 386; Marāṭhas at, permission granted by the emperor to let pass the Portuguese ships from (1700-1703), 292, affairs at, Mulla Muhammad Ali's success at, his imprisonment and death at, by Teghbag Khān, the governor (1732-1734) 313, affairs at (1748) 331, cession of the revenues of Surat to the Marāṭhas under Kōdārji Gāikwār (1717) 332, affairs at (1750); 333; attacked by Raghunathrao (1752), 334, affairs at (1758), castle taken by the English (1759), 313, treaty of (1775), between Rāghoba and the Bombay Government, negotiated by Narotamdas, 402; treaty of, declared invalid by the Supreme Government, 105-106; 511; 523.  
 SURAT. Athavisi, plundered by the Marāṭhas (1780), 409.  
 SURAT. month of the Tāpti 523.  
 SURAT. sage, title conferred on Hemachandra, 191, tribe 531.  
 SUPARI. by Fodir Mal (1575), 223.  
 SUPARI. gate name, 119, Sun God, 161, Purān, 161, 165.  
 SUPARIYAVARSHA. another name of Karka I., 124.  
 SURATINATHA. installation of, in Śakunika Vihāra, 76.  
 SVABHARA. name of country, 10 note 1, 36 and note 3.  
 SVABHARAVALLI. see Sābarmati.  
 SVARGAROHANAPRASADA. shrine, on Śatruñjaya in honour of Vastupāla, 202.  
 SVAYAMVARA. bride-groom-choosing, of Durlabhadra, 162-163.  
 SWAP. 468.  
 SYAGRUS. Ras Patak in Arabia, 536.  
 SYAGRUS. town 538.  
 SYASTIK. 511.

TABAKAT-I-NASIRI. 196.  
 TABAK. king of Tafak, 527.  
 TABAKI. Arab winter (835-932), 521.  
 TABAKI. probably Pandharipat, 511.  
 TABAKI. 511. See Tabaso.  
 TABI. the Tāpti 510.  
 TAIK. the Panch, 526; women of, 527.  
 TAIK. apparently the Panch, 527.  
 TAGARA. town, identification of, 510-511, 515.  
 TAGH. rebellious Gujarāt noble, 513, 518.  
 TAHSILDAR. sub-divisional officer, 210.  
 TAIKHALI. Sāva tribe, 531.  
 TAIKAPA. king of Telingana, 158, 159.  
 TAILAPPA. western Chālukya king, overthrew the Rashtrakūṭa dynasty (972), 120, 131, 519.  
 TAIKAS. Arabs, 149.  
 TAIKUR. village, 438.  
 TAIKUL MAASIR. 512, 519 and note 1.  
 TAIKAT BAI. wife of Anandráv Gāikwār, 460 and 68.  
 TAIKUL-MULK. Gujarāt governor (1320), 230.

TAKKADISA : tract of country (Punjab), 3, 468.  
 TALABDAS : wild tribe, 115.  
 TALAJA FORT, burned by the Portuguese (1532), 347.  
 TALBI lake, 153.  
 TALL SAP, lake, 499, 504.  
 TAMPAR : state land 215, 227.  
 TAMACHI : name borne by Jains, 139.  
 TAMACHI : son of Ransingji, restored to Kavānagar (1673), 285.  
 TAMARA BARANI : apparently the Tapti, 510.  
 TÁMHAR : Anulawāra, 516.  
 TÁMBANAGRI : local name of Cambay, 208 note 3.  
 TAMLUK : port on the Hugh (A.D. 100), 199, 533.  
 TAMRALIPTAKAS : of Tamluk, 533.  
 TANA : modern Thana, expedition against by Usman, 505, 508, 509, 523.  
 TANSAR : 508. See Thana.  
 TANKA : country, 467 and note 7.  
 TANK'S : coin, 222 note 1.  
 TANSIRIS : proficien in *tandra* (charms) branch of learning 161.  
 TAPPA : Brāhm-Bhāt, 157, 49.  
 TAPROBANE : Ceylon, 513.  
 TAPTI : river, 511, 523.  
 TARÁPUR : near Cambay, 337. In the Thana district, sacked by the Portuguese (1531) 347.  
 TÁRKH-I-ALAI : work of Amir Khusrāo, 515 note 6.  
 TÁRKH-I-FIRI-Z-SHĀHI : work of Zia-ud-din Bami, 514, 515, 517.  
 TÁRKH-I-KĀMIL : work of Ibn Asir, 522 note 4.  
 TÁRKH-I-MĀ'ISUMI : written in 1690 A.D., 517 and notes 7, 8, and 10.  
 TÁRKH-I-MULĀRĀKSHAHĪ : notices Asāwal (1103-1501) 513.  
 TÁRKH-I-TĀHIRI : written A.D. 1521, 139, 517 note 12, 518.  
 TARIZAKĪ : sea customs dues 212 note 1.  
 TARGARĪYU-DIHHAM : coin, 169 and note 2, 519 and note 8.  
 TĀTĀRKHAN : Sultan of Gujarāt, 613.  
 TAPHĀGAIA : see Gautama.  
 TAULA TOPI : rebel, enters the Panch Mahals, 141, corresponds with the chiefs of Jamkhandi and Nargund, is defeated at Chhota Udepur 145.  
 TAXILA : town, 190, 191, 516. Takshaśila tribe, 531.  
 TAYLOR : Captain (1857) 438.  
 TAZIYAT-UL-ANSAR : work of Abdullāh Wassāf (1300), 518.  
 TIGRO KHAN : governor of Surat, defeats the forces of Momai Khān and contrives (1733) to become governor of Surat, 313 recruits of, at Surat, 315 ; kills Mulla Muhammad Ali, 331, dies (1746), 330.  
 TRAHAPĀTA : minister of the first two Vāghelā chieftains and famous temple-builder, 199, accompanies Vīradhavalā in the expedition against the rulers of Vanthali : defeats Ghaghula, chief of Godhra, 201.

TRINGANA : Andhras of, 533.  
 TRINGAS : Felugus, 534.  
 TR'EGUS : 531.  
 TRINGAS : in Gujarāt, of brick and wood up to ninth century 79 and note 3.  
 TRINGĀ : village granted, 130.  
 TERRITORIAL DIVISIONS : under the Valabhis, their identification with the present, 12 and note 1.  
 TERRITORIAL LIMITS : of Gujarāt under Musalmāns 207 and note 2, 208.  
 TERRY : 221 note 1, 224 note 2. The Rev. Edward, chaplain to Sir T. Roe (1617), 376.  
 TULI : 145.  
 THAKAS : caste, 530 and note 10.  
 THAKERS : petty chieftains 215 note 2. Hugh caste men, 530 note 10. See Thakarias.  
 THAKIL : identified with Tamraliptakas, 533.  
 THAN : 180 note 2, fort in Kathiavāda, headquarters of the Kathis, stormed by Shujāt Khan (1692), 288.  
 THANA : town, burned by the Portuguese (1532) 347, captured by the English (1774), 401, 523, 524, 529, 531.  
 THANADARS : local officers, 210.  
 THAR AND PARKAR : district, 538.  
 THATCHER : Captain, 141.  
 THANAS : fortified outposts, 210.  
 THUSONG : king of Tibet (863-815), 501.  
 THUSONGT : king of Tibet (87-901), 501.  
 THOM : apparently Great Lord, 197.  
 THORNUA : town, identification of, 539.  
 THUK : hill-fence, 159.  
 TIASANS : Chashma, 37, 540.  
 TIATOURA : modern Chander, 510.  
 TIBET : country, ceases to acknowledge the overlordship of China (7-9), spreads its power to the Yangtsi-kiang valley (750), confederacy formed by the king of China with Tibetan chiefs and Arabs against it (7-7), 501.  
 TIGRIS : river, 511.  
 TIGARS : arrowmakers, 151.  
 TIKHIL : birth place of S'ugaudas, 167, 456 note 1.  
 TIRIPANGALIDA : town, 511.  
 TIRIHAKALPA : work, 176, written by Jinaprabhusmi, 182 note 1.  
 TIRIHAKARS : Jain saints, 151 note 3.  
 TIRIPANAKARA : near Kachhi, 533.  
 TOD : Colonel, 81, 145, 188, 203 note 7.  
 TODA GIRLS : ready-money payment, 216, 227 and note 1.  
 TORAMANA : king (471), 72, 74-75, overthrow Budhagupta, 136, 146, 165, 196.  
 TOWER : of victory, built by Mehmud Khulji (1142) at Mandu, 354.  
 TRAKUTAKA : era, 110, era (219-250), 113, 114, dynasty (250-550), 55-57.  
 TRAJAN : (166), 197.  
 TRAMBAKARVAR : lake, 163. See Talbi.  
 TRANSOXIANA : country, 139.  
 TRAPPAGA : boat, 515.  
 TRĀVANCORE : Pāndyas of, 531.  
 TREAPILS : forms of, 199-200.

- TREATY** : conditions of, between Singhana' and Lavamprasāda, 200.
- TRI** : of Gurjara-genealogy, 111; of Rashtrakūta family, 121. See Genealogy.
- TRIVASTA** : second cycle, 163.
- TRIVASTA** : district, 111.
- TRIM** : Indian, 535.
- TRIBHUVANAPĀLA** : great-grandson of Bhīmā I. (1022-1061), and father of Kumārapāla, murdered by Siddhanaga, 182. Representative of Anahlavāda Solankis, 103.
- TRIBHUVANAPĀLAVASTI** : temple at Bādhāpura, 126.
- TRIKADIBA** : island, 513.
- TRIKULA** : perhaps Jinnar, 57, 58 note 1.
- TRIMBAK** : pond, 162.
- TRIMPAK** : Pandit, deputy of Khanderāy Gil-wan at Ahmedabad, his intrigues with Fakhr-ul-daulah, 329.
- TRIMBAKISHWAR MAHADEV** : shrine of, 151.
- TRIMBAK** : Dangle, appointed Sarsubha of Ahmedabad, causes the assassination of Gargādhra Śrīśtra (1815), 127, his escape from Thāna, 128.
- TRIMBAKAY** : Dabhade, son and successor of Khanderāy Dabhade (1720), 389, advances with an army to Cambay (1726); 306, 391, his jealousy of the interference of the Peshwa in Gujarati affairs, intrigues of, against the Peshwa, intercourse of, with the Nazam, confederacy with Pilāpi, Kuntāji and Udayi to rescue the Marāṭha rājā from the Brahman minister, defeat of the allies by the Peshwa (1731) and death of, in battle 312, 392-393.
- TRIPURA** : city, 57 note 1.
- TRIPURANAKA** : religious benefactions of, 205.
- TRIPURASHAPAKA** : Mahadeva's temple at Anahlavāda, 161, new temple of, 169.
- TRISASHUHI SAIKĀKPEKSHACHAKRA** : lives of sixty-three Jain saints compiled by Hemachandra, 193.
- TROPINA** : Thupanatara, 533.
- TURBAI-UL-KIRĀM** : the, 139, 538.
- TUHLIK** : name borne by Jams, 139.
- TU-LI-HO-TO-IT** : Chinese name of Dhruvapatra Valabhi king, 19.
- TURKS** : 189, advance of, 497, 507.
- TURSHUKA** : Mahomedan ac. ed by Mughlīa II in childhood, 2 and note 4.
- TURSHUKAS** : 189. See Turks.
- TUSHASA** : Yavana governor of Asoka in Surāshtra, 11.
- TYNDI** : Kadalundi, 516.
- U** : see Udaya, 172.
- UDAJI PAVAR** : Peshwa's general in Gujarāt (1727); is outmanœuvred by Pilāji and Kuntāji; his retirement to Malwa, 308; captures Māndu (1696), 382; in Surāshtra, 14.
- UDAIPIRE** : town (Mevad), 532.
- UDAIŚVARA** : temple, 172.
- UDAMBARA** : village, 182.
- UDAYA** : minister of Chaulukya king Karna and builder of the temple Udaya-Vardha, 170.
- UDAYACHANDRA** : one of Kumārapāla's leading Pandits, 190.
- UDAYADITYA** : inscription of, at Udepur, 161; Kumārapāla's inscription in the temple of, 185.
- UDAYAGIRI CAVITY** : Gupta inscriptions at, 65-66.
- UDAYAMATI** : queen of Bhīma I., builds a stepwell at Anahlavāda, 169, persuades her son Karna to marry Miyamalladevi, 171.
- UDAYANA** : Siddhanaga's minister, helps Kumārapāla, 183, 48 appointed minister by Kumārapāla, 184, and is mortally wounded in the fight with the king of Surāshtra, 180.
- UDAYAPURA** : inscription of Udayaditya at, 161, Kuntāji's inscriptions in the temple at, 185, grant to the god of, 187; 194 note 1. See Udepur.
- UDAYA VARDHA** : temple at Karnavati, 170.
- UDAYASIMHADITYA** : Chōlān king, captures Bhārati, 170.
- UDDEER** : 161. See Udayapura.
- UDDELL** : Nicholas, English merchant (1611), 221 note 2, 119 and note 2.
- UDHANA** : legendary Yādava chief of Dwāraka, 9.
- UDHAN** : 171, visited by Kumārapāla in his exile, 183, 513 note 9.
- UDHAI KHAN** : general (1297), 229, 512; 515.
- UDHAI** : widow of Khanderāy Dabhade, goes to Gujarāt to avenge Pilāpi's death and marches upon Ahmedabad, 311, 393, intrigues of, against the Peshwa, recognizes Dāmāji as her agent in Gujarāt (1736), 391, causes Rango to be set at liberty and reappoints him her agent in Gujarāt (1715), 329, 396; dies (1718) 332, 396.
- UDAN** : Persian Gulf, 505, 523.
- UDAR ISMAIL KHAN** : Khalifah (634-643), 505 and note 5, 513, 523.
- UMIA** : copperplate grant from, 113 note 6, 117.
- UMVARA** : identified with Umrā, 130.
- UNDARAN** : apparently Vindhya mountain, 517.
- UPAKIS (GACHA)** : 469.
- UPARAYA** : Vradhavalā's horse, 201.
- UPON** : Colonel, special envoy deputed by the Calcutta Government to negotiate with ministers in Poona, 106.
- USHAYADRA** : Saka viceroy (100-120), gifts of, 25-26.
- USMAN** : governor of Bahrein and Persian Gulf, 505, 513, 523. Third Khalifah (633-655), 506 and note 5.
- UTBARI** : governor of Basrah, 505 note 5.
- UTARPINI** : age, 193.
- UTJAVAPURSHAS** : Jain saints, 451 note 3.
- UTTAMISAR** : female demon, 455.
- UZAIN** : identified with Ujjaini; expedition a. mst, 100, 467.

- VADIA** : inscription of Suleyvarmān at, 107.  
**VADIA** : religious discussion, 181.  
**VADAPADRAKA** : identified with Paroda, 125.  
**VADIGON** : convention of, disavowed by the Bombay Council (1779), 407.  
**VADHAR** 119, 150.  
**VADHIVAN** 169. See Vadhivān.  
**VADHIVAN** : capital of the Chapa dynasty 138, 139; 180 note 2, 186.  
**VADNAGAR** : town; ancient names of, 6, besieged by Antap Bhāskara, again by Kantāji, hant (1725), 307; 467; 516.  
**VAGADH** : local name, 208 note 3.  
**VAGABHAYA** : see Bahadī.  
**VAGGHACHENNA** : modern Vāghodha, 125.  
**VAGHIA** : principality of, 165, dynasty (1240-1290), 526.  
**VAGHIAHRO** : see Vira Vāghel.  
**VAGHIA** : branch of the Chaulukyas of Anahilavāda, help the last Chaulukya king and succeed him, 196-197, their rule and genealogy, 198-206.  
**VAGHODIA** 125.  
**VAGRA** : 129 and note 3.  
**VAGRAHASIMHA** 171.  
**VAGRISIMHA** : Chavāda king, 154-155.  
**VAGSHA** 539. See Baiswa.  
**VAGSHANKAR GAVSHANKAR** : Mr., Nāb Divān of Bhāvnagar, his collection of articles forged in Valabhi, 78 note 1.  
**VAGHARSINGH** : fifty-fourth or the last viceroy of Gujarat appointed by the imperial court, 332.  
**VALA** : Valabhi, 506.  
**VALABHI** : probably Gujars, 1, 5 note 1; capital of Valabhi dynasty, identified with Valch, 78 and note 1, history, 78-106, year, 201, 465, 466, Mihir or Gujara conquest of (490), 489, its great seaport and capital overthrown, 506; 524, 525.  
**VALABHI** : Bahāra or Rishtrakūta king, 516.  
**VALĀHAKA** : province, mentioned by Jinaprabhasuri, 78.  
**VALABHI** : Valabhi, mentioned by Jinaprabhasuri, 78.  
**VALEH** : modern name of Valabhi, town, its site examined (1872), 78 and note.  
**VALABHA** : head of the Dakhan Rashī aratas, 127, 525.  
**VALABHARAJA** : is installed by his father Chāmunda, marches against Mālwa, dies of small-pox, 162.  
**VALLE** : De la, Italian traveller at Māndu (1623), 381.  
**VAMANASHALI** : modern Vantah, 160.  
**VAMAR** : Pandit in Kumārapāla's court, insults Hemachandra, loses his amity, 193.  
**VANARAJA** : Chavāda king (720-780), born and bred in forest, founded Anahilavāda; his installation, his image, his successors, 150, 151-152, 153, 155; 512.  
**VAN-DINDORI** : grant of Govind III. at, 123; 166, 468.  
**VANGA** : modern Bengal, 121, 168.  
**VANKANER** : 295.  
**VANKI** : creek near Balsār, 125.  
**VANKIKA** : 125. See Vanki.  
**VANKIND** : forest pool, 451.  
**VANKI** : share, 215.  
**VANT** : Dār : shares, 212.  
**VANTHALI** : 136, Chudīyamas settle at, 139; capital of Grakāpi 166; its rulers killed by Vira Bhavā Vāghela, 200-204.  
**VARADAPALIKA** : Village, 130.  
**VARAH** : wild boar coin, 219 note 2; Boar god, 457.  
**VARAHA MIHIRA** : astronomer, 533, 534, 510.  
**VARALATA** : tribe, 534.  
**VARDHANANUPURA** : modern Vadhivān, 176.  
**VARIATTA** : see Varalatta.  
**VARIATTA** : modern Vairā 198.  
**VARIIS** : wild tribe, 534.  
**VARIANTAS** : police subordinates, 212.  
**VARTHMA** : traveller (1503-1508), 220 note 2.  
**VARVAR** 144, 174 note 1. See Barbaraka.  
**VARVARAKA** : see Barbuaka.  
**VASAKA** : camp, 113.  
**VASANTASENA** : king of Nepāl, 81.  
**VASHISTA** : sage, 161.  
**VASINGAPURA** : 1-0 note 2.  
**VASISHTHI** : raver, 541.  
**VASTUPALA** : Luvangprāsāda's minister builds magnificent Jain temples, 199 and note 2, 200, 201, 202 and note 1.  
**VASTUPALACHAKRA** : life of Vastupala by Somavā, 199.  
**VASUDEVA** : Kushan king (AD 123-150), 37.  
**VASUDEVA** : Chohan king (780-157).  
**VASUDEVAS** : Jain saints, 151 note 3.  
**VADAPADRAPIKA** : probably Biroda, 183.  
**VAT-SARALA** : 466, 468, Gurjara king, his success in Bengal, 527.  
**VAYALLADEVA** : manager of Tripurāchupāśīda temple, 161.  
**VENCHALI** : Vama's Vantah, 133.  
**VERVAL** : inscription at, 81, 176, 203, 204, 521, 517.  
**VERVALI** : of Rājpipla, 295.  
**VERSOVA** : fort in Sālsette, taken by the English (1774), 101.  
**VICHARAKHANI** : list of kings, 119 and note 2, 152, 154, 155, 166, 162, 170, 171, 181, 201.  
**VIDYA SAI** : Sanskrit college, 453 & note 1.  
**VIDYA** : B-sagar near Bilisa, 65, 66.  
**VIDYADHARAS** : ancestors of north Konkan Silāhāras, 129.  
**VIGRAHARAJA** : king of Ajmir, 157.  
**VITAYADITYA** : Chalukya king (696-770), 150.  
**VITAYAPURA** : identified with Bijāpur near Parānti, 108, 110.  
**VITAYARAJA** : Chalukya prince, his grant, 108, 110, 112.  
**VIJAYARUKA** : Goa Kadamba king, 172 note 3.  
**VIJAYASENA** : fifteenth Kshatrapa (238-249) coins of, 16-47, 49.  
**VIJALADEVA** : Ajayapāla's doo-keeper and murderer, 195.  
**VIKRAMA** : era, 204.  
**VIKRAMADITTA** : Dakhan Chalukya king, 56;

Satyāsraya, Chālukya king (680), 107, 110, 111, 112; gives Lāta to his brother Jayasimha, 117.  
**VIKRAMĀDITYA** : name of Chandragupta II., 65.  
**VIKRAMĀDITYA** : Paramāra king of Chaudravati, joint-king of Sāmbar and is dethroned by Kumārāpāla, 185, 188.  
**VILLAGE OFFICERS** : Mughal, in Gujarāt, 212.  
**VIMALA** : general of Bhīma I., subduces Dharadhuka chief of A'bu and builds on A'bu Jain temples, 169.  
**VIMALAVASABHI** : group of Jain temples on A'bu, 169 and note 1.  
**VINAYĀDITYA** : Chālukya king, 56, 110; his inscriptions, 111.  
**VINAYĀDITYA MANGALARĀJA** : copperplate grant at Bulāh of, 108.  
**VINCENT**, 512.  
**VINDHYA** : mountain, northern limit of Dādā I.'s Gurjara kingdom, 115; its king, 163; southern boundary of Kumārāpāla's kingdom, 189; 168; 517.  
**VINDU** the Vindhyas, 510.  
**VIRADAMAN** thirteenth Kshatrpa (A.D. 236-238), coins of, 46.  
**VIRADHAYALA** Vāghela king (1233-1238), 179, 196, 197; his father abdicates in his favour, his expeditions against Vanthali, Bhadresvara, and Godhra, and his treaty with the Sultan of Delhi, 200-201, 206.  
**VIRAMATI** Jain nun, brings up Vamarāja, 151.  
**VIRAMA VISALA** see Viradeva.  
**VIRAMGĀM** : Muna lake at, 180 note 2; disturbance at (1731), 314, Sher Khān Bābū appointed governor of, 315, expulsion of the Marāthas from, by Bhay Singh, 323, besieged by the Marāthas, surrendered by Bhay Singh, 323, 324, given by Rangoji to the Muslims, 326, 513, 518.  
**VIRPUR** 180 note 2, 206.  
**VIRA VĀGHELA**, 198 and note 6. See Viradeva.  
**VIRADOLVA** Vāghela king (1213-1261), defeats his brother and Tribhuvanapāla Solāhki, refuses to acknowledge an overlord and lessens the miseries of a three years' famine, 203, 206. Ruler of Chaudravati, 204.  
**VISALANAGARA** : fortifications of repaired by Viradeva, 203.  
**VISHNU** : a god, 461.  
**VISHNUVA** : chief, 65.  
**VISHOPAKA** : 169.  
**VISHVAKARMA** divine architect, 461, 462.  
**VISHVAMITRA** sage, 161.  
**VISHVASENA** : twentieth Kshatrpa (294-300), coins of, 48-49.  
**VIVASIMHA** : eighteenth Kshatrpa (272-278), coins of, 47.  
**VISVAVARĀHA** : father of Girihāri, 139.  
**VISVARĀGA** : title of Jayasimha I., Gurjara ruler, 115, Jain Tirthankara, 195.  
**VITHAL DEVĀJI** : Garkwār's officer, captures Mallhārrav Garkwār (1803), 413, appointed Subha in Kāthiavāda, 426.  
**VITHAL SHUKDEV** : lieutenant of Raghunāth-rāy in Gujarāt, settles peace with Javān Maid Khān (1753), 397.

**VOI** : exactions, 216, 227 and note 1.  
**VRIJIS** : 456 note 1.  
**VYĀGHRAPĀLI** : Vāghela, the home of Vāghelās, 198.  
**VYĀGHRAMĪKHA** : Gurjara king, 167.  
**VYĀGHRARĀJA** : Chāpa king, 138 note 1.  
**VYĀGHREVA** : perhaps Vāgra, 129 and note 3.  
**WAGNER** : outbreak of (1859), 446.  
**WAGHRIA** : castrator, 451.  
**WAIZAPUR** : village, 143.  
**WAKI UNIGAR** : news-writer, 214.  
**WALKER** : Major, sent by Governor Duncan to help Govindrāy's party at Ruoda, 412; resident at Baroda, 413, 411. Colonel, settles the Kāthiavāda tribute question, 416, 422, 423.  
**WALLACE** : Colonel, political agent of Rewr Kāthi, 446.  
**WANEVA** : 111. See Balisa.  
**WATSON** : Mr., 120.  
**WATSON** : Colonel, 145, 466.  
**WAZIRAH** : land grants, 212, land held on religious tenures by Hindus, confiscation of, by an order of Aurangzib between 1671 and 1674, 285.  
**WELSH** : Lieut., takes the forts of Pārnera, Indergad, and Bagvada (1780), 409.  
**WELSH** : the late Colonel, 110.  
**WEST NADIK** : connected with south Gujarāt under the Chālukya rule, 110.  
**WHITE HUNAS** : foreigners 142-146; 179, in north Smāl and south Panjab, 496, defeat of, by Sassanians and Turks (550-600), 497; settle in Yamung with Tibetans and Kedarites 501. See Hūnas.  
**WIGGID TIGRIS** : 158 and note 2.  
**WILFORD**, 511.  
**WILSON** : Dr. John, 115.

**XOANA** town, 535.  
**XODRAKE** 539.

**YACHI** : capital of Kārājāng or Yunnan (1290), 501, 504.  
**YĀDAVA KINGDOM** : at Dwārikā, establishment of, 8.  
**YADAVA** 521.  
**YAJÑASHTA** : Brahmin 461.  
**YAJÑSRI** : Audhira king, 38.  
**YAJURVIDA** : 534.  
**YAKSHA** : king, 151, 456 and note 1, statue of, described 156-158, high day of, 458, 465.  
**YAMUNA** : river, 533.  
**YASADAMAN I.** : fourteenth Kshatrpa (A.D. 239), coins of, 46.  
**YASADAMAN II.** : twenty-second Kshatrpa (A.D. 320), coins of, 49.  
**YASIVANTARĀY** : minor son of Trimbakrāy Dabhāde made Senāpati by Bājirāv Peshwa (1731), 393, 396.  
**YASODHARMAY** : king of Mālwa, 76, 77, defeats Hūna, 143; defeats Mihirakula the famous White Hun conqueror at Kārur (530), 496.

- YASODHAVALA** : Kumārapāla's viceroy, 187; set on his uncle's throne by Kumārapāla, 18'.  
**YASOVARMAN** : king of Mālwa, 160, 172, 175, 174; his war with Śikhaharja, is taken prisoner and kept in a cage, 177-178, 496.  
**YAUDHEYA** : Kshatriya tribe, 19 and note 3, 86-87, 64 and note 3, 138.  
**YAVANA** : 12; people, 119; language, 160, 456 note 1; migration of, to Indo-China (100), 499.  
**YAVANĀŚVA** : Yavana prince of Pālipur, 119.  
**YAVANI** : handmaids, of the Indian drama, 545.  
**YAYĀTI** : king, son of Nahushī, asks boon from the Sun, 460 and note 2.  
**YEMEN** : country, 535.  
**YESODHARMMAN** : 143. See Yasodharman.  
**YE-TA-I-LI-TO** : 145.  
**YĒ-THA** : White Huns, 75, 142, 145. See Ye-ta-i-li-to.  
**YOṬA** : Brāhman domee, 126.  
**YOGARĀJA** : Anahilavāda chief (805-841), 124; mounts funeral pyre, 151, 155.  
**YOGASĀSTRA** : work compiled by Hemachandra, 193.  
**YOGĒSVARA** : writer of Govind's Kāvī grant, 126.  
**YOJANA** : three miles, 510, 521.  
**YU'AN-YU'AN** : 144.  
**YUECHI** : foreign tribe, 144, 456 note 1 : little. 510. See Kedarites.  
**YUETCHI** : see 144. See Yuechi.  
**YUGS** cycles, 61. "  
**YUKĀLVINĀNA** : louse temple, 198.  
**YUSE** : Sir H., 499, 504, 537, 538, 539, 540.  
**YUNNAN** : settlement in, of Thsrong and his successor Thi-tsung-ti, 501.
- ZAFAR KHĀN** : (injarāt governor (1371), 230, 231, (1391-1403), 232, 234; confined by his son Tātār Khān at Asāwa, 513.  
**ZAKĀT** : a tax, 212 note I.  
**ZAMINDĀRS** : landholders, 215, 216 note 1; three classes of, 226.  
**ZAMQTIKA** : father of K-hātrupa, Cha-ṭana, 31.  
**ZARMANOKHĒGAS** : S'ramanācarya at Athens, 536.  
**ZĒROGERTI** : town, 540.  
**ZIA-UD-DIN BAKKI** : anpalist of Muhammad Tughlak', reign and author of Tarikh-i-Firuz-Shahi (1325), 513, 514, 517, 518.  
**ZIMMIS** : infidels, 213.  
**ZOSKALĒS** : king Za Sāgal or Za Asgal or Za Hakalē, 543.  
**ZULFIKAR BEG** : Mughal leader, is defeated by the Marāthas (1716), 388.









